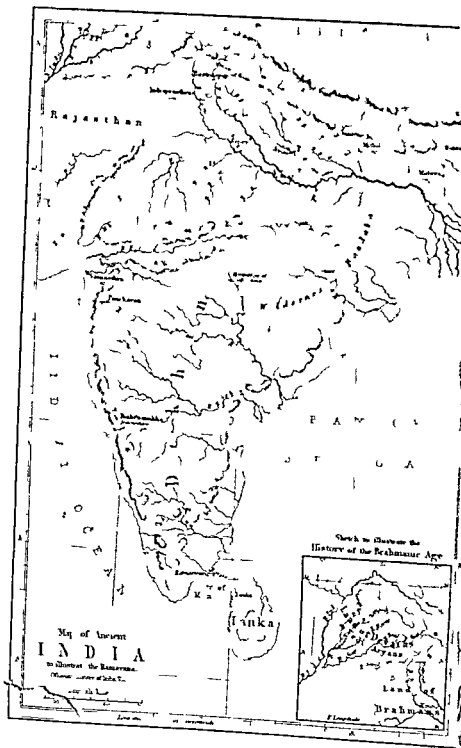


THE

HISTORY OF INDIA.

VOL II

THE RĀMĀYANA AND THE BRAHMANIC PERIOD



# HISTORY OF INDIA

FROM THE EARLIEST AGES

BY

J. TALBOYS WHEELER,

ASSISTANT SECRETARY TO THE GOVERNMENT OF INDIA IN THE FOREIGN DEPARTMENT  
SECRETARY TO THE INDIAN RECORD COMMISSION  
AUTHOR OF "THE GEOGRAPHY OF HERODOTUS &c., &c

VOL II

THE RÁMÁYANA AND THE BRAHMANIC PERIOD

LONDON

N TRUBNER & CO, 60, PATERNOSTER ROW

MDCCCLXIX





# CONTENTS.

## VOL II.

### PART IV.

## THE RÁMÁYANA.

### CHAPTER I.

#### THE CITY OF AYODHYÁ.

	PAGE
Opening scene of the Rámáyana at Ayodhyá, the modern Oude	1
Present appearance of the ruins	1
Ancient magnificence	1
Geographical position indicative of Aryan advance from Delhi to Oude	2
The Raj of Kosala	2
Lack of family traditions	2
Rajas descended from the Sun	2
The Sun descended from Brahma	2
Earliest tradition connected with Dasaratha, the father of Ráma	2
Commencement of the Rámáyana	3
Description of the Raj of Kosala and city of Ayodhyá	3
Houses, streets, temples, palaces, gardens, groves, and chariots of the gods	3
The tanks	3
The lotoses	3
The wind and the bees	3
The ducks and geese	3
The kingfishers	3
The plantain trees	3
Gems	3
Flowers, incense, and banners	3
Fortifications	4
The moat	4

The gates . . . . .	
The guards . . . . .	
The people of Ayodhya . . . . .	
The Brâhmanas and their three classes of disciples, viz. : Sons, ants, Students, Brahmachâris . . . . .	
The Kshatriyas . . . . .	
The Vaisyas . . . . .	
The Sûdras . . . . .	
Virtues of the people . . . . .	
Palace of the Mahârâja . . . . .	
Temples and treasures . . . . .	
Throne of the Mahârâja . . . . .	
Palace guards . . . . .	
Virtues of Mahârâja Dasaratha . . . . .	
Virtues of his Ministers . . . . .	
Eight special Counsellors . . . . .	
Two priests and preceptors . . . . .	
Review of the foregoing description of a Raj, a people, and a Mahârâja : . . . . .	
Hindû ideal of a city . . . . .	
Poetical sympathy with external nature subordinate to Brah- manical ideas . . . . .	
Coy ladies . . . . .	
Reverential pupils . . . . .	
Disciples of the Brâhmanas . . . . .	
The people . . . . .	
Stress laid upon caste distinctions . . . . .	
Model of a Hindû Mahârâja . . . . .	
Military and religious character . . . . .	
His Counsellors . . . . .	
His two Purohitas . . . . .	
Real nature of the palace enclosure . . . . .	
Treasures and temples within the enclosure . . . . .	
Throne in the centre of the palace . . . . .	
Hindû idea of the necessity for spies . . . . .	

## CHAPTER II

### THE HORSE-SACRIFICE OF MAHÂRAJA DASARATHA

Performance of an Aswamedha to obtain a son . . . . .	
Episode of a Rishi who had never seen a woman . . . . .	
Narrative of the horse sacrifice of Dasaratha . . . . .	
The Mahârâja determines to perform an Aswamedha to obtain a son : . . . . .	
Acquiescence of his Brâhman preceptors . . . . .	
Delight of the three Rânis . . . . .	
Ancient prophecy that the Aswamedha was to be performed by Rishi Srînga . . . . .	

	PAGE
Legend of the Rishi Srīṅga who had never seen a woman	11
Drought caused by the wickedness of the Rājā of Anga	12
The Rājā advised by the Brahmins to marry his daughter to Rishi Srīṅga	12
Refusal of the Rājā's servants to bring Pīṣhī Srīṅga from the jungle	12
Damsels sent to entice Srīṅga from his father's hermitage	12
Amblems of the damsels in the absence of Srīṅga's father	12
Srīṅga invites them into the hermitage	12
Srīṅga fascinated with sweetmeats, wine and caresses	13
Alarm of Srīṅga's father on discovering what had occurred	13
Srīṅga carried away to Anga by the damsels	13
Rāvaṇ falls on the approach of Srīṅga	13
Srīṅga married to the Rājā's daughter Sāntī	14
Review of the foregoing episode of Rishi Srīṅga	14
Power of procuring rain assumed by the Brahmins	14
Indra, the Vedic deity who sent rain	14
Brahmins assert a superiority to Indra	
Brahminical assumption in the legend of Srīṅga	
Unconscious immorality in the temptation of Srīṅga	
Narrative of the Aswamedha resumed	15
The Mahārāja goes to Anga and brings Srīṅga to Ayodhya	15
Preparation for loosening the horse	16
Respectful homage of the Mahārāja to the Brahmins	16
The Mahārāja's directions to his Counsellor	16
Loosening of the horse	16
Preparations for the sacrifice of the horse	16
Place of sacrifice	17
Twenty-one posts	17
The eighteen sacrificial pits	17
The sacrifice	17
The Rājis placed with the dead horse	17
Presents of provinces refused by the Brahmins	17
Second sacrifice performed by Rishi Srīṅga	18
Assembling of the gods	18
The gods receive their shares and disappear	18
The gods pray to Brahma for protection against Rāvaṇ	18
Rāvaṇ rendered invulnerable to the gods had made the gods his slaves	18
Brahma conducts the gods to the abode of Viṣṇu in the sea of milk	19
Viṣṇu appears upon Garuḍa with Lalitā upon his knees	19
Prayer of the gods to Viṣṇu against the oppression of Rāvaṇ	19
Viṣṇu promises to overthrow Rāvaṇ by mortals and monkeys	19
The gods become incarnate as monkeys	20
Appearance of an emanation from Brahma	20
Presents a cup of son-producing pīyāśa to the Mahārāja	20
Joy of the Mahārāja	20

	[PAGE
Joy of the Ránis on sharing the páyasa amongst them	21
The Ránis conceive	21
Birth of four sons viz Ráma Bharata, Lakshmana, Satrughna	21
Public rejoicings	21
Naming of the four Princes after eleven days	21
Meanings of the names	21
Review of the foregoing description of the Aswamedha	22
Two sacrifices involved	22
Real character of the sacrifice of the horse	22
Strange rite of the Ránis and the dead horse	22
Probably a later Brahmanical invention	22
Flesh of the horse probably believed to stimulate conception	22
Substitution of the payasa for horse flesh	23
Extraordinary narrative of the offering of homa representing Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu	23
Object and character of the incarnation	23
Legend of Ravana, the great Rakshasa Raja	23
Ravana oppresses the Vedic deities	24
Complaint of the Vedic gods, an acknowledgment of their inferiority to Brahma and of the inferiority of Brahma to Vishnu	24
Vishnu becomes incarnate through the agency of the payasa	24

## CHAPTER III

### THE CHILDHOOD OF RAMA

Life of Rama from infancy to manhood	27
Hindu love of children	27
Realism in the descriptions of domestic life	27
Progressive incidents in the infancy, childhood, and boyhood of Ráma	27
Narrative in the Pamayana	28
Description of the four babies during the first year of infancy	28
Rama identified by the priest Vasishtha as an incarnation of Vishnu	29
Distinguishing marks	29
Rama and his brethren begin to run about	29
Anecdotes of Rama	29
Story of Ráma crying for the moon and refusing to be comforted	29
Kausalya fails to comfort him	30
The women of the palace fail	30
The Mahárajá tries and fails	30
Sumantra the chief Counsellor pacifies Rama with a mirror	30
Second year of infancy Ráma and his brethren begin to talk	31

	PAGE
Anecdotes of Rāma . . . . .	31
Third year, ceremony of piercing their ears . . . . .	31
Sports of Rāma and his brethren with other boys . . . . .	31
At five years of age Rāma and his brethren are educated by Vasishtā . . . . .	32
Rites of initiation . . . . .	32
Dress of the four boys . . . . .	32
Daily attendance at school . . . . .	32
Progress in their studies . . . . .	32
Alphabet . . . . .	32
Grammar . . . . .	32
Arts and sciences . . . . .	32
Examinations in the Council-hall . . . . .	32
Exercises in arms and games . . . . .	33
Hide-and-seek and mock battles . . . . .	33
Rāma's play at being Mahārāja, with playfellows for Ministers . . . . .	33
Investiture with the sacred thread, and the attendant rites . . . . .	33
Rāma and his brethren Brahmachāris for the day . . . . .	33
Study the Vedas . . . . .	33
Virtues and accomplishments of the four Princes . . . . .	34
Superiority of Rāma . . . . .	34
Legend of the great bow of Siva preserved by Janaka, Raja of Mithilā . . . . .	34
Review of the foregoing narrative of Rāma's early life . . . . .	34
The blue-coloured babe . . . . .	34
The marks of Vishnu . . . . .	35
Incidents connected with Rāma's crying for the moon common to modern Hindú life . . . . .	35
Worship of Sustī . . . . .	35
Exorcising . . . . .	35
Hindú idea of the Chief Counsellor being called in to quiet Rāma . . . . .	35
Realism of Hindú childhood as displayed towards the clay images . . . . .	35
Life of Rāma a type of the modern Hindú . . . . .	35
Custom of becoming Brahmachāris at the investiture with the thread . . . . .	36

## CHAPTER IV.

## WARS WITH THE RĀKSHASAS.

Interval between Rāma's boyhood and marriage employed against the Rākshasas . . . . .	37
Confusion respecting the aboriginal inhabitants of India . . . . .	37
Different appellations . . . . .	37
Regarded as ghosts or demons . . . . .	37

	PAGE
Represented as descendants from Bráhmaṇ sages, and as worshippers of Brahma . . . . .	37
Origin of the opposition of the Rákshasas to the Brahman's, and to the Brahmanical sacrifices . . . . .	38
Bráhmaṇical hermitages . . . . .	38
Narrative in the Rámáyana of Rama's expedition against the Rákshasas . . . . .	38
Anxiety of the Mahárája respecting the marriage of his four sons . . . . .	38
Visit of Viśwámitra . . . . .	38
Reverential reception of Viśwámitra by the Mahárája . . . . .	38
The Mahárája volunteers to grant his request . . . . .	39
Viśwámitra originally a Kshatriya . . . . .	39
Requests the Mahárája to send Ráma to protect his Bráhmaṇical settlement against the Rákshasas . . . . .	39
Sorrow of the Mahárája . . . . .	39
Viśwámitra claims the fulfilment of the Mahárája's promise . . . . .	39
Rama and Lakshmana permitted to accompany Viśwámitra . . . . .	39
Departure of the three for the hermitage of Viśwámitra . . . . .	40
Poetical description of autumn . . . . .	40
Viśwámitra acts as Guru . . . . .	40
Journey to the Bráhmaṇical settlement at the junction of the Sarayú and Ganges . . . . .	40
Legend of Śiva smitten by the love inspiring arrows of Káma . . . . .	41
Hospitable reception . . . . .	41
Passage over the Ganges to the southern bank . . . . .	41
Roaring of the waters . . . . .	41
Dreadful jungle of Táriká . . . . .	41
Viśwámitra requests Rama to slay Táriká the Rákshasi . . . . .	41
Combat between Ráma and Táriká . . . . .	42
Ráma's unwillingness to slay a woman . . . . .	42
Slays Táriká at the instigation of Viśwámitra . . . . .	42
Divine weapons given to Rama by Viśwámitra . . . . .	42
Two powerful mantras . . . . .	43
Arrival at the hermitage of Viśwámitra . . . . .	43
Legend of Vishnu in the Dwarf incarnation taking three steps for the destruction of Bali . . . . .	43
Reception of Ráma by the sages at the hermitage of Viśwámitra at Buxar . . . . .	44
The sacrifice assailed by the Rákshasas . . . . .	44
Victory of Ráma over Márisa and Śurabhu . . . . .	44
Ráma and Lakshmana proceed with Viśwámitra to the sacrifice of Janaka in Mithulá . . . . .	44
Country of Mithulá, the modern Tirhut . . . . .	45
Legend of Kanouj . . . . .	45
Legend of the descent of the Ganges on the head of Śiva and thence on the earth . . . . .	45
The party cross the Ganges and halt at Viśálí . . . . .	46
Legend of the churning of the ocean by the gods and demons for amrita . . . . .	47

# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Indra and the gods fly for refuge to Brahma, who refers them to Vishnu . . . . .	47
Churning of the sea . . . . .	47
Ascent of Váruni, the deity of wine . . . . .	47
The Apsaras . . . . .	47
Lakshmi, beautiful and youthful, rises out of the sea, and becomes the wife of Vishnu . . . . .	47
The amrita . . . . .	47
Indra and the gods quaff the amrita and overcome the demons . . . . .	48
Hospitable entertainment of the party at Visálá . . . . .	48
Journey to Mithilá . . . . .	48
Legend of the adultery of Indra with the wife of Gautama, the sage . . . . .	48
Indra cursed by Gautama . . . . .	48
The wife of Gautama rendered invisible until the arrival of Ráma . . . . .	49
Ráma enters the hermitage and frees Ahalyá from the curse . . . . .	49
Review of the foregoing tradition of Ráma's expedition against the Rákshasas . . . . .	49
Anomalous character of Viswámitra . . . . .	49
General truthfulness of the geographical references . . . . .	50
Large interpolation of unhistorical myths . . . . .	50

## CHAPTER V.

### MARRIAGE OF RÁMÁ.

Interesting story of Ráma's marriage . . . . .	51
General interest attached to marriages intensified in India . . . . .	51
The all-absorbing topic in Hindú households . . . . .	51
Paramount duty of Hindú parents to arrange the marriages of their children . . . . .	51
Transcendant interest attached to the marriage of Ráma and Sítá . . . . .	52
Religious ideas of their divine character . . . . .	52
Especial religious sympathies of Hindú families . . . . .	52
Religious sentiment imperfectly expressed in the Rámáyana, but felt by every Hindú . . . . .	53
Unquestioning belief in the incarnation of Vishnu and Lakshmi . . . . .	53
Division of the story of the marriage of Ráma into three distinct narratives . . . . .	53
1st. Tradition of the winning of Sítá by Ráma, and the subsequent marriage . . . . .	54
Confusion of the women of Mithilá on hearing of Ráma's approach . . . . .	54
Raja Janaka respectfully receives Viswámitra and inquires respecting Ráma and Lakshmana . . . . .	54

	PAGE
Exhibits the great bow of Śiva . . . . .	54
Śitā promised to that Rājā who could bend the bow . . . . .	55
Rāma bends the bow . . . . .	55
Rājā Janakā sends messengers to inform Dasaratha . . . . .	55
The Mahārāja goes to Mithilā, and is received by Rājā Janakā . . . . .	55
Recital of the ancestry of Rāma and Śitā . . . . .	56
Propositions of marriage for all the four sons of Dasaratha . . . . .	56
Performance of a great Śraddha by Dasaratha . . . . .	56
The Mahārāja proceeds to the place of sacrifice . . . . .	56
Preparations made by Vasishtha the priest for the nuptial ceremony . . . . .	57
Janakā places Śitā before the altar . . . . .	57
The bridegrooms take the hands of the brides, and are sprinkled with holy water . . . . .	57
Walk three times round the fire . . . . .	57
Joy of the gods . . . . .	57
Ceremonies in the inner apartments . . . . .	58
Review of the foregoing tradition of the marriages of Rāma and his brethren . . . . .	59
Authentic character of the narrative . . . . .	59
Marriage ceremony not performed by the Brāhmanas, but by Rājā Janakā . . . . .	59
Four rites . . . . .	59
The procession . . . . .	59
The sacred fire . . . . .	59
The taking of the hand . . . . .	59
The sprinkling . . . . .	60
Resemblance between the ancient Aryan ceremony and the modern Christian rite . . . . .	60
2nd Return journey from Mithilā to Ayodhyā . . . . .	60
Episode exhibiting the opposition of Rāma, the Kshatriya, to Parasu Rāma, the Brahman . . . . .	60
Nature of the opposition . . . . .	60
Narrative of the return journey . . . . .	61
Departure of the sage Viśvāmitra . . . . .	61
Presents of Janakā to the brides . . . . .	61
Departure of the Mahārāja with his sons and their wives . . . . .	61
Evil and good omens . . . . .	62
Terrible appearance of Parasu Rāma, son of Jamadagni . . . . .	62
His wrath against Rāma for having broken the bow of Śiva . . . . .	62
Vasishtha and the Brāhmanas present the archa . . . . .	62
Parasu Rāma challenges Rāma to bend the bow of Viṣṇu . . . . .	62
Rāma bends the bow and discharges an arrow . . . . .	63
Parasu Rāma acknowledges him to be Viṣṇu . . . . .	63
Grand entry of the Mahārāja into the city of Ayodhyā . . . . .	63
Rejoicings of the people . . . . .	63
The newly married pairs bow down to their mothers and worship the gods . . . . .	63
Presents and feasting . . . . .	63



	PAGE
Review of the foregoing narrative character of Parasu Rama	63
Inference that his alleged extirpation of the Kshatriyas is his tonic	64
Refutation of the inference	64
Parasu Rama the mere hero of some petty local tradition, originating in the theft of a cow	64
Cattle-lifting story exaggerated into a Brahmanical fable that Parasu Rama extirpated the Kshatriyas	65
3rd Story of Rama's honeymoon	65
Its modern character	65
Contrast between the simplicity of the marriage ceremony, and the ornate story of the honeymoon	65
Hindu character of the narrative	66
Story of the honeymoon in the Ramayana	66
Consummation of the marriages at Ayodhya	66
Advice given to Sita by her maids	66
Timidity of Sita	66
Remonstrances of Rama	66
Decorations of the bridal chamber	67
The bridal couch	67
Description of the honeymoon	67
Rama and Sita playing at dice	67
Rama's joke	68
Rama compares Sita with different things in nature	68
Sports of the married pair in the pond	68
Rama and Sita drink honey together	68
Review of the foregoing story of the honeymoon of Rama	69
Wide difference between a European and a Hindu honeymoon	69
Rama and Sita little better than children	69
Description of Rama as a Hindu bridegroom of sixteen	69
Description of Sita as a Hindu bride of fourteen	69
Sports of the married Hindu lovers	70

## CHAPTER VI

## RAMA APPOINTED YUVARAJA

Temporal prosperity of Rama	72
Ancient appointment of the heir-apparent to be co-Raja during his father's lifetime	72
Threefold object of the custom	
(1) Settling the succession	72
(2) Assisting the reigning Raja	72
(3) Educating the young Prince	72
Installed as Raja under the title of Yuvarya	72
General political importance of the installation	73
Social importance in the Court and palace	73

	PAGE
Natural appointment of the eldest son when the Mahārāja had only one wife	73
Intrigues where the Maharaja indulged in polygamy	73
Jealousy of the wife inflamed by the ambition of the mother	73
Opposition of the youngest favourite to the first wife	73
<i>Partisanship of the slave girls of the palace</i>	74
Intrigues embittered by the conditions of zenana life	74
The passions stimulated by want of society and occupation	74
Tenderness of the woman changed to the ferocity of the tigress	74
Vital importance of the question of succession in polygamous households	74
Involves the question of which wife shall rule the family	74
Anguish of an elder wife at being subordinate to a younger rival, and seeing her own son subordinate to the rival's son	75
Appointment of Pama to be Yuvarāja an illustration of zenana life	75
Obscurity arising from the modification of the ancient tradition for the purpose of presenting Pama as a model	75
Probable nature of the real state of affairs	75
<i>Opposition of Rama to Bharata</i>	76
Relative position of their mothers	76
<i>Partisanship of Lakshmana and Satrugṇa</i>	76
Progress of the intrigues	76
Opposition of Kaikeyī, the younger wife, to Kaushalyā, the first wife	76
Views of the Maharaja	76
Preference for Rama	77
Bharata sent to the city of his maternal grandfather	77
Tradition as related in the Rāmāyana	77
Visit of Yudhājit, brother of Kaikeyī and uncle of Bharata	77
<i>The Mahārāja determines to send away Bharata with Yudhājit</i>	77
Joy of Kaikeyī	77
Commands given by the Mahārāja to Bharata	77
Departure of Bharata and Satrugṇa	78
Arrival at the city of Rājā Aswapati	78
Public rejoicings	78
Bharata and Satrugṇa dwell in the palace of Rājā Aswapati	78
Studies of Bharata	78
Question as to which of the Princes should be appointed Yuvarāja	79
Partiality of the Mahārāja for Rama	79
<i>Virtues of Rama</i>	79
Resolution of the Mahārāja to appoint Pāma to be Yuvarāja	79
Ministers, Counsellors and people request the Mahārāja to retire in favour of Rāma	79
Feigned anger of the Maharaja	79
A great Council summoned	80

	PAGE
Speech of the Maharaja expressing a desire to retire in favour of Rama and to appoint Rama Yuvaraja	80
Joy of the assembly	80
Peplv of the Chieftains that Rama should be coadjutor with the Maharaja	80
The Chieftains recite the many merits of Rama	81
His wisdom and bravery	81
His kind words	81
His truth continence, and justice	81
Universal popularity	81
The Maharaja makes known his delight	81
Directs his two priests to prepare for Rama's installation	82
General acclamations	82
Vasishtha, at the request of the Maharaja, recites what will be necessary for the ceremony	82
The installation fixed for the morrow	82
The Maharaja sends for Rama	82
Rama arrives at the palace	83
Received graciously by the Maharaja	83
Speech of the Maharaja to Rama	83
Requests Rama to become Yuvaraja	83
His own planet threatened by three malignant aspects	83
Passing of the moon on the morrow into Pushya	83
<i>Rama directed to keep watch until the morning</i>	83
Rama proceeds to his mother's apartments	84
Acquaints her of his coming elevation	84
Joy of Kausalya	84
Rama's kind address to his brother Lakshmana	84
Goes home	84
Vasishtha by direction of the Maharaja, visits Rama	84
Vasishtha's directions to Rama	85
Rama worships Vasishtha	85
Sacrifices to Vishnu	85
Keeps watch throughout the night in the temple of Vishnu	85
Rejoicings in the house of Rama	86
Rejoicings throughout the city of Ayodhya	86
Illuminations and purifications	86
Adorning of the city at sunrise	86
Young and old exult in the installation of Rama	86
Country people flock into the city to behold the installation	86
Review of the narrative in the Ramayana	86
Brahmanical introduction of Vasishtha, a later interpolation	87
Dubious stress laid upon the worship of Vishnu	87
Remaining details a relic of the ancient tradition	87
Fears as regards Bharata	87
Democratic element evidenced in the popular movement in favour of Rama	87
The deputation which waited upon the Maharaja	87
General assembly, or great Council convened in consequence	88

	PAGE
Popular interest in public affairs converted into a personal affection for Rāma . . . . .	88

## CHAPTER VII

## INTRIGUES OF KAIKEYĪ

Acme of human felicity attained by Rāma . . . . .	89
Conception of the avenging Nemesis . . . . .	89
Brilliant preparations for the installation on the eve of the ceremony, throughout the night, and on the following sun rise . . . . .	89
Painful scene enacted during the same interim in the palace of the Maharaja . . . . .	90
Tradition recorded in the Rāmāyana . . . . .	90
Scenes within the palace of the Maharaja on the eve of the installation . . . . .	90
Mantharā, the old nurse of Kaikeyī . . . . .	90
Her extreme ugliness . . . . .	91
Beholds the preparations for the installation with great wrath . . . . .	91
Attempts to rouse the jealousy of Kaikeyī in behalf of Bharata . . . . .	91
Kaikeyī professes delight at the news of Rāma's installation . . . . .	91
Manthara declares that Bharata will become a slave to Rāma . . . . .	92
Kaikeyī dilates on the virtues of Rāma and his superior claim to the Raj . . . . .	92
Mantharā insinuates that Bharata and Śatrughna have been sent away that Rāma might be installed . . . . .	92
Again insinuates that Kausalyā is the favourite wife, and points out the coming elevation of Rāma and degradation of Bharata . . . . .	93
Counsels Kaikeyī to persuade the Mahārāja to install Bharata and exile Rāma . . . . .	93
Kaikeyī aroused . . . . .	93
Mantharā reminds her of the two boons promised her by the Mahārāja . . . . .	93
Desires her to request the installation of Bharata and exile of Rāma . . . . .	94
Kaikeyī runs away to the chamber of displeasure . . . . .	94
The Mahārāja visits the apartments of Kaikeyī . . . . .	95
Description of the apartments . . . . .	95
Surprise of the Maharaja at the absence of Kaikeyī . . . . .	95
The Mahārāja proceeds in great distress to the chamber of displeasure . . . . .	95
His affectionate speeches to Kaikeyī . . . . .	95
Kaikeyī desires a favour . . . . .	96
The Mahārāja swears to perform her request . . . . .	96
Kaikeyī calls upon the gods to witness his promise . . . . .	96
Reminds the Mahārāja of his previous promise to grant two	

favours and requests the installation of Bharata and exile of Rama	96
The Maharaja falls into a swoon	97
Kaikeyi's anxiety	97
Distraction of the Maharaja	97
He reproaches Kaikeyi for her cruelty	97
Implores Kaikeyi to withdraw her request	97
Remorseless obstinacy of Kaikeyi	98
She insists upon the fulfilment of the Maharyas promise	98
Wrath of the Maharaja	98
Reproaches himself for his uxoriousness and insists upon Kaikeyi recalling her request	98
Kaikeyi insists upon the Maharaja keeping his word	99
Lamentations and remonstrances of the Maharaja	99
Wicked persistence of Kaikeyi	100
Review of the foregoing narrative of the intrigues of Kaikeyi	101
Exaggerations in the dialogue respecting Rama	101
Real feelings of Kaikeyi	101
Real feelings of the Maharaja	101
Mythical character of the story of the two boons	101
Malice of the old nurse	102
Cunning and obduracy of Kaikeyi	102
Artful mode of wheedling the Maharyas out of a promise	102
Obstinacy in insisting upon the fulfilment of the promise	102
Curious Brahmanical interpolation that Rama was required to become a religious devotee	103
Modern belief in the idea	103

## CHAPTER VIII

## EXILE OF RAMA

Series of six touching events connected with the exile of Rama	105
1st Rama's visit to the palace on the morning of the installation	051
Sunrise in the city completion of all the preparations for the installation of Rama	105
Sumantra sent by Vasishtha to hasten the Maharyas	106
Sumantra enters the inner apartments and approaches the door of the Maharyas's chamber	106
Peruses the Maharyas	107
Kaikeyi desires him to bring Rama	107
The Maharaja commands him likewise	107
Sumantra proceeds to the house of Rama	107
Beautiful house	107
Outer apartment guarded by young men	107
Inner apartments guarded by old men	107
Sumantra enters the presence of Rama and declares his mission	107

	PAGE
Rāma prepares to go to the Mahārāja	108
Prayer of Sītā	108
Rama ascends his chariot	108
Acclamations of the multitude	108
Rama's progress to the palace of the Maharaja	108
Passes through the five courts and enters	109
Review of the foregoing narrative of Rāma's visit to the palace	109
Obscure references to the installation ceremonies	109
Palace arrangements	110
Young men employed to guard the outer apartments and old men to guard the zenana	110
Hyperbolic address of Sumāntra to the Mahārāja	110
Picture of Rāma fanned by Sītā	110
Hindū character of the procession	110
2nd, Rāma's interview with the Maharaja and Kaikeyī	110
Scenes within the palace	111
Humiliation and sorrow of the Mahārāja on seeing Rāma	111
Kaikeyī informs Rama of the promise made by the Maharaja, and of her own two requests in return	111
Rama's prompt and cheerful acquiescence	111
Kaikeyī insists on his immediate departure	112
Rāma obeys	112
Rāma's perfect control of his passions	112
Review of the foregoing narrative	112
Self control of Rāma	112
Stress laid upon the virtue by modern Hindūs	112
3rd, Rāma's interview with his mother	113
Proceeds to the apartment of his mother	113
Kausalyā's worship of Vishnu in behalf of her son	113
Rama finds her engaged in sacrificing	113
Her joy at seeing Rama	113
Rama informs his mother of his coming exile	114
Terrible grief of Kausalyā	114
Her bitter lamentations	114
Urges Rama to seize the Rāj, and slay the Mahārāja	115
Lakshmana seconds the counsel of Kausalyā	115
Kausalyā again implores Rama	115
Rāma refuses to transgress his father's commands	115
Refuses to permit Kausalyā to accompany him	116
Refuses to blame his enemies	116
Review of the foregoing narrative	116
Perfect picture of a Hindū mother propitiating the gods in behalf of her son	116
Desperate character of Kausalyā's propositions to Rāma	116
Noble spirit of Rāma in refusing to censure the measures of his parents	117
4th, Rāma's interview with Sītā	117
Rama proceeds to take leave of Sītā	117
Sītā's loving anxiety	117

	PAGE
Râma informs his wife of his coming exile	117
Desires her to remain and devote her life to religion and the service of her mothers	118
Sîtâ replies that she must accompany him, and longs to roam with him in the forest	118
Râma recounts the perils and sufferings of jungle life	118
Hot sun	118
No servants	118
Stones and briars	118
Serpents, crocodiles, and sharks	118
Wild beasts	118
Bad food	119
Coarse garments	119
Mosquitoes and scorpions	119
Râkshasas	119
Solitude	119
Exposure	119
Râma desires Sîtâ to remain, and urges that separation will increase their affection	119
Sîtâ replies that in his society all evil will become good	119
Implores Râma to permit her to accompany him	120
Râma still unwilling	120
Wrath of Sîtâ	120
Taunts Râma	120
Checks herself and weeps bitterly	120
Râma yields to his wife's entreaties	121
Sîtâ's joy	121
Lakshmana permitted to accompany Râma	121
Râma and Sîtâ give all their jewels and goods to the Brâhmanas and the needy	121
Remarks on Sîtâ's love for Râma	121
5th, Farewell visit of Râma, Sîtâ, and Lakshmana to the Mahâraja	121
Profound sorrow of the people of Ayodhyâ at the exile of Râma	122
Râma, Sîtâ, and Lakshmana walk barefooted to the palace	122
The people reproach the Mahâraja	122
Contemplate accompanying Râma into the jungle	122
Reproach Kaikeyî	122
Scene in the palace. The Mahâraja summons all his women to be present at his parting with Râma	123
Swooning of the Mahâraja on beholding Râma, Sîtâ, and Lakshmana	123
The Mahâraja desires Râma to seize the Raj	123
Râma refuses	123
The Mahâraja implores Râma to stay one day longer	124
Râma urges that he must not delay	124
Seeks to console the Mahâraja	124
Intense grief of all present excepting Kaikeyî	124
Sumantra heaps terrible reproaches upon Kaikeyî	124

	PAGE
Threatens to accompany Rama with all the people of Kosala, and leave the Raj uninhabited	125
Implores Kaikeyi to retract her determination	125
Kaikeyi unmoved	125
The Maharaja orders the army and treasures to accompany Rama	125
Kaikeyi declares that Bharata will not accept an empty Raj	126
Urges that Rama should go into exile as Asamanja had done	126
Tradition of Asamanja	126
Rama refuses to accept the army	126
Calls for garments of bark and a spade and basket	126
Kaikeyi brings the bark clothing	126
Rama puts it on	126
Lakshmana adopts the bark clothing	127
Sita weeps over it	127
The Maharaja declares that Rama alone is bound to wear the bark garments	127
Vasishtha reproaches Kaikeyi	127
The Maharaja presents Sita with clothes and ornaments	128
Orders his chariot for the exiles	128
Rama Sita and Lakshmana take leave of Kausalya	128
Her speech to Rama	128
Rama's reply	128
Her speech to Lakshmana	128
Her speech to Sita	128
Sita's reply	129
Rama takes leave of the other women	129
6th Lamentations on the departure of Rama	129
Rama Sita and Lakshmana depart in the chariot and are driven by Sumantra	129
Excitement in the city of Ayodhya	129
The charioteer called upon to stop	130
Grief of the people	130
Affliction of the Maharaja	130
The Maharaja and Kausalya command Sumantra to halt	130
Rama desires Sumantra to drive on and to excuse himself by a falsehood	130
General mourning throughout the city and palace of Ayodhya	130
The Maharaja falls to the earth, but is attended by Kausalya and Kaikeyi	131
Refuses to be touched by Kaikeyi	131
Kausalya raises him	131
His lamentations for Rama	131
The Maharaja returns to the palace and is conveyed to the apartments of Kausalya	132
Midnight scene	132
Lamentations of Kausalya	132
Review of the foregoing narrative of Rama's departure into exile	133



	PAGE
Reason why Rama Sita and Lakshmana walked to the palace with bare feet	133
Demonstrative character of family affections amongst the Hindus	133
Sympathies of the people with the domestic life of the Rya in ancient times	133
Filial obedience of Rama a Hindu model for all time	134
Conduct of Kaikeyi intended as a warning to younger wives	134
The lesson ineffectual	134

## CHAPTER IX

## JOURNEY TO CHITRA KUTA

Route followed by the exiles divided into three stages	135
1st Srngavera the modern Sungroor on the left bank of the Ganges	135
2nd Prayag, the modern Alláhábád, at the junction of the Ganges and Jumna	135
3rd Chitrakuta to the south of the Jumna	135
1st Route from Ayodhya to Srngavera People of Ayodhya follow Rama to the Tamasa river	136
The halt	136
Encampment during the first night	136
Sunrise Rama, Sita and Lakshmana depart without awaking the people	136
Sumantra drives towards Ayodhya to delude the people and then returns by a detour to the Tamasa	137
The people return to Ayodhya	137
Mournful appearance of the city	137
Lamentations of the women	137
Passage over the river Tamasa into the beautiful country of Kosala	138
Poetical description of the river Ganges	138
Progress to Srngavera the modern Sungroor	138
Border town between the Raj of Kosala and the Bhil country	139
Guha Raja of the Bhils entertains Rama with great hospitality	139
Rama's moderate request	139
Rama's fasting and devotions	140
Night at Srngavera	140
2nd Route from Srngavera to Prayag	140
Sunrise preparations for crossing the Ganges	140
Rama dismisses Sumantra the charioteer	140
His final address to Sumantra	140
Lakshmana's angry message to Kaikeyi prevented by Rama	141
Sumantra's request to remain with the exiles refused by Rama	141
Rama and Lakshmana mat up their hair after the fashion of devotees	142
Rama takes leave of Raja Guha and embarks with his wife and brother on the Ganges	142

	PAGE
Sitá's prayer and vow to the godless Gangá . . . . .	142
The trio land on the south bank of the Gangá . . . . .	143
Order of march through the forest—Lakshmana in front and Rima in the rear, with Sitá between them . . . . .	143
Halt beneath a fig tree and partake of venison . . . . .	144
Beds of grass and leaves prepared by Lakshmana . . . . .	144
Lamentations of Rima . . . . .	144
Lakshmana administers consolation . . . . .	144
Sunrise in the jungle—progress from the fig tree to Prayāga, the modern Allahābād, at the junction of the Gangā and Jumná . . . . .	145
Arrival at the hermitage of Bharadwāja . . . . .	145
Hospitality of the sage . . . . .	145
Bharadwāja counsels Rima to dwell at Prayāga . . . . .	146
Rima desires a more lonely locality . . . . .	146
The sage recommends the hall of Chitrakuta in Bundelkhand on the opposite bank of the Jumná . . . . .	146
3rd Route—from Prayāga to Chitrakuta . . . . .	146
Departure from Prayāga . . . . .	146
Directions given by the sage for crossing the Jumná . . . . .	146
Preparation of a raft and passage over the river . . . . .	147
Sitá's prayer and vow to the godless Jumná . . . . .	147
Sitá's prayer to the sacred fig tree . . . . .	147
Progress along the banks of the Jumná . . . . .	147
Arrival at Chitrakuta . . . . .	147
Hermitage of Valmiki . . . . .	148
Hut of branches and trees constructed by Lakshmana . . . . .	148
Propitiatory sacrifice to the god of the dwelling . . . . .	148
Sacrificial rites performed by Rima . . . . .	149
Residence of Rima, Sitá, and Lakshmana in the hut at Chitrakuta . . . . .	149
Review of the foregoing narrative of Rima's journey to Chitrakuta . . . . .	149
The exiles part with Samantri at the frontier town of Srīngaveri . . . . .	149
Cross the Ganges to Prayāga, and the Jumná for Chitrakuta . . . . .	149
Worship of the Ganges and Jumná, and the sacred fig tree, by Sitá . . . . .	149
Bráhmaṇ settlements, or hermitages, scattered amongst the aboriginal population . . . . .	150
Bráhmaṇ settlements at the Junction of the Sarayú and Ganges, at Duxar, at the junction of the Ganges and Jumná, and at Chitrakuta . . . . .	150
Question of whether the hermitages really existed in the time of Rima postponed . . . . .	150

## CHAPTER X

## DEATH OF MAHÁRAJA DASARATHA.

Division of the story of the death of Mahárya Dasaratha into four distinct scenes . . . . .	151
---	-----

	PAGE
The narrative as it appears in the Ramayana	151
1st, Scene in the palace after the return of Sumantra to Ayodhya	151
Distress of the people, the ladies of the palace and the Maharaja	152
Sumantra delivers Rama's message	152
Prostration of the Maharaja	152
Kausalya reproaches the Maharaja	152
The Maharaja implores the forgiveness of Kausalya	153
Kausalya acknowledges her transgression in having reproached her lord	154
2nd, Last words of the Maharaja to Kausalya at midnight	154
Death of the Maharaja	155
3rd, Morning scene without and within the palace	155
Bards and eulogists praising the Maharaja	155
Brahmans chaunting the Vedas	155
Servants, male and female, performing their morning duties	155
Appearance of the Maharaja anxiously expected	155
Palace ladies discern that the Maharaja is dead	156
Kausalya and Sumitra awake from their swoon	156
Lamentations of all the women	156
The Ministers hasten to the chamber of the dead Maharaja	156
Funeral ceremonies delayed	156
Royal corpse preserved in a bath of oil	156
4th Council of Brahmins and Chieftains convened by the Ministers	156
Address of the assembly to the priest Vasishtha	156
Necessity for the immediate appointment of a Maharaja	157
Poetical description of a country without a Maharaja	157
Vasishtha implored to appoint a successor to the Raj	157
Vasishtha despatches messengers to bring Bharata from the city of his grandfather	158
Directions to the messengers	158
Departure of the messengers	158
Preview of the foregoing tradition of the death of Maharaja Dasaratha	158
Exaggeration of the dialogue between the Maharaja and Kausalya	158
Resignation of Kausalya	158
Picture of the dying sovereign	159
Picturesque scene at the palace on the morning following the death of the Maharaja	159
Assembling of the Ministers	160
Day of darkness	160
Constitutional form involved in the convening of the Council	160
Stress laid upon the importance of immediately appointing a successor	160
Claims of Rama ignored	161

## CHAPTER XI

## BHARATA REFUSES THE RAJ

	PAGE
Five leading events in the narrative of Bharata's refusal of the Raj	162
The narrative	162
1st Ominous dream of Bharata	162
2nd Bharata's return	163
The Messengers arrive from Ayodhya with the message from Vasishtha	163
Presents sent to Bharata's grandfather and uncle	163
Bharata takes leave of his grandfather	163
Presents given to Bharata by his grandfather	164
Seven days journey of Bharata and Satrugna to the city of Ayodhya	164
Bharata's surprise at the desolate state of the city	164
Bharata suspects that his father is dead	164
Picture of the popular sorrow	164
3rd Scene between Bharata and his mother	165
Kaileyi's affectionate address to Bharata	165
Bharata's reply	165
Kaileyi explains with gladness that the Mahiraja is dead	165
Bharata's grief at the news	165
Kaileyi informs Bharata of the exile of Rama	166
Bharata demands the reason	166
Kaileyi explains her intrigues, and entreats him to perform the funeral rites and take the Raj	166
Bharata bitterly reproaches his mother	167
Proclaims the virtues of Rama and declares his superior right to the Raj	167
His deep affliction	167
4th Scene between Satrugna and the nurse Manthara	167
Sudden appearance of the wicked nurse	167
Satrugna falls upon Manthara and drags her into the presence of Kaileyi and threatens to slay her	168
Bharata explains to him the guilt of killing a woman	168
Satrugna releases Manthara	168
5th Scene between Bharata and Satrugna, and Kausalya, the mother of Rama	168
Kausalya reproaches Bharata	168
Bharata declares his loyal attachment to Rama	169
Bharata comforts Kausalya	170
Exaggerated references to Bharata's affection for Rama	170
Hindu ideas as regards dreams and presentiments	170
Exaggerated representation of Bharata's wrath against his mother	170
Barbarous character of Satrugna's treatment of Manthara	170

## CHAPTER XII.

## FUNERAL RITES FOR THE MAHÁRAJA

	PAGE
Necessity for the immediate performance by Bharata of the funeral rites for Mahárája Dasaratha . . . . .	171
Ancient date of the funeral ceremonies . . . . .	171
Vasishtha requests Bharata to perform the funeral rites for the Mahárája . . . . .	171
Bharata's reply . . . . .	171
Procession to the chamber of the royal corpse . . . . .	171
Preparations throughout the night . . . . .	172
Bharata hailed at sunrise as the Mahárája, but declines the dignity . . . . .	172
Grand assembly in the Council hall . . . . .	172
Acclamations in favour of Bharata . . . . .	172
Vasishtha declares that all is ready for the funeral ceremonies	172
Adornment of the royal corpse . . . . .	173
The body placed on the litter . . . . .	173
Procession from the palace to the place of burning . . . . .	173
The eulogists, bards, and musicians . . . . .	173
The royal widows . . . . .	173
The royal servants bearing the litter . . . . .	173
Bharata and Satrugna . . . . .	173
The ensigns of royalty . . . . .	173
The chariots of funeral gifts of gold and jewels . . . . .	173
The people of the city . . . . .	174
The place of burning . . . . .	174
The funeral pile . . . . .	174
The body on the pile . . . . .	174
The sacrifices of the Bráhmans . . . . .	174
Sacrificial articles cast on the pile . . . . .	174
Sacrifice of an animal . . . . .	174
Body covered with rice . . . . .	174
Sacrifice of the cow and calf . . . . .	174
Bharata fires the pile . . . . .	174
Lamentations of the widows and citizens . . . . .	174
Prostration of Bharata . . . . .	174
Vasishtha consoles Bharata . . . . .	175
Rite of sprinkling water for the soul of the Mahárája . . . . .	175
Return to the city of Ayodhya . . . . .	175
Ten days of mourning on a mat of kusá grass . . . . .	175
Sráddha performed on the twelfth day . . . . .	175
Purification of the thirteenth day . . . . .	176
Bones thrown into the river . . . . .	176
Funeral rites completed . . . . .	176
Review of the foregoing narrative of the burning of the royal corpse . . . . .	176

	PAGE
Picture of the funeral procession . . . . .	176
Sacrifice of a cow and her calf an ancient rite . . . . .	176
Remaining ceremonies still performed by the Hindús . . . . .	176

## CHAPTER XIII.

## BHARATA'S VISIT TO RÁMA

Thirteen days of mourning between the burning of the royal corpse and the Council at which Bharata declines the Raj in favour of Ráma . . . . .	178
Route followed by Bharata in his journey from Ayodhyá to Chitra kúta . . . . .	178
Eight events in the narrative of Bharata's visit to Ráma . . . . .	179
The narrative . . . . .	179
1st, Council held, and Bharata requested to become Raja . . . . .	179
Bharata's refusal to set aside the superior claim of Ráma . . . . .	180
Announces his intention of proceeding to the jungle and in stalling Ráma in the Raj . . . . .	180
Acclamations of the people . . . . .	180
2nd, Construction of a great road through the jungle . . . . .	180
Labourers employed . . . . .	180
Clearing of a way through the jungle . . . . .	180
Levelling . . . . .	181
Bridges . . . . .	181
Canals and wells . . . . .	181
Booths and palaces . . . . .	181
Decoration of the road with flowers, birds, and banners . . . . .	181
3rd, March from Ayodhyá to Sríngavera . . . . .	181
Assembling of the army . . . . .	181
Preparations for the march . . . . .	181
Bharata refuses to be treated as the Raja . . . . .	181
Departure of Bharata, accompanied by the Counsellors, priests, and army . . . . .	181
Kaikéyí, Sumitrá, and Kaushalyá . . . . .	182
People of all ranks and conditions . . . . .	182
Halt at Sríngavera . . . . .	182
4th, Proceedings of Rajá Guha . . . . .	182
His alarm lest Bharata should contemplate the death of Ráma . . . . .	183
Preparations of Guha for opposing Bharata's passage over the Ganges . . . . .	183
Raja Guha crosses to the northern bank with presents for Bharata . . . . .	183
Interview between Guha and Bharata . . . . .	183
Bharata desires to know the way to the hermitage of Bharad-wája . . . . .	183
Guha offers to accompany Bharata . . . . .	184
Rejoices at hearing that Bharata is going to conduct Ráma to Ayodhyá . . . . .	184

	PAGE
Night passed in conversation respecting Rāma . . . . .	184
5th, Passage of the river Ganges . . . . .	184
Embarkation of Bharata and Satrugṇa, and the three chief widows of the Mahārāja . . . . .	184
Vasishtha and the Brāhmins . . . . .	185
The female attendants . . . . .	185
Stirring scene upon the river . . . . .	185
Swimming of the elephants . . . . .	185
Crossing of the people on rafts and jars . . . . .	185
6th, March along the southern bank of the Ganges towards Prayāga . . . . .	185
Vasishtha and Bharata proceed in advance to the hermitage of Bharadvāja . . . . .	185
Their hospitable reception . . . . .	185
Courteous exchange of inquiries . . . . .	186
* Fears of Bharadvāja respecting Rāma allayed by Bharata . . . . .	186
7th, Great entertainment given by Bharadvāja to the army and people of Bharata . . . . .	186
Invokes Viswakarma, the architect of the gods . . . . .	186
Invokes the gods, with Indra at their head . . . . .	186
Invokes the rivers, the Gandharvas, and the Apsaras . . . . .	186
The celestials obey the commands of Bharadvāja . . . . .	187
Wondrous works of Viswakarma and the gods . . . . .	187
The enamelled plain . . . . .	187
The forest of Indra . . . . .	187
The rivers flowing with liquors . . . . .	187
The white houses . . . . .	187
Beautiful palace prepared for Bharata . . . . .	187
Preparations for the feast . . . . .	187
Respect paid to the royal throne in honour of Rāma . . . . .	187
Vasishtha and the Brāhmins eat first . . . . .	188
Feasting of Bharata and the Counsellors . . . . .	188
Wonderful rivers . . . . .	188
Beautiful women sent by Brahma, Kuvera, and Indra . . . . .	188
Performances of the Gandharvas and Apsaras . . . . .	188
Performances of the trees . . . . .	188
Feasting of the army and people . . . . .	188
Beautiful damsels . . . . .	188
Intoxication of the soldiery . . . . .	188
Servants, followers, and animals of all kinds, completely satis- fied . . . . .	189
General cleanliness . . . . .	189
Couches . . . . .	189
Wells of Pāyasa . . . . .	189
Exhaustless cows . . . . .	189
Trees dropping honey . . . . .	189
Ponds of wine . . . . .	189
Flesh meat . . . . .	189
Plates, vessels, and pots in abundance . . . . .	189
Lakes of butter-milk, milk, curds, and butter . . . . .	189

	PAGE
Tooth picks and sandal wood	189
Mirrors, clean garments, shoes, and combs	189
Betel	189
Lakes for bathing	189
Sudden return of all things to their previous state	190
Bharata acknowledges the hospitality of Bharatwaja	190
Bharadwaja points out to Bharata the road to Chitra kuta	190
8th, Passage of the Jumna and journey to Chitra kuta	190
Order of march	190
The Captains in chariots	190
The elephants	190
The infantry	191
The ladies	191
Bharata's litter	191
Alarm of the beasts and birds at the advance of the army	191
Description of Chitra kuta	191
Halting of the army and discovery of Pama's dwelling	192
Bharata proceeds, accompanied only by Satrugna, Sumantra and Guha	192
Review of the foregoing narrative of Bharata's visit to Rama	192
The great highway	192
Probably a reconstruction of the old road	192
Poetic embellishments	192
Ancient custom of preparing a new road for the advance of distinguished personages	193
Curious picture of ancient life presented by the proceedings of Raja Guha	193
Picturesque description of the crossing of the Ganges	193
Extraordinary character of the entertainment miraculously furnished by Bharadwaja	194
Adaptation of the story to Hindu tastes	194
Marvellous transformations and creations	194
Distinction between the dreamy luxury of Bharata and his Counsellors and the uproarious conviviality of the soldiers and common people	194
Strange anomaly that the description of the feast should be declined a portion of inspired writ	195
The Kshatriya tradition partly overlaid by Brahmanical details	195
Opposition between rice and milk food and flesh meat	196
The feast referred to the Tretā yuga	196
Miraculous powers of entertainment ascribed to Brahman sages	196

## CHAPTER XIV

## RAMA REFUSES THE RAJ

Interesting character of the interviews between Bharata and Rama	197
Stress laid upon the self-sacrifice of Rama in order to fulfil his father's command	197



Three interviews between Bharata and Rāma	198
Seven leading incidents in the narrative	198
The narrative	199
1st, Description of the hill Chitra-kūta and the river Mandā- kinī, and of the sports of Rāma and Sītā amongst the flowers	199
Rāma descants on the beauties of Chitra-kūta	199
Rāma descants on the beauties of the river Mandākinī	200
The fords	200
The holy sages worshipping the sun	200
The trees	200
The flowers	200
The red geese	200
Rāma invites Sītā to bathe	200
Declares that he has no wish for the Raj of Kosala	201
Rāma and Sītā rest in a beautiful cave	201
Rāma requests Sītā to cling to him as the climbing plant clings to a tree	201
Rāma paints a red tīkā on Sītā's forehead	201
Sītā alarmed by monkeys	202
The tīkā on her forehead is stamped on Rāma's chest	202
Wanderings in the asoka grove	202
Rāma and Sītā adorn each other with flowers	202
Rāma and Sītā return to the hermitage	202
Met by Lakshmana, who has slain ten antelopes	202
Sacrifice and supper of venison	202
2nd, Approach of Bhārata's army, and description of Rāma's hermitage	203
Terror of the beasts of the jungle	203
Lakshmana mounts a tree and sees the army	203
Advises the slaughter of Bharata	203
Reproved by Rāma	203
Conjectures that the Mahārāja is approaching	203
Bharata approaches the hermitage	204
Description of the hermitage	204
The golden bow	204
The quiver	204
The two scimitars	204
The two shields	204
The altar	204
Rāma attired as a devotee, seated near the altar on kusa grass	204
3rd, First interview between Rāma and Bharata	204
Lamentations of Bharata on beholding Rāma	204
Rāma recognizes Bharata and embraces him	205
Delivers a speech on the duties of Rajas	205
Selection of Counsellors	205
Avoidance of sleep	205
Decisions	205
Procrastination	205
Secrecy	205
Value of learned men	205

	PAGE
Tooth-picks and sandal wood	189
Mirrors, clean garments, shoes, and combs	189
Betel	189
Lakes for bathing	189
Sudden return of all things to their previous state	190
Bharata acknowledges the hospitality of Bharadwāja	190
Bharadwaja points out to Bharata the road to Chitra kúta	190
8th, Passage of the Jumná and journey to Chitra kúta	190
Order of march	190
The Captains in chariots	190
The elephants	190
The infantry	191
The ladies	191
Bharata's litter	191
Alarm of the beasts and birds at the advance of the army	191
Description of Chitra-kúta	191
Halting of the army and discovery of Ráma's dwelling	192
Bharata proceeds, accompanied only by Satrugna, Sumantra, and Guha	192
Review of the foregoing narrative of Bharata's visit to Ráma	192
The great highway	192
Probably a reconstruction of the old road	192
Poetic embellishments	192
Ancient custom of preparing a new road for the advance of distinguished personages	193
Curious picture of ancient life presented by the proceedings of Raja Guha	193
Picturesque description of the crossing of the Ganges	193
Extraordinary character of the entertainment miraculously furnished by Bharadwāja	194
Adaptation of the story to Hindú tastes	194
Marvellous transformations and creations	194
Distinction between the dreamy luxury of Bharata and his Counsellors, and the uproarious conviviality of the soldiers and common people	194
Strange anomaly that the description of the feast should be deemed a portion of inspired writ	195
The Kshatriya tradition partly overlaid by Bráhmanical details	195
Opposition between rice and milk food and flesh meat	196
The feast referred to the Tretá yuga	196
Miraculous powers of entertainment ascribed to Bráhman sages	196

## CHAPTER XIV.

## RÁMA REFUSES THE RAJ.

Interesting character of the interviews between Bharata and Ráma	197
Stress laid upon the self-sacrifice of Ráma in order to fulfil his father's commands	197

	PAGE
Three interviews between Bharata and Rāma . . . . .	198
Seven leading incidents in the narrative . . . . .	198
The narrative . . . . .	199
1st, Description of the hill Chitra-kūta and the river Mandā- kinī, and of the sports of Rāma and Sītā amongst the flowers . . . . .	199
Rāma descants on the beauties of Chitra-kūta . . . . .	199
Rāma descants on the beauties of the river Mandākinī . . . . .	200
The fords . . . . .	200
The holy sages worshipping the sun . . . . .	200
The trees . . . . .	200
The flowers . . . . .	200
The red geese . . . . .	200
Rāma invites Sītā to bathe . . . . .	200
Declares that he has no wish for the Raj of Kosala . . . . .	201
Rāma and Sītā rest in a beautiful cave . . . . .	201
Rāma requests Sītā to cling to him as the climbing plant clings to a tree . . . . .	201
Rāma paints a red tīkā on Sītā's forehead . . . . .	201
Sītā alarmed by monkeys . . . . .	202
The tīkā on her forehead is stamped on Rāma's chest . . . . .	202
Wanderings in the asoka grove . . . . .	202
Rāma and Sītā adorn each other with flowers . . . . .	202
Rāma and Sītā return to the hermitage . . . . .	202
Met by Lakshmanā, who has slain ten antelopes . . . . .	202
Sacrifice and supper of venison . . . . .	202
2nd, Approach of Bhārata's army, and description of Rāma's hermitage . . . . .	203
Terror of the beasts of the jungle . . . . .	203
Lakshmana mounts a tree and sees the army . . . . .	203
Advises the slaughter of Bharata . . . . .	203
Reproved by Rāma . . . . .	203
Conjectures that the Mahārāja is approaching . . . . .	203
Bharata approaches the hermitage . . . . .	204
Description of the hermitage . . . . .	204
The golden bow . . . . .	204
The quiver . . . . .	204
The two scimitars . . . . .	204
The two shields . . . . .	204
The altar . . . . .	204
Rāmā attired as a devotee, seated near the altar on kusa grass . . . . .	204
3rd, First interview between Rāma and Bharata . . . . .	204
Lamentations of Bharata on beholding Rāma . . . . .	204
Rāma recognizes Bharata and embraces him . . . . .	205
Delivers a speech on the duties of Rajas . . . . .	205
Selection of Counsellors . . . . .	20
Avoidance of sleep . . . . .	20
Decisions . . . . .	21
Procrastination . . . . .	21
Secresy . . . . .	21
Value of learned men . . . . .	20

	PAGE
Incorruptible Counsellors	206
Respect of the people	206
Selection of a Minister	206
Selection of a General	206
Public rewards	206
Regular pay to the army	206
Selection of an Ambassador	206
Self-indulgent Brahmins	206
Ignorant and presuming Brahmins	207
Protection of the city	207
Protection of the country districts	207
Female counsel	207
Stock of elephants cows and horses	207
Forts	207
Finances	207
Corrupt administration of justice	208
Piety	208
Pama demands the reason of Bharata's coming	208
Bharata informs him of the death of Dasaratha	208
Rama's affliction at the news	208
His lamentations	208
4th Pama's offering of oblations of water and funeral cakes to the soul of his deceased father	209
The funeral cake made of the pulp of the fig tree	209
Approach of the army to behold Rama	209
Pama's condescension	210
Grief of Kausalya at seeing the coarse cake which Rama had offered to his father	210
Grief of the other Ramas	210
Kindness of the Panis towards Pama Lakshmana and Sita	210
Rama embraces the feet of Vasishtha	210
5th Second interview between Bharata and Pama on the bank of the Mau lakúfi	210
Bharata offers the Pay to Rama	211
Pama refuses to depart from the arrangement ordered by his father	211
Atheistical speech of Javali the logician —	
‘ Whilst your father was alive you obeyed his commands but now that he is dead they are no longer binding The relation ship of parents to their children is only temporary like that of the inn to the passing traveller Take your pleasure in this mortal life of which we know something and trouble not respecting the life hereafter of which we know nothing I grieve for those who sacrifice the substantial happiness of this life for a visionary happiness hereafter Men it is true offer cakes to their dead ancestors but how can those ancestors eat them? If the soul is immortal it must have passed into a new form which cannot eat the cake If indeed, the eating of the cake by the cows satisfies the hunger of a dead father it might also satisfy the hunger of a	

distant friend Our existence in this mortal life is our chief good but we have no proof of the future, and it is therefore nothing to us Of those who are already dead we know nothing The whole universe is in disorder, for the wicked are often happy whilst the good are often miserable Therefore accept the Raj !

211

Writhful reply of Rama —

I will not disobey my dead father whom I obeyed when living Your words are as deleterious as wine If there is no future state why are the vicious censured ? If you demand direct proof a woman is a widow in her husband's absence and astronomy teaches nothing But Indra obtained sovereignty by his sacrifices, and sages have been glorified through their austerities I will obey my father !

214

6th, Third interview between Bharata and Rama

215

Rama renews the discussion —

Javali confounds right and wrong and if I did the same I should be censured by all whilst the people of the Raj would follow my example Truthfulness and benevolence are the eternal duties of a Raja I regret that my father should have promoted a Buddhist and an atheist No virtuous Raja will stand in the presence of an atheist

215

Javali convinced by Rama's reasoning recants his atheistical opinions

215

Vasishtha endeavours to persuade Rama to accept the Raj

216

Rama adheres upon the claims of parents to the obedience of their sons and refuses to disobey the Mahatras

216

Bharata threatens to sit in dharna upon Rama

216

Rama reproves Bharata

217

Bharata appeals to the people to compel Rama to accept the Raj

217

The people hesitate

217

Bharata offers to go into exile in the room of Rama

217

Rama refuses to alter his determination but promises to govern the Raj after his exile

217

The sages confirm the resolution of Rama

218

Bharata presents Rama with a pair of shoes and requests him to wear them

218

Declares he will rule the Raj through the shoes

218

7th Return of Bharata to Ayodhya

218

Rama dismisses Bharata and Satrughna

218

Return of Bharata to Ayodhya

218

Gloomy appearance of the city described in a succession of Hindu similes

219

Bharata resides at Nandigram in the guise of a devotee and rules the Raj under the authority of Rama's shoes

219

Preview of the foregoing narrative of Rama's refusal of the Raj

220

Hindu idea of wedded happiness involved in the amusements of Rama and Sita upon the hill Chitrakuta

220

Contrast of European and Hindu ideas

220

Puerile character of the dialogue

221

	PAGE
Pretty touches of nature	221
Mixture of military pursuits and religious worship involved in the description of Páma's hut	221
Character of a devotee superadded to that of an archer	222
Generous contest involved in the interviews between Bharata and Rama	222
Strained and artificial character of the dialogues	222
Páma's speech on the duties of Raja an interpolation	223
Simple character of the sprinkling of water and offering of a cake to the soul of the deceased Mahariya	223
Character of Javáhi as a Brahman of the Niyaya or logical school of Getama	224
A representative of Buddhism and atheism	224
Drift of Javáhi's reasoning	224
No proof that death is anything but annihilation	224
If the soul exists hereafter it must be in another form which destroys the relationship between parents and sons	224
Review of the reasoning of Javáhi against the performance of a sráddha	225
Absurdity of supposing that the eating of cakes by cows is tantamount to the eating of the cakes by the soul of the deceased relative	225
Expressions put into the mouth of Javáhi to render his refutation more conclusive	225
Peculiar argument against sacrifice	225
Inutility of virtue	225
Strained application of Javáhi's views to Ráma's acceptance of the Raj	226
Phenomena that the wicked are often happy and the good often miserable an argument in favour of a future state	226
Dogmatic character of Rama's reply to Javáhi	226
Confusion of happiness with pleasure	227
Rejection of inferential proof, the source of Javáhi's error	227
Rama's proofs of the immortality of the soul to be treated as unduly assumed premises	227
Polemical character of Rama as a champion of the Brahmans against the Buddhists superadded to his heroic character as protector of the Brahmans against the Páikshasas	227
Exaggeration in the account of Bharata's proceedings on Ráma's refusing the Raj	228
Threat to sit in dharmá	228
Curious adoption of Páma's shoes as symbolical of sovereignty	228

## CHAPTER XV

## RÁMA'S EXILE.

Authenticity of the narrative of Páma's wanderings	229
Locality of the wanderings country between the Ganges and	

	PAGE
the Godaverí from Chitra kuta in Bundelkund, to Nasik near the western coast	229
Each Brahmanical settlement headed by a famous sage	229
Existence of all the sages as contemporaries of Ráma, refuted	230
Long interval of time between the Rig Veda and the Rámáyana	230
Sages said to have been contemporary with both compositions	230
Appearance of Atri as the first progenitor of the Lunar race	230
Attempted reconciliation of the chronological difficulties by the Pundits	231
Sages probably introduced as types of the Bráhmans of the Dekhan	231
Inquiry into the real character of the Rakshasas of the Rámáyana	231
Not to be confounded with the aborigines, or to be regarded as mere creations of the imagination	232
The Rakshasa empire seated in Ceylon, but having military outposts to the north of the Dekhan	232
Religious and sectarian character of the opposition between the Bráhmans and Rákshasas	232
Ravana a worshipper of Brahma	232
Identification of the Rákshasas with the Buddhists	232
Opposition between the Rakshasas or Buddhists, and the Asuras or aborigines	232
Three distinct characters of Rama in the Rámáyana	
1st Rama as a mortal hero	233
2nd Rama as an incarnation of Vishnu	233
3rd, Rama as a champion of the Linga worshipping Bráhmans against the Buddhists	233
Contradiction involved between the incarnation of Vishnu and the worshipper of the Linga	234
Three elements in the Ramayana corresponding to the three characters of Ráma	
1st Ancient tradition of Ráma's exile	234
2nd Myth of Rama's incarnation as Vishnu	234
3rd, Tradition of the invasion of the Dekhan by the worshippers of the Linga	234
Ten principal incidents in the narrative of Rama's exile	235
The narrative	235
1st, Departure of Rama Sitá and Lakshmana from the neighbourhood of Valmiki's hermitage at Chitra kuta	236
The sages at Chitra kuta complain to Rama of the persecutions of the Rakshasas	236
Declare their intention of removing to another locality	236
Solitude of the hermitage after the departure of the sages	236
2nd Rama journeys southward to the hermitage of Atri	237
Atri introduces his aged and devout wife Anasuyá	237
Miracles wrought by Anasuyá through the force of her austerities	237
Interview between Anasuya and Sitá	237

	PAGE
Anasuya praises Sitá for her devotion to her husband, and dilates on the duty of wives	237
Sita replies praising Rama	237
Ráma's virtuous conduct towards the Mahiraja's women	238
Anasuyá gives Sitá an ointment which will render her ever young and beautiful together with jewels and ornaments	238
Anasuya describes the approach of night in poetic language, and requests Sita to adorn herself with the divine ornaments	239
Ráma's delight at his wife's beauty	239
3rd Rama engages to defend Ati and the other sages from the depredations of the Rakshasas in the forest of Dandaka	239
Ramí Sita and Lakshmana enter the forest of Dandaka	239
Picture of a cluster of Brahmanical hermitages	240
The courts	240
The groves	240
Flowers and pools	240
The sages	240
The sages joyfully entertain Rama and declare that he is their Raja	240
Description of the forest of Dandaka	240
Horrible appearance of Viradha the cannibal Rakshasa	241
Viradha seizes Sitá	241
Taunts the two brothers with having only one wife	241
Viradha rendered invulnerable by Brahma in return for his religious austerities	242
Alarm of Sita	242
Lamentations of Rama at seeing his wife in the grasp of Viradha	242
Wrath of Lakshmana	242
Lakshmana threatens Viradha	242
Description of the battle between Rama and Lakshmana and the Rakshasa Viradha	242
The two brothers unable to slay Viradha because of the blessing he had received from Brahma	243
Funeral of Viradha alive	243
Viradha assumes a beautiful form and rises out of the grave and ascends to heaven	243
Legend of his being originally a Gandharva, but cursed by Kuvera on account of his love for Rambha to be a Rakshasa until delivered by Rama	244
4th Visit of Rama, Sitá, and Lakshmana to the hermitage of Sarabhangá	245
Visit of Indra to the sage Sarabhangá	245
Description of Indra	245
Rama admires the chariot horses and attendants of Indra	245
Indra departs and the trio enter the hermitage	245
The sage explains that Indra had come to take him to heaven but that he wanted to behold Rama	246
Directs Rama to proceed to the hermitage of Sutilshna	246
Sarabhangá burns himself alive, and ascends to the heaven of Brahma in a youthful form	246



	PAGE
5th Pāma engages to defend the ascetics against the Rakshasas	247
Extraordinary description of the different ascetics who mortified the flesh	247
The sages pray Rama to preserve them from the Rakshasas	247
Jama engages to protect the devotees	248
6th, Visit of Pāma, Sita and Lakshmana to the hermitage of Satikshna	248
The trio depart to visit the other hermitages in the neighbourhood	249
7th Dialogue between Rama and Sita as to the propriety of waging war against the Rakshasas	249
Sita reproaches Rama	249
A Kshatriya bound to punish evil-doers only when he is a Raja and not when he is a devotee	249
Legend of the devotee who was tempted by Indra to become a warrior	250
Sita entreats Pāma to engage solely in religious austerities	250
Pāma's reply that he could not refuse the request of the Brahmans to become their protector	250
Pāma praises Sita for having admonished him	250
8th, Ten years' wanderings amongst the sages in the neighbourhood of Satikshna's hermitage at Ramtel	251
Mysterious lake abounding with music and song	251
Legend of the lake being the abode of the sage Mandarini and five Apsaras	251
Hermitages of the sage Dharmavira	252
The trio remain ten years in the neighbourhood, visiting the different hermitages	252
The trio return to the hermitage of Satikshna after the ten years	252
9th, Visit to the sage Agastya near to the Vindhya mountains	252
Journey through the forest towards the south	252
Halt at the hermitage of the brother of Agastya	252
Poetical description of the hermitage	253
Legend of Vitapi and Ilwala	253
Destruction of the Brahmans by Vitapi in the form of a ram	253
The ram devoured by Agastya	253
Ilwala consumed by the fire of Agastya's eye	253
Pāma, Sita and Lakshmana spend one night with the brother of Agastya	254
Reach the hermitage of Agastya	254
Miracles performed by Agastya	254
Lakshmana informs a disciple of Agastya of the arrival of Pāma and Sita	254
Joy of Agastya at the coming of Rama	254
Sacred places in the hermitage of Agastya	255
Rama's profound respect for Agastya	255
Agastya directs his disciples to offer oblations to Rāma	255
Acknowledges Rama as Raja of the universe	255

Agastya presents Rāma with the bow of Vishnu, the arrow of Brahmā, two inexhaustible quivers, and a scimitar . . . . .	256
The coat of mail given to Agastya by Indra . . . . .	256
Agastya's encouraging words . . . . .	256
Agastya prises Sita . . . . .	256
Evil nature of women in general . . . . .	256
10th, Residence of Rama, Sita, and Lakshmana at Panchavatī, the modern Nasik . . . . .	257
Agastya directs the trio to Panchavatī, near the river Godāveri . . . . .	257
Rama forms an alliance with Jatāyus, the great vulture, who was the son of Garura . . . . .	257
Arrival of Rāma, Sita, and Lakshmana at Panchavatī . . . . .	257
Rāma selects a site for a hermitage . . . . .	257
Lakshmana builds a large hut with four rooms . . . . .	257
Oblations to the god of dwellings . . . . .	258
Termination of thirteen years and a half of the exile . . . . .	258
Commencement of the cold season . . . . .	258
Poetical description of the cold season . . . . .	258
Characteristics of the cold weather in India . . . . .	258
The day time . . . . .	258
The night time . . . . .	258
The west wind . . . . .	259
The sunrise . . . . .	259
The wild elephants . . . . .	259
The water fowls . . . . .	259
The cranes . . . . .	259
The dew drops . . . . .	259
Austerities of Bharata on account of Rāma . . . . .	259
Cruelty of Kaikeyī . . . . .	259
Rāma reproves Lakshmana for reproaching Kaikeyī . . . . .	259
Ablutions in the Godāveri . . . . .	260
Departure of the great vulture Jatāyus . . . . .	260
Review of the foregoing narrative of Rāma's adventures amongst the sages . . . . .	260
Religious opposition of the Rākshasas to the Brāhmins . . . . .	260
Virādha, a worshipper of Brīhma . . . . .	260
Significance of the dialogue between Sita and Lakshmana . . . . .	260
Sameness in the descriptions of the hermitages and Rāma's dialogues with the sages . . . . .	261
Brahmanising of Kshatriya traditions . . . . .	261
Married life of Atri opposed to the Buddhist rule of celibacy . . . . .	262
Pious suicide of Sarabhaṅga compared with the burning of Calanus . . . . .	262
Idea involved in the death of Sarabhaṅga . . . . .	262
Strange fancy involved in Rāma's alliance with the vulture Jatāyus . . . . .	262
Poetical and truthful character of the description of the cold season . . . . .	263

## CHAPTER XVI

## RÁMA'S WARS RESPECTING SURPA NAKHA

	PAGE
Khara and Dushana, the two Rakshasa commanders in the neighbourhood of Panchavati	264
War with Rama on account of their sister Surpanakha	264
Hindu character of the fiction	264
Surpanakha, sister of Ravina, approaches the hermitage of Rama	264
Admires the beauty of Rama	265
Contrast between Surpanakha and Pama	265
Surpanakha determines to induce Rama to marry her and desert Sita	265
Surpanakha assumes a captivating form, and asks Pama who he is	266
Rama relates his story, and asks why she is wandering in the forest	266
Surpanakha replies that she has left her brothers out of love for him, and invites him to marry her	266
Rama jests with Surpanakha by advising her to marry Lakshmana	267
Surpanakha offers herself as a wife to Lakshmana Lakshmana refers her back to Rama	267
Surpanakha again offers herself to Rama, and rushes upon Sita to devour her	267
Lakshmana cuts off the ears and nose of Surpanakha	267
Surpanakha flies for refuge to her brother Khara	268
Wrath of Khara	268
Surpanakha relates the story of her disfigurement	268
Khara sends fourteen Rakshasas to bring Rama Sita, and Lakshmana before him	268
Lama slays the fourteen Rakshasas	269
Khara assembles his army of fourteen thousand Rakshasas and prepares to go against Rama accompanied by his brother Dushana	269
Description of the chariot of Khara	269
Khara and Dushana lead the army against the hermitage of Rama	269
Evil omens on all sides	270
Khara in his infatuation disregards the omens	270
Pama perceives that the omens portend a terrible war	271
Directs Lakshmana to conduct Sita to an inaccessible cave	271
Lama awaits the coming of the Rakshasa army	271
Useful appearance of the Rakshasas before the hermitage of Rama	272
Tranquility of Rama	272
Wrath of Lama	272
Recall of the Rakshasa army at the sight of Pama	272

	PAGE
Khara leads the Rakshasa army to the first charge against Rama	272
Rama discharges his terrible arrows	273
Second charge of the Rakshasa army against Rama	273
Rama again effects fearful destruction	273
Third charge of the Rakshasa army against Rama	274
Slaughter of the Rakshasas	274
Combat between Rama and Dushana	274
Death of Dushana	274
Combat between Rama and Khara	274
Rama threatens and abuses Khara	275
Death of Khara	275
Rejoicings of the gods	275
Sita returns to Rama	275
News of the defeat of the Rakshasas carried to Ravana	276
Ravana persuaded by the messenger to carry off Sita	276
Ravana consults his minister Maricha	276
Maricha dissuades Ravana from the attempt	276
Review of the foregoing narrative of Rama's wars on account of Surpanakha	277
Brilliant imagination displayed in the details	277
Divinity of Rama manifested in his victories over the Rakshasa army	277
Impression of the story upon a Hindu audience	277
Reality of the descriptions to the Hindu	277
Reality of Khara's wonderful chariot	278
The Rakshasa army	278
Deep personal interest taken by the audience in Rama's single combats	278
Exulting chorus of "Glory to Rama"	278

## CHAPTER LVII

### RAVANA'S ABDUCTION OF SITA

Ravana, Raja of Lanka, appears upon the scene	279
His real character	279
Scope of the narrative	279
Popular belief in the power of the Rakshasas to assume new forms at will	279
Extraordinary conception that Ravana had ten heads and twenty arms a substantive belief with the Hindus	280
Probable origin of the conception	280
The narrative of the capture of Sita by Ravana	280
Surpanakha carries the news of Khara's defeat to Lanka	280
Description of Raja Ravana	280
His mighty powers	281
His wickedness	281
His exploits	281

	PAGE
Conquered Vasuki and Kuvera	281
His religious austerities	281
Invulnerable to all excepting beasts and men	281
Surpanakha's angry address to Ravana	281
Surpanakha describes Rama to Ravana, and dilates on the beauty of Sita	282
Counsels Ravana to carry away Sita	282
Ravana again visits Maricha, and desires Maricha to assist him in carrying away Sita	282
Entreats Maricha to take the form of a golden deer	283
Alarm of Maricha	283
Maricha dilates on the power of Rama	283
Remonstrates with Ravana against carrying away Sita	283
Relates the story of his being cast by Rama into the sea	283
Prophecies utter ruin if Ravana carries away Sita	283
Ravana contemptuously replies that he requires no advice	284
Commands Maricha to take the form of a golden deer and gambol in the presence of Sita	284
Maricha unwillingly obeys	284
Invited by Ravana to ascend his chariot	284
Journey of Ravana and Maricha to the hermitage of Rama at Panchavati	285
Maricha assumes the form of a very beautiful deer	285
Sita sees the deer and requests Rama to procure its skin for her	285
Rama leaves Sita in charge of Lakshmana and prepares to chase the deer	285
Lakshmana reminds Rama that Maricha could take a deer's form	285
Rama chases the deer and slays it	286
Maricha returns to his proper form and dies crying for Sita and Lakshmana in a voice resembling that of Rama	286
Rama takes the skin and returns to the hermitage	286
Sita hears the voice of the deer, and desires Lakshmana to assist Rama	286
Lakshmana hesitates to leave Sita	287
Sita's wrathful reproaches	287
Lakshmana assures Sita that Rama is in no danger, and that the voice was that of a Yaksbha	288
Sita charges Lakshmana with desiring to marry her	288
Lakshmana reluctantly leaves Sita alone and goes in search of Rama	288
Ravana visits the hermitage of Rama in the guise of a religious mendicant	288
His address to Sita	288
Sita seeing Ravana in the guise of a Brahmin treats him with respect	289
Ravana makes himself known to Sita	289
Invites Sita to become his chief Rani	289
Describes his city and palaces	289
Wrathful reply of Sita	290
Ravana assumes his proper form	290

	PAGE
Description of Pavana	290
Ravana remonstrates with Sita	291
Ravana carries Sita through the air and places her in his chariot	291
Cries of Sita Jatayus, the Chief of Vultures hears the cries of Sita	292
Stops the chariot of Ravana and demands the release of Sita	296
Terrible conflict between Pavana and Jatayus	296
Jatayus mortally wounded	297
Pavana carries away Sitá through the air	297
Poetical contrast of the black complexion of Ravana with the golden complexion of Sita	297
Lamentations of Sita	297
Bitterly reproaches Ravana	297
Ravana approaches the mountain Pishya mukha	298
Sita drops her ornaments amongst the monkeys on the mountain	298
The monkeys preserve the ornaments	298
Pavana conducts Sita to his palace at Laná	298
Appoints female attendants and gives them special instructions	299
Sends eight Rakshasas to be spies upon Rama and Lakshmana	299
Pavana returns to Sita	299
His caressing address to Sitá	299
Points out the beauties of his palace and gardens	300
Sita's wrathful and threatening refusal of his addresses	300
Ravana orders the female attendants to conduct Sita to the Asoka garden and to use four means to induce her to yield	301
Sita shuts her ears to all entreaties	301
Her deep sorrow	301
Review of the foregoing story of the capture of Sita, its powerful effect upon the Hindus	302
Harrowing character of the outrage	302
Peculiarly affecting to Hindus	302
Fastidious idea of physical chastity	302
Play of the national sentiment in the story of Sita	302
Universal popularity of the story	303
Prominent scenes in the narrative	303
Ravana surrounded by his Counsellors	303
Appearance of Ravana's sister	304
Departure of Ravana and Maricha in an aerial chariot	304
The golden deer	304
Sitá taunting Lakshmana	304
Ravana as a Samasi	304
The outrage	304
The combat between Pavana and Jatayus	304
Flight of Ravana with Sita through the air	304
Sita's desolation	304
Strange sentiment of Sita that she would have yielded to Ravana had he conquered Rama	304
Hindu women superior to the rule	305

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## RÁMA'S SEARCH FOR SÍTÁ

	PAGE
Narrative of Ráma's search for Síta	306
Ráma's meeting with Lakshmana	306
They discover that Síta has left the hut	306
Agony of Ráma	306
The search	307
Ráma's address to the Moon	307
Ráma and Lakshmana discover the body of the dying Jatayus	307
Last words of Jatáyus	307
The soul of Jatayus ascends to heaven in a chariot of fire	307
Ráma and Lakshmana perform the funeral rites for Jatáyus	307
Ráma and Lakshmana proceed towards the south in search of Síta	309
Appearance of Kabandha	309
Ráma and Lakshmana cut off his arms	309
Legend of Kabandha	310
Kabandha burned in a pit, and assumes his original form	310
Relates to Ráma the story of Ravana	310
Counsels Ráma to ally with Sugriva, the Monkey Chieftain	310
Ráma and Lakshmana reach the hermitage of Matanga, the sage	311
Piety of Sarvarí, the female disciple of Matanga	311
Sarvarí relates her story	311
Taught the name of "Ráma" as a mantra	312
Sarvarí burns herself alive in the presence of Ráma	312
Ráma and Lakshmana proceed to the lake Pampá	312
Description of the lake	312
Ráma's continued affliction	312
Review of the foregoing narrative	313
Monstrosity involved in the conception of Kabandha	313
Buddhist character of Sarvarí, as a female devotee of low caste	313

## CHAPTER XIX.

## RÁMA'S ALLIANCE WITH THE MONKEYS

Change in the character of Ráma from the divine to the human	314
Hypothesis that Ráma the son of Dasaratha, and Ráma the Linga worshipper of the Dehbra, are different individuals	315
The alleged alliance with the Monkeys, a proof that Ráma must have suffered reverses from the Rakshasas, or Buddhists	315
Lateral interpretation of the Ramáyana believed in by the Hindús	316
Circumstances which led to the Hindú belief in an alliance with Monkeys	316

	PAGE
Extraordinary characteristics of Monkeys	316
Habits of Monkeys in their wild state worthy of study	316
The Monkeys in the Pamiyana identical with the aboriginal population of the south	317
Three hypotheses respecting the probable origin of the confusion	317
The aborigines regarded as Monkeys	317
The army of Rama accompanied by Monkeys	317
The Monkey worshipped as a deity and adopted as a national emblem	317
Reason why the Monkey gods of the south may have been represented as fighting for Rama	318
References to an army of Bears under Jambavat	318
Three localities specified	318
Pishya mukha	319
Kishkindhya	319
Malyavina	319
The narrative	319
Pama and Lakshmana proceed from the lake Pamiya to the mountain Pishya mukha	319
Sugriva and his Monkey Counsellors receive Pama and Lakshmana	319
Sugriva shows Rama Sita's ornaments	320
Sugriva relates the story of his grievances against Bali	320
Pama engages to slay Bali	320
Rama directs Sugriva to proceed to Kishkindhya and challenge Bali	321
Combat between Sugriva and Bali	321
Rama mortally wounds Bali	321
Sudden appearance of Tara	321
Tara's lamentations over her dying husband	322
Funeral ceremonies for Bali	322
Sugriva installed as Raja, and Angada as Yuvaraja	323
Painy season	323
Review of the foregoing narrative	323
Nondescript Monkeys of the Pamiyana	323
Traces in the narrative of an authentic tradition	324
Rama's breach of the laws of fair fighting	324
Marriage of widows and divorced women amongst the Maravars of the Carnatic	324

## CHAPTER XX

## HANUMAN'S ADVENTURES IN LANKA.

Expansion of the original tradition by the author of the Ramayana	326
Neglect of Sugriva to assist Pama	326
Assembling of the army of Monkeys and Bears	326



	PAGE
Despatch of four Monkey armies	326
Hanuman's adventures in Lanká the product of pure imagination	327
Fifteen incidents in the adventures of Hanuman	327
The narrative	328
1st Hanuman's march to the sea, and leap over the channel between India and Ceylon	328
Rama gives his marriage ring to Hanuman	328
Meeting with Sampati the Vulture Chief	329
1st Hanuman's leap	330
2nd Description of the city of Lanka	331
The seven canals and walls	331
Walls of iron, stone, brass, white metal copper, silver, and gold	331
The city and palace within the seven walls	331
3rd, Hanuman reconnoitres Lanka in the form of a cat	332
Hanuman enters Lanka	332
The gates	332
The streets	332
The houses	332
The bazaars	332
Description of the Rakshasas	332
Monstrous deformities	332
4th Meeting between Hanuman and the Genius of Lanka	332
The combat	333
5th Hanuman proceeds through the city to the palace of Ravana	333
Perceives Vibhishana, the younger brother of Ravana worshipping Vishnu	333
Hanuman enters the palace of Ravana	333
The canal	333
The golden wall, with jewelled gate, and pillars of black crystal	333
The music place	334
The stables arsenals gardens, kitchens, &c	334
Hanuman fails to find Sita	334
6th, Description of the inner apartments of Ravana	334
The walls gates, and gardens	334
The sleeping room	334
The couch	334
The women	334
Ravana sleeping upon a crystal throne	334
Hanuman still fails to find Sita	335
7th Description of Sita in the Asoka grove	335
Sita surrounded by Rakshasi women	335
8th Ravana's night visit to Sita surrounded by his women	335
Hanuman ludes himself	335
Alarm of Sita	335
Ravana's address to Sita	336
Sita's reply to Ravana	336

	PAGE
Prays that she may be restored to her husband Rāma	336
Ravana proclaims his superiority to Rāma	336
Sita wrathfully declares Rāvana's inferiority to Rāma	337
Rāvana threatens to devour Sita unless after two months she becomes his wife	337
Sita's bitter refusal	338
Ravana prepares to slay Sita with his scimitar	338
Interposition of his wife Mandodari	338
Ravana again threatens to devour Sita after two months	338
9th, Efforts of the Rākshasī women to induce Sita to yield to Ravana	338
Sita's terror	338
Trijata prophesies the ultimate triumph of Rāma	338
10th Interview between Hanuman and Sita	339
Hanuman gives Rāma's signet ring to Sita	339
Sita's grief	339
Hanuman proposes to carry away Sita	339
Proves his strength by swelling to the size of a mountain	339
Sita declines to be touched by any man save Rāma	339
Hanuman leaves Sita	340
11th Hanuman destroys the grove	340
The guards complain to Ravana	340
Rāvana sends eighty thousand Rākshasas who are destroyed by Hanuman	340
Combat between Hanuman and Jambumali	340
Hanuman slays seven Rākshasa Chiefs, five Commanders, and Akshaya, the son of Rāvana	341
Ravana sends his son Indrajit, the conqueror of Indra to fight Hanuman	341
Indrajit goes out in a chariot drawn by four tigers	341
The combat	341
Indrajit binds Hanuman in the irresistible noose of Prahma	341
12th, Tricks played by Hanuman upon the Rākshasas	342
Progress of Hanuman to the Council hall of Ravana	342
13th, Hanuman's appearance before Pavana	342
14th The firing of Hanuman's tail	343
Hanuman escapes and sets Lankā on fire	343
15th Return of Hanuman and the Monkey Army to Rāma and Sugriva	343
Adventures of the Monkeys in the honey garden of Sugriva	343
Sugriva's joy at the return of the Monkeys	344
Meeting between Hanuman and Rāma	344
Hanuman gives Sita's jewel to Rāma	344
Review of the foregoing narrative of the adventures of Hanuman	344
Picture of Hanuman's leap	345
Picture of the city of Lankā, with its fortifications and monstrous inhabitants	345
Picture of Hanuman stealing through Lankā at midnight in the shape of a cat	345

	PAGE
Picture of the inner apartments	346
Wilted condition of Sita in the Asoka grove	346
Extraordinary picture presented by the night interview between Ravana and Sita	346
Favourite pantomimic representation of Hanuman's setting Lanka on fire with his tail	346
Army of drunken Monkeys in the honey garden	346
Glimpses of historic truth	347
Sensuality practised by Ravana common amongst the Buddhist Pajas	347
Significant legend of sensuality and satiety in Gotama Buddha	347
Part played by Vibhishana in the original tradition	348
Peligious significance of the alliance between Vibhishana and Rama	348
Rama's genius for alliances	349

## CHAPTER XXI

## RAMA'S INVASION OF LANKA

Division of the story of Rama's expedition into two parts—	
1st The invasion	350
2nd The war	350
Narrative of Rama's invasion	350
Important incidents	350
rupture between Ravana and Vibhishana	350
Bridging of the channel between Ceylon and the main	350
The Linga set up in the Island of Ramisseram	350
The narrative of Rama's invasion	351
Progress of the Army of Monkeys and Bears to the sea-coast accompanied by Rama and Lakshmana	351
Nikasha mother of Ravana requests her other son Vibhishana, to interfere	352
Vibhishana goes over to Rama	352
Rama calls a Council	352
The god Varuna advises the construction of a bridge by Nala	352
Nala and the Monkeys build the bridge	352
The stones float on the water	352
Alarm of Ravana	352
Completion of the bridge	353
Paiia worships Siva and sets up a Linga in Ramisseram	353
Paiia and Sugriva cross the bridge with the army of Monkeys and Bears	353
The two spies recognized by Vibhishana	354
Rama permits the two spies to survey his army	354
Rama's message to Pavana	354
Description of Ravana seated upon his throne	354
Wrath of Ravana at the message from Rama	354
Ravana surveys the army of Monkeys and Bears	354

	PAGE
Dismisses Sítá	355
Rávana prepares to withstand the attack of Ráma	356
Nikashá, the mother of Ravana, prays him to restore Sítá	356
Máhvát, maternal grandfather of Ravana, advises the same	356
Wrath of Rávana with his mother and her father	356
Flight of Nikashá and Máhvát	357
Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's invasion	357
The army of Monkeys and Bears on their march	357
The vast bridge across the sea	357
The Ling, a monument of triumph and a religious symbol	357
Origin of the Hindú conception of the bridge	357
Bridges of Xerxes and Darius matters of fact	357
Physical construction of the locality suggestive of the idea of a bridge	357
Causeway terminating at Ramisseram	357
Causeway terminating at Manar	358
Adam's Bridge connecting Ramisseram with Manar	358
Boulders supposed to have been dropped by the Monkeys	358
Description of the pagoda at Ramisseram	358
The gateway	358
The door	358
The quadrangle	358
The temples	358
The surrounding wall	358
The temple to Siva	359
The temple to Ráma and brazen Lingá	359
The temple of Sítá with brazen pillar surmounted by a Bird	359
The cars of the gods	359
The sacred character of the Island of Ramisseram	359
The Bráhmans supported at the public expense	359

## CHAPTER XXII.

### RÁMA'S WAR AGAINST RÁVANA.

Story of Ráma's war against Rávana, forming the second portion of the narrative of the expedition	361
Character of the combats	361
Events and scenes in the story of Ráma's war	361
1st, Commencement of hostilities by Ráma's army	362
The Monkeys fill up the great canal	362
Ráma sees Rávana, and carries away his umbrella and ten crowns	362
2nd, A great battle between the Rákshasas and Monkeys without the city	362
Rout of the Monkey army	363
3rd, Indrajit's first sacrifice, and confinement of Ráma and Lakshmana in the noose of the snakes	364

The gods send the Bird Garuda to deliver Rama and Lakshmana from the noose	365
4th Ravana takes the field in person against Rama	365
5th The awakening and death of Kumbhakarna	366
Extraordinary efforts to awaken Kumbhakarna	366
Success of the women	367
Rage of Kumbhakarna	367
His prodigious meal	367
Threatens to devour the Monkey	367
Takes the field and carries away Sugriva	367
Slain by Rama	367
6th Indrajit's second sacrifice and successful charge of the Monkey army	368
Rama and Lakshmana feign to be dead	368
7th Restoration of the dead Monkeys to life	368
Hanuman's journey through the air	368
Hanuman carries away the mountain by the roots	369
8th Pavana shuts himself up in Lanka	369
Rama orders Hanuman to fire the city of Lanka	369
9th Third sacrifice of Indrajit	370
Lakshmana slays Indrajit	370
10th Ravana again takes the field without the city	370
Combat between Pavana and Rama	370
Extraordinary arrows	370
Pavana pins Lakshmana to the earth with his infallible mace	371
11th Hanuman's adventure with Kala nemi	371
Kala nemi proceeds to the mountain and creates a magic hermitage	371
Hanuman's adventure with Bharata at Nundigrāma	371
Kala nemi plots Hanuman's death by a crocodile	372
Hanuman kills the crocodile	372
Legend of the crocodile	372
Hanuman hurls Kala nemi into the Council hall of Pavana	372
Hanuman carries away the mountain a second time	372
Lakshmana healed	373
12th Ravana's sacrifice with closed doors	373
The Monkeys break open Ravana's apartment	373
Angula ill treats Mandodari	373
Pavana abandons the sacrifice	373
14th Final overthrow of Ravana	374
Ravana cursed by Surpanakha	374
Ravana reaches Rama	374
Indrasen is his own chariot to Rama	374
Combat between Ravana and Rama	374
Second combat	374
Rama cuts off Pavana's heads without effect	374
Rama kills Ravana with a Brahma arrow	374
The gods praise Pavana as Vishnu	374
Review of the foregoing narrative of Rama's war against Ravana	375

	PAGE
Character of the war . . . . .	375
Ravana's reluctance to take the field . . . . .	376
Number of single combats . . . . .	376
Weapons endowed with supernatural powers . . . . .	376
The noose of snakes . . . . .	376
Fantastically-shaped arrows . . . . .	376
Utterance of mantras over the arrows . . . . .	376
Belief in the efficacy of sacrifice to insure victory . . . . .	377
Sacrifices performed by Indrajit and Ravana in virtue of their being Bráhmans . . . . .	377
Indrajit's sacrifice to Agni . . . . .	377
Probable substitution of Agni for Káli . . . . .	377
Human sacrifices in ancient times . . . . .	377
Offering of human herds to Káli . . . . .	377
Agni substituted as the deity who can render himself invisible . . . . .	378
Indrajit sacrifices for the purpose of becoming invisible . . . . .	378
Ravana's sacrifice . . . . .	378
Authority of the priesthood increased by the belief in the efficacy of sacrifice . . . . .	378
Modification of the belief in modern times . . . . .	378
Ancient belief . . . . .	379
Popularity of the story of the awakening of Kumbha karna . . . . .	379
Capacity for eating and sleeping a subject of popular mirth . . . . .	379

## CHAPTER XXIII

### TRIUMPHANT RETURN OF RAMA.

Death of Ravana the climax of the story of the Rámáyana . . . . .	381
Natural ending according to European ideas . . . . .	381
Difficulty as regards Sita's purity after her imprisonment in the palace of Ravana . . . . .	381
Narrative of the order of Sita and return to Ayodhyá . . . . .	382
Lamentations of Vibhishana . . . . .	382
Lamentations of the widows of Ravana . . . . .	382
Lamentations of Mandodarí . . . . .	382
Vibhishana removes the widows of Ravana . . . . .	382
Vibhishana performs the funeral rites . . . . .	383
Installation of Vibhishana in the Raj of Lanka . . . . .	383
Vibhishana conducts Sita to Rama . . . . .	383
Sita's parting with Saramá . . . . .	383
Sita enters the presence of Rama on foot . . . . .	383
Rama's cruel words . . . . .	383
Sita's appeal . . . . .	383
Sita's requests Lakshmana to prepare a funeral pile . . . . .	384
Sita offers up her prayers and enters the fire . . . . .	384
Rama's remorse . . . . .	384
Sudden appearance of the gods and Rama's father Dasaratha . . . . .	384
Agni bears Sita upon his knees and attests her purity . . . . .	384

	PAGE
Páma receives Sita as his wife	384
Páma prepares to return to Ayodhyá in the Pushpaka chariot	385
The Monkeys and Rakshas as accompany Ráma	386
Páma describes his adventures to Sita	386
Ráma arrives at the hermitage of Bharadwaja	386
Bharadwaja entertains Ráma	386
Joy of Rája Guha at hearing of Páma's arrival	387
Preparations of Bharata for the triumphant return of Páma	388
Preparations of the people of Ayodhya	388
Joy of Kaikeyí	388
The ladies, accompanied by all the people of Ayodhyá go out to meet Ráma	389
Bharata carries Ráma's sandals	389
Meeting between Páma and Bharata	389
Vasishtha and the Brahmans offer the Raj to Páma	389
Ráma bows to his mothers	389
Dismisses the chariot Pushpaka to its master Kuvēra	390
Ráma casts aside the garb of a devotee and assumes that of a Rája	390
Ráma and Sita proceed in a royal chariot surrounded by the insignia of sovereignty	390
Entry into Ayodhya	390
Bharata requests Vasishtha to prepare for Páma's installation	391
Vasishtha orders that all things be made ready for the ceremony	391
Worship of all the images of gods and goddesses	391
Páma and Sita fast and keep awake all night	391
The installation of Ráma	391
Arraying of Ráma and Sita	391
The enthroning	392
Music and acclamations	392
The purification with sacred water	392
Water poured over the heads of Ráma and Sita by all the castes	392
Ráma and Sita change their garments and again take their seats in the Council Hall	392
Paddy and blue grass poured upon Páma's head	392
Distribution of presents	392
Sita gives her necklace to Hanuman	392
Happiness of Ráma and Sita	394
Their mode of life in the palace at Ayodhya	394
Review of the foregoing narrative of the return of Ráma and Sita to Ayodhyá	394
Picture of a Brahman reading the Ramayana to Hindu villagers	394
Deep interest of a Hindu audience	394
Preparations of the Hindus for listening to the story of the return of Ráma and Sita to Ayodhya	395
Incidents immediately preceding the return	395
Lamentations of Ravana's women	396
Site of the ordeal of Sita still shown in the island of Pámas'ram	396
The Pushpaka chariot introduced to remove a geographical difficulty	396

	PAGE
Incidents connected with the triumphant return to Ayodhya and installation of Rāma	396

## CHAPTER XXIV

## EXILE OF SITA

Sequel to the Rāmāyana	398
The narrative	398
Sita desires the sacrificial cakes of the Rishis	398
Complaint of a Minister that the people are poor because Rama took back Sita	399
Rāma hears a dialogue between a washerman and his son in law	399
The son in law refuses to take back his wife who had deserted him in the night-time	399
Rama sees Sita drawing a figure of Ravana	399
Determines to put away Sita	399
Commands Lakshmana to conduct her to the opposite bank of the Ganges	400
Sita supposes she is going to visit the Rishis	400
The departure	400
Evil omens	400
Passage of the river Ganges	400
Chitra kuta	400
Lakshmana abandons Sita near the hermitage of Valmiki	400
Sufferings of Sita beneath the burning sun	400
Wild beasts guard her and the birds fan her	401
Taken into the house of Valmiki	401
Sitā gives birth to Lava and Kusa	401
The two brothers educated by Valmiki and taught the Rāmāyana	401
Rama prepares to perform an Aswamedha to atone for having slain Ravana	401
The golden image of Sitā	402
Lava and Kusa carry away the horse, and defeat the armies sent against them	402
Hanuman suspects that Lava and Kusa are the sons of Rama	402
Rama goes out against his sons and asks their mother's name	402
Rama reconciled to Sita	403
Rama and Sita live in happiness in Ayodhya	403
Review of the foregoing story of the exile of Sita	404
Traces of the authentic tradition	405
Question of whether Rama really took back Sita	405
Rama ascends to heaven	405
Conclusion of the Rāmāyana	406
Modern Hindu belief in the virtues of the Rāmāyana	106



## PART V.

## THE BRAHMANIC PERIOD.

## CHAPTER I

## FOUR EPOCHS OF RELIGIOUS HISTORY.

	PAGE
Possibility of constructing a history of the Hindús . . . . .	407
Materials . . . . .	407
Mahá Bhárata, Ramáyana, Vedas, Puránas . . . . .	407
Buddhist Legends . . . . .	408
Manu . . . . .	408
Hindú drama and poetry . . . . .	408
Mackenzie MSS . . . . .	408
Miscellaneous vernacular records . . . . .	408
Inscriptions, etc . . . . .	409
History of India distinct from that of Mussulman or British rule . . . . .	409
Religious revolutions from within . . . . .	410
Importance of the history . . . . .	410
Division of the religious history into four epochs . . . . .	410
1st, Vedic age, characterized by prayers and offerings to elementary deities for material blessings . . . . .	411
Belief in ghosts . . . . .	411
Process by which the Aryan mind arose from polytheism to monotheism . . . . .	411
Exaggerated language of praise . . . . .	411
Inquiry as to the origin of being . . . . .	412
Identification of the Supreme Spirit with Agni and Prajapati . . . . .	412
2nd, Brahmanic age characterized by austerities and sacrifices to expiate sin . . . . .	412
Compromise between the Vedic and Brahmanic creed . . . . .	412
Vedic deities recognized, but placed in a subordinate position to Brahmá . . . . .	413
Agni and Prajapati identified with Brahma . . . . .	413
Caste system rendered an engine of ecclesiastical oppression . . . . .	413
Illustrations of the Vedic period furnished by the Brahmanic period . . . . .	414
Distinguishing characteristics of the ages of Buddhism and Brahmanical revival . . . . .	414
Commencement of the age of Buddhism in the sixth century B.C . . . . .	414

	PAGE
Doctrines of Śaṅkya Muni	414
Happiness a delusion	415
Existence an evil	415
Nirvana or undisturbed repose	415
Age of satiety	416
Expulsion of Buddhism by the Brahmanical revival	416
Failure of Buddhism to influence the masses	416
Appeal of the Brahmans to the worship of the old gods of India	417
Vedic deities	417
Vishnu and Śiva	417
Brahma	417
Pāma and Kṛishna, as incarnations of Vishnu	417
Animal worship	417
Linga worship	417
Parvati, Durga, Kali	417
Kāma, Kartikeya, Kuvera, Ganesa	418
Chronology of the four epochs	418
Vedic	418
Brahmanic	418
Buddhist	418
Brahmanic revival	419
Definite chronology impossible	419
Intermingling of religious ideas originating in different ages	419
Two points in connection with the Brahmanic age	420
1st Probable duration of the Brahmanic age	420
Indefinite extension of Brahmanism throughout the Buddhist age	420
Brahmanism a religion of the people	421
Buddhism a religion of the nobles	421
Code of Manu a standpoint in the history of Brahmanism	422
No references in the code to the age of Brahmanical revival	422
Probable date of the code of Manu	422
2nd Reflex light thrown upon the Vedic age by the Brahmanic age	422
Nine salient points	423
1st Vedic and Brahmanic Geography	423
2nd Pishus and Brahmans	423
3rd Conceptions of Manu	423
4th Creations by Manu and Brahma	423
5th Vedic and Brahmanic chronologies	423
6th Worship	423
7th Marriages	423
8th, Śradhas	423
9th The Kshatriya and the Brahman	423
Further evidence	423
Chronological sequence approximating to the idea of annals	424

## CHAPTER II

## VEDIC AND BRAHMANIC GEOGRAPHY

	PAGE
Comparison of the geographical data in the Vedic hymns and code of Manu	425
Vedic settlements and Brahmanic settlements separated by the Saraswati river	425
Vedic gods identified with the Vedic Aryans, and the god Brahmā with the Brāhmins	426
Opposition between the Vedic Aryans of the Punjab and the Brāhmins of Hindustan	426
Restricted areas described by Manu	427
Brahmāvarta and Brahmarshi-desa	427
Historical origin of Brahmarshi-desa	428
Mythical origin of the term "Brahmāvarta"	428
Distinction between the age when the Saraswati flowed to the Indus, and the age when it disappeared in the sand	428
Opposition between the Vedic deities and Brahma	428
Vedic geography of the country on the Saraswati	429
Manu's geography	430
Origin of the caste system in Saraswati	431
Origin of Brahmanism in Brahmarshi-desa	431
Progress of Aryan invasion and conquest of Hindūstan before the time of Manu	432
Restricted area of the Brahmins compared with the extensive area of the Aryans in the time of Manu	433

## CHAPTER III

## RISHIS AND BRAHMANIS

Distinction between the Vedic psalmists and Brāhman priests	435
Vedic religion restricted generally to the present life	435
General character of the Vedic ceremonial	437
Popularity and power of the Vedic psalmists	437
Daughters of R̥yās bestowed in marriage upon Rishis	438
Wide interval between Vedic and Brahmanical ideas	438
Vedic bards resemble the Hebrew psalmists	438
Opposition in the Vedic hymns between a peaceful community and a warlike community	439
Opposition between the worship of the Maruts and the worship of Indra	439
Further clue to the opposition between Rishis and Brahmins, furnished by the distinction between R̥jars̥hus, Devar̥shis, and Brahmarshis	440
First appearance of the Brahmins as mercenary sacrificers	441

# CONTENTS

h

	PAGE
The Supreme Spirit	454
The egg	454
Heaven and earth	455
Metaphysical existences	455
Viraj	455
Manu and the ten Manus	455
Cosmogony of Manu compared with that of Moses	455
Contrast between the Hindu idea of Brahma sleeping on the waters and the Hebrew idea of vivifying wind	455
Conception of the mundane egg	456
Origin of the conception	457
Possible connection with the worship of the Linga	457
Conception of a metaphysical creation	457
Valuable as illustrative of Hindu thought	458
Four heals	458
1st Three Gunas or Qualities—Goodness, Passion, Darkness	458
2nd Mind and Consciousness	459
3rd Perceptions of sense and Organs of sensation	459
Threefold Egotism	459
4th Elements and their Properties—Ether Wind, Light, Water, Earth	460
Brahma male and female	460
Introduction of Manu and the ten Rishis	460

## CHAPTER VI

### SACRED CHRONOLOGY

Bold attempt by the Brahmans to map out eternity	463
A mere arbitrary arrangement of figures	463
Division of Manu's system of chronology	463
1st Calculation of days months and years	464
Sub-division of the Hindu day	464
Four different days	464
Day of mortals	464
Day of Pitris or mortal months	465
Day of gods or mortal years	465
Day of Brahma	465
2nd Calculation of Yugas, or ages	465
Simplicity of the idea of four Yugas	465
Maha Yuga or great age	466
The twilights	466
Conception of a kalpa, or day of Brahma	467
Infinity of the kalpas	467
Simplicity of the idea of a day and night of Brahma	467
Hindu and European ideas of chronology compared	468
Influence of the different chronological systems upon the respective religious belief of Hindus and Europeans	468

	PAGE
Chronological system of Manwantaras superadded to the Brahmanic system of Kalpas	469

## CHAPTER VII

## RELIGION OF THE BRAHMAN.

Religious system set forth in Manu	471
Exhibits both a development and a compromise	471
Brahmanical doctrine of rewards and punishments unknown in the Vedic age	471
Crude conception of sin	472
Rewards and punishments introduced to enforce Brahmanical laws	472
Dogma of merits and demerits	473
Future existences of the soul dependent upon merits and demerits	473
Distinction between the religious obligations felt in Europe and those which are felt in India	474
Causes of the universality of the belief in merits and demerits	475
Form of the conception in the Moaic law	476
Inferior merit of duties performed in the hope of reward	476
Distinction between natural law and ecclesiastical law	477
Manu's distinction between higher and lower motives	477
Conception of Brahman and Brahma	478
Decline of the worship	479
Religious worship of the Brahmans divisible into invocations and sacramental rites	479
Significance of the invocations as forming combinations of Three in One	479
1st The three suppressions of breath with the mind fixed on Brahma	480
2nd, The word AUM	480
3rd The Vyahrtis, comprising Earth, Sky, and Heaven	480
4th The Gayatri	480
Two questions involved	480
The 'Three'	480
The "One"	480
Conclusions to be proved hereafter	480
The 'Three' refer to the Vedic deities and the "One" to Brahma	481
Significance of the three suppressions	481
Significance of the letters A U, M	481
Significance of the three words—Earth Sky Heaven as representatives of the Vedic deities	481
Significance of the three measures of the Gayatri as indicating the Vedic tendency to worship the Sun as the Supreme Being	482
Practical identification of the Sun with Brahma	483

	PAGE
Literal translation of the Gayatri by Professor Wilson	483
Paraphrastic translation by Sir William Jones	484
Chain of conceptions involved in the worship of the Sun	484
Further developed by the combinations of ' Three in One	484
Religious significance of the combinations	484
Daily repetition of the invocations enjoined by Manu	485
Two questions	485
1st Religious value of a daily ritual	485
2nd Relative effect of present and future punishment in the suppression of heresy	486
Five daily sacramental rites enjoined by Manu—Rishis, Pitris Devatas Spirits and Guests	487
Anomalous Brahmanical basis	487
1st Feeding the Veda to propitiate the Pitris	488
Preparatory ceremonial	488
Effect of the ceremonial on the student	489
Right of interpretation of the Veda claimed by the Brahmins, essential for the promulgation of Brahmanism	489
Mode of interpretation	490
Manu's canon for reconciling conflicting texts	491
2nd Offerings of food to propitiate the Pitris	492
3rd Oblations of ghee to propitiate the Devatas	493
Character of the worship of the Vedic deities as enjoined by Manu	493
Changes in the religion between the Vedic period and Brahmanic period	493
4th Offerings of boiled rice to propitiate Spirits or Ghosts	494
Origin and character of belief in spirits	495
Popular belief in spirits amongst the Hindus	495
Significant indication in the ritual of the unpopularity of the worship of Brahma	497
Propitiation of Ghosts	497
5th Hospitalities in propitiation of mortal guests	498
Review of the five sacramental rites	498
Curious association of religious worship with the daily meals	498

## CHAPTER VIII

### EIGHT FORMS OF MARRIAGE.

Marriage laws in Manu	500
1st Light forms of marriage	500
2nd Miscellaneous precepts	500
Historical significance of the eight forms	500
Vedic conception of marriage as expressed in the two Epics	501
Marriages in a peaceful community, appertaining to Rishis or Brahmins	501
Marriages in a warlike community, appertaining to Kshatriyas	501

	PAGE
Polyandry in the Epics	502
Polyandry in the hymns of the Rig Veda	502
Polygamy in the Epics	503
Polygamy in the hymns of the Rig Veda	503
The Swayamvara in the Epics	503
The Swayamvara in the hymns of the Rig Veda	504
No allusion to the Swayamvara in Manu	504
Gandharva and Rakshasa forms of marriage	504
Kshatriya law as regards Rikshasa marriages	505
Gandharva and Rakshasa marriages restricted by Manu to the Kshatriyas	505
Manu's description of the eight nuptials	505
1 Brahma	505
2 Daiva	505
3 Arsha	506
4 Prājapatya	506
5 Asura	506
6 Gandharva	506
7 Rakshasa	506
8 Paisacha	506
Four valid and four invalid marriages	506
The four valid marriages ascribed to four different communities	507
Brāhmins	507
Vedic Aryans	507
Īshis	507
Prājāpatīs	507
Apparent confusion from the arbitrary distinction between the Devatas Rikshas and Prājāpatīs	507
Brahman form referred to the Brahmanic age	507
Mythical character of the Daiva mode	508
Repugnant to human nature and Kshatriya tradition	508
Pishu mode referred to the old Vedic period	509
Further proof of the radical distinction between Pishus and Brahmins	509
Further consideration of the distinction between the marriage rite of the Īshis and that of the Brahmins	510
Significance of the distinction between the marriage rite of the Brāhmins and that of the Prājāpatīs	511
Question of whether Prājāpatī and Brahman are different conceptions	511
Relative antiquity of the marriages of the Rikshas, Prājāpatīs, and Brahmins	512
The four marriages treated by Manu as illegal	513
Asura	513
Gandharva	513
Rakshasa	513
Paisacha	513
Asura and Paisacha strictly prohibited	513
The Gandharva and Rakshasa tolerated	513
Asura mode a degenerate form of the marriage of Pishus	513

	PAGE
Gandharva mode and expression of idyllic amours	514
Rakshasa mode a war custom of the Kshatriyas	515
Paisacha mode originating in a belief in ghosts	515
Significance of the law permitting Gandharva and Rakshasa marriages to the Kshatriyas	515
Respective merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage	516
Significance of Manu's application of the doctrine	516

## CHAPTER IV

## THE SRADDHA, OR FEAST OF THE DEAD

Origin of the idea of propitiating the ghosts of ancestors with food	518
The Sraddha a pleasing expression of natural religion	519
Three distinct Sraddhas	519
Other Sraddhas	519
Daily Sraddha	520
Monthly Sraddha, considered under four heads	520
1st Ceremonies to be performed at a monthly Sraddha	520
Oblation to the Vedic duties	520
Offering of the three cakes of rice or pindas, to the paternal ancestors	521
Feast to the Brahmans	521
Disposal of the cakes	521
Feast of the kinsmen	521
2nd Persons to be invited to the Sraddha	522
3rd, Catalogue of persons to be excluded from the Sraddha	522
(1) Persons disqualified on moral grounds	522
(2) Persons disqualified on religious grounds	523
(3) Persons disqualified on physical grounds	523
(4) Persons disqualified on account of their trade or profession	523
Punishment for inviting disqualified persons	524
Significance of the catalogues of disqualifications	524
Confusion of sin and disease	524
Peculiar usages	524
Prohibition of the marriage of a younger brother or sister before that of an elder brother or sister	524
Prohibition of the re marriage of widows	525
Prohibition of the worshippers of inferior gods	525
Prohibition of Kshatriyas	526
Gambling	526
Sellers of wine and flesh meat	526
Makers of weapons and tanners of horses	526
4th, Relative merits of different victuals offered at a Sraddha	527
Funeral Sraddha	527
Modifications of the old Vedic belief in the Sraddha by the Brahmans	528



## CHAPTER X

## THE FOUR CASTES

	PAGE
Division of classes of society into four castes, and of lives of individuals into four stages	529
Probable origin of the four castes	529
Traces of caste in the Vedic age	530
Stratification of the caste system in the Brahmanic age	530
Vedic myth that the four castes were created from the limbs of Purusha	530
Extracts from the Purusha hymn	531
No Brahmanical superiority asserted in the Purusha hymn	531
Vedic myth distorted in Manus code, to represent the Brahmins superior to the Kshatriyas	531
Brahmins, the chief of the creation	532
Expression of caste distinctions	532
In salutations	533
In administering oaths	533
Marriages between castes	533
Marriage with a first wife of a low caste prohibited	534
Caste emblems	534
Later prohibition of all marriages between different castes	534
Five groups of illustrations of the caste system	535
1st Veneration for Brahmins	535
2nd, Privileges of Brahmins	536
3rd Occupations of Brahmins	537
4th, Diet of Brahmins	538
Compromise involved in the laws respecting the diet of the twice-born castes	538
Opposition between the milk and vegetable diet of the Brahmins and the flesh meat of the Kshatriyas	539
Repugnance of Manu to flesh meat	539
Toleration of the usages of Kshatriyas and Vaisyas	539
Abstinence from lawful pleasures to be rewarded in another life	540
5th, Scale of punishments for slander	540
Chandalas or outcasts	541

## CHAPTER XI

## THE FOUR STAGES OF LIFE.

Two objects of the code of Manu already unfolded	543
1st The establishment of a national ritual	543
2nd, The establishment of the caste system	543

	PAGE
Question of four stages in the life of individuals treated in the present chapter . . . . .	543
Four stages or orders still recognized but not accepted . . . . .	544
Ideal of Brahmanical life . . . . .	544
The four orders . . . . .	544
I. THE BRAHMACHÁRI, or student . . . . .	544
Rites prior to the investiture with the thread . . . . .	545
Significance of the thread . . . . .	545
Details . . . . .	545
Nature of the thread of the three twice-born castes . . . . .	545
Age of investiture . . . . .	545
Ceremony of begging for alms . . . . .	546
Origin of the ceremony . . . . .	547
Purification of daughters by marriage, instead of by the thread . . . . .	547
Rules for the conduct of a Brahmachári after investiture . . . . .	548
Their object . . . . .	548
Result . . . . .	548
Duties of a Brahmachári in connection with religion . . . . .	549
Reverent study of the Veda . . . . .	549
Worship of the gods . . . . .	549
Service to a preceptor . . . . .	550
Three classes of Bráhmans . . . . .	550
1st, The Achárya, or Guru . . . . .	550
2nd, The Upádhyái, or schoolmaster . . . . .	550
3rd, The Ritwij, or sacrificer . . . . .	551
Respect due from a Brahmachári to his preceptor . . . . .	551
Maintenance of a strict control over the passions . . . . .	552
Brahmanical disquisition on earthly happiness . . . . .	552
II. THE GRHASTHA, or householder . . . . .	553
Obligation to marry incumbent upon all men . . . . .	553
Necessity for a son to offer the funeral cakes to a deceased father . . . . .	553
Marriage regulations for producing a healthy progeny . . . . .	553
Four classes of precepts . . . . .	554
1st, Ceremonies connected with the close of student-life . . . . .	554
Relative age of bridegroom and bride . . . . .	554
Festivities associated with the return of a bridegroom to his father's house . . . . .	555
Present of a cow . . . . .	555
2nd, Prohibited marriages . . . . .	555
Degrees . . . . .	555
Unsuitable families . . . . .	555
Non-observance of religious duty classified with physical defects . . . . .	556
Unsuitable damsels . . . . .	556
3rd, Qualified damsels . . . . .	558
Opposition between the Kshatriya and Brahman ideal of female beauty . . . . .	558
4th, Marriage ceremonies . . . . .	559
Eleven leading rites . . . . .	559

	PAGE
Procession . . . . .	559
Hospitality . . . . .	559
Gift of bride . . . . .	559
The binding . . . . .	559
Gift to the bride . . . . .	559
The tying . . . . .	559
Oblations to Agni . . . . .	559
The hand . . . . .	559
The steps . . . . .	559
Walk round the fire . . . . .	559
The seven final steps . . . . .	560
Domestic life of the Grihastha . . . . .	560
Means of livelihood and moral conduct . . . . .	560
Respective occupations of the three twice-born castes . . . . .	560
Idea that the Brahmans should be maintained by the public . . . . .	561
Significance as regards the gifts to be accepted by Brahmans . . . . .	561
III The VĀNAPRASTHA, or hermit . . . . .	561
Distinction between the Vanaprastha and Sannyāsi . . . . .	561
Religious austerities of the Vānaprastha, or hermit . . . . .	562
IV The SANNYĀSI, or devotee . . . . .	563
Life of religious contemplation to obtain final beatitude . . . . .	563
Means of subsistence . . . . .	564
Subjects of reflection . . . . .	564
The Supreme Spirit . . . . .	564
Inferiority of material existence . . . . .	565
Resemblance between the Sannyāsis and the Buddhist devotees . . . . .	565
Spirit of inclusion displayed by the Brahmanical hierarchy . . . . .	565
Ideal of Hindū life may have been partially derived from Buddhism, but not from the Vedic worship . . . . .	565
Originated in a belief in a future state . . . . .	566
Expression of Vedic and Brahmanic ideas of life in modern humanity . . . . .	566

## CHAPTER XII

## HINDŪ WOMEN.

Condition of Hindū women in Vedic and Brahmanic times . . . . .	568
Marriage relations in the Vedic period . . . . .	568
<i>Compensation to the female in the case of irregular unions</i> . . . . .	569
Position of a damsel in a polygamous household . . . . .	569
Superior authority of the legitimate wife . . . . .	569
Natural tendency to monogamy . . . . .	570
Polyantry and the Swayamvara . . . . .	570
Pleasing idea involved in the Swayamvara . . . . .	570
Exaggerated expression of chivalry . . . . .	571
Marriage relations in the Brahmanic period . . . . .	571
Polyantry and the Swayamvara ignored . . . . .	571
Social inferiority of women . . . . .	571

	PAGE
Dependence of females upon fathers, husbands, and sons . . . . .	571
Duty of a father to his daughter . . . . .	573
Cases when a damsel may choose her own husband . . . . .	573
Duties of husbands towards their wives . . . . .	573
Wives to be honoured and decorated . . . . .	574
Duties of a wife . . . . .	574
Duties of a widow . . . . .	575
Duties of a widower . . . . .	575
Restrictions to be placed on women . . . . .	576
Vices of women . . . . .	576
Maintenance and conduct of a wife in the absence of her husband . . . . .	576
Question as regards the period of absence . . . . .	577
Forced explanation of <i>kullûka</i> . . . . .	577
Law respecting divorce . . . . .	577
Supersession of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son . . . . .	578
Good wives to be superseded only with their own consent . . . . .	578
Force of the religious obligation to beget a son . . . . .	579
Laws against adultery . . . . .	580
Punishment of unfaithful wives and their paramours . . . . .	581
Punishment of Brahmans . . . . .	581
Public women and female anchorites . . . . .	581
Question of guarded wives . . . . .	582
Punishment for visiting public women . . . . .	582
Position of public women and private mistresses . . . . .	582
Female anchorites placed in the same category with public women . . . . .	583
Sarcasm levelled at Buddhist nuns . . . . .	583
Conduct of a Hindû towards the wives of his brethren . . . . .	583
Law for raising up a son to a deceased brother . . . . .	583
Custom recognized but not tolerated by Manu . . . . .	584
Custom referred to the reign of Raja Vena . . . . .	584
Modern custom of adoption . . . . .	585

## CHAPTER XIII.

## HINDÛ GOVERNMENT.

Contrast between the theory of government in Manu, and the patriarchal and feudal types in Vedic tradition . . . . .	586
Absence of patriotism and public spirit . . . . .	586
Religion the only political and national tie . . . . .	587
Political system of the Brâhmans based upon fear . . . . .	587
Hindû Government treated under four heads . . . . .	588
1 The Raja, his Court and Ministers . . . . .	588
Hindû ideal of a Raja . . . . .	588
Divine attributes . . . . .	589
Just punishment of evil-doers the special duty of a Raja . . . . .	589
A good Raja . . . . .	589

	PAGE
A bad Raja . . . . .	590
Daily duties of a Raja . . . . .	591
Oblations to the gods . . . . .	591
Attendance on Bráhmans . . . . .	591
Control of the passions . . . . .	591
Ten vices born of pleasure . . . . .	591
Light vices born of wrath . . . . .	591
Public appearance of the Raja . . . . .	591
Secret Councils . . . . .	591
Noon-day meal . . . . .	591
Precautions against poison and assassination . . . . .	592
Women . . . . .	592
Parades . . . . .	592
Evening duties . . . . .	592
Evening meal . . . . .	592
Music . . . . .	592
Modern life in Hindú courts similar to that described in Manu . . . . .	592
City of the Raja in a level plain surrounded by mountains . . . . .	593
The Fort . . . . .	593
The Palace . . . . .	593
A Ráti . . . . .	593
Domestic priest and sacrificing priest . . . . .	593
Sacrifices and gifts to Bráhmans . . . . .	594
Ministers . . . . .	594
The Chief Minister to be a Bráhman . . . . .	594
Officials . . . . .	594
The Ambassador . . . . .	595
Distribution of offices . . . . .	595
Characteristics of Hindú sovereignty . . . . .	595
Illustrations to be found in the Rámáyana and Maha Bhárita . . . . .	595
2nd, Government of the Provinces . . . . .	596
A military occupation based upon the village system . . . . .	596
Hindú village comprising both a district and a town . . . . .	596
The village communities, or republics . . . . .	597
Village officials . . . . .	597
The Head man . . . . .	597
Village assemblies . . . . .	597
The accountant . . . . .	598
The watchman . . . . .	598
The Brahman priest . . . . .	598
Astrolger and schoolmaster . . . . .	598
Jeweller . . . . .	598
Miscellaneous village servants . . . . .	598
Law suits of the village officials in land and fees . . . . .	598
Antiquity and permanence of the Hindú Village system . . . . .	598
Village system as indicated by Manu . . . . .	599
Law respecting the survey of a portion of land . . . . .	599
Village boundaries and landmarks . . . . .	600
Investigation of disputes respecting landmarks . . . . .	600

	PAGE
Government of villages as laid down by Manu . . . . .	601
The head man, or lord of one village . . . . .	601
The Purgunnah, comprising a hundred villages . . . . .	601
Modern trices of other divisions . . . . .	602
Emoluments of the District Officers in the time of Manu . . . . .	602
Governors of cities . . . . .	602
System of taxation in return for protection . . . . .	603
Tax upon traders . . . . .	603
Assessment on yearly savings . . . . .	603
Land revenue . . . . .	604
Raja's share of products and manufactures . . . . .	604
Tax on petty traders and artisans . . . . .	604
Exemption of Brahmins . . . . .	604
Paramount duty of a Raja to protect his subjects . . . . .	604
3rd, Administration of justice . . . . .	605
Brahmanizing of the old patriarchal system . . . . .	605
Court of Brahma with four faces . . . . .	606
Conduct of the Raja or Chief Judge . . . . .	606
Laws respecting property . . . . .	606
Trusts . . . . .	606
Property without owners . . . . .	606
Lost property . . . . .	607
Treasure trove . . . . .	607
Stolen property . . . . .	607
Patriarchal character of the law . . . . .	607
Punishment of elephant trampling . . . . .	608
Miscellaneous law . . . . .	608
Debts . . . . .	608
Money lending . . . . .	608
Bottomry . . . . .	608
Sureties . . . . .	609
Deposits . . . . .	609
Exorbitant rates of interest in India . . . . .	609
Sea voyages of the Hindús proved by the law of Bottomry . . . . .	609
Moral significance of the laws respecting sureties . . . . .	610
Artifice in the law respecting deposits . . . . .	610
False testimony . . . . .	610
Oaths . . . . .	610
Ordeals . . . . .	610
Pastoral law respecting damage to cattle . . . . .	611
Neglect of land by cultivators . . . . .	611
Undivided and divided families . . . . .	612
Criminal law . . . . .	613
Severe punishment of thieves and cheats . . . . .	613
4th, Laws of war . . . . .	613
Four conflicting elements . . . . .	613
Difficulty of tracing each element to an individual community . . . . .	614
Division of the laws of war under four heads . . . . .	614
Duties of a Raja in defensive warfare . . . . .	615
Incongruity of Brahmanic and Vedic ideas . . . . .	615

	PAGE
Duties during actual operations . . . . .	615
Advance and retreat . . . . .	615
Alliance . . . . .	616
Duties of a Raja in offensive warfare . . . . .	616
Invading an enemy's territory . . . . .	616
The march . . . . .	616
Secret friends and emissaries . . . . .	616
Tactics . . . . .	616
Blockades . . . . .	616
Rules of fair fighting and quarter . . . . .	617
Prohibited weapons . . . . .	617
Individuals who are to receive quarter . . . . .	617
Policy to be pursued in a conquered country . . . . .	617
Its failure . . . . .	618

## CHAPTER XIV.

## HISTORICAL RESUMÉ

Absence of perspective in the ancient history of India . . . . .	619
No chronological sequence beyond the distinction between the Vedic and Brahmanic epochs . . . . .	620
Possibility of discovering a clue to a sequence . . . . .	620
Limits of the inquiry . . . . .	620
Questions passed over in the present history . . . . .	620
Unsatisfactory character of modern modes of interpretation . . . . .	621
References to natural phenomena in the Vedic hymns . . . . .	621
Objections to the interpretation of Epic traditions by refer- ence to natural phenomena . . . . .	621
Reduction of traditions of heroes into allegorical histories of clans applicable only to mythological legends, and not to traditions of heroes . . . . .	622
First scene in Indian history —the Vedic Aryans in the Punjab . . . . .	623
Second scene in Indian history —the Aryan conquest of Hindústan . . . . .	624
Vast unrecorded interval between the two . . . . .	624
Classification of different phases of civilization in Epic tra- ditions —the patriarchal, heroic, and monarchical . . . . .	624
<i>Modification of the three stages of civilization by human nature</i> . . . . .	625
Instincts . . . . .	625
Democratic yearnings . . . . .	625
Religious aspirations . . . . .	625
Action of human nature upon the three stages of political de- velopment the essence of history . . . . .	625
1st, Patriarchal age of Hindú history illustrated by the war of Bhárata and adventures of the Pandavas at Viráta . . . . .	626
Family settlement at Hastinápura involved in the tradition of the war of Bhárata . . . . .	626

	PAGE
Pursuits of the settlers	626
Agriculture	626
Keeping cattle	626
Training in the use of arms	626
Feuds	627
Breach between two rival branches of the family	627
Migration of the Pandavas to Indra prastha	627
Laxity as regards marriage in the family traditions	627
Polyandry of the Pandavas	627
Colonial life at Indra prastha	628
Clearing the jungle	628
Possession asserted by a great feast	628
Pandavas lose their wife at a gambling match	628
Feud between the Pandavas and Kauravas settled by a war to the knife	628
Horrible revenge	629
Absence of Sati	629
Return of the Pandavas to Hastinapur, and celebration of an Aswamedha	629
Allegorical myths referring to wars against the Scythian Nagas	630
Free play of the instincts in the patriarchal age	630
Democratic struggles of young men against the elders	631
Sacrifices associated with the possession of land and assertion of sovereignty	631
Sentiments in reference to war	631
Force of the Oriental passion for revenge	631
Native rule in India characterized by bloody feuds	632
Patriarchal basis of the story of the adventures of the Pandavas at Virata	632
Absence of the rite of Sati from the Vedic hymns	633
Idea of the rite involved in the tradition of Virata	633
Scythian custom of strangling a concubine at the grave of a king	634
Virata a Scythian settlement	634
Difference between the Aryan and Scythian treatment of widows	635
Difference between the later Brahmanical rite of Sati and the early Scythic form	635
Connection of the later rite with a belief in the immortality of the soul	636
Phase in the civilization of India in which Sati originated	636
Exceptional circumstances tending to the extension of Sati	636
Glorification of the Sati by the Brâhmins	637
2nd Heroic age of Hindu history identified with the Aryan conquest of Hindûstan	637
Pictures of the heroic age furnished by Hebrew history	637
Meagre relics of the heroic age in India	638
Nursery fiction	638
Mythological wars	638
Glimpses of Râjas reigning as lords paramount	639



	PAGE
Two inferences respecting the heroic period	639
Aryan conquest of Hindustan completed before the rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy	639
Extended employment of the Brahmans as annual sacrificers in the heroic age	640
Early antagonism of the Brahmans to the Mahārajas	640
Worthless character of the mythological myths shown by reference to the myth of Indra and Nahusha	641
Limited analogy between the heroic age of the Hindus and Hebrews	642
Absence of a theocracy in India	643
3rd Monarchical age of Hindu history	643
Vast interval between the patriarchal and monarchical periods	643
Distinction between the era of constitutional monarchy and that of despotism supported by the Brahmanical hierarchy	644
Ecclesiastical hierarchies fatal to constitutional forms	644
Illustrations of the early monarchical period furnished by the tradition of Pāma	645
Moral aim of the old Kshatriya story the mischief of setting aside the son of the first wife for the son of a younger favourite	645
A favourite theme with the old Kshatriya bards	645
Points in the original Kshatriya tradition	646
Family of Dasaratha	646
Pāma's marriage	646
Zenana intrigue respecting the appointment of a successor	646
Interference of the Chieftains and people	647
Decision that Rama should be installed	647
Mahārāja persuaded to set aside Rama in favour of Bharata	647
The denouement	648
Exile of Rama and Sitā	648
Death of the Mahārāja	648
Picture of palace life	649
Constitutional forms	649
Picture of the funeral rites of the Mahārāja	649
Close of the original tradition	650
Play of the instincts	650
General use of flesh meat	650
Question of superior physique of flesh-eaters over vegetarians	650
Picture of married life polygamy contrasted with monogamy	651
Character of Sitā	652
Pāma and Sitā without children	652
Probable cause of the abandonment of Sitā	652
Democratic element manifested in the popular Councils	652
Religious ideas in the tradition	653
Flesh sacrifices	653
Vows of flesh and wine to the river goddess	653
Further illustrations of the monarchical period furnished by the story of Nala and Damayanti	653
Absence of polygamy and reference to gambling	653

	PAGE
Apparent age of the story	653
Play of the instincts	654
Pure consubial affection	654
Modified revenge	654
Manifestations of the democratic element	654
Religious ideas	655
Appearance of the gods in the heaven of Indra	655
Signs of deity	655
Stages in Hindu history prior to the spiritual domination of the Brahmins	655
Probable means by which the Brahmins attained supreme power	656
Civil results of Brahminical ascendancy	657
Aggravated by the caste system	657
Ecclesiastical influences exercised by the Brahmins	658
Spiritual teaching	658
Brahminical aspirations after monotheism	658
Political condition of Hindustan in the Brahminic age	659
Growing opposition between the Brahmins and the Buddhists	659
Subsequent religious convulsions	660

## INTRODUCTION TO VOL. II.

---

THE previous volume of the History of India comprised an introductory sketch of the Vedic period, and a condensed version of the Mahá Bhárata. The present volume comprises a similar version of the Rámáyana, together with a detailed review of what is termed, somewhat arbitrarily, the Brahmanic age.

The Rámáyana is the second of the two famous Epics, which have been justly regarded by Sanskrit scholars, and by the people of India generally, as the great national treasures of the traditions and legends of the Hindús. They are indeed the repositories of all that has been preserved of Vedic ideas and institutions, as well as the expression of that later Brahmanical system, which forms the basis of the existing religion and civilization of the masses, ramifying as it does more or less throughout the entire body of Hindú literature. In the authoritative language of the learned Professor T. Goldstucker, "the Mahá Bhárata is the source of all the Puranas, *the Purana* emphatically so called."<sup>1</sup> But

---

<sup>1</sup> *Westminster Review* April 1868. The author must acknowledge his sense of the kindness and liberality which so eminent a Sanskrit scholar as Pro

the Rámáyana differs very considerably in character and scope from the Mahá Bhárata. The main traditions of both Epics are decidedly Vedic, but they appear to belong to totally different periods. The story of the war of Bharata refers to the very dawn of Hindú history, when the Aryan invaders had only reached the upper courses of the Ganges and Jumná, and when the plains of Hindústan were a *terra incognita* to be converted by the later Brahmanical compilers into a land of myths and fables. The main tradition of the Rámáyana refers, on the other hand, to a comparatively recent period of Aryan conquest, when an Aryan empire had been established in Oude, and when Vedic rites and institutions had advanced from the Punjab, or land of five rivers, into the very heart of Hindustan. Moreover, the Rámáyana comprises four distinct phases of religion and civilization. First there is an old Kshatriya tradition, replete with Vedic ideas and institutions, of the exile of Ráma from the Raj of Ayodhya, or Oude, and the incidents of this portion of the narrative must be referred to a much later date than the patriarchal and barbarous age of the war of Bhárata, although still belonging to the Vedic or pre-Brahmanic period. Secondly, there is a yet more modern Brahmanical tradition of a Ráma, who apparently flourished as the champion of the Brahmanical Langa worshippers of the Dekhan against the Ríkshasas of the peninsula of India and island

---

Professor Goldstucker has displayed in reviewing the labours of one who lays no claim to philological learning but strictly confines himself to historical investigation and criticism. As regards the Puranas generally however, it will be seen from the opening chapter of the Brahmanic period in the present volume that they have by no means been neglected by the author.

of Ceylon; and the incidents of this portion or narrative must be referred to the Brahmanic or post-Vedic age. Thirdly, there is a Buddhist element, inasmuch as the so-called Rákshasas were evidently Buddhists; and it will be seen, notably in the case of a casuist named Jávali, that Buddhist doctrines are mooted in the presence of the Ráma of the Dekhan, for the purpose of being refuted by that Brahmanical warrior. Fourthly, there is a religious element, belonging to the age of Brahmanical revival; an age when the Brahmans set up the god Vishnu as a higher conception of deity than the old Vedic devatas, and represented the Ráma of the two traditions as an incarnation or avatai of that spiritual divinity.

Here it may be explained that the ancient history of India is divisible into four great religious eras, namely, the Vedic, the Brahmanic, the Buddhist, and the Brahmanic revival. First, the Vedic period was a joyous age of Swayamvaras and Aswamedhas, when Agni, Indra, and other personifications of spiritual existences, were propitiated with feasts and invoked with the enthusiastic hymns of the Rig-Veda. Secondly, the Brahmanic period was a gloomy sacerdotal age, in which the feasts of the Kshatriyas were converted into sacrifices for the atonement of sins against Brahmanical law; and in which divine worship was reduced to a system of austerities and meditations upon the Supreme Spirit as Brahma; whilst the Brahmans appeared as a great ecclesiastical hierarchy, and established that hateful priestly dominion which still continues to debase the mind and soul of the Hindú, and renders a foreign rule a necessity to the people at large.

the truly, the Buddhist period was characterized by the advent of Śākya Muni as Buddha, and the rapid spread of his peculiar dogmas, that existence was an evil to gods and men; and that there was no deliverance of the soul from the vortex of successive transmigrations, excepting by the annihilation of the passions, and the hushing of the spirit into an eternal rest of dreamy and contemplative repose.<sup>2</sup> Lastly, we have the period of Brahmanical revival; an age when the Brāhmans seem to have abandoned the unpopular worship of their god Brahma, and to have invoked the aid of the old national gods and heroes of the Vedic Aryans against the practical atheism of Buddha, by severally representing Rāma and Krishna as incarnations of the Supreme Being who was named Vishnu.

Vālmīki, the author of the Rāmāyana, appears to have flourished in the age of Brahmanical revival; and the main object of his poem is to blacken the character of the Buddhists, and to represent Rāma as an incarnation of Vishnu. Before, however, attempting to explain the particular phase of religious belief which existed in the age when the Rāmāyana was composed, it may be as well to glance at the general development of religious ideas in India. The earliest stage in the development of

---

<sup>2</sup> The Buddhist period cannot be clearly separated, either from the Brahmanic period which partly preceded it, or from the period of Brahmanical revival which partly succeeded it. Indeed, it will be seen in the so-called history of the Brahmanic age, which forms a portion of the present volume, that Buddhism and Brahmanism flourished side by side. It may, however, be gathered from the traditions connected with the life of Śākya Maṇu that the worship of Brahma preceded the Buddhist heresy, and consequently it has been found convenient to review the main characteristics of the old Brahmanical period, whilst it was still replete with Vedic ideas and institutions, and before it had passed through a Buddhist crucible.

the religious instinct in the human race appears to be the worship of the elements, such as fire, water, and wind, which in their various manifestations contribute so much to the general well-being of man, as well as to his occasional injury. As, however, individual experience advances, the religious worship extends to every conceivable thing, visible or invisible, which has been seen or imagined by the untutored mind; and such objects are personified or spiritualized, and propitiated with offerings of food and drink, and other simple gratifications. Gradually, as men separate into families and tribes, they adopt family and tribal gods, which may ultimately become the deities of nations and empires. Meantime the exaggerated language of the bards, who praise their Chief as the Raja of Rajas, and their Deity as the God of gods, engenders the idea of monotheism; and this idea rapidly assumes the form of a substantive conception as it becomes blended with the idea of a universal ruler. But having reached this point, the idea of monotheism is apt to fade away in the progress of human thought into a mere abstract conception of the Creator of the universe, the invisible Soul which pervades all things and animates all things. This is a critical period in the development of monotheism. So long as the idea of deity is blended with that of a supreme ruler, who is invested with human sympathies and national associations, so long his worshippers will pray to him for all the good things of this life, as children would address a father. But the mere abstract idea of a Supreme Deity as the Soul of the universe, can only be apprehended by the philosophic few; and is so devoid of all human interest,

that it may be approached with childlike awe, but will never be addressed in the language of devotional fervour. A link is wanting between the human and the divine, a deity incarnate in man, who is invested with sufficient humanity to sympathize with the sorrows and aspirations of human beings, and at the same time so nearly allied to deity that he can mediate between the human race and the Almighty Father.

Such were the conditions of the age in which Valmiki composed the Rímávana. During the Vedic period religious ideas had been gravitating towards monotheism, in connection either with the worship of Indra as the sovereign of the gods, or with the worship of the Sun as the Supreme Soul. In the Brahmanic age the notion of a Supreme Soul had reached the form of an abstract idea, which was identified with Brahma, who appears to have been the peculiar god of the Brahmans. But this idea of Brahma was divested of all those human sympathies and historical associations which were connected with the adoration of Indra, and utterly failed to kindle those glorious emotions of nature worship which were poured forth in the daily invocations to the Sun. The great truth was unknown, or altogether ignored, that it is as impossible to adore the ideal of deity, as it is to adore the ideal of female beauty, *excepting through the medium of the concrete*. The worship of an abstract idea like that of Brahma could thus excite neither enthusiasm nor devotion. The human element was altogether wanting.

At this juncture Buddhism stepped in with its peculiar dogma, that existence was only another



name for pain and sorrow. Sákya Muni, the new prophet of Buddhism, appeared as an embodiment of universal benevolence, deeply moved with compassion for suffering humanity, and pointing out the only way by which the soul could be delivered from the vortex of successive transmigrations, and obtain eternal rest. Buddhism thus supplied those human sympathies which were wanting to the worship of Brahma. It denounced the caste system, and admitted Súdras, as well as twice-born men, into the ranks of the priesthood. It thus effected an easy conquest over the worship of Brahma, and for centuries was the dominant faith in Hindústan. The Bráhmans vainly attempted to supply the missing link between man and deity by representing their ancient sages as incarnations of Brahma, the mind-born sons of Brahma; beings who had emanated from the Supreme Soul as Athene had sprung from the intellect of Zeus. But the haughty Kshatriya, the wealthy Vaisya, and the oppressed Súdra, appear to have been alike estranged from the Bráhmans. The worship of ancient sages had no charm for men who were busily engaged in the practical duties of life; and thus the worship of the Supreme Soul rapidly resolved itself into a metaphysical dream.

It was at this epoch that the Bráhmans called in the aid of the gods of the Rig-Veda, and even the gods of the aboriginal races and ancient heroes of the Kshatriyas, as their allies against the power of Buddha. Men had apparently grown weary of the practical atheism of the Buddhists, and yearned after the worship of their time-honoured deities. Moreover Buddhism proved to be a religion for monks and not for soldiers; and the time came

when the Kshatriyas, the descendants of the old Vedic Arians, began to scoff at the Buddhist mendicant, and to engage in schemes of war and conquest. Meantime the struggle between the Brahman and the Buddhist, aggravated by the religious hate of centuries, burst forth into religious wars and persecutions of the burning and destroying type. But the story of this period still remains for investigation. It will suffice to say here that no records remain of the great conflict, save the cleared relics of Buddhist cities and monasteries, and a few vague traditions that in days of old the Buddhists of Hindustan and the Dekhan were driven beyond the seas to Burmah and Ceylon.

When this great conflict was nearly over, and when religious and political ideas in India were in a state of revolutionary chaos Valmiki appears to have composed his immortal poem of the Ramayana. The frame work of his story, as already indicated, was an old Vedic legend of the exile of a Rima who flourished in Hindustan, combined with a later narrative of the exploits of a Brahmanic champion of the same name, who had helped to drive the Buddhists out of the Dekhan. The people of the south, by whose assistance this Rama of the Dekhan had achieved his conquest, were popularly regarded as so many Monkeys and Bears, but Valmiki raised them to the rank of divine beings. In like manner the hostile Buddhists were declared to be Rikshasas or demons, and were identified with the Rikshasas or evil spirits of old Vedic tradition. Meantime Rama was raised to the highest rank of deity as an incarnation of Vishnu.

The conception of Vishnu, as it presents itself to

the mind of the Hindú, is one of the most important of all the religious ideas that have ever been formed by the people of India. An old Vedic personification, known as Vishnu, which was more or less connected with the primitive worship of the Sun, was invested with the attributes of the Supreme Spirit; and the most famous of the national heroes, such as Ráma and Káishna, and even the most popular of the old animal gods of the pre-Aryan races, such as the fish, the tortoise, the boar, and the lion, were associated with the worship of this Supreme Being by being represented as incarnations or avatars of the great god Vishnu. The complicated mythological system connected with the worship of Vishnu through his ten incarnations, will be treated in the third and concluding volume of the present history. It will suffice to state here that the idea which pervades the Rámáyana of Válmíki is that Ráma is an incarnation of Vishnu, who was sent into the world at the earnest entreaty of the Vedic deities, to deliver the Bráhmans from the oppressions of the Buddhists or Rákshasas. The plan of the Epic will be found simple enough; and it will be seen that the presence of supernatural details furnishes the same clue to the discovery of what is and what is not Vedic tradition, as it does in the story of the Mahá Bhárat. The success of the attempt of Válmíki to set up a god-man as a representative of the Supreme Being will of course be questioned by the European, who peruses the poem free from all the subjective influences of hereditary teaching and superstitious fear; but it cannot be denied by those who are aware that a hundred millions of human beings are imbued with an unquestioning faith in the divinity

of Rama, and the firm belief that such faith in the heart, accompanied by the frequent invocation of the holy name of Rama, is sufficient to secure eternal happiness for the soul in the heaven of Vishnu.

But although the historical student may find it necessary to analyze the process by which the national traditions of Rama have been converted into vehicles for the promulgation of a theological and ecclesiastical system, it by no means follows that the author of the Ramayana is to be regarded as a mere priestly impostor. On the contrary, the same high religious purpose, which characterizes other great Epics such as those of Homer and Milton is fully expressed in the Ramayana of Vilmiki. Here it may be remarked that the ordinary conception of the Epic, as an elaborate narrative in elevated poetry, in which free scope may be given to the imagination so long as a moral or religious end be kept in view, has led to a very imperfect estimate of the important part which has been played by the *Iliad* and *Paradise Lost* in the history of religious development. The true Epic is the creation of the bard who can elevate his intellect and imagination far above the jarring conflicts of his generation, and afford consolation to the soul in those eras of religious and political revolution, when the progress of human affairs seems entirely opposed to all ideas of a divine government of the universe of being. Such was the age of Milton, and such appears to have been the age alike of Homer and of Vilmiki.

The object of these three immortal bards thus appears to have been to exhibit and reconcile the relations between man and deity in accordance with the current religious belief of the ages in which they

respectively flourished. It has already been shown that the religious yearnings which are common to every race and creed, namely, the passionate longing to acquaint deity with our sufferings and sorrows, and to induce deity to take a direct and intelligent interest in our well-being, can never be satisfied with any monotheism, which takes the form of an abstract idea. But the *Iliad*, the *Paradise Lost*, and the *Rámáyana* have each furnished in turn a solution of the great religious enigma, the relations between God and man. The conception of these relations differs widely in each case, inasmuch as each one drew his theological ideas and personifications from a different mythological system. But still the same underlying conviction seems to have been common to all three, that a necessity existed for reconciling the ways of God to man. In the days of Homer the Greeks appear to have invoked and propitiated the Olympic deities much after the fashion in which the Vedic Aryans invoked and propitiated the personified gods of the *Rig-Veda*. Accordingly in dealing with the tale of Troy, which had apparently inflicted so much misery on Greek and Trojan, the popular mind was consoled by the representation that all the deities of Hellas had taken an active part in the events which preceded and accompanied the siege; and that all the sufferings and sorrows, which were associated with that contest, were to be ascribed to the warm interest which was taken by the national deities in the proceedings of the national heroes. Milton we know to have been cast upon an evil age, in which the religious mind found no consolation save what was to be derived from a living faith in Christianity.

The bard of *Paradise Lost* must have perceived that the Commonwealth had failed to save the nation from civil and religious oppression, and to his pure mind the restoration of the Stuarts must have been a restoration of the rule of the sons of Belial. Under such circumstances the Christian bard naturally sought to justify the ways of God to man, not by introducing the action of Deity into history, but by reproducing, with all the pomp and circumstance of Epic poetry, the sacred legends which were associated with the expulsion of the evil angels, the creation and fall of man and the final redemption of the human race. The task accomplished by *Vilmiki* was somewhat different. Like Homer, he drew the groundwork of his Epic from national traditions, and his divine personages from a national Pantheon, but he had to reproduce Vedic traditions in a Brahmanical dress, and to represent the human actions of Rāma as the divine actions of the incarnation of Viṣṇu. It will also be remarked that there is a considerable change in the deification as it appears in the story of the exile of Rāma of Ayodhyā, and in the story of the conquests of Rāma of the Dekhān. In the narrative of the exile the Vedic element predominates with its horse sacrifices and Swayamvaras, and whilst the language and incidents have been Brahmanized throughout with considerable skill, the deification of the hero is artificial and unsatisfactory. Rāma is indeed represented as a Hindu model of a good son and true husband, but not as a high ideal of youthful deity. Indeed the interest of this portion of the Rāmāyana turns almost entirely upon the mere human details, such as the picture of the city of Ayodhyā, the

Aswamedha which resulted in the birth of Ráma and his brethren, the marriage of Ráma and Sítá, the claim of Ráma to the succession on the throne, and the intrigues of his mother-in-law Kaikeyí by which those claims were set aside, and he himself condemned to many years' banishment in the jungle. The subsequent narrative of Ráma's conquest of Lanka is altogether of a different character. Here the human element almost disappears, and it is difficult to arrive at even glimpses of historical truth beneath the confused overgrowth of fable and exaggeration. Moreover the character of Ráma of the Dekhan appears to have differed widely from that of Ráma of Ayodhyá. The Dekhan hero was apparently a champion of the Bráhmans, but he was evidently cruel and unscrupulous in the attainment of his ends; and the bard often appears to labour under the feeling that it is necessary to explain away the conduct of this Ráma, and he does not always succeed in the attempt. The deification of the Ráma of the Dekhan is wild and fantastic, the product of a superstitious and oppressed age, when the popular mind could find no hope for relief excepting in the conception of a friendly warrior, invested with supernatural power and possessed of supernatural weapons. The reckless introduction of fabulous details tends to confirm the theory that the tradition of the exile and that of the conquest originated from different sources. Thus it is possible that the wanderings of years could carry a hero from Ayodhyá to Ceylon, as it has carried Hindú pilgrims for generations; but the notion of carrying back a warrior and his conquering army from Ceylon to Ayodhyá was more than the Hindú bard

could explain away. Consequently the conception was introduced of a large chariot, which moved through the air at the will of its driver, and passed like a winged city from the straits of Malabar to the banks of the Gogra. It is also curious to notice that the main plot of this latter tradition, namely, the abduction of Sita and the siege of Lanka, bears a strong resemblance to the abduction of Helen and the siege of Troy, saving that whilst the purity of the Hindu heroine was testified by the gods, and she was even then abandoned in the jungle on mere suspicion, the Spartan heroine yielded to every temptation, and was even then received back with favour by her first husband. Again, the war between Râma and the Rikshasas bears a similar resemblance to that war between the good and evil angels, which finds expression in *Paradise Lost*, and which appears to have been borrowed from those ancient legends of the war between Istan and Turan, good and evil, light and darkness, Ormuzd and Ahuman, which still linger in the primitive traditions of the Zoroastrian era.

The abridged version of the *Ramayana* now presented to the public is not derived exclusively from the poem of Valmiki, and indeed it is scarcely likely that the story of Râma's conquests, as related by Valmiki, could ever be rendered acceptable to European readers nor is such a process necessary for historical purposes. There are three *Ramayanas* which are supposed to have been respectively the works of Valmiki, Tulsee Dass, and Vyâsa. The *Râmâyana* of Valmiki, as translated by Messrs Carey and Marshman,<sup>3</sup> from the commencement of the

<sup>3</sup> The best thanks of the author are due to Mr George Smith of Scamptore



poem to the abduction of Sítá by Rávana, has been adopted with some revisions and modifications as the basis of the greater part of the present condensed version. The remainder is given in brief outline from the Bengali version. Moreover a few extracts have been introduced in the text from what is understood to be the north-western version, which furnish particulars not to be found in the poem of Válmiki, respecting the early life, education, and marriage of Ráma, and serve to illustrate the more modern ideas upon these subjects, which are current amongst the Hindús.<sup>4</sup> Again, throughout the present version considerable extracts have been added in the form of foot-notes from the work which is popularly ascribed to Vyása, and which is known as the *Adhy-átma Rámáyana*. These extracts will be found valuable from the light which they throw upon the modern belief in the deity of Ráma, but this important point will form a subject of further discussion in the third and concluding volume.<sup>5</sup>

The so-called history of the Brahmanic age, which occupies a large portion of the present volume, requires a few words of explanation. The previous volume opened with a sketch of the Vedic period, which, although somewhat brief, really contained all

---

for having kindly furnished him with a considerable number of sheets of Carey and Marshman's translation which had been printed but never published

<sup>4</sup> For this portion of the work I am much indebted to the assistance of the same young Sanskrit scholar, Baboo Obenash Chunder Ghose, who had helped me with the *Mahá Bháratá*. The young Baboo aided me in making a tolerably full translation, which has been subsequently filtered down to suit European tastes.

<sup>5</sup> For the use of this *Adhy-átma Rámáyana* I am indebted to Mr Alonzo Money of the Bengal Civil Service, who has in his possession a beautiful manuscript translation illustrated with native pictures, which appears to have been made about the end of the last century, and which for some months was kindly placed at my disposal

the results which could be gathered from really Vedic sources ; in other words, from the hymns of the Rig-Veda, so far as they had been translated by the late Professor H. II. Wilson. So far this sketch of the Vedic age served in some measure as a test wherewith to trace out such Vedic elements as could be discovered in the Epics, and to separate them from the Brahmanical interpolations with which they were closely intertwined. In the present history of the Brahmanic age this process has been carried much farther ; and consequently it will be found to throw a reflex light upon the Vedic age ; inasmuch as the main result of the critical inquiry into the so-called Brahmanic age is the separation of the ideas and institutions of the old Vedic period from those which prevailed in the later Brahmanic period. Hitherto these conflicting elements have been blended together in the national literature and belief of the Hindús, in the same way that they have been blended together in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana. The publication of the Hymns of the Rig-Veda first furnished the clue to this separation, inasmuch as they may be regarded as the most authoritative expression of the Vedic age, just as the laws of Manu may be regarded as the authoritative expression of the Brahmanic age which immediately succeeded. This comparison of the Hymns of the Rig-Veda with the Laws of Manu, has of course been carried out by the light of the data already gathered from the Epics, and from a tolerably comprehensive investigation of the Puranas ; and by this process results have been gained which may possibly be regarded as discoveries, or at any rate may perhaps be received by Sanskrit scholars as confirmatory of similar results which have been

worked out by comparative philology. It will be seen that from this simple comparison of the Hymns of the Rig Veda with the Laws of Manu, without any reference to the important results which have been worked out by the great schools of modern philology, it appears to be established that the Rishis belonged to the Vedic age, and the Bráhmans to the Brahmanic age; that polyandry, or the marriage of several brothers to one wife, which is explained away by the Brahmanical compilers of the Mahá Bhárata as purely exceptional and confined to the sons of Pandu, was in fact an old Vedic institution which finds expression in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; and that the Aswamedha, or sacrifice of a horse, and the Swayamvara, or self-choice of a husband by a marriageable maiden, were purely Vedic institutions; originally unknown to Brahmanism, and finding no place in the laws of Manu, but forming prominent features in Epic traditions, and being duly recognized in the Vedic Hymns. From these data it may be easily inferred, that if an investigation of the Brahmanic period can throw so much light upon the period which preceded it, so in like manner further materials for the earlier history of India may yet be gathered from an investigation of the ideas and institutions of the Buddhist period, and of the later age of Brahmanical revival through which the national mind has been slowly passing, since the downfall of Buddha in India, to emerge, it is to be hoped, in the dawn of a brighter and purer day.

J. TALBOYS WHELER.

*Calcutta, 12th January, 1869.*

# HISTORY OF INDIA.

---

## PART IV.

### THE RÁMÁYANA.

---

#### CHAPTER I

##### THE CITY OF AYODHYÁ.

THE story of the Rámáyana opens at the famous city of Ayodhyá, the modern Oude, which is situated upon the river Sarayú, the modern Gogra, about three hundred and fifty miles to the south east of the great city of Delhi. In the present day the city of Ayodhyá has disappeared, and little is to be seen of the ancient site beyond a shapeless heap of ruins, a mass of rubbish and jungle, which stretches along the southern bank of the Gogra river. But in olden time this city was one of the largest and most magnificent in Hindústan,<sup>1</sup> and its memory is still preserved in

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Opening scene  
of the Rámá-  
yana at Ayod-  
hyá, the modern  
Oude

Present appearance  
of the  
ruins

Ancient magni-  
ficence

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Geographical  
position indica-  
tive of Aryan  
advance from  
Delhi to Oude

The Raj of  
Kosala

Lack of family  
traditions  
Rajas descended  
from the Sun

The Sun  
descended from  
Brahma.

Earliest tradi-  
tion connected  
with Dasaratha,  
the father of  
Ráma.

every quarter of the Indian peninsula. Its geographical position is highly significant of the progress of Aryan invasion between two great epochs, namely, that of the war of Bhárata, and that of the birth of Ráma. In the Mahá Bhárata the Aryans had apparently advanced no farther towards the south-east than the neighbourhood of Delhi; but in the Rámáyana they seem to have established a large and substantial Raj in the very centre of Hindústán, and to have founded a metropolis which must ever be famous in the ancient history of India.

The Raj thus indicated was known as the Raj of Kosala. Its boundaries cannot be strictly defined, but it evidently covered a considerable area. In one direction it certainly stretched from the banks of the Gogra to those of the Ganges; for there is distinct mention of a frontier town which was seated on the Ganges, and which separated the territory of Kosala from the country of the Bhils. The early history of the Raj of Kosala is, however, almost a blank. The Rajas claimed to be descendants of the Sun, in the same way that the Rajas of Bhárata claimed to be descended from the Moon; and the Bráhmans improved the genealogy by representing the Sun to have sprung from a Rishi named Kásyapa, who in his turn was the grandson of Brahma. Thus while the Rajas of Kosala retained their ancient claim of being descendants of the Sun, an attempt was made in the national epic to represent them as children of the peculiar deity of the Bráhmans. But scarcely a trace of an authentic family tradition is to be found in the Rámáyana earlier than Dasaratha, the father of Ráma; and in this respect the story of Ráma differs somewhat widely from that of the Kauravas and Pándavas. The poem com-

ances with a glowing description of the Raj of Kosala, the city and people of Ayodhyá, and the virtues and accomplishments of the reigning Mahá-  
 ra, the mighty Dasaratha; and this description may now be presented almost exactly as it stands in the original Sanskrit, with all those Brahmanical exaggerations of ancient Hindú glory and caste distinction, which could scarcely have had any existence excepting in the profuse imagination of a Brahmanical bard:—

HISTORY OF  
 INDIA.  
 PART IV.

Commencement  
 of the  
 Rámáyana

In ancient times there was a great country named Kosala; and that country was happy and joyous, and abounded in cattle, and grain, and riches. And in that country on the banks of the river Sarayú, was a famous city named Ayodhyá; and there all the houses were large and beautifully arranged, and the streets were always watered, and there were very many temples richly decorated, and stately palaces with domes to the tops of mountains, with pleasant gardens full of fruits and flowers, and shady groves of trees loaded with delicious fruits, and above all there were the sacred and resplendent chariots of the gods. And the tanks in that city were magnificent beyond all description, and covered with the white lotos; and the bees thirsted for the honey, and the wind drove the white lotoses from the bees, as modesty drives away the coy bride from her husband. And the ducks and the geese swam upon the surface of the tanks, or dived under the clear waters; and the brilliant kingfishers were both as they beheld their own reflection in the bright wave, and under pretence of catching the fish they beat the water with their wings. And the plantain trees round the tanks were bending with the weight of the fruit, like reverential pupils bowing at the feet of their preceptors. The whole city was adorned with gems, so that it resembled a mine of jewels, and it was like unto Amarávatí, the city of Indra. It was perfumed with flowers and incense, and decked out with gorgeous banners; and it was ever filled with the sweet

Description of  
 the Raj of  
 Kosala and city  
 of Ayodhyá.

Houses, street-  
 temples, palace  
 gardens, groves  
 and chariots of  
 the gods.

The tanks

The lotoses.

The wind and  
 the bees

The ducks and  
 geese.

The kingfishers

The plantain  
 trees

Gems.

Flowers,  
 incense, and  
 banners.

HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV	sound of music, the sharp twanging of bows, and the holy chaunting of Vedic hymns. The city was encompassed
Fortifications. The moat	round about with very lofty walls, which were set in with variously coloured jewels, and all round the walls was a moat filled with water, deep and impassable, and the city
The gates	gates were strongly barred, and the porticoes of the gates and the towers on the walls were filled with archers, and
The guards	stored with weapons of every description. Every quarter of the city was guarded by mighty heroes, who were as strong as the eight gods who rule the eight points of the universe, and as vigilant as the many headed serpents who watch at the entrance of the regions below.
The people of Ayodhyā.	The city of Ayodhyā was full of people, and every one was healthy and happy, and every one was well fed upon the best of rice, and every merchant in that city had store-houses filled with jewels from every quarter of the earth.
The Brāhmanas and the other classes of disciples viz	The Brāhmanas constantly kept alive the sacrificial fire, and were deeply read in the Vedas and Vedāṅgas, and were endowed with every excellent quality, they were profusely generous, and were filled with truth, zeal, and compassion, equal to the great sages, and their minds and passions were under perfect control. All these Brahman sages had three
Servants	classes of disciples, first, the youths who served them as
Students	servants serve their masters, then the students who were
Brahmachāris.	receiving instruction, and then the Brahmachāris who maintained themselves and their preceptors by collecting
The Kshatriyas.	arms. Next to the Brāhmanas were the Kshatriyas, who were all warriors, and were constantly exercised in the practice of arms in the presence of the Mahārāja. After
The Vaisyas	these were the Vaisyas, or merchants, who sold goods of every description, and who came from every corner of the
The Sūdras	earth. Last of all were the Sūdras, who were ever engaged in devotion to the gods, and in the service of the Brāhmanas. Besides these there were jewellers and artificers, singing men and dancing women, chariotcers and footmen, potters and smiths, painters and oilmen, sellers of flowers and
Virtues of the people	sellers of betelnut. In all that city of well fed and happy people, no man was without learning, or practised a calling

that did not belong to his family or caste, or dwelt in a mean habitation, or was without kinsmen. There were no misers, nor liars, nor thieves, nor tale-bearers, nor swindlers, nor boasters; none that were arrogant, malevolent, mean, or who lived at another's expense; and no man who had not abundance of children, or who lived less than a thousand years. The men fixed their affections upon their wives only; the women were chaste and obedient to their husbands; and all were patient and faithful in the discharge of their several duties. No one was without a marriage crown, or ear-rings, or a necklace, or jewels for the hands. No one was poor, or wore tarnished ornaments; and no one was without fine raiment and perfumes, or was unclean, or fed on unclean things, or neglected the sacrifice, or gave less than a thousand rupees to the Bráhmans. All the women in Ayodhyá were extremely beautiful, and endowed with wit, sweetness, prudence, industry, and every good quality; and their ornaments were always bright and shining, and their apparel was always clean and without a stain. In all Ayodhyá there was not a man or woman who was unfortunate, or foolish, or wretched, or uneasy, or diseased, or afflicted with fear, or disloyal to the Mahárajá. All were devoted to truth, practised hospitality, and paid due honour to their superiors, their ancestors, and the gods. All the four castes—the Bráhmans, the Kshatriyas, the Vaisyas, and the Súdhas, were devoted to the Mahárajá. No caste intermarried with any other caste; and there were no Chandálas<sup>2</sup> in all the city, either by birth or as a punishment for crime.

In the midst of that great city was the magnificent and resplendent palace of the Mahárajá, encompassed by walls, which were so high that the birds could not fly over them, and so strong that no beast could force its way through them. And there were two gates in the palace walls, one on each side; and over the gateways the music of the moko-

Palace of the  
Mahárajá

Trumpets and  
Drumming



HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Throne of the  
Mahārāja

Palace guards.

Virtues of  
Mahārāja  
Dasaratha.

Virtues of his  
Ministers

Eight special  
Counsellors

Two priests and  
preceptors

bat was playing at every quarter of the day and night ; and within the walls and round about the palace were many temples to the gods, and hundreds of treasuries filled with treasure. In the midst of the palace was the throne of the Mahārāja, set upon pillars, and many other pillars were round about the throne, and all the pillars and the throne were covered with precious stones. And the palace was guarded by thousands of warriors who were as fierce as flames of fire, and as watchful as the lions that guard their dens in the mountains.

In this palace reigned the mighty Dasaratha, the Mahārāja of the country of Kosala, and of the city of Ayodhyā ; and he was the son of Ajā and descendant of Ikshvāku. And Dasaratha was very wise in the Vedas and Vedāṅgās,\* and had great foresight and ability, and was beloved by all his people. He was a perfect charioteer, a royal sage, famous throughout the three worlds, the conqueror of his enemies, ever loving justice, and having a perfect command over all his passions. In riches and magnificence he was equal to Indra, and he protected his subjects like another Manu. In supplying the wants and necessities of the people, he proved himself to be their true father, rather than the real father who only begot them ; and he took tribute from his subjects, not for his own use, but to return it to them again with greater beneficence, as the sun drinks up the salt ocean to return it to the earth as vivifying rain. His Ministers were likewise possessed of every excellence, wise, capable of understanding a nod, and constantly devoted to their beloved Mahārāja. And Dasaratha had eight special Counsellors who were ever engaged upon his affairs, and the chief of all was Sumantra,† and his two chosen priests and preceptors‡ were Vasīsthā and Vāmadeva. Possessed of such Ministers

\* The Vedāṅgas are not distinct treatises like the four Vedas, but sciences. Thus the six Vedāṅgas comprise (1) pronunciation, (2) metre, (3) grammar, (4) explanation of words, (5) astronomy, and (6) ceremonial. Muller's *Hist. of Sanskrit Lit.* p. 103 et seq.

† These two chosen Brāhmins, who are here called priests and preceptors, were perhaps Parohitas or family priests, although there are some indications that Vasīsthā was regarded as a Guru.

and priests Dasaratha ruled the world virtuously, and rendered it very happy. Inspecting the world by his spies, as the sun inspects it by his rays, the great Dasaratha found no person of hostile mind, and he shone resplendent and illuminated the whole earth.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The foregoing description of a city, a people, and a Mahárajá is perhaps without a parallel in the whole range of Brahmanical literature. Ayodhyá is the Hindú ideal of perfection, in which the Kshatriyas and Bráhmans alike performed their respective duties of protection and worship, and the twanging of bows was heard as constantly as the chaunting of Vedic hymns. It was a city of large houses, well-watered streets, decorated temples, stately palaces, pleasant gardens, shady groves, spacious tanks, and impregnable fortifications. A poetical sympathy with external nature is also displayed both here and in other portions of the Rámáyana, which is singularly illustrative of the dreamy character of the Hindú, and is rendered doubly curious from its occasional subordination to Brahmanical ideas. The Brahmanical conception of marriage involves a display of extreme modesty on the part of a girl wife; and thus the wind that drives away the white lotos from the thirsty bees, is likened to the modesty which drives away a coy bride from her ardent husband. Again, the respect due to Brahmanical instructors is indirectly enforced by the simile that the plantain trees bent with the weight of their fruit, like reverential pupils bowing at the feet of their preceptors. Further on the three classes of disciples or pupils are distinctly indicated, namely, the youths who acted as servants, the students who received instruction, and the Brahmacháris who col-

Review of the foregoing description of a Rajá a people, and a Mahárajá.  
Hindú ideal of a city

Poetical sympathy with external nature subordinate to Brahmanical ideas

Coy brides.

Reverential pupils

Disciples of the Bráhmans

HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV	lected alms for themselves and their preceptors. <sup>5</sup>
The people	The description of the people is equally significant. They possessed every moral and religious virtue; they were learned, well fed upon the best of rice, free from disease, and lived for a thousand years. Every man had abundance of children, jewels, and clean raiment. Above all, every one was so rich and so pious, that no one ever gave less than a thousand
Stress laid upon caste distinctions	rupees to the Bráhmans. A great stress is also laid upon caste distinctions. Every man belonged to a family and caste; no man followed a calling that did not belong to his caste, and no child born of mixed castes was to be found throughout the city.
Model of a Hindú Mahá- raja.	As for the Mahárajá, although he subsequently appears in a very different light, he is praised here as possessing every virtue, military and Brahmanical. He
Military and religious character.	was at once famous as a charioteer and as a sage, a mighty warrior and a controller of his passions, endowed with great foresight, and well versed in the Vedas and Vedángas. His court was of course intended as a model for all Hindú Rajas to follow.
His Counsellors	He had eight chosen Counsellors, of whom his charioteer Sumantra was the chief; and he had two
His two Purohitas	priests, who acted on all occasions as his particular guides and advisers. His palace was magnificent and resplendent, but in describing the walls the Brahmanical bard has indulged in a simile which
Real nature of the palace enclosure	furnishes a glimpse of the reality. They were so tall that the birds could not fly over them, and so strong that no beast could force its way through them. From this it is evident that the walls could not have

<sup>5</sup> The name of Brahmachári is generally applied to all religious students whilst living under a Bráhmaṇ master or Guru. All Brahmacháris wait upon their masters, study the Vedas, and collect alms.

been made of brick or stone; for in that case the attempt of a beast to force his way through them would never have entered the mind of the bard. In all probability the palace was surrounded by a hedge, which was sufficiently strong to keep out wild beasts or stray cattle. In other respects however, the picture is sufficiently imposing. The treasures, which probably contained the land-revenue of rice and other grain, were placed for security within the inclosure;<sup>o</sup> and little temples to the different gods, each perhaps containing a single image before which the worshippers performed his devotions, were set up in the same area. In the middle of the palace was the throne of the Mahárája raised upon pillars, and surrounded by pillars, and both the pillars and the throne are said to have been adorned with precious stones. The statement that the Mahárája inspected the world with his spies, as the sun inspects it with his rays, may seem a dubious mode of government to the European; but a strict and universal system of espionage is perfectly in accordance with Hindú ideas, and its organization was considered to be one of the first duties of a Hindú sovereign.

Treasures and  
temples within  
the enclosureThrone in the  
centre of the  
palaceHindú idea of  
the necessity for  
spies

---

<sup>o</sup> In ancient times the land revenue seems to have been generally paid in kind, the Raja being entitled to a certain share of the grain, which was collected at harvest time

## CHAPTER II

### THE HORSE SACRIFICE OF MAHĀRAJA DASARATHA

#### HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV

Performance of  
the Aswamedha  
to obtain a son

THE first act of Mahārāja Dasaratha which is recorded in the Rāmāyana was the performance of an Aswamedha, or horse sacrifice, to obtain a son. Here it is curious to observe that the rite is invested with a meaning totally different to that which appears in the Aswamedha described in the Mahābhārata. The horse was loosened for an entire year but no allusion whatever is made to any conquests over the neighbouring Rajas, nor to any other incident which would connect the ceremony with an assertion of sovereignty. The Aswamedha was performed for the sole and obvious purpose of procuring sons, and this point will be discussed at length after the ceremonial has been described. There is also a curious episode in the narrative which will require special notice. It is the legend of a young Rishi who had passed the earlier years of his life in the hermitage of his father in the jungle, and who had consequently never seen the face of a woman. Thus youthful Rishi was subsequently enticed by a number of young courtesans to accompany them to the city of Anga, where he married the daughter of the Raja, and was subsequently engaged to perform the Aswamedha of Mahārāja Dasaratha. With this brief

Episode of a  
Rishi who had  
never seen a  
woman

Narrative of the  
Aswamedha of  
Dasaratha.

introduction, the narrative of the horse sacrifice may be related as follows :—

INDIA.  
PART IV.

Now the Mahárája had three Ránís, and their names were Kausalyá, Kaikeyí, and Sumitrá ; but no son was born to him to perpetuate his race. So he took seven hundred and fifty women into his palace, but still none of them gave birth to a son ; and the thought arose in the mind of the Mahárája that he would perform an Aswamedha sacrifice, and thus propitiate the gods to give him a man-child. And the Mahárája told to his priests and preceptors that he would sacrifice the horse, and the priests bestowed great praises upon Dasaratha, and said to him :—" Let all things necessary be prepared, and the horse be let loose, and let a place for the sacrifice be appointed on the north bank of the river Sarayú : And you, O Mahárája, who have formed this holy resolution to perform an Aswamedha, will assuredly obtain the sons whom you desire." Dasaratha then rejoiced greatly, and he ordered his Counsellors to do as his preceptors had commanded ; and he went to his beloved Ránís and said :—" I will perform a sacrifice to obtain a son ; do you therefore commence the preliminary rites." And the beautiful faces of the Ránís brightened at his words, as the lotus is brightened at the coming of the spring.

The Mahárája determines to perform an Aswamedha to obtain a son.

Acquiescence of his Bráhmaṇ preceptors.

Delight of the three Ránís.

Then Sumantra, who was the chief of the Counsellors, said to Dasaratha :—" It was predicted in the ancient chronicles that you should perform an Aswamedha to procure a son, and that the sacrifice should be offered by the Rishi Sringa. Now Sringa was born in the forest, and lived in the hermitage of his father, who was a great sage ; and he never saw any man save his father ; and he never saw any woman, young or old. And it came to pass that the Raja of Anga desired to give his daughter Sántá in marriage to Sringa ; so he sent young courtesans into the forest, and they allured Sringa away to the city of the Raja of Anga ; and Sringa is still dwelling with the Raja of Anga."

Ancient prophecy that the Aswamedha was to be performed by Rishi Sringa.

The Mahárája replied :—" Let the story of Sringa be told at length ! " And Sumantra told the story thus :—

Legend of the Rishi Sringa who seen a

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Drought caused  
by the wicked-  
ness of the Raja  
of Anga.

The Raja  
advised by the  
Brahmans to  
marry his  
daughter to  
Pishirnga.  
Refusal of the  
Rajas to do so  
to bring Rishi  
Sringa from the  
jungle.

Damsels sent to  
entice Sringa  
from his father's  
hermitage.

Gambols of the  
damsels in the  
absence of  
Sringa's father.

Sringa invites  
them into the  
hermitage.

"In the Rāj of Anga there was a great drought, because of the wickedness of Lomapīda, who was the Rāj of Anga. And Rāj Lomapīda called to the Brahmans, and said — 'You are learned in the Vedās, and acquainted with the customs of men, tell me then, I pray you, how I may expiate my sin that the rain may again fall upon the land.' The Brahmans answered the Rāj — 'Bring the young Rishi Sringa out of his father's hermitage, and give him your daughter Sānta in marriage according to the ordinance.' The Rāj agreed, but none of all his servants would go into the jungle and bring away Sringa, lest the father of Sringa should see them and pronounce a curse upon them. So the Brahmans and Counsellors took counsel together, and they remembered that Sringa was an inhabitant of the forest, and that he had never beheld the face of a woman. Accordingly by their counsel the Rāj prepared large boats, and planted fruit trees and sandal trees therein, and filled them with perfumed liquors and delicious fruits, and he collected together a number of beautiful young damsels and sent them in the boats to the hermitage of the Rishi to entice away Sringa from the abode of his father. When the damsels came to the hermitage they trembled with fear lest the father of Sringa should discover them, and they hid themselves in the forest beneath the wide spreading creepers and climbing plants, but when they learned that the sage had gone out of his hermitage, and left his son alone, they came out of their hiding place and went before the hut, and they were adorned with necklaces of flowers, and with musical bells upon their ankles, and they began to sing and play in the view of Sringa, and they indulged in many sportive gambols, and danced together, and pushed one another about, and threw garlands of flowers at each other and filled the air with music and perfumes. And Sringa, was amazed at the sight of beings of such slender waists and exquisite adornments, and when the damsels saw his surprise they sung a soft slow air, and approached him, and said — 'Who is your father, and why do you wander in this forest?' Sringa replied — 'My father is a great sage of

the family of Káśyapa, and his name is Vibhándaka: Why do you come here thus suddenly? Enter into the hermitage, I pray you, and I will entertain you all.' The damsels then went into the hut, and Śringa offered them seats, and brought water to wash their feet, and gave them fruits and roots; and they smiled upon him, and said in soft accents:—'O sinless son of the sage, if it be agreeable to you, eat now some of the fruits of our own abode!' And they gave him delicious sweetmeats resembling fruits, and wine as sweet as honey; and they smiled upon him and caressed him, and putting their fragrant mouths to his ears they whispered soft words to him; and when they departed they pointed to their boats in which they abode, and which were very near the hermitage.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Śringa  
fascinated with  
sweetmeats,  
wine, and  
caresses

"When it was evening time the sage Vibhándaka returned to the hermitage, and he saw that his son Śringa was very melancholy and absorbed in thought, and he said:—'Why do you not rejoice at my coming? I perceive, my son, that you are immersed in a sea of anxiety, so tell me why you are changed.' Then Śringa said:—'O divine father, some men with beautiful eyes came here and embraced me very often, and sung soft and ravishing music, and sported before me, and moved their eye-brows in a surprising manner.' The sage replied:—'O my son, the Rákshasas have come to you in this manner to disturb your devotion; and it is not proper for you to trust them in any way.' The sage thus comforted his son, and he stayed in the hermitage all that night, but when it was morning he returned again to the forest.

Alarm of  
Śringa's father  
on discovering  
what had  
occurred.

"Then Śringa, seeing that his father had gone out, went away to the boats which the damsels had pointed out to him, and they entertained him as before, and led him to a very pleasant boat, and seated him therein, and carried him away to the city of Anga. And when Śringa entered the city, the clouds became black with rain, and Raja Lomapáda went out to meet the young Bráhmaṇ who had thus brought the rain, and worshipped him with his head bowing to the earth, and presented him with water for his feet, and with the

Śringa carried  
away to Anga  
by the damsels.

Rain falls on  
the approach of  
Śringa.



HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Sringa married  
to the Raja's  
daughter Sánta.

argha; and the Raja then with serene mind gave his lotos-eyed daughter Sántá in marriage to Sringa. And the father of Sringa, by the force of his devotions, knew all that had taken place, and he dismissed all anxiety from his mind, and abode in the hermitage as before."

Review of the  
foregoing  
episode of Rishi  
Sringa

Power of pro-  
curing rain  
assumed by the  
Brahmans

Indra, the Vedic  
deity who sent  
rain

Brahmans  
assert a supe-  
riority to Indra.

Brahmanical  
assumption in  
the legend of  
Sringa.

The foregoing episode is a specimen of those amusing stories which seem to have been occasionally converted by the Bráhmans into vehicles for the promulgation of their own peculiar ideas. The real object of the legend is to enforce the belief that drought is occasioned by the sins of a Raja, and that a young Bráhman Rishi could produce rain. It is perhaps scarcely necessary to dwell upon the vital importance of seasonable rains in every quarter of India. A long-continued drought implies the greatest calamity that can befall a nation. The Ryot loses his crop, the Raja loses his revenue, and parents and children are literally starving. In ancient times the god of the firmament was Indra; and the hymns of the Rig-Veda are filled with prayers to Indra for rain, or with praises of Indra as the giver of rain. But one of the earliest means by which the Bráhmans established their ascendancy over the masses was by arrogating to themselves a power to bring down rain, which was superior to that of Indra.<sup>1</sup> In the legend of Sringa the Bráhmans have endeavoured to enforce this view; and by their own showing appear to have taken a singular advantage of the superstitious fears of the Raja on account of the drought. They not only declared

<sup>1</sup> The legend of Deraynni (see vol. 1, page 503) contains a curious picture of the arrogant pretensions of a Bráhman to bring down rain by the efficacy of his incantations, and of the ludicrous alarm of the Raja and his Council, lest he should depart out of the Raj, and leave them to procure rain by their own devices.

that the drought was occasioned by his sins, or in other words by his derelictions from Brahmanical laws and observances, but also urged that he could only expiate his sins by giving his daughter in marriage to the young Rishi; and the subsequent appearance of Sringa simultaneously with the rain cloud must have confirmed the general belief in the rain procuring powers of the Bráhmans. The means by which Sringa was induced to leave the hermitage of his father are more than questionable, but the idea that they involved any immorality does not appear to have crossed the mind of the Brahmanical author.<sup>2</sup>

Unconscious immorality in the temptation of Sringa

Having thus disposed of the episode respecting Sringa, the main narrative of the Aswamedha may be resumed as follows. —

Narrative of the Aswamedha resumed

Now when Sumantra had related to Dasaratha the story of the Rishi Sringa, he said to the Mahárája —“ O Rája of Rájas, go now to the city of Anga, and bring hither the Rishi Sringa and his wife Sántí, and appoint Sringa to be your own Guru ” So Dasaratha took counsel of his priest Vasishtha, and with his approval he went away to the delightful city of Anga, and was entertained for eight days by Rája Lomapáda, and having obtained the consent of Lomapáda he returned to his own city of Ayodhyá, taking

The Mahárája goes to Anga and brings Sringa to Ayodhyá.

<sup>2</sup> A similar legend has been adopted by the Buddhists. It is told not of Sringa, but of his grandfather Kásyapa, and is intended to enforce the sin of animal sacrifices. Kásyapa had acquired great religious merit by strictly keeping all the Buddhist precepts, and the Rája of Benares sent a nobleman to request him to come and offer a sacrifice in his behalf of all kinds of animals from the elephant downwards. Kásyapa refused, upon which the Rája sent his daughter in charge of the nobleman, to tempt the Rishi by offering him half the Ráj and the hand of the Princess if he would comply. The scruples of the Rishi were overcome by the sight of the Rája's daughter, and he hastened to the place of sacrifice, but just as he lifted up his hand against the elephant, the affrighted beast set up a loud lamentation, in which all the other animals joined. This brought the Rishi to his senses, and he threw down the knife and fled back to the forest, and resumed his religious devotions. See Hardy's *Manual of Buddhism*, p. 50

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

with him the Rishi Srīṅga and his wife Sāntā<sup>2</sup>. Then the Maharaja approached Srīṅga with obeisance and adoration, and appointed him to be chief priest or Hotri in the Aswamedha

Preparat on for  
loosening the  
horse.

When the dewy season had passed away, and the spring had arrived, Srīṅga requested the Mahārāja to collect all the things necessary for the loosening of the horse, and to bring together Vasīsthā and Vāmādeva, and all the most excellent of the Brahmins. And when the Brahmins had all assembled the Maharaja paid them respectful homage, and spoke to them as follows —“ Although I have been ever most desirous of offspring, none has ever been granted me. I have therefore determined to perform an Aswamedha, and through the favour of the illustrious Rishi Srīṅga, and of you, O Brahmins, I intend at this time to sacrifice the horse. In this thing, therefore, I pray you to be gracious to me your humble dependant.” At these words Vasīsthā and the other Brahmins cried out “ Excellent! excellent!” And they did obeisance to the Mahārāja and shouted forth his praise. Then the Mahārāja said to Sumāntra and his other Counsellors —“ Let abundance of all things necessary for the sacrifice be speedily provided by you under the direction of these Brāhmins. Let the horse be untied and suffered to go wherever he pleases, accompanied by a Brāhman.” And all the preparations were made as the Mahārāja had commanded and on the night of the full moon of the month Choitra, the horse was let loose for an entire year, and the preliminary ceremonies were all performed.

Respectful  
homage of the  
Mahārāja to the  
Brāhmins

The Mahārāja's  
directions to his  
Counsellors

Loosening of  
the horse

Preparations for  
the sacrifice of  
the horse

Now when the year was fully over, and the spring had again arrived, the horse was brought back to the city of

<sup>2</sup> It is stated in the Ramayana that Sāntā was only the adopted daughter of the Raja of Anga and that her real father was Mahārāja Dasaratha. But the passage must be regarded as an interpolation merely intended to associate the father of Rāma with the family of Kasyapa, of whom Srīṅga was the grandson. The adoption of daughters is foreign to Hindū ideas excepting perhaps in the case of dancing girls.

<sup>3</sup> The statement that the horse was accompanied by a Brāhman and not, as in the Aswamedha of Yudhishtira, by a warrior at the head of an army is a curious instance of the Brahmanisation of the description of the ancient rite.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Second sacrifice  
performed by  
Rishi Śrīga  
Assembling of  
the gods

The gods  
receive the  
share and  
disappear

The gods pray  
to Brahma for  
protection  
against Ravana  
Ravana  
rejoiced  
that he was  
invulnerable to  
the gods and  
made the gods  
his slaves

After this Rishi Śrīga said to the Maharyu — "I will perform another sacrifice to secure you a son." And the Rishi proceeded to do as he had said. And there were collected all the gods, together with the Gandharyas, or celestial musicians, and the Siddhas, or saints who dwell in the sky, and the seven celestial Rishis, [and there came Brahma, the sovereign of the gods, together with Śiva and Vishnu,] and there also came Indra, the glorious one, surrounded by the Maruts. Then the Rishi began the sacrifice according to the ordinance, and supplicated the assembled deities that they would be pleased to grant four renowned sons to the Mahārāja. And the gods replied — "Be it so, O Brahman, for thou art ever to be regarded by us as men regard a Raja." So saying, the gods received their shares of the oblation, and then disappeared with Indra at their head.

Now when Indra and the gods left the place of sacrifice, they proceeded to the heaven of Brahma, the lord of man kind and giver of blessings, and they went before Brahma with joined hands, and addressed him thus — "O Brahma, that Rākshasa, named Ravana, to whom in your kindness you granted the blessing that he should be invulnerable to the gods and demons, has in his great pride oppressed all the universe, and deprived the gods of their shares of the sacrifices. O divine one, save us from Ravana, who fills the world with noise and tumult, and who has made the gods his slaves. By his power he has delivered his subjects, the Rākshasas, from the sway of Yama, and made Yama himself the cutter of grass for his steeds. He has compelled the Sun to shine mildly over his city of Lankā, and the Moon to be always at the full throughout his Raj. The six Seasons attend him as his servants, and appear whenever he commands them. Agni burns not in his presence, and Vāyu blows gently in Lankā. He has compelled his brother, Kuber to quit Lanka, and take refuge in the Kailāsa mountain. No one can perform a sacrifice through fear of him. He is al-

\* This passage is so evidently an interpolation that it is inserted in brackets. It will be seen presently that when the gods left the sacrifice they proceeded first to the heaven of Brahma and then to the heaven of Vishnu in order to propitiate those deities.

ways oppressing the gods, the Bráhmans, and the cows: He has taken away several of our wives by force: Secured by your blessing, he treats us with disrespect and has no fear for us: O Brahma, we pray you to devise a scheme for delivering us from the oppression of this Rávana.”<sup>6</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Brahma, hearing these words, conducted Indra and all the gods to the ocean of milk, the abode of Vishnu; and the gods propitiated Vishnu, whom they could not see, with loud praises. Then Vishnu the glorious, the lord of the world, arrayed in yellow raiment with ornaments of pure gold, riding upon Garura as the sun upon a cloud, appeared with his shell, chakra, mace, and lotos in his four hands; and his wife Lakshmi was sitting upon his knees. And all the gods fell prostrate before him, and choked with grief they thus addressed him with joined hands:—“O Vishnu, you who are able to remove the afflictions of those who are distressed, we entreat you to be our sanctuary: You are the lord of this universe, and you already know the reason of our coming; and we only give utterance to our wants that we may relieve ourselves from the burden which lies heavily upon our minds: Brahma has blessed Rávana the Rákshasa with a life which cannot be taken away by any celestial being; and Rávana in his pride has taken advantage of this blessing to oppress the gods, the Bráhmans, and the cows: Brahma is unable to recall the blessing which he has bestowed upon Rávana, and you are our only resource: Save us and your creation from the oppression of Rávana!”

Brahma conducts the gods to the abode of Vishnu in the sea of milk

Vishnu appears upon Garura with Lakshmi upon his knees

Prayer of the gods to Vishnu against the oppression of Rávana.

At this prayer, Vishnu smiled, and said:—“Be not terrified; I have already devised a scheme for delivering you from the oppression of Rávana: In his pride Rávana would not request Brahma to secure his life from men and monkeys, for he thought in his heart that they were beneath his notice: I will take advantage of this omission, and cause the destruction of Rávana without casting aside the blessing

Vishnu promises to overthrow Rávana by mortals and monkeys.

<sup>6</sup> The ancient gods of the Vedas are here represented as supplicating Brahma, whose worship is of more modern origin, and thus virtually acknowledging his superiority. Yama is death; Agni is fire; Vayu is the wind; and Kavera is wealth. The Asuras and Danavas were aboriginal tribes, who were popularly regarded as demons.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

---

which has been bestowed upon him by Brahma I will go to Ayodhya and divide myself into four parts, and take my birth as the four sons of Maharaja Dasaratha. Thus by becoming man I shall conquer in battle Ravana, the terror of the universe, who is invulnerable to the gods, go you mean time upon the earth, and assume the shape of monkeys and bears that you may render me service in my battle with Ravana."

The gods  
become incar-  
nate as  
monkeys,

The gods, hearing those words, rejoiced exceedingly, and they sounded the praises of Vishnu, and went their way and did as he had commanded them.

Appearance of  
an emanation  
from Brahma.

Meanwhile the Rishi Sringeri had performed the sacrifice for obtaining sons for Maharaja Dasaratha, and when he had finished, celestial music was sounded in the heavens, and a divine being came out of the fire arrayed in incomparable splendour, and he was as lofty as a mountain, as mighty as a tiger, as bright as the ardent flame, and his shoulders were like those of the lion. This wondrous being was clothed in red, and he wore ornaments on his hands, and on his neck was a chain of twenty seven pearls, and his teeth resembled the stars in heaven. Thus glowing in brightness, this celestial being held in both hands, like a beloved wife, a large golden vessel filled with the divine payasa, the rice and milk of the immortal gods. This celestial being said to the Rishi Sringeri, who was the Hotri at the sacrifice — "O Sage, I am an emanation of Brahma come hither to you. Do you receive this vessel of payasa from me, and present it to the Maharaja." The wise Rishi replied — "Be pleased yourself to deliver this surprising vessel to the Maharaja." Then the emanation of Brahma spoke thus to Dasaratha — "O Maharaja, I present to you this food of ambrosial taste, it is the fruit of the sacrifice. Receive O Maharaja this payasa prepared by the gods which ensures prosperity. Let it be eaten by your beautiful consorts and from them you will then obtain the sons for whom you have performed the sacrifice." And the Maharaja bowed his head, and received the golden vessel full of celestial food which had been given by the gods, and

Presents a cup  
of son produc-  
ing payasa to  
the Maharaja.

Joy of the  
Maharaja

he rejoiced like a poor man who has obtained wealth; and the emanation of Brahma became invisible to mortal eye.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

The apartments of the ladies of the Mahárajá were now illumined with joy, as the atmosphere is illumined by the bright autumnal moon; and the Mahárajá entered therein with the son-producing páyasa, and he gave the half to Kausalyá and the other half to Kaikeyí; but when Sumitrá came forward, the Mahárajá requested his two elder Ránís to give her a portion of their own shares. And Kausalyá and Kaikeyí each divided her portion with Sumitrá, so that whilst they each had one quarter of the páyasa, Sumitrá had two quarters. And when the Ránís had eaten of the sacrificial food, they each one conceived; and the Mahárajá, beholding his wives about to become mothers, enjoyed a pleasure of mind equal to that of Vishnu when adored by Indra and the sages. After this the Ránís bore four sons; Kausalyá gave birth to Ráma, and Kaikeyí to Bharata; and Sumitrá having received two quarters of the páyasa food gave birth to two sons; from the quarter which she received from Kausalyá she gave birth to Lakshmana, who became the ever faithful friend of Ráma; and from the quarter which she received from Kaikeyí she gave birth to Satrugna, who became the ever faithful friend of Bharata. And on the birth of these four sons there were great rejoicings in the city of Ayodhyá amongst all ranks of people, and the streets were filled with dancers and musicians, and decked out with flowers and banners.

Joy of the  
Ránís on shar-  
ing the páyasa  
amongst them

The Ránís con-  
ceive.

Birth of four  
sons, viz.  
Ráma,  
Bharata,  
Lakshmana,  
Satrugna

Public  
rejoicings

Eleven days after the birth of the four sons, the priest Vasishtha performed the ceremony of giving them names. To the son of Kausalyá he gave the name of Ráma, which signifies "the delight of the people;" to the son of Kaikeyí he gave the name of Bharata, which signifies "filling the world with his name;" and of the two sons of Sumitrá he named the elder Lakshmana, which signifies "beautiful to behold," and he named the younger Satrugna, which signifies "the destroyer of his enemies." When the names had been thus given, the Mahárajá feasted the Bráhmans, and all the citizens of Ayodhyá, and all the

Naming of the  
four Princes  
after eleven  
days.

Meanings of the  
names.

HISTORY OF INDIA  
PART IV. people of the Raj of Kosala; and he gave abundance of jewels to the Bráhmans.

Review of the foregoing description of the Aswamedha

The foregoing description of the Aswamedha comprises two distinct narratives of two different sacrifices, namely :—

Two sacrifices involved

1st, The horse sacrifice.

2nd, The homa and páyasa.

The offering of homa is not indeed explicitly stated; but still it seems that the second sacrifice of Sringa involved no slaying of animals, but was simply an offering of oblations to the Vedic deities.

Real character of the sacrifice of the horse.

The sacrifice of the horse can be easily realized. The posts to which the birds and animals are tied, and the pits in which the meat is cooked, are perfectly intelligible, and in general conformity with the arrangements made in the Aswamedha of Yudhishtira. The object of the sacrifice, however, was not an assertion of sovereignty, but the birth of sons; and one of the rites for the attainment of this object was that the Rájis should pass the night with the dead body of the horse. Of this disgusting ceremony there is no reference whatever in the Rig-Veda;<sup>7</sup> and it is difficult to avoid the suspicion that the rite is a pure invention of the Brahmanical author intended to disguise the real meaning of the Aswamedha. At the second sacrifice, or offering of the homa, the object was attained by giving a portion of sacred food, known as páyasa, and consisting of rice and milk. The idea of food is here involved; of stimulating food which would promote

Strange rite of the Rájis and the dead horse

Probably a later Brahmanical invention.

Flesh of the horse probably believed to stimulate conception

<sup>7</sup> See Wilson's remarks in the introduction to his second volume of translations of the Rig-Veda. Some revolting impurities appear to have been connected with the rite which need not be particularized.



conception. Now the flesh of the horse was probably regarded as highly stimulating; and the sacrifice of a horse for the purpose of procuring such stimulating food for the Ránís appears to be equally probable. But such a belief would be very obnoxious to the later Bráhmans, who were opposed to the slaughter of animals; and hence the páyasa was substituted, a divine food which is still prepared and cooked at Brahmanical sacrifices.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Substitution  
of the páyasa  
for horse-flesh

The narrative of the offering of homa is a very remarkable one. It exhibits the peculiar genius of Brahmanism in transmuting a mortal hero into the Supreme Being, with the ultimate object of converting his history into a vehicle for the promulgation of Brahmanical views. It is an attempt to represent the four sons of Dasaratha, and especially Ráma, as incarnations of Vishnu; to connect those incarnations with the offering of homa; and to exhibit the superior efficacy of the páyasa, or sacred food. The belief in the possibility of a direct incarnation of Deity in the womb of a woman is an important article of faith in many religions, and indeed is the foundation of Christianity itself. But the process by which that incarnation is effected has always been treated as a mystery or miracle. In the Rámáyana it is surrounded by circumstances which are well calculated to impress a simple and childlike people. The object of the incarnation is fully explained, whilst the incarnation itself is treated with singular delicacy. A terrible Rákshasa named Rávana devotes many years to the performance of religious austerities; and by the power of those austerities he secures the favour of Brahma, who thereupon, at his request, renders him invulnerable to gods and demons. Rá-

Extraordinary  
narrative of the  
offering of homa,  
representing  
Ráma as an  
incarnation of  
Vishnu

Object and  
character of the  
incarnation

Legend of  
Rávana, the  
great Rákshasa  
Raja

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART II

Rāvaṇa  
Jp. West o  
V d e l t e s

Complaint of  
the Vedic gods  
an acknow-  
ledgment of  
their inferiority  
to Brahma and  
of the inferiority  
of Brahma to  
Vishnu.

Vishnu becomes  
incarnate  
through the  
agency of  
Parashurama.

vana now considers himself to be immortal, the gods and demons are unable to harm him, and men and beasts are so much beneath his notice, that he has not stooped to pray for immunity from their attacks. Accordingly, he oppresses the gods, not indeed the great Brahmanical gods, Brahma, Vishnu, and Shiva, but the ancient gods of the Rig Veda, whom he compels to do as he pleases. Death is not allowed to afflict his subjects the Rikshasas, the burning Sun is required to shine mildly over his city, the Moon is obliged to be always at the full throughout his Raj, the Seasons come and go at his command, Fire burns not in his presence, and the Wind is forced to blow gently. Accordingly the gods complain to Brahma, who acknowledges the superiority of Vishnu, by conducting them into the presence of that deity, and since Ravana has not been rendered invulnerable to men and animals, Vishnu resolves to become incarnate as the four sons of Dasavathara, and especially as Rama, and the gods descend on earth and beget monkeys and bears in order that their progeny may be ultimately formed into an army, and effect the destruction of Ravana under the leadership of Rama.

Vishnu having thus granted the prayer of the gods, takes advantage of the sacrifice to become incarnate. An emanation of Brahma appears out of the sacrificial fire and presents the pyasa, and the Rakshas conceive by merely eating the sacred food, a process which has the merit of preserving decency, although somewhat at variance with physiological laws. Henceforth the great difficulty of the author of the Ramayana, and his subsequent editors has

been to bring the life and character of Rāma into harmony with his assumed incarnation.<sup>8</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

<sup>8</sup> The reconciliation of the divine character of Rāma with that of his mortal career upon earth, appears to have been a task of considerable difficulty. Certainly it has not always been effected by Vālmīki, the author of the larger Rāmāyaṇa, which forms the text of the present paraphrase. There is, however, a remarkable abridgment of the story, the authorship of which is attributed to the mythical Vyāsa, in which the whole has been spiritualized, and every conflicting incident either explained away or omitted, whilst the greatest possible stress has been laid upon the character of Rāma as a saviour and deliverer. This work is entitled the *Adhyātma Rāmāyaṇa*, and may be regarded as the testament of the Vaishnavas, or worshippers of Vishnu. It is indeed chiefly valuable from a religious point of view, but still it may be convenient to exhibit occasionally some of its spiritualizations in connection with the traditional incidents to which they refer. The narrative is put into the mouth of the god Śiva, who is supposed to be relating the *Rāmāyaṇa* to his wife Pārvatī.

The following extracts exhibit the religious ideas which are popularly associated in the present day with the birth of Rāma —

"Hear now, O Pārvatī! an account of the sacrifice celebrated by Raja Dasaratha. The gods attended in their proper persons, and sitting in a row, took with their own hands their respective shares. The Tirthas, or places of pilgrimage, attended in person. There was such a crowd the earth trembled, the shock was so great that no one could withstand it. So much homa was thrown into the fire that at first it appeared inauspicious. When the sacrifice was completed, the god of Fire (Agni) appeared bearing in each hand a cup of rice and milk. Agni said to Dasaratha — 'Take this rice and milk, O Paja! from me go into thy female apartments and give it to thy wives, the fruit of it is great, of its effect there cannot be a doubt.' The god of Fire then vanished. Vasishtha and Śringa then went into the female apartments, and gave a portion to the three wives Kausalyā, Kaikeṭī, and Sumitrā. All three became pregnant, and when Vishnu entered into the body of Kausalyā, Brahma and the gods mounting their cars, stood on the heavens above the city of Ayodhyā, and repeated numberless praises to Rāma, and then returned to their own abodes in a transport of joy. At a most auspicious hour Pāma was born of Kausalyā. His body was like a cloud, on his head was a crown set with jewels, his four arms were extended, in one hand he held the holy shell, in another the circle, in the third the war mace, and in the last the lotos. In his ears were rings in the form of a crocodile, he had a string of rubies and Vajravanti seeds on his neck, his forehead was ornamented with a stripe of saffron and sandal wood. A yellow cloth was girded round his loins, a veil of brocade covered his shoulders, his two locks of hair hanging down on his cheeks were like the waving spikenard. He was covered from head to foot with ornaments of gold, jewels, and pearls. The beauty of his person appeared with resplendent grace, his eyes were like the lotos. The figure of Lakshmana sat on his left hand, the form of the sage Bhṛigu on his right. His lips were as red as the rubies of Hṛdikshan. At his feet was the form of the Lotus, because the whole world finds an asylum at his feet. A million suns and moons would hide their diminished heads before the light of his countenance. In this form he appeared before his mother Kausalyā, who knew him to be the godhead. With joined hands

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

---

she bowed down and began to praise and adore him (Here follows a prayer of Kausalyá to the infant deity, concluding with the following words) —

“ ‘Thou, O Lord! hast now four arms, be pleased to assume the shape of an infant that I may nourish thee with maternal affection, my happiness will then be perfect’ ”

“ Ráma, highly pleased, explained to his mother the cause of his assuming a human form, and then concealed his four armed shape, and assumed the form of a new born infant, and began to cry aloud. Raja Dasaratha heard the sound, and his joy was indescribable. He distributed innumerable treasures in alms. Vasishtha also caused him to perform such ceremonies as were necessary on this occasion. The rejoicings in the city of Ayodhyá were such as it is impossible to describe. On every gate kettledrums in thousands sounded the joyful tidings. The inhabitants placed the boughs of the mango tree at their doors, they fixed flags and ensigns of brocade and embroidery on the tops of their houses. The sprightly dancers danced in every street, the shop keepers went about uttering praises and thanksgivings, the eunuchs performed various dances and received great rewards.

“ Brahma and the gods received intelligence of the birth of Ráma with joy unbounded. They stood on the heavens above Ayodhya, and showering down Parijata flowers, they exclaimed with a loud voice,—‘ May thy prosperity endure for ever’ After giving praise to him they made obeisance and retired to their own abodes ”

## CHAPTER III.

### THE CHILDHOOD OF RÁMA.

THE narrative of the Aswamedha of Dasaratha and subsequent birth of his four sons, is followed by an interesting account of the early years of Ráma, from the day when he lay a helpless infant upon his mother's knee, until the time when his education was completed, and his marriage was contemplated. This account is valuable on two grounds. First it exhibits that love of children and sympathy with childhood, which are almost peculiar to Hindú bards ; and which find expression, not so much in conceptions of a boy-saint or infant deity, as in genuine pictures of infants and children drawn from a close observation of real life. Secondly it exhibits the domestic life of the Hindús in a succession of scenes representing every stage in the progress of the child from infancy to manhood ; and Ráma appears in every character with a downright realism which may seem somewhat puerile to men of sterner mould, but which has endeared him to the hearts of Hindú mothers for countless generations. Every scene is perfect Ráma trying to put his toe into his mouth ; Ráma laughing and trotting away when called by his parents ; Ráma snatching a morsel out of his father's hand and eating it with a laugh ; Ráma pointing out

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Life of Ráma  
from infancy to  
manhood.

Hindú love of  
children

Realism in the  
description of  
domestic life

Progressive  
incidents in the  
infancy child-  
hood and boy-  
hood of Ráma.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART II

his eyes, nose, mouth, and ears, when called upon by his mother; Ráma crying for the moon; Ráma beginning to say "pa" and "ma;" Ráma sitting on his father's knee in the Council-hall; Ráma and the other little boys making clay images and worshipping them after the manner of the family Bráhman; Ráma going to school with his brothers and learning his letters, Ráma and his brethren dressed in different coloured frocks, and carrying their satchels and ink bottles; Ráma's progress in grammar, science, and accomplishments; Ráma examined in his proficiency by the Mahárajá in the Council-hall; Ráma playing in mock battles and at being Mahárajá; Ráma invested with the sacred thread; and Ráma perfectly educated, and arrived at a marriageable age;—all these are described with a natural simplicity, of which perhaps no parallel can be found in European literature.<sup>1</sup>

Narrative in the  
Rámáyana.

The story of Ráma's childhood may now be related as follows:—

Description of  
the four babies  
during the first  
year of infancy

Now the four infant sons of the Mahárya were exceedingly beautiful, and the three Rínis took very great delight in nursing their respective children. And Ráma, more than all the others, was a very lovely babe, and as he slept in a white cot he appeared like a blue lotos floating upon the pure water of the Ganges; and sometimes he would lift up his foot and put his toe into his mouth, as if to taste what it was in his toe which drew so much reverence from all who

<sup>1</sup> The incidents of Ráma's early life are probably a later interpolation. They are not to be found in the General edition of the Rámáyana, but only in what is called the North West recension. Accordingly, they are not reproduced either in Carey's English version, or in the French translation of M. Fauche, or in the Italian translation of Corrao. Moreover, Professor Williams seems to make no allusion to this portion of the narrative in his useful analysis of the Rámáyana. In the Adhyátma Ramáyana there is some allusion to the youthful sports of Ráma, but they have evidently been borrowed from the life of Krishna.

beheld him. When Mahárája Dasaratha, accompanied by the priest Vasishtha, went to see his infant sons, the priest pointed to Ráma, and said :—“ O Mahárája, I perceive from the marks on Ráma that he is no ordinary child ; and I am nearly assured that he is an incarnation of Vishnu : Behold his beautiful colour, like green grass, his fine hair glossy and curled, his large head and high forehead, his brow radiant with the signs of royalty, his face smiling like the full moon, his large dark eyes, his lips red as the Bimba fruit, his nose like that of the green parrot, his neck like that of a shell, his long hands and red palms bearing the marks of the chakra, lotos, and circle on the tips of his fingers, his wide breast, his legs resembling plantain trees, his feet red as the rising sun, bearing the marks of the shell, the chakra, the mace, and the lotos : Behold all these. and you will see that

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Ráma identified  
by the priest  
Vasishtha as an  
incarnation of  
Vishnu  
Distinguishing  
marks.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IVKausalyá fails  
to comfort himThe women of  
the palace failThe Mahárāja  
tries in vainSumantra, the  
chief coun-  
sellor, fails  
to comfort  
Ráma with a  
mirror

beat her. And Kausalyá asked him many times what he wished to have, and he continued to point to the moon, so that at last she came to understand what it was that he wanted, and she then spoke to him in mild terms as follows — “Do not desire, O my child, to possess the moon, because it is thousands of miles off, and it is not a plaything for children, and no child ever got it. If you wish I will bring you some jewels that are brighter than the moon, and you can play with them.” So saying she brought some beautiful jewels, and placed them before the little boy, but Ráma threw them away in anger, and began to cry until his eyes were red and swollen with weeping. Now by this time a number of women were gathered around him, but no one could console him. One said — “Perchance he is hungry,” and Kausalyá tried to give him suck, but this he utterly refused to take. Another woman said — “Perchance he is sleepy,” and she took him in her lap and sung the lullaby, but she could not quiet him, and he still continued to cry. Then one of the women said — “The goddess Susti has become unpropitious, and must be propitiated with offerings of curds, plantains, and fried paddy.” Another said — “A ghost is troubling him, so send for a man who can repeat a mantra and drive the ghost out.” But though all these means were tried they were all of no effect, and Ráma was still as unpacified as before. So the Ráma Kausalyá sent for the Mahárāja, and when the Mahárāja heard that Ráma was ill he went to him immediately, and tried his utmost to console the child, but he could do no more than those who had tried before him, and Ráma continued to cry and would not be comforted. Then the Mahárāja sent for his chief Counsellor and told him all that had taken place, and when Sumantra heard that Ráma was crying for the moon, he desired those about him to bring a mirror. So a mirror was brought and placed in the hands of Ráma, and when Ráma saw the image of the moon in the mirror, he was fully satisfied, and left off weeping, and was soon as merry as before, and the whole family were at ease.

When Ráma and his brethren had reached their second



year, they could not say the words "peeta" or "father," or "mata" or "mother," and therefore they called their parents "pa" and "ma." And if any one asked Ráma what his name was, he would answer "Ama," for he could not pronounce the letter "R." Sometimes the three mothers would sit together and make their four sons dance in a circle, whilst they clapped their hands. Sometimes the Mahárajá would tell Ráma to bring him his sandals, and Ráma would take up the Mahárajá's sandals with both his hands, and carry them to his father, to the great delight of all who saw him. At other times the Mahárajá would take Ráma into the Council-hall, and keep the little boy on his knee during the Council; and Ráma listened to all that was going on, and as he sat upon his father's knee, he appeared as beautiful as a new rain-cloud when seated on the golden mountain of Samaru. Meantime his mother the Rání would be impatient at his absence, and would send her maid servant every minute to the Council to bring away Ráma; for a moment's absence from her son appeared like an age in her eyes.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Second year of  
infancy Ráma  
and his  
brethren begin  
to talk.

Anecdotes of  
Ráma.

When the sons of Dasaratha were in their third year, the Mahárajá performed the ceremony of piercing their ears; and the rite was celebrated with great magnificence. After this the brethren began to play with other little boys of their own age. They made images of clay, and offered clay offerings to the images, after the manner that they had seen the priest of their father offer up sacrifices to the gods in behalf of the household. They would first entreat the images to eat the offerings which they offered, and then when the images did not move they would put the offerings into their mouths; and when the images would not eat the offerings, they were very angry and broke up the images into pieces. Sometimes Ráma would see his own reflection in a crystal pillar, and he would say to his mother Kausalyá:—"A second Ráma is come, so keep him here that I may play with him." But seeing in like manner the reflection of his own mother, he would say:—"Why have you left me and gone to the other Ráma: Do not take him in your lap!"

Third year,  
ceremony of  
piercing their  
ears

Sports of Ráma  
and his  
brethren with  
other boys.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

At five years of age Rāma and his brethren are educated by Vasishtha.

Rites of initiation.

Dress of the four boys.

Daily attendance at school.

Progress in their studies. Alphabet.

Grammar.

Arts and sciences examined in the Council hall.

And with these words he would take hold of her cloth and pull her away

When Rāma and his brethren were five years of age they commenced their education according to the rule. Vasishtha was appointed to be their preceptor, and he initiated them in their studies in the accustomed form. He first worshipped the divine Saraswati, the goddess of all learning, and afterwards directed the four brethren to make offerings of flowers and leaves of bile fruit to the goddess. He then took a chalk stone, and drew the vowels upon the floor, and directed the boys to run over each letter three times, and when this lesson was over, the Maharaja gave many rich presents to Vasishtha, and from that time they went every day to the house of Vasishtha, to receive his instructions. And the four lads were dressed by their mothers in clothes of different colours, and Rāma was dressed in yellow, Lal shmana in purple, and Bharata and Satrugna in green and red. And they had hundreds of servants at their command, but still each one carried his ink bottle in his right hand, and over his left shoulder was his satchel containing books, reeds, and white palm leaves. In this manner they went out of the palace every morning, and proceeded with other school boys to the house of their preceptor, and sometimes when a boy strayed away from school without the leave of his preceptor, they were commanded by Vasishtha to go out into the street and bring the truant in. And when they knew all the vowels, they were taught all the other letters of the alphabet, and when they knew these also, they began to teach the smaller boys under the direction of Vasishtha. And Rāma never disobeyed his preceptor, nor did ought that would excite his displeasure. And when he had learnt all his letters, he began to read the grammar, and in a short time he learnt eighteen languages, as well as the arts of singing, playing on musical instruments, dancing, and painting, and every one of the sciences. And at certain times the Maharaja would send for his sons, and examine them in the Council hall before his Council, and the boys always acquitted themselves to the admiration of all present, and the Ministers and

Chieftains expressed their great surprise at the proficiency of the sons of the Mahárája.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

When the four brethren had passed out of their childhood, they were exercised in the use of arms and in military and royal games. At times, having obtained the permission of Vasishtha, they would go out and play at hide-and-seek; or they would form themselves into two parties, and engage in a mock combat; and it was agreed amongst them that the party who was defeated should carry the victor upon his shoulders for a hundred cubits; and when Ráma was defeated he was not excused on account of his being the son of a Mahárája, but he was obliged to carry his victor like any other boy. Sometimes, however, Ráma would play at being the Mahárája; and some of his play-fellows would be his Ministers, and others his subjects, and some would hold the umbrella of royalty over his head, whilst others fanned him with the chámara. Then some would bring offenders before him, and submit their complaints for his decision; and Ráma would listen to the whole of the case, and at the end he would deliver his judgment, and would award appropriate punishment to the guilty party.

Exercises in  
arms and  
games  
Hide-and seek  
and mock  
battles

Ráma's play at  
being Mahárája,  
with play-fellows  
for Ministers

Thus passed away the lives of Ráma and his brethren, until the time drew nigh when each one was to be invested with the sacred thread. Accordingly their heads were shaved by the barber, and they were clothed in red silk; and they went to the house of their preceptor Vasishtha, and were invested with the sacred string which was made of the skin of the antelope. Vasishtha then taught them the holy Gayatri; and throughout that day they became Brahmacháris according to the ordinance, and each one carried his bag amongst his kinsmen to receive alms. First, Ráma went to his mother Kausalyá, and she gave him the dole of rice, and with it many precious jewels; and in this manner all the brethren went round and received alms and rich gifts from all present, from the subjects of the Mahárája, as well as from the Ministers, Chieftains, and ladies; and all the riches they received they gave to their preceptor Vasishtha.

Investiture  
with the sacred  
thread, and the  
attendant rites.

Ráma and his  
brethren  
Brahmacháris  
for the day.

After the four sons of Dasaratha had been thus invested

Study the  
Vedas

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Virtues and  
accomplish-  
ments of the  
four Princes

Superiority of  
Rāma.

Legend of the  
great bow of  
Siva preserved  
by Janaka,  
Raja of Mithilā.

with the sacred thread, they began to learn the Vedas, and in due time they grew up like four heroes, and were possessed of every virtue and every accomplishment. They were bright as the moon, skilful in archery, expert in mounting the elephant, the horse, and the chariot, and they were devoted to all the wishes of their parents, and became deeply versed in the Vedas. But Rāma excelled all his brethren, and was as conspicuous amongst them as a flag upon a tower, and whilst all grew up in loving attachment to each other, Lakshmana was the special companion of Rāma, and rejoiced to perform whatever was pleasing to him.

Now it happened one day that Rāma was shooting with a bow that belonged to a companion of his, and he bent the bow with so much strength that it broke in two pieces. And his companion said to him —“ You have strength enough to break my bow, but if you would manifest your full might, you should go to the city of Mithilā, and break the great bow of the god Siva, which is preserved in the household of Raja Janaka.” And Rāma answered —“ Tell me the story of the bow.” Then his companion said —“ Janaka, Raja of Mithilā, has a beautiful daughter named Sitā, or the ‘ white one,’ and he has vowed to give her in marriage to that man who can break the great bow, which belonged in former times to the god Siva, and which the Raja worships every day with flowers and incense.” And Rāma pondered over these words in his heart, but he said nothing, for the time had not yet come.

Review of the  
for-~~going~~ narra-  
tive of Rāma's  
early life

The blue-  
coloured babe.

The foregoing narrative of the childhood of Rāma is so plain and simple as to require but little comment. The picture of the dark-coloured babe, lying in his white cot like a blue lotus floating upon the pure water of the Gangēs, is perhaps somewhat foreign to European ideas accustomed to the pink complexion of western babies. Moreover the picture is somewhat marred by the description of the marks from which Vasishtha the priest is supposed to

have identified the infant as an incarnation of Vishnu. The story of Ráma crying for the moon is peculiarly Hindú. The inability of the mother to console the little boy, and the suggestions of the other women, are precisely the every-day occurrences in the houses of Hindús. When a child of tender years is fractious, and refuses to eat or to sleep, the women immediately begin to propitiate the goddess Susti, a primitive household deity who finds no place in the Vedas, but who is largely worshipped by the females of Hindústan. If the child still refuses to be comforted, a Bráhma is sent for to exorcise him with mantras. Lastly, if these resources fail the husband is sent for to bring about a pacification. In the present instance the story turns upon the wisdom of the Chief Counsellor in sending for a mirror, and satisfying the child with a reflection of the moon. This idea again is essentially Hindú. No one but a Hindú, with his passionate fondness for children, and his traditions of patriarchal life, would conceive the idea of a sovereign sending for his Prime Minister to pacify a fractious child. In like manner the scene in which the little boys make clay images and propitiate them with clay offerings, in the same way that they had seen the family Bráhma propitiate the household gods, could only take place in an Indian household. But yet the realism of Hindú childhood in trying to make the idols eat the offerings, is paralleled by European children, who will give oats to a wooden horse, or bread and butter to a stuffed bird; and it is thus exquisitely true to human nature, whilst furnishing a significant travestie of the original ceremonial.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The marks of  
Vishnu.

Incidents connected with  
Ráma's crying  
for the moon  
common to  
modern Hindú  
life

Worship of  
Susti

Exorcising

Hindu idea of  
the Chief Coun-  
sellor being  
called in to  
quiet Ráma.

Realism of  
Hindú child-  
hood as dis-  
played towards  
the clay images.

The education of Ráma, which commenced

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Custom of  
becoming  
Brahmacháris  
at the investiture with the  
thread

according to rule in the fifth year of his age, is the exact routine pursued by Hindú preceptors ; and the scenes enacted in Vasishtha's school-room are precisely such as still take place in purely Hindú schools<sup>2</sup> So, too, the investiture with the sacred thread is celebrated in the present day, in the case of all Bráhmans and Kshatriyas, precisely as it is described in the Rámáyana ; the boys becoming Bramacháris or religious mendicants for the day,<sup>3</sup> and carrying about bags in which they receive presents from their relatives and friends. The remaining details call for no remark, the incidents described in the narrative being sufficiently clear to explain themselves

---

\* The worship of Saraswati by Hindú students is dying away in English schools, and books are no longer regarded as sacred things, probably because the printed English volumes are treated as altogether different from the ancient manuscripts. Once a year there is a festival to the goddess Saraswati, on which day most school boys enjoy a holiday, for every book in the house should be laid before the image of the goddess and remain there for the day. English books, however, are not always offered, especially if the parents are anxious for their children's progress in education, but idle school boys will on such occasions rise early in the morning and place all their books, English included, before the goddess, after which they are perfectly safe, as no one would be profane enough to remove the volumes which have been once offered.

<sup>2</sup> The Brahmachári is a religious pupil who studies the Vedas, who also collects alms for his own subsistence, and for that of his master or Guru. In the present instance the Guru was Vasishtha

## CHAPTER IV.

### WARS WITH THE RÁKSHASAS.

THE story of Ráma's boyhood is naturally followed by the story of his marriage; but an interval occurs during which he appears to have acted as the protector of the Bráhmans against the Rákshasas, or aborigines of the country, who seem to have persecuted the Bráhmans by polluting their sacrifices.

It has already been seen that a considerable confusion exists respecting the aboriginal inhabitants of India. They are alluded to under different names, such as Rákshasas, Asuras, Daityas, and Dánavas. Sometimes they are popularly regarded as ghosts or demons. At other times they are represented as forming different families, who have descended from Bráhman sages, and have acquired supernatural weapons or supernatural powers by the worship of Brahma. Thus the terrible Rávana is said to have been the grandson of the sage Pulastya, who was the son of Brahma; and to have obtained invulnerability as regards gods and demons as a reward for his severe worship of Brahma. It seems probable that originally the names Rákshasa, Asura, Daitya, and Dánava were applied with some strictness to different tribes of aborigines, but that at a subsequent period the names were indiscriminately applied to the

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Interval  
between Ráma's  
boyhood and  
marriage,  
employed  
against the  
Rákshasas

Confusion  
respecting the  
aboriginal  
inhabitants of  
India.  
Different  
appellations

Perceived as  
ghosts or  
demons  
Represented as  
descendants  
from Bráhman  
sages and as  
worshippers of  
Brahma

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

aborigines in general. As, however, the popular belief attributed supernatural powers to the aboriginal inhabitants, the Bráhmans took care that those powers should be derived from the faithful worship of Brahma; although it is exceedingly improbable that the aborigines had any knowledge of Brahma, excepting that which they may have subsequently derived from the teachings of the Bráhmans.

Origin of the  
opposition of  
the Rákshasas  
to the Bráh-  
mans and to the  
Brahmanical  
sacrifices

The origin of the opposition of the Rákshasas to the Bráhmans is no doubt to be referred to the natural opposition of the people of the country to the advancing tide of Aryan invasion. The opposition to the Brahmanical sacrifices seems to be more obscure, but may perhaps be ascribed to the superstitious fears of a race of savages at finding their country overrun by powerful invaders, whose irresistible might may have been derived from the rites in question. The establishment of Brahmanical hermitages in the midst of an aboriginal population, also opens up a curious field of inquiry, but must be reserved for future discussion.

Brahmanical  
hermitages

Narrative in the  
Jatáráyana of  
Ráma's expedi-  
tion against the  
Rákshasas.

The narrative of Ráma's expedition against the Rákshasas and of the circumstances which led to it, may now be related as follows:—

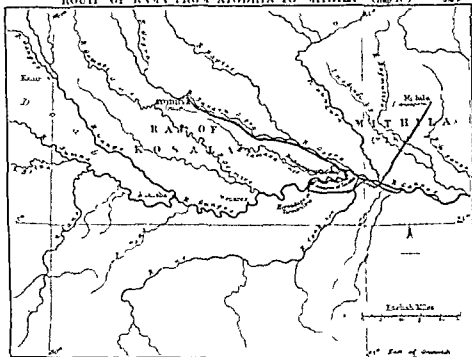
Anxiety of the  
Mahárája  
respecting the  
marriage of his  
four sons  
"Vishvá-  
Vasúdeva.

When Ráma and his brethren were approaching their sixteenth year, the Mahárája became very anxious respecting their marriage. It so happened that one day when he was discussing the subject with his Counsellors in the Council hall, the great sage Visvámitra arrived at the gate of the palace, and desired the door-keeper to go within and tell the Mahárája that Visvámitra the son of Gádhi, was there. When the Mahárája received the message, he rose up with his two priests, and went out to meet the sage, rejoicing as Indra at the coming of Brahma; and he re-

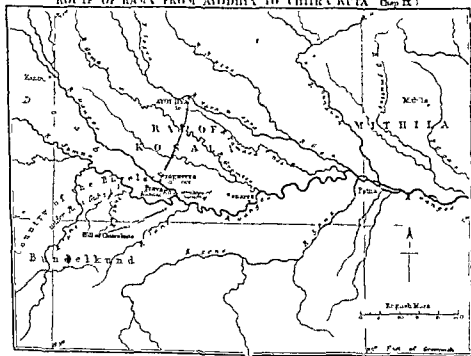
Personal  
reception of  
Visvámitra by  
the Mahárája.



ROUTE OF RAMA FROM AYODHYA TO MITHILA (Chap IV)



ROUTE OF RAMA FROM AYODHYA TO CHITRA KUTA (Chap IX)



ceived Vaswámitra with every honour, and presented him with the argha, and said respectfully:—"Your coming, O great sage, is as grateful to me as amrita, as the fall of rain in the proper season, as the birth of a son to a childless father, as the recovery of lost treasure, as the dawning of a mighty joy! Tell me, I pray you, what important request you have to make, and I shall grant it with great delight."

Now Viswámitra was a very illustrious sage, for in former times he had been a Kshatriya and a great warrior; but after practising many religious austerities in the Himálaya mountain he had become a Bráhman. His hermitage was situated on the southern bank of the Ganges river; and many other Bráhman sages dwelt there likewise, and passed their days in devotion and sacrifice. And Viswámitra said to the Mahárajá:—"O Raja of Rajas, our sacrifices are spoiled by the Rákshasas, who pour blood and flesh upon the homa; and they are commanded by two chieftains, named Máricha and Suvahu, who have been commissioned by Raja Rávana to destroy all the sacrifices of the Bráhmans: I therefore pray you to suffer your son Ráma to return with me to my hermitage, for he is young, great, and valiant, and the Rákshasas will never be able to stand against him." At these words the Mahárajá was exceedingly sorrowful, and he said:—"My son Ráma has not yet reached his sixteenth year. I will therefore send a great army with you, but I cannot give up Ráma." Then Viswámitra was in great wrath, and as fierce as a sacrificial fire when fed with abundance of ghee; and the whole earth was moved, and even the gods were in great fear. And he said:—"O Mahárajá, you have given me your promise, and you cannot depart from your word. Make haste then, and send Ráma, and I will so protect him that he shall never be overcome by the Rákshasas." So the Mahárajá sent for Ráma and Lakshmana, and delivered them up to the sage; and the two Princes took leave of their parents, and made ready to go with Viswámitra to the place of his abode.<sup>1</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

The Mahárajá volunteers to grant his request

Viswámitra originally a Kshatriya

Requests the Mahárajá to send Ráma to protect his Brahmanical settlement against the Rákshasas.

Sorrow of the Mahárajá.

Viswámitra claims the fulfilment of the Mahárajá's promise

Ráma and Lakshmana permitted to accompany Viswámitra

<sup>1</sup> The following extract from the Adhyátma Rámáyana explains the circumstances which induced the Mahárajá to part with Ráma in a somewhat different

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Departure of  
the three for  
the hermitage of  
Viswámitra.

Poetical descrip-  
tion of autumn.

Viswámitra acts  
as Guru

Journey to the  
Brahmanical  
settlement at  
the junction of  
the Sarayú and  
Ganges

Now it so happened that as the three went out of the city it was the beautiful season of autumn, and the pure sky was free from clouds, as the pure mind of the devotee is free from all passions, and the rains were over, and the high winds had ceased, and the breezes were blowing gently at the approach of the cold season, as the riotous and tumultuous assume a gentler aspect when they enter the company of wise men. The water in every river, lake, and pond was pure and transparent, and the beauty of the clear wave was increased by the presence of the full-blown lotos, as the beauty of a pure mind becomes increased by faith in God. Thus Rāma and Lakshmana, and the sage Viswámitra, journeyed along the south bank of the river Sarayú, towards the spot where that river joins its waters with those of the Ganges, and on their way they beheld the vast fields of rice bending down with the weight of the grain, like a modest man bending his head at the recital of his own praises. And Viswámitra instructed Rāma on the way, and performed all the duties of a Guru. And when evening was come they slept on grass beds by the side of the river Sarayú.

Now when the light of morning began to dawn, the sage Viswámitra awakened the two young heroes as they lay upon their beds of grass, and directed them to arise and perform their morning ablutions, and repeat the holy Gayatri according to the ordinance. After this the three pro-

manner. "The Mahārāja with troubled mind consulted his preceptor Vasishta — 'If,' he said, 'Viswámitra should take Rāma away, I cannot survive the loss, if I should not permit him to go, this sage, who is a strenuous adorer of the deity, doubtless will utter a curse against me. This idea of danger afflicts my soul, besides Rāma is delicate in his frame, how then can he destroy that giant who resembles the mountain elephant?' Vasishta answered — 'I will disclose this secret mystery, this son of thine, who is named Pāma, is the Omnipotent Being in whom the universe is comprehended.' The sage then told the Mahārāja the whole story of Brahma's application to Vishnu and spoke as follows. — 'Know, O Mahārāja, that Rāma is the Almighty, the Incomprehensible, the Supreme Soul, that Lakshmana is an incarnation of Sesha naga, Bharata an incarnation of the shell, and Satrugna an incarnation of the circle. His primeval affection has assumed a female form, and is born in the house of Rājā Janaka. Now if Pāma goes with Viswámitra he will obtain the hand of Rājā Janaka's daughter Sītā in marriage. Be not therefore under any apprehensions or grieved in thy mind, no danger can accrue to Rāma. I have given thee that advice which I deemed most proper, keep it concealed in thy own heart.' "

ceeded on their journey as before, until they came to the place where the waters of the river Sarayu are joined with those of the Ganges, and there they saw a sacred hermitage where many holy Brāhmanas practised religious austerities. And Viśwamitra told the two Princes that here was the holy spot where the great god Śiva was wounded by the love-inspiring Kāma with the arrows of desire, and in return burnt up the god of love with the fire of his anger. And Viśwamitra and the two Princes were hospitably entertained by the Brāhmanas in that hermitage, and there they slept that night, and prepared to cross the river in the morning.

Legend of Śiva smitten by the love-inspiring arrows of Kāma.  
Hospitable reception

Now when the morning had come, the sage and the two Princes left the hermitage at the union of the two rivers, and entered a boat for the purpose of crossing the river Ganges, in order that they might proceed to the hermitage of Viśwamitra which was situated on the southern bank of the holy stream. And as they crossed the river they heard the roaring of the waters, which is made by the conflict of the river Sarayu with the river Ganges, and having made obeisance to the two sacred rivers, they reached the other side, and entered a dreadful jungle which was called the wilderness of Tāraka. And that jungle was as black as a cloud, and very dense, and filled with the voices of birds, and the notes of insects, and the noise of the wild deer, and the roaring of lions and tigers, and bears, and wild boars, and elephants and rhinoceroses. Now in that jungle dwelt a terrible female Rakshasi named Tāraka, and she was the mother of Mārīcī, and Viśwamitra said to Rama — "Thus cursed Tāraka ravages all this country. Do you, O Rama,

Passage over the Ganges to the southern bank

Roaring of the waters

Dreadful jungle of Tāraka.

Viśwamitra tells Rama to slay Tāraka, the Rakshasi

<sup>2</sup> The route followed by Viśwamitra and the two Princes on this occasion is easily traced. According to the Adhyātma Rāmāyana the hermitage of Viśwamitra was situated on the site of the modern town of Buxar which is situated in the district of Shahābād. The distance from the site of the city of Ayodhya near Fyzabad to the junction of the Sarayū (Gogra) and the Ganges is about 110 miles and seventy miles a journey which must have occupied several days although only two days appear to be indicated in the Rāmāyana. From the junction of the two rivers to the modern town of Buxar the distance is rather more than forty miles in a retrograde direction from east to west along the southern bank of the Ganges. This latter portion of the journey is said to have occupied two days which approximates to the actual distance.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Combat between  
Rāma and  
Tārakā.

Rāma's  
unwillingness  
to slay a  
woman

Slays Tārakā at  
the instigation  
of Viśvāmitra.

Diverse weapons  
given to Rāma  
by Viśvāmitra.

for the sake of the Bāhmanas, destroy her. Such an act is not to be abhorred by you, as though it were the murder of a woman, but must be performed as a duty which all R̥jas are bound to fulfil for the public good, whether it appear merciful or cruel, innocent or blamable." Rāma replied — "I am bound to obey your command." And Rāma said to Lakshmana — "Behold this misshapen Rākshasī. My heart relents at killing her because of her female nature, but I will deprive her of her strength and power." And the hero grasped his bow and twanged the string, and Tārakā heard the sound, and was filled with wrath, and presently she came to that place, roaring out with a loud voice, and she rushed upon Rāma with her arms lifted high in the air, and she rained a shower of stones upon the two sons of Dāśaratha. Then Rāma took a missile weapon and cut off her two arms, so that they fell upon the earth. Then Lakshmana cut off the ears and nose of Tārakā, and she disappeared, and again by the power of sorcery caused a fearful shower of stones to fall upon the two heroes. Then Viśvāmitra cried out to Rāma — "Your unwillingness to kill this impious sacrifice-destroying Rākshasī is very wrong. Instantly slay her, for the evening is coming on, and in the darkness it is difficult to overcome the Rākshasas." Then Rāma thus encouraged drew forth a powerful arrow, with a head shaped like a crescent and he discharged it at the misshapen and revengeful Tārakā as she advanced upon him, and she was dreadfully wounded by this tremendous arrow, and vomiting out blood, she fell down and expired. And Viśvāmitra rejoiced at the death of Tārakā and he kissed the head of Rāma, and said to him — "To night, O Rāma, we will remain here, and on the morrow we will proceed to my own hermitage." And the sons of Dāśaratha remained that night with the sage in the wilderness of Tārakā.

Next morning the sage Viśvāmitra gave Rāma many

<sup>2</sup> In the *Āllyāna Rāmāyaṇa* everyone who is slain by Rāma or who dies in his presence or with the name of Rāma on his lips, ascends at once to the heaven of Viśhnu. Accordingly a beautiful form arrayed from head to foot with jewels, is said to have risen from the dead body of Tārakā, and worshipped Rāma and then to have ascended to the abodes of bliss.

famous weapons endowed with divine energies, and irresistible even against the gods, and he turned to the east and taught him two powerful mantras. By the utterance of the first mantra all the weapons appeared before their master, and awaited his orders, and by the utterance of the second mantra, all sense of hunger, or thirst, or desire of sleep, passed away from the body. So Rama uttered the first mantra, and all the mighty weapons which had been given to him by Viswámitra presented themselves before him, and stood with joined hands, and said —“Command us, O Rama, of mighty arm!” And Rama examined them all, and said —“Whenever I call you to remembrance, then do you wait upon me.” Then all those mighty weapons bowed their heads and went their way.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
[PART IV]

Two powerful  
mantras

The two heroes and the sage then proceeded on their way until they saw a mountain which appeared like a cloud, and near it a most exquisitely delightful grove, filled with deer, and enlivened by a variety of tuneful birds. And Viswámitra said to Rama —“This is my hermitage, and it is thine even as it is mine.” And Viswámitra related the following holy legend to the two young Princes —

Arrival at the  
hermitage of  
Viswámitra.

“In ancient days, before the glorious Vishnu became incarnate as the Dwarf, this was his holy hermitage, and here he practised sacred austerities as an example to all others. And it came to pass that Bali, the mighty Rája of the Asuras, conquered Indra and the gods, and the gods came to this hermitage and prayed to Vishnu for succour. And Vishnu was born on earth in the form of a Dwarf, and he assumed the dress of a mendicant, and went to the abode of Bali, and prayed Bali to give him as much earth as he could step over in three steps. And Bali granted his request. Then Vishnu took upon himself a mighty form, and took three steps, and the first step covered the earth, and the second covered the heavens, and the third was on the head of Bali. And Vishnu bound Bali, and sent him and all his legions to the realms below the earth, and once more restored the universe to the rule of Indra.”

Legend of  
Vishnu in the  
Dwarf incarnation  
taking three steps  
for the destruction  
of Bali.

\* The meaning of this myth is not very obvious. It is said to have originated

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Reception of  
Rāma by the  
sages at the  
hermitage of  
Viswāmitra at  
Buxar

The sacrifice  
assailed by the  
Rākshasas.

Victory of  
Rāma over  
Mārīcha and  
Suvāhu.

Rāma and  
Lakshmana  
proceed with  
Viswāmitra to  
the sacrifice of  
Janaka in  
Mithilā.

When Viswāmitra had finished speaking, all the sages who were dwelling at his hermitage came up and welcomed Rāma, and they presented him with the argha, and with water to wash his feet, and entertained both him and his brother Lakshmana with every hospitality. And the two Princes dwelt at the hermitage of Viswāmitra for six days, whilst the Brāhmins made preparation for the sacrifice. The altar was covered with kusa grass, and made ready, together with the sacrificial ladles, the wood and the flowers, and on the seventh day the sacrifice was begun. Then when the fire was blazing upon the altar, Mārīcha and Suvāhu and their evil crew of Rākshasas rushed to the altar, and tried to defile the sacrifice with bones and blood, but were prevented by Rāma. And Mārīcha beheld the heroic Rāma, who was of the colour of azure, speaking to his brother Lakshmana, who was as resplendent as burning gold, and Mārīcha was filled with contempt, and began to seize the Brāhmins, when Rāma hurled a mighty weapon at the breast of Mārīcha, and drove him far out into the ocean.<sup>2</sup> Rāma then discharged a fire-producing weapon at the breast of Suvāhu, and brought him to the ground, and he fell upon the sacrifice-destroying Rākshasas, and slew them all. Viswāmitra then bestowed great praises upon Rāma, and Rāma and Lakshmana were honoured by all the sages, and passed the night in great satisfaction and joy.

Now when the morning had dawned, and the sons of Dīśaratha had performed their devotions, the sages, with Viswāmitra at their head, spoke to the two Princes as follows —“ Janaka, the Raja of Mithilā, is about to perform a great sacrifice, which we shall attend, and you may ac-

in an obscure Vedic idea that Vishnu as the Sun took three steps, viz., first on the earth at his rising, secondly in the heavens at noonday, and thirdly on the under world at his setting. (See Wilson's *Pig Veda*, Vol. I, p. 53, note.) The legend however is exceedingly popular, probably on account of the successful trick played again t the giant, and a festival is still celebrated in memory of the so-called event.

<sup>2</sup> Mārīcha is an important character. He is not slain, but only driven some hundreds of miles out at sea. In the sequel he reappears in the character of Min. or to Raja Rāvana.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IVCo. ntry of  
Mithilā, the  
modern TirhutLegend of  
KanaujLegend of the  
descent of the  
Ganges on the  
head of Śiva  
and thence on  
the earth

company us. And Raja Janaka will show you the great bow of Śiva which neither man nor god can bend." So Rama and Lakshmana and Viśvāmitra, and all the sages, journeyed from that place towards Mithilā, which is now the country of Tirhut. And the first night they slept on the bank of the river Sonā, where Viśvāmitra told them a wonderful legend respecting the foundation of the city of Kanauj. And the second night they approached the river Ganges, and the sage told the sons of Mīsrathī how the river Ganges had descended from the Himalaya mountain upon the head of the great god Śiva. And Viśvāmitra said — "The cloudless sky was illuminated by the porpoises, the serpents, and the fishes, as they darted through the air like bright sparks of lightning. The white foam of the flowing waters, and the flocks of water birds, filled the air like autumnal clouds. The water falling from the head of Śiva, and thence to the earth, ran in some places with a rapid stream, and at others in a tortuous current, sometimes it was widely spreading and sometimes it descended into caverns and again spouted upward. The sages the Gandharvas, and the inhabitants of the earth touched the holy water, knowing its purifying power. Those who had fallen from heaven to earth performed ablution in this stream, and became free from sin, and returned again to heaven. And all the people of the earth rejoiced in this illustrious river,

\* This legend is told at a very some length in the Rāmāyaṇa but is utterly worthless. A sage has fifty beautiful daughters. Vāyu the god of wind, makes some amorous proposals which they very properly reject, declaring that they will only accept such husband as the ruler of the sky gave them, and will never receive any other. Vāyu in his wrath renders them hunch backed. Subsequently they are all married to a young sage who cures them by a touch, and the city in which they dwelt was henceforth called Kanya kūbja, hunch backs the hunch backed girl and still goes by the name of Kanauj. The legend has been modified by the Buddhists who say that in this city there was formerly the hermit of the great tree who cursed the ninety nine damsels so they all became hunch backed hence the name. See Fa Hien's Travels, chap. xv. *Alaproti's note*

† The route from Viśvāmitra's hermitage at Buxar can be lastly traced. The party proceeded eastward to the Sonā river which they crossed. Next they proceeded still in an easterly direction along on the bank of the Ganges until they came to the neighbourhood of Patna, where they probably crossed the river to the northern side and thus entered the country of Tirhut or Mithilā.



of the churning of the ocean by the gods and demons, and the production of amrita in the following manner —

“In days of old there was war between the gods and the demons, and Indra, the sovereign of the gods, was overcome in battle by the demons.” And Indra and the gods fled for refuge to Brāhma, and Brāhma conducted them to the abode of Vishnu in the sea of milk, and prayed to Vishnu. And Vishnu manifested himself to Brāhma and the gods, bearing in his four hands the shell, the chakra, the mace, and the lotus. And Vishnu commanded the gods to ally themselves with the demons, and to throw every kind of medicinal herb into the sea of milk, and to take Mandara mountain for a churning stick, and the serpent Vasuki for the churning rope, and to churn the sea for the production of amrita, which should render them mighty and immortal. And Vishnu said — ‘The demons shall share the labour of churning, but I will prevent their tasting of the amrita, which shall be drank only by Indra and the gods.’ So the gods allied with the demons, and did as Vishnu had commanded, and as they churned there appeared many wondrous things rising out of the sea. The goddess Varuni, the deity of wine, arose in sweet intoxication, and was joyfully received by the demons. Next rose the beautiful Apsaras, who became the nymphs of Indra’s heaven. Then rose the great goddess Lakshmi, radiant with youth and beauty, and a crown was upon her head, and bracelets upon her arms, and her form was covered with ornaments of pearls, and her jetty hair flowed in long ringlets, whilst her complexion resembled molten gold, and thus attired and decorated she took up her abode on the bosom of Vishnu. Lastly appeared the physician of the gods, bearing in his hand the golden cup which contained the divine amrita. Then the demons

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Legend of the  
churning of the  
ocean by the  
gods and  
demons for  
amrita

Indra and the  
gods fly for  
refuge to  
Brāhma who  
refers them to  
Vishnu

Churning of the  
sea

Ascent of  
Varuni the  
deity of wine

The Apsaras

Lakshmi  
beautiful and  
youthful rises  
out of the sea  
and becomes the  
wife of Vishnu

The amrita

\* In the present myth the wars of gods and demons are plainly alluded to just in the same way as gods and demons are implied in a previous myth in which Vishnu promises the gods that he will become incarnate. But very often the gods are called Devatās, and seem to represent a superior tribe of mortal men whilst the demons are termed Daitvas, Danavas, Asuras or Rākshasas, and appear to represent the aborigines of India.

# HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV

Indra and the gods quaff the amrita and overcome the demons

Hospitable entertainments of the party at Visálá

Journey to Mithilá

Legend of the adulter of Indra with the wife of Gautama the sage

Indra cursed by Gautama.

fought lustily, but Vishnu assumed the form of a captivating damsel, and stole away the amrita. Vishnu then gave the amrita to Indra and the gods, and Indra and the gods quaffed the amrita, and fought and overcame the demons, and Indra once again recovered his rule."

Now when Viswamitra had finished speaking, he told the two Princes that they would rest that night in the city of Visálá. And when they arrived at the city, the Raja of Visálá came out to welcome the sage, and presented him with water and the argha, and the Raja wondered as he beheld the two heroes, and at his request Viswamitra related to him who they were and wherefore they had come to the city of Visálá, and they were hospitably entertained by the Raja, and passed the night there.

When morning had come, Rama and Lakshman, accompanied by the sage Viswamitra, proceeded towards the beautiful city of Mithilá, and on the way Ráma saw a hermitage in the midst of a grove, and he inquired of Viswamitra respecting that hermitage, on which the sage related to him the sacred story, as follows —

"This holy hermitage, adorned with trees, fruits, and flowers, belonged in ancient times to the sage Gautama, and here the sage remained for many thousand years with his wife Ahalya in the performance of religious austerities. One day when the sage was absent from his dwelling, the mighty Indra passed by, and burned with an impure passion for the wife of Gautama, and he entered the hut in the disguise of the sage, and began to entreat Ahalya, and Ahalya, knowing him to be the Raja of the celestials, in the wantonness of her heart yielded to his desires. Then the sovereign of the gods left the hermitage, but at that moment Gautama entered, and he was invincible even to the gods through the power of his austerities. Perceiving him, Indra was overwhelmed with sadness, and the sage, beholding the profligate lord of gods in his disguise, thus addressed him in words of dreadful anger — 'O deprived wretch, assuming my form you have perpetrated this great crime! Therefore from this moment do you become a

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.The wife of  
Gautama rendered invisible  
until the arrival  
of Ráma.Ráma enters  
the hermitage  
and frees  
Ahalyá from  
the curse.Review of the  
foregoing tradi-  
tion of Ráma's  
expedition  
against the  
RákshasasAnomalous  
character of  
Viswámitra.

cunuch !' The great sage then pronounced this curse upon his wife Ahalyá :—' O sinful wretch, for thousands of years shall you remain in this forest, abandoned by all and invisible to all, until Ráma, the son of Dasaratha, shall enter here, and you from beholding him shall be cleansed from all sin, and again approach me without fear.' With these words the illustrious Gautama abandoned this hermitage, and performed religious austerities on the summit of the Himálaya mountain.<sup>10</sup>

Having heard this holy legend, Ráma entered the hermitage, preceded by Viswámitra ; and at that moment, Ahalyá was released from her curse, and became visible to all ; and a shower of flowers fell from heaven, and divine music was heard in the sky. Then the illustrious Gautama, beholding with divine eye that his consort was cleansed from all sin, repaired again to his hermitage ; and having paid due honours to Ráma, he engaged in sacred austerities with his purified spouse. And Ráma proceeded to Mithilá with his brother and Viswámitra.

The foregoing narrative of Ráma's expedition against the Rákshasas, and subsequent journey to the city of Mithilá, offers but few points worthy of consideration. The character of Viswámitra is an anomaly. He is said to have been originally a Kshatriya, and to have subsequently practised so many religious austerities, that he ultimately became a Bráhman ; but his case must be regarded as altogether exceptional, as no other similar change of caste appears to have been recorded.<sup>11</sup> The geo-

<sup>10</sup> This curious myth of the seduction of the wife of a sage by Indra, the god of the firmament, probably originated in the opposition of the Bráhmanas to the worship of Indra, to which reference has already been made, and which will form the subject of discussion hereafter. The prophetic curse pronounced by the sage, that his wife should remain in the forest until the advent of Ráma, stamps the whole as a mythical interpolation.

<sup>11</sup> The difficulty in connection with Viswámitra's change of caste, is to apprehend the reason why a Kshatriya should desire to become a Bráhman. In ancient times the Bráhmanas were certainly regarded by the Kshatriyas with a certain

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

General truth  
fulness of the  
geographical  
references.

Large interpo-  
sition of a  
literary  
myths

graphical references are generally exact, and present no difficulty, a circumstance which seems to indicate that the Rāmāyana was composed in the neighbourhood of the scenes to which it refers. The main feature of the story is the abundance of wearisome and unmeaning legends, which Visvāmitra persists in relating to Rāma at every opportunity, and in which Rāma professes to be deeply interested. These episodes, however, appear to be entirely devoid of historical value, and accordingly only a few have been retained in a condensed form as specimens of the remainder. Thus the legend of the descent of the river Ganges upon the head of Siva, and that of the churning of the sea by the gods and demons for the production of amrita, have been preserved in the foregoing relation, not because they possess any hidden meaning, or throw any light upon the religion or civilization of the people, but simply because they are wonderful products of Hindu imagination, which from some cause or other have been frequently brought before the notice of European readers, whilst traditions of infinitely greater importance and significance have been wholly ignored.

---

amount of contempt and it is evident that Visvāmitra is to be referred to a later  
able remote period for he was the reputed father of Sakuntala. It is not un-  
likely that he was one of the Kshatriyas who had adopted Buddhism but who  
from some cause or other deserted to the side of the Brahmins and henceforward  
became a favourite hero in Puranic and traditional legends.

## CHAPTER V.

### MARRIAGE OF RÁMA

THE story of the marriages of Ráma and his three brethren, naturally forms one of the most attractive and favourite portions of the Rámáyana. In all civilized countries the story of a marriage is universally interesting to young and old; and amongst western nations it is generally adopted as the climax of every romance and every drama. In India this interest is intensified from causes which are by no means difficult of apprehension. The sympathies which in Europe are permitted to spread through large communities, are concentrated in the family or household; and the consequence is that family events, such as births, deaths, and marriages, assume an importance in the family which is unknown elsewhere; whilst they are accompanied by a multitude of rites and observances which still further add to the gravity and significance of the occasion. Marriages especially are the all absorbing topic in every Hindú household; from the little girl who is looking forward to the day when she will be arrayed in jewels and fine clothes, and be seated by the side of her future husband, to the aged matron who can remember every recurrence of the ceremony in the family for many generations. Indeed the marriage

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Interesting  
story of Ráma's  
marriage  
General interest  
attached to  
marriages  
intensified in  
India.

The all absorbing  
topic in  
Hindú house-  
holds

Paramount  
duty of Hindu  
parents to  
arrange the  
marriages of  
the children.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

---

of sons and daughters is a paramount duty which every Hindu father must fulfil, who would escape the censure of his fellow men and the anger of the gods, whilst it is the one great event in the life of every Hindu boy and girl, without exception, throughout the land.

Transcendent  
interest  
attached to the  
marriage of  
Rāma and Sītā.

But the marriage of Rāma and Sītā possesses attractions far above those of any ordinary tradition. It is not a mere union of a boy and girl, which can only be consummated in after years, but it is the union of a young hero to a marriageable maiden, and of a hero who has won his prize by a feat of arms. Moreover the holy legend calls up associations and sympathies which no other story can awaken. It describes not only the union of the heroic and beautiful, but the marriage of the greatest of gods with the kindest of goddesses, of the personification of all that is handsome and glorious in the god man, with all that is lovely and light and graceful in a goddess maiden, of the divine incarnation of the immortal Vishnu with the divine incarnation of the equally immortal Lakshmi. Accordingly, that indescribable charm which is thrown round every marriage in which the lovers are young and fair, is invested with a higher interest from the deep religious feeling which is stirred within the breast of all who listen to the sacred song. The mother remembers when she too was a bride, the daughter sighs for the day when she too will be given to a husband, whilst the poor widow's heart is bursting at a glimpse of happiness which is denied to her for ever. But still with all these natural emotions, there is mingled a deep religious joy and exultation

Religious ideas  
of the religious  
character

Special religious  
sympathies of  
Hindu family

in all the more important turns in the narrative; and especially when Ráma triumphantly bends the fabled bow, or takes the hand of his beautiful bride in the presence of the sacred fire.

It must, however, be confessed that the religious sentiment above indicated is not expressed in the Rámáyana in the degree to which it is felt by a sympathetic audience of Hindús. Thus the narrative to a European reader is a mere ordinary story of a Hindú marriage, in which the allusions to the divinity of the married pair are stained and artificial. But in this respect the associations in the mind of the Hindús supply all that is wanting. From their earliest infancy they have been taught to repeat the sacred name of Ráma, and to believe in his divinity; and not a single doubt as to the truth of that divinity is ever felt or uttered. When, therefore, the Hindú poet fails, as he must fail, to indicate that incarnation of deity in which he fully believes, and which indeed he is desirous of enforcing, the belief of the reader or hearer is in no way affected by the deficiency. To him the divine Ráma is an incarnation of the eternal, the immortal, and the invisible; whilst Sítá is a personification of a corresponding female nature, who is mystically regarded as the primeval affection or divine love of Ráma.

Religious sentiment imperfectly expressed in the Rámáyana but felt by every Hindú.

Unquestioning belief in the incarnation of Vishnú and Lakshmi.

The story of the marriage of Ráma is comprised in three distinct narratives, as follows:—

Division of the story of the marriage of Ráma into three distinct narratives

1st, The circumstances which led to the marriage, and the ceremony of the marriage, all of which took place in the city of Mithilá.

2nd, The return journey of Mahárája Dasaratha

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

from the city of Mithilá to the city of Ayodhyá, accompanied by his four sons and their respective brides

3rd, The honeymoon of Ráma, which did not commence until after the arrival of the party at the city of Ayodhyá

1st Tradition of the winning of Sitá by Ráma, and the subsequent marriage.

The first portion of the narrative, comprising the story of how Ráma won his bride, and how the marriage ceremony was performed, appears to be a relic of the original tradition, and may now be related as follows —

Confusion of the women of Mithilá on hearing of Ráma's approach.

When the women of Mithilá heard that the handsome and heroic Ráma was entering the city, they hastened out of their houses to behold him, and so anxious were they to gaze upon his countenance, that in the confusion some put their anklets on their arms and their bracelets on their ancles, and some put the ornaments for their heads on their bosoms, and others fixed the ornaments for their bosoms on their backs<sup>1</sup>. And when Raja Janaka heard that the sage Viswámitra had come to his city, he hastened to receive him with every token of great respect, and he said — "O chief of sages, I am truly blessed, seeing that my place of sacrifice is thus honoured by your presence and that of the sages." And when the Raja saw Rama and Lakshmana, he said to Viswámitra — "Who are those two illustrious youths who are as majestic as elephants, as heroic as tigers, and as beautiful as the two Aswins?" Viswámitra replied — "They are the sons of Maharaja Dasaratha, and the conquerors of the Rikshasas, and they are come hither to inquire about the great bow." And Janaka showed to the sons of Dasaratha the great bow with which Siva had destroyed the gods at the sacrifice of Daksha, and which had ever since that day been preserved in the royal

Raja Janaka respectfully receives Viswámitra and inquires respecting Ráma and Lakshmana

Exhibits the great bow of Siva

<sup>1</sup> This passage respecting the women is evidently a later interpolation, for it is scarcely possible that they should have been acquainted with the merits of Ráma, whilst their Raja Janaka was compelled to ask Viswámitra respecting his identity



house of Mithilá, and worshipped with every honour.\* And the bow was laid in a huge chest, which moved on eight wheels; and it was drawn into the presence of Raja Janaka and the two Princes by eight hundred men, who were tall and strong, so heavy and stupendous was that great bow. And Raja Janaka said to the two heroes:—"I have promised to give my beautiful daughter Sítá in marriage to that Raja who shall succeed in bending the bow; and all the Rajas of the earth have come hither, and not one has ever been strong enough to lift that bow from the ground." Now when Ráma saw the bow, he lifted it with one hand from the ground in a sportive manner; and a great multitude in deep amazement looked on. Then Ráma made the bow ready with a smile, and putting forth all his strength he bent the bow until it broke in the midst, and the noise thereof was like the crash of a falling mountain, or the roar of the thunder-bolt hurled by Indra. And all the people were stunned and fell down, excepting only Viswámitra and Raja Janaka, and the two sons of Dasaratha.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Sítá promised  
to that Raja  
who could bend  
the bow.

Ráma bends  
the bow.

Then Raja Janaka said to the sage:—"This deed of Ráma is without a parallel, and he shall receive my daughter Sítá in marriage: With thy permission, O sage, let messengers on swift horses go hence to the city of Ayodhyá, and acquaint Mahárajá Dasaratha with all that has occurred, and bring him to this city." And Viswámitra agreed, and the messengers were mounted on swift beasts, and in three nights they arrived at the city of Ayodhyá; and they entered the royal palace, and delivered their message to the Mahárajá. Then the Mahárajá consulted Vasishtha and the other priests, and they were highly pleased, and said:—"On the morrow we will go to Mithilá." And the messengers from Raja Janaka were entertained in the palace with great respect, and remained there all that night.

Raja Janaka  
sends messen-  
gers to inform  
Dasaratha.

Early the next morning the happy Mahárajá set out with his priests, and his treasures, and all his army, and in

The Mahárajá  
goes to Mithilá,  
and is received  
by Raja Janaka.

\* The story of the sacrifice of Daksha is connected with the worship of Siva. Daksha performed a sacrifice, and invited all the gods excepting Siva and his wife Sítá, and Siva, at the instigation of Sítá, became so highly offended at this omission, that he destroyed the sacrifice.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

four days he arrived at the pleasant city of Mithilá, and Raja Janaka came out to meet him, and received him with every honour. And Raja Janaka said to Dasaratha — “Happy am I this day, and delivered from every kind of distress, for by this alliance my family will be honoured and purified.”

Pecial of the  
reistry of  
Rama and Sita.

On the morrow Raja Janaka commanded his Chief Counsellor to bring Mahárya Dasaratha together with his son Ráma and priest Vasishtha. Then the Maharaja, attended by his two priests, and all his friends, went to the place where Janaka was, and the great sage Vasishtha recited to Raja Janaka the names of all the ancestors of Dasaratha, and Janaka recited to the Mahárya the names of all his own ancestors. Then Janaka proposed to give his daughter Sita in marriage to Ráma, and her sister Urmilá in marriage to Lakshmana, and he also proposed that the two daughters of his brother Kusadhvaya should be married to Bharata and Satrugna. And Visvámitra and Vasishtha approved of the marriages of the four damsels to the four sons of Dasaratha. Then Maharaja Dasaratha, having requested leave of the Raja of Mithilá, departed to his own lodgings, preceded by Vasishtha and all the sages, and there the Maharaja performed a great Sraddha to the ghosts of his deceased ancestors, and gave four lakhs of cows with their calves to the Brahmans, being a lakh for each son, and each cow was adorned with horns of pure gold.<sup>2</sup>

Performance of  
a great Sraddha  
by Dasaratha.

The Maharaja  
proceeds to the  
place of sacrifice.

When the night had passed away, and Mahárya Dasaratha had fulfilled his morning duties, he went out attended by his sons richly adorned with jewels, and preceded by Vasishtha and the other sages, and he proceeded to the place of sacrifice, and approached the Raja of Mithilá in due form, and thus addressed him — “O Raja, peace be to you! We are come into your assembly to perform the nuptials, and now therefore introduce us and our friends into your own house.” Then the eloquent Raja of Mithilá thus

<sup>2</sup> It is customary to perform a Sráddha, or feast to the souls of departed ancestors on the eve of a marriage. For a description of the ceremony of the Sráddha see chapter x. l.

replied to the generous words of Dasaratha.—“What porter have I placed at the gate, and who considers about entering his own house? My daughter is standing at the foot of the altar, and I am prepared and waiting for you.”

Meanwhile Vasishtha had erected the altar in the chamber of the gods, and adorned it on every side with fragrant flowers. And there were cooling jars of water, and pots filled with branches of trees, and pots of incense, and vessels of shells, and spoons and ladles for pouring the homa upon the fire, and vessels of fruit, and milk, and honey, and rice, and parched barley. And the kusa grass was spread upon the floor, and the fire was lighted upon the altar with all the due formulas, and the homa consecrated with mantras was placed upon the flame. Then whilst Ráma stood on the eastern side of the altar, Raja Janaka brought his daughter Sítá, adorned with every ornament, into the presence of the sacred fire, and placed her opposite to the heroic son of Dasaratha; and he spoke to the lotos-eyed Ráma as follows:—  
 “This is my daughter Sítá, endowed with every virtue: Take her hand in yours, O son of Dasaratha, and she will ever attend you like a shadow: Maintain her for life, and be not offended if she ever commits a fault.” Raja Janaka in like manner desired Lakshmana to take the hand of his other daughter Urmilá, and Bharata and Satrugna to take the hands of the two daughters of his brother Kuradhwaja. Raja Janaka then sprinkled the bridegrooms and their brides with water consecrated by the utterance of holy mantras; and the trumpets sounded, and each of the four sons of Dasaratha led his bride three times round the fire upon the altar, and round the Raja, and performed the nuptial ceremonies according to the ordinance. A shower of flowers then fell from heaven upon them all, and celestial music was heard in the sky, and the Apsaras danced for joy, and the Gandharvas played sweet and solemn music.<sup>4</sup>

Preparations made by Vasishtha the priest for the nuptial ceremony

Janaka places Sítá before the altar

The bridegrooms take the hands of the brides, and are sprinkled with holy water.

Each three times round the fire

Joy of the gods

<sup>4</sup> The marriage of Rama and Sítá is somewhat differently related in the Adhyátma Rámáyana, as will be seen from the following extract—

“Sitavanda, the son of Gautama, the priest of Janaka, being satisfied as to the propriety of the day fixed for the marriage, said to Janaka—“Let a proper canopy be erected in thy house, cause four pillars to be raised and adorned with

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IVCeremonies in  
the inner apart-  
ments.

Now when the ceremonies of the marriage had been all performed, the bridegrooms led their brides into the inner apartments, and each one seated his bride on his left side, and the women tied their garments together, and the women removed the veils from the brides, and desired both the brides and bridegrooms to look each other in the face for the first time, and each of the sons of Dasaratha gazed upon the face of his own bride, and she in like manner gazed upon the face of her husband, and they exchanged garlands

jewels, with fringes of pearls embroidery, and brocade. The marriage procession was then made ready, they first rubbed Rama's body with meal and oil, after which he bathed and was dressed in clothes of gold brocade. He had a crown of pearls on his head, earrings of exquisite richness hung from both his ears, his eyes were rubbed with antimony, and his hands and feet with henna. He wore a string of pearls and flowers round his neck, and an ornament of pearls on his forehead, a stripe of saffron was marked in the centre of his forehead, and his two locks of hair hung in curls on his cheeks. Being thus adorned he mounted his horse, the kettle drums and shells sounding on every side. Lights innumerable accompanied him and immense quantities of fireworks were displayed. The dancers performed various dances, the gods appearing in the heavens sounded their shells, and showered down flowers upon Pāma. Thousands of elephants resembling mountains, and of horses also swift as the wind, were led before him, horsemen and footmen without number attended him. In this manner was the marriage procession of Pāma conducted.

"The wife of Janaka, having adorned Sita with jewels and rich clothes, placed her under the canopy. Millions of suns and moons would bow down in subjection before the faces of Rama and Sita. When the procession came to the palace, Janaka went forth to meet Pāma, he brought him and his attendants into the house and having seated Rāma with Sita under the canopy the Brāhmins commenced reading the Vedas. At the sound of the Vedas the fire was kindled, and the sacrifice placed therein. The whole assembly walked round them seven times. The Raja then tied the clothes of the bride and the bridegroom in a knot, as having bestowed them on each other, and Janaka delivered Sita to Pāma. At that time the world was filled with the sound of 'May thy prosperity endure for ever.' The gods sounded their kettle drums and showered down flowers. Alms were distributed in such quantities that no one could complain of want in future, all were happy.

"On the second day Janaka assembled Vasishtha, Vishwamitra, and the other holy men, and gave them an account of the birth of Sita, saying — 'Sita was not produced, holy men, from the body of any one. One day I cleared a spot of ground for a sacrifice, and turning up the earth with a plough share, a silver vessel sealed on the top was rooted up. When I opened the seal, a virgin beautiful as a hundred moons rose from out of that vessel. I brought her to my house with the affection of a father, and my wife and I adopted her, and we considered her as our daughter.' Janaka then stated that Narada had related to him the whole story of the incarnation of Vishnu in Pāma and his brothers, and the primordial affection in the form of Sita, who was to be married to him. He added that he had commenced the Swayamvara in order to discover Rama."

together, and every other rite was performed according to the ordinance.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The foregoing narrative of the marriages of Ráma and his brethren, comprises some exaggerations as regards the great bow of Siva, and perhaps has been slightly Brahmanized by some later editor, but otherwise it bears the impress of being based upon an authentic tradition. That Ráma should have performed some wonderful feat of arms at the court of Mithilá, and by these means should have obtained the hand of the beautiful daughter of Raja Janaka, is perfectly in accordance with the traditions which have been preserved of the Swayamvara. Again, it will be noticed that the Bráhmans play little or no part in the ceremony. Vasishtha, indeed, is introduced as reciting the ancestry of Ráma, and even as preparing the altar and performing the homa; but it is Janaka, the father of the bride, who performs the actual ceremonies of the marriage; and this circumstance is alone sufficient to indicate that the original tradition refers to a period when the authority and dignity of the Bráhmans were by no means so firmly established as they were in later years.

Review of the foregoing tradition of the marriages of Ráma and his brethren

Authentic character of the narrative

Marriage ceremony not performed by the Bráhmans but by Raja Janaka.

As regards the ceremony itself, it seems to have included four important rites, viz.:—

Four rites.

1st, The procession of the bridegroom and his relatives and friends to the house of the father of the bride.

The procession

2nd, The placing of the bride and bridegroom before the sacred fire which has been kindled on the altar.

The sacred fire

3rd, The bridegroom taking the hand of the bride in the presence of the fire.

The taking of the hand

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

The sprinkling.

Resemblance  
between the  
ancient Aryan  
ceremony and  
the modern  
Christian rite.

4th, The sprinkling of the bride and bridegroom with water which has been consecrated by the utterance of verses from Vedic hymns.

Here it is impossible to avoid noticing the striking resemblance between the ancient ceremony as it was performed by our Aryan forefathers in their private dwellings, and the more modern rite as it is performed in Christian churches. In Protestant countries the fire on the altar has been rejected as Jewish, and the use of holy water has in like manner been abandoned as Romish. But still in all essential particulars the ceremony is the same. The bridegroom and the bride are still placed before the altar; and the father of the bride still gives away his daughter; whilst the bridegroom takes her hand in his, and pledges his troth in the presence of the altar, although the fire is wanting.

2nd. Return  
journey from  
Mithilá to  
Ayodhyá.

Episode exhibit-  
ing the opposi-  
tion of Ilmá,  
the Kshatriya,  
to Parasú  
Ráma, the  
Bráhmaṇ.

The second section of the story of Ráma's marriage comprises the return journey of Mahárája Dasaratha from the city of Mithilá to that of Ayodhyá, in which he was accompanied by his four sons and their respective brides. This journey is of minor importance; but it contains a curious account of a meeting between the two Rámas; that is, between Ráma the Kshatriya and Ráma the Bráhmaṇ; or in other words, between the present Ráma, who was the son of Dasaratha, and another Ráma, who was the son of a sage named Jamadagni, and was known by the distinguishing appellation of Parasú Ráma, or Ráma "with the axe." This Parasú Ráma is said to have been a great warrior as well as a Bráhmaṇ. He was a worshipper of Siva, from whom he obtained his celebrated axe; and is especially renowned for his prowess against the Kshatriyas. These latter cir-

Nature of the  
opposition.

cumstances seem to have placed him in opposition to Rāma. As a worshipper of Śiva he was opposed to Rāma as an incarnation of Viṣṇu, and as a Brahmanical slaughterer of the Kṣhatryias he was opposed to Rāma as the son of Mahārāja Daśaratha. A further inquiry into his real character will be attempted hereafter. For the present it will be sufficient to reproduce the simple narrative, which is as follows —

HISTORY OF  
RĀMA  
PART IV

Narrative of the  
return journey

Now on the morning after the marriages of Rāma and his brethren, the sage Viśvāmitra took leave of the two Rajas and went his way to the northern mountain. And Mahārāja Daśaratha also took leave of Rājā Janaka, and Rājā Janaka gave to each of the four brides many rich presents of clothes, deer skins, jewels, soft silks, garments of various colours, beautiful ornaments, together with a hundred thousand cows.

Departure of  
the sage,  
Viśvāmitra.

Presents of  
Janaka to the  
brides.

Then Mahārāja Daśaratha departed out of Mithilā in great splendour preceded by his preceptor Viśvāmitra and the other sages and accompanied by his sons and daughters-in-law. And as the Mahārāja was returning to his own city of Ayodhya, he saw the birds gathering together on his

Departure of the  
Mahārāja with  
his sons and  
their wives.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Evil and good  
omens

Terrible appear-  
ance of Parasu-  
Rāma, son of  
Jamadagni

His wrath  
against Rāma  
for having  
broken the bow  
of Śiva

Vasishtha and  
the Brāhmanas  
present the  
argha

Parasu Rāma  
challenges  
Rāma to bend  
the bow of  
Vishnu.

right hand, and the peaceful deer of the forest encompassing him round about, and he was greatly alarmed and said to his preceptor Vasishtha —“What mean these omens?” And Vasishtha replied —“The birds, O Mahārāja, inform you of the approach of something terrible, but the deer who surround you bid you not to be afraid.”

Whilst Vasishtha and Dasaratha were thus speaking, a fierce tempest arose which raised the sand in clouds, and caused the earth to quake, and the air was filled with darkness, and the sun lost its heat, and the country was filled with dust and ashes, and all were sore afraid, except Vasishtha, and the sages and the sons of Dasaratha. Presently they saw a mighty being, with a jata on his head, drawing near unto them, tremendous as Indra, dreadful as Yama coming to destroy the world, arrayed in splendour greater than human eye could behold, and bright as the glowing fire. With a mace upon his shoulder, and a bow resembling the rainbow, and a fiery shaft in his hand, he advanced like Śiva going to destroy Tripura, and he was enraged with Rāma, the son of Dasaratha, for having broken the bow of Śiva, and his wrath resembled a fire throwing out its flames through a cloud of smoke. And Vasishtha and the sages knew him to be the Brahmin Rāma, the famous Rama who was the son of Jamadagni, and who in days of old had slain all the Kshatriyas in a single day. And they said one to another —“Will the great Rāma again destroy the Kshatriyas?” Thus foreboding, Vasishtha and the other Brāhmanas presented him with propitiatory offerings, and said —“O my lord, accept this argha! O sage, be not again angry!” And Rāma, the son of Jamadagni, accepted the argha without speaking to the sages, and he turned to Rāma, the son of Dasaratha, and spoke as follows —“O son of Dasaratha, I have heard of your great prowess, and how you have broken the divine bow of Śiva, which was made by Visvakarma. But another bow was made by Visvakarma and given to Vishnu, and with this bow I have conquered the whole earth. Take it now, and if you are able to draw it I will give you battle.” Then the heroic son of Dasar-



thra smiled and took the bow, and fixed the arrow, and discharged it at the sky, saying:—"As you are a Bráhmaṇ I will not discharge this fatal arrow at you." Then the son of Jamadagni lost his strength, and knew that Ráma was Vishnu; and he respectfully saluted the divine hero, and went his way to the Mahendra mountain. And Dasaratha was in great joy, and all the sages bestowed many praises upon the heroic son of the Mahárája.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Ráma bends the bow and discharges an arrow.

Parasu Ráma acknowledges him to be, Vishnu.

After some days, Dasaratha approached his own city of Ayodhyá, and the city was adorned with banners, and the pleasant streets were watered and strowed with flowers, and the air was filled with the clangour of trumpets, and thousands of citizens went out to welcome back their Mahárája; and the Mahárája was filled with joy, as he saw his people anxious to behold him and to do him honour; and Kausalyá and Kaikeyí, and Sumitrá, together with the other wives of the Mahárája, were ready to embrace their daughters-in-law, the fortunate Sítá, Urmiká, and the two nieces of Raja Janaka. Then the sons of Dasaratha, with their newly-married wives, bowed down to the feet of their mothers; and the Ránís took their sons, and their sons' wives, to the different temples, that they might all bow down their heads to the gods and goddesses therein. Then the brethren and their wives bowed down to the feet of their elders and preceptors, and were conducted to the palace. And all the women of the neighbourhood came and saw the faces of the brides, and made them presents according to their rank; and the musicians, and the genealogists, and the eulogists, and all the dancers and singers, were dismissed with rich presents; and the Bráhmans and kinsmen, being well feasted, went their way, and the marriage was over.

Grand entry of the Mahárája into the city of Ayodhyá.

Rejoicings of the people.

The newly-married pairs bow down to their mothers and worship the gods

Presents and feasting

The only point in the foregoing narrative which seems to require consideration here is the character of Parasu Ráma. According to an extravagant myth, this Bráhmaṇ hero cleared the earth twenty-one times of every Kshatriya, and filled either five or seven lakes

Review of the foregoing narrative character of Parasu Ráma.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Inference that  
his alleged  
extirpation of  
the Kshatriyas  
is historical.

Refutation of  
the inference

Parasu Ráma  
the mere hero  
of some petty  
local tradition  
originating in  
the theft of a  
cow

with their blood.<sup>6</sup> From this wild statement it has been inferred that the extirpation of the Kshatriyas was an accomplished fact, to be compared with the downfall of the Greek tyrannies, and that the triumph of the Bráhmans was a counterpart of the rise of the Greek republics.<sup>7</sup> Such a view, however, appears to be contrary to probabilities, and is certainly discountenanced by actual facts. The conflict between the soldier and the priest, the Kshatriya and the Bráhman, belongs to the age of Buddhism. In the earlier age to which *Parasu Ráma* seems to belong, a conflict between the haughty Kshatriya and the mendicant Bráhman, could only have had but one result. Occasionally, however, there may have been trivial local feuds, in which some warlike son of a Bráhman may have triumphed over a Kshatriya, and such a feat would be duly preserved and exaggerated in Brahmanical tradition. *Parasu Ráma* was apparently the hero of some such village feud, which broke out respecting the theft of a cow, or as some authorities have it, the theft of a calf. The cow or calf of the Bráhman Jamadagni was stolen by a Kshatriya. In revenge *Parasu Ráma*, the son of Jamadagni, slew the Kshatriya. Then, by way of reprisals, the sons of the slaughtered Kshatriya attacked the hermitage of Jamadagni and murdered him. Finally *Parasu Ráma* slew the murderers of his father, and vowed that he would destroy the whole race of Kshatriyas. Henceforth it is said that he killed every Kshatriya whom he met; and, indeed, he appears to have be-

<sup>6</sup> The legend of *Parasu Ráma* as it is related in the *Mahá Bhárata*, has been translated by Professor H. H. Wilson, and is inserted in his translation of the *Vishnu Purán*, p. 401, 4 to edition.

<sup>7</sup> See Professor Max Müller's *Hist. of Sanskrit Literature*, p. 17. Whilst doing full justice to the learning and critical ability of the eminent editor of the *Rig Veda*, it may be remarked that some of his historical inferences appear to be open to question.

whom he met: and, indeed, he appears to have become so terrible with his axe, as to have been called Parasu Ráma, or Ráma with the axe.\* That this cattle-lifting story should be exaggerated into a legend that Parasu Ráma extirpated the whole race of Kshatriyas, is only a specimen of Brahmanical extravagance. The Kshatriyas were never extirpated. Those professing Buddhism were defeated, and perhaps driven out of India; but the Kshatriyas, or Rajas, are to this day dwelling as a people in their own country of Rajputána. The legend of Parasu Ráma's interview with Ráma is evidently a myth, introduced to exhibit the superiority of Vishnu over Siva; the comparison being probably invited by the similarity of name. This myth, however, is in singular opposition to another myth by which Parasu Ráma is represented as an incarnation of Vishnu. That the Bráhmans should have elevated their own caste hero to the rank of deity is by no means surprising; but it is impossible to reconcile this idea with the statement that Parasu Ráma was a worshipper of Siva; and as such came in conflict with Ráma, who, like himself, was an incarnation of Vishnu.

The third section of the story of Ráma's marriage comprises the narrative of Ráma's honeymoon, and is especially curious as representing the Hindú ideal of perfect happiness in wedded life. It must, however, be treated as a modern interpolation, and indeed is only valuable as an illustration of modern customs and ideas.<sup>8</sup> The change in the whole tone of the Rámáyana will be at once perceptible; and in this respect the style is similar to

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Cattle lifting  
story exaggerated  
into a  
Brahmanical  
fable that  
Parasu Ráma  
extirpated the  
Kshatriyas

3rd. Story of  
Ráma's honey  
moon

Its modern  
character

Contrast  
between the  
simplicity of the  
marriage  
ceremony and  
the ornate story  
of the honey-  
moon

\* This section is only to be found in what is called the North-West recension of the Rámáyana.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Hind i charac-  
ter of the nar-  
rative

Story of the  
honey-moon in  
the Rāmāyana.

Consummat on  
of the marriages  
at Ayodhyā.

Adv ce given to  
Sītā by her  
maids

T n d ty of  
Sītā

Remon trances  
of Rāma.

that of the story of the childhood of Rāma. In the description of the marriage ceremony which was performed at Mithula, there is a certain patriarchal simplicity, which evidently refers to a remote and primitive age. In the following narrative there is all the artificial prettiness and extravagant fancy which belongs to modern Hinduism. No one but a Hindu bard could have pictured forth such details, and perhaps no audience, which was not composed of orientals, could possibly appreciate the description of early married life which is here presented to the eye.

The story of Rāma's honeymoon is as follows —

Now it was not until the day of the return of the brides and bridegrooms to the city of Ayodhyā that the marriages were fully accomplished. And when it was evening some of the maids said to Sita — “When your husband comes to see you, do not speak to him too soon, but let him entreat and flatter you for a long while before you open your mouth, and when you do speak you must say but little, for a husband soon becomes weary of a prattling wife.” But the other maids said — “This counsel is not good, and we advise you to talk to your husband, and do your best to please him, for the lotos is never weary of giving honey to the bee, and yet the love between them is never diminished, and if by your wit you can defeat your husband, it will give us all a power over him, and make mirth for the morrow.” Sītā blushed at these words, and the maids then brought her to Rāma, but she was fearful of approaching her husband like one who sees a radiant gem in the head of a serpent, but is fearful lest he should have a poisonous fang. The maids then said to her — “Wherefore this reluctance? No one will force you into the presence of your husband, just as no one would force another to bathe in the water of the Ganges but he must do so of his own accord.” At that moment a lion roared out in the jungle, and Sītā trembled as she heard the roaring, and the cunning maids said to her — The

roaring is that of a Rákshasa, and you must now take refuge with him who conquered Táraká and the other Rákshasas, for no one save Ráma can protect you from this great peril." HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV.

So Sítá approached her husband, and sat blushing near him, and Ráma said to her:—"Why do you sit thus, O my beloved? Why do you not show your beautiful face to me, and turn upon me the light of your lustrous eyes? But if you will not look me in the face, at least gratify my passionate heart with the nectar of your words: Yet why be fearful of me? The lotos is never fearful of the bee." And he took her by the hand, and Sítá trembled like one who shrinks from plunging in a tank on a winter morning.

Meanwhile the bridal chamber was beautifully adorned with flowers and garlands. On the walls were wreaths of flowers shaped like trees, and deer, and birds of bright plumage, and cats, and snakes, and bees, and flags, and mimic gardens; and there also was the semblance of a pond, the water of which was formed of black crystals, and it was as if it were filled with flowers, and on each of the four sides of it were steps for going into the pond. In the middle of the chamber was the bridal couch decorated with garlands, and the legs of it were of purest ivory, and the bed was very soft, and it was whiter than the moon, or the sacred shell, or the whitest of white flowers. Lamps of gold were lighted, and golden pots were filled with water as clear as crystal, and with camphorated and perfumed water; and betel was prepared, and pots of sandal, with garlands round the necks of the pots. And the entrance to the room was adorned with plantain trees, and with branches of the mango tree arranged in pots, which were adorned with flowers. Decorations of the bridal chamber

When the night had passed away and the sun was rising in the heavens, the maids went in and awoke the sleeping pair, and they made much mirth at Sítá; and after this the honeymoon passed away in love and joy, and Ráma was ever happy in the company of his wife. One day Ráma and Sítá sat down to play at dice, and Sítá said to Ráma:—"I do not like to play for nothing." So it was agreed between them that the one who lost the game should give a good gift The bridal couch

Description of the honeymoon

Ráma and Sítá playing at dice

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Rama's joke

to the Dwija, or twice born \* And they sat down to play, and the board and the dice were made of ivory, and the balls were of gold And Sita won the game, and Rāma arose and gave her a kiss, and Sita then said to her husband — "What does this mean? I defeated you, and then you come and kiss me" Rāma replied — "I duly paid the wager. I had to give a good gift to the Dwija, but Dwija signifies 'teeth' as well as 'twice born,' and in bringing my lips to your teeth I gave a good gift to the Dwija" Sita replied — "I shall not play such a game with you again, for you will ever be the winner, if you lose you will kiss me, and if I lose I shall have to kiss you"

Rāma compares  
Sita with  
lotus flowers  
in nature

One evening after this, the moon was at the full, and Rāma and Sita went to the banks of a beautiful pond which was filled with lotus flowers, and Rāma began to compare her with the scenes before them He said — "The lotos resembles your graceful form, the moon is like your hair, the bees are like your eyes the reflection of the moon upon the water is like your face, the stalks of the lotos are like your arms, and the buds of the lotos are like your bosom" Then they went down into the pond, and threw water at one another, and as their garments hung down from the water, Rāma threw lotos flowers upon his wife's bosom Presently Sita got out of her depth, and caught hold of Rāma's neck, and he was so happy to have his wife's arms round his neck that he was in no hurry to bring her out of the deep water Then they played at hide and seek amongst the lotos flowers, and Rāma went first to hide, and he kept only his face above the surface of the water, and when Sita went to search for him, she was doubtful whether she saw the face of her husband, or only a blue lotos, and she went to smell the flower, when their lips met, and Rāma kissed her Then Sita went and hid herself in like manner, and when Rāma saw her, he kissed her many times, but she remained perfectly still At last they came out of the water, and each of

Sports of the  
married pair in  
the pond

Rāma and Sita  
drinking

\* The Brāhmanas were known as the twice born Rāma and Sita are here represented as playing to see who should give a handsome present to the Brāhmanas

them drank a cup of honey, and the heart of Sítá was exhilarated like one who has drank wine.<sup>10</sup> Thus the heroic Ráma and the beautiful Sítá lived in the highest felicity, even as Vishnu lives with the beautiful Lakshmí

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

To review such a narrative as the foregoing from a European point of view is simply impossible. Even an attempt to describe a honeymoon is perhaps scarcely in accordance with modern taste; for whatever may have been the custom of a past generation, modern manners seem to demand that a bride and bridegroom should retire from the view of their relatives and friends after the performance of the ceremony, and live in some degree of privacy until they have settled down to the calm routine of matrimonial life. Then, again, a European newly-married pair are supposed to have arrived at years of discretion, and to follow pursuits corresponding to a mature age. But the story of Ráma's honeymoon is little more than a description of the sportive play of a boy-husband and girl-wife, under conditions altogether foreign to European experience. The scene lies in the inner retreat of a Hindú palace. The complexion, age, dress, and manners of the young couple are all opposed to European ideas. The bridegroom is a handsome boy of sixteen with a blue complexion. He is arrayed in a coat of cloth of gold, and his trowsers are made of dyed cotton or silk embroidered with flowers. He has a golden tiara on his head, earrings in his ears, and necklaces of pearls or gems hanging down upon his bosom. The bride is a delicate young girl of fourteen with a complexion the colour of gold, but

Review of the  
foregoing story  
of the honey  
moon of Ráma.  
Wide difference  
between a  
European and a  
Hindú honey  
moon

Ráma and Sítá  
little better  
than children

Description of  
Ráma as a  
Hindú bride-  
groom of six-  
teen.

Description of  
Sítá as a  
Hindú bride  
of fourteen

<sup>10</sup> In the original, Sítá is described as being really intoxicated, and as uttering an amount of gibberish which cannot be reproduced in English

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

---

still very fair. She is arrayed in a light shawl-like garment of a rose-red colour, embroidered with gold. Her raven-black hair is wrought into platted locks on each temple, and drawn in graceful curves on either side from her forehead to her ears; whilst the jetty tresses are glistening with jewelled butterflies, and other gossamery ornaments. Her ears and nose are alike resplendent with jewels; her wrists and arms are adorned with bracelets; her slender ancles are circled round with golden rings; whilst little golden bells twinkle upon her toes as she walks with naked feet over the carpeted floor. Such is the model of a Hindú bride, who has only just been carried from the bosom of her family to the house of her husband, or her husband's father. In educational matters she is perhaps more ignorant than a parish girl in England, but in rank and blood and manners she is a perfect Princess, a royal lady, as graceful and charming as a nymph in Indra's heaven, but pure as the driven snow. Such then were the pretty bridal pair, whose presence was the delight of the whole household; a pair of youthful Hindú lovers, who played at dice for kisses, or sported in the pond at moonlight, or drank honey together, with all the innocence of married children, surrounded by all the luxury of a Hindú zenana, and without a single care in all the world.<sup>11</sup>

Sports of the  
married Hindú  
lovers.

---

<sup>11</sup> The picture of the married life of Ráma and Sítá is presented in the *Adhyátma Rámáyana* in a more Brahmanical form, as will be seen from the following extract —

“When Ráma had married Sítá, and had conducted her to Ayodhyá, he built apartments for her adorned with gold and gems. So great was the quantity of jewels, the reflection from them was far beyond that which could be produced by innumerable tapers, the darkness of night was not known in her mansion. In those apartments a throne studded with gems was erected, on which Ráma sat every day elegantly adorned. Sítá stood at his left side holding in her hand a fan o’na-



mented with precious stones, with which she fanned him. The body of Ráma resembled the lotos, he wore on his shoulders a veil of yellow brocade, earrings in the form of fish were pendent from his ears, a crown of pearls was on his head, and a string of rubies on his neck. His clothes sparkled with every species of jewels; his countenance was luminous as a million suns and moons.

"He was one day sitting in this apartment eating the betel-leaf which he had received from the hand of Sítá, he looked on Sítá's face and smiled, Sítá also looking towards Ráma, smiled in the most affectionate manner. At this time the Brahman sage Nárada came into the apartment. The body of Nárada resembled the purest crystal, the clothes he wore were as red as the rose. He played on the Vina, and he was chaunting a hymn in which the name of Ráma was frequently repeated, for his whole thoughts were bent on Ráma. Nárada is acquainted with the present, the past, and the future. When Ráma beheld him he descended from his throne, and conducted him into his apartment. Ráma and Sítá placing him on their throne, stood before him with joined hands, they worshipped him with pious affection, and walked round him three times. They washed his feet, they then threw the water on their own heads, saying — 'Thy condescension, Nárada! in exhibiting thyself before us, is unbounded, it is not in our power to account for our good fortune.' These words of respect paid him by Ráma filled the heart of Nárada with delight, and he praised Ráma as the Sovereign Lord and Deity, and identified Ráma and Sítá with each of the duties by name. 'What power,' he said, 'have I to relate thy former history. All the women of the world are stamped with the image of Sítá, all mankind with thine, thus the three worlds, which I have seen, are not in appearance different from Ráma and Sítá.'

"In this manner did Nárada rehearse the praises of Ráma, while tears of joy fell from both his eyes. Then with joined hands he again addressed him —

"'Brahma, O Lord! has sent me to present sundry requests to thee; if it be thy pleasure I will mention them.' Ráma said — 'Speak.' Nárada answered — 'My request is this. Thou, Ráma! hast assumed an incarnation of the flesh for the purpose of destroying Rávana. Thou thyself declarest that thou wouldst perform this deed, and that thou wouldst descend into the world to remove the burden from the face of the earth. Now I understand that Mahárajá Dasaratha proposes to resign his throne to thee. Whilst thou art engaged in the government of the kingdom, thou wilt forget to destroy Rávana, and this important event will not be accomplished. Thou, Lord! hast voluntarily entered into this compact, that thou wouldst appear on the earth, and that thou wouldst render light the burden of the world. Confirm the engagement into which thou hast entered. Thy promises ever have from the utmost period of time been sacred, whatever thou hast declared, whatever thou hast designed, that has been carried into effect. We are reduced to great distress, condescend to remove our sorrows. We have taken refuge at thy feet, comply, O Lord, with our petition, and afford us thy assistance without delay.'

"Ráma, on this address from Nárada, considered a little within himself, and thus spoke — 'Be not troubled in thy mind, Nárada! it is my firm and unalterable intention to carry into execution those engagements into which I have entered. Never will I retract my word. I recollect my promise, I will fulfil it in due season. Rávana shall obtain the full reward of such religious observances, charity, and good works, as he may have performed during former births, and when the benefits of his religious acts shall cease I will destroy him.'"

## CHAPTER VI

### PÁMA APPOINTED YUVARAJA

#### HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV

Temporal  
power of  
Rajá  
A c t  
appointment of  
the R-appar  
e t to be co-  
Rája during  
his father's  
lifetime

Threefold  
object of the  
custom  
(1) Settling the  
succession

(2) Assisting the  
reigning Raja.

(3) Educating  
the young  
Prince

In the case  
of a Raja  
the Raja

THE marriage of Rama having been brought to a happy conclusion, there seemed to be only one thing wanting to complete his earthly prosperity and that was his elevation to the throne. It appears to have been an ancient custom in Asiatic monarchies, for the heir apparent to be solemnly recognized as such in the lifetime of his father, by being formally installed in the regal dignity, and admitted to a share in the administration. The object of this custom appears to have been threefold. In the first place, it settled the succession, and prevented any civil war between rival claimants for the throne, which might arise at the death of the sovereign. Secondly, it furnished an aged or infirm ruler with a youthful coadjutor, who might relieve him of all the more active duties of Government military as well as civil. Finally, it familiarized the young Prince with the administration of justice and other branches of government, and enabled him on the death of his father to fulfil with efficiency all the duties of Asiatic sovereignty. Under such circumstances an heir apparent on attaining his majority would be solemnly installed as Raja, and henceforth he would receive the title of Yuvaraja, or "little

Raja," and would be presumed to act in subordination to his father, who would still retain the title of Mahārāja, or "great Raja."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The installation of a Yuvarāja would naturally be regarded throughout the Raj as an important political event; as the accession of a young and promising Prince would be expected to result in such an infusion of new blood into the administration as would materially affect the interests of both Chieftains and people. But in its social aspect such an event would not fail to excite a far deeper interest in the court and palace. In cases where the Mahārāja was blessed with a single consort, the nomination of a Yuvarāja would be commonly attended with no difficulty, as the eldest son would naturally occupy the position; although exceptional cases might occasionally arise, as in the royal house of Bhārata, in which the claim of a nephew seemed to override that of a son, and the rivalry ultimately led to a disastrous war. But in families where the Mahārāja was married to more than one wife, the nomination of a Yuvarāja would frequently be a source of intrigues which would keep the inner apartments in a constant turmoil. The enmities and heart-burnings of the rival women would be kept alive by the ambition of the mothers for the elevation of their respective sons. The apparently just claim of the first wife to see her son appointed Yuvarāja might in the case of an aged and uxorious Mahārāja be set aside by a younger and more favoured rival. Meanwhile, any extra attention which the Mahārāja might pay to a favourite consort would be construed into an intention to elevate her son to the throne, and would thus arouse both the

General political importance of the installation

Social importance in the Court and palace

Natural appointment of the eldest son when the Mahārāja had only one wife

Intrigues where the Mahārāja indulged in polygamy

Jealousy of the wife inflamed by the ambition of the mother

Opposition of the youngest favourite to the first wife

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Part sansh p of  
t slave girls  
of the palace.

I tries  
emb ttered by  
the condit ons  
of ze ana life.  
The pas ions  
st mulated by  
want of soc ety  
and occupation

Tenderness of  
t e woman  
cl anged to the  
f roc ty of the  
tigress.

Vital import  
a ce of the  
quest on of  
successio i in  
polyamous  
households.  
Involves the  
qu tion of  
whe wife  
sha l rule the  
fam ly

jealousy of the wife and the wrath of the mother The slave girls of every Ríni would also espouse the cause of their respective mistresses, and by their sympathies and tale bearings would inflame their wrath to the utmost, until at last the pent up feelings of the affronted wives would burst into flames, and the peace of the Mahírāja would be lost for ever

Nor are these circumstances surprising when the conditions of zenana life are taken into consideration Passions, such as pride, ambition, jealousy, and malice—which in Europe are subdued by the moral influence of general society—become intensified in the confined atmosphere of the zenana, in which that influence is generally wanting Here a number of ignorant and passionate women are herded in separate apartments, without any accomplishment or duty that would serve to occupy their mind, without any society beyond that of their slaves and parasites who are more illiterate and cunning than themselves and with all their energies concentrated into one pursuit of so influencing the mind of the Mahírāja as to secure the welfare of their own sons at the expense of the sons of his other wives Under such circumstances the feminine mind is left to brood at will over real or imagined wrongs, and the prospect of revenge, until sentiment, kindness, and even humanity, are utterly crushed in the female bosom and the woman grows into a cruel and relentless tigress Moreover, the question of the succession, which under any circumstances would excite the antagonism of rival claimants, becomes of paramount importance on other grounds The question is not merely whose son shall succeed to

the throne, but which wife shall rule the royal household; for the mother of the Yuvaraja would naturally secure that position, whatever might be the claims of the eldest Rání; and it can easily be imagined that the mortification of an elder wife in finding herself subordinate to a younger and more successful rival would prove a fertile source of protracted misery, and perhaps would entail the most poignant anguish which a woman could be called upon to bear. The mortification of the son would add to the affliction of the mother. She would see him become the obsequious servant of the son of a hated rival, whilst she herself would be compelled to submit during the remainder of her life to the airs and caprices of a detested woman, through whom her son had lost his birthright, and she herself had been deprived of the affection of her lord.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Anguish of an elder wife at being subordinate to a younger rival, and seeing her own son subordinate to the rival's son.

The tradition of the appointment of Ráma to be Yuvaraja furnishes a graphic illustration of the inner life in the zenana of a Hindú Raja, under circumstances similar to those which have been indicated.

Appointment of Ráma to be Yuvaraja an illustration of zenana life

It must, however, be borne in mind that the object of the author of the Rámáyana was not so much to exhibit the traditionary life of Ráma in all the truthfulness of authentic detail, as to represent Ráma him-

Obscurity arising from the modification of the ancient tradition for the purpose of presenting Ráma as a model.

self as a Hindú model of goodness, who was equally beloved by all, by the people as well as by the Ministers and Chieftains, and even by all the wives and all the sons of the Mahárajá. Glimpses however of the ancient and authentic tradition are sufficiently manifest throughout the whole narrative; and it is by no means difficult to perceive that the real state of affairs in the court of the Mahárajá was somewhat of the following character. The two claimants for

Probable nature of the real state of affairs.

HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV	<p>the dignity of Yuvārjya in Ayodhyā appear to have been Ruma the son of Kausalyā, and Bharata the son of Kūkeyī. The mother of Rama was the first wife of the Mahārāja, and consequently would have the first claim. The mother of Bharata, however, was the youngest wife of the Mahārāja, and by means of her youth and beauty she appears to have exercised a considerable influence over the uxorious Mahārāja. The two remaining sons, Lakshmana and Satrugṇa, appear to have had no prospect whatever of succeeding, and although born of one mother, they appear to have taken different sides, Lakshmana being the particular friend of Rāma, whilst Satrugṇa was the particular friend and follower of Bharata. This point, however, is not clearly stated in the Rāmāyana, as, according to the Brahminical author, both the young Princes, and even Bharata himself, fully recognized on all occasions the superior claims of Rāma.</p>
Opposition of Rama to Bharata.	
Relative position of the mothers.	
Political position of Lakshmana and Satrugṇa.	
Progress of the intrigues.	<p>The progress of the intrigues in the palace at Ayodhyā may be inferred in like manner, although the particulars are rather obscurely related in the Rāmāyana. The young and beautiful Kūkeyī, proud of her influence over the Mahārāja, had probably determined from a very early period that her son Bharata should succeed to the Raj. On the other hand, the first wife, Kausalyā had been nervously jealous lest her more favoured rival should tempt the Mahārāja to commit an injustice by setting aside Rāma and appointing Bharata. As for the Mahārāja he seems to have been disinclined to admit either of his sons to a share in the administration, and at length only yielded when he found that his Chieftains and people were determined to press the</p>
Opposition of Kūkeyī the youngest wife to Kausalyā, the first wife.	
Views of the Mahārāja.	

measure. Having seen, however, the necessity for appointing a Yuvaraja, he seems to have preferred Ráma; probably considering him to be the rightful heir as the son of the first wife. With this view he appears to have sent away Bharata and Satrugna to the distant city of Girivraja, which belonged to the father of Kaikeyí, in order that their presence might occasion no interruption to the installation of Ráma.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Preference for  
Ráma.  
Bharata sent to  
the city of his  
maternal grand-  
father.

With these explanations the narrative of the appointment of Ráma to be Yuvaraja may now be related as follows:—

Traditions as  
related in the  
Rámáyana.

Now Ráma was the son of Kausalyá, and his brother Bharata was the son of Kaikeyí. And it came to pass that Yudhájít, the brother of Kaikeyí, came to Ayodhyá to visit his sister; and the Mahárajá received him kindly and entertained him well. And when Yudhájít prepared to return to his father's city, the Mahárajá determined that his son Bharata should accompany him; and he sent for Bharata and desired him to take leave of his mother Kaikeyí, and to prepare to go with his brother Satrugna to the city of Raja Aswapati, the father of his mother Kaikeyí. And Kaikeyí rejoiced exceedingly when she heard that her son Bharata was going with her brother to the house of her father. And the Mahárajá said to Bharata.—“Go, my gentle one, to the house of your grandfather, accompanied by your brother Satrugna, and revere your grandfather as a deity: Serve the Bráhmans with the utmost assiduity, and ask counsel of them, for they are the gods of the earth: Constantly travel on horse-back, in a chariot, or on an elephant, and make yourself master of singing, and playing, and painting, and dancing, and never sit for a moment in idleness: Never speak a harsh word to any body, for one harsh word will spoil all your good qualities; and ever send messengers to me, as my heart will rejoice greatly to hear of your welfare.”

Visit of Yud  
hájít, brother of  
Kaikeyí and  
uncle of  
Bharata.

The Mahárajá  
determines to  
send away  
Bharata with  
Yudhájít.

Joy of Kaikeyí.

Commands  
given by the  
Mahárajá to  
Bharata.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Departure of  
Bharata and  
Satrugna.

Arrival at the  
city of Raja  
Aswapati

Public recep-  
tion.

Bharata and  
Satrugna  
dwelt in the  
palace of Raja  
Aswapati.

Studies of  
Bharata.

So Bharata took leave of his father and brethren, and then bowed to his mother Kaikeyi, and the other wives of his father, and departed with his uncle and his brother Satrugna, and after travelling many days, and passing many delightful forests, rivers and mountains, he approached the pleasant city of Girivraja, and the palace of his grandfather Aswapati. Bharata then sent on a trusty messenger to announce his arrival to his royal grandfather, and the Raja, hearing the words of the messenger, was greatly pleased, and caused the highly honoured Bharata to be introduced into the city. Then the people of the city watered their streets, and decorated them with garlands of wild flowers, and flags placed on high, and perfumed them with sweet-smelling drugs, and all the people went out with a number of beautiful dancing girls dressed in gay attire, and welcomed Bharata to the city amidst the sound of trumpets, and all the heralds and eulogists walked before Bharata and proclaimed the greatness of his name and lineage. In this manner Bharata slowly arrived at the palace of his grandfather, and there beheld the aged Raja, and did him obeisance, and inquired after his welfare. He then entered the inner apartments, and bowed to the ladies of the royal household. After this Bharata dwelt in the greatest felicity in the palace of his grandfather, who appointed instructors for him, and Bharata attended upon his instructors with all diligence, and he studied the Vedas, and the Vedangas, and the Sastras, and perfected himself in all the sciences and the mechanical arts. And he acquired a perfect knowledge of the whole science of archery, and was deeply versed in the duties of royalty, and very skilful in the management of elephants and chariots, and eminent in writing and composition, and accomplished in leaping and vaulting, and perfect in the knowledge of the stars. Then Bharata sent a messenger to his father Dasaratha to acquaint him with all he had done, and the Mahariya and the Rānis rejoiced greatly at the pleasing tidings brought by the messenger, and sent him back with proper presents to his sons Bharata and Satrugna.



And it came to pass that the Chieftains and people of Ayodhyá began to consider which of the Princes should be appointed Yuvaraja, to assist the aged Mahárajá in the administration of the Raj, and on his death to succeed him on the throne.

Now Mahárajá Dasaratha loved all his four sons, but he had the greatest regard for Ráma; for Ráma was a mine of excellence, eminent in wisdom and religion, learned, generous, of quick perception, pleasing in speech, heroic, but not elated with his own great valour, of incomparable address, reverencing the aged, devotedly attached to those who were devoted to him, the delight of all the people of the Raj, honouring the Bráhmans, compassionate to all who were in distress, and with all his passions under perfect contról. And the thought came into the mind of the Mahárajá that he would appoint his son Ráma to be Yuvaraja, and his associate in the government of the Raj. And all the Ministers and Counsellors, and all the people of the Raj, consulted together how they should entreat the Mahárajá to appoint Ráma to be Yuvaraja. And the Ministers and Counsellors went to the palace, and said:—"O Mahárajá, listen to the voice of your people! You are the Raja of Rajas; you are the greatest amongst men: At the sacrifice of your happiness you have governed us for nine thousand years,<sup>1</sup> and under your rule every one has been happy, and no one has ever dreamed even of any misery or misfortune: Now it is the wish of all, that Ráma should be placed upon the throne and entrusted with the government of the Raj, that you may retire from the duties of sovereignty, and spend the remainder of your years in sacrifice and religious ceremony, and so secure heaven in your next life." And the Mahárajá was glad at heart to hear these words, but he feigned anger, and replied in severe terms, as follows:—"What faults have you discovered in me? Why do you wish my son to be Raja whilst I am alive? Have I ever deprived any one of his rights, that you now desire me

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Question as to which of the Princes should be appointed Yuvaraja.

Partiality of the Mahárajá for Ráma.

Virtues of Ráma

Resolution of the Mahárajá to appoint Ráma to be Yuvaraja.

Ministers, Counsellors, and people request the Mahárajá to retire in favour of Ráma

Feigned anger of the Mahárajá.

<sup>1</sup> This is one of those palpable exaggerations as regards numbers which so frequently deface Brahmanical literature

be your associate in the Raj; we desire that the mighty Ráma, riding on an elephant, may be overshadowed with the royal umbrella." The Mahárajá, hearing these words, was gratified in mind; but still being anxious to know more, he inquired of the Council as follows:—"O Chieftains, you desire that Ráma should become Yuvaraja; but tell me, I pray you, why do you desire to see my son associated with me while I govern the Raj in righteousness?" The Chieftains replied to the Mahárajá in these words:—"O Mahárajá, in every divine quality your son Ráma is equal to Indra: He transcends in excellence the whole race of Ikshwáku: In wisdom he is equal to the holy Vrihaspatí, the preceptor of the gods: His glory and renown are continually increasing, for he reveres the aged, the learned, and the Bráhmaṇs: In war he is irresistible, whether against gods, or demons, or men; for he is skilful in the use of all weapons, whether human or divine: When he goes out against foreign enemies, accompanied by his brother Lakshmana, he always conquers their cities; and when he returns from the battle, whether he be seated on an elephant or in a chariot, he ever inquires after the welfare of the citizens, like a father inquiring after the welfare of his children, saying:—'Is it well with your sons, and your fathers, and your wives, and your servants?' Thus, O Raja of Rajas, does Ráma ever address us: He is afflicted at our distresses, and he rejoices in our joys: He is ever truthful, ever attentive to the aged, a famous archer, never speaking without a benign smile, and never inclining to the love of women. He is never angry without a just cause, and never bestows a favour on one who is unworthy: He upholds the law by protecting the innocent and destroying the criminal: All the people of the city and country pray for the health and strength and long life of the magnanimous Ráma, whether they be servants or bearers of burdens, citizens or ryots, young or old: We therefore supplicate you, O Mahárajá, that you will install your excellent son Ráma as your coadjutor in the administration of the Raj."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

The Chieftains  
recite the many  
merits of Rama.

His wisdom and  
bravery.

His kind words.

His truth, con-  
fidence, and  
justice.

Universal  
popularity

The Mahárajá  
makes known  
his delight

The aged Mahárajá then said to all his people:—"I am

tains as Indra among the Maruts, when he beheld his god-  
 like son approaching. Presently Ráma descended from his  
 chariot, and with joined hands followed Sumantra, and  
 entered the palace, which was as resplendent as the summit  
 of the Kailása mountain, and went into the presence of his  
 father, and bowed at his feet. The Mahárāja then took his  
 son Ráma by his two hands, and drew him towards him, and  
 clasped him in his arms, and commanded a throne to be set  
 before him, lofty, brilliant, and adorned with gold and gems.  
 Then the Mahárāja, seeing his son standing before him  
 adorned with jewels, like his own imago reflected in a mir-  
 ror, was the happiest of fathers; and he said to Ráma—  
 “All men owe three great debts; the first to the gods, the  
 second to the Rishis, and the third to their ancestors; the  
 first I have paid by sacrifices and ceremonies, the second by  
 learning the Vedas and the Sastras, and your birth has freed  
 me from the third: I have now one wish remaining; listen  
 to my words and promise that you will gratify me: You were  
 born of my first wife, and you are the eldest of my four sons;  
 and all my subjects and Chieftains and Counsellors are  
 desirous of seeing you upon the throne: I wish you there-  
 fore to comply with their request: Do not hesitate to do so  
 on account of my being alive, for it has always been the rule  
 of my race that when a Mahárāja grows old, he should give  
 the Raj to his eldest son and retire to the forest: So I wish  
 you to reign in my stead, and relieve me from all my cares,  
 that I may retire to a holy place and worship Vishnu: Three  
 planets are placed in malignant aspect to my star, namely,  
 Súra, Mungul, and Rahu; and the astrologers say that  
 such aspects generally portend the death of a Raja, and will  
 certainly subject him to dreadful misfortunes: But to-mor-  
 row is auspicious, for the moon passes into the favourable  
 mansion of Pushyá; therefore to-morrow I will install you as  
 Yuvaraja: Pass the night with your wife Sitá, sleeping on  
 a couch of kusá grass with a stone for your pillar; and let  
 your friends surround you on all sides, and remain sober,  
 and watch with you: The absence of Bharata is the proper  
 time for your installation; Bharata is obedient to his elder

HISTORY OF  
 INDIA.  
 PART IV

Ráma arrives at  
 the palace

Received  
 graciously by  
 the Mahárāja

Speech of the  
 Mahárāja to  
 Ráma.

Requests Ráma  
 to become  
 Yuvaraja

His own planet  
 threatened by  
 three malignant  
 aspects

Passing of the  
 moon on the  
 morrow into  
 Pushyá

Ráma directed  
 to keep watch  
 until the  
 morning

HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV brother, but still the mind of man is inconstant, therefore keep watch until the morrow "

Rama proceeds to his mother's apartments.

Rama having received the instructions of the Maharaja, bowed his head, and went his way to the apartments of his mother Kausalya, and there he beheld his devout mother, attired in silk, and supplicating the gods in silence, for the prosperity of her son, and Sumitra, the youngest of the Ranas, and Sita, and Lakshmana were attending on Kausalya, as she sat with her eyes fixed in mental supplication to the gods, and contemplated the great Vishnu. Rama approached her, and bowed with joy at her feet, and said —

Acquaints her of his exalted position.

"O mother, I am chosen by the Maharaja to govern the subjects of the Raj. To-morrow my installation will take place by the command of my father." Now Kausalya had been long desirous that her son should obtain the Raj, and she replied to Rama with tears of happiness, saying — "O my beloved son Rama, may your life be long, and all your oppressors be destroyed. Favoured by Lakshmi, who is the goddess of all prosperity, all the kind-folk of my elf and Sumitra will be filled with joy. O my dear son, surely you were born under an auspicious star, seeing that your father Dasaratha has been moved by your excellent qualities. My devotion to Vishnu has been effectual, since the good genius of the Raj of Ikshvaku<sup>2</sup> will condescend to reside with you."

Joy of Kausalya.

Rama's kind address to his brother Lakshmana.

Having been thus addressed by his mother, Rama turned to his brother Lakshmana with a smile and said — "O Lakshmana, share the Raj with me. Let my good fortune attend you as my second self. Enjoy, O son of Sumitra, the pleasures that spring from royalty, for I desire life and a Raj for your sake." Rama then bowed to the feet of both his mothers, and gave directions to Sita, and went his way to his own house.

Goes home.

Vasishtha, by direction of the Maharaja, visits Rama.

Meanwhile the Maharaja called his priest Vasishtha, and said to him — "Go now and cause Rama to fast this day according to the ordinance." The divine Vasishtha, profound

<sup>2</sup> Ikshvaku was a celebrated ancestor of the Ranas of Kosala, and in all probability was the founder of the royal line, all his predecessors being of a mythical character, consisting of Rishis who were either the ancestors or the descendants of the Sun.

in the knowledge of the Vedas, replied —“ Even so ” And HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV Vasishtha mounted his chariot, and quickly arrived at the house of Rāma, which was as resplendent as a bright cloud, and he entered the third court, and Rama hastened to him, and assisted him to dismount from his chariot. Then the venerable Brahman blessed Rama, and said —‘ O Rāma, Vasishtha's directions to Rāma. your father is gracious to you. This day you must fast with Sita, and on the morrow the Mahārāja will install you as his associate in the Raj ” Then Rama respectfully bowed his head, and said —“ It is an auspicious and sacred day ” And Rama worshipped the sage and presented him with ten thousand cows, and Vasishtha, having laid his injunctions upon him took his leave. Rāma worships Vasishtha Then Rāma bathed himself, and with devout mind he approached Vishnu with his beloved wife, and placing on his head the vessel containing the purifying liquids <sup>3</sup> he offered clarified butter to the gods, and gave it to the fire according to the ordinance. He then meditated on the god Vishnu, and with his passions under Sacrifices to Vishnu

<sup>4</sup> The narrative of Vasishtha's visit to Rama is somewhat differently related in the Adhyātma Rāmāyana for the purpose of laying more stress upon the divine character of Rama. The passage is as follows —

Vasishtha then proceeded to wait on Rama. The latter went to meet him made his obeisance, and conducted him into his apartment where he placed the spiritual guide on a seat brought water to wash his feet which he poured on his own head and then spoke — This is a happy day to me inasmuch as I have been able to sprinkle the water from thy feet upon my head that thou hast visited me in my own apartment. I am by this means freed from the bondage of sin. Vasishtha at these words considered a little to himself and thus answered — Wherefore hast thou O Lord thus forgot thyself? I know thee well. The Ganges which purifies all things flowed originally from thy feet and the great god Siva knowing the excellence of thee visited it on his head. My father Brahma ever sprinkles on his head the water with which thou hast bathed thy feet being confident he shall be exalted from it. Thou art the Lord of all and in accordance with the prayer of Brahma and the god hast assumed the human form to punish the evil doers Ravana and his iniquitous followers. I have taken upon myself an inferior position in this world and taken upon myself the priesthood having learned from Brāhma that thou wouldst appear among the descendants of the Sun.

Sita the object of thy affection, has thrown the veil of delusion over the senses of the whole world she has done it by means of thy divine power. Desire this delight of thy soul not to cast the veil over me that my soul may always be inclined towards thee. This is the request I had to make.

<sup>3</sup> The purifying liquids are the five products of the sacred cow viz milk curds butter urine and ordure.

Keeps watch through the night in the temple of Vishnu

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Rejoicings in  
the house of  
Rama.

Rejoicings  
throughout the  
city of Ayodhya.

Illuminations  
and purifica-  
tions.

Adorning of the  
city at sunrise.

Young and old  
exult in the  
installation of  
Rama.

Country people  
flock into the  
city to behold  
the installation.

strict control, and his speech restrained, he lay in the temple of Vishnu, on a bed of well spread kusa grass by the side of the fortunate Sita, keeping watch the whole night

All this time the house of Rama was enlivened with joyful faces, as a lake abounding in water lilies is enlivened by the inebriated bees, and as Vasishta left the house and made his way to the royal palace, the high road of the city of Ayodhya was crowded with a joyful multitude, which moved to and fro like the waves of the sea, whilst their noise was like that of the roaring of a tempest. Throughout the night the whole city was illuminated by clusters of lamps, and every road and pathway was cleansed from impurity, and every house was filled with men, women, and children, all longing for the installation of Rama, and anxiously watching for the rising of the sun. At the first dawning of the morning all the citizens of Ayodhya began to adorn the city. They watered the streets with fragrant waters, and strewed the roads with flowers, and they set up glittering banners upon the bright temples of the gods, and at the corners of the streets, and on the sacred trees, and on the tops of stately houses, and at the bazaars and shops, and at the courts of justice and hall of assembly. And the multitude, young and old, were exhilarated by companies of beautiful dancing girls, and by singers and musicians, and every where the people conversed together respecting the installation of Rama, and even the children, as they played together in the court-yards or under the porticoes, were ever saying the one to the other—'This day Rama is to be anointed Raja.' Meanwhile the glad tidings of Rama's installation had been carried far away from the city into the country of Kosala, and the ryots and the husbandmen and the herdsmen were all eager to witness the ceremony, and they flocked into Ayodhya from all quarters, so that the sound of the multitude was like that of the rushing of the flood tide rolling in from the sea at the waxing and waning of the moon.

Review of the  
narrative in the  
Ramayana.

In the foregoing narrative of the proceedings con-

nected with the appointment of Ráma to be Yuva-  
 raja, a few of the details have been slightly Brah-  
 manized. Thus Vasishttha, the priest, is introduced  
 for the unnecessary purpose of giving to Ráma al-  
 most the same commands as those which had been  
 previously given to him by the Mahárajá ; and for  
 the significant object of representing him as receiv-  
 ing from the young Prince the reverence and worship  
 which the author of the Rámáyana considered to be  
 due to so celebrated a Bráhmaṇ. Again, consider-  
 able stress is laid upon the worship of Vishnu both  
 by Ráma and his mother ; although Ráma is himself  
 said to be an incarnation of Vishnu. Moreover, the  
 feigned anger of the Mahárajá on hearing the pro-  
 position that he should retire from the Raj, and that  
 Ráma should be appointed in his room, was, in all prob-  
 ability a sincere expression of displeasure. But in  
 other respects the essential details may be regarded  
 as a relic of the original tradition. The object of  
 the Mahárajá, in sending Bharata to the city of his  
 maternal grandfather, is sufficiently manifest, and  
 it will be noticed that the Mahárajá expressly desired  
 Ráma to keep watch during the night which inter-  
 vened between the great Council and the day of in-  
 stallation ; apparently lest Bharata should return  
 during the interval, and create a disturbance for the  
 purpose of enforcing his claim to the succession.

HISTORY OF  
 INDIA.  
 PART IV

Brahmanical  
 introduction of  
 Vasishttha a  
 later interpola-  
 tion.

Dubious stress  
 laid upon the  
 worship of  
 Vishnu

Remaining  
 details a relic  
 of the ancient  
 tradition.

Fears as regards  
 Bharata

But perhaps the most interesting circumstances  
 in the narrative are those connected with the popu-  
 lar movement in favour of Ráma's installation. Here  
 a democratic element in the ancient Hindú despot-  
 isms is distinctly discernible. First of all a deputa-  
 tion of Ministers, Chieftains, and people wait upon  
 the Mahárajá to express the popular will, that he

Democratic  
 element evi-  
 denced in the  
 popular move-  
 ment in favour  
 of Ráma

The deputation  
 which waited  
 upon the Mahá-  
 raja.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

General  
assembly, or  
great Council,  
convened in  
consequence \*

Popular interest  
in public affairs  
converted into a  
personal affec-  
tion for Ráma.

should retire from the active administration of the Raj, and that Ráma should be entrusted with the reins of power. Upon this intimation the Mahárajá summons a great Council or Parliament at which he expresses his intention of appointing Ráma to be Yuvárajá. This popular demonstration in favour of Ráma seems to indicate a direct interest on the part of the people in public affairs; although the Brahmanical author for his own purposes has converted it into a demonstration of personal affection for the youthful hero. That the popular regard for Ráma was not so strong as Válmíki would seem to intimate will be proved in the sequel, in which it will be seen that the same assembly displayed considerable apathy as regards the rival claims of Ráma and Bharata, and were only bent upon a prompt settlement of the question as regards the succession. It should also be remarked, that there is at least one passage in the sequel which would intimate that there was a far greater difference in the ages of the four sons of Dasaratha than is indicated in the mythical account of their birth and origin.\*

---

\* See especially a passage in chapter VIII, in which Kausalyá requests Ráma to take care of Lakshmana, because the latter is a mere boy.



## CHAPTER VII

### INTRIGUES OF KAIKEYÍ.

THE story of Ráma's appointment to be Yuva-  
 raja, and the description of the imposing prepara-  
 tions for the ceremony of installation, would seem to  
 indicate that the young Prince had arrived at the  
 acme of human felicity. His infancy and boyhood  
 had passed away without a cloud. He was happily  
 married to the most beautiful and loving of wives.  
 Another day, another sunrise, would see him instal-  
 led Yuvaraja of Kosala. It was on the very eve of  
 this brilliant success, that the ancient and mysteri-  
 ous conception of an avenging Nemesis, of the envy  
 of the gods at the prosperity of a mortal, would seem  
 to have found an expression in the Hindú tradition.<sup>1</sup>  
 The city was one blaze of joy and exultation.  
 Throughout the night every street was illuminated  
 with endless clusters of lamps, whilst the vast multi-  
 tude of citizens were unable to close their eyes for  
 thinking of the approaching installation, and were

HISTORY OF  
 INDIA  
 PART IV

Acme of human  
 felicity attained  
 by Ráma

Conception of  
 the avenging  
 Nemesis

Brilliant pre-  
 parations for the  
 installation on  
 the eve of the  
 ceremony,  
 throughout the  
 night and on the  
 following sun-  
 rise

<sup>1</sup> The conception of the avenging Nemesis does not literally find expression in the Rámáyana in its present form. Indeed the religious idea involved is rather that the gods were angry at an event which was calculated to interfere with the fulfilment of the mythical purpose for which Vishnu became incarnate as Ráma, namely, the destruction of the demon Ravana. (See extract from the Adhyátma Rámáyana in the next chapter.) But it is impossible to avoid the suspicion that in the original tradition the sudden adversity which succeeded to so much prosperity was invested with a moral meaning similar to that indicated.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

---

eagerly watching for the rising of the sun. At last the white-robed dawn appeared in the sky, and immediately the people began to decorate the city. They watered the streets, they strewed the roads with flowers, and they set up gay banners in all directions. Meanwhile, fresh crowds of country people were pouring into Ayodhyá; and all the ministers of public rejoicing,—the singers, the musicians, and the dancing girls,—were delighting the hearts of young and old with music, and song, and exhilarating dances. Even the little children were not forgotten by the Hindú bard, who pictures them sporting together in the court-yards, and under the porticoes, and saying to one another in the midst of their play.—“This day Ráma is to be anointed Raja ”

Painful scene enacted during the same interim in the palace of the Maháraya.

Meantime, however, from the evening of the preceding day until the rising of the sun on the morning of the installation, a terrible scene had been enacted in the palace of the Maháraya; a scene which is never described to a Hindú audience without calling forth abundance of tears, and many sympathetic expressions of sorrow and condemnation. But here further remark may cease, and the Hindú bard may be permitted to tell his own story, as follows :—

Tradition recorded in the Rámáyana.

Scene within the palace of the Maháraya on the eve of the installation.

Mantharí the old nurse of Kaikeyí.

Now on the night which preceded the day of installation, and whilst the city was filled with joy and exultation, the evil aspect of the stars was working woe and desolation in the palace of Maharaja Dasaratha. There was an old nurse named Mantharí, who had been the servant of the Rání Kaikeyí, whilst Kaikeyí was still living in the house of her father Aswapati, and when Raja Aswapati gave his daughter in marriage to Maháraya Dasaratha, he presented her with this slave woman as part of her dowry, and Mantharí

Her extreme  
ugliness

Bel olds the  
preparations for  
the installation  
with great  
wrath

Attempts to  
resist the  
jealousy of  
Kaikeyi in  
behalf of  
Bharata

Kaikeyi pro-  
fesses delight  
at the news of  
Rama's instal-  
lation.

accompanied her mistress to the city of Ayodhyá. This Manthará was very ugly and deformed, her arms were long and thin, her fingers were very large, her chest was narrow, her neck was short, and her breasts were as small as figs, her legs were slender like those of a crane, her stomach was large and projecting, and her back bowed out like her stomach, for she was hump-backed.<sup>2</sup> Now this Manthará ascended to the roof of the palace, and saw all the preparations which were being made for the installation of Rama, and the rejoicings of all the people of the city, and she inquired the reason thereof, and when it was told to her that Ráma was to be appointed Raja, she was much troubled, and her eyes were red with anger, for in by gone years she had offended Rama, and Rama had smitten her with his foot, and she had deadly enmity against him.<sup>3</sup> So she hastened down from the roof of the palace in a great rage, and ran to the apartment of Kaikeyi, and found her reposing upon a couch, and she said to her — "Rise up, you stupid one! Why do you sleep whilst a tremendous calamity is awaiting you? You are born of a royal race, but your husband has deceived you. The Maharaja is fair in speech but deceitful in deed. He has filled you with vain words, and Kausalya with riches. He has sent your son Bharata to your father's city, which is far off, that to-morrow he may quietly install the son of Kausalyá in the Raj. You must now so act as to prevent your husband from installing Rama."

At these words Kaikeyi was filled with surprise, and

<sup>2</sup> This description of Manthará is interesting as exhibiting the Hindu idea of female ugliness.

<sup>3</sup> That Rama should have kicked the slave girl in his boyhood is by no means unlikely and the incident probably found a place in the original tradition. But such a proceeding was scarcely compatible with his divine character, and accordingly the author of the *Adhyatma Ramáyana* ignores the occurrence, and supplies the following pious myth as the reason for Manthará's interference —

'When the gods heard the tidings from Ayodhyá of Ráma's approaching installation they were overcome with terror. Indra and the rest held a consultation and then went to Saraswatí and prayed her to obstruct the accession of Ráma. They said — 'Thy lord Bráhma has informed us that there is a female slave named Manthará, who waits on Kaikeyi, the second wife of Dasaratha. Do thou visit the earth and enter her tongue. Saraswatí, in obedience to the instructions of her husband, went instantly, and took up her abode in the tongue of Manthara.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

gave some ornaments to her nurse, and said —“ O Mantharí, the information you have given is pleasing to me. There is no distinction between Ráma and Bharata, and therefore it pleases me that the Mahárāja should install his eldest son as his coadjutor in the Raj. Let us go to the house of my eldest sister Kausalyá, and congratulate her on the installation of her son Ráma.”

Mantharí declares that Bharata will become a slave to Ráma.

Then Mantharí, full of envy, and mad with disappointment, threw aside the ornaments given to her by Kaikeyí, and cried out —“ O woman, there is no one so foolish as you are in all the world. It would have been better for you to have been slain by the bite of a serpent, or the fall of a thunderbolt. Kausalyá is very fortunate, for her son is to get the Raj, and you will be her slave, and your son will be the slave of her son, and the wife of your son Bharata will be the slave of her son Ráma. What can be more unfortunate for you than this? And yet you consider it to be a cause for rejoicing.”

Kaikeyí declares on the virtues of Ráma and his superior claim to the Raj.

Kaikeyí replied :—“ Why do you cherish so much hatred against Ráma, who is my beloved son, ever virtuous and truthful, and who has the best claim to the Raj. He is the son of the eldest Rání, he is the eldest of the sons of the Mahárāja, and he is in every way fitted to have the Raj. He treats me with the same respect as he treats his own mother Kausalyá, and when he gets the Raj he will treat Bharata as his own son. Ráma is the eldest and Bharata the youngest of the four brethren, and there is no harm in Bharata becoming the dependent and servant of Ráma. Bharata could only get the Raj with the consent of Ráma. Why then do you pain my heart by speaking against such a happy event? ”

Mantharí insinuates that Bharata and Satrugna have been sent away to Ráma and might be installed.

At these words of Kaikeyí, the nurse Mantharí became thunderstruck, as if the heavens had fallen upon her head, and she began to verify the old proverb, that as a lame man and a blind man have each a hundred faults, so there is no limit to the faults of a humpback. She breathed hard, and in a tone half of anger and half of supplication, she spoke thus to her mistress Kaikeyí —“ O Rání, have you fallen

into such a misery that you can rejoice at that for which you ought to mourn? Ráma fears Bharata, because the Raj is the common property of all the four brethren; and Bharata, and his loving brother Satrugna, are sent to the city of your father, whilst Ráma remains here to be installed in the Raj; for Lakshmana is attached to Ráma, even as Satrugna is attached to Bharata: Kausalyá is indeed the beloved wife, and to-morrow her son will be installed when the moon enters Pushyá: What good then can attend you when your son Bharata loses the Raj? Like a slave you must henceforth stand with clasped hands before Kausalyá, and you will be her servant, whilst your son Bharata will become the servant of Ráma: All the women in the house of Ráma will be filled with joy, and all the women in the house of Bharata will be filled with sorrow: Ráma and his posterity will become Mahárajás, whilst Bharata will be driven from his father's house; but had Bharata remained in the city of Ayodhyá up to this day, no one but he could have been installed Yuvaraja: How will your son, deprived of wealth, live in subjection to his brother Ráma? It becomes you to save Bharata, who is about to be supplanted by Ráma, as the leader of a herd of wild elephants is driven off by a fierce and roaring lion: When Ráma becomes Raja he will certainly send Bharata into exile and secure the Raj for his own sons: Do you, therefore, procure the Raj for your own son Bharata, and persuade the Mahárajá to send Ráma into the jungle: You are a woman of an extraordinary character; for any other woman would rather die than behold the prosperity of a co-wife."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Again insinuates that Kausalyá is the favourite wife, and points out the coming elevation of Ráma and degradation of Bharata.

Counsels Kaikeyí to persuade the Mahárajá to install Bharata and exile Ráma.

Then Kaikeyí arose from her couch in great alarm, and said:—"How can I persuade the Mahárajá to install my own son Bharata in the Raj, and send Ráma into exile?" Manthará, intent on evil, replied as follows.—  
"O Kaikeyí, hear from me how you may obtain the Raj for Bharata: Do you not remember that when Dasaratha went to the south to join the gods in the war against the demons, he was grievously wounded in the battle, and was carried

Kaikeyí aroused

Manthará reminds her of the two boons promised in r by the Mahárajá.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Desires her to  
request the  
in allation of  
Bhāra and  
exile of Rāma.

Kaṣkeyi runs  
away to the  
chamber of  
displeasure

off and preserved by you? Then he promised you two boons, and do you now ask two favours of him, the Raj for your son Bharata, and fourteen years' exile for the son of Kausalya \* Thus whilst Rama is wandering in the woods, your son will acquire the affection of the people, and enjoy the Raj without molestation O Rani feigning anger, do you go into the chamber of displeasure, and the Raj will come to you and inquire the reason of your grief You have ever been the beloved of your husband, and he will not dare to see you angry Should the Mahārāja offer you pearls, or gems or jewels of any kind pay no attention to him, but only ask for the two boons the Raj for Bharata, and exile for Rama otherwise Rama will obtain the Raj and you and your son will become wanderers in the jungle "

Thus excited by her wicked nurse, the beautiful Rani, intoxicated with wrath and jealousy, ran away to the chamber of displeasure, and threw off her pearl necklace and excellent jewels and strewed them upon the ground, and she untied her hair so that it fell down dishevelled, and she covered her face with the darkness of anger \*

\* This myth is differently related in the *Adhvātma Pāmāvana*, where Manthara is represented as speaking to Kaṣkeyi as follows —

Heretofore a very long time ago when there was a bloody warfare between the gods and demons Indra solicited the aid of Mahārāja Dasaratha. At that time the Mahārāja really loved thee he never was separated a moment from thee He seated thee on his own chariot he took thee with him to a place where he entered into a dreadful conflict with the demons during which an iron pin being broken in the wheel of the carriage on the field of battle thou didst by putting thy hand into its place prevent the carriage being overturned. He was then so much pleased with thy conduct that he declared he would grant whatever thou mightest request of him Thou at that time didst require two things from the Mahārāja, and having taken hold of each other's hands as a bond of agreement, thou didst say when I require these two things, I will remind thee of thy promise The time has now arrived demand from the Mahārāja the performance of his contract.

Meantime, the Mahárája, having commanded the installation of Ráma, proceeded to the inner apartments to impart the news to his beautiful and beloved Kaikeyí. The palace was gay with parrots and peacocks, and vocal with tuneful birds. It was filled with beautiful maidens and slave girls, and adorned with clusters of climbing plants and flowers. The painted verandas were supported by pillars of gold, silver, and ivory. In the garden were trees over-laden with fruits and flowers, and tanks of transparent water, with beautiful seats upon the banks thereof. The Mahárája, full of love for his charming Rání, entered the magnificent inner apartment, which resembled the sky when covered with silver clouds during an eclipse of the moon; but lo and behold, he only saw the decorated couch, and the beautiful Kaikeyí was not lying thereon. And the heart of the Mahárája sank within him, for he was thirsting for the presence of his beloved; and ever before when he entered that apartment, his beautiful Rání had welcomed his coming with a smile. Then he thought in his mind that perchance she had gone to the apartment of Kausalyá, to wish her joy on the installation of Ráma; and he inquired where his beloved had gone. Then the door-keeper was terrified, and with hands respectfully joined, he said:—"O Raja of Rajas, the Rání is in a great rage, and she has fled in her haste to the chamber of displeasure." Hearing these words the Mahárája was exceedingly troubled, and he went to the chamber of displeasure, and saw his young wife, dearer to him than life, lying on the earth in sordid garments and imagining mischief; and he beheld her, as an elephant beholds his female mate who has been pierced by the poisoned arrow of the hunter. And he caressed her, and tried to arouse her, like one who endeavours to awaken a sleeping serpent who will cause his death; and he said to her:—"Why, my beloved, are you in the chamber of displeasure? Why are you without ornaments, and why do you wear sordid attire? I weep as I behold your misery, and surely I have never offended you by night or day: Say if you are sick that I may send for the most eminent

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

The Mahárája visits the apartments of Kaikeyí.

Description of the apartments.

Surprise of the Mahárája at the absence of Kaikeyí.

The Mahárája proceeds in great distress to the chamber of displeasure

His affectionate speeches to Kaikeyí

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

physicians, or that you have been affronted by any one that I may punish him according to your pleasure I will do whatever you may command I will slay the innocent or release the guilty, for I am a Raja of Rajas, and you are my most beloved I will give you whatever you may request, even if it be my own life, there is nothing that you may want that I cannot satisfy " So saying the Mahárāja took her to his bosom, like one who takes up a snake by mistake for a garland, and he wiped her face, and asked her many times what it was that she desired

Kaṁkeyi  
desired a  
favour

Then the wicked Kaṁkeyi, seeing that her lord was pierced with the love inspiring arrows of Kama deva, and infatuated by his love for her, said these dreadful words — "O Maharaja, I have neither been maltreated nor defamed, but I have formed a wish which I entreat you to gratify, and if you will solemnly promise to do as I desire, I will make known my request " Then the Maharaja, sick with love, smiled upon her, and taking her charming locks in his hand, he said to her as she lay upon the ground — "Know, O haughty one, that no one is more beloved than you, excepting my son Rama, and by Rama, who is dearer to me than life, I swear, O desire of my soul, that I will perform your request O my beloved, divulge the wish of your heart, and you will relieve mine May I lose all the merit of every good deed I have done upon earth, if I do not perform your request "

The Mahárāja  
swears to  
perform her  
request

Kaṁkeyi calls  
upon the gods  
to witness his  
promise

The merciless Rání then made known her evil intent, in words as terrible as those of Yama She said — "Grant me the boon even as you have sworn Let all the gods, with Indra at their head, the sun, the moon the gods of the household and all the regents of the universe, bear witness to this promise of the illustrious, the upright, and the faithful Maharaja " Then laying hold of her lord, and entreating him while he was intoxicated with love, she said to him — "Remember, O Maharaja, what happened in the war between the gods and demons, when you were surrounded by the enemy, and in peril of your life, then when you were preserved by me, you promised me two favours, and these

Reminds the  
Mahárāja of  
his previous  
promise to  
grant two  
favours and  
requests the  
realisation of  
Bharata and  
exile of Rama.



two favours I now claim: The first favour is that my son Bharata be installed this day in the stead of Ráma; and the second favour is that Ráma may embrace the life of a devotee, and clothe himself in the skins of deer and bark of trees, and go this day into the forest of Dandaka for fourteen years."

The Mahárája, hearing these dreadful words, was filled with anguish, and he fell down prostrate upon the ground, like a plantain tree that has been thrown down by a strong wind. Then Kaikeyí was anxious, and said within herself:—"I shall not be sorry for the death of the Mahárája, after he has installed Bharata in the Raj; but now I must try and restore him to his senses." With these thoughts in her mind, she attempted to awaken him, as a hunter awakens a sleeping antelope before he kills it.\* Presently Dasaratha aroused himself, and said:—"Am I tormented by demons, or has my reason departed from me?" Then when he fully remembered all that Kaikeyí had said, he was as distracted as an antelope at the sight of a tigress, but felt as powerless as a serpent encircled by the spells of the snake-charmer. After a long while the Mahárája, full of affliction and anger, and consuming Kaikeyí with his eyes, thus spoke:—"O cruel wretch, depraved in heart, and destroyer of this family, what has Ráma done to you? He has always paid the same reverence to you as to his own mother Kausalyá; why then are you bent upon his ruin? You, the daughter of a Raja, have crept into my house like a venomous serpent, in order to destroy me: For what fault should I abandon my beloved son Ráma? I could part with Kausalyá, or with Sumitrá, or with life itself, but I cannot part with Ráma: Among the thousands of female slaves and dependents, no charge has ever been brought against Ráma: He conquers mankind by his truthfulness, the Bráhmans by his generosity, his preceptors by his attention, and his enemies by his sword and bow: O Kaikeyí, have pity upon an old man, who is approaching the end of his days, and who humbly supplicates

The Mahárája falls into a swoon

Kaikeyí's anxiety.

Distracted of the Mahárája.

He reproaches Kaikeyí for her cruelty.

Implores Kaikeyí to withdraw her request.

\* It is a Hindú rule that no man shall kill a sleeping deer. Accordingly the hunter must awaken the animal before he may slay it.

**HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV** you It would be easier for a fish to live out of water than for me to live without Rama. Relinquish then this intention, and never let me hear of it again. Moreover, your son Bharata is virtuous, and would never accept the Raj if his elder brother is to go into exile, so that your labour would be lost. The husband is the Guru of his wife according to the Sastras, so you must never violate my orders. Save my life by relinquishing your evil purpose. Take jewels instead, or a thousand cities, or anything else that will satisfy you."

Remorseless  
obstinacy of  
Kaikeyi.

Saying these words, the Mahārāja fell prostrate at the feet of the Rīni, but Kaikeyi was unmoved at his anguish, and such is the nature of a woman, for when she is bent upon increasing her own prosperity, she will sacrifice shame, honour, respect, or anything else to gain her end. At length Kaikeyi replied—"I am prompted by no evil intention. I am in full possession of my senses. Every one calls you truthful, and it is said that you always adhere to your promise. You have promised me two favours, and the time has arrived for you to grant them. Why do you humble yourself in order to induce me to absolve you from your promise? Your saying that the husband is the Guru of his wife is perfectly true, but virtue is above all things, and never will I obey the words of my husband, if by so doing I lead him into vice. Grant me the two favours, and you are free."

She insists upon  
the fulfilment  
of the Mahārāja's promise.

Wrath of the  
Mahārāja.

At these words of Kaikeyi, Dasaratha became exceedingly wroth, and would hear no more, but cried out—"Hard hearted and wretched woman, what has my son Rāma done to you that you wish to send him into exile? For the sake of riches you are bent upon killing your own husband. Shame be upon that man who dotes upon his wife, there is no happiness for him in this world or the next. But how can Bharata obtain the Raj during the life of his father, for as the Sastras have said that a younger son should not marry before an elder brother, so a younger son cannot succeed to the Raj before his elder brother? Your purpose is equally opposed to law as to religion, and I therefore look to you either to relinquish it altogether or to take my life."

Reproaches  
of himself for his  
voraciousness,  
and insists upon  
Kaikeyi recalling  
her request.

When Kaikeyí heard these words of the Mahárajá, she was furious with rage, and said:—"O Mahárajá, if after making me two promises you now refuse to perform them, how will you be esteemed among men? You must say:—'I have broken my word even to her who saved my life;' and you will become infamous among the Rajas: If Ráma be anointed I will take poison this day: You know that, according to the Puránas, the earth can bear any weight except that of a liar."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Kaikeyí insists upon the Mahárajá keeping his word

Then the Mahárajá remained for a time like one convulsed, and his eyes were fixed upon the Rání, and he said nothing; but after a while he remembered the dreadful oath he had uttered to Kaikeyí, and he fell to the earth like a tree that has been cut down by a woodman. At length he spoke these words:—"O Kaikeyí, in what evil hour have I entered your apartment? I have been entrapped by my love for you, as a mouse is entrapped by the bait: As the ocean contains worthless shells as well as rich gems, so compared with my illustrious ancestors I am but as a worthless shell amongst the gems: The race who have descended from the Sun have been hitherto without stain, but I am the first to pollute it: Never before was it heard that a father sent his eldest son into exile in order to gratify a capricious wife: A wife is bound to serve her husband, and where is the husband who promises her favours in return for her service? I would rather go to hell for violating my promise, than consent to the exile of Ráma: Be the consequence what it may, I shall place Ráma upon the throne as soon as it is morning: But I fear lest Ráma should hear of my promise: for then he would of his own accord go into exile, rather than send me who am his father to the pains of hell: O Kaikeyí, relinquish this cruel wish! How shall I behold the countenance of Ráma changed like the moon during an eclipse? How can I see my well-matured measure, which has been confirmed by all my people and Counsellors, thrown into confusion like an army which has been smitten by an enemy? What will the Rajas say, when I tell them that, tormented by Kaikeyí, I have given the

Lamentations and remonstrances of the Mahárajá.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Raj to Bharata, and sent Ráma into exile? What will Kausalya say to me, when Ráma is banished to the jungle? Can I survive the sight of Rama departing to the dreary forest, and the agony of his weeping wife Sita? You, a widow, will then govern the Raj with your son Bharata, and shall I discard Rama for you? I am like a man who has drank good wines mingled with poison, or has seated himself on a beautiful carpet which has been spread over a deep well, and you have soothed me with deceitful caresses, like the murderous hunter soothing the antelope with the charms of music. The good will exclaim against me, as they would against a Brahman who drank strong drinks. The whole world will abhor me who for the sake of a woman has sent his beloved son into a jungle. If Rama would refuse to go I should be happy, but at my command that dutiful son will proceed to the jungle without a word of complaint, and then death will soon convey me, execrated by all men, to the abode of Yama, and my beloved Kausalya will follow me on the funeral pile. Then having sent us to hell you will govern the Raj, but if Bharata be gratified with the exile of his brother, he shall perform no funeral rites for me. But how can the dear Ráma, accustomed to ride in chariots and upon elephants, wander about on foot in a vast wilderness? How can my son, for whom cooks adorned with ear rings prepared the most excellent food, subsist on the harsh and bitter fruits of the forest? How shall he who has been clothed in costly apparel sit on the bare ground clothed with thick kashaya grass? O Kaikeyi, seek not my destruction. I fall at your feet, be gracious to me. I would that the gods would cause my death this night and strike with dumbness all who know of these things, so that Ráma may never hear of my promise, and may become the Raja as determined upon by me."

Thus did the illustrious Mahárajá speak whilst prostrate at the feet of the contemptuous Ráma, but the wicked Kaikeyi said — "I have three times repeated my requests, and your promises must be fulfilled, or I will take poison in your presence." Then the Mahárajá said to her — "It at

hand of yours, which was consecrated with mantras, and which I accepted in the presence of the fire, I now reject for ever, and with you I reject your son Bharata, albeit he was descended from me." Thus passed away the dreadful night in the palace of Mahárája Dasaratha.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

The picture of zenana life presented by the foregoing narrative furnishes a powerful illustration of the intrigues which were not unfrequently carried on in the Courts of Hindú Rajas. The dialogue has been somewhat marred by the palpable exaggerations of the author as regards the goodness and popularity of Ráma. It is impossible to believe that Kaikeyí could have felt all that gratification at the installation of Ráma, which she is said to have expressed to her old nurse on first hearing that he was to be appointed Yuvaraja; and it seems more probable that she was brooding over her imagined wrongs, when Manthará suggested to her the means by which she might work upon the affections of the uxorious Mahárája, and procure the elevation of her own son in the room of Ráma. In like manner it is difficult to believe that the Mahárája could have felt all that overweening affection for Ráma which he is said to have expressed to Kaikeyí; although no doubt he was greatly mortified at being betrayed into making a promise to Kaikeyí, and upset the matured measure which had been pro-

Review of the foregoing narrative of the intrigues of Kaikeyí.

Exaggerations in the dialogue respecting Ráma.

Real features of Kaikeyí.

Real features of the Mahárája.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IX

Malice of the  
old nurse

Cunning as  
the racy of  
Kaikēyī

Artful mode  
of wheedling  
the Mahārāja  
out of a promise

Obstinacy in  
insisting upon  
the fulfilment of  
the promise

true to human nature. The malice exhibited by the old hag of a nurse, after witnessing the preparations which were being made for the installation of Rama, is very well indicated, as well as the motives which she brought to play upon the mind of Kaikeyī. The proceedings of Kaikeyī are still more significant, and are precisely what might have been expected from the cunning and obduracy of a petted woman. Her first object was to wheedle the Mahārāja into making a promise, her second was to insist upon the fulfilment of that promise. To effect the first purpose she determined to appeal to the affections of the Mahārāja. She knew that Rama was to be installed, and probably expected that the Mahārāja would pay her a visit to cajole her into acquiescence with presents and caresses. She accordingly retired to another chamber, and literally sulked, throwing about her ornaments and jewels to show that no presents could console her, and dishevelled her hair to indicate her extreme anger and displeasure. When the Mahārāja found her in this state of affliction, and protested his love and affection, and his great grief at her prostration, she said nothing whatever, but when she saw that his caresses had filled him with desire, she seized the critical moment for seducing him into making the promise. The Mahārāja having thus committed himself, a woman's obstinacy compelled him to keep his word. He might implore and threaten and try to reason with her, but she was inexorable. He had made the promise and she insisted upon its fulfilment. To all he could urge she had but one answer: "Unless Rama is exiled and Bharata is installed, you will be stigmatized as a liar, and I will take poison."

The great stress which is here laid upon the performance of promises is somewhat remarkable, from the fact that it scarcely tallies with the charges which have been so frequently brought forward against the truthfulness of Hindús. But notwithstanding all that has been said upon this subject, it may be confidently asserted that the people of no nation in the world are better acquainted with the value of words, or display a higher regard for those who are scrupulous in keeping their promises.

There is one point in connection with the Brahmanizing of the original tradition, which is deserving of notice, as being connected with the later worship of Ráma as Vishnu. Kaikeyí not only demanded the exile of Ráma, but required that he should be clothed in the skins of deer and bark of trees, and lead the life of a devotee or Vánaprastha. Now the idea that a man should become a devotee as a punishment involves two conflicting elements, which appear to have escaped the attention of the Brahmanical author. That Ráma should be represented as a religious secluse was no doubt highly desirable, both as giving prominence to his divine character, and as reflecting a glory upon those Bráhmans who betook themselves to the same mode of life. But that Kaikeyí should have insisted upon Ráma's becoming a devotee is altogether incomprehensible; and moreover would destroy any religious merit which Ráma might be supposed to acquire by a religious life to which he was forced by the vindictiveness of his step-mother. However, the notion is so perfectly in accordance with the Brahmanical ideal of Hindú life, that it would be blasphemy to doubt it; and to this day

Curious Brahmanical interpolation that Ráma was required to become a religious devotee.

Modern belief in the id.

every fanatical worshipper of Rāma exults in picturing the divine hero arrayed in garments of bark, and with his hair braided into a knot on the crown of his head, as a holy devotee and incarnation of Vishnu.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>7</sup> The Brāhmins taught that every Hindu of the three superior castes,—the Brāhmins, Kshatriyas, and Vaisyas,—should pass through four orders or conditions of life—namely, that of the *Brahmachāri*, or religious student, the *Grihastha*, or household and married man, the *Vanaprastha*, or hermit, and the *Bikshuka*, or *Sanyāsi*, who is a religious mendicant.

The life of a *Vanaprastha* is well described in the *Vishnu Purāna*, as follows—‘When the householder after performing the acts incumbent on his condition, arrives at the decline of life, let him consign his wife to the care of his sons, and go himself to the forests. Let him there subsist upon leaves, roots, and fruit, and suffer his hair and beard to grow, and braid the former upon his brows, and sleep upon the ground. His dress must be made of skin or of *kasa* or *kusa* grasses, and he must bathe thrice a day and he must offer oblations to the gods and to fire, and treat all that come to him with hospitality. He must beg alms and present food to all creatures. He must anoint himself with such unguents as the woods afford, and in his devotional exercises he must be enduring of heat and cold. The sage who diligently follows these rules, and leads the life of the hermit (or *Vanaprastha*), consumes, like fire, all imperfections, and conquers for himself the mansions of eternity.’



## CHAPTER VIII.

### EXILE OF RÁMA.

THE sensational scene within the palace between the Mahárajá and Kaikeyí, on the night before the expected installation, is followed by a series of touching events, which terminate in the exile of Ráma. This portion of the Rámáyana requires no preliminary explanation; and it will be sufficient to divide it into six sections, as follows:—

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Series of six  
touching events  
connected with  
the exile of  
Ráma.

1st, Ráma's visit to the palace on the morning of the installation.

2nd, Ráma's interview with the Mahárajá and Kaikeyí.

3rd, Ráma's interview with his mother Kausalyá.

4th, Ráma's interview with his wife Sítá.

5th, Parting scene, in which Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana take their farewell of the Mahárajá and his wives

6th, Lamentations on the departure of Ráma.

The narrative of Ráma's visit to the palace on the morning of the installation may be related as follows:—

1st. Ráma's  
visit to the  
palace on the  
morning of the  
installation.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

ready for the installation of Rama. The golden throne had been set up, with the white umbrella which was the special sign of royalty, and there were the jewelled chamarras of white hair for brushing away the flies from the new Raja, and the sacred tiger's skin, and the bow and scimitar, and the sacrificial fire, and the elephants, and the chariots harnessed with four horses, and there also were the golden pots filled with Ganges water, and with water from other holy places, together with the parched grain, the hmes, the ghee, the honey, the milk, the curds, the kusa grass, and the flowers. There too were the Bráhmans, and the Rajas that paid tribute, and the eight chosen damsels,<sup>1</sup> and the large white humped bull begirt with a golden rope, and the shaggy lion, and the cows with golden ornaments on their horns, and very many musicians with all kinds of musical instruments, and beautiful dancing girls exquisitely adorned, together with multitudes of people of all the four castes. And at the rising of the sun all were in the street leading to the palace, waiting for the coming of the Maharaja and the excellent hero Rama.

Sumantra sent  
by Vasishtha  
to hasten the  
Maharaja.

Then Vasishtha said to Sumantra, who was the Chief Counsellor of Dasaratha — "Go you and hasten the Maharaja, that Rama may receive the Raj as the moon enters the mansion of Pushya." Sumantra, filled with pleasure, then entered the palace, and he saw that the gate of the inner apartments was surrounded with aged men armed with staves, and clad in mail and wearing turbans, but they gave way as he approached, for the inner rooms were always open to him. And Sumantra, not knowing what had occurred to the Maharaja, approached the curtain at the door of the chamber where Dasaratha had passed the night,

Sumantra  
enters the  
inner apart-  
ments and  
approaches the  
door of the  
Maharaja's  
chamber

<sup>1</sup> At the installation of a Raja at marriages and at other seasons of festival a number of young women are employed to rub turmeric on the body of the person or persons on whose account the ceremony takes place. Eight are required at the installation of a Raja on other occasions the number is optional. Widows are prohibited from assisting at this ceremony. Carey and Marshman's note on the passage.

<sup>2</sup> This command as given by the priest to the Chief Counsellor is probably a Brahmanical flourish introduced to show the authority of the priest in ancient times.

Praises the  
MahárájaKaikeyí desires  
him to bring  
RámaThe Mahárája  
commands him  
likewiseSumantra pro-  
ceeds to the  
house of Ráma.

Beautiful house

Outer apart-  
ment guarded  
by young men.Inner apart-  
ment guarded  
by old men.Sumantra  
enters the  
presence of  
Ráma and  
declares his  
mission.

and praised the Mahárája thus :—"As the ocean when illumined by the rising sun gives pleasure to the beholders, so a great Raja by his benign presence diffuses happiness around him: As the chariotcer of Indra addressed the mighty god before he went forth and conquered all the Daityas, so do I arouse you: As the Vedas and the Vedángas stirred up Brahma, so do I stir up you: As the moon awakens the earth, permit me this day to awaken you: The god of day rises propitious from his couch, may he and all the gods command that success attend you. O Mahárája, all is ready for the installation of Ráma: As feeble cattle without a keeper, as an army without a commander, as the night without the moon, as a herd of cows without the lordly bull, so is a country in which the Mahárája does not appear."

At these words the venerable Dasaratha was speechless with anguish, but the heartless Kaikeyí said :—"Go you, Sumantra, and bring Ráma hither, for the Mahárája has something particular to communicate to him." Sumantra replied :—"How can I go unless I have the permission of the Mahárája?" Then Dasaratha said in his grief :—"O Sumantra, go and bring Ráma hither, as Kaikeyí has requested you"

Then Sumantra went out of the palace, and he said to all the tributary Rajas who were there assembled :—"I am going at the command of the Mahárája, to bring Ráma with all haste for the installation." And Sumantra went to the palace of Ráma, which was as resplendent as the palace of Indra; and the palace was adorned with garlands, and surrounded with deer and peacocks. And Sumantra put aside the servants who surrounded the doors, and entered the outer apartment which was guarded by young men who were sober and vigilant, adorned with bright earrings, and armed with swords and bows; and he then went towards the inner apartments which were guarded by ancient men dressed in red with canes in their hands. And Sumantra said to the old men :—"Quickly inform Ráma that Sumantra stands at the door." Then Ráma, hearing that the chosen Counsellor of his father was come, ordered that he should be conducted into his presence; and Sumantra be-

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Rāma prepares  
to go to the  
Mahārāja.

Prayer of Sītā.

Rāma ascends  
his chariot.

Acclamations of  
the multitude

Rāma proceeds  
to the palace of  
the Mahārāja.

held Rāma sitting on a golden couch elegantly adorned, perfumed with sandal and many excellent odours, with Sītā standing by his side fanning him with peacock's feathers. Then Sumāntra said to Rāma — "O Rāma, your father Dasratha and the Rānī Kaikeyī desire your presence. Go thither without delay." And Rāma said to his wife Sītā — "O divine one, the Mahārāja and the Rānī Kaikeyī have consulted together respecting my installation. This day the Mahārāja will assuredly install me as his coadjutor in the Raj. I will go speedily to the Mahārāja, and do you remain here and amuse yourself with your maids." The black-eyed Sītā followed her lord to the door, saying — "May the Mahārāja bestow the Raj upon you, and esteem you worthy to celebrate a Rajasuya. May the gods of all the four quarters of the universe protect you. May Indra, who wields the thunder bolt, guard you on the east, may Yama, judge of the dead, guard you on the south, may Varuna, god of the waters, guard you on the west, and may Kuvera, lord of wealth, guard you upon the north." Rāma then went out with Sumāntra, and ascended his bright and spacious chariot, which was lined with tigers' skins, and adorned with gold and gems, and drawn by horses like young elephants, and Lakshmana, his younger brother, attended him, standing behind him in the chariot with a chumara in his hand resembling the moon. When Rāma came forth, the multitude filled the air with a prodigious burst of acclamations, like the shouts of two armies rushing to battle, and a mighty crowd surrounded his chariot and thousands of horses and elephants followed him, whilst a company of heroes armed with bows and scimitars marched before him. Thus amidst the glad sounds of music, and the praises of the eulogists, the heroic Rāma proceeded to the palace of the Mahārāja, and the verandas and the house tops were filled with slender-waisted women, beautifully adorned, who saluted him with eager praises, and threw wreaths of flowers upon him as he passed. Presently the royal palace appeared in view like a vast cloud, and the pleasure-houses around it were as resplendent as the milk-white cars of the gods.

And Ráma descended from his chariot and mounted his horse, and entered the gateway of the palace, and his form was as bright as the kindling flame. And Ráma rode through the three first courts, which were guarded by archers, and then he dismounted and went on foot through the two next courts, and having passed through all five, he ordered his people to halt, and entered into the presence of

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Passes through  
the five courts  
and enters

The foregoing narrative of Ráma's visit contains particulars which are well worthy of notice. The arrangements for the installation are somewhat obscure, inasmuch as the ceremony was not actually performed, but still they are very suggestive. The golden throne, the white umbrella, the jewelled chamara, and the tiger's skin are perfectly intelligible, the latter probably being laid on the ground before the throne, and being perhaps deemed a sign of royalty. The bow and scimitar were in like manner emblems of sovereignty and objects of worship. The elephants and chariots were probably required for a procession of the new Raja and the attendant Chieftains. The Brahmanical articles, such as pots of sacred water, grain, fruit, ghee, honey, milk, curds, kusá grass, and flowers, were all doubtless employed in symbolical rites similar to those which were practised at the installation of Yudhishtíra, and at the actual installation of Ráma, which appears in a subsequent part of the Rámáyana. The part taken by the white humped back bull, the shaggy lion, and the cows with golden horns, is somewhat obscure, unless, like the eight chosen virgins who were appointed to rub Ráma with turmeric, they were merely introduced to impart a sensational character to the ceremony.

Review of the  
foregoing narra-  
tive of Ráma's  
visit to the  
palace

Obscure refer-  
ence to the  
installation  
ceremonies

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Rama prepares  
to go to the  
Maharaja.

Prayer of Sita.

Rama ascends  
his chariot.

Acclamations of  
the multitude.

Rama's progress  
to the palace of  
the Maharaja.

held Rama sitting on a golden couch elegantly adorned, perfumed with sandal and many excellent odours, with Sita standing by his side fanning him with peacock's feathers. Then Sumantra said to Rama — "O Rama, your father Dasaratha and the Rani Kaikeyi desire your presence. Go thither without delay." And Rama said to his wife Sita — "O divine one, the Maharaja and the Rani Kaikeyi have consulted together respecting my installation. This day the Maharaja will assuredly install me as his cordjutor in the Raj. I will go speedily to the Maharaja, and do you remain here and amuse yourself with your maids." The black-eyed Sita followed her lord to the door, saying — "May the Maharaja bestow the Raj upon you, and esteem you worthy to celebrate a Rajasuya. May the gods of all the four quarters of the universe protect you. May Indra, who wields the thunder bolt, guard you on the east, may Yama, judge of the dead, guard you on the south, may Varuna, god of the waters, guard you on the west, and may Kuvera, lord of wealth, guard you upon the north." Rama then went out with Sumantra, and ascended his bright and spacious chariot, which was lined with tigers' skins, and adorned with gold and gems, and drawn by horses like young elephants, and Lakshmana, his younger brother, attended him, standing behind him in the chariot with a chaman in his hand resembling the moon. When Rama came forth, the multitude filled the air with a prodigious burst of acclamations, like the shouts of two armies rushing to battle, and a mighty crowd surrounded his chariot, and thousands of horses and elephants followed him, whilst a company of heroes armed with bows and scimitars marched before him. Thus amidst the glad sounds of music, and the praises of the enologists, the heroic Rama proceeded to the palace of the Maharaja, and the verandas and the house tops were filled with slender waisted women, beautifully adorned who saluted him with eager praises, and threw wreaths of flowers upon him as he passed. Presently the royal palace appeared in view like a vast cloud, and the pleasure houses around it were as resplendent as the milk and curd cars of the gods.

And Ráma descended from his chariot and mounted his horse, and entered the gateway of the palace, and his form was as bright as the kindling flame. And Ráma rode through the three first courts, which were guarded by archers, and then he dismounted and went on foot through the two next courts, and having passed through all five, he ordered his people to halt, and entered into the presence of

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Passes through  
the five courts  
and enters

going narrative of Ráma's visit contains particulars which are well worthy of notice. The arrangements for the installation are somewhat obscure, inasmuch as the ceremony was not actually performed, but still they are very suggestive. The golden throne, the white umbrella, the jewelled chámara, and the tiger's skin are perfectly intelligible; the latter probably being laid on the ground before the throne, and being perhaps deemed a sign of royalty. The bow and scimitar were in like manner emblems of sovereignty and objects of worship. The elephants and chariots were probably required for a procession of the new Raja and the attendant Chieftains. The Brahmanical articles, such as pots of sacred water, grain, fruit, ghee, honey, milk, curds, kusa grass, and flowers, were all doubtless employed in symbolical rites similar to those which were practised at the installation of Yudhishtira, and at the actual installation of Ráma, which appears in a subsequent part of the Rámáyana. The part taken by the white humped-back bull, the shaggy lion, and the cows with golden horns, is somewhat obscure; unless, like the eight chosen virgins who were appointed to rub Ráma with turmeric, they were merely introduced to impart a sensational character to the ceremony.

Review of the  
 foregoing narra-  
 tive of Ráma's  
 visit to the  
 palace

Obscure refer-  
 ences to the  
 installation  
 ceremonies

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Palace ar-  
rangements  
Young men  
my eyes to  
guard the  
apartments and  
old men to  
guard the  
zenana.  
Hyperbolic  
addition of  
Sumānta to  
the Māhārāja

Picture of  
Rāma fan-  
ned by Śakuntalā

Hindu charac-  
ter of the pro-  
cession

2nd Rāma's  
interview with  
the Māhārāja  
and his key.

The references to the palace arrangements are very curious. The outer entrance seems to have been the resort of the house servants. The outer apartments in Rāma's palace were guarded by young men with bows and scimitars, whilst the inner apartments, or *zenana*, were guarded, not by eunuchs, but by old men with staves. Again, Sumānta does not venture to enter the apartment of the Mahārāja, but stands without the door and addresses him in that high flown language of flattery and religious hyperbole which is so generally affected by Brāhmins when approaching a sovereign.

The references to Rāma are very striking, and perfectly in accordance with Hindu ideas. The representation of the divine hero sitting upon a couch, whilst his wife Śītā is fanning him with peacock's feathers, is a favourite picture with Hindu bards, who frequently preach the duty of wives to fan their husbands. The procession formed in full expectation that Rāma was to be installed Yuvārāja is of a very Hindu character. The hero and his brother drive along in a chariot lined with a tiger's skin. They are preceded by a body of soldiers, and followed by a number of horses and elephants. As Rāma drives along the eulogists chant his praises, the musicians fill the air with triumphant strains, and the women appear in the verandas in their gayest attire and throw down flowers upon his head. The progress to the palace is one of joy and exultation, and as such forms a bright contrast to the dark events which were about to be disclosed to the public view.

The narrative of Rāma's interview with the



Mahárája and Kaikeyí may now be related as follows :—

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

While the whole multitude, filled with joy, were waiting without the palace, Ráma beheld his wretched father sitting with Kaikeyí on an elegant couch, his countenance withered up with sorrow. Then Ráma humbly bowed at the feet of his father, and at the feet of Kaikeyí; and the eyes of the Mahárája were overflowing with tears, and he could only exclaim :—"O Ráma!" Ráma, seeing his father's countenance filled with tears, was seized with fear as though his feet had touched a serpent; for Dasaratha was convulsed with grief, like the waves of the sea during a storm, or like the sun during an eclipse, or like a sage who has told a falsehood. And Ráma bowed to Kaikeyí, and said :—"O mother, tell me how I have offended the Mahárája!" Then Kaikeyí, void of shame, and relentless as a tigress, replied :—"The Mahárája is not angry, O Ráma, nor is he in distress; but he has something on his mind which he forbears to mention through fear of you, but it is necessary that you should know it: The Mahárája has made me two solemn promises, and confirmed them by oath, but he now repents, like one of low caste: In former times, when I preserved his life in the war between the gods and demons, he offered me two boons, and swore to perform them; and I have now requested that my son Bharata may be installed as cordjutor with the Mahárája, and that you may be sent into exile in the wilderness of Dandaka for fourteen years: If, therefore, you desire that your father should act according to his oath, you will go out of the city this day, and return not for fourteen years, and you will permit Bharata to govern the Raj."

Scenes within  
the palace.

Humiliation  
and sorrow of  
the Mahárája on  
seeing Ráma.

Kaikeyí informs  
Ráma of the  
promise made  
by the Mahá-  
rája, and of her  
own two re-  
quests in  
return

At this merciless speech, the Mahárája was pierced with grief, but the words of Kaikeyí had no effect upon Ráma; they fell upon his mind like sparks of fire upon the ocean waves, and he felt no kind of sorrow, but replied :—"Be it so! I will depart into the forest that the Mahárája may fulfil the promise which he has made: But wherefore is he

Ráma's prompt  
and cheerful  
acquiescence.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ka keyi ins sts  
o his imme-  
diate depart-  
ure

Rama obeys.

Rama's perfect  
control of his  
passions.

Review of the  
 foregoing narra-  
tive.

Self-control of  
Rama.

Stress laid upon  
the virtue of  
moderation  
Hindu.

distressed? Whatever my father, or my preceptor, or the Maharaja may command, that I will cheerfully perform. Let me-sengers on swift horses be despatched to bring Bharata from the city of Guruvraja, and I will hasten to the forest of Dandaka and abide there fourteen years." And Kaikeyi said—"So let it be. Let not your father's shame affect you, but depart immediately, for until you are gone out of the city your father will neither bathe nor eat." Thus urged on by Kaikeyi, as a horse is urged on by a whip, Rama replied to her thus—"I obey the will of the Maharaja, for there is no act of virtue greater than that of obeying the command of a father and fulfilling his engagements. Bear with me whilst I take leave of my mother Kausalya, and console my wife Sita, and then I will this day depart to the wilderness of Dandaka." With these words Rama bowed at the feet of his father, who was lying senseless from grief, and he prostrated himself at the feet of Kaikeyi, and went out from the inner apartments, followed by Lakshmana and all his friends. All excepting Rama were bathed in tears, but not even the loss of the Raj or the prospect of weary exile, could affect the dignity of Rama, any more than the taking out of a pot of water can lessen the ocean, or pouring in a pot can increase it. Withdrawing his eyes from all the preparations for his installation and the inauguration of royalty, he manifested neither the slightest change of countenance nor sign of sorrow.

The only point worthy of special notice in the foregoing narrative is the stress laid upon the stoicism of Rama, or rather upon the perfect control which he maintained over his passions, at the very moment when the cup of happiness was dashed from his lips, and he was condemned to hopeless exile. The extent to which this virtue is carried by the Hindus is perfectly marvellous. The news of sudden and dire calamity will be received with a composure and dignity, which no one but an Asiatic could display,

and which arises partly from a belief in the inevitable and irresistible decrees of fate, and partly from a careful training in the habit of self-command.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

The next scene, namely, Ráma's interview with his mother, is even more touching, and may be related as follows:—

3rd. Ráma's interview with his mother

When Ráma left the presence of the Mahárajá and Kaikeyí, he proceeded towards the apartments of his mother Kausalyá. And as he passed the first apartment, the ancient men standing at the door cried out:—"May he conquer gloriously." And as he passed the second apartment, he saw the Bráhmans, deeply versed in the Vedas, and he bowed to them. Then as he went to the third apartment he saw the maid-servants, and children, and matrons, and those expert at keeping the door; and the women, full of joy, rushed off to carry to Kausalyá the news of her son's approach. Now all that night the Rání Kausalyá had been engaged in religious mortification, and in the morning she was paying divine honours to Vishnu. Desirous of propitiating the bright god in favour of her son Ráma, she had clothed herself in silk, and performed all the ceremonies of thanksgiving and joy, and offered up the burnt-offerings, after they had been duly consecrated by mantras from the sacred Vedas. When Ráma entered the elegant apartment of his mother, he beheld her fanning the fire of the sacrifice, and he saw all that she had prepared for the service of the gods; the curds, the rice, the ghee, the sweetmeats, the parched grain, the white garlands, the boiled thick milk, the sacrificial wood, and the jars of holy water. The pious Kausalyá had rolled up her silk garment like a rope, and thrown it over her left shoulder, and drawn it loosely under her right arm; and she was weary with religious observances and internal abstraction of mind, but still eager to propitiate the gods. Seeing her son Ráma, she arose full of pleasure, and as he bowed to her feet she embraced him, and kissed him, and said:—"May you attain the age, the renown, and the virtue of the royal sages of old, and the merit worthy of your race: O

Proceeds to the apartment of his mother.

Kausalyá's worship of Vishnu in behalf of her son.

Ráma finds her engaged in sacrificing

Her joy at seeing him

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ráma informs  
his mother of  
his coming  
exile

Terrible grief of  
Kausalyá

Her bitter  
lamentations

Ráma, your father the Mahárāja, faithful to his word, will this day install you into the office of coadjutor in the Rāj "

Then Ráma, with joined hands, bowed to his mother, and said — "O mother, are you unacquainted with this heavy calamity now impending, which threatens sorrow to Sītá and Lakshmana? It is Bharata whom the Mahárāja will install as his coadjutor, and as for me, I am to go into exile for fourteen years, and dwell in the wilderness of Dandaká, and perform all the duties of a Vínaprastha, and live on fruits and roots "

When the Ráma heard these terrible words she fell down to the earth, like the bough of a soul tree lopped by the axe of the forester, or like a god who had fallen from heaven, and Ráma raised her up, and gently stroked her with his hand. At length, in an agony of grief, she spoke as follows — "O my son! O Ráma! If you had never been born I should have been saved this bitter sorrow. A barren woman has only the grief of being childless, and knows not what it is to lose a son. O Ráma, I am the chief Ráma, yet whilst you are here I have been supplanted, and now what shall I have to suffer when you are gone? My death must be the consequence. Disliked and neglected by my husband, I am already contemned by the servants of Kaikeyi, and now those who serve me will see the son of Kaikeyi installed in the Rāj, and will not vouchsafe me a word. O my son, how shall I, thus deeply afflicted, be able to behold the face of the wrathful Kaikeyi? Seventeen years, O Ráma, have I passed since your birth, hoping that my sorrows would one day end. O Ráma, I am worn with age, and I cannot sustain the loss of you, nor the persecution of my rivals. You, too, doomed to hunger and fatigue, are now sunk in misery with wretched me. Surely my heart is as hard as a rock, since it has not burst ere now like the banks of a river in the rainy season. There must be no room in the mansions of Yama, or death would have seized upon me this day, like a lion springing upon a trembling doe. What is life to me? The sacrifice performed for obtaining a son has been to me like seed sown upon a barren land. If you go into the wilderness

I will follow you, like a feeble cow following her calf: But, O Ráma, it is not pleasing to me that you should forego the Raj and go into the jungle: The Mahárajá is subject to the words of a woman, and has become the slave of Kaikeyí: You, O Ráma, have committed no fault that you should be driven into exile; and what son who remembers the duties of a ruler, would regard a sovereign who has sunk into his second childhood? O Ráma, before this matter is noised abroad, do you assume the management of affairs! Who will oppose you? If, urged by Kaikeyí, your father should appear hostile, do you slay him without remorse; enslaved by Kaikeyí he has sunk into childhood, and rendered his old age contemptible in the eyes of men."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Urges Ráma to  
seize the Raj,  
and slay the  
Mahárajá.

Lakshmana then said:—"O mother, your words are perfectly just: You have spoken what is in my mind: I long to see Ráma upon the throne, and should any one come to oppose him, I swear by you and my weapons that he should soon behold the mansions of Yama: So long as I, who am the servant of Ráma, am here, who will dare to give the Raj to any one else?"

Lakshmana  
seconds the  
counsel of  
Kausalyá.

When Kausalyá heard these words, she rejoiced greatly, and thus addressed Ráma:—"O son, you have heard the words of your brother: If you approve, do that which lies before you: It does not become you to depart hence at the unjust words of my rival, and to leave me a prey to grief: If you desire to act rightly hearken unto me! If the Mahárajá is entitled to your respect and obedience, I am, according to the Sastras, entitled to even more; and I command you not to retire to the forest: If you leave me I will refuse all food, and you will sink into hell."

Kausalyá again  
implores Ráma.

Ráma then spoke thus to his mother:—"I cannot transgress my father's commands; and therefore I entreat your permission to depart to the forest: No one is degraded by obedience to the command of a father." Ráma then said to Lakshmana:—"O my brother, the distress of my mother is unmeasurable, but truth is founded on virtue, and virtue consists in obedience to a father: Having engaged to obey my father, I cannot render my promise void."

Ráma refuses to  
transgress his  
father's com-  
mands.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Refuses to per-  
mit Kausalyá to  
accompany him

Refuses to  
blame his  
enemies.

The wretched Kausalyá still implored her son to remain, or else permit her to accompany him, but Ráma would not, and said to her — "The authority of the Mahárya is superior to all other considerations. He is your husband, and he is to you as a deity, and how can you condemn yourself to become a widow whilst your husband is still alive?" He then took his leave, saying — "Bharata incurs no blame by accepting the Raj, nor Kaikeyí by accepting the favour from the Mahárya, nor Dasaratha by giving the Raj to Bharata rather than break his word." But the words of Rama could not remove the heavy grief of Kausalyá, for she loved her son very much, and she feared that when he was gone her wicked rival Kaikeyí would heap insults upon her, and her heart was much oppressed, and she could only pray for the welfare of Ráma, and engage in religious rites in the hope of propitiating the gods.

Review of the  
foregoing nar-  
rative.

Perfect picture  
of a Hindu  
mother propiti-  
ating the gods  
in behalf of her  
son

Desperate cha-  
racter of Kau-  
salyá's proposi-  
tions to Ráma.

The foregoing narrative furnishes a perfect picture of a Hindú mother whose whole soul is bound up in the well-being of her son. Her prayers and sacrifices to the gods in behalf of Ráma, are precisely such as Hindú matrons in the present day would offer up on similar occasions. But with her the bitter disappointment was overwhelming, and she was wholly unable to exercise that self-control which had been so nobly displayed by Ráma. In the agony of her sorrow she suggested disobedience, rebellion, and parricide; to which, however, Ráma turned a deaf ear; although the bare fact of her making such propositions would seem to indicate that such revolutions were by no means uncommon in the courts of Hindú Rajas. Next Kausalyá prayed that she might be permitted to accompany Ráma into the jungle, and thus escape from the contempt of the palace slave girls, and the exultant face of her detested rival. But Ráma still refused, failing not to

remind her in Brahmanical language of the duty which she owed to her husband, who was to her as a deity. Lastly, in a noble spirit of filial obedience, he absolved his brother, his step-mother, and his father from all blame in the cruel measure which deprived him of a throne and condemned him to a lengthened period of exile.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Noble spirit of  
Rama in refus-  
ing to censure  
the measures of  
his parents.

The next scene, comprising Ráma's interview with his young wife, forms another of those beautiful pictures of a wife's love and devotion, which are so frequent in Hindú poetry. The story is as follows :—

4th, Ráma's in-  
terview with  
Sítá.

When Ráma had taken leave of his mother, he departed out of the palace, and proceeded to his own house. Meanwhile, the beautiful Sítá, not knowing what had occurred, and rejoicing in her husband's coming installation, was standing in her own apartment with eyes fixed upon the door, anxious for the return of her lord. When Ráma, with saddened countenance and drooping head, beheld his beautiful wife, dearer than life, modest and adorned with humility, he could no longer restrain his sorrow. Seeing that Ráma was sorrowful, Sítá was anxious, and asked him the reason of his melancholy in these words :—"Why is it, O Ráma, that you are not as yet installed, or is it that the moon has not yet entered the mansion of Pushyá? Why have you not the royal umbrella over your head, and why are you not fanned by the chámara? Why do not the bards repeat your praises, and why are you not attended by your servants, and priests, and counsellors? Why do I not see any signs of your installation? Let me know all and be relieved from my suspense!"

Ráma proceeds  
to take leave of  
Sítá

Sítá's loving  
anxiety.

At these words of Sítá, Ráma told her of the two promises which Dasaratha had made to Kaikeyí, and how Bharata was to be installed in his room, and he himself was doomed to fourteen years' exile in the jungle. And Ráma said :—"The Mahárāja has appointed Bharata to be his perpetual coadjutor in the Raj; and he is therefore to be honoured by

Ráma informs  
his wife of his  
coming exile.

• HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Desires her to remain and devote her life to religion and the service of her mothers.

By the command of my venerable father I go this day into the forest, it will become you therefore to devote yourself to vows, and fastings, and acts of devotion. My aged mother, wasted with grief, demands your respectful attention, my other mothers must also be duly honoured by you according to their rank, and my two brothers, Bharata and Satrugna, should be constantly regarded by you as your own brothers or sons. O beloved one, I must depart to the great forest, and do you remain here obedient to the commands of Raja Bharata, and never praise me in the presence of Bharata, for a Raja cannot endure to hear the praises of any one beside himself."

Sita replies that she must accompany him and longs to roam with him in the forest.

Sita, angry but yet humble, replied as follows — "O Ráma, what words are these? A wife must share the fortunes of her husband, and if you this day depart to the forest, I must precede you and smooth the thorns. Wherever the husband may be, the wife must dwell in the shadow of his foot. I shall live in the jungle with as much ease as in my father's house, and shall enjoy happiness with you in the honey-scented wood. I have no fear, and I long to roam in the forest with you, and view the lakes and rivers, and the flowers and water birds. I will be no burden to you, but if you leave me I will die."

Ráma recounts the perils and difficulties of jungle life.

Then Rama, wishing to turn the mind of his wife from going with him into the forest, spoke to her as follows — "O Sita, the forest is not always pleasant, but I know that it is always dangerous. You are very delicate, and the beloved daughter of a Raja. You have never been in the sun out of your own room, how then can you brave the dangers of the wilderness? You are surrounded and attended every day by your maids, how then can you go out into the jungle without a servant near you? Your feet are as delicate as the petals of the lily, and the pebbles and the briars will afflict you grievously. You are like butter which will be melted away by the sun at noonday. You will have to cross many rivers, in which there are serpents, and crocodiles, and sharks. The roaring of the lions and the thundering of the catarrhs are terrible to hear. The roads are infested

Hot sun.

No servants.

Stones and briars.

Serpents, crocodiles, and sharks.

Wild beasts.



with wild elephants and filled with thorns; and the jungle is covered with rank weeds in which venomous snakes lie concealed, so deadly that their breath alone will kill a man: Sometimes you will have to subsist upon grass seed; sometimes upon bitter roots and fruits; and sometimes you will not find even these things, and will have to fast many days: At times you will be athirst, and there will be no water: For garments, you will have to wear the bark of trees, or the skin of the antelope; and at night you will have to sleep upon grass, or upon the bare earth: Reptiles, mosquitoes, flies, scorpions, and fierce birds, will bite and sting you, and afflict you in your sleep: Fearful Rákshasas infest the wilderness, and will eat up a whole man at a single meal: Your beautiful locks of hair will become a tangled mass, and will lose their colour from want of oil: Besides all this suffering you will be without friends; and how can this be endured by a woman? It is my knowledge of all that you will have to suffer that prevents my taking you with me: Exposure to the heat, cold, and wind renders the frame lean and emaciated: What enjoyment then can you experience in the forest, whilst I shall be filled with distress at the sight of your afflictions? You are dearer to me than my own life, and I cannot consent to your suffering pain on my account; so take my advice and remain at my house: Though I may be travelling in distant parts, yet still you shall always be present in my thoughts; and though separated in our eyes we shall never be separated in our hearts: Moreover, separation often increases affection, and he alone can perfectly enjoy the felicity of connubial love, who knows what it is to have been separated from his wife: So bear all these things in your mind, and relinquish your plan of accompanying me, and do you determine to remain here."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Bad food.

Coarse garments.

Mosquitoes and scorpions.

Rákshasas.

Solitude

Exposure

Ráma desires Sítá to remain, and urges that separation will increase their affection

Hearing the words of Ráma, Sítá was greatly distressed, and her eyes were filled with tears, and she replied in a low tone thus:—"O Ráma, I am fully aware of all the evil things that have been described by you, but in your presence all that is evil will be turned into good: The fierce animals of the jungle, the elephants, the lions, the tigers,

Sítá replies that in his society all evil will become good.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Implores Rama  
to permit her  
to accompany  
him.

Rama still un-  
willing

Wra h of Sita.

Talks to Rama

Checks herself  
and weeps  
bitterly

and all the beasts of prey will fly away when they behold you. The grass and the seeds, the roots and the fruits, will in your presence be more delightful than amrita, and if I should fail to procure these things for food, I can never be deprived of the amrita of your words. As for garments of bark and antelope's skin, I am not sorry to wear them, for the goddess Parvati wore them for the sake of her husband Siva. Sleeping with you upon a bed of grass will give me more delight than sleeping by myself upon a bed of the softest down. Without you my life is not worth preserving, but with you not even Indra could terrify me. O my lord, by following my husband through affection, I shall be faultless, for the husband is the chief deity of the wife. It is written in the Vedas that the woman who always attends upon her husband, and follows him like a shadow in this life, will in like manner follow him in the world of spirits. It becomes you, therefore, O Ráma, to take me with you that I may share in your pleasures and in your pains, for the desert with all its evils are far better in my sight than all the pleasures of this palace without you."

But notwithstanding all the entreaties of Sita, Ráma was unwilling that she should go into the wilderness; and, beholding her weeping, he bowed down his head, and fell into a deep meditation. And Sita saw that he was sad, and that he was not inclined that she should go with him, and her face reddened with anger, and the tears fell from her eyes like honey from the red lotos, and she said—"Shame on my father who gave me to a husband who has no spirit within him! Those who say that Ráma is brave, courageous, and strong, speak falsely. He has no power to protect his wife; and surely the Mahárya has acted wisely in not giving him the Ray. Having once married me he now wishes to give me away; and to whom am I to go, and where am I to remain for fourteen years?" Then she suddenly checked herself, and repented the harshness of her words, and said—"I have never given you any cause for offence, but if I have done anything wrong I pray you to forgive me. I can fear nothing but separation from you. I entreat you to take me

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

**Maharaja** According to European ideas, such a visit could scarcely have been expected under the circumstances, and yet it is strictly in accordance with Hindu ideas of the respect due to a parent and a superior, even in such a time of trial. The story proceeds as follows —

Profound sorrow of the people of Ayodhya at the exile of Rama.

Meantime the rumour spread throughout the city of Ayodhya, that Rama and his wife Sita, and his brother Lakshmana were to be sent out as exiles into the wilderness of Dandaka, and all the people were thunderstruck at the tidings for they had been expecting to see the installation of Rama and all of them were grieved to the heart, and became so senseless that though they had eyes they could not see and though they had ears they could not hear. And all the inhabitants of the city crowded around the gate way of the palace, and even the women came out from their inner apartments and sacrificed their shame and modesty, and stood round the palace gate way. Presently

Rama, Sita and Lakshmana wait bare-footed to the palace.

the two Princes, and the wife of Rama were seen walking with bare feet towards the palace of the Maharaja. Rama walking first, and Sita close behind him, while Lakshmana brought up the rear. At this sight the whole multitude were filled with grief, and bitterly reproached the Maharaja. Some said that he was an old hollow tree, which had generated the fire which was destroying a blooming garden. Others cried out that he was possessed by demon, saying —“ Unless the Maharaja were possessed by demons he could not have sent his son into exile, since no father is capable of sending away his son, even if that son were full of faults whilst Rama is full of every kind of virtue.” Some

The people reproach the Maharaja.

Contemplate accompanying Rama into the jungle.

Reproach Kaikeyi.

of the people thought of accompanying Rama into the jungle, taking with them their wives and families and leaving Dasaratha and his wife Kaikeyi and his son Bharata to rule the desert city of Ayodhya. Others said —“ Why do you blame the Maharaja when it is Kaikeyi who is the root of all this evil? She persuaded the Maharaja by sweet and coaxing words to send Rama away, and to give the Ray

to Bharata: Perchance Bharata is in the plot, and therefore remains in the city of his mother's father out of shame: If he felt so strong a desire to rule the Raj, he should have asked Ráma for it; and then he would have obtained the Raj without any misfortune befalling Ráma "

Whilst the people were thus lamenting, Ráma approached the apartments of the Mahárajá, and heard the lamentations of his father, and the imprecations which he continued to pour upon the wicked Kaikeyí. At length the chosen Counsellor Sumantra made known to Dasaratha that his son Ráma stood at the door; and the Mahárajá ordered that all his women should be summoned to that apartment, and that Ráma should then enter the room, for he cared not to be alone when he took leave of his son. Then all the women advanced with a slow pace into that room, and their eyes were red with weeping, and Kausalyá was in the midst of them. Then Ráma, and Sítá, and Lakshmana were conducted into the presence of the Mahárajá; and the Mahárajá, surrounded by his wives, arose from his seat, and then fell upon the ground in a swoon; and Ráma and Lakshmana ran towards him and embraced him with their arms, and placed him on the royal couch; whilst the cries of that multitude of women filled the palace, and mingled with the clanging of their ornaments. Then Ráma, with joined hands, said to his father:—"I entreat you, O Mahárajá, to look with a propitious eye upon me who am ready to depart to the wilderness of Dandaka: Permit also Lakshmana and Sítá to accompany me to the forest O fountain of honour, command us even as Brahma commands his children."

The Mahárajá then gazed steadfastly upon Ráma, and said—"O Ráma, I have been infatuated with Kaikeyí through the promises I have given to her: O Ráma, set aside my commandment, and become this day the Raja of Ayodhyá!" Ráma replied, with joined hands:—"My lord the Mahárajá has yet a thousand years to live upon the earth, and I will abide in the forest without desiring the Raj: When fourteen years have passed away I shall have

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Scene in the palace. The Mahárajá summons all his women to be present at his parting with Ráma.

Swooning of the Mahárajá on beholding Ráma, Sítá and Lakshmana.

The Mahárajá desires Ráma to seize the Raj

Ráma refuses.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The Maháraya  
in *loves Ráma*  
to stay *one day*  
longer

completed my vow and will again embrace your feet Who in this earth will hereafter obey the commands of his father if I now violate them?" Then the distressed Maháraya said to his affectionate son — "O beloved one, go without haste in a safe and good road, but go not away to day The evening is approaching, and refreshed by the sight of you, let me enjoy one good day more Spend this night with your mother and me, and to morrow do as it pleases you O Rama, I have been deceived by a woman, who has covered her evil designs, like a fire that is covered by ashes"

Ráma urges  
that *he must*  
not delay

Ráma replied — 'To depart hence is my only desire Let the Raj, with its people and wealth, and waving fields of corn be given to Bharata, for my resolution to embrace a forest life cannot be shaken O Maháraya, let the promise given by you to Kaikeyi be fulfilled to the very uttermost' Observing your commandment exactly as it was delivered, I will reside in the forest for fourteen years, and I swear, O Maháraya that my only desire is that your word should be fulfilled, and your character be cleared from every stain of falsity O my lord and father, I cannot stay longer, and I pray you to restrain your grief, it is no affliction for me to depart Kaikeyi said to me — "Ráma, go to the forest!"

Seeks to console  
the Maháraya

I replied — "I will go!" I will therefore keep my word O venerable father, be not distressed! We shall enjoy ourselves in the quiet forest, filled with gentle deer, and vocal with the song of birds, and when the fourteen years are expired you shall behold us again, and your promise will have been fulfilled"

Intense grief of  
all present  
excepting Kaikeyi

At these words all the wives of the Maháraya wept bitterly, excepting only the remorseless Kaikeyi, and the Chief Counsellor Samantra wept in like manner And the Maháraya was overcome with anger, and he moved about his head, and sighed heavily, and he began to wring his hands, and to grind his teeth, and his colour changed, and his eyes reddened with rage and he fell now into the depths

Sumantra leaps  
terrible re-  
proaches upon  
Kaikeyi

of anguish Then Sumantra seeing the deep sorrow of the Maháraya, tried to pierce the soul of Kaikeyi with sharp

words as terrible as thunderbolts, saying :—"You, who have abandoned Dasaratha, are the murderess of your husband and family ; by your vile deeds you have afflicted him who is invincible as Indra, as immovable as a mountain, and as impassable as the sea : The will of the husband ought to prevail over the wife, far above the gratification of her children : Men succeed to a Raj according to their seniority, and is it your wish to annul this law ? But let your son Bharata become the Raja, and let him govern the Raj : Where Ráma goes we will go : No Bráhman will remain in your dominions : We, the inhabitants of the city of Ayodhyá, and all the people of the country of Kosala, will certainly go into the jungle with Ráma : What pleasure then will you have in obtaining a Raj which has been abandoned by all your friends, by all the Bráhmans, and by every good and loyal subject ? Your deeds are so heinous that I wonder the earth does not open at the sight of your abominable conduct : Who but you would fell a mango tree with an axe, and plant a tree of harsh and worthless berries in its room ? O Ráuí, obey the will of your husband, and be not obstinate in transgression, for a husband is like the sovereign of the gods : Let the lotos-eyed Ráma, the virtuous, the first-born, the generous, the energetic, the mighty, be installed in the Raj ; for bear in mind, O Rání, that if Ráma leaves his father and goes into the forest, your infamy will fill the whole world."

Threatens to accompany Ráma with all the people of Kosala and leave the Raj uninhabited.

Implores Kaikeyi to retract her determination.

At these words of Sumantrá the Rání Kaikeyi was neither moved nor distressed, nor was her countenance changed. So the Mahárája said to Sumantra :—"Speedily order the army, composed of four bands, and laden with wealth, to accompany Ráma ; let beautiful dancing-girls, and musicians, and rich merchants adorn the train of my son ; let the warlike engines follow Ráma, and the citizens also, and all kinds of carriages, with huntsmen and all who are skilled in the chase : Whilst hunting the antelopes, and the elephants, and drinking the wild honey, and beholding the flowing rivers, he will speedily forget the Raj : Let all my store-houses of grain and treasure accompany Ráma, so that

Kaikeyi unmoved

The Mahárája orders the army and treasures to accompany Ráma.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ka kevi declares  
that Bharata  
will not accept  
an empty Raj

Urges that  
Rama should  
go into exile as  
Asamanja had  
done

Tradition of  
Asamanja-

Rama refuses to  
accept the army

Ca is for gar-  
ment of bark  
as is adjacent  
bark

Ka kevi brings  
the bark cloth  
to Rama

Rama puts it  
on

may dwell happily in the wilderness, and Bharata shall govern Ayodhya until the prosperous Rama shall have accomplished all he desires "

At these words of the Maharya, the Rani Kaikeyi was greatly troubled and sore afraid, and she said to Dasaratha — "My son Bharata will not accept of a Raj which has been stripped of its wealth, and become like wine which has lost its strength" Dasaratha replied — "O you vile one, having loaded me with a grievous burden, will you afflict me whilst I am bearing it? What has become of your former pretended love for Rama? Kaikeyi said — "It is meet that he should go into the forest, even as one of your own ancestors sent out his eldest son Asamanja" Dasaratha replied — "Asamanja was a wicked prince, he caught the children of the people in the streets and threw them into the river Sarayu, but what has Rama done that he should be sent into exile? O Rama, to abandon a virtuous son would destroy the splendour of Indra, and I, with all the rest, will turn my back upon the Raj, and pleasure, and wealth, and will follow Rama this day, and leave you with your son Bharata to enjoy the pleasures of the Raj "

Then the humble Rama supplicated Maharya Dasaratha in these words — "O Raja of Ryas, what occasion have I for soldiers or for followers, who have abandoned all society and enjoyment to live on the wild productions of the forest? Who, having given away an excellent elephant, is desirous of possessing the grass rope which binds it round? O lord of the world, what occasion have I for troops? Bring hither, I pray you, the raiment of bark, the spade wherewith I may dig for the roots, and the basket covered with leather in which I may carry them, these are for me who am to reside fourteen years in the jungle" Then Kaikeyi, devoid of shame, brought herself the dresses of bark, and said before all the people — "Put them on" And the mighty Rama received the bark dress from Kaikeyi, and threw off his garment of fine linen, and all his ornaments, even the mar-

\* This reference to the cruelty of Asamanja is remarkable from its being one of the very few traditions which appear to refer to the ancient Rajas of Ayodhya.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The Mahārāja  
presents Sītā  
with clothes  
and ornaments

Orders his  
chariot for the  
exile

Rāma, Sītā and  
Lakshmanā  
take leave of  
Kausalyā.  
Her speech to  
Rāma

Rāma's reply

Her speech to  
Lakshmanā

Her speech to  
Sītā

O Rāma, excellent ornaments to your daughter in law, and take away the dress of bark, for she shall not wear it. The exile of Rāma was alone requested by you”<sup>1</sup>

At these words of Vasisthā the Mahārāja ordered his storekeepers and treasurers to present Sita with clothes and ornaments sufficient to last her for fourteen years, and the men did as they were commanded, and Sita threw aside the garments of bark, and arrayed herself in excellent attire as before. The Mahārāja then said —“Bring the chariot and take Rāma in it, that he may appear to be going on a pleasure excursion rather than into exile”

Then Rāma and Sita and Lakshmanā turned to Kausalyā to take their leave of her, and Kausalyā said to Rāma — “Sītā is unprotected and Lakshmanā is a mere boy. Do you take care of them in the wilderness, and above all take care of yourself, and never forget me, who am your unfortunate mother” Here she was choked with grief, and could speak no more, and Rāma said to her — “Lakshmanā is my right hand, and Sītā is my shadow, so you need have no fears on their account, For myself fear nothing, but engage yourself wholly in consoling my father Dasrathā. By your favour I hope to be successful at last, and to absolve my father from his promise, and return again to the Raj.” Kausalyā then said to Lakshmanā —

“I rejoice to see your attachment to Rāma, you should mutually protect each other, and Sita should be the object of your common care. Consider Rāma as your father, and Sita as your mother, and serve them as you have served us.” Kausalyā then embraced Sītā and kissed her, and said — “The nature of women who have been constantly honoured by their beloved husbands, is to neglect their words in times of trouble, but in the heart of a virtuous woman her husband is esteemed sacred, and regarded as the pure soul

<sup>1</sup> The whole of this episode which Vasisthā reproaches Kākī with is evidently an interpolation in the original tradition. The ideas expressed are almost precisely the same as those which had been previously expressed by Sūmantra. In the original story the gift of the bracelets to Sita probably followed immediately after the declaration of the Mahārāja that Sita was not required to wear a garment of bark.



1 of happiness Thus, though my son Ráma is exiled to the jungle, he is not contemptible in your sight, but is regarded as your deity, in poverty the same as in wealth " Then Sita, with joined hands, replied thus to the mother of her husband — "O excellent one, I will do all you have commanded, for I am acquainted with the duty of a woman towards her lord, and could no more depart from virtue than light could depart from the moon. The lute yields no music if it be divested of its strings, the chariot moves not without wheels, and a woman bereft of her husband has no pleasure though she have a hundred children. Scanty is the joy derived from a father, a brother, or a son, but who does not honour a husband, as the source of happiness without bounds. To the wife a husband is even as a god " After this, Rama took leave of the other wives of his father, and he said to them — "Whatever I have done amiss through ignorance while living with you, I entreat you now to forgive " When the ladies heard these pious and humble words, their hearts were penetrated with grief, and they filled the palace with their lamentation and wailing

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Sita's reply

Ráma takes  
leave of the  
other women

The parting was now over, and the unfortunate trio were to be conveyed to the frontier in the chariot of the Mahárāja. But the story may be related at once as it is told in the Rámáyana —

6th Lamentations on the departure of Ráma.

After this Sumantra said to Ráma — "O Prince, ascend the chariot, and I will drive you whithersoever you desire to go " Then the weapons were placed in the chariot, and all the clothes and jewels which the Mahárāja had given to Sita, together with a strong basket covered with leather, and a spade, and Sita ascended the chariot, and Ráma and Lakshmana did likewise, and Sumantra mounted the driving seat, and drove the willing steeds with the swiftness of the wind. Then the whole city of Ayodhyá was filled with tumult, and resounded with the noise of intoxicated elephants, the neighing of horses, and the clanging of ornaments, and all the people were in deep affliction, and ran after the chariot like persons running to plunge into water,

Ráma, Sita, and Lakshmana depart in the chariot a large driven by Sumantra.

Excitement in the city of Ayodhyá.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The charioteer  
called upon to  
stop.

Grief of the  
people

Affliction of the  
Mahārāja.

The Mahārāja  
and Kausalyā  
constrain Su-  
mantra to halt

Rāma desires  
Sumantra to  
drive on, and to  
excuse himself  
by a falsehood.

General mourn-  
ing throughout  
the city as the  
palace of  
Ayodhyā.

and they cried out to Sumantra —“ Pull in the horses that we may behold the face of Rāma ! ” The distressed Mahārāja in like manner rushed out of the palace crying —“ I will see my beloved son ” And there was a great noise of weeping women like that of a female elephant when her mate is bound by the hunter But Rāma commanded Sumantra to drive on, and the dust raised by the chariot-wheels was laid by the falling tears of the citizens The whole city was steeped with water, for the people were frantic with grief, and the tears fell from the eyes of the women, as water falls from the lotos when struck by the leap of a fish The Mahārāja, seeing that the city was overwhelmed with sorrow, fell down beneath the affliction like a tree which has been severed from its roots, and a tumultuous noise arose behind Rāma from the men who supported the Mahārāja in his swoon And Rāma looked behind him and saw his father Dasaratha, and his mother Kausalyā, running after the chariot, and heard them calling upon Sumantra to rein in the horses, but he commanded Sumantra to drive on, and the heart of the driver was torn by the conflicting orders as if it had been torn by the chariot-wheels And Rāma said to Sumantra —“ When asked by the Mahārāja wherefore you did not rein in the horses, say that you did not hear, my deep distress has driven me to this falsehood ” So Sumantra drove on the restive horses, and the royal Counsellors said to Dasaratha —“ O Mahārāja, no one follows far after him whom they expect to see return ” But the wretched Mahārāja, with a sad countenance, stood still with his Rānī Kausalyā, watching the chariot as it was driven further and further from his eyes

Meanwhile all the ladies of the royal household were filled with distress, like cows who have been bereft of their young The priests who served the sacred fire made no oblation to the gods, the householders prepared no food, the moon forbore to shine, the sun disappeared while it was yet day; the elephants rejected their fodder, the cows refused to nourish their calves, mothers felt no pleasure even in the sight of their first-born; the planets approached

the moon in evil aspects, the stars appeared gloomy and moved backwards, the clouds were driven by the wind until they resembled a troubled ocean in the air, the city was moved out of its place, and the four quarters of the heavens were in great agitation and overspread with darkness. The whole city of Ayodhyá was thrown into mourning, and resembled the earth and mountains when deprived of Indra, fathers and mothers ceased to think of their children, wives forgot their husbands, and lovers failed to remember each other.\*

Now so long as the Mahárya beheld any vestige of his beloved and virtuous son, he raised himself up on the earth to behold him, but when he could no longer see the dust of the chariot-wheels, he fell again to the earth in the deepest misery, and the beautiful Kausalya attended him, holding his right hand, and Kaikeyi followed him on his left side. When the Mahárya saw that Kaikeyi was there, he said to her—"O Kaikeyi, bent on evil, touch not me! I wish not to see you, for you are neither my wife nor my friend. You, who have abandoned virtue for the sake of wealth, I now abandon for ever. Your hand which I took in the presence of the sacred fire, I relinquish for ever, both in this life and the next. If Bharata, receiving this flourishing Raj, be pleased with what you have gained for him, he may present me with what funeral offerings he will, but none shall approach me." Then the Rám Kausalyá, wasted with distress, raised the Mahárya from the earth, and wiped the dust from off him. And he repented on account of Ráma, like one who has murdered a Bráhmaṇ, or touched fire with his hand, and he vented his grief thus—"The foot-prints of the excellent horses that have borne away my son are still in the road, but the great one is to be seen no more. My son Ráma, who has ever slept on soft pillows perfumed

The Mahárya falls to the earth but is attended by Kausalya and Kaikeyi.

Refuses to be touched by Kaikeyi.

Kausalya raises him.

His lamentation for Ráma.

\* The author of the Adhyatma Rámáyana here introduces a very extraordinary scene for the purpose of enforcing the belief in the divinity of Ráma. It will be remembered that the Mahárya had two priests, namely, Vashistha and Yamadewa. Of these Yamadewa is said to have preached a long sermon to the people of Ayodhya explaining how Ráma was an incarnation of Vishnu for the destruction of Ravana. The matter of the sermon is so entirely theological that it is reserved for discussion in a future volume.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

with sandal wood, and been fanned by damsels adorned with costly ornaments, will this night take shelter beneath a tree, with a block of stone for his pillow, and in the morning he will rise covered with dirt like a buffalo arising from a muddy pool. The inhabitants of the jungle will behold the valiant Ráma rising and departing like one forlorn. The beloved Sitá, ever worthy of happiness, will be wearied with the entangled thorns, and alarmed at the roar of the wild beasts of the forest. O Kaikeyí, be whatever you desire, and dwell a widow in the Ráj, I can live no longer without the presence of Ráma." Thus lamenting, the Mahárāja entered his beautiful palace, like one who enters the house of mourning after he has burned a deceased kinsman.

The Mahárāja returns to the palace and so conveyed to the apartments of Kausalyá.

Seeing the city bereft of its people, the Mahárāja entered the palace as the sun enters a cloud, and he said — "Carry me speedily to the apartments of Kausalyá, the mother of Ráma, for nowhere else can my heart obtain ease." Then those who were waiting on the Mahárāja carried him to the chamber of Kausalyá, and he ascended a couch and sank into a delirium. And the night overspread all around, like the night of universal death, and at midnight the Mahárāja said to Kausalyá — "O excellent Kausalyá, I cannot see you, touch me I pray you with your hand, for my sight has gone after Ráma." Then the Ráma, seeing him lying on the couch mourning for Ráma, drew near and sat by the side of her afflicted lord, and thus addressed him — "That female reptile Kaikeyí, having shed her poison upon Ráma and cast her slough, will now go about with ease, and will terrify me like a venomous serpent. Better would it have been for me, if Ráma had dwelt in the city as a wandering mendicant, or if he had been condemned to servitude, but the wicked Kaikeyí has cast him out to be a portion to the Rakshasas, as fuel is thrown to the sacrificial fire. The hero of mighty arm, attended by his wife and brother, has been condemned by you to exile in the forest, and what can await them but the direst distress? How can the tender ones drag on their wretched lives feeding on fruits? Alas! they are like the remains of a tree, which has been

Midnight scene

Lamentations of Kausalyá.

devoured by elephants or destroyed by the jungle fire before its fruit has ripened. Yet even now the day may come when I shall again behold Ráma, and his wife Sitá, and his brother Lakshmana, but when will that day arrive? When will this renowned city of Ayodhyá, hearing that the two heroes have returned from the forest, once again be filled with gladness and be decorated with banners? When will the city be moved with joy at beholding these two heroes, like the sea at the new and full moon? When will the thousands of people scatter sweetmeats in the streets, as the two sons enter Ayodhyá adorned with beautiful ear-rings and holding up their scimitars? When will the daughters of Bráhmans joyfully go round the city with fruits and flowers? When will my son Ráma, who is old in understanding but endowed like the gods with perpetual youth, when will he return and revive us like a seasonable rain? O Mahárajá, like a cow whose calf has been carried off by a lion, so have I been deprived of my offspring by the tigress Kaúkeyí."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The foregoing story of Ráma's departure into exile is replete with many touching references, which to the European would appear to be exaggerations, but which are never for a moment doubted by the Hindú. Thus it seems difficult to understand why Ráma, Sitá, and Lakshmana should have walked to the palace with bare feet instead of proceeding thither in a chariot; but according to Hindú id the conduct of the exiles would have been regarded as contumacious and defiant had they approached the palace in a more ostentatious manner whilst suffering under the displeasure of the Mahárajá. Again, the sorrow of the royal household may have been exaggerated by the bard; but still some allowance must be made for the overweening and demonstrative affections, which on all occasions are strongly manifested in Hindú families. The excitement of the

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's departure into exile.

Reason why Ráma, Sitá and Lakshmana walked to the palace with bare feet.

ch.  
fami.  
amon  
Hindus.

Sympathy the people the life of the in ancient times

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

with sandal wood, and been fanned by damsels adorned with costly ornaments, will this night take shelter beneath a tree, with a block of stone for his pillow, and in the morning he will rise covered with dirt like a buffalo arising from a muddy pool. The inhabitants of the jungle will behold the valiant Ráma rising and departing like one forlorn. The beloved Sitá, ever worthy of happiness, will be wearied with the entangled thorns, and alarmed at the roar of the wild beasts of the forest. O Kaikeyi, be whatever you desire, and dwell a widow in the Raj, I can live no longer without the presence of Ráma." Thus lamenting, the Maháraya entered his beautiful palace, like one who enters the house of mourning after he has buried a deceased kinsman.

The Maháraya returns to the palace and is conveyed to the apartments of Kausalyá.

Midnight scene

Lamentations of Kausalyá.

Seeing the city bereft of its people, the Maháraya entered the palace as the sun enters a cloud, and he said — "Carry me speedily to the apartments of Kausalyá, the mother of Rama for nowhere else can my heart obtain ease." Then those who were waiting on the Maháraya carried him to the chamber of Kausalyá, and he ascended a couch and sank into a delirium. And the night overspread all around, like the night of universal death, and at midnight the Maháraya said to Kausalyá — "O excellent Kausalyá, I cannot see you, touch me I pray you with your hand for my sight has gone after Rama." Then the Rání, seeing him lying on the couch mourning for Ráma, drew near and sat by the side of her afflicted lord, and thus addressed him — "That female reptile Kaikeyi, having shed her poison upon Rama and cast her slough, will now go about with ease, and will terrify me like a venomous serpent. Better would it have been for me, if Ráma had dwelt in the city as a wandering mendicant, or if he had been condemned to servitude, but the wicked Kaikeyi has cast him out to be a portion to the Rikshasas, as fuel is thrown to the sacrificial fire. The hero of mighty arm, attended by his wife and brother, has been condemned by you to exile in the forest, and what can await them but the direst distress? How can these tender ones drag on their wretched lives feeding on fruits?"

devoured by elephants or destroyed by the jungle fire before its fruit has ripened. Yet even now the day may come when I shall again behold Ráma, and his wife Sítá, and his brother Lakshmana, but when will that day arrive? When will this renowned city of Ayodhyá, hearing that the two heroes have returned from the forest, once again be filled with gladness and be decorated with banners? When will the city be moved with joy at beholding these two heroes, like the sea at the new and full moon? When will the thousands of people scatter sweetmeats in the streets, as the two sons enter Ayodhyá adorned with beautiful ear-rings and holding up their scimitars? When will the daughters of Bráhmans joyfully go round the city with fruits and flowers? When will my son Ríma, who is old in understanding but endowed like the gods with perpetual youth, when will he return and revive us like a seasonable rain? O Mahárája, like a cow whose calf has been carried off by a lion, so have I been deprived of my offspring by the tigress Kaikeyí."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The foregoing story of Ráma's departure into exile is replete with many touching references, which to the European would appear to be exaggerations, but which are never for a moment doubted by the Hindú. Thus it seems difficult to understand why Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana should have walked to the palace with bare feet instead of proceeding thither in a chariot; but according to Hindú ideas the conduct of the exiles would have been regarded as contumacious and defiant had they approached the palace in a more ostentatious manner whilst suffering under the displeasure of the Mahárája. Again, the sorrow of the royal household may have been exaggerated by the bard; but still some allowance must be made for the overweening and demonstrative affections, which on all occasions are strongly manifested in Hindú families. The excitement of the

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's departure into exile.

Reason why Ráma, Sítá and Lakshmana walked to the palace with bare feet.

Demonstrative character of family affections amongst the Hindús.

Sympathy of the people with the domestic life of the Raja in ancient times.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

---

people of Ayodhyá has also been described with much poetical extravagance and embellishment; but still it should be borne in mind that in ancient times, when the Hindú sovereignties had been as yet undisturbed by Mussulman invasion, the attachment between a people and their Raja was of a strong and patriarchal character; and the domestic incidents of palace-life were regarded with an interest and sympathy which finds but little expression in modern history, excepting in the fervent loyalty of the people of England towards the family of our sovereign lady Victoria.

Filial obedience  
of Ráma, a  
Hindú model  
for all time

The filial obedience of Ráma is of course intended as a model for all time; and to this day his refusal to countenance any scheme of disobedience or rebellion, his patient self-sacrifice in order that the promise made by his father should be fulfilled in its integrity, and his loyal reverence towards the Mahá-raja and the Ránis, are regarded as bright examples to be followed when required in every Hindú family.

Conduct of  
Kaikeyi in-  
tended as a  
warning to  
younger wives.

The cruel and relentless conduct of Kaikeyi is in like manner intended as a solemn warning to a young and beautiful wife against exercising an undue influence over a fond husband, and causing him to commit the injustice of promoting her son at the expense of the elder branch of the family. But inasmuch as a favourite wife is more prone to ambition than a son is prone to disobedience, the lesson involved in the tradition of Kaikeyi apparently exercises but little influence in those households in which a husband is married to more than one wife; and it is by no means unfrequent even in the present day for the youth and beauty of a favourite wife or concubine to prevail over the better judgment of an uxorious Chieftain.

The lesson  
ineffectual.



## CHAPTER IX.

### JOURNEY TO CHITRA-KÚTA.

THE journey of Ráma with his wife and brother, immediately after taking leave of the Mahájaja, is described with considerable clearness in the Rámáyana. The route lay in a southerly direction from the city of Ayodhyá to the country of Bundelkund; and the three most important stages are as follows —

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Route followed  
by the exiles  
divided into  
three stages

1st, SRINGAVERA, the modern Sungroor, which is situated on the left or northern bank of the river Ganges. This was an important station, inasmuch as it formed the frontier town between the Raj of Kosala and the country of the Bhils, and appears to have been the residence of the Bhíl Raja.

1st Sringavera  
the modern  
Sungroor, on  
the left bank of  
the Ganges

2nd, PRAYÁGA, the modern Alláhábád, which is situated at a very holy spot according to Hindú ideas, being at the junction of the two sacred rivers, the Ganges and the Jumná. Prayága was the seat of a famous Bráhman named Bharadvája, who is said to have dwelt here surrounded by a band of Bráhman disciples, who led the ideal life of austerity, sacrifice, and devotion, which is so frequently described and lauded by Brahmanical bards.

2nd Prayága  
the modern  
Alláhábád at  
the junction of  
the Ganges and  
Jumná.

3rd, CHITRA-KÚTA, a celebrated hill, which is situated to the south of the Jumná in the country of Bundelkund. This was the seat of Válmíki, the sage

3rd Chitra-  
kúta to the  
south of the  
Jumná.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

people of Ayodhyá has also been described with much poetical extravagance and embellishment; but still it should be borne in mind that in ancient times, when the Hindú sovereignties had been as yet undisturbed by Mussulman invasion, the attachment between a people and their Raja was of a strong and patriarchal character; and the domestic incidents of palace-life were regarded with an interest and sympathy which finds but little expression in modern history, excepting in the fervent loyalty of the people of England towards the family of our sovereign lady Victoria.

Filial obedience  
of Ráma a  
Hindú model  
for all time

The filial obedience of Ráma is of course intended as a model for all time; and to this day his refusal to countenance any scheme of disobedience or rebellion, his patient self-sacrifice in order that the promise made by his father should be fulfilled in its integrity, and his loyal reverence towards the Mahá-raja and the Ránís, are regarded as bright examples to be followed when required in every Hindú family. The cruel and relentless conduct of Kaikeyí is in like manner intended as a solemn warning to a young and beautiful wife against exercising an undue influence over a fond husband, and causing him to commit the injustice of promoting her son at the expense of the elder branch of the family. But inasmuch as a favourite wife is more prone to ambition than a son is prone to disobedience, the lesson involved in the tradition of Kaikeyí apparently exercises but little influence in those households in which a husband is married to more than one wife; and it is by no means unfrequent even in the present day for the youth and beauty of a favourite wife or concubine to prevail over the better judgment of an uxorious Chieftain.

Conduct of  
Kaikeyí in-  
tended as a  
warning to  
younger wives.

The lesson  
ineffectual

## CHAPTER IX

### JOURNEY TO CHITRA-KÚTA.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Route followed  
by the exiles  
divided into  
three stages

THE journey of Ráma with his wife and brother, immediately after taking leave of the Mahárája, is described with considerable clearness in the Rámáyana. The route lay in a southerly direction from the city of Ayodhyá to the country of Bundelkund; and the three most important stages are as follows —

1st Sríngavera  
the modern  
Sungroor on  
the left bank of  
the Ganges

1st, SRINGAVERA, the modern Sungroor, which is situated on the left or northern bank of the river Ganges. This was an important station, inasmuch as it formed the frontier town between the Raj of Kosala and the country of the Bhils, and appears to have been the residence of the Bhíl Raja.

2nd Prayága  
the modern  
Alláhabád at  
the junction of  
the Ganges and  
Jumná.

2nd, PRAYÁGA, the modern Alláhabád, which is situated at a very holy spot according to Hindú ideas, being at the junction of the two sacred rivers, the Ganges and the Jumná. Prayága was the seat of a famous Bráhman named Bharadvája, who is said to have dwelt here surrounded by a band of Bráhman disciples, who led the ideal life of austerity, sacrifice, and devotion, which is so frequently described and lauded by Brahmanical bards.

3rd Chitra  
kúta to the  
south of the  
Jumná.

3rd, CHITRA-KÚTA, a celebrated hill, which is situated to the south of the Jumná in the country of Bundelkund. This was the seat of Válmíki, the sage

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

and bard, who became famous in after years as the author of the Rámáyana, and who was surrounded by a society of disciples, and led the same mode of life as was pursued by Bharadvája. It was on this hill that the exiles ultimately took up their abode, and passed some pleasant years.

The narrative of the journey may be related as follows —

1st Route from  
Ayodhjá to  
the river  
Tamasá  
The halt

Now all this while, though the Mahárya had been carried back to the city of Ayodhjá, yet the people would not return from following the chariot of Ráma, and when the evening was come, Sumantra halted the chariot on the banks of the river Tamasá, and loosened the weary horses, and the horses drank of the water and rolled themselves in the dust, and then plunged into the flood, and began feeding on the banks of the river. And Ráma fixed upon a pleasant lodging on the banks of the Tamasá, and he said to Lakshmana — "I will spend this night in feeding only on water, this is my choice, although there is abundance of wild fruits." Then, the sun being set, Sumantra tied up the horses and gave them plenty of fodder, and when all had performed their evening duties Sumantra and Lakshmana prepared a bed of leaves, and thither Ráma retired with his wife Síta. And when Ráma and Síta had fallen asleep, Lakshmana related to Sumantra the various excellencies of Ráma, and when the night had almost passed, the early dawn beheld Lakshmana and Sumantra still conversing respecting the merits of Ráma.

Encampment  
during  
the first night

Súsena, Ráma,  
Síta, and  
Lakshmana  
depart without  
a word to the  
people

In this manner Ráma and the people that were with him spent the night on the banks of the river Tamasá, and at early morning Ráma arose from the bed of leaves, and seeing the people very quiet, he said to his brother — "O Lakshmana, behold these people devoted to us, and inattentive to their own houses, locked in sleep beneath the trees, these citizens have vowed to bring us back, and will never leave us while their lives remain. Let us therefore gently

mount the chariot while they are sleeping beneath the trees, and take our departure, lest they be overwhelmed with trouble on account of our distress." Then at the command of Râma, Sumantra harnessed the horses to the chariot, and Râma, and Sita, and Lakshmana mounted it, and Râma said to Sumantra — "Turn back the chariot and drive it a short while the way we came, that the people may see the footprints of the horses, and think that I have returned to the city of Ayodhyâ." So Sumantra drove the chariot back a short distance towards the city, and then turned round another way, and again came to the river Pamasâ. And when the citizens awoke in the morning they were overwhelmed with sorrow at finding that Râma had departed, but presently they saw the track of his chariot, and they followed it a little way, and then lost it, and they filled the air with their lamentations. After a while they approached the city weeping abundance of tears, and their grief broke out afresh. No one rejoiced and no one was cheerful, the merchants ceased to expose their wares, the bazars were empty of people, and no one was pleased at finding lost goods, or at the increase of wealth or at the birth of a first born son, every house was filled with weeping, and the husbands who had returned home full of distress, were tormented by their wives as the elephant is tormented by the iron hook of his driver. And the women of the city cried out in their grief — "What are houses, or wealth, or children, or pleasure to us, who cannot behold Râma. Blessed are the rivers and pools which Rama shall purify by bathing therein. The forest abounding with beautiful groves, the rivers, the lakes, and the verdant sides of the mountain will all be adorned by the presence of Râma. The greenwood shades and hills to which Rama may resort, will honour him as a most beloved guest. The trees laden with flowers and blossoms, and covered with humming bees, will point out Râma to one another. The mountains through compassion for Râma will display their most beautiful flowers and fruits even out of the due season, and pour forth their varied cataracts of pure water. Let us follow Râma, and we will

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Sumantra drives towards Ayodhyâ to delude the people and then returns by a detour to the Pamasâ.

The people return to Ayodhyâ.

Mournful appearance of the city

Lamentations of the women.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Passage over  
the river  
Tamasa into the  
beautif-  
ful  
country of  
Kosala.

Poetical de-  
scription of the  
river Ganges.

Progress to  
Prinçavara, the  
mad in Sun  
grove

attend upon Sitā, whilst you, O husbands, wait upon Rāma " Then all the women wept aloud, for Rāma was dearer to them even than their own sons

Meanwhile Rāma and the others had crossed the river Tamasa, and journeyed far away from the place where they had slept, and viewed the villages cultivated to their utmost borders, and passed through the rich country of Kosala, which was plenteous in corn and wealth, and abounded with sacred groves and places of sacrifice, and was covered with pleasant gardens and mango trees, and filled with men generous and happy. Presently Rāma saw the divine Ganges flowing in three directions, the river which is frequented by holy sages whose hermitages adorn its banks, the river where the glad females resort at festive seasons, and lave in its cool and pleasant waters, the river which dashes against its strong banks with a terrific sound resembling a deep laugh, or smiling with its pure form, now flows with a divided stream and anon is diversified with whirlpools, the river which abounds with the pure lotos, and where the gods perform their ablutions, the river which rolls on gently shelving shores, bordered with pure sand, vocal with geese and cranes, and adorned with flocks of playful birds, the river whose banks are decorated with trees growing in the form of garlands, and are here and there covered with the expanded lotos, the river which removing every load of impurity is itself clear and pellucid, the river whose surrounding forests are adorned with fruits, flowers, and leaves, like a damsel with excellent ornaments, and resound with the roar of elephants as mighty as those that guard the universe, and as sportive and generous as those which carry Indra, the sovereign of the gods, the river which fell from the feet of the divine Vishnu, and from the matted hair of the great god Siva, through the influence of the sage Bhagiratha, the river Gangā, wife of Sumudra, pure and destroying sin. The valiant and dauntless Rāma, viewing this river full of waves

<sup>1</sup> According to the Purāṇa, the chariot passed over the river through the air between the Tamasa and the Ganges, other rivers, including the Gomati, are said to have been crossed by Rāma and his party in like manner.

and whirlpools, proceeded towards the city of Srīngavera, which is on the borders of the Raj of Ayodhyá towards the country of the Bhīls. When he had reached Srīngavera, he said to Sumantra :—"O charioteer, to-day we will lodge in this place under that Ingudī tree, which stands near the river: There I will contemplate the chief of rivers, whose waters are esteemed by the gods, the demons, and the Gandharvas, and prized by deer, serpents, and birds." So Sumantra drove the horses to the Ingudī tree, and there Rāma descended from the chariot with Sītā and Lakshmana, exclaiming :—"This is a delightful tree."

Now Srīngavera was the border town between the Raj of Kosala and the country of the Bhīls; and the Raja of the Bhīls was Guha, who was a valiant and renowned chieftain, and a friend to Rāma. When Raja Guha heard that Rāma had come into his dominions, he went out to meet him with all his kinsmen; and Rāma, seeing the Raja of the Bhīls approaching, went forward with Lakshmana to welcome him. Then Guha manifested great sorrow, and he embraced Rāma, and bowed down to his feet, and raised his joined hands to his head, and thus spoke to him :—"O Rāma, let this place be to you even as Ayodhyá! What shall I do for you? O valiant one, who ever was so fortunate as to obtain a guest so highly beloved?" Then this excellent Raja Guha brought the argha and various kinds of provisions to Rāma, and said :—"Welcome, O valiant one; my whole Raj is yours: We are your servants and you are our lord: Provisions, beds, and provender for the horses are all at your command." Rāma then embraced the Raja of the Bhīls, and said :—"O Guha, through my good fortune I behold you and your friends this day in good health: Is all well in your Raj? What you have brought through affection, that I accept, though I do not partake thereof: Know that I have assumed the dress of bark and the antelope's skin, and that my food is fruits and roots: Through my duty to my father I am become a devotee of the forest, and I request a little provender for the horses and nothing more: These are the horses of my

Border town between the Raj of Kosala and the Bhil country

Guha Raja of the Bhils entertains Rāma with great hospitality.

Rāma's moderate request

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ráma's fasting  
and devotions

Night at  
Srīngavera.

2 d Route from  
Srīngavera to  
Iráyaga.

Su rise pre-  
parations for  
crossing the  
Ganges

Ráma dresses  
Sumantra, the  
charioteer

His mild ad-  
dress to Suman-  
tra.

father Dasaratha, and I shall be sufficiently honoured by the attention paid to them" Ráya Guha then immediately ordered his men to provide what was necessary for the horses. Meantime Rama bound his garment like a rope over his left shoulder and under his right arm, and performed his devotions to the setting sun, and drank a little water which Lakshmana brought to him. Lakshmana then washed the feet of Rama, and the renowned one slept upon the ground beneath a tree, with his wife Sita by his side. And Raja Guha, and the charioteer Sumantra, conversed with Lakshmana throughout the long night, and carefully watched Rama, nor would Lakshmana betake himself to sleep, though earnestly entreated so to do by the Bhīl Raja.

When the goddess Night had retired, and the sun began to rise, and the call of the shrill peacocks was heard throughout the forest, Lakshmana said to Ráma — "O excellent one, we will soon cross the swift Ganges river that falls into the sea." And Raja Guha prepared a stout and beautiful boat, furnished with oars and a helm, and capable of crossing the holy river with ease, and at the request of Rama, he put the baggage and the weapons into the boat. Then Ráma took Sumantra the charioteer with his right hand, and said — "O Sumantra, enough has been done for me, and we will now leave the chariot and go on foot to the great forest. Do you therefore speedily return to Ayodhyá, and be cautious in the presence of the Maháráya." At these words Sumantra was overwhelmed with distress and wept aloud, and Ráma in mild accents addressed him as follows — "Amongst all the descendants of Ikshváku, I esteem no friend comparable with you. As Maháráya Dasaratha has never caused me any distress, so I pray you not to distress him. Whatever the Maháráya through affection for Kaikeyi may command, do you perform without hesitation, for sovereigns should not be resisted in the management of their affairs. O Sumantra, act so that my father may not be absorbed in fruitless sorrow, nor even think of me. Present my dutiful regards to him, and to



Vasishtha, and to all the pious teachers of Ayodhyá, and say that I bow at their feet: Say also the same to Kaikeyí, Sumitrá, and my other mothers, and to the unhappy Kausalyá, if she has survived my departure: Then bow down to the excellent and aged Mahárajá, and say to him from me:—‘O Raja of Rajas, it does not become you to give way to sorrow and distress on account of me, or Lakshmana, or Sítá: In a virtuous cause we could spend a thousand years in the forest at the word of our father: Neither I, nor Sítá, nor Lakshmana, are objects of regret: We have relinquished Ayodhyá, and will reside in the great jungle; and when fourteen years are expired you will see us return: Let the mother of Bharata, the beloved consort of the Mahárajá, enjoy happiness, and govern the Raj together with her son.’ Having thus spoken to the Mahárajá in my name, do you repeatedly say to my mother Kausalyá, and the other Ránis, and to Kaikeyí, that we are well and bow to their feet: And when Bharata is installed in the Raj, do you say to him from me:—‘Pay every attention to your own mother Kaikeyí, and have regard likewise for Sumitrá the mother of Lakshmana, and speak graciously also to my mother Kausalyá.’”<sup>2</sup>

When the great Ráma had thus finished his commands to Sumantra, Lakshmana, enraged with Kaikeyí, delivered to the charioteer a very angry message to the Mahárajá; but Ráma forbade him, and said to the charioteer:—“Let not the disrespectful words which Lakshmana has spoken be mentioned to the Mahárajá: The venerable sovereign ought always to be addressed in an affectionate manner, accompanied with becoming prostration.”

Lakshma-  
nary me  
to Kaike;  
vented by  
Ráma

Then the faithful and distressed Sumantra prayed that he might remain with Ráma and Sítá during their fourteen years’ sojourn in the forest; for it was the desire of his soul to convey them again to Ayodhyá in the chariot when the

Sumantra's re-  
quest to remain  
with the exiles -  
refused by  
Ráma

<sup>2</sup> This language addressed by Ráma to the charioteer, is generally admired as a proof of the goodness and mildness of the divine hero. But when it is remembered that this language was addressed by a young Prince to the aged Minister of his father, the whole speech will appear affected and priggish to European eyes.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

term of residence in the jungle had expired. But Ráma, full of compassion, thus addressed him —“ O beloved of your royal master ! I know your perfect devotion to me, hear therefore the reason for which I wish to send you to the palace of Dasaratha. Seeing you returned to the city of Ayodhya, the Rání Kaikeyí will be satisfied that I am gone to the jungle, and will enjoy the pleasant Raj governed by her son Bharata. For the sake then of gratifying both me and the Mahárāja, return now to the palace and declare exactly the messages which I have entrusted to you ”

Ráma and  
Lakshmana mat  
up their hair  
after the fashion  
of devotees.

After this, Ráma spoke these important words to Raja Guha —“ I will now mat my hair as a devotee and depart to the great forest of Dandaka. Bring me therefore speedily the milk of the fig tree ! ” So the Raja of the Bhils quickly brought the milky juice, and Ráma formed the jat<sup>2</sup> for Lakshmana and himself. The two heroes, of long and mighty arm, now appeared with their matted hair like two venerable sages, and taking the road towards the river Ganges, Ráma said to his friend Guha —“ If you wish for prosperity, attend to your army, your treasures, and your fortresses, and the affairs of your Raj ! ” They then approached the boat, and Lakshmana, at the command of his brother, placed Sítí in the boat and entered it himself. Ráma then entered likewise, and bade farewell to Sumantra and Guha, who saw them depart with eyes overflowing with tears, and the boat guided by the steersman and propelled by the rowers then moved away with the velocity of the wind.

Ráma takes  
leave of Raja  
Guha as he  
takes with his  
wife, and  
floats on the  
Ganges.

Sítí's prayer  
as she rowed to the  
goddess Ganga.

Now when the boat reached the middle of the river, Sítí, with joined hands, thus addressed the goddess Gangá —

<sup>2</sup> The jat, or knot of hair on the head is peculiar to Hindú devotees. According to the Adhyátma Ramáyana Ráma chose this opportunity of withdrawing the real Sítí from the gaze of men and substituting a false Sítí in her room. The reason for this will appear hereafter, but the passage may be quoted as follows —“ Ráma then turning towards Sítí said to her —“ I have for ages past, my love ! found a habitation for thee in my heart, enter and dwell therein. It is not proper that thou shouldst be exposed to view.” Sítí in obedience to her husband's order entered into his heart. Ráma, through his own power, created a form resembling Sítí, which he placed by his side, the form was so exact a resemblance of Sítí that there was not a single hair different.

"May this son of Dasaratha, keeping the commandments of the wise Maharaja, be preserved by thee, O Gangā, and after residing fourteen years in the forest, may he return again to the palace at Ayodhyā, with his brother Lakshmana and myself. Then, O excellent goddess Gangā, when we shall have returned in prosperity, with all our wishes gratified, we shall worship thee with great joy. Thou, O goddess, art one who flowing in three directions came from the world of Brahmā. I bow to thee, O goddess, I offer praise to thee, O beautiful river. When Rāma, through your favour, returns and obtains possession of the Raj, I will, in gratitude to you give to the Brāhmins a hundred thousand cows, besides raiment and ornaments. Having returned, O goddess to the palace at Ayodhyā, I will offer to you a thousand jars of spirituous liquors, and rice mixed with flesh;<sup>4</sup> I will sacrifice to all the gods who inhabit your banks, and make offerings at all the sacred places whether small or great. O excellent goddess, may this sinless and valiant Rāma, together with his brother Lakshmana and myself, return from residing in the forest and again enter Ayodhyā."

Whilst the beautiful Sītā was thus praying to the goddess Gangā, the boat reached the south bank of the river, and the two heroes bowed to Gangā, and quitted the vessel accompanied by Sītā. And Rāma said to Lakshmana — "This day will Sītā have to experience the pains of sojourning in the forest, and endure the roaring of lions and tigers, and the grunting of wild hogs, so do you go on before, and I will follow Sītā." Then the two heroes entered the forest with their bows in their hands, whilst Sītā walked between them, having Lakshmana in front and Rāma behind, and at length they came to the sacred fig tree, with its numerous roots descending from its branches, and they sat underneath the shade of the fig tree. And as they sat there at their ease, they saw a beautiful lake of water thickly set with water lilies, and covered with geese and various kinds of

The island  
at the south  
bank of the  
Ganges

Order of march  
through the  
forest. Laksh-  
mana in front  
and Rāma in  
the rear with  
Sītā between  
them

<sup>4</sup> This vow of an offering of flesh meat and spirituous liquors to Gangā, is in accordance with the idea that a female delights in these things. In the Adilātma Ramayana, Sītā is represented as vowing an offering of cows milk and sugar.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.Halt beneath a  
fig tree and  
partake of  
venisonBeds of grass  
and leaves pre-  
pared by  
Lakshmana.Lamentations of  
Rama.Lakshmana  
comforts  
consolates on.

ducks, and they drank of the water [and killed a deer, and kindled a fire, and prepared a repast, and when they had dressed the deer, and given a portion to their ancestors and the gods, the two brothers and Sita partook of the meat] and prepared for lodging beneath the tree<sup>5</sup> And Rama said to Lakshmana —“ This will be our first night in the forest, freed from our attendants, and we shall now resemble true devotees Fear not, O hero, at being without attendants in this uninhabited forest, nor be dispirited at the departure of Sumantra From this day it is my duty and yours to be ever careful to protect Sitá Bring some grass, O Lakshmana, and prepare a bed for me here, and a bed for yourself at a little distance from me ” Lakshmana then prepared the beds of grass and leaves beneath the lordly tree, after which Ráma addressed him as follows —“ As surely the Mahárajá sleeps at ease to night, attended by Kaikeyi, but what wise man is there upon earth, who for the sake of a woman would abandon an obedient and beloved son? Perchance, Kaikeyi, intoxicated with the wine of prosperity, has abused my mother Kausalyá, and your mother Sumitrá Wherefore, O Lakshmana, go you to Ayodhya whilst I alone go with Sitá into the forest, Go, O sinless one, and be the protector of our mothers Wretch that I am! my mother Kausalya obtained me in her old age, and brought me up with difficulty, and now she has been deprived of me just as she was beginning to enjoy the fruits of her labour What is she the better for having a son that assists her not? ” Thus lamenting Ráma gave way to his tears and wept aloud Then Lakshmana said —‘ O excellent hero, it is unworthy of you to grieve, your weeping answers no purpose, and fills Sitá and myself with sorrow Suppress your feelings O excellent one, and dismiss grief It is for little minds when sunk in the mire of distress, to lament like an aged elephant sinking down in a muddy

<sup>5</sup> This passage in which the illustrious trio are represented as eating flesh-meat as well as others of a similar character are placed in brackets because they are omitted in the North West recension They are however of undoubted authenticity

pool Myself and Sitá, seeing you thus distressed, must soon expire like two fishes taken out of the water O hero, I feel no desire to see my father Dasaratha, nor my brother Satrugha, nor my mother Sumitrá, nor heaven itself" Ráma, hearing these weighty words of Lakshmana, dismissed distress and embraced his brother, and said to him — "I abandon grief!"

The two heroes and Sitá then passed a pleasant night under the fig tree, and when the cloudless sun had risen, they plunged into the vast forest, directing their course towards the hermitage of the sage Bharadwája at Prayága, where the holy Ganges unites with the river Jumná. When the day was nearly at an end, Ráma said to his brother — "O Lakshmana, behold that smoke which ascends from the sacred fire at Prayága. We have assuredly found the junction of the Ganges and Jumná, for the murmuring sound can be heard of the two fierce streams dashing together, and I can already see the trees around the hermitage of Bharadwája." Then Rama, and Lakshmana, and Sitá proceeded along, and when the sun cast a long shadow they arrived at the confluence of the two rivers, and approached the hermitage of Bharadwája, and they beheld the great sage offering the sacred fire, surrounded by his disciples and engaged in devotion. Ráma then advanced a little way, and bowed his head respectfully, and related his story to the sage, and Bharadwája having courteously inquired of Ráma respecting his journey, brought water and argha, and presented his guests with food, and wild roots, and fruits of various tastes, and prepared a lodging for them.\*

Sunrise in the jungle proceeds from the fig tree to Prayága, the modern Allahabad at the junction of the Ganges and Jumná

Arrival at the hermitage of Bharadwája.

Hospitality of the sage

\* The meeting between Rama and Bharadwája is somewhat differently described in the Adhyatma Ramayana for the purpose of imparting a religious significance to the interview. The passage is as follows — "When Ráma Sitá, and Lakshmana came near to the abode of Bharadwája, they beheld one of his disciples and Ráma directed the disciple to inform Bharadwája of their arrival, and of their desire to pay their respects to him. Bharadwája was delighted. He selected such articles as were proper for religious ceremonies towards Rama and then went out to meet the three, and fell at their feet and worshipped them. He praised Rama as the Supreme God, and incarnation of Vishnu and said — 'I have passed through a long series of years in religious contemplation and worship in the hope of beholding thee but without success this day have I obtained the reward of my faithful adoration of thy name. I now see thee. Rama, gratified at his ex-

# HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV

Bharadwaja  
counsels Ráma  
to dwell at  
Prayága.

Ráma desires a  
more lonely  
locality

The sage recom-  
mends the hill  
of Chitra-kúta  
in Bundelkand  
on the opposite  
bank of the  
Jumná.

3rd Route from  
Prayága to  
Chitra-kúta.

Departure from  
Prayága.

Directions given  
by the sage for  
crossing the  
Jumná.

And the sage said to Ráma —“ This place is large, uninhabited, and pleasant, and rendered pure by the confluence of the two great rivers I pray you therefore to dwell here at ease” But Ráma replied —“ O divine one, the people of the city of Ayodhyá and Raj of Kosala will often come hither to see us, and therefore I do not approve of staying here. O holy one, look out for a pleasant hermitage in a lonely place where Síta may enjoy herself” Hearing these pleasant words of Ráma, the sage said to him —“ At a short distance hence, O my lord, is a mountain on which you may reside, a mountain prized by sages, and pure and beautiful to the sight It is named Chitra-kúta As long as men behold the peaks of Chitra-kúta they have prosperity and clearness of mind Many sages, after spending hundreds of years there, have ascended by their austerities to heaven I esteem this a proper residence for you, O Ráma, if you will not stay here and reside with me” Thus Bharadwaja received Ráma and his wife and brother with every attention, and Rama and Síta spent the night pleasantly in the delightful hermitage of the sage

At the dawn of morning Ráma presented himself before Bharadwaja, and respectfully requested to be favoured with his commands, and the sage said —“ O most powerful one, depart to the pure and pleasant mountain of Chitra-kúta, which abounds with fruits and roots There wandering with Síta your mind will be gladdened with the view of rivers and springs, hills and valleys, greenland slopes and cool cascades” Then the two Princes bowed to the feet of the great sage, and prepared to depart, and the sage directed them as follows —“ At a short distance hence you will see a great number of huts, thence you will reach the river Jumná, and then you should make a raft and pass the great river which constantly abounds with crocodiles On the opposite shore you will see a large green leaved fig tree, let Síta, joining her hands there, implore a blessing A

preussions, said —‘ We, priest’ are Kshatriyas, thou art a Bráhmaṇ It is our duty to serve thee, to obtain thereby our reward He who serves the Bráhmaṇs faithfully, will easily pass over the waters of this transitory world.”

short distance further you will see a dark forest ; that is the way to the hill Chitra-kúta.”

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

The two Princes then bowed their heads, and went forward with Sítá to the river Jumná ; and there they collected much wood, and made a large raft, and covered it over with dried bamboos ; and Lakshmana cut down branches of trees and made an easy seat for Sítá ; and Ráma placed his beloved upon the seat on the raft. Ráma then put the garments, the ornaments, and the spade and basket by the side of Sítá ; and the two brothers took a pole each and pushed the boat across the swift stream. When they arrived in the midst of the river, Sítá thus addressed the river goddess :—“ O goddess Jumná, blessings attend thee, I am passing over thee : May my lord accomplish his vow ! I will offer to you a thousand cows, and a hundred jars of spirituous liquor, when Ráma returns in peace to the city which is protected by the race of Ikshváku.” Having crossed the river and arrived at the sacred fig tree, Sítá went up to it with joined hands, and thus addressed the tree :—“ Salutation to thee, O great tree ! May my husband accomplish his vow ! May we again see Kausalyá and the renowned Sumitrá.” Sítá then walked round the tree with joined hands. And Ráma beheld his beloved spouse devoted to his interests, and he said to Lakshmana :—“ Do you take Sítá and proceed in front, whilst I will follow behind with the weapons ; and whatever fruits or flowers Sítá may desire, do you collect them for her.” Sítá then advanced between these two brothers like a female elephant guarded by two males ; and she asked Ráma about every new flower and shrub and climbing plant which she beheld ; and at her request Lakshmana brought her very many pleasant plants full of flowers. [Meantime, as Ráma and Lakshmana wandered on their way, they slew many animals that were fit for sacrifice and food ]

Preparation of  
a raft and pas-  
sage over the  
river.

Sita's prayer  
and vow to the  
goddess Jumná

Sita's prayer to  
the sacred fig  
tree.

Progress along  
the banks of  
the Jumná.

Having passed one night on the banks of the river Jumná, the two brothers, together with Sítá, set forward at early dawn on the road to Chitra-kúta ; and as they beheld the trees bending with fruits and flowers, and the large

Arrival at  
Chitra-kúta.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Hermitage of  
Vālmīki.

Hut of branches  
and trees con-  
structed by  
Lakshmana

Prop. history  
sacrifice to the  
god of the  
dwelling

honey-combs covered with bees, and the multitude of deer and birds, they rejoiced greatly, for they saw that there would be abundance of food. And they went on until they came to the hermitages on the hill where resided the great Vālmīki and other distinguished sages; and they advanced with joined hands, and bowed to the feet of Vālmīki, and the wise sage, full of joy, returned their salutation and bade them welcome, and Rāma related to Vālmīki all that had occurred.<sup>7</sup> Rāma then determined to take up his abode on the hill of Chitra-kūta, and at his command, Lakshmana brought various kinds of wood and erected a hut of branches and leaves. Rāma then said to Lakshmana.—“Bring venison that we may sacrifice to the god of the dwelling. Those who desire long life should propitiate the god of their dwelling. Having killed a deer, bring it speedily, O Lakshmana.” And Lakshmana did as his elder brother commanded; and Rāma again said to him—“Dress the venison that we may sacrifice to all the other gods who preside over dwellings.” And Lakshmana brought an excellent antelope that he had killed, and cast it on the fire, and when it was separated from the blood, and thoroughly dressed, the devout Rāma, skilled in sacrificial rites, per-

<sup>7</sup> The interview between Rāma and Vālmīki is thus described in the *Adhyātma Rāmāyana*.—“When the three exiles came to the river Jumna, Rāma put on a religious habit. He then proceeded to Chitra kūta, at which place dwelt a holy saint named Vālmīki, a fervent adorer of the deity. They arrived at his house, where they found a pleasant garden, in which water fowl sported in the tanks, the trees were loaded with delicious fruits and sweet smelling flowers, thousands of birds sang enchanting songs, especially those in praise of Rāma. Brāhmins were seated in all quarters reading the Vedas. Here were sages sitting with their eyes closed, absorbed in meditation on Rāma, others with rosaries of Tulsi leaves in their hands were calling on the name of Rāma. Others again with both hands raised towards heaven were performing the penance. Some held in their breath *with religious fervour, others performed various ceremonies in honour of Rāma*. Thus were all the sages engaged in contemplation on Almighty God. Vālmīki's soul was filled with holy rapture on the approach of the three, especially when he perceived that Rāma had on a religious habit,—his hair braided in a knot on the crown of his head, a deerskin round his loins, his body rubbed over with the yellow earth, and having a bow and arrows in his hands. Vālmīki was overcome with surprise at the brilliant appearance of the three, but led Rāma into his house, worshipped him, walked three times round him, and set before them the choicest fruits, of which they partook.”

Vālmīki is also represented as delivering a long religious discourse to Rāma, which will be considered hereafter.



formed the sacrifice according to the Sastras, and repeated the secret prayers, and performed his ablutions in the river. Ráma then made a place for an altar, and planted a grove; and he and his brother Lakshmana, and his wife Sítá, entered the delightful hut, as the gods enter their sacred assembly. Thus having arrived at the pleasant mountain Chitra-kúta, and at the river Mandákiní, that excellent place which was frequented by deer and birds, Ráma was filled with joy, and relinquished all grief on account of his exile.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Sacrificial rites performed by Ráma.  
Residence of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana in the hut at Chitra kúta.

The foregoing narrative does not call for much remark. Sumantra, the charioteer, seems to have been directed to conduct the exiles to the frontier town of Sríngavera; and this duty he accomplished, crossing the rivers Tamásá and Gomatí on the way. At Sríngavera he took his leave and returned to Ayodhyá, whilst the exiles crossed to the southerly bank of the Ganges, and proceeded due eastward to the celebrated station at Prayága. At Prayága the exiles crossed the river Jumná, and proceeded southward into the country of Bundelkund, where they finally took up their abode on the hill Chitra-kúta; which is said to have abounded in game, fruit, honey, and other products of the jungle which were suitable for food.

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's journey to Chitra kúta.

The exiles part with Sumantra at the frontier town of Sríngavera.

Cross the Ganges to Prayága, and cross the Jumná for Chitra kúta

The worship paid by Sítá to the rivers Ganges and Jumná, and to the sacred fig tree, is well worthy of notice. It may be a relic of the old fetische worship which undoubtedly prevailed in ancient India, and which, as such, will have to be considered hereafter; but still the picture of the faithful wife offering up prayers and vows on behalf of her beloved husband is ever regarded with deep admiration by the Hindús; and indeed the worship is

Worship of the Ganges and Jumná, and the sacred fig tree, by Sítá

HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV perhaps as largely practised by Hindu women in the present day as at any previous period

Brahma set  
timents or  
he targets  
sacred  
amongst the  
aboriginal  
population

Brishman set-  
tling the the  
jan 1 on of the  
Barry and  
Cancer at  
the car at the  
the on of the  
Cancer and  
J. M. A. and  
Chitra K. A.

Another important circumstance connected with Ráma's exile must also be duly noticed, namely, the assumed fact that a number of Brahmanical settlements, or hermitages, each under a distinguished sage, were scattered amongst the aboriginal population beyond the frontier of Kosala. Notice has already been taken of two of these settlements much further to the eastward, in the narrative of Ráma's expedition against the Ráshasas, namely, first, the hermitage at the junction of the Sarayu and Ganges rivers, which was famous as the spot where Siva was smitten by Káma, the Indian Cupid, with the arrows of love, and secondly, the hermitage of Visvámitra in the neighbourhood of Buxar which was famous as the spot where Vishnu, incarnate as a dwarf, took the three steps which terminated in the overthrow of Bali. In the present narrative of Ráma's exile two other Brahmanical settlements are described, namely, the hermitage of Bharadvāja at Prayāga, and the hermitage of Vilmiki at Chitrakuta. Whether these hermitages did or did not exist in the days of Ráma, is a question which can scarcely be settled definitely, but the tradition that Brahmanical settlements were formed in the midst of an aboriginal and hostile people is highly significant, and illustrates an important phase in the history of the Brahmans, namely, the mode by which their influence was extended throughout India. This subject, however, will be discussed hereafter.

## CHAPTER

### DEATH OF MAHÁRAJA DASARATHA.

THE exiles having been settled down in quiet residence on the hill of Chitra-kúta, the story of the Rámáyana once more reverts to the city of Ayodhyá; and the melancholy events are related which followed the return of Sumantra, and the delivery of Ráma's dutiful message to the Mahá-  
HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV.  
Division of the story of the death of Mahá-  
raja Dasaratha into four distinct scenes.

namely:—  
 1st, Palace scene, including the conversation between the Mahá-  
 raja and Kausalyá after the return of Sumantra with Ráma's message.

2nd, The death of the Mahá-  
 raja at midnight.

3rd, The morning scene without and within the palace.

4th, The summoning of the Council, and despatch of messengers to bring Bharata to Ayodhyá.

These events are highly suggestive of ancient Hindú life, but demand no preliminary explanation; and the narrative, therefore, may be reproduced from the Rámáyana as follows:—  
The narrative as it appears in the Rámáyana.

Meantime the charioteer Sumantra had taken leave of Raja Guha, and returned with a heavy heart to the joyless city of Ayodhyá. The people seeing him return without  
1st, Scene in the palace after the return of Sumantra to Ayodhyá.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Distress of the  
people, the  
ladies of the  
palace, and the  
Mahárāja.

Sumantra de-  
livers Ráma's  
message.

Prostration of  
the Mahárāja.

Kausalyá re-  
proaches the  
Mahárāja.

Ráma filled the air with their cries, and he drove his chariot through the chief street, with his face covered, until he came near to the palace of Mahárāja Dasaratha. Then Sumantra descended from his chariot, and passed through the seven enclosures of the palace,<sup>1</sup> and all the ladies of the Mahárāja, seeing him return without Ráma, were filled with anguish, and their bright eyes streamed with tears. And Sumantra quickly entered the eighth enclosure of the palace, and beheld the wretched Mahárāja in the white house, wasted with grief on account of his son, and he approached the Mahárāja and bowed to his feet, and delivered the message which had been entrusted to him by Ráma.

When the Mahárāja heard the dutiful words of his eldest son, he fell down in a swoon, and the Rání Kausalyá, with the aid of Sumantra, raised him up, and thus addressed him — "Arise, O Mahárāja, for no help can come out of this sorrow! O my lord, Kaikeyí is not here, and you need not fear to converse about Ráma." Kausalyá then began to heap bitter reproaches upon Dasaratha, saying — "Who ever abandoned a beloved and innocent son after having engaged to install him in the Raj? If you had promised to grant two boons to Kaikeyí, why did you promise to give the Raj to Ráma? If you exiled your son for fear of violating your word, why did you not fear to break the promise that you had made to your Counsellors to install Rama? Enslaved in your old age by the love of a woman, you break your promise either way, by giving Ráma the Raj you would have broken your promise to Kaikeyí, but by sending him into the jungle you have broken your promise to your Counsellors. The oath given to a favourite wife, and the exile of Rama to the forest, are crimes which I rank with the murder of an unborn infant. Happy is it for me that Kaikeyí did not solicit the death of Ráma, for you would have granted that also without hesitation. Then Ráma would have been seized by the strong arm of power,

<sup>1</sup> Five courts or quadrangles are specified on a previous occasion. See *ante*, p. 109.

like a victim bound by its owner for a sacrifice, for in this world the weak sink beneath the grasp of the strong, as elephants in the forest are seized in the grasp of lions. Should Ráma return after his exile is accomplished, I cannot expect that Bharata will abandon the Raj and the treasures, nor would Ráma receive them at his hand. If people first entertain their new friends at a funeral feast, and afterwards invite the Bráhmans, they will find that the Bráhmans will not look with pleasure even on amrita when it has been left by others. Will Brahman sit down before other Bráhmans have finished their meat, and eat that of which they have eaten? Will an elder brother accept of a Raj which has been enjoyed by a younger brother? Will a tiger eat the prey which has been caught by another? No oblations, nor ghee, nor sacrificial articles, nor sacred kusa grass, nor sacrificial posts, are over again employed in a new ceremony, and in like manner Ráma will never look with pleasure on a Raj which resembles stale wine at a feast, or spoiled homa at a sacrifice. Ráma will no more endure such disrespect than a fierce tiger would suffer his tail to be pulled with impunity.”

The Maháraya, hearing this angry speech of Kausalyá, thus spoke to her —“O Kausalya, I entreat your forgiveness with joined hands. Tenderly affectionate toward your son, do not pour salt into my wounds! My heart is bursting with sorrow for my son, and your words are to me as thunderbolts. The husband of a chaste wife, whether virtuous or worthless, is her deity, her refuge, and the grand object of her veneration. Pardon my transgression, O Ám, in excess of agony do I supplicate you. Do not again wound me, who am already smitten and wounded by the gods. O goddess, I know you to be wise, and acquainted with the different passions of men, let me not again hear these bitter reproaches from you!”

The Maháraya implores the forgiveness of Kausalyá.

<sup>2</sup> This speech which has been put into the mouth of Kausalyá contains several similes which may be regarded as so many inferential lessons in Brahmanical law. The most important is that which refers to the especial claim of the Bráhmans which is still observed at all feasts, of being served before those of any other caste, and of being served all at one time.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Kausalyā ac-  
knowledges her  
transgression in  
having reproved her  
lord

When Kausalyā, ever affectionate towards her husband, heard those words of the afflicted Maharaja, she abandoned her distress on account of her son, and applying her joined hands to his, she bowed her head even to his feet, and replied —“O Raja of Rajas, pardon my transgression! Through distress for my son, I have said what I ought not to have said. She who is supplicated by her husband with joined hands, and does not relent, is cursed both in this life and in the life to come. Pardon, O Mahārāja, this fault of a distressed woman, you are the lord and deity both of myself and Rāma. I know what is right, I know that you are acquainted with your duty, and are a speaker of truth, and what I have spoken has been through my affliction on account of my son. Grief destroys the understanding, and the memory, and the patience, there is no enemy more destructive than grief. The touch of fire may be borne, and the stroke of a dreadful weapon, but, O Mahārāja, the distress which arises from grief is not to be endured, even the sages when smitten with grief have sunk beneath the stroke. These five days which have passed away since the departure of my son, are to me, by reason of my sorrow, even as a thousand years. My grief for my exiled son increases like the waters of the Ganges after the departure of the cold season.”

2nd. Last words  
of the Mahārāja  
to Kausalyā at  
midnight.

Whilst Kausalyā was thus speaking the day declined and the sun set, and the Mahārāja, composed by her words and wearied by reason of his mourning, sunk into the arms of sleep. And in the middle of the night the Maharaja awoke weeping and terrified, and said to his wife —“O Kausalyā, I am now giving up the ghost through grief for my son. My eyes are unable to see you, so do you come near and touch me, those men can perceive nothing who are departing to the mansions of Yama. Could Rāma once touch me, and receive the Raj from me, I might even yet live. O Kausalyā, I cannot behold you, my eyes and memory are gone, and the messengers of Yama are hastening me away. What affliction can exceed this, that when my soul is departing I cannot behold Rāma. My grief dries up

my heart as the heat of the sun dries up pools of water: They are not men but gods who see the shining face of Ráma adorned with his beautiful ear-rings; and happy will they be who shall again behold his fragrant face after he shall have returned from exile: O Kausalyá, my heart is dying away; I am sinking into imbecility like the expiring light of a lamp which has been exhausted of its oil." While thus lamenting, the eyes of Mahárajá Dasaratha became fixed in death, and he gave up the ghost in the presence of Kausalyá the mother of Ráma, and of Sumitrá, the mother of Lakshmana; and the two Ránis swooned away until the morning, and no one knew what had occurred.

Now when the night had passed away, the bards and eulogists assembled, according to their custom, at the palace of the Mahárajá. And they sounded aloud the praises of the Mahárajá, and invoked the gods for blessings on his head; and the sound of these hymns and prayers spread through the whole palace; and louder than all was the noise of those who declared the great deeds of the Mahárajá and clapped their hands in harmony. The birds who were sleeping on the branches of the trees, or in the hedges, or on the roofs of the palace, were awakened at that mighty sound, and began to utter their cheerful notes. The Bráhmans also filled the palace with the music of the Vedas, and the sacred chanting of the Vedic hymns. The servants were assembled in great multitudes; the men-servants brought water in golden jars mixed with the fragrant yellow sandal wood for the morning ablutions; whilst a number of chaste young damsels brought articles of food, and those for ornament, all prepared according to the ordinance, and all of excellent appearance and quality. After a while the sun arose, and every one stood with great respect and attention, waiting for the coming of the Mahárajá; and when they saw that he did not appear, they looked with anxiety one at the other and said:—"Why does he not come forth?" Then the ladies, who attended near the bed of the Mahárajá, approached to awaken him; and they touched his bed with becoming reverence; but even then they knew not what had

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Palace ladies discern that the Mahárája is dead.

Kausalyá and Sumitrá awake from their swoon. Lamentations of all the women.

The Ministers hasten to the chamber of the dead Mahárája.

Funeral ceremonies delayed.

Royal corpse preserved in a bath of oil.

4th Council of 2 Brahmins and 1 Cl. effects convened by the Ministers.

Address of the assembly to the priest Vasishta.

occurred. At length they saw that his eyes were fixed, and that his pulse had ceased to beat, and they began to tremble for his life. They also saw that Kausalyá and Sumitrá, overcome by distress, were lying in a swoon, their eyes swollen with grief. Then they wept with a loud voice, like that of female elephants when their leader has disappeared, and Kausalyá and Sumitrá awoke from their heavy slumber, and seeing that the Mahárája was dead, they fell to the earth with loud cries. Then Kaikeyí and all the other Rámis came forward and filled the palace with their lamentations, and they all wept and screamed, and smote themselves with their hands. The Ministers, hearing that the Mahárája had died during the night, hastened to the chamber of death, and removed the distressed and devoted Kausalyá, who was embracing the lifeless body of her lord, and pouring bitter words upon the cruel and remorseless Kaikeyí. But no funeral ceremonies could be performed at that time for the dead Mahárája for all his four sons were dwelling at a distance from the city of Ayodhyá. So the Ministers, directed by the Brahmans, would not burn the royal body, and they placed it in a bath of oil, whilst all the Rámis wept aloud and cried —“Our lord is dead!” And the illustrious wives of Dasaratha, overwhelmed with sorrow, walked up and down as if bereft of their all, and Ayodhyá appeared as a widowed city, like the sky without the sun, or a night without the stars, and the sun having finished its course suddenly retired, and darkness fell on all around.

When that night had passed away in Ayodhya and the sun had again risen the Ministers of the Raj called together an assembly of Brahmans and Chieftains, and those renowned sages and courtiers delivered their opinions in the presence of the chief and excellent priest Vasishta, as follows —“The past night has been to us like a hundred years. Distressed on account of the exiled Rama, the Mahárája has given up the ghost. Dasaratha is now in heaven, but none of all his sons remain in the city of Ayodhyá. Rama has departed to the forest, and the illustrious Lakshmana has gone with him, and Bharata and Satrugna are dwelling in



Necessity for  
the immediate  
appointment  
of a Mahārāja.  
Political de-  
scription of a  
country with-  
out a Mahārāja.

Girivraja, the royal city of the Kaikeyas : It is necessary this day to appoint some one to be our Mahārāja, that our widowed country may not fall into ruin : In countries destitute of a Raja the rain-cloud ceases to pour forth its showers upon the earth, and the husbandman fears to sow his seed ; the sons and women of the deceased sovereign are under no subjection ; no man is secure of his wealth, nor even of his life ; all becomes anarchy ; no councils are held ; the pleasant houses and gardens are destroyed by the dissolute ; the Brāhmanas make no offerings ; the sacrificing Brāhmanas refuse to give the others their share of the sacrificial fees ; the glad leaders of the sacred song and dance cease to exalt the fame of the Raja by their social and joyous assemblies ; disputants are no longer gratified with pleasing discussions ; renowned orators are no longer surrounded with applauding audiences ; young damsels adorned with gold do not flock to the gardens in the evening for the sake of amusement ; rich men, even when well-guarded, are unable to sleep with their doors open ; husbandmen and those who attend cattle are unable to enjoy repose ; young men and maidens can no longer repair in swift chariots to the grassy plains ; elephants adorned with bells can no longer walk at large on the high roads ; those who are joyfully practising with the sword and bow, the mace and the spear, are no longer to be heard ; merchants travelling to distant places cannot carry their goods in safety along the high-way ; the holy and subdued sage goes not out of his house meditating with his mind fixed upon the all-pervading spirit ; soldiers cannot overcome their enemies in war ; the people do not assemble in rich attire, and ride on chariots, or on excellent horses ; men learned in the Sastras are not found conversing with each other in the roads and gardens ; garlands of jewels, and portions of choice viands, are no longer offered to the gods : O Vasishtha, a Raj without a Raja is like a river without water, a forest without vegetation, or a cow without a keeper ; and men mutually devour one another like the fishes of the sea : O chief of the twice born, this day our Raja has departed to the mansions of Indra, and our Raj is

Vasishtha im-  
plored to ap-  
point a succes-  
sor to the Raj.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Vasishtha despatches messengers to bring Bharata from the city of Mithila

Direct on the spot to the messengers

Departure of the messengers

Review of the events and the death of Mahārāja Dasaratha.

Parasurama's dialogue between the Mahārāja and Parasurama.

Parasurama's dialogue between the Mahārāja and Parasurama.

becoming a wilderness, do you appoint another Prince to be Raja, a son of the family of Ikshvákú "

The sage Vasishtha having heard these words, replied thus to the Counsellors, the Brahmins, and all the friends of the deceased Mahārāja — "As Bharata, to whom the Pāy is given, remains at ease with his brother Satrugna in the house of his grandfather, Aswapati, speedily send swift messengers to bring the two brothers hither. Why look ye on the ground?" All present then replied to Vasishtha — "Let messengers be sent!" Vasishtha then appointed certain messengers, and said to them — "Attend to what it becomes you to do. Go with all speed on swift horses to the royal city of Girivraja, and dismissing all signs of grief, speak thus to Bharata — "Vasishtha the priest, and all the Counsellors, send to you salutations of peace, and entreat you to hasten without delay to the city of Ayodhya. But do not inform Bharata that Rama is in exile, that the Mahārāja is dead, and that the royal race is ruined by this woman Kaikeyi. Bring out of the treasury with all speed the excellent apparel and jewels for the new Raja, and then depart for the abode of Bharata." Then the messengers, being provided with victuals for the journey, mounted their horses, and going by the way of the river Malini, they crossed the Ganges at Hastinapur, and proceeded through the country of Panchála, and at length approached the excellent city of Girivraja, which is the royal city of the Kaikeyas.

The foregoing narrative of the death of the Mahārāja, and of the events which immediately preceded it and followed after it, contains some valuable illustrations of ancient Hindú life and manner. The dialogue between the Mahārāja and Kausilya is perhaps too much exaggerated for modern tastes, but yet the touching resignation of the mother of Rama, and her self-reproach at having used bitter words towards her husband, is highly significant of the perfect subordination which is expected to be

displayed by Hindú wives to their husbands The description of the death of the Mahárája is, however, exquisitely true to human nature The old sovereign, bowed down by deep sorrow, wakes up at midnight weeping and terrified, and with a certain presentiment that his last hour has arrived. His eyes are dim with approaching death, and he begs his wife to touch him as he cannot see her; and in this manner he feels his soul dying out of his body, until he at last gives up the ghost, and the timid surviving women swoon away until the morning.<sup>3</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Picture of the  
dying sovereign,

The description of the palace at sunrise, when the death of the Mahárája is still a secret confined to a single chamber, is graphic in the extreme. The bards and eulogists are there, all sounding the praises

Picturesque  
scene at the  
palace on the  
morning follow-  
ing the death of  
the Mahárája.

<sup>3</sup> There is a curious episode in the original, in which Dasaratha declared that all his misfortunes had arisen from his having been cursed by a pious recluse whose son he had accidentally slain The story is told at considerable length, but the main points are comprised in the following extract from the Adhyátma Ramáyana —‘ Being in his younger days fond of hunting, the Mahárája went one night to the side of a pond where the sage Serwan was procuring water Serwan attended on his father and mother with the purest affection Both parents were blind, and Serwan was in the habit of placing each of them in a separate basket, and slinging them across his shoulders, and in this fashion he conveyed them to all the places of worship then existing in the world On the present occasion his parents had complained of thirst, and Serwan had slung the baskets over the branch of a tree and gone down to the pond with a vessel to procure water The Mahárája, hearing the footsteps, thought it must be a deer, and shooting an arrow in the darkness towards the sound, it pierced the breast of Serwan, who thereupon fell to the ground The Mahárája, perceiving he had shot a man, hurried to the spot and was at once thrown into the deepest affliction Serwan, however, said —‘ Be not distressed, O Mahárája, I am a Vaisya, and not a Bráhmín so that the heinous sin of the murder of a Bráhmín will not fall upon thy head My parents, however, have performed sundry religious observances, and should their anger be raised against thee, they would reduce thee to ashes Give them first a little water to allay their thirst, and then address them with humility and respect The Mahárája then drew out the arrow and Serwan expired The Mahárája then did as he was directed, and explained the circumstances to the bereaved parents, and expressed his deep contrition At the request of the parents he then collected wood for the funeral pile, and they then sat upon it and directing the Mahárája to fire it, were consumed with their son Before this was accomplished, however, the old man uttered the malediction that he, like them, would die out of sorrow for the loss of a son

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

of the Mahárája, in order that at the moment of awakening his ears may be greeted with pleasant words. The birds on the roofs of the palace, and on the branches of the neighbouring trees, are pouring forth their cheerful notes. The Bráhmans are said to be chaunting Vedic hymns. Meantime, the servants are engaged in their customary morning avocations. The men are bringing in jars of water; and the women are ready with the light food, and the articles of decoration, which are required upon awakening. Suddenly a wild cry of lamentation is heard from the inner apartments, and very speedily it is known that the Mahárája is dead. Another commotion soon prevails throughout the palace. The Ministers assemble and take the necessary steps for preserving the body of the sovereign, until the funeral rites can be performed by one of the sons, who at that moment are all absent from the city of Ayodhyá. But otherwise the scene is one of weeping and desolation; and the author of the Rámáyana indulges in the poetical license of declaring that the sun became suddenly eclipsed, and that darkness prevailed throughout the melancholy day which followed the decease of the Mahárája.

Assembling of  
the Ministers.

A day of dark-  
ness.

Constitutional  
form involved  
in the conven-  
ing of the  
Council.

Stress laid upon  
the importance  
of immediately  
appointing a  
successor

On the second day, the Council was summoned, in accordance with those constitutional forms of which many traces are observable in both the Mahá Bháráta and Rámáyana. The proceedings are so intelligible as scarcely to call for remark. The greatest possible stress is laid upon the fact that the Raj was without a Raja; and upon this point the author has given wings to his imagination, and described the desolation of a country without a

sovereign in language which could scarcely have found expression amongst the Counsellors themselves. Meantime the claims of Ráma are ignored. His exile is accepted as a disqualification, and messengers are sent to bring Bhanata, the son of Kaikeyí, who was nominated by the Mahárája to succeed to the Raj.

## CHAPTER XI.

### BHARATA REFUSES THE RAJ.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Five leading  
events in the  
narrative of  
Bharata's re-  
fusal of the  
Raj

THE narrative of the return of Bharata to the city of Ayodhyá, and his subsequent refusal of the Raj, contains nothing which seems to demand a preliminary explanation. It comprises the following events —

1st, The ominous dream of Bharata.

2nd, Bharata's departure from Girivraja and arrival at Ayodhyá.

3rd, Scene between Bharata and his mother Kaikeyí

4th, Scene between Satrugghna and the nurse Manthará.

5th, Scene between Bharata and Satrugghna and the mother of Ráma

The narrative.

The story of these events may be related as follows :—

1st Ominous  
dream of  
Bharata.

Now in the night, when the wearied messengers entered the city of Girivraja, an ominous dream was seen by Bharata, and he was greatly distressed. His beloved companions, youths of his own age, seeing that he was melancholy, endeavoured to remove his trouble, some repeated jests and mirthful stories, whilst others danced, and played on musical instruments; but Bharata received no pleasure therefrom. Then the youths said to him —“ Why are you troubled, and why will you not join in our mirth ?” And

Bharata answered :—"I have had a dream, and in that dream I saw my father standing with his head downwards, immersed in oil; and then the earth was rent in great grief, and women dressed in black placed my father on a seat of black wood; and he also was dressed in black, and adorned with garments of red flowers, and went towards the south in a chariot drawn by asses; and a woman clothed in blood-red garments was also deriding my father, and I saw a female Rákshasí of deformed visage fastening upon him: Either myself, or Ráma, or the Mahárajá, or Lakshmana will certainly die; for when men are seen in a dream riding in vehicles drawn by asses, the curling smoke of their funeral pile will soon ascend."

Whilst Bhárata was relating this dream, the messengers, with their weary steeds, were crossing over the deep moat which surrounded the royal city of Girivraja; and being received with all respect, they embraced the feet of the Raja, and afterwards addressed Bharata thus :—"Vasishtha the priest sends you the salutation of peace, as do all the Counsellors: Speedily depart from hence, for there is immediate occasion for your presence at Ayodhyá: O lotos-eyed! taking these costly clothes and ornaments, present them to your maternal uncle: These, O Prince, to the value of twenty crores, are for your grandfather the Raja, and those to the value of ten crores are for your uncle Yudhájit." Bharata accepted the presents, and was congratulated by his friends; and he entertained the messengers with all they could desire, and said to them :—"Is my father the Mahárajá well? Are Ráma and Lakshmana well? Are my mothers well?" The messengers replied :—"O Prince, all are well whose welfare you desire; the goddess Lakshmi, who dwells in the lotos, is favourable to you: Speedily yoke

2nd, Bharata's  
return.  
The Messengers  
arrive from  
Ayodhyá with  
the message  
from Vasishtha

Presents sent to  
Bharata's  
grandfather and  
uncle.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Presents given  
to Bharata by  
his grandfather

Seven days  
journey of  
Bharata and  
Satrughna to  
the city of  
Ayodhyá.

Bharata's sur-  
prise at the  
desolate state of  
the city

Bharata sus-  
pects that his  
father is dead.

Picture of the  
popular sorrow

daughter Kaikeyi blessed with an excellent son Give my blessing to your mother, and bow down at her feet Salute also your father and the priest Vasishtha, and the other excellent Bráhmans, and give my blessings to the two great archers, your brothers Ráma and Lakshmana" Rája Aswapati then gave to Bharata excellent elephants, variegated woollen cloths, deer skins, and other presents, he also gave him certain large dogs, brought up in the inner apartments of the palace, which were as strong and ferocious as tigers, and well armed with teeth, together with twenty two thousand pieces of gold The Raja also appointed chosen Counsellors to attend him But Bharata was in no way elated at the sight of these riches, for his mind was filled with fear on account of his dream, and because of the great haste of the messengers in coming from Ayodhya

Bharata then mounted the full wheeled chariot, together with his brother Satrughna, and setting his face towards the east, he departed out of the palace of the Raja, followed by hundreds of cattle, kine, asses, and servants, guarded by an army, and attended by the Counsellors of his grandfather When seven nights had been passed upon the road, Bharata beheld the city of Ayodhya, and he said to his brother — "O Satrughna, this is Ayodhyá, but it excites no pleasure in me I do not hear the noise of the men and women, nor see the people sporting about in the gardens To day the city appears to me like a wilderness I hear not the voices of the joyful birds and beasts, nor the glad sounds of the drum and the tabor I see portentous signs and tokens, and my heart sinks within me" Thus fearing evil, Bharata entered the city, and the people who were sitting at the gate inquired after his welfare, and rose to salute him, and he spoke again to his brother, saying — "O Satrughna, my heart is full of apprehension All the appearances which portend the death of Rájas I behold here The houses of my kinsmen are not cleansed, and the doors are open I perceive no signs of enjoyment, no sacrifices, and no incense, and the people seem to be bereft of



all cheerfulness: The temples of the gods are deserted and their courts are unswept: The images of the gods, the places of sacrifice, and the shops where garlands are sold, are all neglected and desolate: The bankers and merchants appear dejected, as if in pain at the stagnation of trade: The birds which inhabit the temples and sacred groves appear to be wretched: I behold the people of the city, men and women, their eyes filled with tears, absorbed in thought, and wasted with grief." So saying, and filled with anguish, Bharata entered with a downcast countenance the palace of the Mahárajá.

When Bharata saw that his father the Mahárajá was not in the palace, he went to the apartments of his mother Kaikeyí, and kissed her feet. Kaikeyí, seeing him returned after his long absence, rose with glad heart, and kissed his head, and clasped him to her bosom, and said:—"How many nights have passed since you left the house of your grandfather? Are you not wearied with the speed of your coming? Is your grandfather in health and prosperity, and is your uncle well? Tell me, O son, all the pleasures you have enjoyed during your visit!" Bharata replied:—"O mother, this is the seventh night since I left the house of my grandfather: My grandfather and uncle are both well; the wealth which they gave me as presents are on the road, for the beasts were weary, and I came on before: But, O my mother, the family of Ikshwáku wears not the face of cheerfulness, and I cannot find the Mahárajá: Is he at the house of my chief mother Kausalyá?" Then Kaikeyí related to him the unwelcome news, as though it had been glad tidings. She said:—"That which is the lot of all creatures has befallen your magnanimous father!" At these words the pious and pure Bharata instantly fell to the ground in an agony of grief; and he wept very bitterly and covered his face with his garment. Kaikeyí raised him up, saying:—"O Prince, why are you prostrate? The pious, who like you are honoured in the assembly, should not give way to grief." Bharata, filled with sorrow, replied thus:—"I was joyful when I asked leave of my grandfather to

3rd. Scene between Bharata and his mother.

Kaikeyí's affectionate address to Bharata.

Bharata's reply.

Kaikeyí explains with gladness that the Mahárajá is dead.

Bharata's grief at the news.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

return to Ayodhyá, for I thought that the Mahárája desired to install Ráma and perform a sacrifice, but suddenly deprived of the sight of my father, my soul is torn with anguish. O mother, by what disease was the Maharaja carried away! Happy are Ráma and the others who have performed his funeral rites! If the great and renowned Maharaja knew of my return, would he not kiss me, gently bowing his head? Would he not with his soft hand have cleansed my face from the dust? But where is Ráma, my elder brother, who has now become my father?"

Ka keyi informs  
Bharata of the  
exile of Rama.

Ka keyi, asked thus particularly, related the mournful story as though it had been pleasant news. She said — "Rama has undertaken a long residence in the jungle, and has gone with Sita to the wilderness of Dandaka, and Lakshmana has followed him." Hearing these words, Bharata was greatly alarmed on account of his brother, and concerned for the glory of his family, and he replied — "What! Has Ráma taken away the wealth of a Bráhmaṇ? Has he injured a poor man who is worthy and innocent? Or has he fixed his mind upon the wife of another? Wherefore is he exiled to the wilderness of Dandaka, like one who has killed a Bráhmaṇ?" Then the feeble Ka keyi, vainly esteeming herself as able and wise, thus addressed the magnanimous Bharata — "No Brahman has been deprived of his wealth by Ráma, no poor man, worthy and innocent, has been injured by him, and never has he fixed his eye upon the wife of another. But when I heard, my son, that the Maharaja proposed to install Ráma in the Raj, I requested him to give the Raj to you, and to send Ráma into exile, and your father, having formerly made me a promise to grant whatever I desired, did according to my request. The renowned Dasaratha has now resigned his breath, and royalty is to be sustained by you. For your sake have I done all this. O my son, this is not a time to grieve, the city and Raj are now yours, and when you have performed the funeral rites for the dead Mahárája, you will be quickly installed in the Raj by Vasishtha and the Chiefs of the Bráhmaṇs."

Bharata de-  
pends the  
reason

Ka keyi ex-  
plains her in-  
trigue and  
expects him to  
perform the  
funeral rites and  
take the Raj

When Bharata heard of the death of his father and the exile of his two brethren, he was deeply afflicted, and said.—“What will a Rajavil me who am mortally wounded with grief? Mo, who am bereft of a father, and of a brother equal to a father? You have added affliction to affliction, as if you had rubbed salt upon my wounds: You have placed the Mahárajá among departed souls, and the exiled Ráma among the devotees of the forest: Are you come hither for the extinction of the family, like the darkness which destroys the universe? My father, the Mahárajá, who suspected no one, has embraced burning coals, and met his death through you! O you, who are bent upon evil through your infatuation has happiness been taken away from this family! Wherefore is my father destroyed? Wherefore is Ráma exiled? The pious and excellent Ráma has never acted improperly towards you; viewing you as entitled to the highest respect, he has ever treated you as a son should treat a mother: In like manner my eldest mother, the prudent Kausalyá, has ever acted towards you as a sister. How can I ever govern the Raj, now that I am deprived of Ráma and Lakshmana? The Mahárajá ever reposed all his confidence in Ráma, even as the sun rests on Mount Meru: The eldest among the sons of a Rajá is ever anointed to the Raj; and this is the rule amongst all Rajás, and particularly among those of the race of Ikshwáku: But I will bring back Ráma from the wilderness of Dandaká: I will bring from the forest the darling of the people of Ayodhyá.” Thus speaking, the illustrious Bharata roared aloud, like a lion in the caves of Mandara; and he fell upon the ground breathing like a serpent, his eyes red with sorrow, and his ornaments shaken from his body.

Meanwhile, Satrugna, the younger brother of Ráma, had been informed of all that had occurred, and he spoke out his indignation in hot words; when suddenly there appeared at the eastern gate of the palace the wicked nurse Manthará, who had caused Kaikeyí to request the exile of Ráma. This deformed old woman was adorned with glittering ornaments, and perfumed with sandal and aloe wood,

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Bharata bitterly reproaches his mother

Proclaims the virtues of Ráma and declares his superior right to the Raj.

His deep affliction.

4th, Scene between Satrugna and the nurse Manthará.

Sudden appearance of the wicked nurse.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

and arrayed in costly garments, and she had small bells tied on with parti coloured ribbons, and resembled an elephant in its trappings. The porter at the gate, seeing this wicked and deformed slave, instantly seized her, and said to Satrugna —“ This is that cruel wretch through whom Ráma is gone to the forest, and your father has resigned his life, do to her according to your will ” Satrugna was then filled with rage, and he seized Mantharí by the neck, and threw her upon the ground, and dragged her along the earth, and he said to the other women in the inner apartments —“ This contemptible wretch, the cause of the troubles of my father and my brethren, I will send to the mansions of Yama ! ” The aged slave, being thus threatened, set up a loud cry, and all the women of the palace were greatly distressed, and entreated Satrugna not to kill her. But the eyes of Satrugna were red with wrath, and he dragged her along the ground hither and thither, while all her trinkets and jewels were scattered on the floor. At length he drew her with great fury into the presence of Kaikeyí, and poured forth bitter reproaches, and Kaikeyí was filled with terror, and fled for safety to her son Bharata. And Bharata said to his brother Satrugna —“ Among all creatures, women are those who are not to be killed. Dost, therefore, I pray you ! I would myself kill the wicked Kaikeyí, were it not that the pious Ráma would forsake me as a matricide. Restrain your rage, and she will be destroyed by her own deeds. If the pious Rama hears that this deformed creature has been killed, he will never converse more with me or you ” So Satrugna listened to the counsel of Bharata, and restrained his anger, and released Manthará, and she went away full of alarm, and took refuge at the feet of her mistress Kaikeyí.

Bharata and his brother Satrugna then went, afflicted and weeping, to the apartment of the distressed Kausalyá; and the excellent Kausalyá, prostrate with anguish, spoke thus to Bharata —“ The Ray now belongs to you, who are so desirous of the royal dignity, easily obtained by the cruel Kaikeyí ! ” The guiltless Bharata was pained with

Satrugna falls upon Mantharí & drags her into the presence of Kaikeyí and threatens to slay her

It is not a plain & simple thing to kill a woman.

Satrugna releases Mantharí.

It is some between the two brothers, Satrugna, & Bharata, the mother of the two brothers, Kausalyá, & the two brothers, Bharata & Satrugna.

these reproaches as if a tumour had been opened with a knife,<sup>1</sup> and he fell at her feet, and bewailed himself in many ways, and thus replied to Kausalyā —“O excellent one, why do you reproach me who am guiltless and even ignorant of this matter? Know that my affection towards Rāmā is great and firm. If I have ever consented to the exile of the renowned Rāmā, may I become the messenger of the wicked. May I kick my foot against a sleeping cow. May all the injustice of a master, who withholds the wages of his servant, be imputed to me. May the guilt of those, who are traitors to a virtuous Raja, fall upon me. May the guilt of that Raja, who takes the sixth part of the harvest without protecting his subjects, fall upon me. May the guilt of those, who withhold the sacrificial fees which they have promised to the devotees, fall upon me. May the guilt of those cowards, who will not face the enemy upon the field, fall upon me. May the guilt of those who pervert the Śāstras, fall upon me. May the guilt of those magistrates, who unjustly favour one party, fall upon me. May the guilt of him, who gives no gifts on the pure days of Āshvina, Kārtika, and Maghā, fall upon me. May I eat sweetmeats alone in my own house, surrounded by my children, wives, and servants. May I die childless, without having married a wife of my own caste and without having performed a virtuous action. May I support my family by selling HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

<sup>1</sup> Bharata's  
care is loyal  
attachment to  
Lakṣmī.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

---

Bharata comforts Kausalyá.

friend. May I never serve the gods, or my ancestors, or my immediate parents. May I speedily fall from the heaven of the righteous, and lose the merit of all the good deeds I may have performed. May I be poor, old, and diseased, and have a large family to support. May I be deceitful, profligate, impure, and the companion of those who constantly riot in vile pleasures. May I destroy the articles designed as a gift for a Bráhmaṇ. May I milk a cow which has a young calf." Bharata, having thus comforted Kausalyá, fell down in distress, and Kausalyá embraced him who loved his elder brother, and wept aloud.

Exaggerated references to Bharata's affection for Ráma.

Hindú ideas as regards dreams and presentiments.

Exaggerated representation of Bharata's wrath against his mother.

Barbarous character of Satrugṇa's treatment of Manthará.

The foregoing narrative is characterized by so much exaggeration in reference to Bharata's affection for Ráma, that it may be dismissed with little consideration. His dream that his father was dead, and the presentiment of evil which troubled him on his return to Ayodhyá, are all in accordance with Hindú ideas, but have almost grown out of date in more enlightened countries. His wrath against his mother Kaikeyí is carried beyond all bounds, and is altogether unnatural; especially when he declares to his brother Satrugṇa that he would have slain her, only in that case he feared Ráma would forsake him as a matricide. Satrugṇa's conduct towards the nurse Manthará may perhaps have some foundation in fact; but if so, his treatment of the old woman was savage and cowardly, and merited a far severer reproof than was administered by his brother Bharata.

## CHAPTER XII

### FUNERAL RITES FOR THE MAHÁRAJA.

THE question of the succession was thus virtually settled by the refusal of Bharata to supplant Ráma, but before any further steps could be taken for inducing Bharata to change his mind, or for appointing one of the other brothers to the throne, it was necessary that Bharata, being present on the spot, should perform the funeral rites for the deceased Mahárája. The description of these ceremonies is very interesting, as it evidently refers to an ancient period in Hindú history, when animal sacrifices were still largely in vogue; but the narrative requires no preliminary explanation, and may now be related as follows —

HISTORY OF INDIA  
PART IV

Necessity for the immediate performance by Bharata of the funeral rites for Mahárája Dasaratha.

Ancient date of the funeral ceremonies

After this Vasishtha the sage addressed Bharata as follows — “The man who cannot restrain himself under misfortune is without wisdom, but that man is regarded as truly wise who attends to his duties whilst under affliction. It becomes you, therefore, to restrain your grief and shake off distress, and set yourself to perform the funeral rites of your father.” Bharata replied — “O sage, how can the Raj devolve on me while Ráma is living? But take me whither my father lies, and I with you will perform his obsequies.” All the Counsellors of the deceased Mahárája, with Vasishtha at their head, then conducted Bharata to the place where lay the body of the Mahárája, and all the Rájis of Dasaratha went in like manner to behold the

Vasishtha requests Bharata to perform the funeral rites for the Mahárája

Bharata's reply

Procession to the chamber of the royal corpse.

"The principal citizens are here present with the articles necessary for the funeral ceremonies of the Mahárája: Arise, O Bharata, and perform the rites according to the ordinance: The sacrificing priests of your father, well versed in the Vedas and Vedángas, have brought hither the sacred fire, and are standing here with Jáváli at their head: The servants have already been sent on with the fragrant woods collected for the funeral pile, and are now expecting us: Jars of ghee, and oil, and wine, are all prepared; and so too are the chaplets of sweet-smelling flowers, the sweet ointment, the perfumes, the incense, and the aloes: The litter for your father is also ready, adorned with jewels: Place, therefore, the body of the Mahárája upon the litter, and speedily carry him to the place of burning."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Meanwhile the dead body of the Mahárája had been adorned according to the precepts in the Sastras, and wrapped in cloth of the finest description. And Bharata and Satrugna, with loud lamentations, placed the body of the Mahárája on the litter, and threw the garlands over it, and sprinkled it with incense of the best kind, and went forward, repeatedly exclaiming:—"O Mahárája, where art thou gone?" The royal servants, commanded by Vasishtha, took up the litter, and a great procession moved on towards the place of burning. First went the eulogists, bards, and musicians, chaunting in melancholy tones the praises of the deceased Mahárája. Next walked all the royal widows, with their black hair falling dishevelled over their shoulders, filling the air with their shrieks and screams. Then came the royal servants bearing the litter, whilst Bharata and Satrugna took hold of the litter and followed it weeping. Other royal servants carried the ensigns of royalty; the white umbrella over the litter, the jewelled chámara to wave over the dead Mahárája, and the sacred fire, brightly flaming, which had been daily fed by Jáváli and the Bráhmans. After them came many chariots filled with gold and jewels, which the servants scattered amongst the multitude that had gathered together,

Adornment of  
the royal corpse.

The body placed  
on the litter.

Procession from  
the palace to the  
place of burning

The eulogists  
bards, and musicians.

The royal  
widows

The royal servants  
bearing the litter

Bharata and  
Satrugna.

The ensigns of  
royalty.

The chariots  
filled with  
gold and



<b>HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV</b>	as funeral gifts of the Mahárája, and all the people of the city of Ayodhyá went out with their wives and daughters, and followed the remains of the Mahárája
The people of the city	When they came to the bank of the river Sarayu, where
The place of burning	no man dwelt, and which was covered with green grass, they
The funeral pile	raised the funeral pile of the Mahárája with fragrant woods, and the friends of the deceased sovereign took the body
The body on the pile	with distressed minds, and laid it upon the pile The
The sacrifices of the Bráhmans	Bráhmans then placed the sacrificial vessels upon the pile, and they put fire to the sacrifice, and repeated the mantras in their minds, and took up the sacrificial ladles to pour
Sacrificial articles cast on the pile	clarified butter thereon Then the Brahman cleansed all the sacrificial vessels, and cast them on the pile, and also the ladles, and the rings of the sacrificial posts, and the wooden mortar and pestle, and the pieces of wood by which
Sacrifice of an animal.	the fire was produced, which were all perfectly pure And they took a purified beast, which had been consecrated by
Body covered with rice	the proper formulas, and slew it and threw it on the funeral pile And they threw boiled rice on all sides of the royal
Sacrifice of the cow and calf	body, and they made a furrow round about the place where the pile was erected according to the ordinance, and they offered the cow with her calf, and scattered ghee, oil, and
Bharata fires the pile	flesh on all sides
Lamentations of the widows and citizens	After this, Bharata and his friends set fire to the pile, and the fire instantly blazed up and consumed the body of the Mahárája Thus the Mahárája, consecrated by his spiritual teachers, went to the blissful abodes of those who perform meritorious deeds, and the widows seeing the blazing pile, renewed their shrieks and screams, and the thousands of citizens burst out with lamentations, together with the friends and sons of the Mahárája, exclaiming —
Prostration of Bharata.	“O great protector, O sovereign of the earth, why have you departed and left us helpless here?” And Bharata walked round the pile, and staggered like one who had drunk poison, and bowing at the feet of his father, he tried to prostrate himself, but fell to the earth, and his friends took hold of him tenderly, and raised him up, and when he saw

the fire kindling round every part of his father's body, he threw up his arms and lamented aloud, saying:—"O my father, since you have gone to heaven, and Ráma is gone to the forest, I have no wish to live, and I will enter the fire: I will not return to the empty city which is bereft of my father and my brother, but I will perish on the funeral pile." Then the sage Vasishttha said to Bharata:—"Everything in this world is ever attended with pain and pleasure: What is to be will come to pass, and it is not therefore becoming of you to grieve: The death of everything that is born, and the reproduction of everything that dies, must of necessity take place; and it is improper for you to bemoan what cannot be prevented."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Vasishttha con-  
soles Bharata.

Bharata and Satrugghna then wiped away their tears, and were directed by the Counsellors to perform the funeral libations of water for the refreshing of the soul of the deceased Mahárája. They proceeded with all their friends to the pure and sacred river Sarayú, which is frequented by the great sages; and there having bathed in the stream, Bharata poured water with the palm of his hands in memory of his father, and refreshed the soul of the Mahárája in heaven. Thus having performed the rite of fire and the rite of water, the mourners all returned to the city of Ayodhya. And the city was full of distressed persons, and resounded with the cries of the wretched; and its courts and streets were empty, and the bazaars were destitute of wares. Thus the afflicted Bharata, surrounded by his kinsfolk, entered the palace of his father, which, bereft of the Mahárája, was overspread with gloom.

Rite of sprink-  
ling water for  
the soul of the  
Mahárája.

Return to the  
city of Ayodhyá

After this, Bharata spread a mat of kusa grass and lay thereon until the tenth day of his father's death; and on the tenth day of the mourning he purified himself according to the ordinance; and on the twelfth day he performed the Sráddha, and offered cakes and other articles of food to the soul of his deceased father, and gave abundance of provisions to the Bráhmans. Bharata also gave to the Bráhmans, as funeral gifts, very many goats and multitudes

Ten days of  
mourning on a  
mat of kusa  
grass.

Sráddha per-  
formed on the  
twelfth day.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Purification of  
the thirteenth  
day.

Bones thrown  
into the river

Funeral rites  
completed.

Review of the  
foregoing nar-  
rative of the  
burning of the  
royal corpse

Picture of the  
funeral proces-  
sion.

Sacrifice of a  
cow and her calf  
an ancient rite.

Remaining cere-  
monies still per-  
formed by the  
Hindús.

of cows, and many male and female slaves, and much silver, and horses, and chariots. Then on the thirteenth day, at early dawn, the mighty Bharata returned again to the bank of the Sarayú for the purpose of purification, and seeing the place where the body of his father had been consumed, strewed with ashes and burnt bones, he broke out afresh into lamentation. The excellent and wise Vasishtha, the priest of Dasaratha, then said to Bharata:—"Thus, O Prince, is the thirteenth day since the death of your father. Do you collect the bones which now remain, and throw them into the river." And Bharata and Satrugna did so, and thus finished the funeral rites of their deceased father.

The foregoing description of the burning of the royal corpse furnishes a graphic picture of the funeral rites which were performed in honour of a deceased sovereign. The procession from the palace of the dead Mahárajá to the desolate place of burning is singularly suggestive. In front were the bards, eulogists, and musicians, filling the air with melancholy strains. Next followed the widows with dishevelled hair, shrieking and screaming. After them, the royal corpse was carried upon a litter surrounded by the ensigns of sovereignty, the umbrella and the chámara. Lastly followed the chariots, from which the servants of the deceased Mahárajá scattered the funeral gifts, and which appear to have been surrounded by the whole body of citizens.

The sacrifice of a cow and her calf, probably for the purposes of feasting, is an ancient rite which has long fallen into disuse;<sup>2</sup> but in other respects, the ceremonies are much the same as those which are performed in the present day. The funeral pile is

<sup>2</sup> At marriage ceremonies a cow and her calf are still always present, and probably in ancient times were sacrificed for the purposes of an entertainment.

set on fire by the son, or nearest kinsman, of the deceased, and after the burning is over, the mourners bathe in the river for the purposes of purification, and then sprinkle water to refresh the soul of the dead man. The days of mourning and the performance of a *Siddha* are still observed in the manner described.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### BHARATA'S VISIT TO RÁMA.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Thirteen days of mourning between the burning of the royal corpse and the Council at which Bharata declines the Raj in favour of Ráma.

Route followed by Bharata in his journey from Ayodhya to Chitra-kúta.

ON the thirteenth day after the burning, the time of purification and mourning seems to have been accomplished ; and on the fourteenth day a great Council was held at Ayodhyá, at which Bharata was formally requested to accept the Raj. Bharata, however, again declined the throne, declaring that it belonged of right to Ráma, and announcing his intention of proceeding into the wilderness and installing Ráma as Raja of Kosala.

The narrative of Bharata's journey from Ayodhyá to the hill of Chitra-kúta, where Ráma was residing, is exceedingly interesting and curious. Bharata was accompanied by his army, and apparently by a large caravan of people, as well as by his mothers and Counsellors ; and he followed precisely the same route which had been taken by Ráma himself when going into exile. In the first instance, a new road was constructed through the jungle, by which Bharata proceeded to the frontier town at Srīngavera. On arriving at Srīngavera, he had a curious interview with the Bhīl Raja, and then crossed the Ganga, and proceeded to the hermitage of Bharadwāja at Prayāga. Here the holy sage entertained Bharata, and all the army and people who accompanied him,

in a most extravagant fashion ; and the description of this feast will demand special consideration hereafter. From Prayága the party proceeded across the Jumná river, and thence marched towards Chitra-kúta, where they ultimately discovered the residence of Ráma

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The narrative of these transactions comprises the eight following incidents :—

Eight events in the narrative of Bharata's visit to Ráma.

1st, The great Council held at Ayodhyá, at which Bharata formally declined to accept the Raj, and announced his intention of going into the jungle and installing Ráma

2nd, The construction of a great road through the jungle.

3rd, March from Ayodhyá to Sríngavera

4th, Proceedings of Raja Guha on seeing Bharata's army encamped at Sríngavera.

5th, Passage of the river Ganges.

6th, March along the southern bank of the Ganges towards Prayága

7th, Grand entertainment given by Bharadvāja to the army and people of Bharata.

8th, Passage of the Jumná and journey to Chitra-kúta

The story of these circumstances, as recorded in the *Ramáyana*, is as follows :—

The narrative.

Now on the morning of the fourteenth day, when the time for mourning was over, a great Council was held in the Court hall of the royal palace, and when all the Counsellors had gathered together, they thus spoke to Bharata :—  
“ Our most venerated sovereign, Mahárya Dasaratha, having sent his eldest son Ráma, together with Lakshmana, to the great forest, has now departed to the mansions of Indra. We therefore pray you, O illustrious Prince, to become thus our Raja, for as long as you delay accepting this office,

1st Council held and Bharata requested to become Raja

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Bharata's re-  
sult to set  
aside the su-  
perior claim of  
Ráma.

An o nee h s  
i ten o of pro-  
ceed g to the  
jungle and in-  
stall ne Ráma  
i the Raj

Acclamations of  
the people.

2nd Con tri e  
tion of a great  
war (11) nigh  
ti ju h a.

Laborers em-  
ployed.

Chariots of a  
war (11) nigh  
ti ju h a.

our Raj is without a head. O descendant of Ikshwaku, all the articles for the installation are now ready, and your kinsmen and all orders of men look up to you. Accept therefore, O Bharata, the Raj which has so long pertained to your paternal ancestors, and cause yourself to be installed Raja, and become the protector of us all." The illustrious Bharata, who was now purified, walked round all the jars designed for the installation, and thus addressed the Council—"O excellent men, it is improper for you to address me thus. In our family the Raj has ever been esteemed the inheritance of the eldest son, and it is right that my elder brother Rama should become your Raja, and that I should reside fourteen years in the forest. Therefore prepare a large army, and I will fetch my elder brother Ráma from the wilderness. Preceded by all the sacred articles requisite for the installation, I will go to the forest and there install Rama, and he shall be your Raja. Let the rough roads be made smooth by the proper artisans, and let pioneers go forward and explore the difficulties of the way." Then all the people were filled with joy, and replied to Bharata in these auspicious words—"May the goddess of prosperity, even Lakshmi, ever attend you, who are thus desirous of giving the Raj to your elder brother." And big tears of joy fell from the eyes of Bharata, and the glad Counsellors dismissed their grief, and said to him—"O chief of men, your devoted servants, the artisans, are preparing the road at your command."

Now when it was fully known that Bharata was determined to bring back his brother Rama, and install him in the Raj, a mighty crowd of mechanics and labourers of all descriptions were sent forward to prepare the way for Bharata through the great wilderness. There were men acquainted with the ways frequented by former travellers, accompanied by strong men who were diggers of the ground, wheelwrights, carpenters, pioneers, hewers of trees, workers of bamboos, cooks and confectioners, and the vast multitude moved along with great haste for this joyous purpose, resembling the sea at a spring tide. Some

began to form the highway, cutting through trees, brush-wood, and rocks, with hatchets, axes, and bill-hooks; some planted trees in places where there was no shade; whilst those skilled in the use of engineering, and the making of machines, emptied the ponds, and turned streams, and removed every obstruction. Others levelled the difficult places, setting fire to the clumps of long grass, and filling up pits and ravines. Others constructed bridges, and cut their way through large rocky masses which they reduced to powder. Some made canals which contained abundance of water; and where there was no water they dug wells, and surrounded them with benches. Houses and booths were erected at different places for the accommodation of the army; and stately palaces for the reception of Bharata, and his kinsfolk, and friends. The road abounded with trees adorned with flowers, and was enlivened with gladsome birds, and decked with gay banners; and thus decorated, the way through the wilderness resembled the highway of the gods.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV. J

Leveling

Bridges.

Canals and  
wells.Booths and  
palaces.Decoration of  
the road with  
flowers, birds,  
and banners.

Meanwhile the pious Bharata had commanded Sumantra to assemble the army in order for the purpose of bringing back Ráma; and all the officers and soldiers, and all the people of the Raj, rejoiced in the hope of bringing back Ráma. And all the women of Ayodhyá hastened their husbands in every household. And horses, and bullock carriages, and chariots were prepared as swift as thought, together with camels, and asses, and elephants; and an abundance of excellent provisions was likewise provided to subsist the vast multitude in their journey to bring back Ráma.

3rd. March from  
Ayodhyá to  
bring RámaAssembling of  
the army  
Preparations for  
the march

Now on the eve of this auspicious journey, it came to pass that the bards and eulogists praised Bharata in congratulatory strains; and striking the kettle-drums with golden sticks they played melodiously thereon; whilst hundreds of others blew the shrill-sounding shell and the piercing trumpet, until the air was filled with the noise. But the clangour of the music only excited the distress of Bharata, and he commanded them all to cease, saying—"I am not the Raja!"

Bharata refuses  
to be treated as  
the RajaDeparture of  
Bharata, accom-  
panied by the  
Counsellors,  
priests, and  
army.

At the dawn of morning Bharata ascended his chariot,



HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ka keyí Su  
mitrá, and  
Kausalyá.

People of all  
ranks and con-  
ditions.

Halt at Sríngave-  
ra.

41! Proceedings  
of Raja Guha.

and commenced his journey to the abode of Ráma. All the Counsellors and priests preceded him in carriages vying in splendour with the chariot of the sun, and he was attended by nine thousand elephants richly caparisoned, and sixty thousand chariots with archers, and a hundred thousand horsemen, and a million of footmen. Kaikeyí and Sumitrá, together with the renowned Kausalyá, also accompanied Bharata in splendid vehicles, being greatly pleased to bring back Ráma. All the people of the city went out in like manner with Bharatá, to meet Ráma. There were potters, jewellers, garland-sellers, weavers, and those who lived by practising arms, also husbandmen, tamers of peacocks, snake catchers, charmers, tanners, carpenters, workers in gems, workers in glass, workers in ivory, perfumers, goldsmiths, wool manufacturers, boilers of water, bathmen, physicians, dealers in incense, distillers, fullers, tailors, dancing-men and dancing-women, fishermen, and thousands of Brahmans of subdued minds, learned in the Vedas, and contented with their incomes. All were apparelled in clean raiment and mounted on vehicles newly painted.<sup>1</sup> This mighty multitude proceeded in chariots, and on horses and elephants, until they arrived at the bank of the Ganges, near the town of Sríngavera, where dwelt the friend of Ráma, the renowned Guha, the Raja of the Bhils. Bharata then said to his Counsellors — "Let the army halt at this spot, and rest for the night, and on the morrow we will cross this river Ganges." So the army encamped near the town of Sríngavera, on the northern bank of the Ganges.

Now it so happened that Raja Guha was dwelling on the southern bank of the river, and seeing the army of Bharata en-

<sup>1</sup> That the description of the camp of Bharata is in accordance with Hindú ideas, may be gathered from the following description of a Maháttá camp in the last century, extracted from Forbes's 'Oriental Memoirs' — 'Ragoba's encampment covered a space of many square miles, the bazaar or market place belonging to his own division and to the principal Generals, contained many thousand tents, where every trade and profession was carried on with as much regularity as in a city. Goldsmiths, jewellers, bankers, drapers, druggists, confectioners, carpenters, tailors, tent makers, corn grinders, and farmers, found full employment as his whole rows of silver, iron and copper smiths, but those in the greatest and most constant requisition, were cooks, confectioners, and farmers.

camped on the opposite shore, he said hastily to his kinsmen : —“This vast army appears to me like an ocean overflowing its bounds : I cannot guess wherefore this foolish Bharata has come hither : I am afraid he is desirous of obtaining the complete possession of the Ráj, and is going to kill Ráma, who has been sent into exile by his father : But Ráma is both my protector and my friend, so on his account do you, my kinsmen, remain here in arms on this side of the Ganges ; and let all my servants remain here lining the bank of the river ; for I will not allow Bharata to cross over until I know his intention as regards Ráma : Let the strong keepers of the river, who feed on flesh, roots, and fruits, remain here : Let a multitude of fishermen, young, stout, and armed, the crews of five hundred boats, be also commanded to remain here : If however Bharata be at peace with his brother Ráma, his army may cross the Ganges this day.”

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

His alarm lest  
Bharata should  
contemplate the  
death of Ráma.

Preparations of  
Gulha for  
opposing Bharata's  
passage over  
the Ganges

When Raja Guha had thus explained his intentions to his Counsellors, he took presents of fish, honey, and flesh, and crossed over to the northern bank of the river to wait upon Bharata ; and when he approached the Prince, the charioteer Sumantra, who was well acquainted with the proper forms of address, spoke thus to Bharata :—“This Raja of the Bhíls is eminent in his knowledge of the forest of Dándaka, and he is the friend of your elder brother Ráma : Therefore, O Bharata, let Raja Guha be admitted to your presence, for he assuredly knows where Ráma and Lakshmana are abiding.” So Raja Guha was introduced to Bharata, and he bowed his head, and said :—“This country is covered with jungle, and your coming has taken us by surprise ; but still we entreat you to stay with all your army and attendants at the house of your servant : I have fruits and roots, both fresh and dry, which have been laid up in store by my Bhíls ; and I have also flesh meat, and everything that is produced in the forest : I pray you therefore to remain here to-night with all your army ; and to-morrow, when you have been furnished with all you desire, you can cross the river and go onward.” Bharata replied :—“O my friend, your kindness towards me is very great, since you desire to entertain so vast an army as that which accompanies me : But tell me the way by

Raja Guha  
crosses to the  
northern bank  
with presents  
for Bharata

Interview be-  
tween Gulha and  
Bharata.

Bharata desires  
to know the  
way to the her-  
mitage of Bha-  
rada.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

For he offers to  
a votary  
Bharata

Refuses at hear-  
ing that Bharata  
is going to co-  
duct him to  
Ayodhya.

Night passed in  
contemplation  
of Lakshmana.

which I should proceed to the hermitage of Bharadvāja! This country is very difficult to traverse, for it is full of thickets and deep forests, and this side of the Ganges is marshy and flooded with water. Every road abounds with difficulties, and is infested with serpents, and filled with thorns and trees." Then Raja Guha, who was well acquainted with the forest, replied to Bharata with joined hands, as follows — "O valiant Prince, my servants armed with bows shall carefully attend you, and I also will accompany you. But tell me, I pray you, are you going forth in anger against Rama? This mighty army which accompanies you, leads me to fear that you are an enemy to Rama." Bharata said — "O Guha may the time never come in which I shall give distress to Rama! There is no cause for you to be afraid of me, Rama is my eldest brother, and I esteem him as equal to my father. I go to bring back Rama to the throne of Ayodhya." Guha replied — "Happy are you, O Bharata! In the whole world I do not know one who is equal to you, since you desire to relinquish a Raj which has fallen to you without any scheming of your own, and on this account your fame will spread throughout the whole universe."

While Guha was thus conversing with Bharata, the sun began to decline in the heavens, and Bharata encamped his army, and rested that night with Satrugna. And Bharata filled with solicitude for Rama, said to Guha — "I wish to hear particularly from you where Rama was lodged, together with his wife Sita and his brother Lakshmana. What words did he speak, and what food did he eat, and in what place did he lie with Sita?" And Guha told him the whole of what had occurred whilst Rama halted at Sringeri and how Lakshmana kept watch for the protection of Rama and Sita. And when Bharata and Satrugna had heard the whole of the sorrowful story, they wept aloud, and their mothers wept with them.

Still the sage of  
the river  
Ganges.  
Embarked  
Bharata and  
Satrugna, and  
the three of  
them descended  
Maharaja.

Now when it was morning, Bharata was desirous that his army should be conducted across the river Ganges to the southern bank, and Raja Guha presented himself to Bharata, and said — "My people have brought five hundred boats adorned with flags and great bells, and furnished with oars

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

and towers." And Guha brought a boat on which a chamber had been erected and the chamber resembled a temple, and was lined with white, and filled with a band of joyful musicians; and Bharata ascended that boat, together with Satrugna, and all the widows of Mahárajá Dasaratha. Then Vasishtha the priest, and the other Bráhmans, entered the boats set apart for them; and the female attendants entered their boats, together with the baggage which had been brought on carts. Meanwhile the noise of those who were burning the booths and huts of the encampment, and the uproar of those who were plunging into the river, and of those who were carrying the baggage to the boats, ascended to the very sky. The boats adorned with flying streamers, on which the servants had embarked, sailed swiftly over the river; some being filled with women, others with horses, and others with carriages, cattle, and treasure; and when they had reached the opposite bank they landed the people, and returned for more. The elephants, also adorned with flags, swam across the broad stream like winged mountains. But the mighty army and the multitude of people could not find sufficient room on the boats which Raja Guha had prepared; and some crossed on rafts, and others upon jars and pots, whilst some swam over the river with their hands and arms; and thus every one that came with Bharata was conveyed over the river Ganges by the care of the servants of Raja Guha.

Vasishtha and  
the Bráhmans  
The female at-  
tendants

Stirring scene  
upon the river

Swimming of  
the elephants.

Crossing of the  
people on rafts  
and jars

Now when they all had passed over the river, Bharata marched his army some distance into the jungle, towards the hermitage of Bharadwája at Prayága, and then he commanded it to halt. And he laid aside his arms and ornaments, and put on two silken garments, and proceeded with Vasishtha the priest, and the Bráhmans and Counsellors, to pay his respects to that great sage, who was the chief of Rishi's, and the priest of the gods. And when he beheld the delightful hermitage of Bharadwája, and the huts made of leaves, he left the Counsellors, and, preceded by the priest Vasishtha, he went forward and entered the presence of the great Bráhmaṇ. Then Vasishtha and Bhárata saluted Bharadwája in the most respectful manner, and Bharadwája rose

6th. March  
along the south-  
ern bank of the  
Ganges towards  
Prayága.

Vasishtha and  
Bharata, proceed  
in advance to  
the hermitage of  
Bharadwája.

The

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Courteous ex-  
change of in-  
quiries

Fears of Bha-  
radwaja respect-  
ing Rama  
allayed by Bha-  
rata

Great en-  
tertainment  
given by Bha-  
radwaja to the  
army and people  
of Bharata.

Invokes Vis-  
wakarma the  
architect of the  
gods

Invokes the  
gods with Indra  
at their head.

Invokes the  
rivers the  
harvas and the  
Apsaras

from his seat, and commanded his disciples to bring the argha, and he then presented them both with the argha, and with water to wash their feet, and refreshed them with fruits. Then Bharadwaja inquired separately of Bharata and Vasishtha respecting their welfare, and also about Ayodhya, and the army, the treasury, and the Counsellors of the Mahárajá, but knowing that Dasaratha was dead, he made no inquiries concerning him. In return, Vasishtha and Bharata inquired respecting the health of Bharadwaja, and how far his body had been wasted by his austerities, and also regarding his sacred fires and his disciples, and the trees, beasts, and birds by which he was surrounded. After this the renowned sage, fearful lest Bharata contemplated the slaughter of Ráma, questioned Bharata as to the reason of his coming, and Bharata replied that he came "to bring back Rama to the city of Ayodhyá, and to bow at his feet." So Bharadwaja rejoiced, and said — "I know Ráma and his wife Sitá, and his brother Lakshmana, and they dwell on the famous hill of Chitrakúta. Go thither on the morrow, but to day do you stay here with your army and Counsellors."

After this, the great Bharadwaja commanded Bharata to bring his whole army to the hermitage, that he might feast them, and the sage then entered the house where the sacred fire was kept, and having sipped water and wiped his lips, he invoked Viswakarma, the architect of the gods, as follows — "I invoke the great artist Viswakarma to acquaint him that I desire to entertain guests, and I pray that all things may be made ready for me! I invoke the gods, with Indra at their head, to acquaint them in like manner that I desire to entertain guests, and I pray them to supply me with all that is necessary! Let all the rivers which flow towards the east come hither! Let some flow with wine and sweet liquors, and let others bring cool waters as sweet as the juice of the sugar-cane! I call upon the Gandharvas, the divine musicians, to come hither with all their instruments of music! I call upon the beautiful Apsaras, the divine nymphs of paradise, to come hither with all their dresses and ornaments! Let a beautiful grove be formed resembling that

of Kavera, the leaves of which shall consist of jewels, and fine apparel, and lovely damsels shall be the fruit thereof! Let some prepare every kind of food that can be eaten, sucked or licked! Let garlands appear ready formed upon the trees; and let intoxicating liquors be produced in great abundance, together with flesh of various kinds!"

Thus spoke in words of authority the mighty sage who had all his passions under perfect control, and who was invested with divine power. All the celestials then entered his presence, together with the fragrant zephyrs; and flowers fell in showers from heaven, and the divine kettle-drums were heard in the sky, filling the air in every direction; whilst the Apsaras danced, and the Kinnaras sang, and the Gandharvas played sweet music. Then when the divine harmony had ceased, Bharata beheld the wondrous deeds which were wrought by Viswakarma and the gods. For many miles on every side the ground became level, and was covered with a carpet of tender grass, and enamelled with sapphires and onyxes; and in it were trees loaded with every variety of fruits. A forest abounding with enjoyments came from the mansions of Indra. Many excellent rivers also came attended by the various productions of their banks; whilst other rivers came flowing with various liquors. White houses, with four apartments to each, rose from the ground to receive the immense number of guests; together with stables for elephants and horses, and great numbers of palaces, and temples, and arched gateways.

The celestials  
obey the com-  
mands of Bha-  
radwaja

Wondrous  
works of Vi-  
wakarma and  
the gods

The enamelled  
plain

The forest of  
Indra.

The rivers flow  
ing with liquors.

The white  
houses.

**HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.**

throne, and bowed respectfully towards it, in honour of Ráma and Bharata took the chamara and placed himself on one of the seats set apart for the Counsellors. All the Counsellors and priests then seated themselves according to their respective rank, and last of all the general of the army took his seat with a reverential bow. Then Vasistha and the Bráhmans partook of the entertainment, and when they had finished, Bharata and the Counsellors sat down to the feast. And all the rivers, which ran with choice liquor, passed before Bharata at the command of the sage Bharadvaja, and the beds of the rivers were so clean and pure that the white earth could be perceived at the bottom as well as at the sides. And the banks of the rivers were adorned with excellent houses produced by the prayers of the great Bráhman. At the same instant came twenty thousand women adorned with excellent ornaments, who were sent by Brahma and twenty thousand more, adorned with gold, and gems, and coral, who were sent by Kuvera, and twenty thousand more issued from the forest of Nandana, which is the garden of Indra. And the Rajas of the Gandharias, as resplendent as the sun, played and sang before the assembly, whilst the Apsaras danced with great joy. And many trees came hither and played on musical instruments, whilst some beat time and others danced, and the clusters of fruits in the forest assumed the form of beautiful damsels, and cried —“O you that are thirsty, drink strong wine! O you that are hungry, eat juicy meat!”

Meanwhile the army of Bharata and the people of Ayodhya were feasted in like manner. Eight beautiful damsels waited upon each man, and these damsels and the men caused each other to drink liquid honey. And there were other beautiful damsels, and many excellent musicians all with garlands round their necks, and they danced, and played, and sang, until the warriors, horsemen, and footmen, cried out —“We will not go forward to the wilderness of Dandaka nor will we go back to the city of Ayodhya, but we will remain and dwell here. Peace be to Bharata and happiness attend Purnama!” And the soldiers ran about

Vasistha and the Bráhmans eat first

Feasting of Bharata and the Counsellors.  
Wonderful rivers.

Brahma sent by Brahma, and Apsaras

Performances of the Gandharias and Apsaras

Informances of the trees

Feasting of the army and people.  
Beautiful damsels.

Toxication of the soldiers

in crowds, and they danced, and laughed, and sang songs, and adorned themselves with the garlands which had been given them by the damsels; and they were so drunken that the elephant-keepers could no longer discern their elephants, nor the grooms behold their horses. The messengers also, and the servants, and the wives of the soldiers, and those who followed the army, dressed themselves in every kind of fine cloth, and were completely filled. The elephants, horses, asses, cows, goats, sheep, deer, and birds, were likewise all completely satisfied, and none wished for more. No one was there whose clothes were not white; no one who was dirty or hungry, or whose hair was defiled with dust. Innumerable couches were supplied, furnished with excellent coverlets and rich carpets. By the side of the soldiers were wells filled with pāyasa, made of milk, rice, sugar, and spices; and there were cows yielding every desire of the heart, trees dropping honey, as well as large oblong ponds full of spirituous liquors, and bordered with sweetmeats and choice viands. There were thousands of dishes of various metals, garnished with flowers and ornaments, and filled with venison, peacocks, partridges, mutton, and pork, accompanied with the proper sauces, and boiled in pots, or roasted on ivory spits. There were likewise thousands of plates, and millions of golden vessels, and of pots well cleansed, together with lakes of butter-milk three hours old; and other lakes of milk, and white curds, and prepared butter, with large heaps of sugar round about resembling mountains. There were also all the vessels and articles necessary for ablution, and great numbers of white tooth-picks with their ends bruised, and vessels filled with the powder of white sandal wood; together with thousands of mirrors, and clean garments in abundance, and shoes and sandals in endless quantity, and combs for the head and beard. There also were mountains of betel, and lakes full of liquors to promote digestion, and lakes abounding with lilies of a sky-blue colour, into which the descent was easy, and in which it was grateful to bathe. Thus passed away the night, while these men enjoyed themselves in the pleasant hermitage of

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Servants, followers, and animals of all kinds completely satisfied

General cleanliness

Couches

Wells of pāyasa.

Exhaustless cows  
Trees dropping honey  
Ponds of wine.  
Flesh meat

Plates, vessels, and pots in abundance.

Lakes of butter-milk, milk, curds, and butter

Tooth picks and sandal wood

Mirrors, clean garments, shoes and combs.

Betel

Lakes for bathing



HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

8 Then returned  
of all things to  
the previous  
state

Bharadvāja, like a night spent by Indra in his garden of Nandanā. At length at the command of Bharadvāja, all the beautiful females and musicians and singers returned to the places from whence they had come, and the flowers composing the various kinds of garlands, and those scattered round and trampled under-foot by men, returned to their former state as if the whole had been a dream.

Bharata acknowledged the hospitality of Bharadvāja.

At early morning, Bharata went to the sage Bharadvāja and when the sage saw the Prince approaching him with joined hands, he came out of his hermitage and said—"O Bharata, was every one gratified with this mighty entertainment?" Bharata then bowed his head, and replied—"O divine one, myself with all my army, and the very animals were made completely happy. Servants and all have been lodged in the most agreeable manner, and have lost all sense of fatigue and pain. We have been plentifully feasted, and have slept in excellent houses. But I ask of you one favour more. O divine sage, look with a friendly eye upon me, and tell me how far it is to the hermitage of my pious brother, and which is the way thither." Bharadvāja said—"At a short distance from here, in an uninhabited forest, is the delightful mountain Chitra kúta. On its north side is the river Mandakini, overshadowed with trees, covered with blossoms, and skirted with flowery woods. O my lord, beyond that river, at the mountain Chitra kúta, your two brothers are residing in their leafy hut on the south road."

Bharadvāja points out to Bharata the road to Chitra kúta.

8 h. Passage of the Jumnā and journey to Chitra kúta.

Order of march.

The Captains in chariots

The elephants

Bharata having thus accomplished his wish, bowed at the feet of the sage, and took his leave. And Bharata and all his army crossed over the river Jumnā in like manner that they had crossed the Ganges, and when they had reached the opposite bank every preparation was made for marching to the hill Chitra kúta. The various Captains commanded their horses to be yoked, and mounted their excellent chariots adorned with gold. Male and female elephants, furnished with golden howdahs, and decorated with beautiful flags, stood roaring like clouds in the rainy season, and the various kinds of vehicles, small and great, went

forward, whilst the footmen marched on foot. The ladies of the royal house, with Kausalyá at their head, were filled with joy; and went forward in different vehicles, earnestly longing to see Ráma. Bharata likewise ascended a beautiful litter, as resplendent as the moon or the rising sun, and began his march with the priests and Counsellors. The innumerable army, accompanied by a multitude of elephants and horses, covered the earth like a vast cloud rising in the south. At the sight of that great army marching with banners flying, the herds of wild animals and the flocks of birds fled away in great consternation. The bears, the wild boars, and the spotted antelopes, which appeared in view on all sides grazing among the hills and rivers, were terrified, and hastened into the depths of the jungle. Greatly pleased, the pious son of Dasaratha marched on, whilst this large army filled the air with their shouts, and covered the earth like a widely-spreading sea, or as the clouds cover the sky in the rainy season. At length, having advanced a long way, Bharata said to the sage Vasishtha:—"We must be now approaching the dwelling-place of Ráma: Yonder hill must be Chitra-kúta, and this river must be the Mandákini:

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

The infantry.

The ladies.

Bharata's litter.

Alarm of the  
beasts and birds  
at the advance  
of the army.

Description of  
Chitra-kúta.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Halting of the  
army at the  
cave of Lakshmana  
dwelling

Bharata pro-  
ceeds action  
joined only by  
Bhatruha, Sa-  
mantra, and  
Guhya.

Review of the  
foregoing narra-  
tive of Bhar-  
ata's visit to  
Rama.

The great high  
way

Probably a  
reconstruction  
of the old road

Foot on be-  
lial men.

It is the abode of holy devotees, the manifest road to heaven. Let the army halt at this spot and make a search throughout the forest that the two chiefs of men, Rama and Lakshmana may be found."

Hearing the words of Bharata, the many warriors with their weapons in their hands, entered the forest, and they beheld smoke ascending, and they returned and carried the news to Bharata saying — "Fire is not seen in a place that is destitute of men, and doubtless Rama and Lakshmana are dwelling there." Then Bharata, pleased at the news, said to the whole army — "Let the soldiers remain here perfectly silent. Rama and Lakshmana cannot be far from hence, and I will go with my brother Satrugna and the charioteer Sumantara and Raja Guhya, and find out Rama."

The foregoing narrative comprises some graphic pictures of Hindu life well worthy of consideration. The account of the Council at which Bharata declined the Raj includes perhaps no details requiring special notice, but the description of the construction of the great road by which Bharata and his army passed through the jungle, is very curious and suggestive. With the exception of one or two trunk lines, the absence of roads was a peculiar feature of India until a comparatively recent period, and it was generally impossible for wheeled carriages to proceed, especially after the rainy season, without sending precursors to level the hills of sand and mud, and fill up the chasms and ravines. The road constructed by Bharata cannot be regarded as altogether a new one, as Rama was driven by Sumantara in a chariot along the entire distance when going into exile. Neither can it have been earned all the way to the frontier, as Bharata complained at Sringeri of the badness of the way. Moreover, the story of the construction of the road has appar-

ently received some considerable embellishments from the Hindú bard. But even if the description is not literally true, it indicates the difficulties to be overcome in constructing a road through the jungle, and the ancient custom of preparing the way for distinguished personages which finds full expression in Messianic prophecy:—"Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight in the desert a highway for our God. Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low; and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough places

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

---

Ancient custom  
of preparing a  
new road for the  
advance of dis-  
tinguished per-  
sonages.

# HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV. conditions of Hindu life under similar circumstances

Extraordinary character of the entertainment magnificently furnished by Bharadvāja

Adaptation of the story to Hindu tastes

Marvellous transformations and creations

But the most extraordinary picture connected with this expedition and perhaps the most extraordinary in the whole of the Rāmāyana, is the weird like entertainment given by the sage Bharadvāja to the army and followers of Bharata. The whole scene is one of enchantment, and consequently has special charms for the Hindu. All that he can desire or imagine, as a source of pleasure and gratification, are here said to have been produced in abundance at the mere prayer of a holy Brāhman. The jungle was not merely transformed to a level plain covered with soft grass, but the turf is said to have been radiant with precious stones, whilst the plain was shaded by trees loaded with fruits, and watered by rivers running with the choicest liquors. White and beautiful palaces rose upon the enamelled plain in all the glory of oriental magnificence or gorgeous pantomime. Garlands of flowers are hanging on the portals, sweet odours are issuing from the rooms, whilst the inner courts are furnished with everything that can please and gratify the senses. There are rich carpets and soft couches on which to repose, whilst exquisite wine, choice viands, and delicious sweetmeats are served up in abundance. There, too, are divine musicians to please the ear, celestial dancing girls to gratify the eye, and beautiful women without number to enliven the guests by their potent charms. Even the clusters of fruits that hang from the trees take the form of bewitching damsels, who press every one to eat the juicy meat and drink the strong wine.

But such a picture of dreamy luxury is only pleasing to the confirmed voluptuary, and con-

Distinction between the dreamy luxury of Bharata and the Counselors and the practical severity of the great officers of the crown

quently is confined to the palace in which Bharata and his Counsellors are entertained. In feasting the soldiers and camp-followers it was necessary to introduce coarser elements, indicative of profuse hospitality and a more uproarious conviviality, and in this respect it must be confessed that the bard has described a scene equally true to Hindú ideas and to a lower order of human nature. Here are couches, clean garments, new shoes, mirrors, combs, and toothpicks, for every one. Here are ponds full of spirituous liquors, bordered with sweetmeats; thousands of dishes of meat, either boiled in clean pots or roasted on ivory spits; together with lakes of butter-milk and curds, and mountains of betel. The female element was much the same as at the more aristocratic banquet; but the men grew more intoxicated and noisy; and to repeat the language of the poem, the soldiers ran about in crowds, and danced and laughed, and sang songs, and adorned themselves with the garlands which were given to them by the damsels, until at last they were so drunken that the elephant drivers could no longer discern their elephants, nor the grooms behold their horses.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Opposition between rice and milk food and flesh meat.

The feast referred to the Tretá-yuga.

Miraculous powers of entertainment ascribed to Bráhman sages.

is laid upon wells full of rice and milk, and lakes of butter, curds, milk, and butter-milk. Here the opposition is manifest, for the same revellers who feasted on venison and peacocks, mutton and pork, are scarcely likely to have feasted on rice, milk, and curds. The anomaly that flesh meat and spirituous liquors were served up at a Brahmanical feast given by a holy sage, is explained away by the assertion that the event took place in a former age, known as the Tretá-yuga, when such indulgences were allowable. In other respects the miracle is intelligible; and indeed the idea of a Bráhman sage being able to entertain armies through the supernatural powers which he had acquired by the force of his devotions, seems to have been a favourite fancy with Hindú bards, and finds expression in more than one myth of a Brahmanical origin and character.

## CHAPTER XIV

### RÁMA REFUSES THE RAJ.

THE narrative of the interviews which took place at Chitra-kúta between Bharata and Ráma contains some highly interesting scenes which throw a curious light upon the inner life of the Hindú, and upon the standing-point from which he contemplates the world around. The general aim of this portion of the poem is to exhibit the noble self-sacrifice which Ráma firmly carried out in obedience to the expressed commands of the deceased Mahárája. The narrative opens with a poetical description of the hill Chitra-kúta, and the river Mandákiní, accompanied by a pretty, but somewhat child-like, picture of Ráma and Sítí taking their pleasure among the flowers, during which Ráma frequently declares that he cares not for the Raj so long as he can enjoy the society of his wife upon so pleasant a mountain. This disclaimer, however, must be accepted with some reservation. The Hindú bard was evidently desirous of furnishing an ideal picture of conjugal happiness and affection, and in doing so was perhaps compelled to represent the possession of the Raj as a minor consideration. But that Ráma should have literally preferred a jungle to a throne, a leafy hut surrounded with perils and deprivations, to the luxury of a palace and pride of sovereignty, seems never to have

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Interesting  
character of the  
interviews be-  
tween Bharata  
and Ráma

Stress laid upon  
the self-sacrifice  
of Ráma in order  
to fulfil his  
father's com-  
mands.



HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Three t re  
ew h n  
I arata and  
Lama.

Seven l a ng  
inc ts } e  
I arata

been understood by the Brahmanical brah for a moment. Indeed, the greatest possible stress is laid by Valmiki upon the filial obedience of Rāma in refusing to accept the Raj. In three distinct interviews between Bharata and Rāma, the former appears to exhaust every argument to induce his elder brother to accept the Raj, and in so doing is supported by his mother Kaikeyi, and by the sages Jāṁbhi and Vasishtha, but Rāma never hesitates for a moment as to the duty which he owes to his deceased father, and at length the people and the great sages acknowledge the righteousness of his resolution.

The incidents and speeches which arise in the course of the narrative are very significant, and well worthy of consideration. In the present place, however, it will be sufficient to indicate the seven leading events as follows —

1st, Description of the hill Chitrakuta and the river Mandakini, and of the sports of Rāma and Sita amongst the flowers

2nd, Approach of Bharata's army and description of Rāma's hermitage

3rd, First interview between Rāma and Bharata comprising Rāma's influential speech upon the duties of Rajas

4th, Rāma's offering of oblations of water and funeral cakes to the soul of his deceased father

5th, Second interview between Bharata and Rāma on the bank of the Mandakini river, comprising Jāṁbhi's atheistical speech against the belief in a future state, and Rāma's reply

6th, Third interview between Bharata and Rāma, comprising Vasishtha's appeal

7th, Return of Bharata to Ayodhya, and res-

dence at Nandigráma, where he subsequently ruled the Raj under the authority of Ráma's shoes.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

The narrative of Ráma's refusal of the Raj may be reproduced from the Rámáyana as follows:—

The narrative.

Now on the very day that the army of Bharata was approaching the hill of Chitra-kúta, the heroic Ráma, who was attached to the pleasant hill, and who was as desirous of gratifying Sítá as Indra is desirous of gratifying his spouse Sachi, was showing Chitra-kúta to his beloved. And Ráma said to Sítá:—"O excellent woman, neither my fall from the throne of Ayodhyá, nor the separation from my friends, give me any pain so long as I behold this pleasant mountain: See this hill, O my beloved, frequented by various kinds of birds, adorned with peaks, abounding in metals, and penetrating the skies: It is covered with trees and flowers, and filled with spotted deer and tuneful birds, as well as with tigers, leopards, and bears: Behold the charming retreats! The mountain with its cool cascades, and bubbling springs, and purling streams, appears like an elephant spouting up inebriating liquors: Who would not feel delight, whilst the zephyrs, coming from the valleys laden with fragrance, salute and gratify the senses? O peerless one, were I to spend an age here with you and Lakshmana, still grief would never consume me: In this mountain, O beautiful one, radiant with fruits and flowers, and vocal with tuneful birds, I feel awakened to all the tender emotions of love O Sítá, rejoice with me on Chitra-kúta: The royal sages have declared that retiring to the forest from the cares of royalty, is as delightful as amrita: The stones of different colours, of blue, yellow, purple and white, adorn the mountain on every side: The medicinal herbs upon this *prince of mountains shine in the night like the flames of a burnt-offering*: Some portions of the mountain resemble palaces, others are like gardens, and others are wrapped in deep gloom: Chitra-kúta fixes its foundations deep in the earth, and exalts its head on high: See here and there the beds of the celestial damsels, devoted to soft delights, formed

1st Description  
of the hill  
Chitra-kúta  
and the river  
Mandakini and  
of the reports of  
Ráma and Sítá  
amongst the  
flowers.

Ráma descends  
on the mountain  
of Chitra-kúta.

HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV	OF the leaves of the lotos and covered with various flowers See here the garlands of water lilies pressed down, which have been thrown at each other by these damsels. This mountain Chitra kuta, abounding with roots, fruits, and water, excels the garden of Kuvira and the abode of Indra. O beloved Sitá, having spent the appointed time with you and Lakshmaná, I shall have accomplished a work which will exalt the family of Ikshvákú "
Páma lescants o the beauties of th r er Mau dak i	Descending from the rock, the godlike son of Dasaratha then showed his beautiful wife the pleasant river Mandákini. He said — Behold the river Mandákini, with its various islands frequented by geese and crows, and abounding with flowers. See the pleasant fords where the herds of deer have drunk, and where for a moment they have made the water muddy!
The fords	There at stated seasons the holy sages bathe in the stream, wearing matted hair, clothing of bark, and the thong of leather rolled up like a cord, which passes over the left shoulder and under the right arm, and there, bound by their vows, they stand with uplifted hands repeating hymns to the sun. The trees, agitated by the winds, scatter their flowers and leaves on every side of the river, and cause the mountains to appear as though they were dancing. Behold, O slender waisted, the heaps of flowers, shaken down by the wind, spreading abroad upon the earth or diving through the air!
The holy sages worshipp the sun.	See the red geese sitting on the shallows and uttering their pleasing sounds! O lovely one, the sight of Chitra kuta and of Mandákini, in company with you, I esteem far beyond a residence in a palace. Bathe with me in the stream which is constantly frequented by perfect men, who are washed from their sins, and who are devoted to austerities and self denial. O charming Sitá, do you bathe in the river Mandákini, and throw red and white water lilies into it, as one companion throws flowers at another! O beloved spouse, esteem this mountain as Ayodhyá, this river as the Sarayu, and these animals as the people of the city. The virtuous Lakshmana, who is devoted to my commands, and whose heart, O Sitá, is ever in union with mine, constitutes all my happiness. Performing the appointed duties of religion
The trees.	
The flowers.	
The red geese	
Rama invit s bá to bathe.	

three times a day, and living with you upon honey, roots, and fruits, I feel no wish for the Raj of Kosala. Where is the man whose fatigue is not removed, and whose mind is not exhilarated by bathing in this pleasant river, which is frequented by monkeys, elephants, and lions, and adorned with such a profusion of flowers?"

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Declares that he  
has no wish for  
the Raj of  
Kosala.

Thus Rama showed to Sita the river Mandakini flowing through the villages, and the beds of water-lilies, and the mountain Chitā kūta, after which he saw on the north side of the mountain a pleasant cave, which abounded with stones and metals, and was covered with a profusion of trees in flower, and afforded a delightful shade, and was frequented by joyful birds. Beholding this cave, and the thicket which concealed it from the view of every creature, Rama said to Sita —“O my beloved, if this cave is pleasing to your sight, sit here a little while and rest from your fatigue. These smooth stones by the side of this tree loaded with

Rama and Sita  
rest in a beauti-  
ful cave.

Sítá had satisfied the two heroes she took her own meal; and then at the desire of Ráma she guarded the remainder of the flesh, which had been cut into pieces and laid out to dry, from being devoured by the crows.]<sup>2</sup>

At this moment, the noise and dust of Bharata's army approaching the leafy hut arose even to the sky. The wild elephants of the forest left their afflicted companions and fled on all sides, being affrighted at the great uproar. Ráma heard the noise and beheld the wild elephants of the forest running away; and he said to Lakshmana:—"O excellent son of Sumitrá, do you not hear this warlike sound, as deep and terrible as thunder? The herds of elephants, and the buffaloes and startled deer, are hastily running off in every direction; are they affrighted by lions, or is some Rajá come hither to hunt? Then Lakshmana hastily mounted a tree, and looked around, and saw coming from the northern quarter a large army composed of elephants, chariots, horsemen, and well-armed infantry; and he said to Ráma:—"O chief of men, this must be the army of Bharata, the son of Kaikeyí: Being desirous of enjoying the Raj without a rival, he is coming to destroy us both: I see his flag upon the chariot, the self-same chariot in which we left Ayodhyá: We must certainly kill him, and then you may govern the Raj in peace." Ráma replied:—"What evil has Bharata ever done to you, or what fear have you of Bharata, that you desire to kill him? I have engaged to fulfil my father's promise, and what should I do with the Raj? Perchance Bharata has been drawn hither by affection only; or he has come hither to surrender the Raj to me; and it is improper for you to speak so harshly of him." Thus addressed by his pious brother, Lakshmana was abashed, and said:—"Perchance, our father the Mahárāja has come to see you." Ráma, seeing that Lakshmana was ashamed, replied:—"Dasaratha may have come to see us, and to take us home again: I see

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

2nd. Approach  
of Bharata's  
army, and de-  
scription of  
Ráma's hermit-  
age.

Terror of the  
beasts of the  
jungle.

Lakshmana  
mounts a tree  
and sees the  
army.

Advices  
slightly  
Bharata.

Reproved by  
Ráma.

Conjectures  
that the Mahá-  
rāja is approach-  
ing

<sup>2</sup> The passage in brackets has been omitted in the North-West recension. Its genuineness, however, is undoubted.

increased by costly sacrifices, has now embraced a course of bodily austerities: The body of that excellent one, which was formerly perfumed with costly sandal wood, is now covered with the dust of the forest: Rāma, worthy of all happiness, has undergone all this distress because of me."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Meanwhile Rāma recalled to mind his brother Bharata, and embraced him, and clasped him to his bosom, and said:—"O beloved brother, where is your father Dasaratha that you are come to this forest? What, my dear brother, is the cause of your coming? Is the Mahārāja alive, or has he departed from the world?" O Bharata, do you regard the words of our preceptor Sudhāṇḍya, who is alike skilled in the science of arms and eminent in the law? Have you appointed those men to be your Counsellors, who are like yourself heroic, learned, masters of their senses, noble, and capable of understanding a nod? Counsel which is kept secret by the Counsellors is the source of the good fortune of Rajas: Have you overcome sleep? Do you awake at proper times? Do you at the close of night think upon the way to become prosperous? Do you consult with yourself when alone, and do you also take counsel of many? Does your decision, when determined upon, spread abroad throughout the Raj? When, O Bharata, you have determined upon any affair, small in its origin but great in its consequences, do you speedily begin it? Do you not put it off to a future day? Are other Rajas acquainted with your opinions as to what is most proper to be undertaken? Are they acquainted with the works which you are about to undertake? Are the secret plans concerted in the

Rāma recognizes Bharata and embraces him.

Delivers a speech on the duties of Rajas.

Selection of Counsellors

Avoidance of sleep

Decisions

Procrastination.

Secret

esteeming themselves learned who whilst they have all the chief treatises on the duties of men before them are stupidly ignorant, who having gained a smattering of logic, proclaim themselves to be wise without learning? Do you protect the fur and extensive city of Ayodhya justly termed invincible, which was inhabited in former times by our heroic predecessor, whose name is truth, and which is defended by strong gates, and filled with horses, and with thousands of excellent Brahmins, Kshatriyas and Vaisyas, all cheerful, intent upon their proper calling and superior to their appetites, which city is also adorned with temples of various forms, and inhabited by men skilled in the Vedas? O Bhairava, are the country districts duly protected? Are the husbandmen and herdsmen duly esteemed by you? Are their circumstances easy? Are they protected by officers of justice duly appointed by you? Are all the householders duly protected? Do you behave with courtesy to all women? Do you disregard the counsel of women and refrain from communicating your secrets to them? Is the forest well kept where the royal elephants are maintained? Have you a stock of new milch cows? Are you well furnished with female elephants and horses? Do you rise at the early dawn, and constantly show yourself adorned to the people? Are all the workmen in your presence without fear, and do they attend to their business when you are absent? Are your ports well stored with riches grain, arms, water, and machines, and are they well furnished with artificers and bowmen? Is your expenditure smaller than your income?

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Protection of  
the city

Protection of  
the country  
districts.

Female cows

Stock of ele-  
phants and  
horses

Ports

Finance.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

They

acquire land and wealth by every lawful means? Do you bow to your spiritual guide, to the aged, to devotees, to the gods, to strangers, to sacred groves, and to all Brahmins who are perfected by education? Do you sacrifice wealth to virtue, or virtue to wealth, or both to favouritism, avarice and sensuality? O Bharata, do you divide your time with due regard to recreation, public business, and moral duties? Do the Brahmins, as well as the citizens and people of the country, express their wishes for your good? Do you abhor atheism, deceit, and anger, and guard against any neglect of your own affairs? Do you perform all the duties of Rajas? A Raj who governs with justice a Raj which is surrounded with difficulties, will gain heaven when he leaves this world.

Rāma's lament is the reason of Bharata's coming.

Bharata in forming him of the death of Dasaratha.

When Rāma had thus addressed Bharata, he began also to say —“I wish to hear on what account you have come into this country in the habit of a devotee. Tell me, I pray you, why you have abandoned the newly-acquired Raj, and entered the forest with the antelope's skin and matted hair?” Bharata replied with joined hands —“O excellent one, my valiant father, having sent you into exile at the instance of my mother Kaikeyi, has departed to heaven overwhelmed with grief. O chief of men, I pray you to accept the Raj, but first arise and perform the rites of water for thy father. Satrugna and myself have already offered water. O Rāma, you were indeed the beloved of your father, through grief on your account, and the desire of seeing you, he has departed to the mansions of Indra.”

Rāma's affliction at the news.

At this afflicting account of his father's death, as dreadful as the thunderbolt cast by Indra at the Danava, Rāma sunk upon the ground like a tree which has been felled by the axe. Sita and his brothers sprinkled him with water, and when he was somewhat revived, he said to Bharata —“What shall I do in Ayodhya now that my father has gone to heaven? Who shall nourish Ayodhya, now that she is bereft of the best of Rajas? Happy are you, O Bharata and Satrugna, by whom his funeral ceremonies have been performed! When my forest residence is over, from whom

His lamentation.



shall I hear the words with which my father was accu-  
tomed to cheer me?" Ráma then turned to Sitá, and  
said — "O Sitá, your father in law is dead! O Laksh-  
mana, you are fatherless! Bharata has related the afflict-  
ing story of the departure of the Mahárajá to heaven!"  
And whilst Ráma was thus speaking, the tears fell in  
abundance from all eyes

At length the younger brethren said to Ráma — "Let  
the funeral oblations of your father, the Mahárajá, be now  
performed!" Then Ráma, accompanied by his brethren,  
walked down into the beautiful river Mandakíní, and  
descended into that sacred stream which is free from mud,  
and sprinkled water on account of the Mahárajá, saying —  
"O Dasaratha, may this be thine!" Ráma then filled his  
two joined palms with water, and turning his face to the  
south quarter, sacred to Yama, he said — "O Rája of Rjas,  
may this pure imperishable water given to you by me always  
quench your thirst in the region of spirits!" Afterwards,  
the renowned Rama came out of the sacred waters of the  
river, and performed the customary offering together with  
his brethren. Having made a cake of the pulp of the fig  
tree, and of such other materials as could be procured in  
the forest, he spread it upon the sacred kusá grass, and  
said — "O Mahárya, eat with pleasure the viands which  
we eat ourselves, for that which is the nourishment of man  
is likewise the nourishment of his deity." Ráma then left  
the bank of the river, and returned to the door of his hut,  
taking hold of Bharata and Lakshmana with both his  
hands

At Ráma's  
offering of obla-  
tions of water  
and funeral  
cakes to the  
soul of his d-  
ceased fath- r

The funeral  
cake made of  
the pulp of the  
fig tree

Meanwhile the army of Bharata heard the lamentations  
of the brethren and of Sitá re-echoed from the mountains  
like the sound of roaring lions, and the soldiers were greatly  
alarmed, and said — "Bharata has met with Ráma, and the  
brethren are bewailing their departed father." Then leav-  
ing the animals and baggage, they set their faces towards  
the sound, and hastened towards the place, being all with  
one mind anxious to behold Rama. The noise of their  
chariot wheels was like the rolling of thunder, and the

Approach of the  
army to behold  
Ráma

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Rāma's con-  
descendents on.

Grief of  
Kausalyā at  
seeing the  
course cake  
which Rāma  
had offered to  
his father

Grief of the  
other Rānis

Kindness of the  
Rānis towards  
Rāma Lak-  
shmana, and Sītā.

Rāma embraces  
the feet of  
Vasishtha

5th Second  
interval  
between  
the Bhārata  
and Rāma on  
the bank of the  
Mandakini.

beasts and the birds were terrified with fear and fled away. At length those soldiers beheld Rāma sitting on the sacrificial ground, and they all execrated Kaikeyi and Manthara, and burst into tears. Rāma, viewing them all deeply afflicted, embraced them like a parent, and treated all his ancient friends with the respect due to each. Meanwhile, the priest Vasishtha, being eager to behold Rāma, proceeded with the widows of Dasaratha to the place where the heroes were. Presently the Rāni Kausalyā saw upon the ground the funeral cake laid in order which Rāma had prepared for his father Dasaratha, together with the kusa grass laid with their points towards the south, and Kausalyā said — "Behold this course cake which the magnanimous Rāma has prepared according to the ordinance! How should the great Dasaratha, who on earth was equal to Indra, relish such an offering as the pulp of the fig tree? There does not appear to me to be a greater wretchedness than that the mighty Rāma should offer a cake made of the pulp of the fig tree to the spirit of his deceased father! Verily it is a true saying — 'The food which is eaten by a man is the food also of his god.' " All the widows of the deceased Mahārāja then went forward and beheld Rāma, who was like a god who had fallen from heaven, and when they saw him they wept aloud overpowered with grief. The heroic Rāma then arose and fell down at the lotus like feet of his mothers, and the Rānis with their fair and soft hands, pleasing to the touch, wiped the dust from his back. Then Lakshmana, also beholding his afflicted mothers, bowed slowly to their feet with great affection, and all the Rāmis manifested the same respect towards him as they had previously shown to Rāma. Sītā also, filled with grief, bowed down to the feet of her mothers in law, and stood before them, and the afflicted Rāmis embraced her, who was emaciated by her residence in the jungle. Meanwhile Rāma embraced the feet of the priest Vasishtha even as Indra embraces the feet of Vṛkhaspati.

Now when the night had passed away and the morning had dawned, and the brethren and their friends had per-

formed their religious devotions on the bank of the river Mandákini, they all sat down in a profound silence, no one uttering a word. At length Bharata addressed Rama in the presence of all assembled, and said —“ My mother Kaikeyi, having given the Raj to me, is now satisfied. This Raj, which is like a bridge broken down by a violent stream in the rainy season, I now give to you. O Rama, wipe off the guilt of my mother’s anger, and deliver your father from sin. I entreat you with my head bowed. Show that pity to me which the great Supreme shows to all his creatures. But if you turn your back upon me, and persist in going hence to the forest, lo, I will go with you ! ”

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Bharata offers  
the Raj to  
Ráma.

Ráma then replied to Bharata, in the presence of all his friends and kinsmen, as follows —“ O Bharata, our father Dasaratha, at the request of your mother Kaikeyi, has appointed that I should go into exile and that you should possess the Raj. O Bharata, release the Mahárajá from his obligations ! Save your father and rejoice your mother. Go with Satrugna to Ayodhyá and console the people, whilst I with Sita and Lakshmana enter the forest without delay. Be you, O Bharata, the Raja of men, I will be the Raja of the wild beasts. Go you this day to the chief of cities, and I will enter the thickets of Dandaka. The royal umbrella shall shade your head from the sun, while mine shall be shaded by the trees of the wood. Satrugna of unequalled understanding will be your attendant, and Lakshmana, renowned for fidelity and friendship, shall be mine.

Ráma refuses  
to depart from  
the array ge-  
ment ordered by  
his father

At this time the sage Jávah, the renowned logician of the deceased Mahárajá, and a pious Brahman of the highest rank, came forward, and expressed the following vicious sentiments to Ráma —“ O chief of men, may prosperity attend you. Let not the understanding of a pious devotee such as you are, be rendered as useless and contemptible as that of common people ! Having obeyed the commands of your father, you have already fulfilled all that was incumbent upon you. It ill becomes you now to prefer a life of sluggishness and stupidity, merely through attachment to virtue and austerities, and contempt for the possession of a Raj. Attend,

Atheistical  
speech of Jávah  
the Yuga-m

Whilst your  
father was alive  
you obeyed his  
commands but  
now that he is  
dead they are  
no longer bind-  
ing

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

The relation  
of the par 1 is  
to the children  
is or by ten per  
any 1 ka that of  
the in 1 to the  
pass 1 g travel  
ler

my lord, to my words ! Bhārata, to whom the Raj was given by your father, himself entreats you to take possession of it Kaikeyi, on whose account this injury was done to you by your father, herself gives the Raj to you. Accept, therefore, the Raj in the presence of your subjects, and render your own people happy. It is not right for you to cherish any longer this false idea of obedience to the dead, which is disapproved by the wise, and is the mere offspring of your own imagination. It is not becoming that your father, who has departed to heaven, should be kept in continual expectation of your performing the duties of a son. His soul has left this body and now resides in another, how then can he who inhabits another body have any claim upon you ? A man is born alone and perishes alone, his parents resemble an inn, at which he resides for a time and then departs, and silly is he who fixes his heart upon a temporary abode. As a traveller sleeps for one night under a mango tree and next morning takes his departure, so the parents, and the possessions, and the wealth of a man are as a mere temporary residence. Why then, O Rama, forsake a road which is smooth, free from dust, and secure from all danger, for an evil road abounding with thorns ? Can you yourself to be installed in the rich city of Ayodhya. The city, like a wife whose husband is absent, is anxiously ex-

Men, it is true, offer funeral cakes in honour of their departed ancestors, but this is merely a spoiling of food : Say, what will a dead man eat ? Can what is eaten by one go into the body of another ? How can the soul of a father eat the funeral cakes which are offered by a son ? It will not stand to reason, and is merely the work of fancy : If the soul is immortal, the moment it leaves one body it goes to animate another : How then can it eat the cake when it inhabits another form, and when that cake is in commemoration of the old form ? If you say that the cakes being eaten by the cows is tantamount to their being eaten by the soul of the father, then a cake offered to the memory of a friend who is still living but in a remote country, and afterwards given to a cow, and eaten by it, will thereon satisfy the hunger of that distant friend : Books have been written by learned men for the sake of inducing others to make offerings and presents, and their doctrine is : ‘Perform sacrifices and make offerings, and consecrate yourselves, and undertake religious austerities, and bestow gifts :’ But a future state has no existence save in this world, and it is the present state which is the chief good : O Ráma, be wise ! That which is manifest to the senses is the grand object of pursuit, because of such things we have direct proof ; and those which are not present to the senses may be thrown behind your back ; because the only proof we have of their existence is indirect and inferential : Adopting the sound judgment of the wise, and regarding that which is sought by all, do you accept the Raj : Rajas and heroes of great renown have left their beloved children and wives, and sunk under the stern hand of death ; but we have no assurance, O Ráma, whether they have become Gandharvas, or Yakshas ; we know not what they are nor whither they are gone : Their names and lineage are rehearsed, and wherever any one would fain have them, there he conceives them to be : The whole universe is involved in uncertainty : Men eminent for virtue fail to obtain happiness : The virtuous suffer great afflictions, while the wicked appear to be happy indeed : Everything that exists will pass away, and the whole world is in a state

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

“ Men, it is true, offer cakes to their dead ancestors, but how can those ancestors eat them ? If the soul is immortal it must have passed into a new form which cannot eat the cake.

“ If, indeed, the eating of the cake by the cows satisfies the hunger of a dead father, it might also satisfy the hunger of a distant friend.

“ Our existence in this mortal life is our chief good, but we have no proof of the future, and it is therefore nothing to us.

“ Of those who are already dead we know nothing.

“ The whole universe is in disorder, for the wicked are often happy whilst the good are often miserable.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Therefore  
accept the  
Raj!

Wrathful reply  
of Ráma—

“ I will not  
desert my  
dear father,  
whom I obeyed  
when living

“ Your words  
are as deleteri-  
ous as wine

“ If there is no  
future state  
why are the  
vicious cen-  
sured?

“ If you demand  
direct proof a  
widow in her  
husband's  
absence, and  
astronomy  
teaches nothing

“ But Indra  
obtained  
sovereignty by  
his sacrifices  
and sages have  
been glorified  
through their  
austerities.

“ I will obey my  
father!

of disorder Therefore, O Ráma, do not despise the good fortune which has approached so near to you, but take possession of this great Raj, which has no equal in all the world ”

Ráma, slow to anger, was filled with wrath at these atheistical arguments of the subtle Jívali, and thus he answered the skilful Brahman —“ Trained up to filial obedience, I will no more depart from my father's commands than a well disciplined horse leaves the road, or an obedient wife forsakes her lord If, after obeying the words of my father while he was living, I were to act otherwise now that he is dead, should I not be deemed devoid of all principle? But I can no more be moved by your vain words than a mountain can be moved by the wind Your words resemble a pot of wine, which is pleasant and delicious to the taste, but most injurious in its effects You have even pleaded that there is no such thing as future happiness, that all the happiness we can enjoy we enjoy in this mortal life If that be the case, why should men censure the vicious and the debauched, for they are only carried away by their love of pleasure, that most contemptible of all the affections Why do the sages then live upon roots and fruits, instead of enjoying flesh and wine? If you admit of no inferential or indirect proof, a woman ought, according to your notions, to be a widow the moment her husband is out of her sight Astronomy and other sciences would fall to the ground, for most of their laws are based upon inference Did not Indra, the sovereign of the gods, obtain his celestial Raj by the performance of a hundred sacrifices? How can this proof be evaded by you? Kusika, the son of Atri, is another proof, he and other great sages have obtained an eminent degree of glory by the performance of sacrifices and practice of religious austerities, which, according to what you say, are useless pursuits But be it even as you say, I will still adhere to the commands of my father, as a great sage inflexibly adheres to his vows Let Bharata govern the Raj which has been given to him! I desire not the Raj which has been prohibited to me by the Maháramá ”

Whilst the sons of Dasaratha were thus conversing, surrounded by their friends, the day was spent and the night also passed away; and when the brethren had separately performed their morning devotions, Bharata went again to Ráma, and entreated him to accept the Raj. Then Ráma, still bearing in mind the words of Jáváli, thus spoke:—"Jáváli applauds as right both the noble and the ignoble, the real hero and the pretended one, the pure and the impure: According to him the bad man is equal to the good one, the evil disposition with the good disposition: If I, deceived by false reasoning, were thus to confound good and evil, I should abandon that which is good, and sink into a state of lawless confusion: Who would then look with approval upon me, and how should I obtain heaven? Moreover, the whole nation would then have no other rule but their own passions; since the principles of a Raja, whatever they may be, become the principles of his subjects: Truthfulness and benevolence are the eternal duties of a Raja; by these virtues an example is set to the whole Raj, and the nation is established in truthfulness: The gods and sages esteem truth as invincible; and the man who always speaks the truth in this world obtains an imperishable reward: I recollect with pain, O Jáváli, the act of my father which accepted you, a man of grovelling mind, who art governed by these infidel ideas; an atheist who has fallen from the path of rectitude! As a thief is, so is a Buddhist; after them are the Hastikas or atheists. He who is seeking the good of his subjects, will not, if he be a man of understanding, stand in the presence of an atheist: The Bráhmans, constantly setting before them this life and the next, offer peace offerings and burnt offerings: Those sages also are revered by men, who are zealous in the cause of virtue, the companions of the good, full of sacred energy, pre-eminent in charity and every good quality, never doing evil towards others, and purified from all moral defilement."

The frank and magnanimous Ráma, having thus spoken words full of conviction, the Bráhmaṇ Jáváli thus addressed to him a speech fraught with propriety and religion:—"I

# HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV.

6th, Third interview between Bharata and Ráma.

Ráma renews the discussion

"Jáváli confounds right and wrong, and if I did the same I should be censured by all, whilst the people of the Raj would follow my example."

"Truthfulness and benevolence are the eternal duties of a Raja."

"I regret that my father should have promoted a Buddhist and an atheist."

"No virtuous Raja will stand in the presence of an atheist."

Jáváli convinced by Ráma's reasoning, renounces his atheistical

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Vasishtha then  
dressed as to  
usual Rama  
to accept the  
Laj

by no means speak the sentiments of an atheist, for I am no atheist. Now that the fitting opportunity offers I will lay aside my atheistical disguise. As atheistical sentiments were introduced by me, O Rama, for the sake of turning you from your purpose, so sentiments of piety and religion are now uttered to conciliate your favour."

Vasishtha then said to Rama — "Jai is deeply versed in the customs of the world, he has thus spoken, O Rama, through his desire of turning you back to Avodhya. You are known to be the son and heir of Maharaja Dasaratha, accept therefore your own Raj. O Sovereign of the world and look upon us with compassion. Amongst all the race of Ikshvaku the eldest son is constantly Raja. A younger son cannot be anointed Raja whilst the elder son lives, the eldest must be Raja. It is not proper for you to violate this dear old sacred custom of the family of Ikshvaku. There are three persons to whom every one who is born is bound to render implicit deference, namely, his father, his mother, and his preceptor. A father begets, a mother nourishes, but a preceptor instructs, the preceptor is therefore said to be entitled to implicit regard. I was the preceptor of your father, and now I am your preceptor, and you will not transgress the Sistras if you obey my directions. Moreover, it is not right for you to disobey your pious and aged mother. O Rama, in obeying her words you will not step out of the path of virtue, nor in acceding to the prayer of Bharata, will you violate truth, or justice, or abuse your power."

Pama enters  
upon the scene  
of peace, to the  
of peace, and  
refuse to do  
away the Ma-  
haraja

Rama, thus mildly addressed by his preceptor Vasishtha who was seated near him, replied as follows — "What parents constantly do for a son can never be recompensed. The tenderness of a father and a mother in rearing their children, in bathing and clothing them, in constantly giving them excellent counsel, and in training them up in virtue, can never be repaid. What, therefore, my father has commanded me shall not be rendered ineffectual."

Ilavasta then  
said to Rama  
and Vasishtha

When Bharata heard these words of his elder brother, he said to Sumantra — "O Charioteer, speedily spread the grass on this spot which has been prepared for sacrifice. I



will sit opposite to Ráma until he be gracious to me: As a Bráhmaṇ, deprived of his wealth, lies before the door of a creditor, without food and without beholding any one, so will I sit here until Ráma return with me to Ayodhyá." Then looking at Sumantra, who was spreading the kusa grass, Bharata seated himself upon the ground.<sup>4</sup>

Then Ráma said to his brother:—"O beloved Bharata, what evil am I perpetrating that you thus sent yourself against me? For a Bráhmaṇ thus to confine a debtor by sitting down before him is right; but for Rajas to sit in dharmá against each other, is not according to the law: Rise then, O chief of men, and abandon this cruel vow, and quickly return to the city of Ayodhyá." Then Bharata turned to the citizens of Ayodhyá, and the people of the Raj, who had accompanied him to Chitra-kúta, and said:—

Ráma reproves  
Bharata

"Why, O people, do you not lay your injunctions upon Ráma?" The citizens and subjects replied:—"We well understand what is said by the magnanimous Ráma: You, O Bharata, also speak with reason: But Ráma is engaged in performing his father's word, and we are unable to say anything in haste." At these words Ráma said to Bharata:—"Rise, O valiant one, and touch me and also touch water, that you may be purified from the guilt of sitting down to starve out your brother." And Bharata arose and touched water, and said:—"Hear, all ye counsellors, and ministers, and people! I do not desire the Raj of my father, nor did I desire my mother to ask it for me, nor was I the cause of the exile of Ráma: If some one must fulfil my father's word and reside in the forest for fourteen years, let it be me." Then Ráma spoke in like manner to the people and citizens, as follows:—"Whatever was bought, pledged, or sold by my

Bharata appeals  
to the people to  
compel Ráma to  
accept the Raj

The people  
hesitate.

Bharata offers  
to go into exile  
in the room of  
Ráma

Ráma refuses  
to alter his de-  
termination,  
but promises to  
govern the Raj  
after his exile

<sup>4</sup> Dharmá was a strange custom, by which a creditor sat at the door or tent of a debtor, to compel payment of an ordinary debt, or of arrears owing by a public officer or prince. The person so sitting observes a strict fast, and under such circumstances the person from whom he demands payment is compelled to fast also, and abstain from his usual occupations and amusements. If the sutor perished, the guilt of murder fell upon the debtor. Originally, the person sitting in dharmá was necessarily a Bráhmaṇ, either on his own behalf or on that of another, and the sin of Brahmanicide would be incurred by his death. The practice is obsolete in British territory, having been made a punishable offence.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

father whilst alive, cannot be annulled by me or by Bharata. I have no occasion for a substitute to dwell in the fore ' in my place, for what was advised by Kaikeyí was well done by my father. I know Bharata has resigned his right, and seeks the good of his superiors, and after my return from my exile, I shall be able with this pious brother to govern the Raj with honour. The Māhārāja will then be discharged from his obligation to Kaikeyí, and his words will have been fulfilled by me."

The sages confirm the resolution of Rāma.

The great sages who were present at the meeting of the two most illustrious brothers, were astonished at the words of Rāma, and their hair stood erect with joy, and they came to Bharata, and said—"O Bharata, if you regard your father, you must respect the words of Rāma. We wish that your father's Raj may be absolved from every debt. Dasaratha has ascended to heaven through his determination to discharge his obligation to Kaikeyí." Bharata then took a pair of new shoes, adorned with gold, and turned to his brother Rāma, and said—"Put on these shoes, I pray you, and they shall furnish the means of securing the good of all." The heroic Rāma then put on the shoes, and pulled them off, and returned them to the magnanimous Bharata. And Bharata bowed to the shoes, and said to Rāma—"O Rāma, I will for fourteen years assume the matted hair and the habit of a devotee, and subsist on fruits and roots. Waiting your return, I will commit the management of the Raj to your shoes, and reside without the city, and until you return to Ayodhyá within five days of the completion of the fourteenth year I will enter the fire."

Bharata presents Rāma with a pair of shoes, and requests him to wear them.

Dasaratha wills that Rāma should wear the shoes.

With the permission of Bharata, Rāma goes to Ayodhyá. Bharata and Satrughna.

Let us of Bharata to Ayodhyá.

Rāma then embraced his two brothers, Bharata and Satrughna, with great respect, and dismissed them, and Bharata took the shoes on his head, and mounted the chariot with Satrughna, preceded by Vasishtha, and Jāsh, and all the counsellors. In this manner they left Chitrakuta, and after visiting the sage Bharadwāja in their way, they at

\* In the Athyātma Brāhmaṇa Bharata is represented as a still more pious brother, and is said to have imparted to Rāma the mystery of his incarnation, and the duty of the devotee, which he had received from his father, Rāvana.

length came near to the city of Ayodhyá, and the dark and melancholy city resembled a gloomy night, and was traversed by cats and owls, and bereft of elephants. It was like the bright Rohini, when the hostile Rahu is devouring her husband Chandra, or a mountain stream whose shallow waters have been dried up by the heat, when birds are faint with thirst, and when fishes have all disappeared, or the smokeless quivering flame of a sacrificial fire, after the sacrificial articles have been consumed, or an army stripped of its weapons, with its elephants, horses, and chariots destroyed, and all its valiant men slain, or the sea, when the foaming and roaring waves are hushed into silence by a calm, or an altar stripped of the sacrificial implements, and deprived of all its fat fruits after the sacrifice is ended, or the glad herds of kine feeding in their pasture upon young grass, when suddenly deserted by the bull; or a necklace stripped of all its most precious stones, or a star which has fallen to the earth when its merits are expended, or as a climbing plant, loaded with flowers and redolent with bees, when burnt up by a sudden fire in the jungle, or a troubled sky, when the traders fly from the bazars in alarm, and leave their merchandise behind, [or a tavern, when the liquor is all expended, and the house broken down and nothing remains but the fragments of broken pots], or a resting-place where water is given to the thirsty traveller, when the building is levelled with the ground, and the water all spent, or a bow-string which drops from the bow when cut with a swifter arrow, or a war-horse ridden by a warrior eager for the battle, which is suddenly slain by an enemy, or a heavy cart heavily laden and fallen under his burden, or the clear light of the sun when obscured by a dark cloud in the rainy season. The afflicted Bharata, having thus brought all his mothers back to Ayodhyá, then said to his preceptors—"I will now go to Nandigráma, which is without the city, and there I will dwell until Ráma returns and takes possession of the Raj." And the words of Bharata were praised by his mothers and his preceptors,

Bharata resides at Nandigráma in the guise of a devotee and rules the Raj under the authority of Ráma's shoes.

<sup>1</sup> This passage in brackets does not occur in the North West recension

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

and he speedily proceeded to Nandigráma with the shoes upon his head, and said to his assembled subjects —“Bring hither the State umbrella! By these shoes of my elder brother is justice established in the Raj.” Thus lamenting, the renowned but afflicted Bharata, together with his Counsellors, governed the Raj at Nandigráma. Assuming the bark dress and the matted hair of a devotee, the hero Bharata dwelt with the army at Nandigráma. Bharata, thus faithful to his word and promise, being installed together with the shoes, continued to reside at Nandigráma, waiting for the return of Ráma, himself holding the royal umbrella over the shoes, whilst the chámara was taken by Satrugha, and all affairs of the Government were transacted under the authority of the shoes. The fortunate Bharata, installed with the shoes of his elder brother, and paying homage to them, thus governed the Raj. All the presents that were brought, and all the business of State which occurred, he first laid before the shoes, and afterwards did as occasion required.

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's refusal of the Raj

The incidents in the foregoing narrative are so valuable and suggestive, as to demand a careful consideration. Fresh traces will be found of the process by which a Kshatriya tradition has been converted into a Brahmanical legend; whilst the vivid expression of ideas, which are as prevalent amongst the Hindús of the present day as at any former period, imparts a peculiar significance to the entire story.

If a Hindu of wedded happiness is involved in the amusements of Ráma and Sítá upon the hill Citrakúta.

The first picture presented to the eye is that of Ráma and Sítá taking their pleasure upon the mountain. The description of the amusements of the happy pair upon this occasion is undoubtedly pretty from a Hindú point of view, but it indicates the low conception which the Hindús have formed of the married state. A pair of lovers, to say nothing of newly-married couples, may doubtless find much

Contrast of European and Hindu life as

pleasure in wandering together in the country amongst trees and flowers; and under such circumstances they are highly susceptible of the beauties of natural scenery. But the language of Ráma is that of a priggish youth to a very young girl; whilst that of Sítá illustrates the utter want of mental culture in Hindú wives, beyond the rare art of listening with patience to the self-satisfied remarks of an ignorant and self-sufficient husband. But still wherever nature asserts herself through the affections, she always excites a sympathetic admiration; and the scene in which Sítá is called upon to embrace her spouse, as the climbing plant clings to the tree, and the gentle mirth of the young wife at seeing the painted ornament on her forehead impressed upon the chest of Ráma, are touches of nature which make the wide world kin. The scene in which Ráma and Sítá wreath ornaments of flowers for each other to wear, is equally admired by an oriental audience, but falls far short of the European ideal, in which more rational pleasures are expected, even on a holiday, from all who have outgrown the age of childhood.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Puerile character of the dialogue

Pretty touches of nature

The description of Ráma's hut as it appeared to Bharata, is a curious specimen of that strange mixture of military pursuits and religious worship which finds expression in the Brahmanical conception of the Kshatriya hero. The bows and arrows, the scimitars and the shields, are all in perfect accordance with what is known of Kshatriya tradition, and conformable to the idea of Ráma as a warrior; but they will scarcely harmonize with the Brahmanical conception of a devotee with matted hair, arrayed in the garb of an ascetic, and sitting by the altar on

Mixture of military and religious worship involved in the description of Ráma's hut

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Character of a  
devotee super-  
added to that of  
an archer

Generous con-  
test involved in  
the interviews  
between  
Bharata and  
Rāma.

Strained and  
artificial cha-  
racter of the  
dialogues.

which the fire of sacrifice is supposed to be ever burning. Clergymen may have fought for King Charles, and Cromwell's Ironsides may have spent their leisure in preaching and prayer; but in the present instance it is obvious that the character of a devotee is superadded to that of the archer, for the artificial purpose of representing the hero who slew the Rākshasas as the divine incarnation of Vishnu.

The interviews between Bharata and Rāma are intended to exhibit a generous contest between the brothers, in which Bharata entreats the elder brother to accept the Raj, whilst Rāma insists upon the paramount duty of filial obedience which compels him to remain fourteen years in exile. The outline of the story comprises much graphic description. The approach of the army and alarm of the wild beasts; the blue smoke arising from the hermitage; the doubts and fears of Rāma and Lakshmana; and the approach of Bharata, accompanied only by Satrugna, Sumantra, and Guba;—are all described with considerable truthfulness to nature.\* But the dialogues are strained and artificial, and are marred by the introduction of much extraneous matter. In the original also there is much repetition, which has, however, been cut away from the foregoing version. The speech of Rāma to Bharata at the first interview contains many suggestive references, but is altogether out of place under the circumstances in which it is

\* The march of an army through an Indian jungle, which perchance has never been entered by soldiers within the memory of man, frequently excites the most ludicrous alarm in what are called great game. A huge beast will suddenly rush out of its lair, and face the advancing lines, in evident astonishment. It will then move on in front, occasionally turning round and gazing in wonder and indignation at the unexpected invaders, and then running on again, tossing its head in wrath and perplexity at the sudden intrusion.

said to have been delivered. The rules for the right conduct of Rajas are indicated in the form of questions with sufficient clearness, and in strict accordance with Brahmanical ideas. They include the necessity for appointing wise, intelligent, and trustworthy Counsellors; the evils of untimely sleep; the necessity for secrecy; the advantage of employing learned men; the duty of appointing a good Minister and punishing a bad one; the duty of appointing an able General; the duty of giving rewards for eminent services; the very important and significant duty of issuing the pay and provisions with due punctuality and regularity to the troops, the qualifications necessary in an ambassador; the worthlessness of self-indulgent, ignorant, and heterodox Bráhmans; the duty of treating all women with courtesy, whilst neglecting their advice, and withholding from them all secrets. But to represent a young Prince of seventeen as questioning a brother of his own age as to the fulfilment of these duties, and this too at the moment of meeting him unexpectedly in the jungle, is an extravagance for which the Brahmanical bard is alone responsible.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ráma's speech  
on the duties of  
Rajas an inter-  
polation

The distress of Ráma on hearing of the death of his father, and his simple offerings to the soul of the deceased Mahárája, are more appropriate to the occasion. The sprinkling of water, and the offering of a funeral cake or ball to the spirit of a deceased parent, are regarded as a paramount duty throughout India, and are supposed to refresh the soul of the departed, and ultimately release it from the hell or purgatory known as pít. The speciality in Ráma's case is, that in his wretched life in the jungle, he could find nothing better than the pulp of the fig-

Simple character of the sprinkling of water as an offering of a cake to the soul of the deceased Mahárája.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

tree from which to make his funeral cake; a circumstance which seems to have specially excited the sympathy of his mother Kausalyá. It is, however, difficult to reconcile the account of the misery and privations endured by Ráma and Sítá in the jungle, with the pretty picture of their sports upon the hill and evening meal upon venison, which is described in the opening of the present chapter.

Character of  
Javáli as a  
Hindoo man of the  
Nirvá and logical  
school of  
Gótama.

The second interview between Bharata and Ráma, at which Jáváli, the free-thinking Bráhman, endeavours to shake Ráma's resolution to refuse the Raj, is apparently an interpolation, but is also one of a very valuable character. Jáváli is said to have been a logician, and therefore seems to have belonged to the Niyáya, or logical school of Gótama; and he is put forward as a representative of Buddhism and atheism, whose false doctrine is exposed by Ráma, and who is ultimately compelled to recant. The drift of Jáváli's reasoning appears to be to the following effect. There is no proof whatever of a future state of existence; as far as we know, death is nothing but annihilation; consequently man is not justified in sacrificing the substantial pleasures of this life for the sake of a visionary happiness after death. Even granted that the soul does exist hereafter, it can only exist in a form different from that of its earthly body. In other words, if death does not annihilate the soul, it certainly destroys the relationship between parents and children; so that a parent who is dead, and who consequently has become somebody else, can have no claim to the obedience of his living sons, who remain as they were. Therefore it is absurd for Ráma to refuse the pleasures of this

A representa-  
tive of the  
Hindoo and  
atheism.

Drift of Jáváli's  
reasoning.

No proof that  
death is any-  
thing but anni-  
hilation.

If the soul ex-  
ists hereafter, it  
must be in a  
different form  
which destroys  
the relation-  
ship between  
parents and  
children.



reignty merely for the sake of fulfilling a duty to a father who has ceased to be a relation.

In the course of his argument Jāvali finds it necessary to indicate the utter uselessness of the general custom of performing a srāddha; that is, of offering funeral cakes to the souls of dead men. A dead body, he seems to say, cannot possibly eat cakes; and as for the soul, if it exists at all, it can only exist in another body; and how can the new

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Review of the  
Fifth Book of  
Jāvali's *Śraut*  
against  
the practice  
of a srāddha

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Strained appli-  
cation of Jáváli's  
views to Ráma's  
acceptance of  
the Raj

Phenomena  
that the wicked  
are often happy,  
and the good  
often miserable  
an argument in  
favour of a  
future state

Dogmatic cha-  
racter of Ráma's  
reply to Jáváli

by inference as impugning the utility of virtue, because the wicked were often happy whilst the good were often miserable; and this argument seems to be adduced for the purpose of enforcing the view that Ráma would be justified in accepting the Raj, or in other words, that he would be justified in looking to happiness alone without regarding his duty to his father. But this particular application of Jáváli's views to the propriety of Ráma's acceptance of the Raj, seems strained and artificial throughout; whilst the form in which these views are expressed is a palpable misrepresentation of the school to which Jáváli belonged, and could only have been adopted for the purpose of rendering the sect hateful in the eyes of the populace. Moreover the phenomena that the wicked are often happy, whilst the good are often miserable, are usually brought forward by the believers in the immortality of the soul as proofs of the necessity for the existence of a future state, in which the inequalities which prevail in this present life might be finally corrected, and the great riddle as to the object of human existence be finally solved. On the other hand, a rational disbeliever in the soul's immortality would be more inclined to defend his scepticism by urging that a habit of virtue is a source of greater happiness to mankind in the present life than a habit of vice; and that the practice of either virtue or vice was wholly unaffected by a belief or otherwise in a future state of existence.

The reply of Ráma is couched in that dogmatic language which is so frequently employed in defending a conventional belief against the objections of sceptics. He denounces the insidious language of Jáváli; he dilates upon the duty of filial obedience; and he con-

finds happiness with pleasure by insinuating that if mankind are to devote themselves to present happiness, the vicious would be no longer open to censure, since they would be only carried away by a love of pleasure. As regards the value of inferential proof, the reasoning of Ráma is of more weight. He says, unless inferential proof be admitted, a wife becomes a widow the moment her husband is out of her sight, and the science of astronomy falls to the ground. Indeed, there can be no question that the error of Jáváli arose from his ignoring those inferential proofs upon which mankind in general base their belief in the existence of the soul after death. But the proofs adduced by Ráma of the immortality of the soul are of an unsatisfactory nature, being drawn from the historical element in Hindú theology. He refers to Indra, who obtained the sovereignty of the gods by the performance of a hundred sacrifices, and to the sages who obtained great glory by those very sacrifices and austerities which Jáváli despised; proofs which might appear perfectly valid to the Hindú, but would be rejected as unduly assumed propositions by all who disbelieved in Hinduism. Finally he declares that Jáváli confounds virtue and vice, right and wrong; and that if he were himself to carry out the same views, and accept the Raj, his subjects would henceforth follow his example and obey no rule which interfered with the gratification of their desires.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Confusion of  
happiness with  
pleasure.

Rejection of  
inferential  
proof, the  
source of  
Jáváli's error.

Ráma's proofs  
of the immor-  
tality of the  
soul, to be  
treated as un-  
duly assumed  
premises.

The important point in this controversy, and one which will be further considered hereafter, is that Ráma is put forward as a champion of the Bráhmans against the Buddhists; and that this polemical character is superadded to his heroic character as pro-

Polemical cha-  
racter of Ráma  
as a champion  
of the Bráh-  
mans against  
the Buddhists,  
superadded to  
his heroic cha-  
racter as pro-  
tector of the  
Bráhmans  
against the  
Rákshasas.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

---

tection of the Bráhmans against the Ríkshasas. Accordingly the question arises of whether the Buddhists are not identical with the Ríkshasas of the Rámáyana and this question can only be solved by the production of further evidence which will appear in the sequel.

Exaggeration in the account of Bharata's proceeding on Ráma's refusing the Raj

The proceedings of Bharata on receiving Ráma's final determination not to accept the Raj, are no doubt exaggerated for the sake of effect, but at the same time are characterized by one or two incidents

Threat to sit in dharmá

which are deserving of notice. In the first instance Bharata threatened that he would sit in dharmá against Rama, a Bráhmanical proceeding which in former days was a frequent source of oppression, but which in modern times has been put down by law. Ráma accordingly pointed out to Bharata that although a Bráhman might sit in dharmá against a debtor, yet it was contrary to rule for one Raja to

Curious adoption of Ráma's shoes as symbol of sovereignty

sit in dharmá against another Raja. Subsequently when Ráma agreed to rule the Raj after the expiration of the fourteen years of exile Bharata determined to govern Kosala in the name of Ráma, and this he did by carrying away a pair of shoes which had been worn by Rama, and which he treated as symbolical of Ráma's presence. This proceeding does not appear to refer to any particular custom, but it serves to indicate the peculiar tendency of the Hindu mind to personify and symbolize. Thus Bharata is said to have held the royal umbrella over the shoes, whilst Satrugna fanned them with his chímra, and the administration of affairs during the remainder of Ráma's exile was conducted by Bharata in the presence and under the authority of the shoes.

## CHAPTER XV.

### RÁMA'S EXILE

THE narrative of Ráma's exile in the jungle is one of the most obscure portions of the Rámáyana, inasmuch as it is difficult to discover any trace of the original tradition, or any illustration of actual life and manners, beyond the artificial life of self-mortification and self-denial said to have been led by the Bráhman sages of olden time. At the same time, however, the story throws some light upon the significance of the poem, and upon the character in which the Brahmanical author desired to represent Ráma; and consequently it deserves more serious consideration than the nature of the subject-matter would otherwise seem to imply.

According to the Rámáyana, the hero Ráma spent more than thirteen years of his exile in wandering amongst the different Brahmanical settlements, which appear to have been scattered over the country between the Ganges and the Godáveri; his wanderings extending from the hill of Chitra-kúta in Bundelkúnd, to the modern town of Nasik on the western side of India, near the sources of the Godáveri river, and about seventy-five miles to the north-west of Bombay. The appearance of these Brahmanical hermitages in the country far away to the south of

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Authenticity of  
the narrative of  
Ráma's wander-  
ings

Locality of the  
wanderings  
country be-  
tween the  
Ganges and the  
Godáveri from  
Chitra-kúta in  
Bundelkúnd  
to Nasik near  
the western  
coast

Each Brah-  
manical settle-  
ment headed by  
a famous sage

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Existence of all  
the sages as  
contemporaries  
of Ráma,  
refuted.

Long interval of  
time between  
the Rig-Veda  
and the Rámá-  
yana.

Sages said to  
have been con-  
temporary with  
both composed  
times.

Appearance of  
Atri as the first  
progenitor of  
the Lunar race.

the Raj of Kosala, seems to call for critical inquiry. Each hermitage is said to have belonged to some particular sage, who is famous in Brahmanical tradition. But whether the sages named were really contemporaries of Ráma, or whether they could possibly have flourished at one and the same period, is open to serious question. It is of course impossible to fix with any degree of certainty the relative chronology of the several sages, who are said to have been visited by Ráma; but still it seems tolerably clear that some belonged to an age far anterior to that in which the Rámáyana was composed, and probably to an age anterior to that in which Ráma existed as a real and living personage; whilst, at least, one sage is to be found who could only have existed in the age during which the Rámáyana was produced in its present form. The main proofs of these inferences are as follows. An interval of many centuries seems to have elapsed between the composition of the Rig-Veda and that of the Rámáyana; a conclusion which has long been proved by the evidence of language, and is generally accepted by Sanskrit scholars.<sup>1</sup> But three of the sages, said to have been contemporary with Ráma, namely, Visvámitra, Atri, and Agastya, are frequently mentioned in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; whilst Válmiki, the sage dwelling at Chitra-kúta, is said to have been himself the composer of the Rámáyana. Again, the sage Atri, whom Ráma visited immediately after his departure from Chitra-kúta, appears in the genealogical list preserved in the Mahá Bhárata, as the progenitor of the Moon, and consequently as the first ancestor of the Lunar

<sup>1</sup> See Müller's Hist. of Sanskrit Literature, p. 100.

race, whilst his grandson Buddha is said to have married Ilī, the daughter of Ikshvāku, who was himself the remote ancestor of the Solar race of Ayodhya, from whom Rāma was removed by many generations. These conclusions are not perhaps based upon absolute proof, because they are drawn from untrustworthy authorities, but still the chronological difficulties have been fully apprehended by the Pandits, and an attempt has been made to reconcile all contradictions by representing the sages to have lived thousands of years, and to have often appeared upon earth in different ages widely removed from each other. Modern science refuses to accept such explanations, and consequently it is impossible to escape the conclusion that if Valmiki composed the Rāmāyana in the form of Sanskrit in which it has been preserved, he could not have flourished in the same age as the sages who are named in the Rig Veda. The most probable hypothesis appears to be that the sages said to have been contemporary with Rāma are merely introduced as types or representatives of the Brāhmins, who seem to have established their influence throughout a large portion of Hindustan and the Dekhan during the age of Brahmanical revival which accompanied and followed the decline of Buddhist ascendancy.

Attempted reconciliation of the chronological difficulties by the Pandits

Sages probably introduced as types of the Brāhmins of the Dekhan

The next question that requires consideration is that connected with the real character of the Rākshasas, who appear in the Rāmāyana as the especial enemy of the Brāhmins. It has already been seen that the illustrious exiles of the royal house of Kosala were always entertained with the utmost respect by the Brāhmin sages, and that Rāma is put forward as the especial protector of the Brāh-

Inquire into the real character of the Rākshasas of the Rāmāyana.

# HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV

Not to be  
confound-  
ed with  
the origi-  
nal or to  
be re-  
garded  
as mere  
creations  
of the  
imagination

The Rākshasa  
empire as  
described  
in the  
epic is  
not a  
military  
outpost  
to the  
north of  
the Dekhan.

Religious  
and  
social  
character  
of the  
opposition  
between  
the  
Brahmans  
and  
Rākshasas

Ravana a  
worshipper  
of  
Brahma.

Identical  
with  
the  
Buddhists

Opposition  
between  
the  
Rākshasas  
and  
the  
Brahmans

mans against the Rākshasas. It has also been seen that the Rākshasas are not to be simply confounded with the aboriginal population, and that although their appearance and attributes have been much embellished and exaggerated by the Brahmanical author, yet they are not to be regarded as mere creations of the imagination, like the cannibal Asuras who were conquered by Bhīma. They are described as forming an empire, more or less civilized, having its capital in Lankā, in the island of Ceylon, but having military outposts in different quarters of the Dekhan, and extending their operations as far to the northward as the right bank of the Ganges. Moreover, their opposition to the Brahmans was of a religious character, not a radical opposition, like that of Christianity to heathenism, but a sectarian opposition, like that of Protestantism to Roman Catholicism, in which there is generally less toleration, and infinitely more virulence, than where the difference of religious belief is more thorough and complete. Ravana, the famous sovereign of the Rākshasas, is said to have been originally a worshipper of Brahma, and probably the Rākshasas may all be regarded as worshippers of the same orthodox deity. But yet the Rākshasas are described as being violently opposed to the sacrifices of the Brahmans, and as being utterly wanting in faith in sacred things, circumstances which seem to identify them with the Buddhists, who flourished more or less in India for a period of twelve centuries, namely, from the sixth century before Christ, until the eighth century of the Christian era, and who established a sort of empire in Ceylon which has continued to the present day. Moreover, it will be seen by reference



to the complaint of the gods addressed to Brahma in reference to the incarnation of Vishnu, that Rávana oppressed not only the gods with whom the Bráhmans seem to be associated, but also the demons or Asuras, who were identified with the aborigines of the country.<sup>2</sup> Whilst, therefore, the Rákshasas and Asuras are occasionally confounded, yet in the present instance an opposition is indicated, such as might have been expected between the Buddhists and the aborigines of the country.

The polemical character of Ráma as an opponent to Buddhism, has already been put prominently forward in his controversy with Jáváli; and the light in which he will appear hereafter as a mortal enemy of Rávana, confirms the view that he was a champion of the Bráhmans against the Buddhists. Accordingly, it must for the future be borne in mind that Ráma appears in three characters in the Rámáyana, each of which has apparently no real connection with either of the others. These three characters are as follows:—

Three distinct characters, of Ráma in the Rámáyana.

1st, Ráma as a mortal hero of an original and authentic tradition, in which the story seems to turn upon his being condemned to exile through the jealousy of a step-mother, and upon his being ultimately restored to the throne of his ancestors.

1st, Ráma as a mortal hero

2nd, Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu, sent down from heaven at the instigation of Bráhma and the other gods, for the express purpose of destroying Rávana and the Buddhists.

2nd Ráma, as an incarnation of Vishnu.

3rd, Ráma as a protector of the Bráhmans of the Dekhan against the Buddhists; in which capacity he

3rd Ráma, as a champion of the Linga worshiping Bráhmans against the Buddhists.

<sup>2</sup> See *ante*, page 18

# HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV

Contradiction  
involve the in-  
carnation of  
Vishnu and the  
worshipper of  
the Linga.

appears to have been in reality a worshipper of the Linga as a form of Siva, for it is certain that the Buddhists were driven out of the Dekhan by the worshippers of the Linga, and compelled to take refuge in Ceylon<sup>3</sup>

The most significant feature in the threefold character of Ráma is the strange contradiction implied in his being at once an incarnation of Vishnu and a worshipper of Siva. In olden time the fiercest antagonism prevailed between the Vaishnavas, or worshippers of Vishnu, and the Saivas, or worshippers of Siva, or Mahadeva. Ráma's character as an incarnation of Vishnu has already been sufficiently indicated, but his character as a worshipper of Siva will be more fully delineated hereafter, when it will be seen that he set up the triumphant Linga in the island of Ramiswaram, which stands about half way across the channel that separates the continent of India from the island of Ceylon. From the opposition existing between these three representations of one and the same individual, it may be inferred that there are three distinct elements in the Rámáyana, originating in three distinct periods, namely —

Three elements  
of the Rámá-  
ya in corre-  
sponding to the  
three characters  
of Ráma.

1st Ancient  
tradition of  
Ráma's exile

2nd Myth of  
Ráma's near-  
na tomas  
Vishnu

3rd Tradition  
of the invasion  
of the Dekhan  
by the worship-  
pers of the  
Linga.

1st, The ancient tradition of Ráma's exile, including the loss and recovery of his wife Sítá

2nd, The Vaishnava version, claiming Ráma as the divine champion of all India against the Rakshasas

3rd, The Saiva version, claiming Ráma as the especial hero of the Linga worshippers, who appear to have invaded the Dekhan at a remote period, and to have finally driven the Buddhists into the island of Ceylon

<sup>3</sup> See Colonel Sykes' learned report on the landed tenures in the Dekhan

These points will form a subject of further discussion hereafter. For the present it will be sufficient to revert to the original narrative of the exile of Ráma, as it appears in the Rámáyana. This narrative comprises ten leading incidents, which may be indicated as follows:—

1st, Departure of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana from the neighbourhood of Válmíki's hermitage at Chitra-kúta.

2nd, Journey towards the south, and visit to the sage Atri, and his wife Anasúyá.

3rd, Ráma engages to defend Atri and the other sages from the depredations of the Rákshasas in the forest of Dándaka

4th, Visit to the hermitage of Sarabhangá, who burns himself alive on a funeral pile.

5th, Ráma engages to defend the ascetics in the neighbourhood of Sarabhangá's hermitage against the Rákshasas.

6th, Visit to the hermitage of Sutrakshna at Ramtek, near Nagpore

7th, Dialogue between Ráma and Sítá as to the propriety of waging war against the Rákshasas

8th, 'Ten years' wanderings amongst the sages in the neighbourhood of Sutrakshna's hermitage at Ramtek.

9th, Visit to the sage Agastya, near the Vindhya mountains.

10th, Residence of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana at Panchavatí, the modern Nasik, on the river Godáveri.

The story of these events may now be related as follows.—

The narrative

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

1st Departure  
of Lakṣmaṇa  
from the nish  
hermitage at  
Chitrakūṭa.  
The sages at  
Chitrakūṭa  
complain to  
Rāma of the  
persecution of  
the Lakṣmaṇa.

Declare their  
intention of  
removing to  
another locality

Solitude of the  
hermitage after  
the departure of  
the sages

When Bharata had returned to Ayodhya, Rāma saw that the devotees and sages who dwelt round about Chitrakūṭa were sorely troubled, and an aged sage came forward and said to him —“O excellent one, the fear of these devotees arises from the Rākṣasas, for the Rākṣasas feed on men and assume various forms. O Rāma, the wicked chieftain Khara the younger brother of that mighty Rāja Ravana who dwells at Lanka occasions us much alarm. Khara is a terrible Rākṣasa daring, fearless, and cruel, a cannibal who regards neither age nor sex. O beloved one, these vile and deformed Rākṣasas inspire terror by their dreadful forms, and annoy the devotees with unclean things, and continually molest them. They gambol in the woods and hermitages, and throw about the sacrificial implements, and spoil the sacrificial articles and pollute the offerings with blood on every side. At times of sacrifice these wretches, who are void of all faith, rush hastily forward making a loud cry in the ears of the behering and pious devotees. They take away the pots, the flowers, the sacrificial wood, and the sacred luciferous grass of those who walk in the ways prescribed in the Vedas. The sages and devotees, haunted by these wicked ones, are anxious to leave these hermitages, and would fain consult with you respecting their departure to another place. A little way from hence, there is a beautiful forest abounding in fruits and roots, where I, with my companions, will take up our abode. But, O Rāma, when we have departed, Khara will fall upon you who are unprepared, if therefore it meets with your approbation, do you go with us.” Having thus spoken the venerable sage took his leave, and presently all the devotees humbly took their leave in like manner and departed out of Chitrakūṭa. And when the hermitage was forsaken by all the devotees, it seemed to be inhabited only by deer and serpents and after awhile it became overspread with gloom, and the heart of Rāma was saddened, and he said —“I, too, will depart to another place.”

\* In the Adhyātma Rāmāyana the departure of Rāma is ascribed not to the Rākṣasas but to the constant visits of the people of Ayodhya in large numbers which greatly disturbed the divine hero.

So Ráma departed out of Chitra-kúta, together with Sítá and Lakshmana; and they journeyed towards the south until they came to the hermitage of the sage Atri. And Atri received them with great joy, and commanded that he should be hospitably entertained; and he called to his aged wife, the virtuous and devout Anasúyá, who had also chosen the life of a devotee, and he said to her:—"Receive Sítá, and conciliate her by giving her everything that she desires." Atri then said to Ráma:—"O sinless one, this my wife is a Bráhmañi renowned for her vows, devoted to severe mortification, and ever performing pious deeds: Do you regard her as your mother: By the power of her austerities, fruits and roots were produced during a ten years' drought, and the holy Gangá was brought near to our dwelling; and by her interference ten nights passed without a rising of the sun: O sinless one, regard the gentle and aged Anasúyá as your own mother, and let Sítá come into her presence." Then Ráma said to Sítá:—"Do you hear the words of the sage? Go now into the presence of Anasúyá." And Sítá approached the aged and pious wife of Atri and eagerly bowed to her feet, and with hands most respectfully joined, inquired with joyful mind respecting her health. The venerable matron said to Sítá:—"Through your good fortune, O honourable Sítá, you have abandoned your kinsfolk, and followed your husband Ráma in his exile in the wilderness: That woman who loves her husband, whether he be in the city or in the forest, in prosperity or in adversity, will obtain a great reward hereafter: O Sítá, a husband is esteemed by a virtuous woman as her supreme deity; even though he be stripped of wealth, or possess an evil disposition, or go after other women: O Sítá, there is no friend greater than a husband; an incessant attention to a husband is everywhere comely: She who is unchaste, ignorant of right and wrong, and domineering over her husband, obtains only dishonour: She who is under the dominion of evil habits, and distinguished only by her uselessness, is ruined both here and hereafter."

Thus addressed by the divine Anasúyá, Sítá replied as

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

2nd, Ráma  
journeys south-  
ward to the  
hermitage of  
Atri  
Atri introduces  
his aged and  
devout wife  
Anasúyá.

Miracles  
wrought by  
Anasúyá  
through the  
force of her  
austerities

Interview be-  
tween Anasúyá  
and Sítá.

Anasúyá praises  
Sítá for her  
devotion to her  
husband, and  
dishes on the  
duty of wives.

Sítá replies,  
praising Ráma.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ráma's virtue is  
conduct towards  
the Mahárája's  
women

Anasúya gives  
Sítá the ointment  
which will  
render her ever  
young and  
beautiful to-  
gether with  
jewels and  
ornaments.

follows — "What you have said to me I have known already. Though a husband be poor and wicked, he should ever be to his wife an object of the highest regard. I know how much more ought she to reverence him when he is applauded for his virtues, compassionate and self-subduing, staid in his affection and loving as a parent. The virtuous Ráma conducts himself towards the other women of the deceased Mahárája, as he does towards his own mother Kausá. That hero, who bears the most affectionate regard to the memory of the Mahárája, has ever regarded as a mother the woman who was only once viewed by his father. The words of my mother-in-law, when I was coming to the desolate forest, are firmly fixed in my heart, and so, too, are the admonitions given to me by my mother when I gave my hand to my lord in the presence of the fire. The precept inculcated in me that 'a woman has no greater religious duty than that of honouring her husband,' has never, O Sítá, been forgotten by me. She who is assiduous and tentative to her husband is as sure of heaven as if she were already there, such a one is the chief among women, and goddess in heaven, she resembles the goddess Rohini, who is never seen for a moment without her husband Chandra. At these words of Sítá, Anasúyá was greatly pleased, and kissing the head of Sítá, she replied exultingly — "Through my many religious austerities I have acquired great powers. Depending upon these, O Sítá, I desire to confer a blessing upon you. O beloved wife of Rama, anoint yourself with this divine ointment, and constantly adorn yourself with the apparel and these ornaments, and the bloom of youth shall remain with you for this day, and for ever. O Sítá, blessed by this ointment which is given to you by me, you shall ever be as charming as the goddess Lakshmi, and shall enrapture your husband with your beauty." This she accepted the ointment and the jewels and the trappings and the apparel, which were thus given to her as tokens of

\* The ointment given by Anasúya to Sítá which was to render her beautiful is compared by some to the lotus and by others to the lotus, which is the most beautiful of women's faces.

friendship; and raising her joined hands to her forehead, she did honour to the pious devotee. After this, at the request of Anasúyá, Sítá related to her the whole story of her birth and marriage; and Anasúyá, having heard the pleasing narrative, embraced and kissed Sítá, and said:—"You have related the story to me in the most delightful language: \* The sun is set, O bright one; the pleasant night, bespangled with planets and stars, has already commenced; the birds, who were scattered abroad throughout the day in search of food, are now softly murmuring in their nests; the sages, who have been to bathe, are now returning in wetted garments; the sacrifices of the sages have been offered according to the ordinance, and the blue smoke is rising tinged with the colours of the neck of the pigeon; the trees clothed with leaves are darkening on every side, and distant objects cease to appear; the wild beasts of the night are prowling on all sides, and the deer of the forests are sleeping on the altars and sacred places; the night adorned with stars has commenced; the moon clothed with brightness has risen in the sky; I therefore now give you permission to depart, but first gratify me by adorning yourself with the divine ornaments, and then go and attend upon Ráma."

Anasúyá describes the approach of night in poetic language, and requests Sítá to adorn herself with the divine ornaments.

Sítá, resembling a daughter of the gods, then put on the ornaments, and bowing her head to the feet of the aged matron, she went towards Ráma; and Ráma was highly pleased at the honour done to her by the pious devotee, and rejoiced as he beheld the celestial beauty of his wife Sítá.

Ráma's delight at his wife's beauty.

When the night had passed away, Ráma and Lakshmana bathed according to the ordinance, and then inquired of the devotees respecting the forest. The sages replied:—"O Ráma, the paths of this forest are overrun by man-devouring Rákshasas, and savage beasts thirsting for blood, who molest the devotees whenever they wander abroad: O Prince, depart in peace and put a stop to their depredations; and when you have returned after accomplishing your design, we shall behold you from this hermitage." Then the magnanimous

3rd, Ráma engages to defend Atri and the other sages from the depredations of the Rákshasas in the forest of Dándaka.

\* The ordinary conversation of Hindú women may be inferred from the delight with which Anasúyá heard the story of Sítá's marriage

Ráma, Sítá and Lakshmana enter the forest of Dándaka.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Picture of a  
cluster of  
Brahmanical  
hermitages.

The courts.

The groves

Flowers and  
pools  
The sages

The sages joy  
of Sita and  
Rāma, and de-  
clare that he is  
their Raja.

Descript on of  
the forest of  
Dandaka.

ous and valiant Rāma, together with Sita and Lakshmana entered the great forest of Dandaka, and after a while Rama saw a cluster of hermitages, strewed with kusa grass and illuminated with the habits of devotees, and the token of Brahmanical devotion, as the air is illuminated by the dazzling light of the sun. The courts before the several huts were laid out with all neatness, and were kept perpetually clean, and frequented by various kinds of deer, and by numerous flocks of birds, and they were constantly enlivened by the gambols of the Apsaras, and adorned with large sacrificial fires, ladles, pots, antelope skins, kusa grass, sacrificial wood, fruits and roots. The hermitages were surrounded with large forest trees, which yielded pure and delicious fruits, they were rendered sacred by oblations and sacrifices, and cheered with the sound of the Vedas: they were strewed with wild flowers, and supplied with pools abounding with water lilies, they were inhabited by ancient sages who lived on fruits and roots, who were men of subdued passions, who wore the habits of devotees, and who were as bright as the sun or as the sacred flame. Thus adorned the hermitages resembled the habitation of Brāhma. The illustrious Rāma, seeing this cluster of hermitages unstrung his mighty bow, and went towards them, attended by Sita and Lakshmana. The devout sages received those renowned ones with every mark of gladness, and they beheld with astonishment the striking symmetry, the beauty of face, the delicacy of form, and the amiable countenance of Rāma, and all were filled with wonder as they gazed upon the three, as though their eyes could never be satisfied. Those truly fortunate sages then led their guests into a hut of leaves, and brought water for them all, and offered them roots, flowers, and fruits, and they said to Rāma — "You are the protector of the devotees, the renowned refuge, the object of our honour and regard, our Raja and our Governor. O sovereign of men, whether you are in the forest or in the city, you are still our Raja."

Having been thus entertained by the sages Rāma rose at sunrise on the following morning, and departed into the



forest of Dandaka with Lakshmana and Sita. And that forest was full of different kinds of deer, and was frequented by large bears, and abounded with thickets of broken trees, and with climbing plants and bushes, and with lakes inhabited by ducks and water fowls, and it was rendered vocal by the sweet warblings of various kinds of birds. In that deep wood full of wild beasts, there appeared a cannibal as tall as a mountain top, with a deep voice, hollow eyes, a widely extended and monstrous mouth, and a tun belly. That cannibal was named Viradha and he was hideous to the sight, and the terror of all beings, and he was seated on a tiger's skin, and was smeared with raw fat and blood, and continually cried out with a dreadful cry, and his mouth was widely gaping like that of Yama, and before him, spitted on a large iron spit, were three lions, four tigers, two wolves, ten deer, and a large elephant's head with the tusks smeared with fat. Thus Viradha, seeing Ráma and Lakshmana and Sita, ran towards them as fierce as death, and he sent forth a roar which caused the earth to move, and he seized Sita in his arms, saying — "O little dwarfs why do you come with your wife into the forest of Dandaka, clad in the habits of devotees, and armed with arrows, bow, and scimitar? Why do you two devotees remain with one woman? Why are you, O profligate wretches, corrupting the devout sages? Know you not that Viradha, the Rakshasa, constantly traverses this forest, clothed in armour, and feeding on the flesh of sages?" Saying these words Viradha leaped up into the air with Sita in his arms, exclaiming — "I have obtained a woman, who will be a delicious meal. Tell me instantly who you are, and whither are you going?" The magnanimous Ráma replied — "Know you that we are two brothers, born of Kshatriyas and abiding in the forest. But who are you traversing Dandaka in this dreadful form, and perpetrating every abomination?" Viradha said — "I am the son of Kala, and all the Rakshasas call me Viradha. By religious

Horrible appearance of Viradha the cannibal Lakshmana.

Viradha seizes Sita

Taunts the two brothers with having only one wife

It is not impossible that this charge brought by Viradha referred to the polyandry which undoubtedly existed in India at an early period.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Viradha rendered invulnerable by Hiraksha's return for his religious austerities  
Alarm of Sita.

Lamentations of Rāma at seeing his wife in the grasp of Viradha.

Wrath of Lakshmana.

Lakshmana threatens Viradha.

Description of the battle between Rāma and Lakshmana and the Lakshmana Viradha.

austerities I have obtained the promise from Brahma that I shall be invulnerable to all weapons. Give up your joint wife to me and expect her no more, but fly with her wherever you choose! This beautiful woman shall be my wife, and I will drink the blood of you all favoured wretches unless you fly at once." Hearing the impious words of the cruel Viradha, the terrified Sita trembled like the leaves of a plantain tree shaken by the wind, and Rāma, seeing his beautiful wife in the grasp of Viradha, exclaimed to Lakshmana — 'See, O excellent one, the fearless daughter of Pārajana, my virtuous spouse, who has been brought up with the greatest delicacy, enclosed in the arms of this Pāshasa! O Lakshmana see what evil Kaikeyi has brought upon us! There is no affliction greater to me than that Sita should be subjected to the touch of another man. O Lakshmana neither the death of my father, nor the loss of the Rājā, affects me like this.' While Rāma was thus lamenting, Lakshmana was distracted with rage and snuffing the air like the serpent Rudra, and he replied to his elder brother — "O Pāma, why do you, who are the lord of all, and the equal of Indra, suffer Sita to be taken away and grieve yourself thus as though you were unable to rescue her? Why are you thus afflicted while I am at your command? The earth shall drink the blood of this Pāshasa, who shall be slain by my arrow. The rage I feel towards Bharata for desiring the Pārajā, I will pour forth on Viradha, as the thunderbolt suddenly strikes the mountain." Lakshmana, his eye inflamed with anger, then said to Viradha — "You base and diminutive wretch! By your evil act you are certainly sealing your own death! You shall not obtain Sita, nor shall you depart alive from me." So saying Lakshmana discharged seven arrows, golden shafted and peacock feathered, and as bright as fire, and they pierced the body of Viradha, and he fell upon the ground bathed in blood. Then the Lakshmana uttered a dreadful yell, and drew forth a bright and green dart and hurled it in anger at Lakshmana, but Rāma, expecting arms, drew out two darts with heads resembling sharp

knives, and cut in twain the dart of Viradha. Then Viradha seized a spear as terrible as the flag staff of Indra, and brandished it in the air, like Yama breathing universal rain. Then the two brothers rained a shower of bright arrows upon the Rákshasa, but they fell harmless from his body, and he stood before them laughing. Next Viradha hurled his spear, but Rama cut it by two darts, and it fell to the ground like a rock torn by a thunderbolt from Mount Meru. Then the two brothers drew their scimitars, which resembled two black serpents, and they ran upon Viradha and struck him with all their might. Upon this the terrible Rákshasa seized the intrepid heroes forcibly with his two arms and throw them over his shoulders as though they had been children, and uttering a horrid yell he rushed into the depths of the jungles. Then the beautiful Sita set up a loud cry, and Lakshmana broke the left arm of the Rákshasa, and Rama broke the right arm, and Viradha fell to the ground, and the two brothers beat him with their fists, and their arms, and their feet, and lifted him up and dashed him against the ground, but he could not give up the ghost because of the blessing he had received from Brahma. Then Rama, seeing that the mountain like monster would not die, said to Lakshmana — "This Rákshasa, reaping the fruit of his religious austerities, cannot be conquered with weapons in battle, therefore we will bury him alive. O Lakshmana, dig a large grave for this terrible Rákshasa!" Lakshmana replied — "Let us burn this Rákshasa!" But Rama said — "The proper death of a Rákshasa is to bury him alive, and not to burn him." So Lakshmana took a spade and dug a large pit by the side of the huge Viradha, and Rama who had kept his foot upon the neck of the Rákshasa now removed it, and the two brothers took up the loud roaring Viradha, and throw him with mighty force into the pit, whilst the forest resounded with his fearful yells. Thus Viradha was put to death by being buried alive, but as soon as he was dead there arose from the grave a very beautiful person who began to ascend to heaven, and on his way he prayed to Rama with joined

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The two  
brothers ran to  
to strike the  
Viradha, he  
came off the  
be killed by  
Rama and  
Lakshmana

Foot of  
Viradha fell

Viradha was  
buried alive  
from the  
grave and  
ascended to  
heaven

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

*Legend of his being originally a Gandharva, but cursed by Kuvera on account of his love for Rāmbhī, to be a Rakshasa until delivered by Rāma.*

hands, as follows —“ I wish you all success, O Rāma, the son of Kausalyā, the protector of Sītā, and the fulfiller of the wishes of all your worshippers. I knew you from the first, and spoke to you harshly in order that I might excite your anger and die by your hands. I am a Gandharva, my name is Kosharee, and I used to sing in the court of Kuvera. One day Kuvera, perceiving that I was inspired with a passion for the beautiful Apsara, named Rāmbhī, cursed me for my misconduct, saying —“ Go and assume the shape of a Rākshasa, and live in the forest of Dāndaka, and remain so until you are killed by Rāma, when you will resume your previous form.” This day I have been relieved by you.

\* In the *Adhyatma Ramayana* the Rākshasa Virādha is represented as a female, and the following significant account is given of her life and resurrection —When the soul of Virādha quitted her body, a beautiful figure, resembling a celestial nymph, rose from the corpse adorned with jewels and rich garments. She prostrated herself at Rāma's feet, and walking three times round him she thus addressed him —“ Condescend, O Lord! to listen to an account of my former state. I was originally a dancer in the assembly of the gods; no one ever equalled me in beauty. I was once engaged in admiration of myself when the sage DURVĀSA accidentally came that way. I, being so much taken up with my own charms, omitted to pay my respects to him. At which negligence his anger being roused against me, he uttered a curse on me, in consequence of which I became a demon. I was overwhelmed with distress, confessed my folly, and I prayed him to have compassion upon me, on which DURVĀSA, taking pity on my misery, said —“ In the Treta Yuga, the Almighty and Eternal God, the Supreme Soul, Vishnu, will assume an incarnation of the flesh in the house of Mahārāja Dasaratha at Ayodhya, and will take the name of Rāma. He will come to this forest where you will be slain by his hand, then will you quit this shape and assume your own proper form. From that period I have been steadfast in the recollection of thy name, and in the worship of thee. This day I have been pre-eminently great for I have seen thee, the dust from thy feet has fallen on my head. Thou art the only pure light, thou art one there is nothing like unto thee. I praise I adore thy name. Thou art styled the protector of the poor, take pity on me, console the misery of thy slave. Grant that I may not forget thy name, and that I may sing thy praises.”

Pāma said —“ I will be true to thee, O dancer! this blessing, the forgetfulness of my name shall not take possession of your mind. I from beholding me thus draw great benefit will accrue to thee, faith in me will be engendered in your heart, and from that faith pure worship will be produced. It is difficult to acquire this faith, the *Veṇḍas* and *Saṅgras* declare that I do not bestow it on every one. This honour have I conferred on thee, that you may enjoy faith, wisdom, and meditation and at the last day I will remember thee. Depart to your own abode, and when you shall quit this corporeal frame you will be absorbed into me.”

In obedience to Rāma's orders, Virādha departed singing his praises, and from that time was a faithful worshipper of Rāma.

Accept my prayers and thanks, and permit me to return to my master Kúvera." So saying, Virádha vanished away from the presence of Ráma.

Having thus killed the terrible Virádha, the heroic Ráma embraced Sítá and comforted her, and he said to Lakshmana:—"This forest is full of dangers, and we are not acquainted with it; we will therefore proceed to the hermitage of Sarabhanga." Then Ráma and his spouse and his brother proceeded to the hermitage, and as they approached the magnanimous god-like devotee Sarabhanga, they beheld a wonderful appearance in the heavens. The mighty Indra, the Raja of the celestials, mounted on a car as splendid as the sun or as a glowing fire, passed through the air followed by all the gods; and Indra was adorned with splendid ornaments, and arrayed in shining garments, and received the adoration of multitudes of the celestials, who were arrayed with equal splendour. And near unto the car of Indra was another chariot drawn by horses, resembling a thick cloud illuminated by the sun. And over the head of Indra was a splendid umbrella, adorned with a garland, and two beautiful Apsaras held each a golden chámara in her hand, and fanned the sovereign of the gods. Then Indra entered the hermitage of the sage, and conversed with Sarabhanga; and Ráma addressed his brother as follows—"See, O Lakshmana, that wonderful and glorious chariot, resembling the descending sun! Surely these horses are the steeds of Indra! Behold also those celestial youths of ample chests, and arms like maces, who stand in hundreds on every side, with rings in their ears, and scimitars in their hands; and whose apparel is of the colour of topaz! They are terrible as tigers, and the necklaces on their breasts are as bright as the glowing fire. They all appear to be youths of twenty-five years of age, and that is the constant age of the gods."

At this time the mighty Indra took his leave of the sage, and departed to heaven in his car. Ráma and his spouse and brother then approached Sarabhanga, who was offering a burnt offering, and with his permission, they

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The same explains that  
in Israel I come  
to take him to  
heaven but that  
I was told to  
behold him a

advanced and kissed his feet. Being then invited to a repast, and to a lodging which was prepared for them, Rima asked the reason of Indra's coming, and Sarabhaṅga said — "O Rima, the sovereign of the gods is desirous of taking me to the heaven of Brahma, which I have gained by my severe austerities, but knowing, O my beloved guest, that you were not far off, I would not depart to heaven until I had seen you. Having now beheld you, O chief of men, I will go to the highest heaven. Receive, O Rima, the worlds I have acquired by the merits of my austerities." Rima replied — "I am highly honoured by you, and I return to you the worlds you have acquired. Depart hence to the realms of bliss, but tell me, I pray you, where I may now take up my own abode?" Sarabhaṅga replied — "O Rima, a highly illustrious sage named Satikṣma resides in this forest, he will point out where it is best for you to abide." Sarabhaṅga then said — "Behold now, whilst I put off this body, as a serpent casts his slough!" Then the sage prepared a fire, and offered ghee, and entered the flame, and the fire consumed the hair of his body, and the skin, flesh, bones, and blood, and a youth bright as the fire was instantly produced, and in this shape Sarabhaṅga sought the heaven of the sages, who had devoted their lives to religious austerities, and passing by the heaven of the gods, he ascended to the heaven of Brahma.

First among  
be men in self  
alive and  
accept the  
heaven of  
first man in a  
youthful form

[illegible]

When Sarabhaṅga had thus departed from this world, the whole body of sages gathered together, and came before Ráma at the hermitage. There were those who possess no goods, those who feed on the rays of the sun and moon, those who subsist on raw food, those who feed on leaves, those who eat rice with its husks, those who stand in the water immersed to the neck, those who sleep on the bare ground, those who do not sleep at all, those who always stand on one leg, those whose food is water alone, those who feed on air, those who live always in the open air, those who sleep in places of sacrifice, those who reside on the peaks of mountains, those who always wear wet clothing, those who spend their whole time in repeating the name of some god, those who pass their lives in repeating the Veda, those who perform worship with fire on each of their four sides, and the sun over their heads, those who eat but four months in the year, those who never take food, those who remain suspended by their heels to the branches of trees, those who stand on their heads, some standing in the air upon nothing, or only supported by the thread of their meritorious deeds, and those who stand only on the point of one of their great toes. All these sages stood before Ráma with their hands respectfully joined, and addressed him as follows:—"You are the chief of the race of Ikshváku, a great warrior, supreme on earth even as Indra is supreme among the gods: Your power and renown are celebrated throughout the world; filial obedience, truth, and justice reside in you: We, your subjects, would fain speak to you, and it becomes you not to disregard us: Great indeed is the injustice of that Raja who receives the sixth part of the harvest as his revenue, and yet protects not his people with paternal care: The stupid wretch who does not preserve his subjects as his own life, or as the lives of his own beloved offspring, is an object of detestation throughout the world: The Raja who governs his subjects by justice, as though

5th. Ráma engages to defend the ascetics against the Rákshasas.

Extraordinary description of the different ascetics who mortified the flesh.

The sages pray Ráma to preserve them from the Rákshasas.

own imagination, and while he was pronouncing the name of his body was consumed. He obtained a new and pure frame, a celestial ear to the dwelling-place of Vishnu in the highest he

When Sarabhangha had thus departed from this world, the whole body of sages gathered together, and came before Ráma at the hermitage. There were those who possess no goods, those who feed on the rays of the sun and moon, those who subsist on raw food, those who feed on leaves, those who eat rice with its husks, those who stand in the water immersed to the neck, those who sleep on the bare ground, those who do not sleep at all, those who always stand on one leg, those whose food is water alone, those who feed on air, those who live always in the open air, those who sleep in places of sacrifice, those who reside on the peaks of mountains, those who always wear wet clothing, those who spend their whole time in repeating the name of some god, those who pass their lives in repeating the Veda, those who perform worship with fire on each of their four sides, and the sun over their heads, those who eat but four months in the year, those who never take food, those who remain suspended by their heels to the branches of trees, those who stand on their heads, some standing in the air upon nothing, or only supported by the thread of their meritorious deeds, and those who stand only on the point of one of their great toes. All these sages stood before Ráma with their hands respectfully joined, and addressed him as follows:—"You are the chief of the race of Ikshwáku, a great warrior, supreme on earth even as Indra is supreme among the gods: Your power and renown are celebrated throughout the world; filial obedience, truth, and justice reside in you: We, your subjects, would fain speak to you, and it becomes you not to disregard us: Great indeed is the injustice of that Raja who receives the sixth part of the harvest as his revenue, and yet protects not his people with paternal care: The stupid wretch who does not preserve his subjects as his own life, or as the lives of his own beloved off-spring, is an object of detestation throughout the world: The Raja who governs his subjects by justice, as though they

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

5th, Ráma engages to defend the ascetics against the Rakshasas

Patronised very description of the different ascetics who mortified the flesh

The sages pray Ráma to preserve them from the Rakshasas.

own imagination, and while he was pronouncing the name of Ráma, his mortal body was consumed. He obtained a new and pure frame, and ascended on a celestial car to the dwelling-place of Vishnu in the highest heaven.



HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART II

were his own family and who reduces the wicked by the terror of his power, obtains universal renown in this life, and an imperishable reward hereafter. The sage who lives on roots and fruits, and performs the exalted duties incumbent upon him, confers a sixth part of the merits of his good deeds upon that Raja who governs his people with righteousness. O Rama the multitude of Brahmanas, who are devoted to a religious life in the jungle, are destroyed by the Rakshasas and consider you as their only protector. The sages who reside near the river Pampa, and those on the border of the river Mandakini, and those in the mountain Chitra kûta, have been devoured by these cannibal Rakshasas. We cannot endure these dreadful persecutions and have come to you for protection. O hero we pray you to preserve us from these Rakshasas." Rama replied — "It will become you to supplicate me, as I ought to be supplicating you for I am at the command of the Brahmanas. I have entered the forest to fulfil the words of my father, and to remove the persecutions which you endure from these Rakshasas." Rama having promised to defend the devotees then accompanied them to the hermitage of Satikshna.

Rama engages to protect the devotees.

Ch. VI. of  
Rama S. A. and  
Lakshmana to  
the hermitage of  
Satikshna.

Now when Rama and his brother and his wife had travelled a great distance into the forest and crossed many rivers, they at length saw a hermitage which was purged with the clothing and garlands of devotees. There they beheld Satikshna covered with mud and his head covered with matted hair, and he was without flesh in consequence of his austerities and his body was reduced to bones and skin, and he was absorbed in deep meditation. And Rama paid his respects and the sage Satikshna embraced him, and addressed him as follows — "O Rama has your journey been pleasant? The hermitage of which you have taken possession now enjoys its true owner. Waiting for you, I have forborne to relinquish the earth for the habitation of the gods. O hero, Indra the chief of the celestials, and the great god Siva, also, have desired me to deliver to you all the worlds I have subdued by my merits. Enjoy yourself then with your spouse Sitā and your brother Lakshmana, in the god frequented

worlds which have been conquered by my austerities." Ráma replied :—" I accept all the worlds, O great sage, and desire you to appoint me a place of residence in the forest." Sútíkshna said :—" Attended by the holy sages, and constantly supplied with fruits and roots, enjoy yourself in this pleasant hermitage." So Ráma took up his abode for that night in the pleasant hermitage of Sútíkshna, together with Sítá and Lakshmana.

Now when it was morning, and the ablutions had been duly performed, Ráma went to Sútíkshna, and said :—" O divine one, we have had a most refreshing night, and now ask permission to take our leave : The sages who have accompanied us are hastening to depart, and we are desirous of beholding the whole circle of hermitages belonging to the devoted Rishis who inhabit this forest ; and we would fain commence our journey before the heat of the sun becomes as insupportable as an obstinate person in pursuit of gain." Sútíkshna replied :—" Go, O beloved one, and having viewed the pleasant hermitages of the pious inhabitants of the wilderness of Dándaka, do you return to this abode."

The trio depart to visit the other hermitages in the neighbourhood.

The brothers then departed accompanied by Sítá ; when Sítá, full of tender affection, thus addressed her spouse Ráma :—" O beloved one, a great mind may contract guilt through the almost imperceptible distinctions of right and wrong ; but he may avoid the danger by subduing the first risings of evil desire : O hero, you are devoted to truth, and never regarded the wives of others, but the vice of anger has been produced in you through inadvertence, and is now attendant upon you : You have come into the forest as a devotee, but now you have engaged to compass the death of the Rákshasas, for the sake of preserving the sages who inhabit the forest of Dándaka ; and you and your brother have come into the wood for this purpose armed with your bows and arrows : O hero, this is not pleasing to me ; for when the bow of the Kshatriya and the sacrificial fire of the Bráhma are placed near each other, their power and energy will increase exceedingly : If you say that as a Kshatriya you are bound to punish the wicked and protect the good, I say that

7th, Dialogue between Ráma and Sítá as to the propriety of waging war against the Rakshasas.

Sítá reproaches Ráma.

A Kshatriya bound to punish evil does only when he is a Raja, and not when he is a devotee.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Legend of the  
devotee who was  
tempted by  
Indra to become  
a warrior

Sitā treats  
Pānā to the gods  
silly religious  
austeri-  
ties.

Rāma replies  
that he will  
not refuse the  
request of the  
Brāhmins to  
become their  
protector

Rāma praises  
Sita for his  
modesty and  
firm

this duty belongs to a Kshatriya who is a Rājā, and not to one who has adopted the life of a devotee. When you have recovered your Rāj, and become sovereign of Ayodhya, then you may draw your bow for the sake of punishing the Rakshasas, but so long as you are a devotee, you ought not to wish injury to any fellow creature. In ancient times there was a certain devotee, and Indra sought to interrupt his austerities, by assuming the form of a warrior, and leaving his scimitar as a deposit with the holy sage. and that devotee carried the scimitar ever with him as a sacred trust, until after awhile he too acquired a love of war, and ceased to perform his devotions. and at last through his connection with the weapon he sank into hell. O hero, the slaughter of Rakshasas in the forest of Dīndaka, when they are without enmity towards you will never be approved by the wise. In this sacred grove I pray you to constantly practise religious austerities, for happiness never springs from self gratification. O excellent one, this has been spoken by me in the feeble language of a woman, you alone are able to understand your duty."

Rama, hearing these words of the devoted Sita, replied thus — "O goddess, you have given me good advice becoming your present situation, but I will mention one rule which has been stated by you. You have said that a Kshatriya must carry a bow, that the voice of distress be not heard. Now the sages are distressed by the cannibal Rakshasas in the forest of Dīndaka, and relying upon me they have taken refuge with me. I said — 'It is a great shame to me, that Brāhmins should stand before me when I ought to stand with joined hands before them,' and having heard the address of the sages to become their protector, I cannot turn a deaf ear to them while life remains. I can relinquish life, and even you, O Sita, with Lakshmana, but having once plighted my promise to these Brāhmins, it is my duty to protect them. But you have spoken to me through affection and friendship, and I am delighted with your frankness. O Sita, a person who is not beloved is not admonished. You have spoken sentiments becoming your family, and you

8th Ten years  
wonderings  
amongst the  
sage's in the  
neighbourhood  
of Satishana's  
hermitage at  
Ramtek

Mysterious lake  
abounding with  
music and song

Legend of the  
lake being the  
abode of the  
sage Mandakarni  
and five  
Apsaras

are my companion in virtue, and dearer to me than life itself”

Having thus spoken, Rama entered the wood armed with his bow, and the beautiful Sita went after him, while Lakshmana followed with his bow in his hand. And they beheld many mountains, and groves, and pleasant rivers, together with cranes and red geese, and they saw ponds covered with lilies and water fowl, also herds of sportive deer, and buffaloes and hogs, and wild elephants. When they had proceeded far upon their way, and their shadows had become long on the ground, they beheld a sheet of water which was many miles round, and it was skirted with green meadows, and adorned with herds of elephants, and covered with the red and white lotos, and with cranes, geese, wild ducks, and other animals that live on water. Presently they heard the sounds of songs and music, but they saw no musician, and Rama inquired of the sage Dharma vrita respecting the cause of what they heard. The pious sage then related the wonders of the lake thus —“This ancient lake, called Mandakarni, was formed by the sage Mandakarni through the powers of his religious austerities. Standing in a pool, and feeding on nothing but air for ten thousand years, the sage Mandakarni performed so severe a course of mortification, that all the gods were distressed, and assembled together with Indra at their head. And Indra said — ‘This sage is bent on supplanting me, and obtaining the sovereignty of the gods.’—Indra then sought to tempt the sage from his devotions by sending to him five chosen Apsaras, the brightness of whose beauty exceeded that of the lightning, and the damsels came hither, singing and playing, and employing every act of fascination to entice the devotee. After awhile, the sage was ensnared into a love for the Apsaras, and the five damsels all became his wives, and still inhabit a concealed house in this lake, and there they pass their time in pleasure with the sage, who by his previous mortification and subjection, had again obtained youth, and the captivating sound of their songs and instruments of music is what you now hear.” At these words,

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Hermitages of  
the sage  
Dharma vrita.

The trio remain  
ten years in the  
forest, and  
visiting the  
different  
hermitages.

The trio remain  
ten years in the  
forest, and  
visiting the  
different  
hermitages.

Other visit to the  
sage Agastya,  
near the  
Dhyanamo  
to us

Journey  
towards  
the south

Halt at the  
hermitage of the  
brother of  
Agastya.

Rāma was full of thought, and exclaimed —“This is marvellous, indeed !”

After a short while, Rama beheld a pleasant cluster of hermitages which belonged to the sage Dharma vrita, with whom he had been conversing, and the hermitages were bestrewed with kusa grass, and with garments worn by the sages, and were full of Brahmanical glory. Rama then entered with Sitā and Lakshmana, and was received with due honour by all the sages, and looked around upon the pleasant place which adorned the forest. After this the mighty Rama visited in succession those hermitages of the sages in which he had formerly lodged, and he remained two months with one and a year with another, and four months with another, and five or six months with others, and thus he went on, sometimes abiding only a fortnight at one place, and sometimes remaining for more than a full year. Thus passed away ten years of exile, whilst Rāma resided in the hermitages of the sages and enjoyed great happiness therein, and when the ten pleasant years of exile had expired, Rāma returned with Sitā and Lakshmana to the hermitage of the sage Satiksha, and took up his abode there many days.

After awhile, Rāma said to Satiksha —“I continually hear that the sage Agastya resides in this forest of Dindaka, but through the extent of the forest, I know not the spot where he has taken up his abode. Satiksha replied —“I wish to send you to Agastya with your brother and your wife. Go from hence towards the south, and you will behold the glorious hermitage of the brother of Agastya. There stay one night, O Rama, and then, going forward, still towards the south, you will find at the skirt of the forest the hermitage of Agastya.” Hearing these directions, Rama bowed to the feet of the sage, and set out in company with Sitā and Lakshmana to search for Agastya. Seeing the variegated forest, and the mountains at a distance resembling clouds and lakes, and the rivers running beside the roads, Rama went pleasantly along the road pointed out by Satiksha. At length he said to Lakshmana —“This hermitage, which appears in view, must certainly be that of

the pious brother of Agastya. The trees of the forest in thousands are bowed down by the weight of fruits and flowers, the scent of the pepper trees, wafted hither by the breeze, creates a pungent sensation. Bundles of sticks and kusa grass are thrown hither and thither on the road, the black smoke, resembling the peak of a mountain, rises from the sacrificial fires, and the leaves of the trees are black and oily from the smoke of the sacrificial homa. The Brahmans, having bathed in these lovely and sacred retreats, are preparing offerings of flowers in blossom, which they have collected. In former times, two cruel Rākshasas, the devoured of Brahmans, resided here, and their names were Vatapi and Ilwala, and Ilwala was accustomed to assume the form of a Brahman, and speak the sacred tongue, and invite the Brahmans under pretence of solemnizing a Śrāddha. Then his brother Vatapi assumed the form of a ram, and was consecrated for the sacrifice by Ilwala, and when the Brahmans had eaten the ram, Ilwala called to his brother to come forth, and Vatapi came forth out of the stomachs of the Brahmans, bleating like a sheep, and tearing his way through their bodies. Thousands of Brahmans were thus destroyed when Agastya came to this spot, and accepted the invitation to a Śrāddha, and Agastya had not eaten for many years, and he devoured the whole of Vatapi in the form of a ram, and then prayed to Ganga, and the goddess appeared in his alms dish, and he touched the water, and pronounced her divine name. Then when Ilwala called on his brother to come forth Agastya laughed and said — 'Your brother has been eaten by me in the form of a ram and has now gone to the abode of Yama, and for him there is no coming forth.' Ilwala in a rage began to assault Agastya but was immediately consumed by the fire which flashed from the eyes of the sage. This hermitage, which formerly belonged to the two Rākshasas, is now inhabited by the brother of Agastya."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Poet's description of the hermitage

Legend of  
Vatapi and  
Ilwala.

Devotion of  
the Brahmans  
to Vatapi in the  
form of a ram.

The ram  
devoured by  
Agastya

Ilwala con-  
sumed by the  
fire of Agastya's  
eye

10 This absurd myth is preserved here chiefly because it is well known amongst the Brahmans who make a point of praying after a meal that they may be blessed with a digestion equal to that of Agastya.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Rama, Sita and  
Lakshmana  
spend the night  
with the brother  
of Agastya

Reach the  
hermitage of  
Agastya.  
Miracles per-  
formed by  
Agastya.

Lakshmana  
inform and  
celebrate  
of the arrival of  
Rama and Sita.

Joy of Agastya  
at the com-  
ing of  
Rama.

While Rama was thus conversing with Lakshmana, the sun set, and the evening came on, and the brothers performed their evening devotions towards the west, and entered the hermitage of the brother of Agastya, accompanied by Sita, and spent the night there. The next morning they took their leave, and departed towards the abode of Agastya himself, and as they went they beheld the trees of the forest in full flower, surrounded by climbing plants, broken by the trunks of sportive elephants, enlivened with playful monkeys and vocal with joyous birds. Rama, as he viewed the beautiful wilderness, said to his brother Lakshmana — "The hermitage of Agastya appears in view. This is the abode of that sage who freed the southern quarter from the Rakshasas, at whose command the Vindhya mountain forbore to rise higher in the sky, who drank up the sea abounding in crocodiles and great fishes, who was entreated by the gods, with Indra at their head, to destroy the Danavas. O Lakshmana, here will I spend the remainder of my exile. Here the perfect men, the great sages, cast off their old bodies and ascend in new bodies to heaven on chariots as resplendent as the sun."

Rama, having arrived at the hermitage, said to Lakshmana — "Enter the hermitage, I pray you, and inform the sage that I have arrived with Sita." And Lakshmana entered, and said to one of the disciples of Agastya — "Behold, the mighty hero Rama, the eldest son of Maharaja Dasaratha, is come hither with his wife Sita to visit the sage, perchance their fame may have reached your ears." The disciple, having heard the words of Lakshmana, entered the house where the sacred fire was kept and gave the information to the great sage, and Agastya replied — "The coming of Rama has been long desired by me, and now through my good fortune he is here this day to see me. Go, let the highly honoured Rama, with his spouse and Lakshmana, be introduced to me!" Then the disciple bowed to the feet of the sage, and with joined hands spoke his ready acquiescence, and he brought in Rama and Sita and Lakshmana, in the manner prescribed in the ordinance

And they entered the abode of Agastya, and saw the places sacred to Brahma, to Agni, to Vishnu, to Indra, to the Sun, the Moon, and the other gods, and they beheld the sage Agastya, surrounded by his disciples, clothed in the skin of antelopes and vestments of bark. Then Rama, seeing Agastya, the devotee, severe in austerities, and resplendent as the fire, said to his brother Lakshmana — "He, who is Agni, Soma, Dharma, yea, the Eternal himself, is coming forth. Let us approach him with the greatest reverence, for he is without doubt the sage Agastya, he is the abode of sacred austerities, a mass of consecrated glory." With these words Rama approached with devout affection and kissed the foot of the Brahman, and the great sage kissed the head of Ráma. Agastya then inquired respecting their health and welfare, and said to his disciples — "First offer oblations on the fire, and then present the remainder with appropriate ceremonies and the consecrating formulas to Rama, and let it be eaten by him according to the statutes of the Vanaprasthas. Rama is Ráya over the whole universe, steady in the paths of virtue, a mighty warrior, and worthy of the highest respect and adoration. Come in, O beloved guest! Rama is the asylum and the lord of all. I will worship the lord of the world who has arrived here, according to the ordinance." Thus Agastya and his disciples yielded due honours to their guest, saying — "As a false witness feeds in the next world upon his own flesh, so he who fails to entertain a guest to the best of his ability, is stripped of all his merit, and receives all the sins of his visitant."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Sacred places in the hermitage of Agastya.

Ráma's profound respect for Agastya.

Agastya directs his disciples to offer oblations to Ráma.

Acknowledges Rama as Ráya of the universe.

The Uttara Ramayana contains the following highly spiritualized description of the hermitage of Agastya and his reception of Rama — The hermitage of Agastya was a spacious building surrounded by pleasant gardens, abounding with fruits and flowers of every description and resembling the towers of palaces of Ikshvaku's line. Three thousands of sages such as Brahmarishi, or Ishvara, or Brahma, or Deva, or heavenly spirits, and Raja rishis, or great sages, were engaged in religious pursuits. Such was the purity of the place that neither deer nor sheep, nor other animals fed there. They were without fear of each other. Rama remained at the gate of the hermitage, while Sathkitha went in to inform the saint of his arrival. When the great sage beheld the saint surrounded by his disciples, he said —



HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Agastya presents Ráma with the bow of Vishnu the arrow of Brahma, two inexhaustible quivers and a scimitar

The coat of mail given to Agastya by Indra.

Agastya's encouraging words

Agastya praises Sítá

Evil nature of women in general.

After this, when Agastya had entertained Ráma with fruits, roots, and flowers, he said to him —“Receive, O Ráma, this divine bow of Vishnu, adorned with gold and diamonds, the work of Viswakarma, this excellent infallible arrow of Brahma, given to me by Indra, these two quivers of inexhaustible arrows resembling the glowing fire, and this golden-sheathed scimitar. O Ráma, with this bow Vishnu smote innumerable Asuras, and obtained the most splendid honours among the gods.” The Bráhman, having thus given Ráma the bow, the arrow, the scimitar, and the two quivers, presented him also with an excellent coat of mail which had been given to the sage by Indra.

Agastya, having thus entertained his guests, discoursed with them in the most encouraging manner, saying —“O Rama, I am gratified! Peace attend you, O Lakshmana! I am greatly pleased with you both for having come with Sítá to bow at my feet. You are greatly fatigued by the length of the road: The weary Sítá is evidently afflicted. She, a delicate princess, who has never experienced privations, has come to a forest abounding in hardships out of love for her spouse. O Ráma, such is not the nature of women. They will fawn upon a husband in prosperity, and forsake him in adversity. They are as sudden and uncertain as the lightning's flash, as keen as the sharpest weapon, as swift in their course as the bird Garura, as fickle as the wind, and as fatal as the

---

was expounding the actions of Ráma, of whom he was a strenuous adorer. Sutikshna paid his respects to the saint and said —‘Ráma, my spiritual guide! the exalted son of Dasaratha, with Sítá and his brother Lakshmana, is waiting at the gate. he is desirous of paying his respects to thee.’ Great was the surprise and sincere the joy of Agastya when he heard these words. He said to his disciple —‘Auspicious in lot!’ ‘Sutikshna!’ is your destiny, the intelligence you have conveyed to me is equal to the wholesome breeze of the morning: it affords me the highest satisfaction. That master, to behold whom I have been so long engaged in religious penances, towards whom my soul is so fervently attached, has of his own accord condescended to visit my humble mansion. Who then in this world can equal me in good fortune?’ Having thus spoken, he rose and went out to meet Ráma, he worshipped him with reverence and faith, and thus addressed him —‘This day, O Lord! my destiny is most exalted, for thou hast condescended to visit thy servant. Great and long have been my religious penances in the hope of beholding thee. This day have I obtained the reward of my piety and sufferings, I have seen thee.’”

most deadly poison O Ráma, your spouse Sítá is free from all these evil qualities" Ráma replied — "Happy am I, since the chief of sages is pleased with me, my brother, and my spouse"

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

After this Ráma said to Agastya — "Direct me, I pray you, to a spot supplied with water and wood, where I can erect a hermitage, and constantly reside in safety" Agastya replied — "Beloved one, at a short distance from here, near the river Godáveri, is a place called Panchavatí, which abounds with fruits and roots, and where there is water in abundance. Go thither, O hero, and fix your dwelling there" So Ráma, and Sítá, and Lakshmana took their leave, and departed out of the hermitage of Agastya, and went their way to Panchavatí

10th Residence of Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana at Panchavatí the modern Nasik

Agastya directs the trio to Panchavatí near the river Godáveri

Now, on the road from the hermitage of Agastya, Rama and the others saw a vulture of enormous size, who said that he was a friend of their father Mhárája Dasaratha, and this vulture was named Jatáyus, and he was the son of Garura, and his eldest brother was named Sampatí. And Jatáyus said to Ráma — "When you, O beloved one, are gone abroad with Lakshmana, I will guard Síta" And Ráma accepted his friendship, and embraced him with great joy, and he accompanied Rama on his way to Panchavatí

Rama forms an alliance with Jatáyus the great vulture, who was the son of Garura

When the party arrived at the spot pointed out by Agastya, Ráma said to Lakshmana — "O excellent one, this is the flowery forest of Panchavatí. Let a place for a hermitage be sought in some pleasant thicket, near a pool or a sheet of water, and where sacrificial wood, and flowers, and kusa grass, and water, may be easily procured" Lakshmana replied — "I am your servant!" Then Ráma showed his brother a beautiful spot facing the river Godáveri, and there was a sheet of water near it, as bright as the sun and fragrant with lilies, and in the distance were high mountains abounding with glens, and vocal with peacocks. In this charming neighbourhood Lakshmana built a large hut on a high floor of earth, with firm posts of bamboo wrought together with wicker work, and he covered it and roofed it with branches of trees, and tied it with strong

Arrival of Ráma, Sítá and Lakshmana at Panchavatí.

Ráma selects a site for a hermitage

Lakshmana builds a large hut with four rooms

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Oblations to  
the god of  
dwelling

Termination of  
thirteen years  
and a half of  
the exile

Commencement  
of the cold  
season.

Poetical  
description of  
the cold season.

Characteristics  
of the cold  
weather in  
India.

The day time.

The night time

The moon.

cords, and thatched it with grass and leaves, and he divided it into four rooms. When he had thus finished the dwelling house of Ráma, he went down to the Godávari and bathed, and then returned, bringing fruits and water lilies, and he made an oblation of flowers to the god of dwellings, and sprinkled water according to the ordinance, to secure peace to the new habitation and remove all evil from it. After this, he showed the hermitage to Ráma, and Rama and Sitá beheld the excellent habitation, and entered it with delight, and the pious Rama dwelt in that fruitful country in perfect happiness, as Indra dwells in heaven.

In this manner thirteen years and a half of Ráma's exile passed away in delight, and at this time the rainy season had departed, and the exhilarating cold season commenced. One morning when it was very early, Rama went to the pleasant river Godávari for the sake of ablution, and his brother Lakshmana, shivering with cold, followed him with a jar of water in his hand. And Lakshmana said to Rama — "The season so grateful to you has now arrived, and the season which crowns the year appears with peculiar beauty. Mankind are stiffened with cold, the earth is loaded with crops, water is unpleasant, and fire agreeable. The gods and ancestors are honoured with oblations of new corn. The cities are full of delicacies, and abound with the juices of the corn. Rajas eager for conquest now march forth to battle. The sun keeps on the south quarter sacred to Yama, whilst the north quarter appears with a sad countenance like a woman without her tika. The Himálaya mountain, abounding with stores of cold, is now distant from the sun, and is rightly named the mountain of snow. The midday abounds with high pleasures, and delight attends whatever we touch. The sun is beloved in the daytime, and shade and water are not pleasing. In this season the heat is temperate, the days are short and cold, the forests are bare, and the snow is fallen. The nights forbid all sleeping in the open air, governed by the star Pushya they are whitened with hoar frost and lengthened by the cold. The full moon having gained the side of the sun esteems himself fortunate, his

face is whitened with cold, and he shines dimly like a mirror covered with human breath : The west wind is impregnated with frost, and its blast is doubly keen in the morning : At the rising of the sun, the fields of barley and wheat appear covered with fog ; and the golden fields of rice, frequented by the paddy birds and cranes, appear covered with down : In the rice-fields the kine drink water with their eyes half shut, through fear of the sharp blades of the corn : The sun rises at a distance, and appears through the fog like the moon surrounded with its halo : In the forenoon he is devoid of strength, but at midday he beams with pleasure, and his countenance is ruddy : The wild elephant touches the cold water in his thirst, and then draws back his trunk in haste : The water-fowls sit upon the bank, devoid of resolution, and fear to launch themselves upon the cold stream : The rivers covered with steam are known by the voice of cranes, and their shores are indicated by borders of moistened sand : The drops of dew, through the weakness of the god of day, hang suspended from the ends of branches like globules of quicksilver : O Ráma, the pious Bharata, full of affliction, mortifies himself in the city of Ayodhyá, through devotion to you : Having relinquished the Raj, and the many enjoyments of life, he confines himself to spare diet and lives upon the ground : At this hour he is certainly going to bathe in the Sarayú, and perform his daily ceremonies . A tender youth, brought up delicately, how can he, wetted with the chilling dew of morning, again immerse himself in water ? Your brother Bharata has subdued heaven by his devout austerities, and sets his mind upon you who are in the forest : It is said that men disregard the commands of their father, and obey those of their mother ; but the reverse of this has been done by Bharata : Why is our middle mother thus cruel, whose lord was the good Dasaratha, and whose son was the excellent Bharata ? ”

Lakshmana having thus spoken, Ráma replied to him as follows.—“ O beloved one, it is improper for you thus to reproach our middle mother : Speak indeed of Bharata ; for though my heart is fixed upon a forest residence, it is

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

The west wind.  
The sunrise

The wild elephants

The water-fowls

The cranes

The dew drops

Austerities of  
Bharata on  
account of  
Ráma.

Cruelty of  
Kaikáyí

Ráma reproves  
Lakshmana for  
reproaching  
Kaikáyí.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

pained through affliction for Bharata. I remember the tender and sweet expressions of my brother, grateful as amrita, and rejoicing the heart. When, O Lakshmana, shall I again meet the magnanimous Bharata, and the hero Satrugna?"

Ablutions in the  
Godāveri

Thus conversing, the brothers reached the Godāveri and made their customary offering to their ancestors and the gods. Rama then performed his ablutions with his younger brother and Sita, and he appeared like the divine Śiva after bathing with the daughter of the chief of mountains.

Departure of  
the great vi-  
tude Jatāyus.

Thus Rama dwelt in his hermitage of Panchavati in company with his wife and brother, and Jatāyus, the Chief of Vultures, also dwelt there. But at this time Jatāyus requested permission to return to his own abode, saying — "After visiting all my own friends, O chief of men, I will return." So Rāma gave him permission to take his leave, and the Chief of Vultures departed out of the hermitage.

Relevancy of the  
for the great  
ratification of Rāma's  
five virtues  
as a great  
sage.

The foregoing narrative of Rāma's wanderings amongst the sages is chiefly valuable for the proof which it furnishes of the conclusions already laid down at the commencement of the present chapter. At the outset it will be observed that the Brāhman sages were compelled to leave the neighbourhood of Chitrakuta on account of the opposition offered to their religious rites by the Rākshasas, and that the Rākshasas mustered strong in that quarter, and were under the command of a younger brother of Ravana.

Religious oppo-  
sition of the  
Rākshasas to  
the Brāhmanas

Vishvānātha, a  
virtue of  
Brahma.

Again, Viśvānātha is described as being both a terrible Rākshasa, and the faithful worshipper of Brahma, and as having received certain supernatural powers from that deity in return for his devotions. But perhaps the most significant passage connected with the identification of the Rākshasas with the Bud dhists, is the dialogue between Sitā and Rāma respecting the propriety of waging war against the

Severance of  
the family  
between Sita  
and Lakshmana

Rákshasas. The argument has evidently been gaibled, but the drift of it may perhaps be gathered from the following facts. Buddha Sákya Muni was a Kshatriya. So was Ráma. Now although Sítá is represented as saying that Ráma ought not to fight because he was a devotee; yet inasmuch as his character as a devotee is altogether mythical, the speech may be regarded as mythical likewise. Sítá's language may therefore have been to the effect that Ráma was a Kshatriya, and as such was scarcely justified in interfering in the disputes between the Bráhmans and the Buddhists; whilst Ráma seems to have replied that having promised to protect the Bráhmans, or Linga worshippers, he was compelled to engage in war.

The other portions of the narrative contain many descriptions which are interesting, but which scarcely call for comment. The pictures of the different hermitages are generally well drawn, but with considerable sameness; and the conversation between Ráma and the several sages is almost always of the same character. The Brahmanical tone of this portion of the poem betrays however, with startling clearness, the proclivities of the Brahmanical author. The appearance of Indra at the hermitage of Sarabhanga; the prominence given to the doctrine that a seat in heaven, and the possession of worlds, may be obtained by such merits as religious austerities; and the poetic effort to throw a halo of sanctity round the emaciated forms and religious pursuits of the Bráhmans in the jungle, whilst associating such sages with mythic accounts of supernatural weapons; all serve to indicate that Brahmanising of Kshatriya traditions which has been so frequently pointed out

Sameness in the descriptions of the hermitages, and Ráma's dialogues with the sages

Brahmanising of Kshatriya traditions

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART II

Married life of  
Atri opposed to  
the Hindu  
rule of celibacy

Pious suicide of  
Sarabhangha  
compared with  
the burning of  
Calanus.

Idea involved  
in the death of  
Sarabhangha.

Strange fancy  
involved in  
Rama's alliance  
with the vul-  
ture Jatáyus

in the narrative. The circumstance of the sage Atri living with his wife Amasúyá is curious, and perhaps illustrates a further opposition between the Buddhist priests and the Bráhmans; the former insisting upon celibacy; whilst the Bráhmans were not only permitted but required to marry. The pious suicide of Sarabhangha is very striking; and similar incidents appear to have been not uncommon in ancient times. Arrian, in his description of Alexander's expedition, relates the story of a sage named Calanus who burned himself to death upon a funeral pile in like manner;<sup>12</sup> and in Strabo's description of India, it is said that the sophists or Bráhmans considered disease of the body as most disgraceful, and that if any one apprehended its approach, he prepared a pyre, and destroyed himself by fire.<sup>13</sup> The idea involved in the account of the death of Sarabhangha is somewhat mythical, and accordingly seems to be of a different character. He had long waited for the coming of Ráma, and having at length been blessed with a sight of the incarnate deity, he had no longer any desire to live; and consequently destroyed his body upon the funeral pile, and ascended to the heaven of Brahma. The description of the ascetics in the neighbourhood of Sarabhangha's pilgrimage is illustrative both of ancient and modern times; although it may be remarked that such self-mortifications, whether real or pretended, appear to be gradually dying out in India.

The strange alliance between Ráma and Jatáyus the Vulture is one of those eccentric ideas which

<sup>12</sup> Arrian's Exped. Alexand. lib. vii. c. 2

<sup>13</sup> Strabo, lib. xv. c. 1

abound to a considerable extent in the Rámáyana; and will be further illustrated when dealing with Ráma's subsequent alliances with monkeys and bears. For the present it will be sufficient to remark that these animals, like the serpents or Nágas, are treated in every respect, excepting that of form, as human beings; and there seems reason to believe that they were originally the deities of the aboriginal populations of the south of India, whom the Brahmanical author of the Rámáyana enlisted in the service of Ráma, for the purpose of facilitating the propagation of the worship of Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu.

The description of the cold season in India, which is put into the mouth of Lakshmana, is exceedingly poetical; and its truthfulness to nature will be readily admitted by all who are familiar with the country at that reviving period of the year. In one instance, indeed, a sense of humour is blended with truthfulness of description; and it is difficult to avoid a smile at the picture of the wild elephant who put his trunk into the water to quench his thirst, and then drew it back hastily from the cold.

Poetical and  
truthful charac-  
ter of the  
description of  
the cold season



## CHAPTER XVI

### RÁMA'S WARS RESPECTING SÚRPA-NAKHÁ

#### HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV

Khara and  
Dushana the  
two Rákshasa  
commanders in  
the neighbour-  
hood of Pan-  
chavati

War with Ráma  
an account of  
the sister  
Súrpa-nakhá.

If Hindu charac-  
ter of the fic-  
tion

Súrpa nakhá  
sister of Ravana,  
approaches the  
hermitage of  
Rama

THE next event in the life of Ráma, was his wars against two brothers of Ravana, respectively named Khara and Dúshana, who appear to have commanded a Rákshasa army in the neighbourhood of the hermitage. The story can scarcely be regarded in any other light than that of a pure fiction. It is said that a sister of these brothers, named Súrpa nakhá, fell in love with Ráma, and was jestingly referred by Ráma to Lakshmana, and again by Lakshmana to Ráma. In her jealousy she fell upon Sítá, on which Lakshmana cut off her ears and nose. She then fled to her brothers Khara and Dúshana, and prayed for revenge, on which ensued an extraordinary war, in which Ráma, single-handed, slaughtered a vast army of Rákshasas.

Notwithstanding the extravagance of this story, it furnishes a valuable illustration of the general character of many Hindú works of the imagination; such as the reckless sacrifice of probabilities for the sake of effect, the want of delicacy in the female character, and the frequent reference to Brahmanical ideas. These points, however, will be best considered hereafter. The narrative is as follows —

After this, while Rama was sitting in his pleasant four

roomed abode conversing with Sítá, a certain female Rákshasí happened to come to the hermitage. The name of this Rákshasí was Súrpa-nakhá, and she was sister of the ten-headed Rávana, the mighty Raja of Lanká; and her two other brothers were Khara and Dúshana; and these two were mighty Chieftains, and had been appointed by Raja Rávana to command all that country. This woman Súrpa-nakhá approached the leafy hut, and beheld Ráma of resplendent countenance and substantial arm; and he appeared like a god in heaven, and his eyes resembled the lotos, and his step was as firm as that of an elephant, and on his head was a lord of soft but matted hair; and he was evidently a great Raja, bearing all the marks of royalty; and his complexion was green like the new grass, and he was captivating as the god of love.<sup>1</sup> Seeing Ráma, the heart of the Rákshasí was smitten with the arrows of Káma, and she was distracted with the flame of desire. And she was of an evil and malignant disposition, of a base family and base in mind, and she was a female only in appearance. This damsel was very ugly, whilst the countenance of the portly and well-formed Ráma was most lovely; this one was squint-eyed, whilst the eyes of Ráma were beautifully elongated; her locks were the colour of copper, whilst his locks were black and curly; she was deformed in figure, whilst he was shaped with the most perfect symmetry; her voice was a horrid yell, while his accents were most melodious; she was rash and vague in speech, whilst his discourse was ever apt and prudent; her conduct was notoriously vile, whilst his conduct was ever exemplary. This Rákshasí, seeing that Ráma was a perfect model of beauty, began to reflect within herself:—"This is a most beautiful person, proud of his youth and blooming as a god: I am smitten with love, and will therefore assume another form, which shall be very beautiful: I will induce him to abandon his lawful and happy spouse Sítá, though she is in the bloom of beauty and prime of youth, and

Admires the  
beauty of Ráma.

Contrast  
between Súrpa-  
nakhá and  
Ráma.

Súrpa nakhá  
determines to  
induce Ráma to  
marry her and  
desert Sítá.

<sup>1</sup> Ráma is frequently represented in Bengallee pictures as having a bright-green complexion; although as an incarnation of Vishnu his proper colour would appear to be blue. Indeed, in pictures procured from the Upper Provinces Ráma is painted blue.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

lovely as Lakshmi, and I will cause him to direct all his attentions to me, whom he shall behold clothed with love  
hness "

Surpa nakhā  
a sumes a cap  
t vat ng form  
and asks Rāma  
who he is

Surpa nakhā then assumed a most captivating form, and approached the valiant Rama, and thus addressed him —“ O devotee, with matted hair, why are you come bearing a bow and arrow, and accompanied by your spouse, to this place which is haunted by the Rākshasas? I presume that the sages on the banks of the Godāveri, who are as bright as flame, are trusting in the strength of your arm ” Rāma replied with the utmost simplicity, for never did he utter a falsehood, especially near his hermitage, or in the presence of a woman —“ There was a Raja named Dasaratha I am his elder son, known among men by the name of Rāma, yonder is my younger brother Lakshmana who is devoted to me, and this is my spouse Sītā At the command of my father and mother, bound by a vow and desirous of fulfilling my duty, I am come to dwell in the woods, why do you in the bloom of youth and beauty, as charming as Lakshmi, wander about without fear in this most dreadful forest of Dandaka? ” To these words Surpa nakhā replied as follows

Rāma relates  
h a story and  
asks why she is  
wa deri g in  
the forest

Sārpa nakhā  
rep ies that she  
has left her  
brothers out of  
love for h m  
s d invites him  
to marry her

—“ O Rāma, I am a female Rākshasi, and my name is Surpa-  
nakhā, and I can assume any form at will Rāvana is my  
brother, of whom you may have heard, my other brothers  
are Vibhishana, the virtuous, and Kumbha karna, the sleepy,  
and the two mighty heroes, Khara and Dushana I have  
left my brothers, O Rama, from the time I saw you, through  
desire I have come to you, O my spouse Clothed with power,  
I traverse the woods with the greatest ease, do you become  
my husband by a lasting union What occasion have you  
for Sita? She is deformed and ugly, and not a fit match for  
you But I am a spouse worthy of you, clothed in beauty  
and possessed of every accomplishment Behold me of  
charming mien, adorned with glorious ornaments, elegant  
in form and plump in size I will eat this unchaste crea-  
ture, and then devour your second brother O my spouse,  
with me you shall wander through the wilderness of Dan-  
daka, and view the lofty mountain peaks and the verdant  
woods ”

Having heard the words of Súrpa-nakhá, Ráma cast a meaning look towards Sitá and Lakshmaná, and then for the sake of the jest replied to her, with a smile, in smooth and gentle words, as follows —“ O Súrpa nakhá, I am already married, this is my beloved spouse, and the presence of a rival wife would be painful to one like you. But, O charming female, my younger brother Lakshmana is youthful and engaging, he is intelligent, beautiful, fortunate, heroic, unmarried, and desirous of a wife, he is a fit match for you, and will become your husband. O full-eyed one, do you wait upon my brother as your husband, who is without a rival spouse, and attend him as the sun attends the Meru mountain ”

Thus addressed by Ráma, the infatuated Rákshasí left the hut, and immediately addressed Lakshmana thus —“ I am very beautiful, and a fit wife for you, come and roam with me at your ease in the forest of Dandíka ” Lakshmana replied with a smile —“ How can you desire to become a slave, the wife of a slave like me? O delicate fair one, I am the property of another, even of this my excellent brother Ráma. O full-eyed one, you should aspire to a higher station. Do you become the wife of my brother in whom is to be found every accomplishment. He will abandon his present wife, and devote all his attention to you ”

Súrpa-nakhá, considering that Lakshmaná was serious, began to smile with studied art, and again addressed Ráma —“ Do you prefer Sitá to me? I will instantly devour her in your sight, and then I will roam the forest with you without a rival ” Súrpa nakhá then rushed towards Sitá at her rage, with eyes glaring like burning coals, when Ráma repelled her, and said to Lakshmana —“ O brother, it is not always proper to jest with those who are cruel and base. See Sitá is scarcely alive! O excellent one, disfigure this ugly Rakshasí! ”

The valiant Lakshmana then became exceedingly angry, and he seized his scimitar, and in the sight of Ráma he cut off the ears and nose of Súrpa nakhá. Disfigured by the loss, the dreadful Rákshasí uttered a horrid shriek, and ran

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ráma jests with Súrpa nakhá by advising her to marry Lakshmana.

Súrpa nakhá offers herself as a wife to Lakshmana. Lakshmaná refers her back to Ráma.

Súrpa-nakhá offers herself to Ráma, and rushes upon Sitá to devour her.

Lakshmana cuts off the ears and nose of Súrpa-nakhá.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Surpa-nakhā  
is the story  
of her dis-  
figurement

Wrath of Khara

into the wood from whence she came. Smearred with blood, she throw out her arms, and yelled aloud, like the roaring of the clouds in the raining season. In this state she hastened to her brother Khara, who was surrounded by a multitude of Rakshasas, and she fell at length upon the ground like a star that has dropped from the sky.

When Khara saw his sister smearred with blood and fainting on the earth, he exclaimed in great wrath — "Arise and tell me plainly who has done this. Who is there, who, even in sport, would vex with his finger's end a black serpent full of venom? Who would take the rope of death and bind it round his own neck? Yet that man has done this who has approached you this day, that man has drank the deadly poison. What mighty one among the gods, or the great sages can have disfigured you thus? I see no one in this world, who would dare to do a thing displeasing to me. To-day with mortal arrows I will drink up the blood of the thousand eyed god Indra, as a crane drinks up milk that is mixed with water. There are none of the celestials who can preserve themselves in fight from my drawn scimitar!"

Surpa-nakhā  
relates the story  
of her dis-  
figurement

At these words Surpa nakhā, in great grief, thus related the cause of her disaster — "There are two brothers, Rāma and Lakshmana, they are young and beautiful, tender and yet strong, their elongated eyes resemble the water-lily, they are clothed in the habit of devotees, and feed on fruits and roots, and have subdued their passions, and practise devout austerities, and are of royal appearance, but whether they be Davatas or Dinavats I cannot say. Between them I beheld a beautiful young woman, of waist elegantly slender, and adorned with every ornament. By these two brothers have I thus been treated for the sake of that woman. I long to drink the frothing blood of that human female, and of these two brothers, and I pray you to accomplish my grand wish."

Khara se-  
lects  
fourteen Rak-  
shasas to  
bring  
Rāma and  
Lakshmana  
before him

While Surpa nakhā was thus speaking, the enraged Khara called fourteen powerful Rākshasas, as terrible as death, and said to them — "Go and bring me two men, who are armed, and clothed in the habit of devotees, and who with a woman, have entered the forest of Dandak." The four

teen Rákshasas thus commanded by Khara, went to the hermitage of Pancharatí accompanied by Súrpa-nakhá, like dark clouds driven before the wind; yet these Rákshasas, armed with sharp weapons, could no more subdue the valiant Ráma, than a wild elephant could oppose a forest when it is burning. Inflamed with rage, and filling the air with their terrible yells, they rushed upon the hermitage. Ráma with his arrows cut their weapons in twain, and then seizing fourteen arrows of iron, bright as the sun and sharpened on a stone, he discharged them fledged with golden feathers; and the arrows sped through the air like meteors, and pierced the hearts of the fourteen Rákshasas; and they fell dead upon the ground, whilst the arrows of their own accord returned to the quiver of Ráma.

Ráma slays the  
fourteen Rák-  
shasas.

Then Súrpa-nakhá uttered a tremendous yell, and fled back to her brother Khara, and writhed upon the ground before him like a serpent. When Khara heard that the Rákshasas were slain by Ráma, he cried aloud in a voice of thunder:—"Wipe away your tears, and shake off your terror! This day I will send Ráma and his brother to the abode of Yama: This day you shall drink the blood of this feeble mortal Ráma." Then Khara said to his brother Dúshana:—"Equip the fourteen thousand Rákshasas, whose courage and heroism are equal to your own; who are as dreadful as the thunder-cloud and as valiant as tigers: Bring also my chariot, my bows, my arrows, my scimitars, my sharp javelins, and my iron clubs: I will myself go in front of the children of Pulastya<sup>2</sup> and kill the abominable Ráma." Then the white horses were harnessed to the chariot of Khara, which was as dazzling as the crest of Meru mountain, adorned with gold, fixed upon shafts of onyx, blazoned with golden moons, set with various jewels, spacious as a city, painted with fishes, flowers, trees, rocks, birds and stars, and other devices expressive of joy. It was decked with banners, and hung with a hundred bells; and it moved at the will of him who rode thereon. Khara and Dúshana mounted the chariot, and the mighty army of

Khara  
assembles his  
army of four-  
teen thousand  
Rákshasas, and  
prepares to go  
against Ráma  
accompanied by  
his brother  
Dúshana.

Description of  
the chariot of  
Khara.

Khara and  
Dúshana lead  
the army  
against the her-  
mitage of Ráma.

<sup>2</sup> The Rákshasas were said to be descendants of Pulastya the sage, and are consequently sometimes alluded to as the children of Pulastya.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Evil omens on  
all sides.

Rákshasas went forth with a noise like the roaring of the sea, and they were armed with every kind of weapon dreadful to behold

But as the army of the Rákshasas marched out against Rama, there were fearful omens on all sides. A large cloud in colour resembling an ass, poured down a shower of blood, the swift horses yoked to the chariot fell down of their own accord, the edges of the sun's face appeared of a bloody hue, and the middle of it was black, and a huge vulture came and perched on the flag raised on a golden staff in Khara's chariot. The flesh eating birds and beasts shrieked and howled in various ways. At the rising of the sun, the jackals in the south quarter vomited fire and uttered dreadful yells, and the sky appeared red as blood, and the birds of the air uttered horrid screams. A sceptre without a head appeared near the sun. Rahu seized the sun, and there was a great eclipse without the intervention of the new moon. The wind blew furiously, the stars twinkled like fire flies, the water lilies in the pools closed their flowers, the trees became destitute of flowers and fruits, the dust arose like a grey cloud, the minas uttered their plaintive notes, and meteors fell from the sky with a loud noise. The left hand of the experienced Khara trembled as he sat in his chariot, his sword fell from him, the tears dimmed his eyes whilst he was looking around, and his head began to be seized with pain. But Khara was infatuated, and would not return, and he laughed aloud and said to the Rakshasas — "These omens, which are so terrifying to behold, are nothing in my eyes. To me, who am full of strength, they are but trifling things, with my sharp arrows I can smite even the stars from the sky, I can kill even Yama, and conquer death itself. I never will return until I have pierced Rama and Lakshmana with my keen arrows, and my sister has fulfilled the wish of her heart and drank their blood. In my rage I can transfix the mighty Indra, the sovereign of the gods, who rides the mebrated elephant Airavata, and holds the thunderbolt in his hand. How much more easily then can I subdue two mortals!" The army of the Rákshasas re-

Khara in his  
infatuation  
disregards the  
omens.

joined as they heard the extravagant boasting of their chief Khara; and rushed on eager for the fight to the hermitage of Ráma.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Meanwhile, the dreadful omens which Khara regarded so slightly, had greatly troubled the minds of Ráma and Lakshmana. And Ráma said to his brother:—"Behold, O Lakshmana, these portentous omens which are intended for the destruction of the Rákshasas: All my arrows emit a smoke as if anxious for the battle, and my golden bow begins to stir of its own accord: The birds of the forest are uttering their mournful notes, as if calamity and fear of death had already reached them: The trembling of my right arm tells me that a dreadful war and a great war are near: I hear the roaring of the Rákshasas, and the loud beating of their drums: O Lakshmana, take your bow and arrows in your hand and conduct Sítá to a cave in the mountain, which is difficult of access, and covered with trees: There shall she witness at a distance the alarming tumult of the battle, and you shall hear the sound of the bowstrings filling the air: Reply not to my words, O Lakshmana, but go without delay: You are a powerful hero, and are doubtless able to destroy all these Rákshasas, but it is my desire to kill them all myself." Thus addressed by Ráma, Lakshmana took his bow and arrows and conducted Sítá to an inaccessible cave.

Ráma perceives that the omens portend a terrible war.

Directs Lakshmana to conduct Sítá to an inaccessible cave.

Then Ráma girt on his coat of mail, bright as the glowing flame; and he resembled a column of fire blazing in the midst of darkness. Drawing forth his mighty arrows, that heroic one stood filling all the quarters of the heavens with the sound of his bow. The gods, the Gandharvas, the Siddhas, and the Charanas, came down from heaven to behold the combat. The sages illustrious in this world, and the sages who inhabit the mansions of Brahma, said to each other:—"May peace attend the cows, the Bráhmans, and the various worlds: May Ráma subdue the night-prowling sons of Pulastya in the battle, as that mighty Vishnu, who wields the chakra, conquered the great Asuras." Vain of their powers, the shouting army of the Rákshasas had now

Ráma awaits the coming of the Rákshasa army.



HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Fearful appearance of the Raksha as before the hermitage of Rāma

Tranquillity of Rāma.

Wrath of Rāma.

Recoil of the Rakshasa army at the sight of Rāma.

Khara leads the Lakshasa army to the first charge against Rāma

arrived at the hermitage of Rāma, and they collected together like a vast herd of elephants thronging each other, while Khara their Chief halted his chariot. Their shields and standards appeared on every side, while their loud roarings, screaming yells, and hideous laughter filled the whole forest. The beasts of the jungle fled away without looking behind them. The sun became dim and shrouded with darkness, and the wind blew furiously against the Rakshasas. The vast army poured down swiftly upon Rāma like the raging sea, but Rāma stood still with a smiling countenance, filling the heavens with the loud twanging of his bow string. The face of Rāma blazed with the burning of his wrath, as terrible as the conflagration of the universe, and the gods and Danavas were stricken with fear, as when the great god Siva rose with his bow to destroy the sacrifice of Daksha. The celestials in the air beheld with astonishment the face of the angry Pāma which resembled the face of Yama at the end of a Yuga. The Rakshasas, eager as they were for the battle, were turned to stone with surprise, and stood immovable as mountains. Khara then said to his brother Dúshana — ‘There is no river to be crossed, yet the army are all standing on one foot. Inquire O great one, the cause of this!’ Then Dushana went forth and saw Rāma standing armed before him, at the sight of whom the whole army of the Rakshasas had recoiled on one foot from fear, and he returned to Khara, and said — ‘‘Command me to combat with Rāma that I with my arrows may send him to the abode of Yama.’’ At these words Khara himself drove his chariot towards Rāma as Rahu rushes upon the god of day. The army of the Rakshasas were goaded to the battle by the sight of Khara, and they ran forward with a deep roaring, and their bows and ornaments, their chariots, and their fire resembling coats of mail, appeared like a rushing of dark clouds at the time of sun rising. Then Khara assailed Rāma with a thousand arrows, while all the Rakshasas poured on the dread inspiring archer a mighty shower of iron clubs, javelins, darts, scimitars, and battle axes. Then Rāma was surrounded by Rakshasas of horrid aspect, as the clouds

surround the Raja of mountains with streams of rain, or as the great god Siva is surrounded on the lunar days by all his servants and courtiers. He received all the arrows of the Rákshasas as the sea receives all the rivers; and although wounded by their dreadful shafts, the hero felt no pain.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

---

Like a huge mountain pierced with many flaming thunderbolts, Ráma stood with his whole body streaming with blood, but shining like the evening sun surrounded by fiery clouds. Seeing the hero hemmed round by so many thousands, the gods, the Gandharvas, the Siddhas, and the great sages began to lament. At length Ráma, filled with anger, drew his bow even to a circle, and discharged keen arrows by thousands. The fatal shafts, dreadful as the snare of death, winged with the feathers of kingfishers and adorned with gold, were discharged by Ráma as if in sport. They pierced the bodies of Rákshasas, and then mounted

Ráma dis-  
charges his  
terrible arrows.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

was shrouded by those arrows and the air was darkened, whilst the earth was covered with wounded Rákshasas and fallen weapons. The exhausted, the killed, the wounded and the mangled were scattered here and there in thousands. The field of battle, dreadful to behold, was strewed with turbaned heads, with hands and arms and legs adorned with ornaments, with horses and elephants and broken chariots, with chamaras and fans and flag-staffs, with broken spears and scimitars, and with innumerable arrows and other weapons, and the few remaining Rákshasas fled deeply afflicted before the conquering Ráma.

Third charge  
of the Rák  
shasas  
against Ráma.

After this the weakened remnant of the Rakshasas again put their trust in Khara and Dúshana, and arose in battle a third time against Ráma. The mighty hero, humble but stern fast in mind, once more stood against the arrogant few who still urged the fight. He received the dreadful shower of weapons like a bull catching the large drops of autumnal rain. At length, he seized a divine weapon to destroy in one mo-

Slaughtering of  
the Rákshasas.

ment the whole of the Rakshasas. Blazing like the fire, he scattered in an instant the whole of the forces of Khara and Dushana. Then with his arrows he cut asunder the great bow of Dushana, and slew the horses that were harnessed to his chariot, and with three more arrows he smote Dushana on the breast, and took off the head of his charioteer. Then Dushana seized a club which resembled a mountain peak, it was encompassed with a golden band like that on the staff of Yama, and was full of sharp iron spikes, destructive to the armies of the gods, besmeared with the flesh of foes, rough to the touch, dashing gates and doors to pieces, and terrific to all beings. Grasping this mighty club Dushana flew at Ráma, but Ráma cut off both his hands, and Dushana, deprived of his club, fell to the ground like an elephant of the Himálayas deprived of his tusks, and he was instantly killed by the heroic Ráma.

Death of  
Dushana.

Combat be-  
tween Ráma  
and Khara.

Then Khara, seeing his brother slain, roared like the roar of a kettle drum which has been wetted with water, and rushing towards Ráma, he discharged flaming arrows of iron as fatal as enraged serpents, but Ráma stopped the

shafts with his own arrows, as the foot rope stops the elephant. Khara in his own chariot then approached Rama as a grasshopper leaps into the fire, but Rama seized the bow of Vishnu, which had been given him by Agastya and discharged innumerable arrows, and broke the chariot of Khara, and killed his horses and charioteer. Khara then leaped forward with a mighty club in his hand and hurled it at Rama like a flaming thunder-bolt, but Rama turned it back again and shivered it to pieces with a fire-weapon of divine power. Rama now smiled at Khara, and said—  
“You vile Rakshasa, your boasted might has now been seen, and you roar aloud in vain. You promised to wipe away the tears of these slain Rakshasas, but your promise has been broken. To-day I will take away the life of someone in a war, even as Garuda seized the amrita. To-day the earth shall drink your blood bubbling in foam from your throat. Your carcass shall roll in the dust, and you shall embrace the earth as a man embraces a beautiful spouse. To-day all the sages shall hear that you have been killed, and shall traverse the forest of Dandaka without fear. To-day all the women of the Rakshasas shall tremble with alarm at being deprived of their lords, they shall taste of the grief which they deserve for being united to such husbands. You ever cruel wretch the terror of the Brahmanas, apostate from all virtue, saturated with every crime, you shall receive to-day the reward of your vile actions.” Thus speaking, Rama fought with Khara for the last time, and discharged a flaming arrow which pierced his mail armour even to the bone, and Khara fell upon the earth burnt up as with fire, and gave up the ghost. Then the sound of the divine kettle drums was heard in the heavens, and flowers fell from the sky upon the head of Rama, and the gods and sages, and all the celestial beings, poured praises and benedictions upon the conqueror of the Rakshasas. And Lalashmana and Sita came out of the cave, and Sita embraced her husband with great joy, and Rama embraced the fawn-eyed Sita, and appeared among the adoring sages as glorious as Indra in heaven.

LITERATURE OF  
INDIA  
K. A. 2.

Death of Khara.

Retaliation of  
the gods.

Sita returns to  
L. A.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

News of the  
defeat of the  
Ráksasas  
carried to  
Ravana.

Ravana per-  
suaded by the  
sessenger to  
carry off Sita.

Ravana's sis-  
ter  
Máricha.

Máricha's  
sister Ravana  
frustrated  
tempt.

Now a certain Rakshasa escaped from that dreadful battle, and hastened to Lanka, and told the melancholy tidings to the ten headed Ravana. Then the eyes of Ravana were red with anger, and hearing that his two brothers, Khara and Dushana, had been killed by Rama, he snuffed up the air like the Raja of Serpents, and he said — "I will go myself and kill Rama and Lakshmana." And the Rakshasa replied — "O ten headed one, Rama can no more be overcome by you in battle, nor by the world of Rakshasas, than heaven can be obtained by sinful men. Not all the gods and Asuras united can accomplish his death. But listen to my plan for his destruction. He has a beautiful wife whose name is Sita, she is a woman of delicate shape, of golden complexion, and the most exact symmetry. Adorned with jewels, no goddess, nor Apsara, nor Nága can be compared with her, where then could be found her equal among mortals? Carry off this beautiful woman, and Rama will be crushed in the great forest, for he cannot exist without Sita." Ravana was pleased with this counsel, and said — 'To-morrow I will go with my charioteer, and bring Sita to this great city.' Then Ravana ascended his chariot which was drawn by asses, and was as splendid as the sun, and he went to the dwelling of Máricha who was his minister, and told him all that the Rakshasa had said, and he entreated Máricha to counsel him concerning his carrying away the wife of Rama. Máricha however replied — "What enemy in the guise of a friend has mentioned Sita to you? The man who has thus stirred you up is undoubtedly your bitterest foe. He wishes to engage you in plucking out the fangs of a venomous serpent! O Ravana, Rama is a furious elephant maturated with energy, his tusks are full grown, he is the fierce man lion destroying the wounded Rakshasas as though they were trembling deer. O Ravana, rouse not this sleeping lion whose body is full of arrows, and whose teeth are sharpened scimitars. Return in peace to Lanka, and enjoy yourself among your own wives, and let Rama enjoy his spouse in the forest." So the ten headed Ravana

listened to the words of Máricha, and returned to his stately palace at Lanká.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

The foregoing narrative, as already indicated, is essentially Hindú. No one but an oriental bard would have ventured to depict a woman making such proposals to two men in succession, as were addressed by Súrpa-nakhá to Ráma and Lakshmana; and no audience, excepting an oriental one, would have appreciated the jesting replies of Ráma and his brother, or have applauded the savage proceeding of Lakshmana. The description of the wars that ensued is apparently the work of pure imagination, whilst the similes are often far-fetched; but still the details exhibit some brilliant conceptions of fancy, which although altogether unreal, serve to amuse the intellect in much the same manner as a display of fireworks amuses the eye. The slaughter of fourteen Rákshasas with fourteen iron arrows, bright as the sun and sledged with golden feathers, is an exploit on the part of the leading hero which would have satisfied most romance writers. But Ráma was to be represented as a god, and consequently the story was told of his triumphantly resisting three distinct charges of an army of fourteen thousand Rákshasas, as dreadful as the thunder-cloud and as valiant as tigers, and ultimately slaying them all. Such a narrative, half heroic and half divine, never fails to create a deep impression upon a Hindú audience. The fantastic character of the omens which preceded the battle, and the extravagant idea that the gods came down from heaven to witness the conflict, are perfectly understood and fully accepted by every Hindú. The descriptions

Review of the  
foregoing nar-  
rative of  
Ráma's wars on  
account of  
Súrpa-nakhá.

Brilliant  
imagination  
displayed in the  
details

Divinity of  
Ráma  
manifested  
in his victories  
over the  
Rákshasa  
army

Impression  
of the story  
upon a Hindú  
audience.

Reality of the  
descriptions  
the Hrs

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

It is a type of  
Khara's  
wonderful  
chariot

The Rākshasa  
army

Deep personal  
interest taken  
by the audience  
in Rama's  
single combats.

Fruitful of  
glory to  
Rama!

again are very graphic, although exuberant beyond measure, and the pictures which they bring before the mind's eye are real and substantial forms to the Hindu, although they must appear as mere idle dreams to the European. Thus every Hindu audience accepts as a grand reality the marvellous chariot in which Khara and Dushana ride to battle. Each one realizes the appearance of the vast car, spacious as a city, and moving at the will of its occupants, sparkling with jewels and golden moons, decked with banners and hung with bells, and resplendent with pictures of fishes, flowers, trees, rocks, birds, and stars. In like manner each one can perceive the army of Rākshasas rushing with yells and howlings upon the quiet hermitage of Rama, and pouring a shower of iron clubs, javelins, darts, scimitars, and battle axes upon the dauntless hero, whilst Rama stands as bright and unmoved as a pillar of fire, and replies with countless arrows which carry death and destruction amongst the advancing host. Lastly, the audience always takes a deep personal interest in the single combats between Rama and Dushana, and Rama and Khara. Every one exults and sympathizes in the abusive language which Rama lavishly employs against Khara, and which is scarcely compatible with the divine character of the incarnation of Vishnu, although in strict accordance with the ancient usage of the Kshatriyas. Finally, when the story is told that Khara is slain by the flaming arrow amidst the rejoicings of the gods and sages, one and all rejoice in like manner, and the air is filled with the pious chorus of "Glory to Rama!"

## CHAPTER XVII.

### RÁVANA'S ABDUCTION OF SÍTÁ.

THE defeat of Khara and Dúshana now brings *Rávana himself upon the scene*. This powerful sovereign is said to have been not only a worshipper of Brahma, but a grandson of a Bráhman sage named Pulastya; consequently he does not appear as an aboriginal monarch, but as a heretic, a renegade, an apostate, who was employing against the Bráhmans the very powers which he had acquired by the worship of Brahma.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Rávana, Raja  
of Lanka, ap-  
pears upon the  
scene

His real cha-  
racter

The narrative of the carrying away of Sítá by *Rávana* requires but a brief introduction. The design was first suggested to Rávana, as already seen, by a Rákshasa who had fled from the dreadful battle with Ráma; but he is said to have been dissuaded from the attempt by his Minister Mánicha, the very Rákshasa whom Ráma had driven into the sea in the great battle near the hermitage of Visvámitra. Súrpa-nakhá, however, was resolved to be revenged alike on Ráma and Sítá; and she accordingly stirred up the rage of Rávana against the one, and excited his desires for the other. The story requires no preliminary explanation. It will be sufficient to bear in mind that according to the popular belief the Rákshasas had the power of *transforming*

transforming  
as the woman  
the Rákshasa  
transformed him  
into a woman



HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Extraordinary  
exception that  
Ravana had  
ten heads and  
twenty arms a  
multitude  
belonging to the  
Hindus

Probable origin  
of the concep-  
tion

The narrative  
of the capture  
of Sita by  
Lanka.

Stephanakha  
carries the news  
of Sita's  
capture to  
Lanka.

I have put in of  
Lanka Ravana

suming any form at will, and that Ravana in his normal shape possessed ten heads and twenty arms. However wild and unnatural this idea may seem to the European, it is a substantive conception to every Hindu, for it is formed in boyhood, and strengthened by the frequent sight of numerous pictures of the terrible Rikshasa. From the narrative Ravana would appear to be only a mortal sovereign of the ordinary human type as regards appearance and shape, and indeed, in his character as a lover of woman, it is difficult to conceive of him as any other than a mortal man. But the Hindu realizes him as a huge being moving along the earth like a vast tower, with ten crowned heads rising on separate necks, and twenty arms stretching out on either side. Such a monstrosity is the pure creation of a disordered brain, an unmeaning mass of incongruities, and probably arose from some childish idea that by multiplying the arms the physical strength of the demon was increased tenfold, and by multiplying the number of heads, the intelligence or cunning of the Rikshasa was increased in the same ratio.

The narrative of the circumstances connected with the capture of Sita by Ravana is as follows —

Now when Surpanakha, the sister of Ravana, saw that her brothers Khara and Dushana, and the mighty army of Rikshasas, had been slain by the single mortal Rama, she set up a horrid yell like the roaring of a thunder cloud. She then hastened to Lanka, and beheld Ravana seated in front of his palace upon a throne of gold, as bright as the sun and as glowing as flame, and he was surrounded by his Counsellors as Indra is surrounded by the Maruts. He had ten heads and twenty arms, and his eyes were of the colour of copper, whilst his teeth were white like the new moon.

His form was vast like a mountain, and his ten faces were each as terrible as that of the all destroying Yama. He was a tall and heroic Rākshasa, possessing all the signs of royalty, and invincible to the gods. His body was as smooth as a polished onyx, and his ears were adorned with earrings, but his breast was scarred by the thunder-bolt of Indra, the tusks of Airāvata, and the chakra of Vishnu. He could shake the seas with his strides, and rend asunder the tops of mountains with his brawny arms. He was the breaker of all laws, the ravisher of the wives of others, the murderer of the Brahmans, the obstructor of sacrifice, the enemy of sacred vows. This was he, who went to the city of Bhāgavati the great city of resplendent serpents, and conquered Vasukī, and carried away the beloved wife of the snake Tāksaka. This was he, who conquered Kuvera on the Kailāsa mountain, and carried away the chariot Pushpaka, which constantly obeys the will of the rider, who in his rage destroyed the divine forests of Chitra, Nalīna, Nandana, and all the gardens of the gods, who by the strength of his mighty arms stopped the sun and the moon in their course, and prevented their rising. This was he who performed religious austerities in a vast forest for ten thousand years, standing on his head with his feet uppermost in the midst of five fires, who by permission of Brāhma traversed the air in an instant, and assumed any shape at will, who offered his ten heads as a sacrifice to Śiva, who caused the affrighted sun to rise upon his city with a subdued lustre. He was the cruel one, the wicked, and the furious, who by the blessing of Brāhma was invulnerable to gods and demons, and to every being excepting beast and man.

He is mighty powers

His wickedness

His exploits

Conquered  
Vāsukī and  
KuveraHe is religious  
austeritiesHe is invulnerable to  
all excepting  
beasts and  
menSūrya is killed as  
a prey and is  
to Kāvāta

When Surpanakhā saw her brother Rāvana, adorned with excellent ornaments and beautiful flowers, she reproached him flaming with rage, and with wide stretched fiery eyes, and a dejected countenance, and mad with fear and terror, she yelled out these horrid accents—"Intoxicated with the pleasure of sense, you disregard the dreadful danger which has arisen. The Raja who is devoted to his lusts, even though he be lord of the world, is detested by

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

his subjects, as men detest a fire in which the dead have been burned. The Raja who does not in due time attend to his own affairs, will perish together with his Raj. The Raja who listens not to his spies, and is incapable of governing himself, is avoided by men, as elephants avoid the swampy edge of a river. Know you not that Kharr and Dushana, with fourteen thousand fiery Rakshasas, have been slain by the single mortal Ráma? Know you not that Ráma has become the saviour of the sages, and has rendered the forest of Dandaka secure from the Rakshasas? O Rávana, you can discern nothing since you have not learned from your spies of the terrible slaughter of the Rakshasas?"

Súrpa nakhá  
des rí s Ráma  
to Rávana a d  
d átes on the  
beauty of Sítá

Sitting among his courtiers, Rávana was enraged at these abusive speeches of Súrpa nakhá, and cried out — "Who is Rama?" Súrpa nakhá replied — "Rama, the son of Dasaratha is of long arm and elongated eye, he is the chief of all those who wear the habit of a devotee, he is equal in form to Kama. he carries a bow resembling a rainbow, and discharges blazing iron arrows as fatal as poisonous serpents. I saw not the valiant Rama draw his bow, but I saw the army falling by his arrows as a full crop of corn is smitten by the rains sent by Indra. O Ravana, this Rama has a beautiful wife, of charming face, and slender and delicate form, and complexion as bright as molten gold. He who is embraced by Sítá enjoys a felicity beyond that of Indra. O Ravana, it was because I wanted to bring away this beautiful woman to become your wife that my nose and ears were cut off by the cruel Lakshmana. When you behold Sítá, you will instantly be pierced by the arrows of the god of love. O Raja of the Rakshasas revenge the death of your brothers upon Ráma and Lakshmana, and take the beautiful Sita to be your wife."

Counsels  
Rá a a to carry  
away Sítá

Rávana agra n  
vis is Mārīcha  
a d de ir a  
Mārīcha to  
assist h m i  
carry g away  
Sítá.

Having heard these roving words of his sister Súrpa nakhá, Ravana ordered his chariot, and again proceeded to the abode of Mārīcha. And Ravana said — "O Mārīcha, my father, I am distressed and you are my great refuge. That contemptible Rama, the meanest of the Kshatriyas, expelled

by his father, has been the murderer of my army: This tame and ignorant fellow, intent on the evil of all creatures, by whom my sister was disfigured to show his powers in taking away her ears and nose, has a wife named Sítá, who is in the prime of youth and beauty, resembling Lakshmi without her lotos: Her I will bring away this day, and you must be my helper! Do you assume the shape of a golden deer studded with silver spots, and go to the hermitage of Ráma: Sítá, seeing your beauty, will ask Ráma and Lakshmana to procure you for her; and when you have beguiled the brothers from the hermitage, I will carry off Sítá through the air, as Ráhu takes away the light of the moon."

Entreats  
Márícha to take  
the form of a  
golden deer.

Hearing these words respecting Ráma, the countenance of Márícha became withered; and he licked his parched lips, and stared with fixed eyes at Rávana; and spoke with joined hands, as follows:—"O Raja of the Rákshasas, you have been deceived: Ráma is magnanimous and highly renowned; he was not abandoned by his father nor ever disgraced: He is not covetous, nor evil disposed, nor a mean Kshatriya; his subjects were not in distress nor were the Bráhmans averse to him: He is Chief of the universe, as Indra is sovereign of the gods: How can you desire to carry off his wife Sítá, whose virtue is her preservation, and whose splendour is equal to that of fire? If you carry away the wife of Ráma, your destruction is certain: In former times I traversed the wilderness of Dándaka with the might of a thousand elephants; and Ráma, then a boy of fifteen, came to the hermitage of Viswámitra to protect the Bráhmans: I assumed a form as vast as a mountain, and went to the hermitage without fear; but this beardless boy shot a dreadful arrow at my breast, and I was cast far away into the sea: My life was preserved because he desired not to kill me; but if when a child he overcame me, how shall I engage against him now? O Mahárajá, if in wantonness you carry away Sítá, you will involve yourself in the most dreadful misery; the city of Lanká will be reduced to ruins; your Rákshasas will be slain in battle by Ráma; and your women

Alarm of  
Márícha

Márícha  
dilates on the  
power of Ráma.

Remonstrates  
with Rávaná  
against carry-  
ing away Sítá

Relates the  
story of his  
being cast by  
Ráma into the  
sea.

Prophecies  
uttered by  
Rávaná carrying  
away Sítá

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ravana con-  
temptuously  
replied at his  
request for no  
advice.

Command is  
Maricha to take  
the form of a  
golden deer and  
gambol in the  
presence of  
Sita.

Maricha un-  
willingly obeys

Indulging  
Ravana to  
use his  
chariot

will run away in all directions Engaged in war with Rāma, you will soon lose your honour, your prosperity, your Raj, your wives, and your own life"<sup>1</sup>

When Ravana heard these words, he slighted the wise reasoning of Maricha, as one who is desirous of death refuses medicine Considering Maricha as one speaking for his hurt, Ravana, impelled by his fate, thus contemptuously replied —“Why, Maricha, speak these silly things to me? Your speech is as useless as seed sown upon salt I cannot be affrighted by your words, I cannot fear Rama, and most assuredly I will carry off the wife of the murderer of Khara The sovereign of the world is not to be contradicted, but to be addressed in gentle and pleasing language I did not ask you, O Rikshasa, respecting the good or evil of the undertaking, nor about my own ability, but I requested your assistance only Assuming the form of a golden deer studded with silver spots, do you go into the view of Sita and gambol in her presence After performing this service, go where you will, and I will then give you the half of my Raj”

Maricha was sorely perplexed at the commands of Ravana, for he knew that his death was near, and he sighed repeatedly, and said —“I will go, but I shall be slain, nor will you, O Ravana, return alive!” Ravana replied —“Now I see that you are Maricha, but from your former speech I thought you must be some other Rikshasa Speedily mount with me this resplendent air traversing chariot, drawn by asses with the heads of Rikshasas Having allured Sita, go where you will, I will speedily carry her off from her protectors”

<sup>1</sup> These events are differently described in the *Ajhyatma Ramayana*. Both Maricha and Ravana are there said to have acknowledged that Rāma was an incarnation of the deity and each is said to have believed that if he fell by the hand of Rāma he would obtain everlasting salvation Ravana therefore argued that if conquered by Rāma he should obtain paradise whilst if he became conqueror he would retain possession of Sita Maricha had another alternative If he refused to comply with the request of Ravana, he would be killed by him, and would consequently go to hell If on the other hand he assumed the form of a deer he would be killed by Rama and go to heaven

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Journey of  
Rávana and  
Márícha to the  
hermitage of  
Ráma at  
Panchavati

Márícha as-  
sumes the form  
of a very  
beautiful deer.

Sítá sees the  
deer and  
requests Ráma  
to procure its  
skin for her.

Ráma leaves  
Sítá in charge  
of Lakshmana,  
and prepares to  
chase the  
deer

Lakshmana  
reminds Ráma  
that Márícha  
could take a  
deer's form.

Rávana and Márícha then mounted the chariot which resembled a palace, and flew through the air over the forests, the mountains, the rivers, the countries, and the cities on their way, until they came to the wilderness of Dándaka, where stood the hermitage of Ráma. There the Raja of the Rákshasas alighted with Márícha from the gold-adorned chariot, and he looked round, and took Márícha by the hand, and said:—"Here is the hermitage of Ráma surrounded by plantain trees: O my companion, speedily do that for which we came hither." At these words of Rávana, the sage Márícha assumed the shape of a deer, and went to the door of the hut; and his horns were tipped with sapphire, his face was variegated with black and white, his mouth resembled the red lotos, and his azure eyes were like blue water-lilies. In this captivating form, adorned with various jewels, and grazing at its own will, the silver-spotted deer cropped the tender shoots of the trees, and at length entered the plantain grove to attract the eye of Sítá.

Now while this lovely deer was grazing and gamboling near the hut, the charming-eyed Sítá, eager to pluck flowers, went forth among the trees. There the beautiful one beheld that deer covered with fine hair, and adorned with jewels, and bespangled with pearls; its sides presenting a beautiful mixture of gold and silver colour. Then Sítá was filled with surprise, and repeatedly called to Ráma:—"Come, my beloved, and behold this golden deer with variegated sides: I long to repose at ease on the golden skin of this deer." Then Ráma was highly pleased, and said to his brother:—"Observe, O Lakshmana, the strong desire of Sítá for this deer-skin: Be on your guard this day respecting Sítá, while I go and pierce the deer with an arrow: Having killed it, I will speedily bring its skin hither; go not from home until I return: Obtaining this skin, Sítá will repose this day as magnificently as she did at Ayodhyá." The ardent hero then threw his golden bow over his shoulder, but Lakshmana, profoundly reflecting, said to him:—"It was formerly told us by the sages that Márícha, the mighty Rákshasa, who assumes illusive forms, sometimes assumes that of a deer; and

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

in this form he has slain many Princes. O Rāma consider if a deer exists made of gold, with horns of coral, and gems for its eyes! I believe this to be a factitious animal, or a Rākshasa in the form of a deer." But Sītā continued to pray Rāma to bring her the lovely deer, and he was equally desirous of securing it, and taking his bow and quivers he went forth into the jungle.

Rāma cha es  
the deer a d  
s yaht

When Rāma approached the deer it bounded forwards and sometimes it appeared before his eyes, and then it retired to different parts of the wood, until it had drawn him to a considerable distance from the hermitage. After a long time Rama discharged a deadly arrow which pierced the heart of the deer formed Maricha. Pained with the wound, Mārīcha leaped from out of the body of the deer to the height of a palmyra tree, and fell down in the shape of a monstrous Rākshasa with vast teeth, and adorned with a golden necklace and various ornaments. Maricha then cried out with a voice resembling that of Rama — 'O Sītā, save me! O Lakshmana, save me!' With these words Maricha expired, and Rama, perceiving the illusion, exclaimed — 'I have killed Maricha!' Then he took the beautiful skin from the body of the deer, and remembering what Lakshmana had said, and pondering over the last words of the Rākshasa, he felt great alarm and returned in all haste to his hermitage.

Mārī ha  
returns to h s  
p oper form  
and lies crying  
for s ā a d  
Lakṣ mā s n a  
vo ce resemb  
l g that of  
Rā na.

Rāma takes the  
skin and  
returns to the  
hermitage

Meanwhile Sītā had heard the voice of Maricha in the forest, which resembled the voice of Rama, and she said to Lakshmana — 'Go and learn how it is with Rama. I have heard the piercing sound of his groan, and it becomes yon to

Sītā hears the  
vo ce of the  
deer and  
les res  
Lakṣ māna to  
ass at Rāma

\* The following curious comment upon this event occurs in the Adhyātma Rāmāyana — 'Should any one say Rama hath forgotten himself he with his eyes open and knowing the consequences followed the stag the answer is Rama being distanced from all things, no injury can occur to him. What power could he have over him? He hath performed various actions in this world for the sake of those who worship him. He fulfils the desires of those who adore him with sincerity. Besides it was necessary Ravana should commit some error that when his guilt was confirmed Rama might slay him. Pāna then I had no other object in view for he is never influenced by worldly objects. He is the Supreme Soul the everlasting Great One. Sītā loved him for her sake therefore he undid what she did.'

save your elder brother. Run quickly to Rāma who craves succour, and who lies in the power of the Rakshasas like a bull among lions.” Thus addressed Lakshmana forbore to go, and said — “Why, O goddess, are you thus distressed? My elder brother cannot be vanquished by the three worlds, the Rākshasa cannot give pain to his little finger.” Then Sita was filled with wrath, and exclaimed — “O Lakshmana, you are the enemy of your brother if you run not to his assistance. Surely you must be pleased with your brother’s distress, or you would not stand here so carelessly. Is it for my sake that, disregarding my words, you desire the death of Rama? Know, O hero, that I will not survive the

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Lakshmana  
hesitates to  
leave Sita.

Sita’s wrathful  
rejoaches.

<sup>3</sup> The death of Mārīchī furnishes the author of the *Adhvātma Rāmāyana*, with a further text for expatiating on the divinity of Rāma. It is said that when Mārīchī had uttered the dying words quoted above, he obtained salvation in the following manner — “When Mārīchī had uttered these words his soul departed from his mortal frame and a small flame issuing from his body entered into the foot of Pāma. So great, so exalted is the name of Rāma, that even the perpetrator of evil deeds, under the form of a demon, obtained salvation by being absorbed into the essence of the deity. Such a lot was his, as others who have passed thousands of years in religious penances could not attain. If any man, who may have committed during any of his lives the most heinous crimes, shall at his death with sincerity pronounce the name of Rāma, his sins, of whatever nature they may be, shall be forgiven; he will be absorbed into the divinity. Thus Mārīchī obtained his death from the hand of Rāma, he beheld him, what doubt then could exist after pronouncing his name that he should attain this heavenly bliss free from future birth and regeneration.

Brahma and the spirits of heaven assembling in the heavens above showered down Ujjata flowers on Līma. They conversed together, saying — ‘Behold, brethren! how this sinner has been saved, such is the benevolence of Rāma. What good actions had this demon performed that he could deserve such happiness? Behold what supreme bliss Rāma hath conferred on him who was peculiarly guilty who destroyed numbers of saints. Such is the reward granted to those who worship Rāma who call upon his name. Great indeed is the excellence and purity of Rāma’s name.’ Brahma then said to the gods — ‘This demon who has been slain by the hand of Rāma during former births worshipped Rāma with sincerity and faith even during his late existence he entertained the greatest dread of him. By the blessing of Rāma’s name, and of his former faith, his sins have been remitted. He has, from having resigned his life at Rāma’s feet, and beholding him absorbed into him. Attend to me ye heavenly spirits! while I explain the cause of these things. If a Brāhman or Chandalā, or demon, or any other person be he a Mahārāja or a beggar, shall have been guilty of the most enormous crimes if at his death he pronounce the name of Pāma, it is expressly stated in the Vedas that that person’s sins will be remitted, and that he will obtain everlasting salvation. Brahma and the gods, having thus conversed together, paid their adorations to Līma, and departed to their own abodes.’



HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Lakshmana  
a ures Sita  
th at Rama is in  
i danger at d  
it at th voi o  
as that of a  
Rikshasa

Sita charges  
Lakshmana  
with des r g to  
marry her

Lakshmana  
re instantly  
leaves Sita also  
and goes in  
search of  
Rama  
Rama and Si-  
ta enter nitaga  
of Rama in the  
Si of a  
pilgrimage  
me deca t  
His address to  
Sita.

death of Rama an instant, why then do you hesitate to go in quest of Rama?" To Sita, suffused with tears and timid as a doe, Lakshmana replied thus—"O goddess, there is no apprehension to be felt for Rama, he is invulnerable in battle. O Sita, it ill becomes you to speak to me thus. You are a charge committed to my care by the faithful and magnanimous Rama, and I cannot leave you. It was not the voice of Rama that was heard by you, but the voice of some hostile Rikshasa. Were his danger ever so imminent, Rama would never utter accents so despicable and so unworthy of him, never would the saviour of the celestials exclaim—"O Sita save me!" Sita, her eyes reddened with rage, replied to Lakshmana as follows—"You cruel wretch, do you aspire to obtain me for yourself? Have you followed Rama into the jungle for my sake, or is a secret emissary from Bharata? But I tell you that I will never leave my husband Rama, nor desire another man. I will enter the blazing fire, but not even with my foot will I touch any man beside Rama." Sita then began to beat her breast with both her hands, when Lakshmana filled with agitation, thus replied with joined hands—"O Sita, I cannot reply to you who are my deity. Such language from a woman is not surprising, for women are regardless of what is right, and often rouse discord between brothers. O Sita, your words are like red hot iron in my ears." Then repenting of this harsh language, Lakshmana said—"O beauteous one, I will go to Rama. May good attend you, and all the gods protect you, I tremble at the necessity to which I am reduced! When I return may I see you with Rama!" Sita, drowned in tears, replied—"O Lakshmana, if I am deprived of Rama I will enter the river Godavari, and hang myself, or take poison, or enter the blazing fire, but never will I touch any man save Rama." Having thus vowed to Lakshmana, Sita continued to beat her bosom in an agony of distress, and Lakshmana tried to console her, but she would not speak another word, and he bowed to her feet and went out in the forest to seek for Rama.

When both Rama and Lakshmana had thus been drawn

away from Sítá, the wicked Rávana left his chariot, and assumed the form of a mendicant, and went speedily towards the hermitage. He was clothed in a thin red garment, with a tuft of matted hair on the crown of his head, an umbrella in his hand, shoes on his feet, a trident, a bag hanging by his side with his provisions, and a dish to receive alms.<sup>4</sup> In this garb the evil one approached Sítá, and said:—"You pleasing fair one, whose smile and eyes are captivating, you shed a radiance around you: You timid one in full flower, dressed in yellow silk and adorned with garlands, how came you to reside in this forest? Who are you and whither have you come?" Seeing Rávana in the guise of a Bráhma-man, Sítá showed him every respect, and welcomed him with all that was proper to entertain a stranger, and related to him the story of herself and her lord, saying:—"Expelled from the Raj by the word of Kaikeyí, we roam about the thick forest guarded by our power: Be content and remain here until the return of my husband: Ráma will receive you with great respect, for he is pleasing in speech and a lover of devotees."

Sítá, seeing Rávana in the guise of a Bráhma-man, treats him with respect

When Sítá had thus spoken, the mighty Raja of the Rákshasas replied in these heart-appalling words:—"Hear who I am, and whence I come; for I have taken this assumed form to see you: I am that Rávana, the tormentor of the world, by whom gods and men have been driven hither and thither; and it was by my order, O beautiful one, that Khara guarded this wilderness of Dándaka: I am the brother of Kuvera, and grandson of Pulastya, who was the son of Brahma: I have received a blessing from the self-existent Brahma: I am able to assume any form, or go to any place: My name is Rávana, and I am known throughout the universe by my power: Your beauty, Ó smiling one, arrayed in yellow silk, eclipses in my eyes the beauty of all my own wives: O Sítá, numerous are my wives, be you my Rání, and the chief of them all: Lanká, my delightful

Rávana makes himself known to Sítá.

Invites Sítá to become his chief Éánt.

Describes his city, and palace

<sup>4</sup> This is an accurate description of a religious mendicant such as may often be seen in the present day.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

city, is an island surrounded by the sea, situated upon a mountain top adorned with seven elevated peaks, encircled by a deep moat, filled with palaces and magnificent edifices, and renowned throughout the three worlds like Amarávati, the city of Indra. This capital of the Rakshasas is a charming place built by Viswa karmá. There, O Sita, you shall walk with me among the groves, and feel no wish to return to this forest. You shall be the chief of all my wives, and five thousand handmaids, adorned with every ornament, shall attend you ! ”

Wrathful reply  
of Sita.

The slender waisted Sitá, enraged at this address of Ravana, replied to him with contemptuous words as follows — “ Know that I am the daughter of Raja Janaka, the daughter in law of Maháraya Dasaratha, the beloved wife of Rama, and that I esteem my husband as a deity. Know that, faithful to my vows, I am the devoted follower of my husband, who at the command of his father resides in the forest of Dandaka. Know that I rest upon Rama, who is as great as the sovereign of the gods, and the source of all happiness, as Sachí rests upon her husband Indra. Know that I am devoted to that great and fortunate one, the chief of devotees, as Arundhati is devoted to Vasishtha. As a lioness attends a strong lion, so am I the constant attendant of the strong the full chested and the majestic Ráma. Do you, a pitiful jackal, wish to obtain a lioness, who am to you as a ray of the sun is to a fire fly ? Do you wish to snatch a fawn from a furious lion and hastily devour it ? ”

Ravana as-  
sumes his  
proper form

Having heard the words of Sitá, the ten headed Ravana twisted his hands together through rage, and spoke as follows — “ Infatuated as you are, O Sitá, I can only suppose that you know not my heroism and power. Standing in the air I can sustain with my hands both the earth and the sea and am able to kill Yama himself in battle. I can torment the sun, or pierce through the earth with my arrows. O foolish one, behold me changing my form, and assuming any shape at pleasure ! ” Saying thus, the angry Ravana threw off the form of a mendicant, and assumed his own shape, as vast as a mountain and as terrible as Yama. He had red

Description of  
Ravana.

eyes, a vast breast, huge arms like the fore-legs of a lion, HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV huge shoulders like those of a bull, and a spotted body. The hair of his ten heads emitted streams of fire, whilst his body was covered with black bristles like a mountain covered with the skins of black antelopes; and he was arrayed in garments of a blood-red colour, and monstrous earrings of heated gold flamed in all his ears. Thus with ten heads and twenty arms, and eyes glaring with rage, Rávana, Raja of the Rákshasas, stood before Sítá like a huge black cloud, and again spoke to her thus:—"Why are you attached to Ráma, who is clothed in the habit of a mendicant, and weak in understanding? If, O fair one, you desire a husband renowned throughout the three worlds, recline on me! I am a spouse worthy of you: O excellent one, abandon all thoughts of Ráma, and think upon me with affection, and I will never do that which is painful to you: It is foolish to reject me because I am a Rákshasa: I will, O timid one, be constantly under your control; and for a full year whilst your heart is affected for Ráma I will not speak a word to you that shall be unpleasant to your mind."

Rávana represents with Sítá.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

At this time the mighty Jatáyus, the Chief of Vultures, of vast energy and god-like strength, lay asleep on the

Cries of Sitá.  
Jatáyus, the  
Chief of  
Vultures, hears  
the cries of  
Sitá.

yana, as to be well worthy of notice, as exhibiting some of that charming play of language which frequently characterizes Telugu poetry. The following English translation of the passage is from the pen of a well known Telugu scholar, Mr C P Brown, late of the Madras Civil Service, and is extracted from the Madras Journal of Literature for 1839 —

"The fairy hind was of extraordinary beauty, as it rambled about, chewing the cud, with a tail as freakish as that of the peacock, the whiteness of the belly gleamed through the bowers, again its reddish sides glistened like amber, when vaulting it looked like the rainbow, or, as it sprung up it flashed like lightning. The forest herds of deer were startled at its singular appearance, for it lay as in ambush, and its form was suddenly seen, now here, now there, one while it drew near, and then as though startled it bounded aloft, rushing through the thickets, then with a leap it took refuge in a bower. One while it put its nose to the ground, wagging its tail and pricking its ears at distant sounds. Then it pricked one quivering ear and flew like the wind, then it reposed on a grassy spot, then rising it drew near the hermitage, it scratched its ear with one foot, and shook the high flowering boughs with its horns so as to pour the blossoms on the soil.

"While it thus strayed among the bowers of the recluses, the blooming Sitá with tinkling anklets came out of the arbour to collect the opening flowers. At the sight of this fairy fawn she was filled with surprise, she called to the lord of men, her spouse, and thus addressed him — 'Never till this day did I see so charming a creature as this! how I long to recline, O Prince, on a couch formed of its skin. O thou leader of the solar race, pursue this creature, strike it, and bring me its hide, yet why?' I wish thou couldst catch it without frightening it, which would be far better. O my spouse, we should keep it at our leafy dwelling, and when our appointed term finishes let us take the golden fawn home to the city and show it to the Mahārāja, and to my aunts and cousins, how they will be delighted at such a present."

"Thus spoke Sitá in affectionate tones, Lakshmana listened to her, and thus addressed Rāma — 'Was there ever, brother, seen so bright hued a fawn? Can it be that a brute creature has such wondrous colours? It must be a mere delusion, unfit to be credited.' Surely it must be a vision raised by (Asuras) demons, besides, possibly it is the hermit Mārīcha who lives here, for he is a cruel demon and continually roams the forest in a superhuman form. Have not we heard so? possibly it is that fiend, perchance he has come here to tempt us into ruin. Do not then set your gentle heart on this and be disquieted, or entertain the thought of catching the fawn. Besides, though the lady of Mithilā (i.e. Sitá) should be so simple, be not thou so foolish. O prince of men!"

"At these words Rāma looked on the bright countenance of Sitá, he smiled, and thus addressed Lakshmana — 'Why be agitated at this, O son of Sumitra? Though even it were a giant raised vision, certainly will I bring the deer home, and I will slay the mightiest giants that can come. Believe these two points, one or the other will I do, for I will chase it, I will slay it, and give the hide to Janaka's daughter. After so long a time she has made only this one request. Can I neglect Sitá? Can I decline the dead she points out? Stay thou with her affectionately, and neglect not the lady of the bower."

"He said and committed all to Lakshmana, and gently taking his bow from

beautiful peak of a mountain, with his back towards the HISTORY OF  
resplendent god of day, and the cries of Sítá reached his INDIA  
PART IV.

his brother's hand, he bent it, and duly set out, like Siva when he set out in pursuit of the *Lín gíral* who carried off the sacrifice

"He went on slinking behind the bush stooping as he walked, bending and running alongside, who never then looked back, he stood concealed, he was on the point of catching it, it escaped, and he was vexed. He laid the bow and arrows ready to shoot he laid his feet softly on the soil so as to make no sound, as he observed its traces, he eyed its path, and goings, and concealed himself 'Here it is' I'll catch it' Here it is most See! It is mine!" cried he merrily

"Thus thought he, but the deer caught a glimpse of him from afar, it let him draw near, but as he stretched to seize it, it bounded from him and fled 'Alas' cried he in anger, as it stood to gaze at Ráma Then it fled to the horizon, while the foam flowed from the corners of its mouth, it seemed out of heart then looking at the hunter it sprung up elastic and fled at speed, while the skies seemed to flash with its brightness, then it vaulted away, its tongue flashing like lightning bright as a waving torch, for it moved as rapid as a potter's wheel creaking at speed. Then it paused as though faint, it seemed to drop close to him, then like a goshawk it flew up to heaven Ráma was now wearied as well as a 'onished, he paused, he looked around, but now the creature to evade him stood still, but as he formed the idea of shooting it, again it vanished, then as he gave up the hope and turned homeward, behold it was again at his side, like a vision, and carried him who was now wearying, farther and farther, for deluding his glance, it fled into inaccessible hills

"Seeing this Ráma perceived that this was a fairy hind, he exclaimed — 'Where, O my foe, wilt thou hide from me?'

"So saying he levelled the celestial arrow at the prey, which instantly rolled over, and now laying aside the fairy form uttering a delusive shriek, cried — 'O Lakshmana! O Sítá!'

"Then stretching his prodigious giant corpse on the soil, the wretch gave up his life, it seemed as though all the giants and their prince Rávana fell, as though their capital, Lanká, perished.

"When this fairy deer fell on the earth the lord of Sítá was well pleased, for he clearly saw it was indeed Maricha, he remembered with approbation the words of his brother How deeply, thought he, will he and the bright eyed daughter of Janaka grieve at hearing their names uttered in the dying shriek of this deluder for he imitated my voice exactly, I marvel where they are and what has become of them

"So saying he mournfully pondered But the dreadful cry reached the ears of Sítá, and struck her with horror to the earth, then when she recovered her senses, she gazed wildly around and was utterly d wnc t

"Then in her agitation she raised the weeping cry, and gazing on Lakshmana, she exclaimed — 'Alas! son of Sumitrá, what may this be that has befallen us this day, surely Ráma cries on thee with weeping voice O hero, listen to that voice' Wilt not thou give ear to it? or does it not reach thy ear? thou shrinkest not, thou showest no terror, or horror, thou grieveest not, what is this? while my heart heaves violently with horror and despair' Alas! he went alone into the forest It is late and he cometh not, surely he hath this day fallen into the hands of the giants Delay not! go, I pray thee, to the prince!"

ears as though he had heard sounds in a dream, and they rent the heart of the Raja of Birds like the stroke of a

"She spoke pouring floods of tears, and Lakshmanā replied thus to the child of Janaka — 'Mother, why art thou alarmed? Surely no evil shall ever befall thy spouse Rama. Dost not thou know the valour of thy beloved lord? Is it right to give vent to words so agonizing? Surely this is the scream of some demon who wishes to terrify thy heart. What hath such a pitiful shriek to do with the hero of the solar race? O daughter of Janaka, wherefore art thou thus agitated? I will without hesitation follow the prince Rāma, and shall the giants who oppose him maintain their footing? They are no more than crickets that exult against wild-fire—They will in the end fall into it and turn to ashes, or like the mighty serpents that raise themselves against the eagle and perish in his talons, or like a herd of elephants that rush upon the lion. No I am afraid to leave thee, no, be not weary of me, plant these my words in thy heart. Be not grieved, O daughter of the king of men. At these words the fire of wrath arose in the heart of the lady and grieved, she thus addressed the son of Samutrā — 'Thou art thou faithful towards Rama? Why art thou this day so brave? Even though thou hearest Rama calling on thee by name, thou art, like a foe, filled with hatred in thy heart. Is this becoming?'

'Thus spoke Lakshmanā with his eyes filled with tears, and as his heart could bear no more he exclaimed — 'Mother, I am gone, I will without delay bring thee thy lord, grieve not!'

"He said and departed. But first he drew seven circles round the bower, and said — 'Mother, pass not these limits, and should any one venture to cross these lines the intruder shall instantly pay for it with his head.'

"Then he addressed the god of fire, saying — 'Be not careless. I commit the dame to thee!'

Then he respectfully bowed to the dame, and anxiously bent his way towards Rama. The god of purity (fire) guarded Sītā, and to delude her foes he formed a fairy image of her which shone most glorious, so that all would have taken her for the real Sītā.

"At that moment Rāvana the giant arose with agitated heart. In one hand he bore a staff, in the other a scrip, in his forehead was an upright mark, and on his fingers he wore large rings of blessed grass with the sanctified thread across his broad breast, his right hand carried a large rosary, he was robed in clayed dust colour vest, with a necklace of the blessed tulasi tree, and he walked along stooping with the weight. His body was emaciated, he wore sandals, and a weather beaten umbrella, his hair was rolled up in a large bunch, in all points indeed he was a Sanyāsī, and walked along counting over his beads and muttering his brevity. He dreaded lest the real Sanyāsī should see and detect him, his head tottered with hoar antiquity, he sidled and stole along peeping to see where the fair one lay concealed. Then he would halt and exclaim *Harī! Harī!* Then a little recovering he drew near the skirts of the bower. At this sight the rural deities filled with alarm exclaimed — 'Alas, this sinful wretch is come to bear away the innocent Sītā!' He now stood at the door in the exact garb of a Sanyāsī. The daughter of Mithilā instantly arose supposing that this hypocrite was in truth a real hermit, she folded her lily hands (and incautiously crossed the magic circles drawn around her. *These words are spurious*) The lady paid him all due reverence, which he shuddering received, and as he viewed the damsel, he spoke thus — 'Lady, how is it that thou dwellest in this desolate retreat of the

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Stops the  
chariot of  
Rávana, and  
demands the  
release of Sitá

Ravana's chariot more terrible than the rolling of thunder, and he looked around him, and cast his eyes towards the heavens, and presently beheld Rávana carrying away Sitá in his chariot, and heard Sitá weeping aloud. Then Jatáyus was filled with rage and soared into the air, and he stopped the chariot of the furious Rávana, and poured forth these vituperations — "O thou ten headed monster, I am the ancient Raja of the Vultures, by name Jatayus, of mighty strength, fixed in the path of virtue and devoted to truth. You are the famous Raja of the Rikshasas, of invincible energy, by whom the gods have been often vanquished in battle. O descendant of Pulastya I am an aged bird, and am now destitute of strength, yet you shall see my valour in the combat, and shall not depart home alive. Ráma, the son of Dasaratha, equal to Indra and Varuna, and devoted to the good of all, is sovereign of the world. This beautiful woman is Sitá, his lawful spouse. How can a virtuous Raja dishonour the wife of another? It behoves a Raja above all men to protect the wives of others. O despicable wretch, abandon your design of carrying away the wife of another, lest I hurl you from your splendid chariot like fruit that is torn from a tree. Instantly release Sitá, lest Rama consume you with his flaming eye, as Vritá was consumed by the thunder bolt of Indra. I am old,—whilst you are young, and encircled by mail, and mounted on a chariot, and armed with darts,—yet I will never permit you to carry away Sitá. As a Sudra is never permitted to touch the Vedás, so you shall never carry away Sitá."

Terrible conflict  
between  
Rávana and  
Jatáyus

At these words the eyes of Rávana were blood red with anger, and he ran violently upon the Raja of Vultures. Then a mighty conflict ensued between Jatayus and Ravana, like the conflict between a cloud and a lofty mountain. Ravana rained a tempest of winged arrows upon the Raja of Vul-

forest blossom before the rushing gale. The ten faced giant bebellier browned in tears and with panting bosom and dishevelled tresses and broken garland while her whole form shuddered with anguish. He instantly seized the lady of the bright eyes and placed her on his car driven by fate to bear with him her who was to him the goddess of death. His foe of the gods sprung from earth and hurried his steeds along the skyey road.



tures; but Jatáyus seized the arrows on their way, and mounting on the back of Rávana he lacerated him with his talons, and then destroyed his chariot and his asses. Then Rávana sprang from his car with Sítá in his arms, when Jatáyus pounced again upon his back, and tore him with his claws and beak until the Rákshasa appeared exhausted with agony and loss of blood. At length the ten-headed one set Sítá upon the ground, and belaboured Jatáyus with his fists for a full hour; and then cut off his wings and feet with a scimitar, and the valiant Bird fell upon the earth with mortal wounds. Seeing his enemy bathed in blood and nearly ex-  
 piring, Rávana then approached Sítá. She with ornaments all in confusion, and countenance convulsed with grief, clung eagerly to the tall trees, crying out:—"Save me! Save me!" He, like the all-destroying Yama, seized her by her black locks and again mounted the air. Adorned with golden ornaments, and arrayed in yellow silk, Sítá appeared in the air like a flash of lightning, whilst Rávana seemed like a dark mountain illumined with fire. He being black, resembled a dark cloud driven by the wind; while she, bright as burnished gold, appeared like the lightning within the cloud. The divine raiment given to her by the holy Anasúyá, with the ointment and the necklace, shone with peculiar radiance; and her fair face in the arms of Rávana resembled the moon emerging from behind a black cloud. She, bright as the most burnished gold, appeared, while held by the black Raja of the Rákshasas, like a thread of gold round the loins of an elephant.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Jatáyus  
mortally  
wounded.

Rávana carries  
away Sítá  
through the air.

Poetical con-  
trast of the  
black com-  
plexion of  
Rávana with  
the golden com-  
plexion of Sítá.

Then Sítá cried out:—"O my beloved husband, where are you? Your wife is being carried off by a Rákshasa, and why are you so cruel as to abandon her? If you do not destroy this wicked Rákshasa, it will ever be a stain upon your family and race: Where are you also, O Lakshmana, the brother of my husband? If you are offended at my bitter words in sending you for Ráma, I pray your forgiveness and implore you to deliver me from this Rákshasa!" Then turning to Rávana she again wrathfully reproached him:—"You pride yourself upon being a valiant hero, but

Lamentations  
of Sítá

Bitterly re-  
proaches  
Rávana.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

you have acted like a mean coward. A hero never takes that which is another's, save by conquest, and if you had taken me after defeating Rāma, I would have considered you to be a hero, and would not have refused to become your wife. Even now, if you had the pride of a hero, you would wait here and fight Rāma, and if you defeated him, you might carry me where you pleased. Think not however to save yourself by flight, for rest assured that wherever you go you must fall by the hand of Rāma. Your end is fast approaching, and the day is not far distant when you will be sent to the mansions of Yama, and float there in the river Bytarani, and be torn in pieces by the dogs of Yama and endure everlasting misery."

Rāma's ap-  
proaches the  
mountain  
Rishya-mukha.

Sita drops her  
ornaments  
amongst the  
monkeys on the  
mountain.

The monkeys  
serve the  
ornaments.

Ravana con-  
ducts Sita to  
his palace at  
Lanka.

Whilst Sita was thus filling the air with her cries and lamentations, Ravana approached the mountain named Rishya mukha, and Sita beheld five Monkeys seated upon the mountain, and she thought in her heart that she would throw her ornaments down amongst the Monkeys, in the hope that they might find their way to Rāma. Sita then, unknown to Ravana, threw out all her ornaments, except the jewelled flower upon her head, and they dropped down to the earth like falling stars, and she threw out her veil in like manner. And the five Monkeys saw what was taking place, and they said one to the other—"This is the mighty Ravana, who is carrying away by force some beautiful woman, and her lamentations can be heard on this mountain. She is calling out the names of Rāma and Lakshmana, and she is throwing down her ornaments and garments that we may take care of them and make them over to those who shall come in search for her. Be it so or not, we will keep the things until we shall hear more of this matter." So the Monkeys kept the ornaments and the veil concealed in the valley.

Meantime the wicked Ravana had crossed the ocean and descended with Sita upon the island of Lanka, and he conducted her into his magnificent palace, and into one of the inner apartments. He then called for a number of female Rakshasis, and commanded them to attend upon Sita night

and day; and to allow no man to enter her apartments save himself; and to procure her everything she might desire in the way of ornaments, or perfumes, or dresses, or beds, or food, and never to say an unkind word to her upon pain of death. Rávana then went out, and sent for eight of his bravest Rákshasas, and acquainted them with his enmity against Ráma; and he commanded them to go forth and become spies upon Ráma and Lakshmana, and to put them to death by any means in their power, but to bring him with all speed the news of any attempt that Ráma might take to avenge his wrongs.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Appoints female attendants and gives them special instructions.

Sends eight Rákshasas to be spies upon Ráma and Lakshmana.

When the wicked Rávana had despatched his spies to watch Ráma, he thought himself secure against every enemy. Accordingly he returned to the apartments in which he had left Sítá; and he found her sitting in the midst of the Rákshasí women, like a deer surrounded by tigers; and her head was downcast, and the tears flowed in torrents from her eyes, for her mind was ever fixed upon her beloved husband Ráma. And Rávana approached that wretched one, and began to address her in caressing terms as follows:—"O Sítá, hear what I am going to say, for if you attend to my words, it will make us both happy: Cast aside your grief and look upon me with a favourable eye: Lament no more for Ráma, for never again will you see him in this mortal life: An impassable ocean, a hundred miles in breadth, lies between Ráma and my palace; and no human being will ever be able to take you away from this place: Even the gods fear to enter my palace without my permission; and how should a being so contemptible as a mortal man attempt to enter? I have an invincible army composed of millions upon millions of mighty warriors, so that there is no one in the three worlds who can withstand my power: Abandon, therefore, all thought and anxiety respecting Ráma, and receive me as your husband: Your youth and beauty will not last for ever, and you should make the best use of them while they last, and not waste away your life in fruitless sorrowing: If you will be my first wife, all my other wives shall be your slaves, and you shall be the chief

Rávana returns to Sítá.

His caressing address to Sítá.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Po nts out the  
beaut es of his  
pa a e and  
gardens

Rámi of this golden city of Lanka Here you shall enjoy the choicest delicacies without fear and without care, and shall obtain to your heart's desire things which are rarities even in the court of Indra O Sita, consider yourself very fortunate that I have chosen you to be my spouse See how my palace outshines in beauty the palace of Indra It is a hundred miles round about, and is the work of Viswa karma who is the mighty architect of the gods Behold the lofty mansions which reach the skies and seem to deride the heavens ! The jewels which the gods wear upon their heads are employed here to decorate the roads of Lanka View the many gardens and pleasure grounds, compared with which the garden of Indra is as nothing See that beautiful Asoka garden, which is the chief of all, and cannot be described The joyous season of spring reigns there throughout the year, and the minds of all who enter it are delighted beyond measure, and especially enlivened with the song of bees My chariot Pushpaka will take you wherever you please, and assume any shape you may desire The riches in my treasures are beyond all that the god Kúvera ever heard or conceived All these shall be yours, and I myself will be your slave, if you will only condescend to take me for your husband "

S it s wrathful  
and threaten  
a refusal of  
his addresses.

At these words of Rávana, the wife of Rama was filled with wrath, and her eyes and countenance became red as the rising sun Keeping some blades of grass between herself and Ravana she said to that wicked Rakshasa — "No words would have been necessary from me, O evil one, had you endeavoured to carry me away in the presence of Rama or his brother Lakshmana, for then at that moment you would have been despatched to the abode of Yama Even now do not consider yourself secure nor place too much confidence upon the ocean which surrounds Lanka Rama regards the sea as a mere rivulet of water, which he can cross over or dry up by means of his arrows alone For your offence you will fall by his arrows, and your body will become the food of dogs and crows For your offence the whole race of the Rakshasas will be destroyed, and no one will be left in all

your family to offer the funeral cakes. Boast not of your army, for had you the whole universe on your side, it could not save you from death. Your wicked desires will never be gratified either in this life or in the lives to come, for I will give up the ghost of my own accord rather than yield to you."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

When Ravana heard this speech from Sita, he was vexed beyond all measure, but he called for the female attendants, and bade them conduct Sita to the Asoka garden, saying within himself — "The beauties of that place will excite passion in her heart, and induce her in the end to yield herself to me." Ravana then said to the females — "I leave you now to employ four different means for persuading Sita to become my wife. *First*, you must use sweet and endearing words in speaking to her, *secondly*, you must give her good clothes and ornaments and delicious food, *thirdly*, you must praise me in her presence, and find every fault with her husband Rama, and *fourthly*, you must threaten her with every evil unless she consent to become my wife. If you succeed in persuading her to yield herself to me, I will reward you handsomely." So saying Ravana left the apartment, and the women began to do as he had commanded, but they could make no impression upon the mind of Sita. Every thought of her heart was fixed upon her beloved husband Rama, and none of the words of the Rakshasis entered the doors of her ears. She would not sleep, she refused to take any food, her beautiful form wasted away, and her golden colour became dark, and she passed her days and nights in tears for her husband Rama.

Ravana orders the female attendants to conduct Sita to the Asoka garden and to use four means to induce her to yield.

Sita shuts her ears to all entreaties.

Her deep sorrow.

<sup>1</sup> The Pakshasi women or demon attendants upon Sita, are described in far stronger language in the Adhyatma Ramayana as will be seen from the following extract — These demons were so horrid in their forms that the souls of mortals on beholding them would quit their bodies through dismay. The female demons constantly watched over her while Sita seated in the midst of them overcome with agony and despair passed her time in silent adoration of Rama and in meditation on his name. She never changed her clothes she scarcely tasted food. As a rose withers when deprived of refreshing streams so did Sita languish from the absence of Rama. The surrounding demons, as an eclipse before the moon continually terrified her with their words and looks while they attempted to persuade her to comply with Ravana's vicious inclinations. One said — Consent to

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Review of the  
foregoing story  
of the capture  
of Sítá its  
powerful effect  
upon the  
Hindús

Harrowing  
character of the  
outrage

Peculiarly  
affecting to  
Hindús

Fastidious idea  
of physical  
chastity

Play of the  
national senti-  
ment in the  
story of Sítá.

There is not perhaps in the whole range of Hindú literature any tradition which awakens so many sympathies in the minds of the people as that of the capture of Sítá by Rávana, and the subsequent efforts to procure her deliverance. The original departure of the exiles into the jungle is a powerful scene, but although it involves painful ideas of privation and distress, it is wholly disconnected with any idea of outrage or dishonour. The gambling scene in the Mahá Bhárata, in which Yudhishthira stakes and loses his wife Draupadí, is highly sensational; but Draupadí is not really separated from her husbands, nor is she, excepting for a very brief space of time, in the absolute power of another man. But the treacherous outrage committed upon Sítá is harrowing to the last degree. Indeed the idea that a wife is at the mercy of a barbarous and unscrupulous savage, of another race and another complexion, would be equally maddening to the European and the Hindú. But still the feelings of the Hindú would be wounded by a number of minor circumstances, which would scarcely enter the mind of the European whilst dwelling upon his larger sorrow. The idea of physical chastity is carried to such a fastidious excess by the modern Hindús, that it robs women of their personal freedom and deprives them of all mental culture, whilst it utterly fails to secure that purity of thought and feeling which finds expression in more enlightened communities. The play of this national sentiment is

Rávana's wishes, or I will devour thee' Another said — 'Danish all regard for Rama or I will plunge thee into the fathomless ocean' Others threatened to grind her between their teeth In this manner the demons harassed her with their persecutions "

strikingly illustrated in the story of Sítá. It will be seen hereafter that Ráma bitterly lamented that his wife should have been even touched by a strange man; whilst Lakshmana declared that he could not identify the ornaments which Sítá had worn upon her neck and arms, because he had never ventured to look above the feet of his brother's wife. But yet it will already have been seen, that the delicate Princess who had been reared in the seclusion of the zenana, and who is indeed one of the purest creations of the Hindú bard, brings a direct and gross charge against her husband's brother, which could scarcely have entered the mind of a European lady, and certainly would never be put into her mouth in any drama or romance, without far stronger evidence of the justice of the suspicion.

Under the circumstances indicated it will be easy to understand that the narrative of the outrage committed upon Sítá never fails to leave a deep impression upon the Hindú mind; and so universally popular is the story that every scene is indelibly fixed upon the imagination of almost every Hindú boy and girl, husband and wife, father and matron. The pictures follow one another with a rapidity and vigour of painting which can scarcely be realized by a single perusal. First appears the terrible Rávana, with his ten crowned heads towering in the air, and his twenty arms glistening with jewels, and spreading out like the branches of a tree. He is seated upon a golden throne in front of his palace, and around him are seated his Rákshasa Counsellors; as Indra, the god of the firmament, is surrounded by the winds or Maruts, who are his advisers. Next

Universal popularity of the story.

Prominent scenes in the narrative.

Rávana surrounded by his Counsellors

HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV	appears the dreadful sister of Ravana, with her ears and nose cut off, roaring aloud with cruelty and rage, who kindles such a fire of sensual desire in the heart of Ravana that he refuses to listen to all counsels and all warnings. Next is to be seen the departure of Ravana and Māricha upon a chariot which rides swiftly through the air. Then follows the strange picture of the golden deer, sparkling with silver spots and jewelled eyes, gambolling before the hermitage. Next the deer is mortally wounded by Rama's arrow, and suddenly assumes the form of Māricha, and imitates the cry of Rama. Then the eye reverts to the quiet hut, in which Sita is carrying on an angry and sensational dialogue with Lakshmana, which terminates in her being left alone in the hermitage, exposed to all the designs of Ravana. Then follows the climax. The pseudo Sanyasi presents himself clothed in a red cloth, with matted hair, an umbrella, a trident, a provision bag, and an alms dish. He finds his addresses disregarded, and suddenly assumes his own stupendous and monstrous form, and seizes the trembling wife and carries her away like a Sudra who has seized the Vedas. Then follows the desperate struggle between Ravana and the Vulture Raja, in which the Rikshasa is fearfully lacerated by the talons of the gigantic Bird, and the chariot is utterly destroyed. Lastly is to be seen the flight through the air of the golden complexioned Sita in the grasp of the black Rikshasa, like a golden thread round the loins of an elephant, the arrival of the hapless wife at the palace of Ravana, and her utter desolation in the inner apartments and the Asoka grove.
Appearance of Ravana's sister	
Departure of Ravana and Māricha in an aerial chariot	
The golden deer	
Sita's angry dialogue with Lakshmana	
Ravana as a Sanyasi	
The outrage	
The combat between Ravana and the Vulture Raja	
The flight of Sita through the air	
Sita's desolation in the inner apartments and the Asoka grove	

There is one circumstance in the narrative to



which allusion has already been made,<sup>8</sup> and which is well worthy of consideration. Sítá reproaches Rávana for his cowardice in not fighting Ráma; and declares that if he had conquered her husband she could not have refused to become his wife. This strange sentiment seems to have been fully in accordance with the ancient laws of war, by which the wife and possessions of a conquered Chieftain became the property of the conqueror. But although the rule was actually laid down, yet the history of India shows that the affections will occasionally override all such merciless laws; and that Hindú wives have preferred perishing by the hands of their husbands to becoming the prey of a victorious enemy.

Hindú women  
superior to the  
rule

---

<sup>8</sup> See Vol I pp 57, 201, 203

## CHAPTER XVIII

### RÁMA'S SEARCH FOR SÍTÍ

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Narrative of  
Ráma's search  
for Sítá

THE narrative of Ráma's sorrow at the loss of Sítá, and his eager search for her in the jungle, contains nothing that demands any preliminary explanation. It comprises much poetical description, and a curious story of a female devotee named Sarvarí, who was of low caste, but obtained salvation through a mantra taught her by Mantaga the sage. The narrative is as follows —

Ráma's meeting  
with Laksh-  
mana

Meantime the mighty hero Ráma had returned towards his hermitage after killing the deer formed Mārícha, and he carried the skin upon his shoulders to present it to Sítá. Presently Lakshmana appeared with a sad countenance, and told him why he had left Sítá alone in the hut. And Ráma became greatly alarmed, and said — "O my brother, you have done wrong in leaving Sítá alone. Women are generally devoid of sense, and no wise man would attend to their words."

They discovered  
that Sítá had  
left the hut.

So saying, Ráma ran with all speed to the hut, and his brother Lakshmana followed him, and when they came to the hut, they found that it was utterly deserted, and that Sítá had gone they knew not where. At this sight Ráma became speechless, his bow dropped from his hand, his hair became dishevelled, his girdle became loosened, and he sank upon the earth in a swoon. Lakshmana caught him in his arms, and fanned him with branches of new leaves, and splashed his face with water, and after awhile he regained his senses and cried out for Sítá.

Agony of Ráma.

Then Ráma and Lakshmana both rose up and went throughout the forest to search for the lost one, but they found her not, and they returned in great grief to the hermitage and saw that it was as desolate as before. When it was evening the full moon arose in the heavens, and Ráma said — "O Moon, you can gaze over the whole world, and no corner of the earth is unknown to you, can you not therefore tell me where my beloved is gone?" And Ráma passed the whole of that night in the desolate hermitage.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The search

Ráma's address  
to the Moon.

Early next morning Rama and Lakshmana performed their customary devotions, and then went forth again in search of Sítí, and after awhile they came to the place where Jatáyus, Chief of Vultures, had fought against Ravana. And Ráma said to Lakshmana — "O brother, here are signs that a battle has been fought in this place. Let us search this part of the forest, and find, if possible, the track of the conqueror." Rama and Lakshmana then proceeded a little farther, and presently they came in sight of the huge Jatáyus, with streams of blood flowing from his mutilated wings. And Rama said to Jatáyus — "Tell me, O virtuous and pious Vulture, whither my wife has gone, and who it was that carried her away." Jatáyus replied — "O Rama, the wicked Ravana, the Raja of the Rikshasas, has carried away Sítí towards the south. O Ráma, I am losing all control over my body, I see not with my eyes, and my life is departing from my body." The mighty Chief of Vultures then looked up into the face of Rama, and his eyes became fixed, and he gave up the ghost. At that moment, whilst Ráma and Lakshmana were still lamenting, a chariot of fire descended from Vaikuntha, which is the heaven of Vishnu, with four attendants therein, and one carried the shell, and another the chakra, and the third the mace, and the fourth the lotos, and the soul of Jatáyus arose from the dead body, and mounted the chariot at the will of Rama, and offering up a long prayer to Rama, he ascended to the world of Vaikuntha and became absorbed in Vishnu.

Ráma and  
Lakshmana  
discover the  
body of the  
dying Jatáyus

Last words of  
Jatáyus

The soul of  
Jatáyus ascends  
to heaven in a  
chariot of fire

When Rama beheld the happy fate of Jatáyus, he said to his brother — "O Lakshmana, though this Raja of Vul

Ráma and  
Lakshmana  
perform the  
funeral rites for  
Jatáyus

tures has ascended to heaven, still we should perform his funeral rites according to the custom of the inhabitants of the earth. Bring therefore rice and dry wood that I may prepare a funeral pile and burn the dead body." So Lakshmana did as his elder brother commanded, and the funeral pile was prepared, and the remains of Jātāyus were placed thereon, and Rāma produced a flame by rubbing together two pieces of wood, and set fire to the pile, and burned the dead body with all due ceremonies. Then the two brothers bathed in the river Godāvari, and sprinkled water for the soul of the departed. They then went into the forest and shot deer, and cut the flesh into small pieces, and gave them to all the birds of the jungle. Thus the soul of Jātāyus was secured in the enjoyments of heaven.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The account given in the Adhyātma Rāmāyana of the death of Jātāyus and his ascension to heaven, is well worthy of consideration, and is accordingly extracted as follows.—'When the funeral rites had been concluded, Rāma called out, saying—'Assume, Jātāyus, my form; ascend into paradise; I have granted salvation unto thee in my form, which is the highest rank thou canst obtain. No sooner had Rāma uttered these words than Jātāyus became possessed of four arms as Vishnu. A car descended from heaven in which he seated himself to proceed to paradise. Such was the dignity and grandeur of his appearance, it was as if a thousand suns shone on his face. In his four hands he held a shell, a chakra, a mace, and a lotus, a crown of pearls adorned his head, his body was ornamented with jewels, a veil of brocade covered his shoulders, and four of Vishnu's attendants waved glittering chāmara over his head. The heavenly choristers sang hymns by his side, the nymphs of paradise danced before him.

"The soul of Jātāyus in obtaining this exalted station was animated with joy and gratitude and thus addressed Rāma—'Thou holdest, O Lord, a bow in thy hand and therefore art thou distinguished by the title of the Archer,—as such I worship thee. Thou extendest thy mercy towards the oppressed, thou art the protector of the defenceless—as such I adore thee. Brahma and the gods pour on their heads the dust that has been under thy feet for that which thou touchest is sacred—as such I honour thee. Thy praises are unbounded, they are beyond the powers of description. Before all things thou wert, the creation, the preservation, and the destruction of the world are in thy hands. Thou art the only God the fountain of benevolence enthroned in the hearts of all things animate and inanimate—as such I offer my adorations unto thee. Thou hast a bow and arrows in thy hands but the archers of this world yield to thee in skill. Thou art the first among the gods, the first among mankind,—as such I praise thee. Thou art the sole object of adoration to the gods, to the saints, to the serpents to the Gandharvas, to the heavenly spirits, who prostrate themselves at thy feet—as such I worship thee. Thou didst punish the Kshatriyas whose hearts were hardened with pride and obstinacy against thee, thou didst humble their pride and they now fear thee,—as such I pay my devotions unto thee. (Hre

When the day was far spent, and the night was drawing  
 nigh, the two brethren returned to the hermitage; but  
 Ráma passed the night in lamentations, for he knew now  
 that Rávana had carried away Sítá towards the south.

HISTORY OF  
 INDIA  
 PART IV.

When the morning had dawned, and the customary  
 devotions had been performed, Ráma and Lakshmana de-  
 parted out of the hermitage, and proceeded towards the  
 south. When they had gone some distance, they came in  
 sight of a vast and mighty demon named Kabandha, and  
 Lakshmana beholding him, mistook him for a mountain.  
 And Lakshmana said to his brother:—"Behold, my Lord,  
 a great mountain resembling a black Rákshasa! It is very  
 high and stupendous, and dark as lamp-black: See the  
 discoloured plants on the top, and the tall peaks on its two  
 sides!" Whilst he was thus speaking, Kabandha spread  
 out his two arms of monstrous length to grasp in the  
 two brothers; and Lakshmana exclaimed:—"My Lord, it  
 is not a mountain, but a real Rákshasa: The discoloured  
 plants on the top are nothing but his hair, and I mistook his  
 two upstretched arms for mountain peaks: I see no neck or  
 head, but his face is within his belly, and he has one eye  
 only, and large teeth." At this moment the monstrous arms  
 of the fearful demon, Kabandha, began to wind round the  
 brothers, and the two heroes seized the arms, and began to  
 pull them. Then Kabandha cried out:—"Who are you,  
 and what do you do here? Have you no fear of death that  
 you come hither and seize me by the arms? For my part I  
 rejoice to see you, for I shall have a delicious feast this day."  
 So saying, the demon prepared to devour them, when the  
 two renowned heroes each cut off one of his arms with a

Ráma and  
 Lakshmana  
 proceed  
 towards the  
 south in search  
 of Sítá  
 Appearance of  
 Kabandha

Ráma and  
 Lakshmana cut  
 off his arms.

Ráma appears to be identified with Parasu Ráma, or rather the destroyer of the  
 Buddhists is identified with the destroyer of the Kshatriyas). The waters of the  
 Ganges, which purify the souls of mankind from sin, and which Siva, know-  
 ing the excellence of them, received on his head, flowed originally from thy feet,  
 —as such I adore thee. In taking refuge at thy feet, the terrors of future birth,  
 regeneration, and death, are done away,—as such I worship thee. Thou art  
 Brahma, thou art Vishnu, thou art Siva, but thou art One; the universe is com-  
 prehended in thee as an ant in an elephant. Thou art the foundation of eternal  
 bliss, thou art neither greater nor less; mankind are thy servants, thou art the  
 lord of all."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Legend of  
Kabandha

Kabandha  
burned in a pit,  
and assumes his  
original form

Relates to  
Ráma the story  
of Ravana.

Counsels Ráma  
to ally with  
Sugriva, the  
Monkey  
Chieftain

scimitar, and the Rákshasa fell upon the ground. Then the wounded Kabandha cried out to the two brothers — "What are your names, and the names of your fathers?" Ráma replied — "We are the sons of Mahuraja Dasaratha." And he told the Rakshasa all that had happened to them from their exile downwards.

Kabandha then related his own story, how he had been originally a Gandharva, but in consequence of the curse of a sage, had been compelled to assume his present form until released by Ráma. And Kabandha thanked Ráma for his deliverance, and offered to serve him in any way, and Ráma asked him to relate the story of Ravana. Then Kabandha replied — "I am still a Rakshasa, and I cannot tell what you desire to know, unless this body of mine be burned with fire." So Ráma threw the Rakshasa into a deep pit, and covered him with dry wood, and set fire to the pile, and while it was burning, a chariot descended from heaven, and Kabandha came out of the fire in his real shape as a Gandharva, and took his seat upon the chariot, and then spoke to Ráma, as follows — "In the middle of the Southern Ocean is a wonderful island named Lanka, and Ravana is the owner of that island. Thus Ravana is a great warrior, and he has a mighty army of Rákshasas under his command, and if you desire to conquer him you must follow my counsel. At a little distance to the north of this place is a lake named Pampí, and near that lake is a mountain named Rishya múkha, and on this mountain Rishya mukha dwells a chief among the Monkeys, named Sugriva, and by the assistance of Sugriva you will obtain the victory over Ravana. Do you, therefore, form a friendly alliance with Sugriva. He is himself suffering from an injury inflicted upon him by his own brother, and if you assist him against his brother, he will assist you in recovering Sita. On the road you will find the hermitage of the sage, Matanga, and a pupil of the sage is dwelling there, and awaiting your arrival. Fulfil all the desires of this pupil, and then proceed to the lake Pampí and the mountain Rishya-mukha." Having thus spoken, Kabandha took leave of

Rama and Lakshmana, and ascended to the heaven of Vishnu.<sup>2</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Rama and his brother then took the road which had been pointed out by Kabandha, and, after travelling for some time in the jungle, they at last came to the abode of Matanga, and there they found an aged female named Sarvari, who had been a pupil of that sage. Now Sarvari had long been waiting to behold Rama, and when she saw him, accompanied by his brother, she knew directly who they were, and she brought mats of new grass and cool water to wash their feet, and she presented them with flowers, perfumes and the arghya, and began to offer prayers to both Rama and Lakshmana. And Rāma rejoiced to behold her piety and inquired of her how she came to be the pupil of Matanga, and where the sage was residing at that time, and why she lived thus alone in the forest. Sarvari said—"I was born of the low caste which is called Sarvari, and one day I came to this wilderness to gather wood, when I saw the sage Matanga. A strong desire then rose in my heart to serve the sage, but I was afraid to make known my wish, because of the lowness of my birth. I was accustomed, therefore, to come hither every night, and sweep the path leading from this hermitage to the bathing ghat, so that not a stone or pebble was left in the way when the sage went to perform his morning ablutions. Seeing the path kept so clean, Matanga asked his disciples if they had been accustomed to sweep the way, but they could give him no reply. One night after this the disciples hid themselves, and when I came to sweep the path, they caught me, and took me

Rāma and  
Lakshmana  
reach the  
hermitage of  
Matanga the  
sage.

Piety of Sarvari  
the female  
disciple of  
Matanga

Sarvari relates  
her story

<sup>2</sup> In the Adhyātma Rāmāyana the demon Kabandha is represented as making a long and pious address to Rāma, from which the following pantheistic description may be extracted.—The seven upper regions are placed between thy head and thy loins; the earth is in thy loins; the seven lower regions are from thy loins to thy feet. Thine eyes are the sun; thy mouth is a flaming fire; thy hair the clouds; thy bones the mountains; thy belly the seven waters of the ocean; thy pores the vegetable creation; thy hands Indra; thy breast the fountain of mercy; thy back the source of punishments; thy hips Death; thy lips Kama; deva thy nose the two Aswins; thy tongue Varuna; thy whiskers lightning; thy heart the moon; thy eyelids are constantly engaged in weaving these things together. Thus are all things comprehended in thy vast form; nothing is distinct from it.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Taught the  
name of  
"Ráma" as a  
mantra.

before Matanga, and I related all my story to the sage. Then the holy man took compassion upon me, and taught me a mantra which raised me from my low caste, in the same way that it had already raised the sage Válmiki, and that mantra was only your name of RÁMA. From that time I have ever remained here, but a few days ago, Matanga told me that he was going to the heaven of Bráhma, and he said to me — "Remain here but a short time longer. Your Guru, Rama, is come as far as Chitra kuta and he will be here in due time. Then do you enter the fire in his presence, and you will obtain the accomplishment of all your desires."

Sarvarí turns  
herself alive in  
the presence of  
Ráma.

Sarvarí having thus finished speaking, requested the permission of Rama to enter the fire, as she had already prepared the funeral pile, and Rama gave her leave, and she set fire to the pile, and entered the bright flame with her eyes fixed upon Ráma. Then whilst the pile was burning a chariot descended from Vaikuntha, and Sarvarí ascended the chariot, and was carried away to the mansions of Vishnu.

Ráma and  
Lakshmana  
proceed to the  
lake Pampa.

Description of  
the lake.

When Sarvarí had thus expired, Ráma and Lakshmana departed out of the hermitage, and after journeying for some time, they came within sight of the lake Pampa. That beautiful lake was one mile round, and the water was transparent and covered with the blooming lotos, and the ducks and geese were playing upon the surface of the water, and the bees were hovering over the lotos and water birds of radiant plumage crowded the lake and the green margin around it. And the banks on all sides were covered with trees, and loaded with fruits and flowers, which waved to and fro with the gentle wind, and spread a delicious perfume around. But, as Rama beheld the beauty of the place, he was reminded more and more of his beloved Sitá, and his loss lay heavy upon his soul. And Lakshmana prepared for his brother a bed of lotos under the shade of a fig tree, and brought some water for his feet. Then Rama threw himself down upon the bed, and Lakshmana seated himself near him, and began to press the feet of his elder brother with his hand.

Ráma's con-  
tention  
affliction.



The foregoing narrative calls for but little remark. The fanciful accounts of Ráma's sorrow, and the lamentations which the author puts into his mouth, are poetical according to Hindú ideas, but too demonstrative to please European tastes. The description of Kabandha is simply the creation of a distorted fancy. He is described as a hairy mountain, without head or neck, but with one glaring eye in his breast, and an immense mouth and teeth in the centre of his belly; whilst his arms were more than a mile long! The story of Sarvarí, the female ascetic, is worthy of consideration, because she was of low caste, and seems to have led a life of celibacy; circumstances which would seem to denote that she was a Buddhist, amongst whom caste was disregarded, and female devotees were not unfrequent in ancient times.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Review of the  
foregoing  
narrative

Monstrosity  
involved in the  
conception of  
Kabandha.

Buddhist  
character of  
Sarvarí as a  
female devotee  
of low caste

## CHAPTER XIX

### RAMA'S ALLIANCE WITH THE MONKEYS

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Change in the  
character of  
Rāma from the  
divine to the  
human

At this point in the Rāmāyaṇa, the character of Rama seems to undergo an entire change. During his wanderings in the jungle he was pre-eminently regarded as a divine hero, who was received by every Brāhman sage as a deliverer long waited for, whose presence alone ensured salvation. Even the Rikshasa demons who opposed his progress, and who were slain by his arms, are said to have acknowledged his divinity in the hour of death, and to have been borne away in celestial chariots to the heaven of Vishnu. But in the narrative which now follows of the alliance formed by Rāma with the Monkeys, the divine character of the hero in a great measure disappears, and he becomes little more than a human warrior. After lamenting the loss of his wife in the language of an ordinary mortal, he seeks an alliance with Monkeys to carry on wars which he had previously sustained by his single arm. Moreover, it will be seen that his actions are not only those of a human being, but of a human being who is regardless of moral rule in the attainment of his ends, inasmuch as he killed one Monkey warrior contrary to the rules of fair fighting, and permitted another to take the widow of his deceased brother as a

second wife, contrary even to the modified law of the early Bráhmans.<sup>1</sup> This transformation of Ráma leads to the suspicion that the son of Dasaratha was a different individual from the Linga-worshipper of the Dekhan who made war against the Buddhists; and that two distinct traditions, referring to different circumstances and localities, have been amalgamated into a single poem. But whether this hypothesis be correct or no, it will certainly be necessary to bear some distinction in mind between Ráma, the incarnation of Vishnu, and Ráma, the worshipper of the Linga, which is always associated with the worship of Siva.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Hypothesis that Ráma the son of Dasaratha, and Ráma the Linga worshipper of the Dekhan are different individuals

The alliance which Ráma is said to have formed with the Monkeys, tends to confirm this view. It excites a doubt whether Ráma was so invariably the conqueror of the Rákshasas as the Rámáyana represents him; whether he did not on some occasions suffer a defeat, although the victory has been given to him by the Hindú bard in order to bring his exploits into conformity with his assumed character as a divine incarnation. Indeed if Ráma had really been so victorious in his wars against Khara and Dúshana as the Rámáyana represents, it seems difficult to understand why he should have deemed it necessary to seek an alliance with the Monkey Chieftain. It appears therefore most probable that the Ráma of this portion of the Rámáyana, namely, the representative or leader of the Linga-worshippers, had sustained such severe defeats from the Buddhists, that he was compelled to strengthen himself by an alliance before he could renew the war. But whilst

The alleged alliance with the Monkeys, a proof that Ráma must have suffered reverses from the Rákshasas, or Buddhists

<sup>1</sup> See Colebrook's Hindú Law, p. 460, et seq.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Literal interpretation of the Rāmāyana believed in by the Hindus

this hypothesis seems highly probable, it must be distinctly stated that it has no place in the national belief. The literal interpretation of this portion of the Rāmāyana is indeed deeply rooted in the mind of the Hindu. He implicitly believes that Rāma is Vishnu, who became incarnate for the purpose of destroying the demon Ravana, that he permitted his wife to be captured by Ravana for the sake of delivering the gods and Brāhmins from the oppressions of the Rākshasa, and that he ultimately assembled an army of Monkeys, who were the progeny of the gods, and led them against the stronghold of Ravana at Lanka, and delivered the world from the tyrant Rākshasa, whilst obtaining ample revenge for his own personal wrongs.

Circumstances which led to the Hindu belief in an army of Monkeys.

One other point seems to demand consideration, namely the possibility of such an alliance as that which Rāma is said to have concluded with the Monkeys. This possibility will of course be denied by modern critics, but still it is interesting to trace out the circumstances which seem to have led to the acceptance of such a wild belief by the dreamy and marvellous-loving Hindu. The south of India swarms with Monkeys of curious intelligence and rare physical powers. Their wonderful instinct for organization, their attachment to particular localities, their occasional journeys in large numbers over mountain and across rivers, their obstinate assertion of supposed rights, and the ridiculous caricature which they exhibit of all that is animal and emotional in man, would naturally create a deep impression upon a credulous and superstitious people. Indeed the habits of Monkeys well deserve to be patiently studied, not as they appear in confinement, when

Extraordinary characteristics of Monkeys.

Habits of Monkeys in their wild state.

much that is revolting in their nature is developed ; but as they appear living in freedom amongst the trees of the forest, or in the streets of crowded cities, or precincts of temples. Such a study would not fail to awaken strange ideas ; and although the European would not be prepared to regard Monkeys as sacred animals, he might be led to speculate as to their origin by the light of data, which are at present unknown to the naturalist whose observations have been derived from the menagerie alone.

Whatever, however, may have been the train of ideas which led the Hindú to regard the Monkey as a being half human and half divine, there can be little doubt that in the Rámáyana the Monkeys of southern India have been confounded with what may be called the aboriginal people of the country.

The Monkeys in the Rámáyana identical with the aboriginal population of the south

The origin of this confusion may be easily conjectured. Perchance the aborigines of the country may have been regarded as a superior kind of Monkeys ; and to this day the features of the Maravars, who are supposed to be the aborigines of the southern part of the Carnatic, are not only different from those of their neighbours, but are of a character calculated to confirm the conjecture. Again, it is probable that the army of aborigines may have been accompanied by outlying bands of Monkeys, impelled by that magpie-like curiosity and love of plunder which are the peculiar characteristics of the Monkey race ; and this incident may have given rise to the story that the army was composed of Monkeys.

Three hypotheses respecting the probable origin of the confusion

The aborigines regarded as Monkeys

The army of Ráma accompanied by Monkeys.

But perhaps the most probable hypothesis is that the people of the south originally worshipped the Monkey as a deity, and adopted it as their national emblem ; and thus they may have become con-

The Monk worshipped deity and adopted a national emblem.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Reason why  
the Monkey  
gods of the  
south may have  
been repre-  
sented as  
fighting for  
Rama.

References to  
an army of  
Bears under  
Jámbavat

Three localities  
specified

founded with the animal in the same way that the Scythic tribe of Nágas became confounded with the Serpent, which was in like manner their deity and symbol. It is true that the Marawars in the present day worship Siva, but they may have been converted to this form of religious faith by the Linga-worshippers who are represented by Ráma. Should this last hypothesis prove correct it would furnish the reason why Monkey gods like Hanuman were introduced in the Rámáyana as fighting by the side of Ráma; namely, to represent the gods of the people as worshippers of Ráma, and subordinate to him; just in the same way as in the Mahá Bhárata, the Serpent-god of Manipura is represented as being conquered by the son of Arjuna.<sup>2</sup> Besides, however, the Monkeys, there are references to an army of Bears, under the leadership of Jámbavat, who is said to have been the father-in-law of Krishna.<sup>3</sup> These Bears do not appear upon the scene apart from the Monkeys, nor is the leader Jámbavat as famous and important as the Monkey Hanuman. It is therefore difficult to assign a reason for their introduction, unless it is assumed that Jámbavat is a representative of the worshippers of Krishna, giving counsel and support to the cause of Ráma.

As regards the geography of this portion of the Rámáyana, it will be observed that three localities are distinctly specified; and although it is difficult to identify them with modern sites, they may perhaps be referred to the territory of Mysore, or the

<sup>2</sup> See *ante*, Vol. I page 412

<sup>3</sup> See *ante*, Vol. I. pages 354, 476

country immediately surrounding it \* These three HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV  
localities are as follows —

1st, Rishya múkha mountain, the residence of Rishya-múkha.  
Sugriva, the Monkey Raja who had been dethroned,  
and with whom Ráma formed an alliance

2nd, Kishkindhyá, the Monkey city of B'li, the Kishkindhyá.  
elder brother and enemy of Sugriva

3rd, Malyavana mountain, the residence of Ráma Malyavana  
and Lakshmana during the rainy season

The narrative of Ráma's alliance with Sugriva The narrative  
and the Monkeys may now be related as follows —

After Rama and Lakshmana had passed a night on the Ráma and  
Lakshmana  
proceed from  
the lake Pampá  
to the mountain  
Rishya múkha  
banks of the Pampá lake, they rose early in the morning,  
and performed their customary ablutions and devotions, and  
went towards the mountain Rishya mukha, where dwelt

the Monkey Raja, Sugriva, who had been dethroned by his  
brother Bali, and compelled to take refuge in the moun-  
tain Meantime, Sugriva and his Monkey Counsellors were Sugriva and his  
Monkey  
Counsellors  
receive Ráma  
and Lakshmana.  
sitting on a bastion of a fort on the top of the mountain,  
and they beheld the approach of Ráma and Lakshmana

And Sugriva turned to his Counsellors, and said —“ Be-  
hold two persons are approaching from the direction of  
Pampá who are apparelled as devotees, but yet appear to  
carry arms I fear they are spies who have been sent hither  
by my brother Bali ” But Hanuman, who was the chief of  
his Counsellors, said —“ Be of good cheer, O Sugriva, for  
these men are the sons of a Raja, and have come for our  
deliverance ” And Hanuman descended from the moun-  
tain, and brought Rama and Lakshmana into the presence  
of Sugriva And when Ráma had related his story, Hanu-  
man brought some pieces of wood, and kindled a fire, and  
Ráma and Sugriva confirmed their friendship before the fire,

\* Prof H H Wilson remarks in a note on the Uttara Ramacharitra, that the  
Rishya múkha mountain and the scenes in its vicinity are said to be known by  
the same appellations in the neighbourhood of Anagundi in the Dekhan

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IVSugrīva shows  
Rāma the  
ornaments

and in the presence of all the Monkeys. And when they had all taken their seats Sugrīva said to Rāma —“Some time back, when I was sitting with my Counsellors upon this mountain, I beheld a woman in the air who was being carried off by Rāvana, and as she passed by she threw down her ornaments, and we have preserved them to this day.” Sugrīva then sent for the ornaments, and laid them before Rāma, but the eyes of Rāma were so affected with grief, that he could not tell whether they belonged to his wife or not. Then Rāma asked his brother if he could remember the ornaments, and Lakshmana said —“Those silver bells I know, for Sita wore them on her feet but all the others are strange to me, for I never cast my eyes above the feet of my brother’s wife.”<sup>5</sup> At these words Rāma took the ornaments to his heart, and wept aloud, and Sugrīva consoled him, saying —“Now that we have made friendship together, vex not yourself about Sita. Be assured that you shall soon rescue her.”

Sugrīva relates  
the story of his  
grievances  
against Bālī.Rāma engages  
to save Bālī.

When Rāma had somewhat recovered, he requested Sugrīva to relate the story of his grievances. Sugrīva replied —“O Rāma, I have an elder brother named Bālī, who has deprived me of my Raj, and taken away my wife Rūmā, and now he seeks to take away my life, and through fear of him I have taken refuge in this mountain. O Rāma, I pray you to liberate me from this oppression.”<sup>6</sup> Rāma

<sup>5</sup> This reply of Lakshmana is taken from the modern version of the Rāmāyana and is in conformity with modern ideas. In earlier times a greater freedom of manners prevailed.

<sup>6</sup> A long mythical story is here related in the original respecting the origin of the breach between Sugrīva and Bālī which it may be advisable to condense in a note. Bālī was originally Raja of Kishkindhyā, and on one occasion he fought a certain Asura in the neighbouring plain after which the Asura fled into a cave. Bālī then directed his brother Sugrīva to guard the entrance to the cave for an entire month whilst he himself entered it in pursuit of the Asura. The month passed away when blood issued from the mouth of the cave on which Sugrīva took it for granted that Bālī was killed and stopped up the mouth of the cave to prevent the Asura from coming out, and returned to the city of Kishkindhyā, where the Monkeys accepted him as their Raja in succession to Bālī. Subsequently Bālī having killed the Asura in the cave, returned to the city of Kishkindhyā upon which he was very wroth with Sugrīva, and deprived him of his Raj and wife and would have killed him but for his escape to the Rishya mūlā mountain.



said — "Cast aside, my friend, all fear of Bálí! I promise to make you free. Bálí is now dwelling in your city of Kishkindhyá. Put on your war dress, and repair to Kishkindhyá, and go to the gate of the palace, and challenge Bálí to a single combat, and as soon as he shall come out against you, I will slay him with my arms."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ráma directs  
Sugriva to pro-  
ceed to Kish-  
kindhyá and  
challenge Bálí

After this Sugriva set out for the city of Kishkindhyá, accompanied by Ráma and Lakshmana, and whilst the two brothers concealed themselves in the forest hard by, he went forward to the gate of the palace to challenge Bálí. And Sugriva shouted with a voice like thunder, and Bálí came out with all haste from the inner apartments and saw that it was his brother Sugriva who had challenged him to battle. Now Turí, who was the wife of Bálí, sought to prevent her husband from going out to Sugriva, but Bálí refused to listen to her, and he went out to the palace gate, and abused Sugriva and Sugriva abused him in return, and cried out — "Vishnu is my protector, and you will fall by my hand this day." And Bálí and Sugriva fought lustily against each other for a long while, and the battle went against Sugriva and he fell down and Bálí sat upon his breast. And Bálí cried out — "Where is the Vishnu who is your strong ally? Now is the time that you should seek his protection." Meantime Ráma saw that Bálí had gained the victory, and he discharged an arrow at Bálí and pierced his heart, so that he fell senseless upon the ground. Ráma and Lakshmana then came up, and Sugriva rose in great joy at seeing his enemy prostrate upon the ground.

Combat between  
Sugriva and  
Bálí

Ráma mortally  
wounds Bálí

Meanwhile the sad tidings had reached the ears of Turí that her husband had fallen in the battle with Sugriva, and

Sud lena appears  
ance of Tára.

Bálí dared not approach the Ráya mukha mountain for the following reasons. On one occasion he had slain the great giant Dandabhi, and thrown his head and lead upon the mountain upon which a few drops of blood fell upon Matanga, the ape who thereupon cursed Bálí that he should fall to pieces if he again approached the mountain. Nobody however could move the giant's head until Pámak killed it miles away and moreover exhibited his skill in archery before Sugriva by shooting an arrow with such force that it passed through seven palm trees and then divided a mountain and descended to hell after which it again returned to its quarter in the form of a shining swan.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Tára's lamenta-  
tion over her  
dead husband.

she went forth out of the palace with dishevelled hair and loose garments, and all her ornaments in disorder, and she was followed by her son Angada, and a crowd of servants, Counsellors, and friends. When she beheld her husband prostrate upon the ground, she fainted for a while, and then striking her breast with her hands, she cried aloud as follows —“O my beloved husband, sole protector of my helpless self, why do you thus lie upon the bare earth? Arise and seat yourself, and call me your beloved as you used to do, and save me from death! You heard me not when I beseeched you not to go forth to this fatal field, and now you have fallen in battle with your enemy, and have lost your life by his dreadful arrow. Oh! why did you deprive your brother of his Raj and his wife? Surely my heart must be made of stone that it does not break at the sight of my husband! I can no longer endure to behold your pale face, and your body covered with the dust of the earth! O my beloved, look once again towards your slave, and take your son Angada to your breast! Why do you not reply, when I am weeping so bitterly at your feet?” So saying, Tará took her husband upon her lap, and with loud lamentations addressed him thus —“O my beloved, it is wrong for you to go to the next world, and leave me alone and helpless here. Shame be upon me that I thus be obliged to witness the death of my own husband! Shame be upon that woman who ever becomes a widow in this world! O ye ferocious birds and wild beasts of the jungle act kindly towards me, and make me your prey, that I may follow my husband to the mansions of Yama.”

Funeral cere-  
monies for Bâli

Now, when it was known that Bâli was dead, the city of Kishkindhya resounded with the cries of the Monkeys and their wives, whilst Sugriva and Angada and Tará filled the air with their lamentations. Tára threw away all her ornaments, and the female Monkeys, seeing her deep affliction, took her by the hand, and made her sit up. Then Rama began to console Tára, and at his words all present began to desist from further weeping, and to make preparations for the funeral pile. And the Monkeys placed the dead body

of Báli upon a litter; and they perfumed the body with sandal and other perfumes, and decorated both the corpse and the litter with garlands, and covered the body with a richly-embroidered cloth. Then they took the litter upon their shoulders, and Sugriva and the other Monkeys followed it, crying very bitterly; while some of the Monkeys in front began to throw money to the right and left, and the women of the Monkeys walked last of all. When they reached the place of burning, the corpse was bathed and placed upon the funeral pile, and Angada, son of Báli, set fire to the pile; and when the burning was over, they all proceeded to the lake Pámpá, and bathed themselves, and made oblations of water to the soul of the deceased.

After this, Sugriva took his own wife Rumá, and also took Túrú, the widow of Báli, to be his wife likewise. And it was agreed that Sugriva should be installed as Raja of Kishkindhyá, and that Angada should be installed as Yuvaraja. At this time the rainy season had commenced, when even the merchants stay at their own homes and go not to foreign countries; and Ráma requested Sugriva to take his pleasure until the rains were over, and then to join in the search for Sitá. So Sugriva was installed as Raja, and Angada as Yuvaraja; and Ráma and Lakshmana departed from that place, and took up their abode in the Malyavata mountain.

The foregoing narrative of Ráma's alliance with the Monkeys exercises a weird-like influence upon the imagination, wholly different from that produced by an ordinary fable in which animals of different kinds are represented as speaking to each other. The mind is called upon to deal with a nondescript being half Monkey and half man; having long tails and walking on all fours, and yet performing funeral rites for a deceased Raja, and installing a successor upon the throne, with all the form and ceremony of human beings. It was a Monkey Raja, surrounded

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Sugriva installed  
as Raja, and  
Angada as  
Yuvaraja.

Rainy season.

Review of the  
narrative

Nondescript  
Monkeys of the  
Ramayana

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

by his Monkey Counsellors, who beheld the approach of Rama and Lakshmana from the Bastion of their Fort on the Rishyamulika mountain. It was Hanuman in the form of a gigantic Monkey who carried Rāma and Lakshmana upon his shoulders up the side of the mountain. The combats between Sugriva and Bālī are the combats of Monkeys, and the picture of Bālī dying in the presence of his wife Tūla and son Angada, might easily be realized by those who have seen the painful caricature of a human being which a Monkey presents in a wounded or dying state. The scenes, however, are marred in the original by the lengthy dialogues which are placed in the mouths of the Monkeys, and which have been omitted in the foregoing text as being far too monotonous and artificial in tone to excite either interest or sympathy.

Traces in the  
narrative of an  
ancient  
tradition.

As regards the narrative, it certainly seems to refer to some real event amongst the aboriginal tribes—namely, the quarrel between an elder and younger brother for the possession of a Raj, and the subsequent alliance of Rāma with the younger brother. It is somewhat remarkable that Rāma appears to have formed an alliance with the wrong party, for the right of Bālī was evidently superior to that of Sugriva, and is especially worthy of note that Rāma compassed the death of Bālī by an act contrary to all the laws of fair fighting. Again, Rāma seems to have tacitly sanctioned the transfer of Tūla from Bālī to Sugriva, which was directly opposed to modern rule, although in conformity with the rude customs of a barbarous age, and it is remarkable that to this day the marriage of

Rāma is based  
on the laws of  
fair fighting.

Ministry of  
Education

both widows and divorced women is practised by the Marawars, or aborigines of the southern Carnatic, contrary to the deeply-rooted prejudice which exists against such unions amongst the Hindús at large

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV  
divorced women  
amongst the  
Marawars of the  
Carnatic.

## CHAPTER XX

### HANUMAN'S ADVENTURES IN LANKÁ

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Expans on of  
the original  
trad on by  
the auth r of  
the Ramáyana.

Neglect of  
Sugriva to  
assist Ráma

Assembling of  
the army of  
Monkeys and  
Bears

Despatch of  
four Monkey  
armies.

THE story of the assembling of the Monkeys and Bears, and the despatch of four armies in search of Sita, has been expanded to an inordinate length by the author of the Ramáyana, but the bare outline is extremely simple, and may be briefly indicated as probably involving an authentic event upon which the Hindu bard has based his narrative. It seems that when Sugriva had regained possession of his Raj, he abandoned himself to sensual indulgences, so that when the cold season arrived for the commencement of operations, he was devoting himself to strong drink and the society of his wives. Accordingly Lakshmana was sent by Ráma to remind him of his obligations, and to punish him for his breach of faith if he displayed any further lukewarmness or delay. Meantime, however, Hanuman had already induced Sugriva to send out messengers for assembling his armies, so that after some explanation, Lakshmana was satisfied and returned to Ráma, accompanied by Sugriva. Subsequently the armies of Monkeys and Bears were marshalled in the presence of Ráma and sent out to the four quarters of the earth, but the army despatched to the south under the command of Hanuman, was the only one that met with

any success, and brought back tidings of the lost Sítá

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

The story of Hanuman's adventures in Lanká is perhaps one of the best sustained efforts of pure imagination that is to be found in the Rámáyana. The exploits of the vast Monkey hero who could swell himself to the size of a mountain, or dwarf himself to the size of a man's thumb, the strength and magnificence of Lanká with its seven broad moats and seven stupendous walls of stone and metal, the extraordinary deformities of the Rákshasa population, the marvellous palace and gardens of Rávana, the devoted love of Sítá for Ráma and the impure advances of Rávana,—are all depicted with a magnificent exaggeration which is often grand, and but for the fantastic character of some of the incidents might be said to border on the sublime

Hanuman's  
adventures in  
Lanká the  
product of pure  
imagination

The incidents and scenes in this portion of the narrative are so numerous, that it may be as well to indicate them under the following heads —

Fifteen inci-  
dents in the  
adventures of  
Hanuman

1st, Hanuman's march to the sea, and leap over the channel between India and Ceylon

2nd, Description of the city of Lanká

3rd, Hanuman reconnoitres Lanká in the form of a cat

4th, Meeting between Hanuman and the Genius of Lanká

5th, Hanuman proceeds through the city to the palace of Rávana

6th, Description of the Inner Apartments of Rávana

7th, Description of Sítá in the Asoka grove

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

8th, Rāvana's night visit to Sītā surrounded by his women.

9th, Efforts of the Rākshasī women to induce Sītā to become the wife of Rāvana.

10th, Interview between Hanuman and Sītā.

11th, Hanuman destroys the Asoka garden and is captured by Indrajit.

12th, Tricks played by Hanuman upon the Rākshasas.

13th, Hanuman's appearance before Rāvana and his Counsellors in the Council Hall

14th, The firing of Hanuman's tail.

15th, Return of Hanuman and his army to Rāma and Sugrīva.

The narrative

With this preliminary sketch it may suffice to reproduce the leading events in the adventures of Hanuman and his army as they appear in the Rāmāyana :—

1st, Hanuman's march to the sea, and leap over the channel between India and Ceylon.

Rāma gives his marriage ring to Hanuman.

Now Hanuman was sent with the army of Monkeys to the southern quarter because of his superior intelligence, as it was known that Rāvana reigned in the southern region. And when Hanuman was about to depart he prayed Rāma to give him a token, that if he should find Sītā, he might convince her that he came from her beloved husband. So Rāma gave to Hanuman the ring bearing his name, which had been presented to him on the day of his marriage by his father-in-law Raja Janaka. Then Hanuman departed with his army of Monkeys towards the south, but one month passed away, and still no tidings could be heard of Sītā.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The adventures of the army of Hanuman are told at considerable length in the Rāmāyana, but are all mythical. The following story extracted from the *Adhyātma Rāmāyana* may serve as a specimen.—“Now while the Monkeys were proceeding towards the south, they were smitten with thirst, and searched for water on all sides, but as that wilderness was composed of sand, none could be found. At length they came to a mountain, at the foot of which they saw a grove of trees loaded with fruit, resembling the wealthy serving food to indigent travellers.



And all the Monkeys were very melancholy, and began to despair. And it came to pass that after a while they came to a certain mountain, where they fell in with a Chief of the Vultures, whose name was Sampátí, and he was elder brother of Jatáyus, the mighty Bird who had given his life in the service of Ráma. And Sampátí told them that he had seen Rávana carry away Sítá, and that Rávana had taken her to his city and palace, which were situated on the island of Lanká, about sixty miles from the sea.<sup>2</sup> And Hanuman and all the Monkeys rejoiced greatly, and proceeded with all haste to the sea.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Meeting with  
Sampátí the  
Vulture Chief

Now, when the Monkeys reached the shore of the sea, and beheld the island of Lanká, sixty miles from the shore,

From a cave in this mountain numberless water fowl issued, their wings dripping with water. The Monkeys seeing this were satisfied they should find water in the cave. They followed Hanuman in a line, holding each other by the hand as the cave was dark. When they had advanced a considerable distance, the darkness was in an instant dispelled, they beheld a pond full of pure water, near to which was a palace and a garden. In this palace were deposited jewels of great value, grain, fruits, oil, clothes, and an immense quantity of provisions, with sweetmeats of every kind. There was also a large town abounding with shops, but there were not any inhabitants. They were amazed, they consulted with each other what wonderful city this could be, they resolved to enter the palace, where they might meet with some human being. In one of the apartments they beheld a woman splendidly dressed and adorned, her eyes closed in meditation. That woman was a faithful adorer of Ráma, the veil of chastity was placed over her head, she was super eminently pure. The Monkeys were terrified at the austerity of her penances, they put their adorations to her at a distance. The chaste virgin, opening her eyes and seeing them, asked who they were. Hanuman then related the story of Ráma, and the thirst of the Monkeys, concluding — 'Thou art a faithful worshipper of the divinity, from beholding thee we are free from sin.' The holy virgin directed the Monkeys where to find food and water, with which they satisfied their hunger and thirst, and then returned to her.

"The female devotee then delivered a long discourse on the divinity of Ráma, and ultimately returned with the Monkey army to Kishkindhyá, and expired in the presence of Ráma."

<sup>2</sup> The real distance of Lanká from the mainland is but vaguely indicated in the Rámáyana. From shore to shore the distance is about sixty miles, and accordingly that has been set down in the text. But it would almost appear as if in times primeval the Island of Ceylon was really joined on to the main. About two miles from the Indian coast is the Island of Ramisseram, which is eleven miles long, and three centuries ago is said to have been joined to the main by a rocky causeway, whilst just off the opposite coast of Ceylon is the Island of Manar, about eighteen miles long. Moreover a low sandy ridge, impassable to ships of burden, connects the Island of Ramisseram with the Island of Manar, and is known in the present day as Adam's Bridge.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

1st Hanuman's  
leap

not one of them would attempt to leap across the sea excepting the mighty Hanuman. And Hanuman took a gigantic spring, and by his prodigious strength, he leaped over the wide ocean, and reached the shore of Lanká, and alighted upon the mountain which is named Subala<sup>2</sup>. At that moment all Lanká trembled, and Raja Rávana sent for his Counsellors, and demanded the reason for the trembling. Some of the Counsellors then said :—"O Rávana, this trembling is an earthquake." But one Rákshasa, who was very wise, and whose name was Obindhya, said to Rávana — "Whatever others may say respecting this trembling, I attribute it only to the presence of Sítá. From the moment that you brought Sítá into your palace, evil omens have constantly appeared in Lanká. I therefore advise you to send back Sítá to Ráma." Then Vibhishana, who was the pious brother of Ravana, earnestly implored the Raja of the Rákshasas to follow the counsel of Obindhya, but Rávana could not be moved, and he dismissed the Council in great anger.

Meantime Hanuman was gazing from the summit of the

<sup>2</sup> A number of absurd stories are told of the adventures of Hanuman while flying through the air, which are utterly devoid of meaning. It is, however, remarkable that amongst others who opposed him was a female Rákshasi named Surasá, who was said to be the mother of the Nágas, an allusion which tends to identify the Rákshasas with the Buddhists. See *ante*, page 316.

There is, however, a graphic description of Hanuman's leap in the *Adhyátma Rámáyana* which is worth extracting.—"Hanuman then cried out with joy in a voice of thunder as if he would rend the world with the sound, the mountains trembled, the waves of the ocean were troubled, the earth shook, even Sesha nága, the great Serpent on whose head the world rests, considered Hanuman's strength as equal to his own. Hanuman extended his form in size so that it equalled the Mandara mountain, his vigour and courage so agitated his soul that the hair on his head and body stood erect. He engaged to cross the sea to Lanká. He received the applause of the Monkeys, and exulting in their praises he departed to the top of Mandara. His form equalled in size that of a mountain, the colour of his body resembled the brightest gold, his face was as red as the rubies of Budakshan, his arms extended as the wings of a great dragon; his tail was so long that the end of it could not be seen. His great soul was unshaken at the danger and difficulty of the task he had undertaken, his eyes were inflamed with fury as if he would consume his enemies, as if he would in an instant overturn the foundations of Lanká, and cast them into the ocean. He cried :—"I am the ambassador of Ráma, his seal ring is in my hand, every hour, every moment, I repeat his holy name, I worship him, I entertain the fullest confidence that I shall with ease cross over this ocean." He then roared out with a thundering voice, he extended his arms, he drew in his neck, he erected his ears, and then looking forward to the sea, he raised himself from the mountain, and sprang towards the south."

Sabala mountain upon the beautiful city of Lanká. It was situated on the middle peak of the Trikúta mountain, and was the work of the divine Viswakarma, the architect of the gods. The city was a hundred miles in length, and thirty miles in breadth, and was completely surrounded with many walls and canals, one within the other. Within the great outer canal was a broad belt of thick forest, which was filled with beasts and birds of different species. Within the forest was a great wall of iron with four gates, one on each of the four sides. Each gate was guarded by hundreds of Rákshasas, and before each of the four gates was a deep moat with a bridge upon it, and several machines were placed upon each bridge, so that if an enemy approached the bridge, he was sure to be drowned. Within this iron wall, and at a little distance from it, was a great wall of stone, and within the wall of stone were five other walls, each one at a little distance from the other, and one wall was built of brass, and another of white metal, and another of copper, and another of silver, and the innermost wall of all was built of gold. Inside these seven walls was the

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

2nd, Description  
of the city of  
Lanká

The seven  
canals and  
walls

Walls of iron,  
stone, brass,  
white metal,  
copper, silver,  
and gold

The city and  
palace within  
the seven walls

\* The similarity between the seven walled city of Lanká as described in the Rāmāyana, and the seven walled city of Ekbatana as described by Herodotus, is very striking (Herod. i. 98). Herodotus, however, lays more stress upon the difference of colour, whilst Válmiki indicates only the difference of material. Sir H. Rawlinson is of opinion that the story of the seven differently coloured walls of Ekbatana is a fable of Sabæan origin, and he quotes a poem of Nizami in which seven palaces are described of different colours, each of which was dedicated to one of the seven great heavenly bodies (Journal of Geog. Soc. vol. x. Part i.) As far as colour is concerned the walls of Lanká would appear to represent in like manner one or other of the seven heavenly bodies, as will be seen from the following comparison —

Walls of Lanká.	Seven heavenly bodies	Colours as described by Nizami
Iron	Saturn	Black
Stone	Jupiter	Orange or Sandal wood colour
Brass	Mars	Scarlet
White Metal	Venus	White
Copper	Mercury	Azure
Silver	Moon	Green, a hue applied by Orientals to silver
Gold	Sun	Gold

Herodotus has slightly deranged the order of colours

**HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV** great city of Lanka, with ponds, and lakes, and artificial gardens on all sides, and the city was traversed by four great thoroughfares, intersected with numerous cross streets, and there were halls and high places for music and arsenals filled with weapons and stores, and stables for horses and elephants and places for chariots. And in the centre of that city was the great palace of Lanká, as beautiful as Viswakarma could make it by expending upon it the utmost of his skill.

Sri Hanuman  
recoiled  
Lanká in the  
form of a cat  
Hanuman  
entered Lanka

The gates

The streets

The houses

The bazaars

Department of  
the Rakshasas

Monstrous  
deformities

4th, Meet  
him  
his  
the  
Lanka

When Hanuman had thus looked down upon Lanka and seen all its moats and walls he assumed the shape of a cat and when the sun had set he entered Lanka in that form and began to observe the different parts of the city. The gates were protected by thousands of Rakshasas skilled in war but every one was allowed to enter, and the guards warned all spies and enemies that if they once entered the palace they would never be allowed to return. The streets were adorned with gems of every colour, but such was the rule of Ravana that no man ventured to pick up a single stone, though it were set in ever so loosely. The houses on the two sides of the roads were beautiful beyond description, and there were large bazaars in every quarter between the houses where everything could be obtained at any hour of the night or day. The Rakshasas who were sleeping in the houses were of every shape and form. Some of them disgusted the eye whilst some were beautiful to look upon. Some had long arms and frightful shapes, some were very fat, and others were very lean, some were mere dwarfs, and others were prodigiously tall. Some had only one eye and others only one ear. Some had monstrous bellies hanging breasts long projecting teeth and crooked thighs, whilst others were exceedingly beautiful to behold and clothed in great splendour. Some had two legs, some three legs and some four legs. Some had the head of serpents, some the heads of donkeys, some the heads of horses, and some the heads of elephants.

Whilst Hanuman was beholding these things the night became advanced and the streets of the city were deserted,

so he descended from the wall, on which he was seated in the form of a cat. At that moment Uggra Chunda, the Genius of Lanka, stood before him in the form of a female, and she was ludicrous to behold, and in her right hand was a sword, and in her left was a basin containing the blood of those whom she killed. Seeing her, Hanuman resumed his Monkey shape, and she looked upon him with wrath, and said —“Who art thou, and why have you entered my city at this quarter of the night? You seem to be bent upon some evil purpose, and therefore you have come hither to fall before the fire of my anger.” So saying Uggra Chunda forgot herself, and in her great wrath she gave a severe kick to Hanuman, and Hanuman dealt her a hard blow with his left hand, and she fell senseless on the ground, and vomited blood. When she recovered herself, she said to Hanuman —“I know who you are, you are the messenger of Râma, and have come hither to search for his wife Sitâ. Go you therefore into the city, and you shall receive no further molestation.”

The combat

Having thus spoken, Uggra Chunda went her way, and Hanuman again resumed the form of a cat, and proceeded through the city. He entered several houses of the Rikshas, and examined them in every quarter, and presently he entered the house of Vibhishana, who was the younger brother of Râvana, and he saw Vibhishana seated near a tulasi tree, singing hymns in praise of Vishnu and other gods. And Hanuman was surprised to see so much piety in a Rikshas, and he said to himself —“Verily this must be Vibhishana, for he is renowned for his piety.”

stl Hanuman  
proceeds  
thorough the  
city to the  
palace of  
Râvana

Perceives  
Vibhishana the  
younger brother  
of Râvana a  
worshipper of  
Vishnu

After this Hanuman, still in the form of a cat, entered the palace of Raja Râvana. That resplendent abode was surrounded on all sides by a deep canal, the surface of which was covered with the lotos. Within the canal was a wall of gold, so lofty that the birds could not fly over it, and the gate of that wall was of gold set with diamonds and other precious stones, and the pillars on each side

Hanuman  
enters the  
palace of  
Râvana  
The canal

The golden  
wall with  
jewelled gate,  
and pillars of  
black crystal

\* The tulasi tree is sacred to Vishnu and its leaves are employed in the worship of that deity. The bale fruit tree is in like manner sacred to Siva.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

The music  
place  
The stables,  
arsenals  
gardens  
kitchens &c

Hanuman fails  
to find Sita.

6th Description  
of the inner  
apartments of  
Rávana.

The wall gates  
and gardens

The sleeping  
room

The couch

The women.

Ravana sleeping  
upon a crystal  
throne

of the gate were made of black crystal, and the gate was guarded by thousands of Rakshasas, armed with spears and swords and other weapons of war, and over the gateway was the place for music, which ever sounded night and day. There also were stables for horses and elephants, and houses for chariots, and arsenals for weapons, and places for amusements, and artificial gardens and lakes together with kitchens, and store houses, and wine cellars. Hanuman was delighted at beholding all the wonder, and he said within himself —“ Surely this Raja Ravana must have been a very virtuous man in his former life, and on this account enjoys so much wealth in his present life.” Hanuman then searched every quarter of the palace for the wife of Rama, but could not find her anywhere.

Now, when Hanuman had grown very impatient at not finding Sita, he suddenly smelt a very sweet perfume, and following the scent, he arrived at the inner apartments of Ravana. They were surrounded on all sides by an inner wall of gold set with precious stones, and the gates were formed of diamonds, and guarded by eunuchs. Inside were artificial gardens with lakes and ponds covered with the white, red, blue, and yellow lotos. In the middle of all was the sleeping room of Ravana, and the walls of that room were made of gold, and adorned with precious stones, and the floor was of black crystal. The couch was as beautiful as Viswakarma could make it, the pillars which supported it, and the steps for ascending it, were all of black crystal. The bedding was as soft and white as the froth of new milk. Golden pots of water were placed at the four corners of the couch, and lamps of precious stones were hung from the ceiling, though the apartment was already illuminated by the radiance of the gems. Hundreds of beautiful women were sleeping in that apartment. Then Hanuman saw a very rich carpet placed upon a crystal throne, and the carpet was a magnificent cloth inlaid with gold, and four lamps of gold stood on its four corners, and on one side was the chímara and royal umbrella. Hanuman then reduced himself to the size of a thumb, and jumped up, and sat upon the

throne; and thence he perceived Rávana sleeping upon his couch, wearing a yellow cloth; and ten crowns of gold were upon his ten heads, and his twenty hands were adorned with sandal and ornaments, and strings of rich pearls decorated his breast. A thousand women were sleeping beside him, and the chief among them was Mandodarí, who lay upon his left side; and Hanuman looked carefully among them, but he could not find Sítá, for she was not there.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Hanuman still  
fails to find  
Sítá.

When Hanuman had searched throughout the inner apartments, it was about midnight; and he was very weary, and seated himself upon the top of a wall, and was very sad at not finding Sítá, for he feared that she was no longer alive. Suddenly he heard the noise of birds in the Asoka garden, and he entered therein, and concealed himself amidst the foliage of a large cotton tree. Thence he saw Sítá surrounded by hideous Rákshasí women, like a deer surrounded by tigresses. She was as pale and emaciated as the new moon, and her body was covered with dust; but nothing could conceal her beauty, which was like a live charcoal under a cover of ashes. Her hair was tied up in a single knot, and she had only one cloth, and no ornaments whatever. Suddenly she cried out the name of Ráma, and Hanuman prepared to approach her, when at that moment the bells sounded the third quarter of the night, and the music began to play.

7th. Description  
of Sítá in the  
Asoka grove.

Sítá surrounded  
by Rákshasí  
women

Now just at this time Rávana arose from his bed, and Sítá came into his mind, and he ordered all his women to follow him into the Asoka garden; and some carried lamps in their hands, and some carried the chámara, and some carried the betel pot, whilst some carried pots of water. When Hanuman saw the mighty Rákshasa coming to the Asoka grove, surrounded by his women, he concealed himself where he might hear all that passed. When Rávana entered the grove, Sítá arose up in terror, like an antelope at the approach of a tiger, and then sat down with her face turned away from Rávana.\* Then Rávana approached her, and

8th. Rávana's  
night visit to  
Sítá surrounded  
by his women.

Hanuman hides  
himself.

Alarm of Sítá.

\* The scene is still more graphically described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana, as will be seen from the following extract —“ Hanuman was preparing to address

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ravana's address to Sita

said —“ O beautiful damsel, why do you torment yourself and shed tears for nothing? Why are you much afraid of me, whilst I am your slave? Fear not being discovered by others, for no man can enter this palace, and dry up your tears, and look upon me with a smiling countenance. Let me send for women who will wash you with water, and tie up your hair in knots, and adorn you with ornaments and perfumes. Come and sit with me, and let us drink together, and pass the time in hearing songs and beholding dances. Be the mistress of all my other wives, and I too will be your slave, and do whatever you command, and give you whatever you may desire.”

Sita's reply to Ravana.

To this speech of Ravana, the terrified Sita answered thus —“ O lord of Lanká, cast aside your enmity against Rama! You are renowned throughout the world for your wealth, strength and valour, and should not soil your reputation by acts of wickedness. Look upon the wives of others as you do upon your own mother, and restore me to my husband Rama, and entreat his forgiveness. My husband is my wealth, and I consider him better than anything you can offer me. I advise you to send me to Ráma, and thus save yourself and family from ruin.”

Prays that she may be restored to her husband Rama

Ravana promises his respect only to Rama

Ravana said —“ O Sita, How can you compare me with the poor and helpless devotee, Rama? I live in a palace of gold, whilst your Rama dwells in a hut of leaves. I command

Sita, when he heard a noise with loud acclamations, on looking round he beheld a crowd of rosy cheeked and lovely damsel beautiful as furies, ravishers of hearts equal in splendour to the Sun and Moon coming into the garden. This troop formed a circle in the midst of which marched Ravana as a thorn among roses a raven in the midst of nightingales a giant amongst fairies with ten heads and twenty arms as long as the branches of trees, the colour of his body was blue mixed with black.”

Then follows a singular account of Ravana's secret worship of Páma, which is deserving of consideration — Ravana was constantly meditating in anxious expectation of the period when he should obtain salvation from the hand of Rama. That if Rama did not come to Lanká to free Sita from her confinement he could not be relieved from his present miserable state. He worshipped Rama in his heart whether engaged in business, at meals or in sleep, he adored Páma, nor did he at any time forget his name. Whichever way he turned his thoughts he imagined he beheld Rama with his bow and arrows in his hand, his hair braided in a knot on the crown of his head, a deer skin bound round his body, and accompanied by Lakshmana.



a numerous army of horses, elephants, chariots, and footmen, whereas your Ráma is without a single ally: Even my servants wear cloths which are rare to the gods, whilst your husband wears the bark of trees: My women and slaves wear ornaments which are unknown to Ráma, and live upon food which would be regarded as delicacies even by Indra, whereas your husband lives upon fruits and roots: Behold the beds and furniture of my palace; Ráma has never even heard of their existence: How then can you prefer Ráma to me? Moreover it is doubtful whether Ráma is alive: I think that by this time he must have been devoured by some bird or beast of prey; but even if he is alive how is it possible for him to enter Lanká? How then can I ever fear that Ráma will rescue you? If thousands of Rámas were to assemble together they could not carry you away: Therefore cast aside your foolish hopes, and consent to be my chief Rání."

Sítá replied in anger:—"I am now assured, O wicked Rávana, that you have not long to live: The day is not far off when your golden Lanká will be a heap of ashes, and your numberless army will fall under the arrows of Ráma: As for your bravery you need say nothing; for I know its worth from the stealth in which you carried me away: There is as much difference between you and Ráma, as there is between a mouse and a lion, a hedgehog and an elephant, a mosquito and a hawk; a glowworm and the noon-day sun, a gram of sand and a precious stone, a star and the full moon, the river Caramnasa and the Ganges, a burnt brick and a mountain, and a Chandala and the Bráhma Vrihaspati, who is the preceptor of the gods: Boast as long as you do not meet Ráma; but the moment he is here, consider yourself and your whole family as dead persons: You will then remember my counsel, and repent when it is too late."

Rávana was now angry in his turn, and his eyes turned round and flashed fire, and he gnashed his teeth, and said:—"O Sítá, if it were not sinful to slay a woman, I would put you to death this day: Your language is more like that of a master, than like one whom I can kill or save according to

Sítá wrathfully declares Rávana's inferiority to Ráma.

Rávana threatens to devour Sítá unless after two months she becomes his wife.

**HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV** my pleasure I am determined, however, that you shall accept me as your husband, and I give you two months to think it over. If at the end of that time I find you still obstinate, I will devour you."

Sitā's bitter refusal

Sitā replied — "Even though you gave me thousands of years I would never become your wife, I will touch no man but Rāma."

Rāvana prepares to slay Sitā with his scimitar

At these harsh words of Sitā, the mighty Rāvana was furious with rage, and he cried out — "Never before have I heard such harsh words, and I cannot permit them to go unpunished." Then he took up a sharp scimitar, and raised it in the air to strike off her head, when his wife Mandodari

Interposition of his wife Mandodari.

suddenly appeared and caught him in her arms, and said — "Be patient, my lord, and stain not your reputation by such a heinous offence. All the Sastris agree in condemning the slaughter of a female. You have women by hundreds, and I pray you go and take pleasure in their company. This woman is weak and melancholy, and has no inclination to become your wife. Do not, therefore, entertain any passion for her, for he who forces the inclinations of a woman will die an early death, or become the prey of endless disease."

Rāvana again threatens to devour Sitā after two months

At these words Rāvana was somewhat quieted, but he desired the female attendants to persuade Sitā to become his wife within two months, and if when that time was over she still refused him, they were to cut her in pieces, and bring him the flesh for his morning meal. Having given these instructions, Rāvana returned with his women to his own apartments.

9th Efforts of the Rākshasī women to induce Sitā to yield to Rāvana.

Meanwhile the Rākshasī women came and seated themselves round Sitā, and endeavoured to turn her heart towards Rāvana, but their efforts were as vain as those of a child who endeavours to turn the current of the holy Ganges with a handful of sand. They then threatened to torture her, and even to devour her, and she was in an agony of terror, and a virtuous woman named Trījatā, who had hitherto been asleep was awakened by her cries. And Trījatā arose up and said to the others — "If you have any desire

Sitā's terror

Trījatā prophesies the triumph of Rāma

for your own safety, you will keep your hands from Sítá, for I have dreamed a dream which betokens victory to Ráma, and destruction to Rávana." Then all the women left Sítá, and crowded round the aged Trijatá to listen to the story of her dream; and when they had heard it, they departed out of the grove, and went to their own apartments.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Whilst Sítá was thus left alone in the grove, she heard a voice repeating the story of Ráma; and looking up to see whence the voice came, she beheld nothing but a very small Monkey; and she thought that her ears had deceived her, and became as sorrowful as before. Then Hanuman said:—"O mother, I am not what you take me to be: I am the slave of Ráma, my name is Hanuman, and I am the son of Váyu; and I have been sent by Ráma to discover if you were here." So saying, Hanuman descended from the tree, and bowed himself before Sítá; and he put into her hand the signet ring which bore the name of Ráma, and which Ráma had given to him at the time of his departing with the army towards the south. Then the grief of Sítá burst forth afresh, and she placed the ring on her head, and then upon her bosom; but she began to rejoice greatly when she heard that a day of deliverance was nigh at hand.

10th. Interview  
between Hanu-  
man and Sítá.

Hanuman gives  
Ráma's signet  
ring to Sítá.

Sítá's grief.

When Hanuman had thus acquainted Sítá with all that had occurred to Ráma after she had been carried away by Rávana, he proposed to bear her away upon his shoulder, and restore her to her husband Ráma. Sítá said:—"How can so small a Monkey carry me over the broad ocean?" Then Hanuman increased his size, until he became as large as a mountain, and then he reduced himself to the same size as before. And Sítá looked on with wonder, and said:—"I now believe that you can carry me, but I will never of my own will touch any man but Ráma: Moreover, if you took me hence by stealth, all the world would say that Ráma is a coward, and is unable to punish Rávana." Sítá then dismissed Hanuman, saying:—"Only two months remain to me; and if within that time Ráma does not come and deliver me, I shall be devoured by these dreadful Rákshasas." She then gave to Hanuman the only jewel which she had re-

Hanuman pro-  
poses to carry  
away Sítá.

Proves his  
strength by  
swelling to the  
size of a  
mountain.

Sítá declines to  
be touched by  
any man save  
Ráma.

HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV maining, and she put on Rāma's ring in lieu thereof, and she blessed Hanuman, and permitted him to depart at the rising of the sun

Hanuman leaves Sita.

11th Hanuman d. destroys the grove

Now when Hanuman left Sita in the Asoka grove, he thought within himself that he had succeeded in discovering Sita, and must now do something to injure Ravana. So he again assumed a large shape, and entered a beautiful grove of mango trees, and ravaged it in all directions, so that not a single tree remained in all the garden. The Rākshasas who watched in the garden were all fast asleep, but they were awakened by the terrible noise, and seeing that the garden was all destroyed, and that the countenance of Hanuman was fearful to behold, they went to Ravana, and told him that a large Monkey had entered Lanka, and destroyed the whole of the garden.

The girls complain to Ravana.

Ravana sent eighty thousand Rākshasas who are destroyed by Hanuman.

When Ravana heard what Hanuman had done, he called eighty thousand Rākshasas, and ordered them to bring that great Monkey before him, tied hand and foot. The mighty army of Rākshasas then went forth into the garden, but when Hanuman saw them approaching, he pulled down a crystal pillar, and whirled it over his head, and slew hundreds, and taking other pillars, he whirled them round also, until within a single hour he had sent the whole of the eighty thousand Rākshasas to the mansions of Yama. And Hanuman then destroyed all the guards that watched in the garden, excepting only a very few who escaped to Ravana, and told him all that the Monkey had done.

Confrontation between Hanuman and Jambavan.

When Ravana heard that his eighty thousand Rākshasas were destroyed, he sent for Jambavan the son of the Commander in Chief, and told him to go out into the garden, and not to return until he had slain this bloodthirsty Monkey. So Jambavan went to his own chamber, and put on a red cloth, and over it a coat of mail, and he put a helmet upon his head, a string of pearls upon his neck, earrings in his ears, and an ornament upon his arms, and he armed himself with a sword, a club, and a leather thong. He then ascended his chariot, and proceeded to the garden, where he found Hanuman seated upon the wall, and he dis-

charged many arrows, and pierced Hanuman upon his head, his two arms, and his breast. In return, Hanuman took up a large tree, and hurled it at the head of his enemy; but Jambu-málí cut the tree into pieces with his arrows. Then Hanuman took up a pillar and threw it at Jambu-málí, and dashed him and his chariot to pieces, and killed him and all his servants; and only one man escaped to carry the news to Rávana.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Raja Rávana was now in great dismay, and his eyes flashed fire with rage. And seven mighty Rákshasas appeared before him, and prayed that they might be sent against Hanuman; and Rávana gave them leave to go, and they went out and were all slain by Hanuman in the same manner as he had slain Jambu-málí. Then Rávana sent out five Commanders, but they too were slain by Hanuman. Then he ordered his own son Aksha to go forth, and he was slain in like manner.

Hanuman slays  
seven Rákshasa  
Chiefs, five  
Commanders,  
and Aksha, the  
son of Rávana

When Rávana heard that his son Aksha was slain, he was filled with grief, and he sent for his famous and beloved son Indrajit, who had once conquered the all-powerful Indra, the sovereign of the gods. And Rávana said to Indrajit:—"O my son, nothing is impossible to you: Go you, therefore, and conquer this evil Monkey!" At these words Indrajit rose up and arrayed himself for the battle; and he ascended his chariot, which was drawn by four tigers, and went out at the head of a vast army to fight against the Monkey Chief. When Hanuman beheld Indrajit, he set up a loud shout like a roar of thunder; and Indrajit shouted in return, and drawing his bow pierced Hanuman all over with sharp arrows. Then Hanuman seized a pillar as before, and with one blow he put to death the charioteer of Indrajit. Then Indrajit took another chariot, and the battle was very hot, and lasted long. At length Indrajit thought within himself:—"This Monkey must be a god." And he loosened a powerful noose which had been given to him by Brahma, and which never failed of its object; and he threw it over Hanuman. And Hanuman thought within himself that he could break the strings of the noose, but would not do so

Rávana sends  
his son Indrajit,  
the conqueror  
of Indra, to  
fight Hanuman.

Indrajit goes  
out in a chariot  
drawn by four  
tigers

The combat.

Indrajit binds  
Hanuman in  
the irresistible  
noose of  
Brahma

HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV. lest he should offend Brahmā. And he permitted himself to be taken prisoner and bound.

10th Tricks played by Hanuman upon the Rákshasas.

Then the Rákshasas commanded Hanuman to arise and go before Ravana, and they began to beat him with sticks to compel him to go, but Hanuman said —“How can I arise and go before your Rājā, when I am bound hand and foot! Take me up one of you upon your shoulders, for I am unable to stir of my own accord.” And one Rákshasa then came forward and tried to take the Monkey up in his arms, but he could not raise him from the ground. Then one after another came forward, but not one was able to move Hanuman. And Indrajit was in great wrath, and he abused the Rakshasas very harshly, and ordered hundreds of Rákshasas to take the Monkey up. And Hanuman lessened the weight of his body, so that the Rákshasas lifted him upon their shoulders, but then he again assumed his former weight, and crashed the Rákshasas, so that they fell down dead beneath him. Seeing this, no Rákshasa would approach him, but he bade them loosen the bonds on his feet, and they did so, and he then rose up, and walked towards the court of Ravana, and the Rakshasas followed him holding the ends of the cords in their hands. Then the inhabitants of Lankā came forward, and some of them struck Hanuman on the face, and some pulled him by the hair, and others by the tail, whilst others threw ashes upon him. In this manner he was led into the Council hall of Ravana.

Progress of Hanuman to the Council hall of Ravana.

11th, Hanuman's appearance before Ravana.

When Hanuman was brought before Ravana and all his Counsellors, Ravana questioned him in great wrath, but Hanuman defied him to his face, and called upon him to restore Sitā to her husband, and to ask forgiveness at the feet of Rāma. Then Ravana was filled with anger, and ordered that the head of Hanuman should be immediately severed from his body. But Vibhishana rose up and said —“It has been laid down in all the Sastras, that an envoy is never to be put to death. He may be disfigured, or beaten with leathern stripes, or his head may be shaved,<sup>1</sup> for these are

<sup>1</sup> It will be remembered that the envoys of King David had the half of their beards shaved off by Hanun King of Ammon. (2 Sam x) In the present instance there appears to be some confusion between a spy and an envoy.

the three punishments proper to an envoy: Do not therefore slay this Monkey, but let him go and make his report to those by whom he has been sent."

Rávana replied:—"What you say, O Vibhishana, is perfectly true, and I will not therefore kill this Monkey: But I cannot permit him to depart unpunished: The tail is the chief ornament of the Monkey, and I shall therefore order his tail to be set on fire and burned." So saying, Rávana commanded his Rákshasas to cover Hanuman's tail with old cloths, and to dip it into ghee; and the Rákshasas did so, but Hanuman swelled out his tail to such a monstrous size that all the cloths in Lanká would scarcely cover it. The Rákshasas then dipped his tail in ghee, and set it on fire.

11th, The firing of Hanuman's tail

Now, when Hanuman's tail had been set on fire, the flame blazed very fiercely, but he felt no pain, and he knew that he was preserved by the power of Ráma and Sítá. Then being intent upon committing evil against Rávana, he reduced his body to a very small size and escaped through the meshes of the noose; and again swelling out to a gigantic height, he seated himself on the top of a wall, and took a pillar in his hand. Then the Rákshasas hastened to recapture him, but with one stroke of the pillar he killed them all; and lashing about his flaming tail, he set all the houses in Lanká in a blaze of fire. Hanuman then went before Sítá, and related to her all that had taken place; and having obtained her permission to depart, he went out of the city, and set out to return to Ráma.

Hanuman escapes Lanká

When Hanuman reached the sea-shore, he set up a loud shout which was heard by Angada and all the army of Monkeys and Bears who were encamped on the opposite side. He then took another tremendous leap, and passed over the ocean the same way as before; and having rejoined the Monkey army, he related to them the story of all that had occurred to him in Lanká. The whole army of Monkeys and Bears then set out with great joy to return to Ráma and Sugriva; and on their way they came to the honey garden of Sugriva, which was guarded by his uncle, the great Monkey Dadhi-múkha. And the Monkeys entered the

15th, Return of Hanuman and the Monkey army, to Ráma, and Sugriva.

Adventures of the Monkeys in the honey garden of Sugriva.

**HISTORY OF** garden, and they drank the honey until they were all  
**IN IIA.** drunken, and they made a great noise and tumult, and  
**PART IV** Dadhi mukha heard their shouts, and ordered his attendants  
 to drive them out of the garden. At this the Monkeys  
 were in a great rage, and they fell upon Dadhi mukha, and  
 some beat him, and others kicked him, and others rubbed  
 his face against the ground. Then Dadhi mukha arose and  
 fled to the city Kishkindhya, and prostrated himself at the  
 feet of his nephew Sugriva, and informed him of all that  
 the Monkeys had done in the garden. And Sugriva con-  
 soled him, but rejoiced greatly, saying —“Angada would  
 never have permitted the Monkeys to drink the honey in  
 my garden were he not returning with good news respecting  
 Sita.” Sugriva then requested Dadhi mukha to forgive  
 Angada, and to go and bring the Monkey army with all  
 speed to Kishkindhya.

Meeting be-  
 tween Hanu-  
 mar and Rāma.

Hanuman gives  
 S. a jewel to  
 Rāma.

Review of the  
 foregoing nar-  
 rative of the  
 adventures of  
 Hanuman.

Meanwhile the whole army of Monkeys and Bears, with  
 Hanuman in front, proceeded to the place where they were  
 to meet Rāma and Sugriva, and they filled the air with the  
 name of Rāma. And Angada and Hanuman told all. And  
 Hanuman said —“Unless the army enters Lanka within  
 one month from this day, Sita will have put an end to her  
 own life to escape from Ravana.” And Hanuman gave to  
 Rama the jewel which Sita had given to him in exchange  
 for the ring, and Pāma knew it again, and bestowed great  
 praises upon Hanuman.

The foregoing narrative is replete with strange  
 pictures which have been familiarized to every  
 Hindu from his childhood by nursery paintings and  
 dramatic representations, but which the European  
 must generally fail to realize by a bare perusal of  
 the story. Accordingly it may be advisable to  
 pause for awhile, and endeavour to call up the  
 scenes in all their grand extravagance as they flash  
 upon the imagination of the marvel-loving Hindu,  
 to leave for awhile the area of truth and nature, and



yield to the witcheries of the Híndú bard, until the fantastic shapes which are shadowed forth by the poet's fancy cease to be the mere phrensy of poetic painting, and become vivid and substantial realities.

The first picture is that of the mighty Monkey Hanuman, with form as vast as a mountain and as tall as a gigantic tower. His complexion is yellow and glowing like molten gold. His face is as red as the brightest ruby; whilst his enormous tail spreads out to an interminable length. He stands on a lofty rock and roars like thunder. He leaps into the air, and flies amongst the clouds with a rushing noise, whilst the ocean waves are roaring and splashing below. He alights upon Lanká with a bound which makes the island tremble, and fills the Rákshasa Raja and all his demon Counsellors with mysterious alarm.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Picture of  
Hanuman's  
leap

Next the fabled city of Lanká passes before the eye like a panorama of marvels. All that is monstrous and magnificent, all that is hideous and beautiful, are to be found in these marvellous houses and palaces, which are shut out from the outer world by lines of impregnable fortifications. Her seven walls and moats recall the vision of the city of Ekbatana; whilst the great streets, intersecting each other, awaken the old dream of the fabled city of Babylon, with its stupendous walls and brazen gates.

Picture of the  
city of Lanká,  
with its fortifi-  
cations and  
monstrous in-  
habitants.

Through this city of marvels Hanuman stealthily creeps at midnight in the form of a cat. The full moon is shining on the moats and battlements, the houses, the bazaars, and the gardens. The giants, the monsters, and the fair women, are all wrapped in deep sleep. After a strange encounter with the Genius of the city, Hanuman approaches the palace

Picture of  
Hanuman  
stealing through  
Lanká at  
midnight in the  
shape of a cat.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Picture of the  
inner apart-  
ments

Widowed con-  
dition of Sítá in  
the Asoka  
grove

Extraordinary  
picture pre-  
sented by the  
night interview  
between  
Ravana and  
Sítá.

Favourite  
pantomimic  
representation  
of Hanuman's  
setting Lanka  
on fire with his  
tail

Army of drunk  
Monkey  
in the honey  
garden.

of Rávan; and once more the Oriental bard gives full play to his imagination. The palace and garden, and especially the inner apartments, are described with a luxurious sensuousness which the European poet could scarcely reach. Contrasted with this voluptuous scene is the picture of the desolate condition of Sítá in the Asoka grove, pale, emaciated, and arrayed in the garb of widowhood, without ornament and without perfumes. It is night, but she is sitting beneath a tree, surrounded by the demon women. The bells sound the third quarter of the night, or about three o'clock in the morning. Suddenly an extraordinary incident occurs, which could scarcely have entered the imagination of any one but an Oriental. The ten-headed Rávana awakes in the night and thinks of Sítá; and accordingly descends from his couch, and goes out into the Asoka garden, surrounded by a crowd of beautiful damsels, to seek the object of his desires and induce her to become his wife.

The pantomimic action involved in the proceedings of Hanuman can be easily apprehended; and the European may even sympathize in the shouts of laughter which accompany the discomfiture of the Rákshasas. But the burning of Hanuman's tail is the prime favourite in dramatic representations, and is always hailed by a Hindú audience with a storm of delight. The false tail of the representative of Hanuman is of course stuffed with combustibles, and flares away with a display of fireworks, until the flimsy materials which indicate the streets and houses of Lanká are destroyed in the devouring flames.

The scene in the honey garden is almost equally amusing in the eyes of the Hindús. The joke

lies in the presumption of the Monkeys, who consider that as they have discovered Sítá, Sugríva will readily forgive them for revelling in his honey garden. But there is another amusing element which must not be overlooked. The Monkeys are said to have intoxicated themselves with the honey; and if the representation of a drunken man can furnish amusement to a mixed audience, it is not difficult to apprehend the intense enjoyment which is produced by the grotesque picture of an army of drunken Monkeys, playing every fantastic trick conceivable in animals that caper about sometimes on four legs and sometimes on two, whose countenances are always ludicrous, and whose very tails are provocative of laughter.

Amidst, however, all the wild extravagance of the poet's fancy, there are a few glimpses of historic truth which are well deserving of notice. Thus the picture of Rávana sleeping, surrounded by a number of beautiful women, is perfectly in accordance with the traditions of the sensuality which prevailed amongst the Buddhist Rajas, and thus tends to confirm the view that Rávana was a Buddhist sovereign. In the early life of Gótama Buddha there is a significant legend which serves to indicate the mistaken voluptuousness that appears to have been the rule, and the weary satiety which frequently followed. Gótama, like Rávana, was constantly taking his pleasure in the company of a large number of beautiful damsels; but one evening, whilst reclining upon his couch as usual, their charms failed to make any impression upon his heart. They danced, they sang, they displayed their graceful forms in every movement, but his thoughts were

Glimpses of  
historic truthSensuality  
practised by  
Rávana com-  
mon amongst  
the Buddhist  
RajasSignificant  
legend of sensu-  
ality and satiety  
in Gótama  
Buddha.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

---

elsewhere, and at last he fell asleep, and they followed his example. About midnight Gótama awoke, and looking around him beneath the light of the fragrant lamps, he saw the various attitudes, and uninviting appearance of the damsels. Some were snoring, others were gnashing their teeth, others had their mouths wide open, whilst others were restlessly tumbling about in unseemly postures. Accordingly he arose from his couch, and determined from that moment to abstain from all the pleasures of sense, and to pass his life as a devotee.\*

Part played by  
Vibhishana  
in the original  
tradition.

The proceedings of Vibhishana are also worthy of consideration, as he subsequently performed an important part in the story, and evidently belongs to the original tradition. It seems that although Ráma is represented as a god, yet he found it necessary to form an alliance with Sugriva; and in like manner it would now seem that he carried on negotiations with a brother of Rávana who aspired to the throne of Lanká. A religious meaning is of course imparted to this transaction, which in itself would otherwise present a very suspicious appearance. Vibhishana is represented as a faithful worshipper of Vishnu; and in a subsequent portion of the poem he is said to have been ill-used by Rávana for counselling submission to Ráma; and to have deserted the cause of his brother and joined that of the invaders, by whom he was at once recognized as Raja of Lanká. This arrangement, which will be further discussed hereafter, is of a singularly human character, and as such may be readily credited. As regards the religious aspect of the alli-

Religious significance of the alliance between Vibhishana and Ráma.

\* See Bigandet's Legend of Gótama. The subject will be referred to hereafter.

ance, it is easy to conceive that in a religious war between the Linga worshippers and the Buddhists, an ambitious and unscrupulous brother of the Buddhist Raja would perceive the expediency of adopting the religion of the invaders, as a step towards securing their support in the effort to supplant the reigning Raja, and obtain possession of the throne. On the other hand, Ráma's genius for alliances seems to have been quite equal to that of any modern sovereign, and to have been attended with extraordinary success. By aiding Sugríva in the struggle against Báli, he secured the assistance of a powerful ally on the mainland; and by espousing the cause of Vibhíshana, he secured the support of a strong party who came over to him from the island.

Ráma's genius  
for alliances

## CHAPTER XXI.

### RÁMA'S INVASION OF LANKÁ.

#### HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV

Division of the  
story of Ráma's  
expedition into  
two parts—

1st The in-  
vasion  
2nd The war  
Narrative of  
Ráma's in-  
vasion

THE story of Ráma's expedition against Rávana may be divided into two separate narratives, the first comprising the events which immediately preceded the commencement of hostilities, and the second comprising the war which followed. Accordingly the present chapter will contain the first narrative under the head of "Ráma's invasion of Lanká;" whilst the chapter immediately following will contain the second narrative under the head of "Ráma's war against Rávana."

Important inci-  
dents  
Rupture be-  
tween Rávana  
and Vibhishana.

The story of the invasion of Lanká includes some important incidents. It will be seen that the rupture between Rávana and Vibhishana reaches a climax, and that the Queen-mother appears to have espoused

shippers and the Buddhists in Southern India, which appears to form the groundwork of this portion of the Rámáyana; and it is especially interesting from the fact that a magnificent pagoda at Ramisseriam, containing a brazen Linga set up before an image of Ráma, exists to this day; whilst the locality is regarded as one of the most sacred in all India, and a favourite place of pilgrimage to devout Hindús from the remotest quarters of the Indian peninsula

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The narrative of Ráma's invasion of Lanká is as follows.—

The narrative  
of Ráma's in-  
vasion

After this, at an auspicious moment, Ráma and Sugriva set out for the sea-shore with an innumerable array of Monkeys and Bears, and Hanuman carried Ráma on his shoulders, and Angada carried Lakshmana in like manner, and they speedily reached the ocean, and encamped in huts made of leaves, and began to consider how they should cross the sea, and reach the island of Lanká<sup>1</sup>

Progress of the  
Army of Mon-  
keys and Bears  
to the sea coast,  
accompanied by  
Ráma and  
Lakshmana.

<sup>1</sup> The march of the army of Rama is graphically described in the Adhyatma Rámáyana, as follows—"Sugriva led the Monkeys, Jámbarat the Bears, and the other Chiefs took their stations at the head of their respective divisions. The troops, well armed and appointed, formed a square with Rama and Lakshmana in the centre, who exceeded in lustre the quickly passing sun. The Monkeys and Bears, resembling the stars of heaven round the moon, dancing on all sides and rejoicing in their strength, covered the space of one hundred thousand miles so great were their numbers. Each Monkey was invincible in prowess: he could in a moment assume whatever form he chose, and delighted in war. They all continually were crying out—'Let us hasten our march that we may exterminate Fúman and his host of demons!' In this manner the armies proceeded towards the south, subsisting on the fruits and leaves of the forest, to desolate Lanká. These Monkeys and Bears were each of them an incarnation of one of the gods. Ráma in the midst of his army appeared in great splendour, as the moon among the stars. The heroic Monkeys sounded their shells, the earth trembled with the loudness of their shouts and the lashings of their tails. They passed over forests, mountains, wilds, and sands, without noticing the difficulties of the road. The race of Monkeys are always lively, they marched along swift as the wind in sprightly conversation with each other, they did not leave a single fruit, leaf, or root in any of the forests through which they passed.

<sup>2</sup> The vast armies of Monkeys and Bears, with Ráma and the rest marched on day and night in the most regular order, until they reached the southern shore, where they looked with astonishment at the waves of the sea, and

## CHAPTER XXI.

### RÁMA'S INVASION OF LANKÁ.

#### HISTORY OF INDIA PART IV

Division of the  
story of Ráma's  
expedition into  
two parts—

1st The in-  
vasion  
2nd, The war  
Narrative of  
Ráma's in-  
vasion

THE story of Ráma's expedition against Rávana may be divided into two separate narratives, the first comprising the events which immediately preceded the commencement of hostilities, and the second comprising the war which followed. Accordingly the present chapter will contain the first narrative under the head of "Ráma's invasion of Lanká;" whilst the chapter immediately following will contain the second narrative under the head of "Ráma's war against Rávana."

Important inci-  
dents

Rupture be-  
tween Rávana  
and Vibhishana

Bridging of the  
channel be-  
tween Ceylon  
and the main

The Linga set  
up in the  
Island of  
Ramisseram.

The story of the invasion of Lanká includes some important incidents. It will be seen that the rupture between Rávana and Vibhishana reaches a climax, and that the Queen-mother appears to have espoused the cause of Vibhishana. But perhaps the most interesting legend is the alleged construction of a rocky bridge over the channel which separates India from Ceylon, and which is sixty miles across. To this day the tradition of Ráma's bridge is one of the most widely celebrated in all India; whilst the islands and causeways in that neighbourhood are still pointed out as relics of the marvellous structure. The setting up of a Linga in the island of Ramisseram is a significant event that throws valuable light upon a struggle between the Linga wor-



shippers and the Buddhists in Southern India, which appears to form the groundwork of this portion of the Rámáyana; and it is especially interesting from the fact that a magnificent pagoda at Ramisseram, containing a brazen Linga set up before an image of Ráma, exists to this day, whilst the locality is regarded as one of the most sacred in all India, and a favourite place of pilgrimage to devout Hindús from the remotest quarters of the Indian peninsula

The narrative of Ráma's invasion of Lanká is as follows —

The narrative of Ráma's invasion

After this, at an auspicious moment, Ráma and Sugríva set out for the sea-shore with an innumerable array of Monkeys and Bears, and Hanuman carried Ráma on his shoulders, and Angada carried Lakshmana in like manner, and they speedily reached the ocean, and encamped in huts made of leaves, and began to consider how they should cross the sea, and reach the island of Lanká <sup>1</sup>

Progress of the Army of Monkeys and Bears to the sea coast, accompanied by Ráma and Lakshmana.

<sup>1</sup> The march of the army of Rama is graphically described in the Adhyátma Ramayana as follows — "Sugriva led the Monkeys, Jambavat the Bears, and the other Chiefs took their stations at the head of their respective divisions. The troops, well armed and appointed, formed a square with Ráma and Lakshmana in the centre, who exceeded in lustre the quickly passing sun. The Monkeys and Bears, resembling the stars of heaven round the moon, dancing on all sides and rejoicing in their strength, covered the space of one hundred thousand miles so great were their numbers. Each Monkey was invincible in prowess, he could in a moment assume whatever form he chose, and delighted in war. They all continually were crying out — 'Let us hasten our march that we may exterminate I'vina and his host of demons.' In this manner the armies proceeded towards the south, subsisting on the fruits and leaves of the forest, to desolate Lanka. The Monkeys and Bears were each of them an incarnation of one of the gods. Rama in the midst of his army appeared in great splendour, as the moon among the stars. The heroic Monkeys sounded their shells, the earth trembled with the loudness of their shouts and the lashings of their tails. They passed over forests, mountains, wild, and sands, without noticing the difficulties of the road. The race of Monkeys are always lively, they marched along swift as the wind in sprightly conversation with each other, they did not leave a single fruit leaf, or root in any of the forests through which they passed.

"The vast armies of Monkeys and Bears with Ráma and the rest, marched on day and night in the most regular order, until they reached the southern shore, where they looked with astonishment at the waves of the sea, rolling one after

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Nikashá  
n other of  
Rávana's re-  
quests for ot-  
her to interfere

Vibhishana goes  
over to Ráma.

Ráma calls a  
Council

The god Varuna  
advises the  
construction of  
a bridge by  
Nala.

Nala and the  
Monkeys build  
the bridge.

The stones float  
on the water  
Alara of  
Rávana.

Meanwhile Nikashá, who was the mother of Rávana began to see ill omens on every side, and she was sorely troubled, and she sent for her other son, Vibhishana, and requested him to advise Ravana to restore Sitá to her husband. And Vibhishana proceeded to the Council Chamber, and spoke aloud to Ravana before all his Counsellors, but Ravana was wroth and abused him sorely, and commanded him to depart out of Lanka. So Vibhishana returned to his house, and took leave of his wife Sarana, and directed her to attend upon Sitá, and serve her as a slave. He then went out of Lanká, and proceeded to the camp of Ráma, and four chief men of the city went with him. And when Rama saw the men, and discovered who they were, he ordered a pot of water to be brought from the sea, and he vowed friendship with Vibhishana, and he took the water and poured it upon his head, and declared him to be Raja of Lanka in the room of his brother Ravana.

After this Ráma called together a Council to consider how they should cross the ocean so as to reach the island of Lanká, and he invoked the god Varuna, the regent of the waters, and Varuna entered the Council, and directed that a bridge should be built over the sea. Varuna said — "There is a Monkey in your army named Nala, he is the son of Viswakarma, and whatsoever stone he touches will float upon the water." Then Ráma rejoiced, and directed Sugriva to order Nala to build the bridge, and in an auspicious moment the great work was commenced by Nala. And the Monkeys filled the air with their shouts, and incessantly called out the name of Ráma, and they brought trees, mountains, stones, and other articles, and gave them all to Nala, and Nala threw them into the sea, and by virtue of his touch all the stones floated upon the waves as though they had been boats.<sup>2</sup> And the news was carried to Ravana that Rama was building a bridge of stones which

another with a tremendous noise and seemed as if they rose to heaven and then sank to the lowest abyss the opposite shore being imperceptible.

<sup>2</sup> According to the Adhyátma Pámayana Nala engraved the name of Rama upon every stone and such was the virtue of Rama's name that the stones would not sink, but floated on the sea and were united to form a bridge.

floated on the water as though they were planks, and Rávana called together his Counsellors, but they bade him fear nothing, for even if Ráma crossed to Lanká he would fall in battle. Meanwhile the bridge progressed day by day, and on the last day of the month it touched the shore of Lanká.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Compleat on of  
the bridge

Then Ráma worshipped the great god Siva, who is the propitiator in all difficult undertakings, and he made a Langa, and worshipped it, and poured offerings over it, and when he was about to throw the Langa into the water, the gods came down from heaven, and presented themselves before him, and besought him to permit it to stay where it was that they might worship it every day. And this Langa remains to this day, and is named Ramesushur, which signifies "the lord of Rama," or "the god whose lord is Ráma."<sup>3</sup> Then in an auspicious moment Ráma and Sugriva, with all the army of Monkeys and Bears, crossed the ocean upon the bridge which Nala had made, and encamped in the island of Lanká near the Subala mountain, and Ráma sent Hanuman to tell the happy tidings to Sitá, who was still abiding in the Asoka grove, and Sitá was filled with joy, and exulted in the hope of her speedy restoration to her beloved husband Ráma.

Ráma worships  
Siva and sets up  
a Langa in  
Rameswaram

Ráma and  
Sugriva cross  
the bridge with  
the army of  
Monkeys and  
Bears.

Now when Ravana heard that Ráma and all his Monkey army had crossed the ocean and encamped without the city of Lanká, he sent for two of his Ministers named Suka and Sárana, and desired them to assume the shape of Monkeys,

<sup>3</sup> The setting up of this Langa is of considerable importance, as directly associating Ráma with the worshippers of the Langa. The following account of the circumstance is extracted from the Adhyátma Rámáyana.—'At the commencement of the work Ráma erected the Langa of Rameswara, and having established religious ceremonies he gave it the name of Rameswara, so that even to this day the place where the bridge commenced is termed Setubandha Rameswara. Ráma issued these commands.—'Let every one born of the human race visit this spot to behold the Rameswara and, having brought with him the Ganges water let him pour it over the Langa from these ablutions the most heinous sins, even the murder of a Bráhman will be remitted the performer of these ablutions will become pure as God, and at his death he will take up his everlasting abode in Paradise. In this manner did Ráma establish the Rameswara on the sea-coast.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The two spies  
recognized by  
Vibhishana.

Ráma permits  
the two spies to  
survey his  
army  
Ráma's message  
to Rávana

Desecration of  
Rávana seated  
on his  
throne

Wrath of  
Rávana at the  
message from  
Ráma

Rávana surveys  
the army of  
Monkeys and  
Laksmana

and to go and spy out the army of Ráma, and bring him word as to the names and characters of his chief heroes and Counsellors. And Súka and Sárana did as they were commanded, but when they joined the army of Monkeys, they were seized as spies and carried away into the presence of Ráma. But Ráma said to the two spies — "Go you and count my armies, and learn what you will of my Commanders and Counsellors and then return and tell all to Rávana, and say that I will reduce his city of Lanká to a heap of ashes, and slaughter him and all his sons and kinsmen, so that not a single one shall be left alive to offer the cake and water to his departed soul." So Súka and Sárana were shown all the armies of Ráma, and saw that the Commanders of the Monkeys and Bears were warriors of great might and skill, and they marvelled exceedingly, and went back to the city and informed Rávana of all that they had seen and heard.

At that time Rávana was seated in pomp and magnificence on a throne studded with precious stones. Ten crowns of pearls and jewels were on his ten heads, and thousands of giants surrounded him on all sides. A rich canopy with fringes of the largest pearls was suspended over his throne. He was eating betel leaf, and held a cup of wine in his hand, whilst celestial nymphs were dancing before him. When he heard the message from Ráma he bit his lips and gnashed his teeth, and said — "Not though all the world came out to fight against me, will I ever restore Sítá to Ráma." He then rose up and went to the roof of his palace, and saw all the armies of Monkeys encamped before his city, and Súka and Sárana pointed out to him the different armies, and told him the names of all their Commanders, and when he saw his younger brother Vibhishana standing beside Ráma, he was filled with wrath. Then Súka coun-

\* In the Adhyátma Ramáyana the Monkeys are described as being of different colours,—white, black, blue, green, red, yellow, &c. The following description of the Monkey army, which is put into the mouth of Súka, is worthy of extract — "He who stands at the right hand of Ráma, in splendour equal to the sun in lustre as the purest silver, over whose head the canopy and ensigns of royalty are spread, is the wise and distinguished Raja Sugriva, under whose command are myriads of Monkeys drawn up in order and battle array, he is the brother of

solded Ravana to restore Sītā and make peace with Rāma, but the eyes of Ravana flashed fire, and he said—"I would have killed you upon the spot, but for your long services. Depart out of this Lankā, and go wheresoever you please." So Suka set off for the jungle, and passed the remainder of his life as a devotee.

HISTORY OF  
 INDIA  
 PART IV

Dismisses Suka

Bah, the conqueror in battle, of the invincible arm. He who stands on a rock of mighty stature whose body in colour resembles the water lily, who lashes the ground in anger with his enormous tail who bears a war mace in his hand is the valiant Prince Angad the son of Bah, he is chief over millions of Monkeys. The strength of his body is equal to that of ten thousand elephants he is next in authority to Sugriva. The next to the left is Nīla the mighty son of Agni he has hundreds of thousands of Monkeys under him. He who stands close to Lāma the colour of whose body shines like pure gold is Hanuman the son of Vayu the beloved friend of Rāma's soul, the destroyer of the son Akshaya, the conqueror of Lankā the trusty and special servant of Rāma. He who casts his glaring eyes towards Lankā who shouts with a voice like a roaring lion whose thoughts are fixed on the destruction of the city is the heroic Rambha under him are a hundred thousand Monkeys. Next is Sarambha of the yellow body, the commander of millions. He, with the white body near to Sugriva, is the daring Varaha, the chief of ten millions of long tailed Monkeys. He who stands by the side of Angada is the mighty Arundha, the chief of five millions. He with the black body, red face, and yellow tail is Darvadha, of dreadful deeds, he has under him seven millions. He with the green body is Nala, the son of Viswakarma, well skilled in architecture, who built the bridge across the sea, and to whom there is none equal in strength. These are the principal commanders of the Monkeys. There is yet another near to Rāma and that is the illustrious Jambavat King of the Bears who has forty crores of Bears under his command.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Rávana pre-  
pares to with-  
stand the  
attack of Ráma.

Nikashá, the  
mother of  
Rávana, prays  
him to restore  
Sitá.

Máharat  
maternal  
grandfather of  
Rávana advises  
the same.

Wrath of  
Rávana with his  
mother and her  
father.

After this Ravana entered his Council hall, and was informed by his Counsellors that Ráma was preparing to attack Lanká, and he immediately sent for Prahasta, who was his Commander in chief, and told him to make ready the army of Rakshasas, and to pay the soldiers whatever was due to them, and to collect all the supplies necessary for the war. Then the bugle was sounded, and all the Rakshasa soldiers came before Ravana, and bowed their heads, to receive his commands. At this moment, Nikashá, the mother of Rávana, entered the Council-hall, and Ravana rose up and paid her every respect, and gave her his own seat, and bowed down to her, and stood before her with joined hands. Then Nikasha said to him —“O my beloved son, why have you determined to run your Raj for the sake of a woman? You have hundreds of women at your disposal, why do you cast them aside for the sake of a single female. I pray you to restore Sitá to Ráma, and conclude a treaty with Ráma, and tranquillize my mind.”

When Nikashá had finished speaking, her father Maharat came forward and spoke as follows —“O Maharaja, since the birth of Ráma all things have become changed, the Brahmins perform their sacrifices with impunity, they repeat the sacred hymns from the Vedas, which terrify the Rakshasas, and the smoke of the homa rises high in the air, and almost burns the Rakshasas. From all these omens I conclude that our rule is nearly over, and it is not proper at such a time for you to go to war. My counsel is that you restore Sitá, and make peace with Ráma, otherwise no good will befall you.”

At these speeches Ravana was greatly enraged, and he reproached the father of his mother in harsh language, and when Nikashá and her father Máharat saw that

its horrid form at every door. Earthquakes occur seven times every day, dogs and hawks continually howl and bray in the streets and narrow lanes. fires hourly arise. children die before their parents. Those stars such as Saturn, planet with fiery tails, and comets which should not be visible at this season are seen even in the daylight. The sun and moon are under a perpetual eclipse, the crescent round the moon seems a mass of blood, the sun is seen at night. Such are the evil omens which hourly are visible, their effects will I fear, prove baneful to us.

Rávana was greatly enraged, they fled from the Council-hall

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The foregoing narrative of Ráma's invasion of Lanká prior to the actual commencement of hostilities comprises a few scenes which never fail to create a deep impression upon the imagination of the Hindú. He sees in his mind's eye the vast army of Monkeys of different colours marching to the sea-coast, accompanied by an army of Bears, and filling the air with their thundering shouts of "Victory to Ráma." He beholds the vast bridge of rock and stone stretching over the broad sea which separates the Indian continent from the Island of Ceylon; and he feels a pride, at once national and religious, in the idea that the innumerable battalions of Ráma crossed the channel upon this marvellous structure. Lastly, the Lingá which Ráma set up on the Island of Ramisseram is to him both a monument of triumph and a mysterious symbol; and he regards it with so much religious awe that like Herodotus of old he trembles as he speaks of it, lest he should let fall any irreverent words which might excite the anger of the gods

Flight of  
Nikathá and  
Máhavat  
Review of the  
foregoing nar-  
rative of Ráma's  
invasion

The army of  
Monkeys and  
Bears on their  
march.

The vast bridge  
across the sea.

The Lingá, a  
monument of  
triumph and a  
religious  
symbol

The origin of the conception of Ráma's bridge forms a curious subject of inquiry. The famous bridge of boats by which the army of Xerxes passed over the Hellespont, and the bridges constructed by Darius over the Thracian Bosphorus and river Danube, are commonplace matters of fact in comparison with a bridge of stone sixty miles long extending over a deep sea. Strangely enough a rocky causeway runs out from the Indian side of the channel, and terminates at the Island of Ramisseram;

Origin of the  
Hindu concep-  
tion of the  
bridge

Bridges of  
Xerxes and  
Darius matters  
of fact.

Physical con-  
struction of the  
locality suggest  
ive of the idea  
of a bridge

Causeway ter-  
minating at  
Ramisseram

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV	and although it is at present covered by the sea, it is said to have been formerly above the waves. A similar causeway runs out from the opposite shore of Ceylon, and terminates in the Island of Manar, whilst a sandy ridge, known as Adam's Bridge, connects Manar with Ramisseram. There can therefore be little doubt that the Hindu bard formed the idea of a bridge from a contemplation of the physical geography of the locality, and the conception once formed was readily believed and widely disseminated. To this day the huge blocks or boulders which are to be found in various parts of India are universally believed to have been dropped by the Monkeys in the attempt to carry them southward for the purpose of forming the bridge.
Causeway terminated at Manar	
Adam's Bridge connecting Manar with Manar	
Boulders supposed to have been dropped by the Monkeys	
Description of the gateway at Ramisseram	The Island of Ramisseram, and the pagoda which appears to have been erected there as a memorial of Rāma's crossing the sea, are naturally replete with interest to every reader of the Rāmāyana. The pagoda is one of the most magnificent in India.
The gateway	The gateway is lofty and massive, a pyramidal oblong a hundred feet high, and covered with carvings of minute figures, amongst which the Linga is frequently exhibited. The door is Cyclopean in its appearance, being forty feet high, and composed of long slabs of stone placed together perpendicularly with cross slabs of the same material. Beyond the gateway is a cloistered quadrangle six hundred feet square, the pillars of which are three feet deep and
The door	covered with carvings. Beyond the cloisters are several temples with brick spires profusely decorated. The whole precinct is surrounded by a lofty wall, which is covered with minute carvings like those on the pyramidal gateway.
The quadrangle	
The temples	
The surrounding wall	



The entrance to the temples is on the south side. Here stands a temple to Síva, the god of whom the Lingá is a symbol. On the right is a large temple to Ráma, in which the figure of the god is to be seen with a large brazen Lingá before it. On the left is a smaller temple to Sítá, in which the goddess is represented richly dressed; and a brazen pillar ending in a vane of three cross bars stands before it, and is surmounted by a Bind, which may perhaps be intended to represent one of those Rajas of Vultures which are introduced in the Rámáyana as allies of Ráma. Without the door are the vast chariots of the gods, profusely covered with carvings, in which the images are occasionally placed, whilst thousands of worshippers assist to draw them along.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

The temple to  
Síva.  
The temple to  
Ráma and  
brazen Lingá  
The temple of  
Sítá with  
brazen pillar  
surmounted by  
a Bird

The cars of the  
gods.

The Island of Ramisseram is regarded by the Hindús as more sacred than the Island of Delos was regarded by the Greeks. No labour or cultivation of any kind is carried on in any part of it. The Bráhmans, safely embosomed amidst the waves, pass their time in idleness, or meditation, or in the performance of religious rites, or in attendance upon the numerous pilgrims that visit this locality. They live upon the contributions of the devout, and especially upon the large sums which the Poligar chiefs of the neighbouring provinces on the mainland expend upon the establishment in this Island.\*

The sacred  
character of the  
Island of  
Ramisseram

The Bráhmans  
supported at  
the public ex-  
pense

The story of the preparations for the war on either side is related at considerable length in the original, and swelled out by a number of religious discourses, similar in character to those which have already been extracted in the form of notes from

\* See Travels of Lord Valentia.

the Adhyátma Rámáyana. Angada is also said to have been sent out with a message to Rávana, demanding the restoration of Sítá on pain of immediate destruction, and the transfer of the empire of Lanká to Vibhíshana; but the narrative of the mission has been so largely mixed up with mythical details, that it has been omitted altogether from the present text.

## CHAPTER XXII

### RÁMA'S WAR AGAINST RÁVANA.

THE second portion of the narrative of Ráma's expedition against Rávana comprises the story of the actual war. The description of the combats, like the description of the great war in the Mahá Bhárata, occupies a very large space in the original poem, the narrative being interwoven with a mass of supernatural detail which has been largely cut away without damage to the narrative. Some incidents, however, have been preserved on account of their popularity amongst the Hindús, although they are otherwise devoid of historical value.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Story of Ráma's war against Rávana, forming the second portion of the narrative of the expedition. Character of the combats.

The principal events and scenes in Ráma's war against Rávana are as follows:—

Events and scenes in the story of Ráma's war

1st, Commencement of hostilities by Ráma's army.

2nd, Great battle between the Monkeys and Rákshasas without the city.

3rd, Indrajit's first sacrifice, and confinement of Ráma and Lakshmana in the noose of snakes.

4th, Rávana takes the field in person against Ráma.

5th, The awakening and death of Kumbhakarna.

6th, Indrajit's second sacrifice and successful charge of the Monkey army.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

---

- 7th, Restoration of the dead Monkeys to life  
 8th, Rāvana shuts himself up in Lankā.  
 9th, Third sacrifice and death of Indrajit  
 10th, Rāvana again takes the field without the city  
 11th, Hanuman's adventure with Kāla nemi  
 12th, Rāvana's sacrifice  
 13th, Final overthrow of Ravana

The narrative of these events may now be related. It will be remembered that the armies of Monkeys and Bears are encamped without the city of Lankā, and that any hope that Rāma may have entertained of a peaceful solution of the quarrel has been frustrated by Rāvana's obstinate refusal to restore Sitā. The story now proceeds as follows —

1st Commence-  
ment of hos-  
tilities by  
Rama's Army

The Monkeys  
fill up the great  
canal.

After this Rama said to the Chief of the Monkeys and Bears — "O my Counsellors, act now as you think best." At this command the Monkeys set up a loud shout, and divided themselves into different companies, and began to fill up the great canal which surrounded the city of Lankā. As soon as the Rākshasas saw what the Monkeys were about, they went and informed Ravana, and Ravana went to the top of his palace followed by his Counsellor, and thence began to survey the whole army of Rama. When the army saw the ten-headed Raja of the Rakshasas, they set up a loud shout as if in derision, and Ravana immediately ordered his Rakshasas to fall upon them, and a small battle took place, in which many were slain on both sides. When Rama beheld Ravana, he took up his bow and discharged eleven arrows at him, and with one arrow he cut down his royal umbrella, and with the other ten arrows he cut the ten crowns from his ten heads.

Rama sees  
Ravana, and  
carries away  
his umbrella  
and ten crowns.

2nd. A great  
battle between  
the Rakshasas  
and Monkeys  
without the  
city.

Now when Ravana found that he had been deprived of his ten crowns and his royal umbrella, he was much ashamed, and he descended from the roof of his palace, and

ordered his army of Rákshasas to march out of the city and bring him the heads of Viblíshana, Ráma, Sugriva, and Lakshmana. And the Rákshasas arrayed themselves for the battle, and marched out of the city into the plain; and Ráma and his army of Monkeys set out to meet them. And the two armies were arrayed against each other, and they abused each other for a long while, and at length the Monkeys attacked the Rákshasas with trees and huge stones, and the Rákshasas returned the charge with a shower of arrows. After fighting a long time, the two armies came to close quarters, and the Rákshasas gained the victory, for very many Monkeys were slain upon the field, and the remainder betook themselves to flight, but at this moment Sugriva seized a large tree by the roots, and hurled it forwards in the direction of Indrajit, the famous son of Ravana, and conqueror of Indra, and the tree crushed the chariot of Indrajit to pieces, and killed his horses and charioteer.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Route of the  
Monkey army

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART II

1st Indrajit's  
first sacrifice  
and co-ine-  
ment of Rāma  
and Laksh-  
mana in the  
noose of the  
snakes.

After this Indrajit himself took to flight, and resolved to make the offering of homa to the god of fire, before recommencing the battle. Arraying himself in red clothes and garlands of red flowers, he kindled the sacred fire with twigs of sacred trees. He then sacrificed a black goat, and taking its blood in an iron pot, he offered it as homa to Agni, and the sacrifice burned propitiously. Suddenly there came out of the fire a golden chariot drawn by four horses, and filled with every kind of weapon, and Indrajit rejoiced greatly, for he knew that when he was seated in that chariot he could see others whilst he himself remained invisible. Indrajit then mounted the chariot, and appeared before Rāma, and he discharged many arrows at Rāma and Lakshmana, and the two brothers could not perceive him, neither could they discern whence the arrows came. At last Indrajit took the noose which had been given to him by Brahma, and which was made of serpents, and he threw the noose

Angada, Nila, Nala, and others, beyond the power of calculation placed themselves at the head of their respective lines. Beside them stood Pāma the protector and supporter of them, he inspired them with a portion of his own military power.

"The army of Demons appointed by Ravana marched out of the Fort. The Monkeys on beholding them could not restrain their fury, they rushed forward to attack them. Some hurled trees and rocks on their foes, others confiding in their teeth, rushed on the Demons, who fought with equal fury. The battle was tremendous to the sight. The Monkeys at every blow called out, 'Rāma! Pāma!' Thousands of Monkeys fell by the hands of the Demons, thousands of Demons by the hands of the Monkeys. By each tree ten enormous giants were felled to the ground, by each rock hundreds of Demons were crushed to atoms. Some of the Monkeys springing on their enemies tore them to pieces with their teeth and nails. Each party crying out, 'Strike! Strike! Kill! Kill!' The air resounded with their shouts. Millions of broken war cars were scattered over the plain. Thousands of elephants, lions, hoes, and other animals, fled about covered with blood and deprived of their riders. A river flowed from the blood of the Demons and of the Monkeys, a mountain was formed of their bodies, so great was the heap of bones and limbs as if an immense hill was formed in the sea. In this manner did the battle rage until mid day, while Rāma looked on and beheld his heroes and warriors active in the combat. He knew them to be incarnations of the gods, and the reflection of his favour shone upon them through the blessing of his kindness, the strength of each Monkey was extended a hundred fold. The crime of Ravana in stealing Sita was about to receive its merited punishment. His fortune was on the decline, when the fortune of the sovereign is lost that of his army becomes hopeless. A fourth part of Ravana's troop were slain that day on the field of battle.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The gods send  
the Bird Garura  
to deliver Ráma  
and Lakshmana  
from the noose

over the two brothers, and caught them in its meshes. After a while the gods in heaven perceived the condition of Ráma, and they sent Vayu to remind him that he was Vishnu, and to advise him to call for the aid of his own Bird Garura. Vayu did as he was commanded, and Ráma then remembered the name of his Bird Garura, and Garura instantly appeared before him, and the snakes that formed the ties of the noose fled at the smell of the mighty Bird, and the two brothers were released from the toils. Then Garura rose in the air, and went his way.<sup>2</sup>

After this Ravana ordered his army of Rakshasas to gather together, and prepared to go out with them and do battle against Ráma. And Mandodari, who was his favourite wife, tried to dissuade him, but he refused to hearken to her words. And he marched out of Lanka with a vast array of horsemen and footmen, and elephants and chariots, and there was a great battle,<sup>3</sup> and the Rakshasas discharged

4th Ravana  
takes the field  
in person  
against Ráma

<sup>2</sup> Garura is worshipped as the sacred bird upon which Vishnu is accustomed to ride. Thus it was Garura who is said to have carried Krishna from Hastinapur to Manipura after the defeat and death of Arjuna. Garura is described as a great devourer of serpents and was father of Jatáyus the Vulture who was slain by Ravana. The myth in the text has a religious meaning which is not without value. Indrajit was the conqueror of Indra, but still he could only gain a temporary ascendancy over Ráma by the aid of Brahma. But Brahma is inferior to Vishnu and consequently his noose of serpents was devoured by the bird Garura. These puerilities are a characteristic of much of the popular religious teaching amongst the Hindús. It is a curious fact that no pious Hindu will commence the story of Ráma and Lakshmana being caught in the noose, unless he is enabled to continue it to the happy conclusion when the two heroes are delivered by the snake-devouring Garura. A native friend was on one occasion interpreting the story to the author as it appears in the Bengalee version, and was taken so unwell in the middle as to be unable to proceed. He appeared, however, the next day rather earlier than usual, and finished the remainder of the incident much to his own satisfaction disclosing at the same time his reasons for doing so.

<sup>3</sup> The appearance of Ravana on this occasion is described in the Adhyátma Ramáyana in the following graphic passage — 'A thousand horses were harnessed to Ravana's car on which he deposited various weapons, the messengers of fate. As he passed through the gates thousands of kettledrums and shells sounded on the walls and the shouts of his followers resembled those which will be heard on the last day. Clouds of dust hid the sun from the Demons in the like manner as Ráma is concealed from the ignorant. Ravana marched out of Lanka in great pomp state, and magnificence his ten heads appeared as ten mountains his twenty eyes as dark ovens his teeth as anvils his twenty arms as the branches of the largest trees, his breast as a broad terrace, his belly as an enor-

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

25th The  
awakening and  
death of  
Kumbha-karna.

Extraordinary  
efforts to  
awaken  
Kumbha karna.

their arrows whilst the Monkeys hurled down trees, and stones, and mountains And there were many single combats, and Rávana fought first with Hanuman, and then with Lakshmana, and last of all with Ráma After a while Ráma discharged a crescent-shaped arrow which again cut off the ten crowns from the ten heads of Rávana, and Rávana was greatly ashamed, and left the field, and returned to Lanká

Rávana then entered his Council-hall, and sat upon the throne, and he was much discomforted, and he thought upon the power of Rama, and sighed heavily He then sent for his Counsellors, and desired them to guard the city with the utmost vigilance, and he gave orders that his brother Kumbha karna should be awakened from his deep sleep, saying —“ My brother Kumbha karna is very brave and powerful, and I have no doubt but that the moment he wakes he will relieve us from the terror of Rama By the blessing of Brahma he sleeps for six months, and then wakes up for one day, and for that day he is invincible Awake him, therefore, without delay Fear him not, show him no mercy, but beat him, if it be necessary, only wake him up, for of what use can he be if he does not arise, and save us from destruction ! ”

At this command, the Rákshasas prepared enormous quantities of flesh meat, together with garlands of flowers, incense and other perfumes, and carried them to the apartment where Kumbha karna lay sleeping And they kindled a fire, and threw incense thereon, and began to dance and

mons jar the colour of his body as a blue mountain, his eyebrows and whiskers as black serpents On his ten heads he wore crowns of gold, studded with the richest gems In his twenty hands he bore the following weapons —1 A sword 2 a shield, 3 a bow and arrows, 4 a battle axe, 5 a trident, 6 a battering ram, 7 a noose 8 a wooden club, 9 a short lance, 10 a spear, 11 a fludeon with an iron head 12 a mace 13 a fork, 14 a two edged sword 15 a poignard, 16 a dagger, 17 a javelin, 18 a tremendous scourge 19 a circle, 20 a mace, the head of which was studded with long and sharp spikes.

According to the legend Kumbha karna had practised great austerities like his brother Pavana Brahma then offered him a boon upon which he asked for the power of long slumber sleep being regarded by many Hindús as a state of happiness After this Kumbha karna slept for six months at a time, and at the expiration of every period awoke up and devoured an enormous meal, and then went to sleep again.



sing round his bed, but still he slumbered on. Then they began to shake the gigantic Rákshasa with all their might; and some sounded the shell of triumph in his ears, whilst others beat him with all sorts of weapons, but still they could not awaken him. They then brought in a thousand elephants, and permitted them to walk over his body, but still he continued sleeping. At last they brought in a number of beautiful women, and directed them to sing and dance round his bed, and to caress him with their arms; and when he felt their gentle touch, and smelt the sweet fragrance of their lips, he began to quiver, and presently he opened his eyes, and rose up with a loud roaring.

Success of the  
women

Then Kumbha-karna, with eyes red with rage, demanded the reason of his being awakened, and the Rákshasas replied with joined hands:—"O Yuvaraja, you spend so much of your time in sleep, that you know nothing of the dangers which environ your elder brother: Arise now and satisfy your hunger." So saying, the Rákshasas spread the provisions before Kumbha-karna, and he began to make a prodigious meal. First he took an immense quantity of rice and vegetables, then in four mouthfuls he devoured a great many roasted hogs and deer, and then he ate two thousand human beings, and drank a thousand pots of wine. When he had finished, the Rákshasas informed him that the city of Lanká was threatened by two human beings and an army of Monkeys; and he cried out:—"Let me go and devour them." Then he proceeded to the Council-hall, and his stature was loftier than the walls of Lanká; and when *the Monkeys saw him in the distance they were sore afraid*. And Ravana told his brother Kumbha-karna all that had taken place; and Kumbha-karna rebuked him for having excited the enmity of Ráma. Nevertheless Kumbha-karna mounted his chariot, and went out against the Monkey army, and put them to rout; and he crashed Sugriva with a large stone, and carried him away in triumph to the city of Lanká. Then Kumbha-karna again took the field, and Ráma went out to meet him; and after much fighting Ráma severed the head of Kumbha-karna from his body, and the whole army

Rage of  
Kumbha-karnaHis prodig  
meal.Threatens to  
devour the  
MonkeysTakes the field  
and carries  
away Sugriva.

Slain by Ráma.

HISTORY OF of Monkeys rent the air with mighty shouts of "Victory to  
INDIA. Ráma!"  
PART IV

6th. Indrajit a  
second sacrifice  
and successful  
charge of the  
Monkey army

When Ravana heard that his brother Kumbha karnahad been slain by Ráma, he was exceedingly grieved, but his son Indrajit arose and said — "This is not a time for idle lamentations, for your enemies are roaring at your gate like lions Behold, I will go out myself against Rama, and kill him and all his army" Indrajit then determined to render himself once again invisible, and he drove his chariot towards the sacrificial pit, and ordered all things to be made ready for the homa, and performed the homa with the blood of a black goat, and the fire burnt propitiously, and Agni took the offerings with his own hands, and when the sacrifice was completed, a chariot filled with all kinds of weapons came out of the fire Indrajit then mounted the chariot and again became invisible, and he returned to the field of battle, and dismissed his army, and ascended into the air, and discharged a heavy shower of arrows upon the Monkeys, and he slaughtered thousands upon thousands, for no one could tell whence the arrows came Then Rama and Lakshmana fell down upon the earth, and feigned themselves to be dead and Indrajit returned in triumph to the city of Lanká

Ráma and  
Lakshmana  
feign to be  
dead

7th. Restora-  
tion of the dead  
Monkeys to life

After this, Hanuman and Vibhishana took torches, and surveyed the army of Monkeys, and found that they had been desperately cut to pieces by the arrows of Indrajit Some were without heads, others without legs, others without arms many were dying from thirst, and sixty-seven crores of Monkeys were dead Then Sushena the physician, came up and said to Hanuman — "Go you to the northern mountain Gandha mádana, and bring hither four different sorts of herbs which are growing there The first will restore the dead to life, the second will drive away all pain the third will join the broken parts, and the fourth will heal all wounds caused by the arrows If you bring these herbs before sunrise, Ráma and Lakshmana and the whole army will recover, but if the sun rises before you return, nothing on earth can heal them" Hanuman replied — "By the blessing of Rama I shall accomplish this journey" Hanuman then rose up

Hanuman  
is a monkey  
going through  
the air

to the Subra mountain and swelled out his body to a prodigious size, and ascended into the air, and with a mighty leap he passed over mountains, forests, rivers, and cities, until he came in sight of the Himalaya mountains, sparkling with gems and medicinal herbs, and he alighted upon the medicinal ridge between Kailasa and Rishra. There Hanuman looked for the herbs, but he could not find them, so he took up the mountain-ridge by the roots, and carried it with all its inhabitants to the battle-field before Lanká. And Sushena found the herbs, and when Ráma and Lakshmana and the Monkey army smelled the herbs, they were all immediately healed. And Ráma praised Hanuman, and Hanuman then carried back the mountain to its proper place.

Hanuman carries away the mountain by the roots

After this Ravana said to his Counsellors — "All the Rikshas as I send against the Monkeys are slain upon the field, and never return to Lanká, but all the Monkeys who are slain by the Rikshas are restored to life, and are again ready for battle. Such a war profits me nothing. Shut therefore the gates of the city, and we will remain within the walls." So the gates of the city were closed, and Ravana and his Rikshas remained within the walls. Now when Rama saw that Ravana would not come out to battle, he commanded Hanuman and the other Chiefs of the Monkeys to go into Lanká in the night time with lighted torches, and to set the city on fire, and the Monkey Chiefs did so. Then Ravana sent out the two sons of Kumbhakarna to fight against Ráma and Lakshmana, but they were slain by Sugriva and Hanuman. Then he sent out the son

8th Pávana slays him if up in Lanka

Ráma orders Hanuman to fire the city of Lanká.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART IV of Khara, and he was slain by an arrow which was discharged by Rāma

9th. Third sacrifice of Indrajit.

When Rāvana heard that his nephews were slain, he sent once again for his favourite son Indrajit, the same who had conquered Indra, and Indrajit vowed that he would go forth to the plain, and never leave it until he had rid the world of Rāma. And his mother Mandodari prayed him not to fight against Rāma, but he remonstrated with her, and told her not to be afraid for that he would speedily fulfil his vow. He then proceeded to a thick jungle to perform a sacrifice to the god Agni, which should ensure him the victory. But Lakshmana discovered his design, and let fly a shower of arrows at the Rākshasas who guarded the place, and the Rākshasas fled, and the Monkeys rushed in and spoilt the sacrifice. And Lakshmana and Indrajit abused each other, and then they fought for a long while, until Lakshmana took the arrow which had been given to him by Indra at the hermitage of Agastya, and repeated the proper mantras, and discharged it at his enemy, and Indrajit fell down dead, and his head was severed from his body. Then Lakshmana and all the Monkey army roared like lions and shouted — "Victory to Rama!" And the gods in heaven began to shower flowers upon the head of Lakshmana.

10th. Rāvana again takes the field without the city.

When Rāvana heard that his son Indrajit was dead he was seized with an agony of grief, crying out that he had now no son to perform his funeral rites. And he ordered his army of Rākshasas to make ready, and early on the morning of the new moon he marched out of the city, and he pressed through the Monkey army until he approached Rāma and Lakshmana. Then Rāvana and Rāma abused each other for awhile, and at last fell too desperately, and they discharged arrows at each other which broke up chariots, or turned back other arrows, or possessed many wonderful powers which were marvellous to behold. Some arrows impelled an enemy to sleep, or to sing, or to dance, or to swoon away, or rendered him hungry or athirst; some had terrible mouths, such as the mouths of tigers, lions, bears, crows,

Combat between Rāvana and Rāma.

Extraordinary arrows.

jackals, dogs, vultures, herons, and hogs, some produced strange things, such as peacocks, snakes, Garuras, wind, water, fire, or rocks, some were shaped like the sun, whilst others resembled bells, comets, monkeys, maces, chakras, knives, swords, and hatchets. At length, after much fighting, Ravana took up a mace which had been obtained by virtue of a sacrifice, and was infallible. And Ravana threw this mace at Lakshmana, and it pierced his breast, and pinned him to the ground, and none of the Monkeys, nor Ráma himself, could draw out the mace from the heart of Lakshmana. Ráma then fought against Ravana, and compelled him to return to his city of Lanka.

Ravana puts  
Lakshmana to  
the earth with  
his infallible  
mace

When it was midnight, Hanuman, at the request of the physician Sushena, set out once again to bring medicinal herbs before sun rise from the mountain Gandha-mádana, which should recover Lakshmana, and a Rakshasa spy carried the news to Ravana. Then Ravana sent for his uncle Kala nemi, and said—"If you can put Hanuman to death I will reward you with the half of my Raj." And Kála-nemi went that moment to the Gandha madana mountain, and assumed the form of a devotee, and created a magic hermit

11th Hanu-  
man's ad-  
venture with  
Kála-nemi

age upon the mountain.\* Meantime Hanuman was passing through the air, and soon reached the place called Nandi-gráma, which was without the city of Ayodhyá, and he saw Bharata there mourning the absence of his beloved Ráma, all else were asleep, but Bharata was awake, and was fanning the sandal of Ráma. Bharata saw Hanuman pass through the air, and would have shot an arrow at the strange animal, but Hanuman called out who he was, and told Bharata all that had taken place, and then went his way to the mountain

Kála nemi  
proceeds to the  
mountain and  
creates a magic  
hermitage

Hanuman's  
adventure with  
Bharata at  
Nundigráma.

\* The magic hermitage is thus described in the Adhyatma Rámáyana—  
"Fruit trees and flowers of every kind and colour sprang up at his command to form an enchanting garden, and birds of every hue flew about chaunting the praises of Rama. Kála nemi assumed the form of a man rigorously devout, and by the force of charms he created others similar to himself, whom he stationed in various parts under the appearance of being employed in devotion. Some seemed to be deeply engaged in religious meditation, some in ceremonies of worship, others in reading holy books, some were praying over rosaries consisting of a thousand beads, and some entirely naked were employed in various occupations, in this manner he waited in expectation of Hanuman's arrival.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Kāla-nemi plots  
Hanuman's  
leath by a  
crocodile

Hanuman kills  
the crocodile.

Legend of the  
crocodile

Hanuman hurls  
Kāla-nemi to  
the Council  
hall of Lankā.

Hanuman  
carries away  
the medicine  
at a second time

Now when Hanuman set his foot upon the mountain he beheld the hermitage of Kāla-nemi, and perceived Kāla-nemi seated like a devotee upon a deer skin, absorbed in meditation, with various rosaries round his neck, his body smeared with ashes, and his eyes closed. A form of the Linga was before him, so that Hanuman supposed that he was a devout sage worshipping the Linga. Presently Kāla-nemi opened his eyes and beheld Hanuman, and welcomed him as his guest, and conducted him to his hermitage, but Hanuman would neither take food nor drink, but would only bathe in the pond which was near. Then Hanuman dipped his foot into the water, and it was seized by a crocodile, but he jumped out of the water and killed the crocodile, upon which a lovely figure arose from the body of the fish, and assumed the form of a beautiful Apsara, and told him how she had offended the sage Daksha by her pride and had been cursed by him that she should become a crocodile until she should be delivered by Hanuman. She then thanked Hanuman for her deliverance, and bade him beware of Kāla-nemi, and then took her leave and ascended to heaven.

Meantime Kāla-nemi being assured of the death of Hanuman, was pondering over the division of the Raj of Lankā, which had been promised to him by Ravana when Hanuman suddenly appeared before him and said — "O you false hermit, I know who you are, there is no use in your disguising yourself any more." So saying, Hanuman took him by the feet, and hurled him round his head, and suddenly let him loose, and he flew through the air, and fell before the throne of Ravana in the Council hall of Lankā, to the utter surprise of Ravana and his Counsellors.\*

Meantime Hanuman had searched the mountain for the medicinal herbs, but could not find them, and he took up the whole mountain as before, and carried it to Sushana,

\* Kāla-nemi is a Hindu Almselver. He contents upon the pleasure he shall enjoy when taking half the Raj without considering that Hanuman may be still alive. To this day when a Hindu thinks of future profit without being sure that he will get it, he is often compared with Kāla-nemi.

and Sushena took the herb, and beat them into a paste, and put it to the nose of Lakshmana, and he was immediately healed as before. Then all the Monkeys shouted aloud :—"Victory to Ráma!"

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Lakshmana  
healed.

12th Ravana's  
sacrifice with  
closed doors.

After this Ravana sent several warriors, one after the other, against Ráma, but they were all slain; and he determined to go himself once again, and take the field against Ráma. But before going forth he went with joined hands to Sūkra, who was the preceptor of the Rákshasas, and implored his aid; and Sūkra taught him certain mantras, and directed him to offer sacrifice in a secret place, and repeat the mantras, whereupon certain weapons would come out of the fire, and render him invincible; but Sūkra warned him that he must observe a strict silence throughout, or the sacrifice would be devoid of all power. So Ravana returned to his palace, and ordered that the gates should be shut; and he went to his own apartment, and placed guards all round it, and carried the sacrificial materials into the room, and barred and locked the doors; and he dug a large hole in the centre of the room, and commenced the ceremony. Meantime Ráma was informed by spies what his enemy was

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

14th Final  
overthrow of  
Ravana

Ravana cursed  
by Súrpa-  
nakhá.

Ravana reacts  
Ráma.

Indra sends his  
own chariot to  
Ráma.

Combat be-  
tween Ravana  
and Ráma

Second combat.

Ráma cuts off  
Ravana's ears  
with a rifle

Ráma kills  
Ravana with a  
Brahma arrow

The gods praise  
Ráma as  
Vishnu.

Then Mandodarí again implored her husband to make his submission to Ráma, but he was still inexorable, and resolute to take the field

Now, when Rávana was going forth to the battle, he met his sister Surpa nakhá, and turned away from her, and she was enraged, and cursed him, saying —“As you have turned away from me without sufficient cause, you shall never again return from the field of battle” But Rávana heeded not her words, but went forward in his chariot, and drove the Monkey army before him, until he came into the presence of Ráma, and the god Indra, looking down from heaven, and seeing that Rama was without a chariot, sent him his own chariot with Matsh for his charioteer, together with his own armour and weapons. Then Ráma and Ravana fought on equal terms for a long while, and sometimes the victory inclined to the side of Rávana, and sometimes to the side of Ráma. At last Rávana became fatigued, and could no longer draw his bow, and he dropped down in his chariot, and his charioteer seeing him in that condition drove him back towards Lanká. When Rávana recovered his senses, he ordered his charioteer to return to the field, and there he renewed the battle with Ráma, and the conflict became very desperate. At length after much fighting, Rama took up a sharp arrow and cut off one of Ravana's heads, but no sooner did the head fall upon the ground than another sprung up in its room. When they had fought together this way without intermission for seven days and nights, Matsh the charioteer advised Ráma to take up the Brahma arrow and discharge it at Rávana, as Rávana was destined to die by no other weapon. Accordingly Ráma took from his quiver the arrow which Brahma had made in former times from the spirit of all the gods, and which Indra had left for Ráma in the hermitage of Agastya. Rama then propitiated the Brahma arrow by suitable mantras, and discharged it at Rávana, and it entered his breast, and came out of his back, and went to the ocean and washed itself, and then returned to the quiver of Rama. Meanwhile Ravana fell to the ground and expired, and the gods



sounded celestial music in the heavens, and assembled in the sky, and praised Ráma as Vishnu in that he had slain that evil Ravana, who would otherwise have caused their destruction.<sup>9</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

---

The scenes in the foregoing narrative of the war between Ráma and Ravana, the besiegers and the besieged, can be realized with comparative ease. The armies of Ráma were encamped upon a plain or

Review of the  
foregoing nar-  
rative of  
Ráma's war  
against Ravana.

Character of the

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Rāvana's  
refusal to  
take the field.

Number of  
single combats

Weapons  
employed  
supernatural  
powers

The mode of  
attacks.

Fantastically  
shaped arrows.

Utterance of  
mantras  
the arrows

mādan without the city, and there the battles appear to have taken place, whilst Ravana remained within the city, where he directed the sorties which were made by the Rikshasa army, and overlooked the combats from the roof of his palace. When however, Rama and Laksmana escaped from the noose of Indrajit, Ravana took the field in person, and engaged in turns with Hanuman, Lakshmana and Rama, but he seems to have suffered so much on that occasion that he did not again go without the city walls until his cause had been rendered desperate by the deaths of his brother Kumbhakarna and his son Indrajit. The battles in general, like those in the Mahābhārata, involve a large number of single combats, in which most of the exploits performed are of a supernatural character. Many weapons are also used which are said to have been endowed by the gods with supernatural powers. In this direction indeed the Hindu bard has indulged in marvelous flights of fancy. Rama and Lakshmana are said to have been caught in a noose which was made of snakes, from which they are delivered by a sacred bird who is known in India as a devourer of snakes, and who is invested with a divine character as the vehicle of the god Vishnu. Arrows are described of the most fantastic forms. One shaped like a mace pierces the breast of Lakshmana, another shaped like a crescent carries away the ten crowns of Ravana. Mantras or incantations are uttered over the charmed arrow before it is discharged, a superstitious practice which is evidently of Brahminical or priestly origin. The consecration of weapons by divine rites, and the utterance of spells or prayers over the consecrated arms, are customs

which would naturally exist amongst a credulous and priest-ridden people, inasmuch as they directly tend to increase the power of the priestly hierarchy, and to establish their authority over the warrior class of the community. Besides the belief in the efficacy of mantras, there appears to have been another belief which was equally well calculated to exalt the authority of the priesthood; namely, faith in the efficacy of certain sacrifices to secure the victory over an enemy. In this respect the sacrifices offered by Indrajit and Ravana are very remarkable, and it should be borne in mind that these warriors perform such religious rites, not as patriarchal heads of a family or community, but as actual Bráhmans, the descendants of the sage Pulastya. As regards, however, Indrajit's offering of the blood of a black goat to Agni, the deity of fire, there appears to be some difficulty. In the hymns of the Rig-Veda there seems to be no reference to the sacrifice of goats to Agni, but only to the presentation of such simple offerings as ghee, soma wine, cakes, parched barley, and other similar materials. In all probability the deity to whom blood offerings were made was a god or goddess of war, who is generally supposed to delight in slaughter, and who consequently may be propitiated by the sacrifice of animals or even of human beings. Such practices were not unknown to the ancient Syrians, as is evidenced by the horrible story of the King of Moab, who offered up his eldest son as a burnt-offering upon the city wall in the presence of a besieging army. In India such offerings have been generally made to Káli, the most blood-thirsty deity in the Hindú pantheon; and it may be remembered that during Hyder's war against the

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Belief in the  
efficacy of  
sacrifice to  
insure victory

Sacrifices per-  
formed by  
Indrajit and  
Ravana in  
virtue of their  
being Bráh-  
mans

Indrajit's  
sacrifice to  
Agni

Probably a sub-  
stitution of  
Agni for Káli.

Human sacri-  
fices in ancient  
times

Offering of  
human heads to  
Káli

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Poligars in the neighbourhood of Mysore, the Polgar of Chittledroog had set up a shrine to Kālī on the highest part of his citadel, to whom the heads of slaughtered enemies were offered in profusion, in the firm belief that so long as these bloody offerings were duly made, the place could never fall.

Agni substituted as the deity who can render himself invisible

The substitution of Agni for Kālī in the sacrifices of Indrajit is also rendered probable by the following circumstances. According to the fancy of the Hindu bard, the sacrifices of Indrajit were performed not so much for the direct purpose of ensuring victory, as for that of rendering himself invisible during his attacks upon Rāma's army. The god of fire is not merely the deity who blazes at the domestic hearth or upon the sacrificial altar, but the deity of light of every description, who sometimes in the form of lightning conceals himself in the clouds, and thus renders himself invisible. Consequently, as the poet represented Indrajit as becoming invisible through the efficacy of sacrifice, it was necessary to represent him as sacrificing not to the deity of war, but to that god who possessed the power of rendering himself invisible. The sacrifice of Ravana seems to have referred more directly to victory, and its efficacy was evidently admitted by Rama, inasmuch as its performance excited Rāma's alarm, and every effort was made for its obstruction.

Indra the sacrifice, for the purpose of becoming invisible.

Ravana's sacrifice

Authority of the priesthood increased by the belief in the efficacy of sacrifice. Modification of the belief in modern times

A belief in the power of sacrifice to secure victory must have added largely to the authority and influence of the priesthood in ancient times. In the present day it is explained that such power has been neutralized by the national transgressions, that it has in a great measure passed away on account of the growing want of respect for the Brahminical

caste, and to the increasing disregard of caste observances and other rules and regulations insisted upon by the Sástrias. Indeed there seems to be no other way from an Hindú point of view by which it is possible to account for the inefficacy of Brahmanical sacrifices in the face of British Artillery and bayonets. But in olden time, when the Kshatriyas were a conquering race, the belief in the efficacy of sacrifice was universal and unquestioned; and thus it is that the obstruction of Rávana's sacrifice is regarded as one of the most critical scenes in the narrative of the war.

Ancient belief

The story of the awakening of Kumbha-karna is chiefly remarkable on account of its extreme popularity with the Hindus. In all dramatic representations of the siege of Lanká, the huge slumbering giant is one of the favourite characters; and in this respect he is almost a rival to Hanuman with the burning tail. Indeed immoderate powers of eating or sleeping have always been a subject of mirth with a primitive people; and Kumbha-karna is a pantomimic exaggeration of both capacities, which never fails to bring down shouts of laughter from young and old.

Popularity of  
the story of the  
awakening of  
Kumbha  
karna.Capacity for  
eating and  
sleeping a sub-  
ject of popular  
mirth

It is however by no means improbable that the episode of Kumbha-karna was originally intended as a satirical hit at the Buddhist dogma of Nivána; and that the heavy slumbers of the gluttonous giant are a caricature of that state of eternal rest for the soul, which in the teachings of Sákya Muni was represented as the acme of felicity, and the final aim of every true follower of Buddha.

The remaining portion of the narrative is so largely mixed up with supernatural matter, that

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

---

much of what has been retained might have been omitted from the present version without detriment to the story. Glimpses of the original tradition are however occasionally perceptible, as in the account of the ill-treatment of the wife of Rávana by the Monkeys, which is related with considerable amplifications in the Rámáyana. Moreover, notwithstanding the mythical character of many of the incidents, they are deeply enshrined in the memories of the Hindú people; and consequently serve as illustrations of that love of the marvellous, which is peculiar to an ignorant and credulous population, and which has indeed been carried to such an extent as to induce some European critics to dismiss the whole mass of Hindú legend as mere fable or allegory.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### TRIUMPHANT RETURN OF RÁMA.

THE story of the Rámáyana reaches its climax in the death of Rávana. The women of the deceased Raja indulge in bitter lamentations over the remains of their departed lord ; but otherwise the air is filled with the rejoicings of gods and men and all living creatures, who alike exult in the downfall of Rávana and the victory of Ráma. Here, according to European ideas, the poem would be brought to a natural conclusion with the restoration of the faithful wife to her devoted husband, and the triumphant return of the happy pair to the city of Ayodhyá, there to be enthroned as Raja and Rání. But one hidden sore still remained, which may have had its origin in some Brahmanical scruple of the Hindú bard, but which more probably found a place in the original tradition, and festered as a sad reality in the jealous breast of Ráma. Sítá, although really as pure as snow, had nevertheless resided many months in the palace of Rávana, and had been touched, however involuntarily, by a man who was not her husband. The ideas of physical chastity which prevail amongst the Hindus have already been indicated ; and now they will receive a further illustration from the cruel coldness which Ráma exhibited for a while towards his faithful and devoted

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV.

Death of  
Rávana the  
climax of the  
story of the  
Rámáyana.

Natural ending  
according to  
European ideas

Doubts as  
regards Sítá's  
purity after her  
imprisonment  
in the palace of  
Rávana

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

wife In this portion of the story the estrangement is said to have been only of a temporary character, and after a touching ordeal Rāma took Sītā to his bosom, and the royal pair proceeded in joy and triumph to the city of Ayodhyā. How far this happiness proved to be lasting will be gathered from the subsequent chapter.

Narrative of the  
ordeal of Sītā  
and return to  
Ayodhyā.

The narrative of the ordeal of Sītā, and the triumphant return of Rāma and Sītā to the city of Ayodhyā, may now be related as follows —

Lamentations  
of Vibhishana

Lamentations  
of the widows  
of Ravana

When Vibhishana saw that his brother Ravana was slain, he fell down by the dead body, and began to lament loudly. Meanwhile the tidings that Ravana was dead reached the inner apartments of the palace at Lanka, and all the wives of Ravana came out of the palace with dishevelled hair and loose garments, and went out of the northern gate of the city, beating their breasts with their hands. When the women saw the dead body of Ravana lying prostrate upon the ground, they fainted away, but after some time they recovered, and began to care for him as though he had been alive. One would embrace him, another would take up one of his arms, and put it round her neck, another would put his hand to her breast, another would place his feet upon her bosom, another placed one of his heads in her lap, whilst others laid their heads upon his breast. All of them then began to cry — “What miserable wretches are we to lose such a husband!” Whilst the lamentations of Mandodari, who was the chief Rānī, rose above them all. And Rama was touched by her sorrow, and desired Vibhishana to take the women back to the inner apartments, and to perform the funeral rites for his brother Ravana. And Vibhishana took away the women and returned to Rāma, and said — “This Ravana was my enemy, he killed me before all his Council, and I have therefore no desire to perform his funeral ceremony.” Rāma replied — “I am much grieved to hear these words.

Lamentations  
of Mandodari.  
Vibhishana re-  
moves the  
widows of  
Ravana.



from you Ravana is now dead, and he is therefore no longer your enemy, but your elder brother, and it is proper for you to perform all his funeral rites" So Vibhishana listened to the commands of Ráma, and performed all the funeral ceremonies of his elder brother Ravana, with the grandeur and magnificence which befit the Raja of Lanka

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Vibhishana  
performs the  
funeral rites

When the days of the mourning were over, Rama threw off his war dress, and dismissed Matai with sweet words, and directed him to drive back the chariot of Indra to his master. He then commanded that Vibhishana should be installed Raja of Lanka, and when this was done, he requested Vibhishana to bring Sita from the Asoka garden.

Installation of  
Vibhishana in  
the Raj of  
Lanka

Then Vibhishana went away in great delight, and commanded thousands of women to attend upon Sita, and to dress and adorn her.

Vibhishana com-  
mands his  
daughters to  
Rama.

When all was ready, a litter was brought to the entrance of the Asoka garden, and Sita took leave of Sarama, the wife of Vibhishana, who had attended upon her ever since her own husband had been exiled by Ravana. And Sita spoke affectionately to Sarama, and gave thanks for all the services and favours which Sarama had rendered her during her captivity.

Sita's parting  
words to  
Sarama.

Sita then took leave of the other women, and entered the litter, and in this manner she was carried from the Asoka garden to the plain without the city. Now as the litter approached the camp of Ráma, all the Monkeys gathered round to see Sita, and Rama commanded that she should alight and walk, so that the Monkeys could see her, and Sita did so. When Sita entered the presence of Rama, she stood with joined hands, and bowed down to his feet, but Rama heeded her not, and spoke with harsh words, saying — "I have killed all my enemies, and I have delivered you from captivity, and now that I have removed my shame I care not to behold you. I can never again receive you as my wife, for you have lived in the house of Ravana."

Sita enters the  
presence of  
Rama on foot.

Rama's cruel  
words.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

chaste and unpolluted. If you had formed a wish to retire aside, you should have told me so long ago, that I might have put myself to death, and thus have been spared this indignity."

Sita requests  
Lakshmana to  
prepare a  
funeral pile

Sita then turned to Lakshmana and said—"O you who are the younger brother of my husband! prepare for me a funeral pile that I may put an end to all my sorrows by entering the fire." Lakshmana looked at Rama for his commands, and Rama assented, and Lakshmana prepared a funeral pile, and set it on fire. Then Sita offered up her prayers to Agni to Rama to her father and mother, and then to the father and mother of her husband, and she entered the fire in the presence of all the inhabitants of Lanka and the whole Monkey army. Then all present reproached Rama, and Rama became lost in grief, and his mind wavered to and fro, and he said—"Mad with rage, I have committed a great sin. Having delivered Sita after so much trouble and pains, I have become the cause of her untimely death. I reproached her for nothing. I shall never find such a faithful wife again." At this moment the gods and the Gandharvas appeared in the air, and Rama beheld his own father Dasaratha amongst them, and Rama bowed down his head to the gods. Then, whilst all were gazing upon the funeral pile, the god Agni came forth out of the flame, bearing Sita upon his knees as his own daughter, and she was more beautiful than ever she had been before. And Agni gave her to Rama, and said—

Sita offers up  
prayers to  
the funeral pile

Rama's  
sorrow.

Sita's  
appeal to  
the gods  
and  
Dasaratha

Agni's  
appearance  
and  
his  
offer

Rama's  
sorrow

"Take her as your wife! She is without a stain! I know the hearts of all, and had she the shadow of a stain upon her chastity, she would never have passed in safety from me." And Rama took his wife and said—"I knew that my beloved Sita was chaste and true, but I put her to the test lest men should blame me, and now I am free from all censure." And Rama took Sita by the hand and made her sit upon his left side upon his own throne, and Hanuman offered flowers to Rama and Sita, and all the Monkeys and all the gods did the same. After this Dasaratha pronounced

\* The story of Sita's ordeal is some what differently told in the Adhyatma

blessings on his son Ráma, and then returned accompanied by the gods to the abodes of bliss

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Next morning Vibhíshana, who was now Rája of Lanká, prayed Rama to abide for a while in that city, but Ráma said — "My exile of fourteen years is drawing to a close, and I must return with all speed to Ayodhyá My brother

Ráma prepares  
to return to  
Ayodhyá in the  
Pushpaka  
chariot

Ramáyana, as will be seen from the following extract — "Sítá burst into tears at the unkind expressions of Ráma, who then said to Lakshmana — 'Prepare without delay a large fire that I may cast Sítá into it to prove her chastity, and whether she has continued continent, she has dwelt a long time in the house of a Demon it is therefore necessary that the purity of her mind and body should be ascertained'

"Lakshmana, conceiving Ráma's design prepared a fire, and when ready he informed him on which Ráma remained silent Sítá acquainted also with her husband's intentions, rose up and having made her obeisance to Páma she advanced towards the fire The gods assembled in the heavens, the Monkeys and inhabitants of Lanká stood by the fire to behold the event, the Bráhmins and others of the four castes looked on Sítá then raising her hands bowed to the spectators She approached the flames and paying her adorations to the god of Fire she thus addressed him — 'Thou, Fire! art comprehended and included in all things in this world, from thee nothing can be concealed If I have never erred in thought, word, or deed, if the recollection of Ráma has never even for an instant strayed from my mind, if my tongue has never ceased pronouncing his name, if I have never entertained a thought of any other man but Ráma, if all that I have said be just and true I shall enter into and pass through thy element without sustaining the least injury I call on thee, god of Fire! to bear witness to my truth, and to do away that shame which has fallen on me' Having thus spoken she entered into the fire with undaunted steps There is nothing in this world that purifies equal to fire The gods from the heavens beheld with astonishment this wonderful event, they said to each other — 'Let us bear witness to the chastity and purity of Sítá, that her sorrows may be done away, and that the praises of Ráma's name may be spread abroad throughout all ages'

'The thirty three crores of the celestial spirits assembled in the heavens to behold the ordeal of Sítá's chastity, and sung the praises of Ráma Brahma then rehearsed from his four mouths the noble endowments and praises of Ráma When Brahma had concluded the repetition of Ráma's praises the god of Fire rose from the flames, bearing Sítá on his knees, as if she had been his daughter, clothed in red garments and adorned with jewels The god of Fire advanced towards Rama, who is the witness and observer of the universe, and who had appointed him to prove the chastity of Sítá, and thus addressed him — 'Thou, O Lord! didst entrust the real Sita to my care, thou didst through thine own power create a delusive form resembling her, which form Ravana carried off Him hast thou slain with his children and his kindred, thou hast rendered light the burden of the world The fictitious form has disappeared, receive from my hands the real Sítá, whom thou didst confide to my care Ráma then paid his adorations to the god of Fire, from whose hands he joyfully received his beloved Sítá He placed her on his knee, and clasped her with sincere affection to his bosom The gods beholding the joy of Páma filled the heavens with their acclamations and each god came in turn and paid his adorations to Ráma

hut, and set before them fruits, roots, and water, for Ráma refused to partake of sweetmeats until he had seen his brother Bhruata<sup>3</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV

Next morning Ráma despatched Hanuman to inform Guha, the Bhil Raja, of his arrival, and also to go on to Ayodhya, and carry the glad tidings to Bharat. Then Hanuman went his way and told Guha of the coming of Ráma, and Guha gave himself up to delight, and his whole city was filled with rejoicings. Hanuman then proceeded

Joy of Raja  
Guha at hearing  
of Ráma's  
arrival

<sup>3</sup> The entertainment of the Monkeys and Bears at the hermitage of Bharadwaja occupies an important place in the Bengali version of the Rámáyana, and may be reproduced here as a curious illustration of the modern Hindu sense of humour —

"Now Viswakarma prepared the lodgings for the Monkeys and Bears in the twinkling of an eye. And hundreds of beautiful damsels went forth to attend upon the guests. But the Monkeys and Bears were affrighted at them, and fled away and climbed the trees and began to grin. The damsels then pacified them saying — Why are you fearful of us? At the command of Bharadwaja we have come hither to attend upon you. Bid yourselves therefore, and array yourselves in the rich apparel and ornaments we have brought for you. Then eat and drink to your hearts content and behold us dance and sing before you and we will pass the night with you. At these words the Monkeys and Bears were greatly delighted, and they all came down from the trees, and permitted themselves to be bathed and perfumed. They then took up the ornaments but as they knew not how to put them on some of them began to wear anklets on their heads, whilst others put bracelets on their waists, and necklaces on their feet, and when they found that the jewels would not suit they crushed them to pieces in their anger, and threw them away. At length when the time for eating arrived, the Monkeys and Bears were allowed rich carpets of gold, but were afraid to sit upon them because of their richness so they lifted up the carpets and placed them upon their heads and seated themselves upon the bare earth. Then, when they saw the different kinds of provisions that were placed before them, they first tasted the pungent dishes, and were afraid to partake of any more thinking that they might be poisonous. Then they threw away some of the sweetmeats, because they resembled coiled snakes, and they mistook others for stones, and in this ridiculous manner they brought their request to a close. Then the attendant damsels explained to the Monkeys and Bears the nature of the different kinds of sweetmeats and they fell to and feasted sumptuously. Petal was next served to them, but when they beheld a little and saw what they thought was blood issuing from their mouths, they were greatly alarmed, and feared that Bharadwaja desired to put them secretly to death. But the attendant damsels counselled them to wipe their mouths after which their fears were over. When they had finished the betel they entered the sleeping apartment and saw their own reflections in the mirrors and they prepared for battle and broke all the mirrors in the attempt to fight their own reflections, and then the matter was explained to them and they retired to rest.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Preparations of  
Bharata for the  
return of Rama.

with all speed to Ayodhya, and Ráma followed shortly afterwards, and was received with all joy by Guha, and then took his leave and departed for Ayodhya.

Meantime Bharata had heard from Hanuman that Ráma was approaching, and he summoned Vasishtha and all his other Counsellors, and imparted to them the welcome news, and he ordered the following proclamation to be made known throughout the city by the beating of drums — “Know all men that Rama is returning from his exile, that to day he is with Raja Guha, and that to morrow morning he will enter Ayodhya. Cast aside all sorrow and grief, and prepare to receive Rama. Let the whole city be adorned, and let worship be offered to every god. Let every horse and elephant and chariot be got ready, and let every man go out to meet Ráma on his return to Ayodhya.”

Preparations of  
the people of  
Ayodhya.

When the people of Ayodhya heard this proclamation they rejoiced with exceeding joy. They weeded and levelled all the streets and roads, and swept them very clean, and watered them with sandal water, and strewed them with flowers, and planted trees and betel nut on each side of the highway. And they placed golden pots of water at the foot of each tree, with branches of mangoes in the mouths of the pots, and cocoa nuts upon them, and the necks of the pots were adorned with garlands. All the houses were made clean in like manner, and music sounded on all sides, and many coloured flags waved in the air throughout the city. Then the whole army of the Raja marched out of the city, and every one was happy, and arrayed in a rich dress. First went the chariots newly painted, then the elephants richly caparisoned, then the horses with embroidered saddles, and last of all the infantry. All the women of Ayodhya put on their best clothes to receive Rama, and every man placed auspicious things, such as plantains, mangoes, and pots of water, before his own door.

Joy of Kaikeyi.

When the news of these preparations reached the ears of Kaikeyi, and she heard that Rama was about to return to Ayodhya, she rejoiced exceedingly, and she went to the apartment of Kausalya, and was received with every re-

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The ladies  
accompanied by  
all the people of  
Ayodhya, go  
out to meet  
Rāma

Bharata carries  
Rāma's sandals

Meeting be-  
tween Rāma  
and Bharata

Rāma tells of  
the Brāhman  
offering the  
kaj to  
Lakṣmaṇa

Rāma bows to  
his mother

spect Next morning Kausalyā and Kaikeyī, and all the ladies and women of the palace, prepared to go forth and meet Rāma, some in chariots, and some in carriages drawn by bullocks. At the same time nearly all Ayodhyā went out in procession to Nandigramā to receive Rāma. First went the musicians sounding different instruments of music, then followed the dancing girls, then the singing men and singing women, then the courtesans, then the heralds, enlogists, and brāhmins, and then the Brāhmins singing Vedic hymns with Vasishtha at their head. After them went the people of the city of Ayodhya, carrying every sort of auspicious thing, such as curds, parched paddy, garlands, ghee, flowers, fruits, red powder, and other festive articles. After them went Bharata carrying the sandals of Rāma upon his head, with the royal umbrella spread over the sandals, and two men fanning the sandals with milk-white chumars, and Bharata was surrounded by the Ministers and Counsellors of the Raj, and by all the Rājas who had come to Ayodhya to welcome back Rāma.

Meantime Rāma had taken leave of Rājā Guha, and was on his way to the city of Ayodhya, when he met with the mighty procession which had come out to meet him. And all those who accompanied Bharata cried out with a loud shout — "There is Rāma returning from his exile." And Rāma and Bharata approached each other, and embraced each other with their arms, and Rāma said to his brother — "Is all well with your Raj, and your subjects, and with my mothers?" And Bharata replied — "All is well!" Bharata then greeted Lakṣmana, and Rāma greeted Satrugṇa and his father-in-law Janakā. And Vasishtha and all the other Brāhmins came forward with grass and grains in their hands, and blessed Rāma and said — "Now that you have served the gods by killing their great enemy, it is the desire of all that you take your Raj, and seat yourself upon the throne of your father." And all the people shouted "Victory to Rāma!" And Rāma went and bowed down to the feet of his mother Kausalyā, and to the feet of his mother-in-law Sumitrā and Kaikeyī, and they embraced and

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Rama dismisses the  
chariot  
Pushpaka to the  
mother Kuber

Rama exists  
as the garb  
of a deity and  
a name that of  
a Raja.

Rama and Sita  
proceed a  
royal chariot  
surrounded by  
the subjects of  
sovereign duty

Entry into  
Ayodhya.

wept aloud for joy. Then when they reached Nandigram  
Rama dismissed the chariot Pushpaka, and bade it return to  
Kaveri, who was its former master, and Bharata prayed  
Rama to undertake the charge of the Raj and Pama  
agreed but commanded Bharata to become once again re-  
conciled to his mother Kaikeyi and to treat her with the  
same kindness as he had done before the exile.

After this Rama and his brothers were anointed with  
fragrant oils and bathed in perfumed water, and then  
cast aside their dresses of bark and put on yellow gar-  
ments and adorned themselves with every variety of orna-  
ments and Sita was arrayed in like manner by the ladies of  
the palace. Then Bharata commanded that all the chariots  
and horses and elephants and litters should be brought  
up and Pama directed the Monkeys to select what convey-  
ances they pleased. Rama then took Sita in his own  
chariot and placed her by his left side and Satrugna held  
the royal umbrella over their heads, and Hanuman and  
Lakshmana fanned them, with fans of rich embroidered silk  
cloth, and Sugriva and Vibhishana waved the chimeras on  
either side whilst Jambuvata and Angada in like manner  
waved the peacocks' tails. Then Bharata himself took the  
reins of the horses in his left hand and the whip in his  
right and acted as charioteer, and the music began to  
sound and the singers and dancers followed the musicians  
and in this manner the procession moved on towards the  
city of Ayodhya. All those who had remained in the city now  
came out to behold the entry of Rama and the women  
threw flowers on Rama and Sita as they passed along the  
street and when they arrived at the royal palace Bharata  
ordered gold and jewels to be brought without stint and  
distributed them amongst the poor the Brahmans, the eulo-  
gists, and the musicians.

When Rama entered the royal palace his soul was op-

<sup>4</sup> In the Bengali version on the proceedings of the Monkeys during the procession are described in a more sensational manner. "Some of the Monkeys it is said, mount the chariots and some suspended themselves over the wheels, whilst others curled their tails round the trunks of the elephants and rode themselves, or hung their tails to the manes of the horses."

pressed with grief, as he called to mind his father Dasaritha. Meanwhile Bharata said to Vasisitha—"O wise sage, it is our desire that Ráma should be installed in the Paj of Ayodhya. Look, we pray you, for an auspicious day, and see that our wish is accomplished without delay." Vasisitha replied—"The gods are propitious, for to-morrow is a very auspicious day, and all the Rájas are already assembled in Ayodhya. Make all things ready, therefore, for the installation of Ráma on the morrow. Bring hither the five purifying things of the cow. Bring also the white flowers, the white garlands, the honey, the parched paddy, the garments new and clean, the white chumars, the white flags, the golden mace, the embroidered umbrella, the paddy, the grass, the different ornaments, the gold, the silver, the precious stones, the jewels, the golden pots filled with sacred waters from the holy rivers and the four oceans and all other things which are necessary for the ceremony." And Bharata did as Vasisitha commanded, and he ordered that worship should be offered to all the images of the gods and goddesses throughout the city, and that all the Rájas assembled in the city should attend the installation on the coming day. And Vasisitha desired Ráma and Sita to fast for that day, and to pass the night without sleep, and throughout that night Sita was engaged in the inner apartments in reciting the whole story of her adventures to the ladies of the palace, whilst Ráma was in the outer chamber relating the story to Vasisitha the sage.

Next morning at early dawn the music was sounded, and the morning devotions were performed, after which all the inhabitants of Ayodhya put on their best attire, and came out to witness the installation of Ráma, and the gods came down from heaven to behold the ceremony, and all the Rishis and Brahmins assembled in like manner. When all was ready Bharata requested Vasisitha to install Ráma on the throne, and Vasisitha desired Ráma to array himself for the inauguration. Then Ráma was dressed by his mothers, and Sita also was magnificently dressed by them, and Ráma and Sita proceeded to the Court hall of the palace, and all

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Bharata re-  
quests Vasi-  
tha to prepare  
for Ráma's  
installa-  
tion  
Vasi-  
tha orders that all  
the gods should  
be invited  
ready for the  
ceremony

Worship of all  
the images of  
gods and  
goddesses.

Ráma and Sita  
fast and  
awake all night

The installation  
of Ráma.

Arraying of  
Ráma and Sita.



HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

The enthroning

Musical and acclamations

The purification with sacred water

Water poured over the heads of Ráma and Sitá by all the castes

Ráma and Sitá change their garments and again take their seats in the Council hall.

Paddy and kusa grass poured upon Ráma's head

Distribution of presents.

Ráma gives her necklaces to Hanuman.

the ladies of the palace looked on from places where they could not themselves be seen. Ráma then requested the permission of all the Rishis, Bráhmans, Ríjas, Counsellors, and Ambassadors present, and seated himself upon the throne with his face towards the east, and Sitá sat upon his left hand. Then the music struck up from all quarters, and the assembled multitude shouted aloud — "Long live Mahá raja Ráma! May his reign be prosperous and endure for ever!" And celestial music was heard in the sky, and the gods showered down flowers upon the head of Ráma. Then Vasishtha and the other Rishis came forward with pots of sacred water, and repeated the proper mantras, and poured the water upon the head of Rama. Then the Rishis poured the water over the head of Sitá in like manner. And when the Rishis had finished, the Bráhmans came forward, and poured water over the heads of both Ráma and Sitá, and after them came first the Kshatriyas, and then the Vaisyas, and then the Sudras, and then all the other people, and lastly the women, and each class in turn poured water upon the heads of Ráma and Sitá. Then Ráma and Sitá rose up and went away to change their garments, but they presently returned and took their seats in the Council hall, and Lakshmana took up the royal umbrella, and held it over the head of Ráma, whilst Sugriva and Vibhishana fanned him on either side with white chamaras. Then all the assembled multitudes filled the air with their joyful shouts and acclamations, and all the Brahmins and all the other inhabitants of Ayodhya, came to bless Ráma with paddy and kusa grass, and poured the paddy and grass upon the head of Ráma. And all the inhabitants of Ayodhya gave themselves up to rejoicing. And Ráma dismissed the Brahmins with rich presents of gold, cows, ornaments, clothes, lands, villages, and gardens, and he dismissed the dancing-men and dancing-women, and the musicians, eulogists, bards, and buffoons, in like manner, with similar presents, and to Sugriva he gave a set of rich gold ornaments, and to Angada he gave his own bracelets from off his wrist. Then Sitá took the necklace from her own neck, and with the consent of Rama

she gave it to Hanuman.<sup>5</sup> Ráma then made suitable presents to all the Monkeys and Bears who had assisted him in his war against Rávana; and then having installed Bharata as Yuvaraja, he began to rule the Raj of Ayodhyá to the great happiness of all the people.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>5</sup> A strange myth is here allied that Hanuman broke every one of the pearls which composed the necklace, because they did not contain the name of Páma.

<sup>6</sup> The following curious details respecting Ráma and his rule are extracted from the Adhyátma Pámyana — "From that time Páma as an inhabitant of this world entered into the pleasures and enjoyments of life, in reality he delighted not in such amusements, but as he had assumed the human form he deemed it necessary to perform worldly actions as a man."

"During the government of Ráma grief and trouble were unknown to mankind, the pillars of justice were raised and firmly established they sustained no injury. Truth, internal and external purity, worship and charity, are the principal supporters of justice, these were kept up by Ráma. No one in the three worlds presumed to dispute his authority, loyalty and deference to his will reigned in every heart, mankind feared and loved him. The rain through his clemency fell in due season, all living creatures enjoyed happiness to its fullest extent. The age of man extended to ten thousand years, during which period no one died children served their parents, wives were faithful and obedient to their husbands. Those trees which had hitherto been barren and unfruitful produced in abundance, the mines in the mountains abounded with jewels and treasures, and the sound of grief was never heard."

Páma and Sitá went from the city one day with their three brothers to take the air, on the borders of the wood they perceived a Bráhmaṇ bearing in his arms the dead body of his son, then only one thousand years old. The Bráhmaṇ lamenting over his son brought him to Ráma, and thus addressed him — "Some sin O Mahárajá must have been committed by our Prince, or how could my son have perished in his infancy?" Ráma at this speech remained some time absorbed in thought, at length he said — "Preserve, learned Bráhmaṇ, the body of thy son for some days in oil, let it not be burnt. I will discover the cause of this misfortune, I will afford thee redress." The Bráhmaṇ in obedience to these orders preserved the body of his son. Ráma, from whom the most hidden secrets of the Vedas cannot be concealed, summoned the sage Yashiska, and having Ayodhyá he went towards the south. On entering a forest he observed a man of the Súra tribe who had concealed himself and was engaged in certain penances which are restricted to the Bráhmaṇs. His feet were bound to the branches of a tree, his head on the ground, surrounded by four fires, the sun the fifth above him, and he took into his mouth the smoke as his only aliment. Ráma knew him from a distance to be a Súra, nevertheless he sent forward a spy to ascertain who and what he was. The spy informed him that this person was a Súra performing religious austerities, on which Ráma irritated at his audacity, drew his sword and smote off his head. From the body of this Súra rose a beautiful form, which fell at Ráma's feet, who dismissed him to paradise. No sooner was the Súra slain than the son of the Bráhmaṇ was restored to life.

<sup>7</sup> Whatever actions the pure and chaste Ráma performed they were for the

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IVHappiness of  
Ráma and Sitá  
Their mode of  
life in the palace  
at Ayodhya.

After this Ráma reigned in the city of Ayodhyá in great felicity with his beloved Sitá. Every morning they were awakened by the eulogists who came to the palace and sounded their praises, and whilst Sitá joined her husband Ráma performed his morning devotions, and then sat upon his throne in the Council-hall, and administered the affairs of the Raj, assisted by his three brethren, and the aged Ministers and Counsellors of his father Dasaratha. When it was noon he went to the apartments of his mother Káshyá, and then took his meal in her presence. In the evening he went to his garden-house, and sent for Sitá; and he sat upon the same couch with his beloved wife, and the maidens of the palace sang and danced before them until it was the hour for repose.

Review of the  
foregoing nar-  
rative of the  
return of Ráma  
and Sitá to  
Ayodhya.Picture of a  
Bráhman read-  
ing the  
Rámayana to  
Hindú villagers.Deep forest of  
the Hindú  
habitation.

The foregoing narrative of the triumphant return of Ráma and Sitá to the city of Ayodhyá and the installation of Ráma in the Raj, is received by a Hindú audience with an enthusiasm which is rarely exhibited in colder climes. To apprehend it aright the European should picture to himself a Hindú village far away from the noise and bustle of city life, where a Bráhman takes his seat every evening beneath a tree to read or chaunt to the villagers a portion of the divine poem, until in process of time the whole has been gone through. He should watch, day by day, the countenances of young and old, and especially those of the women, and observe

present in every turn of the story, from the opening description of a glorious ideal of a Hindú city, and the promise of four sons to Dasaratha at the Aswamedha sacrifice, down to the exulting climax when Rávana is slain by Ráma amidst the rejoicings of the gods. He should see with his own eyes how the birth and boyhood of Ráma, the marriage, the exile, the abduction of Sítá, the lamentations of Ráma, and the invasion of Lanká, have each in turn roused the sympathies of the audience, and excited the smiles and tears,—hot indignation, dreamy wonder, and a deep mysterious awe? Indeed so great is the enthusiasm that the whole of the villagers will identify themselves with every scene in the story; and when the evening approaches on which the triumphant return of Ráma and Sítá to the city of Ayodhyá is to be chaunted by the Bráhman, every preparation is made to enable the audience to imagine themselves actors or spectators on that exultant occasion. The neighbouring huts and trees are decorated with garlands of flowers and leaves, and all present are arrayed in clean garments and bridal ornaments; and in this manner the simple-minded people fondly make believe to take a part in the public rejoicings which accompanied Ráma's entry into the city of his fathers.

Preparation for the return of Ráma and Sítá to the city of Ayodhyá.

The incidents which immediately precede this

Incidents immediately preceding the return.

That such sympathy to emotions are not wholly wanting in Europeans, is proved by a story, which was told by Sir John Herschel, of a certain village smith, who was accustomed to read aloud Richardson's novel of *Pamela* every evening, whilst his neighbours stood around and listened with child-like interest to the progress of the story. At length when the climax arrived, and the virtue of Pamela was rewarded by her marriage with the squire, the primitive villagers had so thoroughly identified themselves with the narrative, that they ran off to the church and rung the marriage bells. Such enthusiasm is still exhibited by a Hindú audience in the story of the Ramayana.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Jan entat ons  
of Rávar as  
women

Ste of the  
or eal of S tá  
st l hown a  
t el nlef  
ham ss ram.

The P hpeka  
c a ot nt o-  
duced to remove  
n geograph cal  
d ill ulty

The lents con  
re lvt the  
t umpl at  
retu to  
Ayo yá  
a li a lat on  
of Ráma.

joyous climax call for but little remark. The lamentations of the women of Rávar for their departed lord, will excite the sympathies of Hindu wives and mothers, even while rejoicing in the downfall of the ten headed giant. The description of the ordeal of Sita is very affecting, and to this day the weary pilgrims, who perchance have journeyed a thousand miles to behold the sacred locality, are shown the very spot on the Island of Ramisseram where Sita passed untouched through the fire, and never fail to bathe in the sea which washes the place as if the efficacy of the waves in purifying souls from sin was more potent there than elsewhere. The chariot named Pushpaka is, of course, a mere creation of the imagination, and is probably introduced to remove the geographical difficulties connected with the vast interval which separates the Island of Ramisseram from the city of Ayodhya, and which might otherwise have interfered with the amalgamation of the tradition of Ráma, the Linga worshipper of the Dekhan, with Ráma, the incarnation of Vishnu.

But, as already indicated, the crowning event in the story is undoubtedly the triumphant entry of the city of Ayodhya, and subsequent installation of Ráma and every incident in that portion of the narrative is deeply impressed upon the memory of the Hindu like the pictured scenery in a panorama. The royal exiles throwing off their jungle garments and arraying themselves in regal attire, Ráma and Sita seated in a chariot side by side, whilst the royal umbrella and chammars are carried by the most distinguished Chieftains, the grand procession mov-

ing into the city, accompanied by musicians and dancing-girls; the acclamations of the assembled thousands; the installation at which pots of sacred water are poured over the heads of the Rájá and Rání, as well as green rice and sacred grass;—all pass before the mind's eye of the Hindú with a vividness and reality, which none but those who sympathize with human nature in all its varied manifestations can hope to apprehend.

## CHAPTER XXIV

### EXILE OF SÍTÁ.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Sequel to the  
Rámáyana.

The narrative

THE Rámáyana seems thus far to have been brought to a happy conclusion by the triumphant return of Ráma and Síta to the royal palace at Ayodhyá, and then installation in the Raj of Kosala. But there is a sequel to the story, which would seem to imply that the reign of Ráma, like that of Yulushthira, was not to end in this world in perfect felicity, and that both Ráma and Síta were to be visited in the height of prosperity by an avenging Nemesis. The question of authenticity will be treated hereafter. For the present it will suffice to say that no doubt as to the truth of the narrative is felt by the Hindús. The story is rapidly passed over in the Bengali version, but merely on the ground that it is too affecting to be dwelt upon: whilst in the Adhyátma Rámáyana an attempt is made to explain away the tragic details as a divine mystery. The narrative itself calls for no preliminary explanation, and may be briefly related as follows:—

S. & desires the  
several makers  
of the story.

When some months had passed away in perfect happiness, Síta felt that she was about to become a mother, and she said to her husband —“I have no relish for any food in this world except the sacrificial cakes which the wives

of the Rishis offer in the forest, and I much desire to visit the Rishis once again that I may eat the cakes as we did when dwelling in the jungle” Rama replied that he would think over the matter in his mind, and tell her what she was to do on the next day. And he went out of the inner apartment, and sat upon his throne in the Council hall. Then one of his Ministers, who was very harsh in his language, arose and said — “O Rama, there is poverty amongst your subjects because of your sin in taking back Sita after she had been ten months in the palace of Ravana, and it is proper that you should put Sita away.”

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Complaint of a  
Minister that  
the people are  
poor be-  
cause  
Sita took back  
Sita.

At these words Rama was thunderstruck, but he said nothing, and when the Council broke up, he returned to the inner apartments, and went to bathe in the tank which was near the palace. Now a certain man dwelt on the opposite side of the tank, and he was a washerman, and this man had a daughter who was married. And it so hap-

Rama hears  
a washerman  
has been a  
washerman  
a daughter in  
law.

pened that on the evening of the preceding day, the daughter had left the house of her husband, and passed the night in the house of her father. When Rama was bathing in the tank he heard the father say to the husband of his daughter — “Take back your wife, I pray you!” But the husband replied — “Not so! Your daughter went from my house in the evening, and I know not where she passed the night, and I cannot take her back again to be my wife. Were I a great Maharaja like Ravana, then indeed I might receive her, even though she had been many months in the house of a strange man, but I am a poor man, and may not do this thing lest my kinsmen turn me out of my caste.”

The so in law  
refuses to take  
back his wife  
who had  
passed the night  
in her father's  
house.

When Rama heard these words he was sorely troubled, and knew not what to do, and he returned to the inner apartments. And it so happened that at that time Sita was describing Ravana to her maids, and she had drawn a figure resembling him upon the floor of the room. When Rama saw the likeness of Ravana he was enraged against Sita, for he thought that she still carried the remembrance of Ravana in her heart. And he sent for his three brothers and in-

Rama sees Sita  
draw a figure  
of Ravana.

He then  
told his  
brothers



furnace over her head, and she walked slowly on in an agony of grief. Her feet, tender as the newly blown rose, were torn with blisters, her throat was parched with thirst, and no tree was in sight to shelter her from the heat of the sun. Sometimes she walked a little way, and sometimes she fell to the ground. She had no friend near her to whom she could tell her sorrows, or from whom she could receive consolation. The wild beasts, who came from the jungles, and surrounded her on all sides, were her only guards. The birds descended from the sky to afford her shelter with their wings, while others dipped their pinions into the water of the Ganges, and fanned her with them, to prevent her fainting from the heat. Thus did she proceed by slow steps towards Chitra kuta, but at last she fell down in a swoon, which was like death, and in this state she was found by Válmiki the sage, who had been the Bráhmaṇa preceptor of her father Janaká, and Válmiki restored her, and took her to his own house, and placed her in charge of his wife and female servants.

W ild beasts  
p arl h ran l  
il birds fan  
l r

Taken toll e  
h se of  
Válmiki

And Sítá gave birth to two sons in the house of Válmiki, and the splendour of their countenances surpassed the sun and moon. Válmiki gave them the names of Lava and Kusa, and brought them up, and educated them with the greatest care. At the age of five years he invested them with the sacred thread, and he taught them the Vedas and the Vedangas and he also taught them to repeat his own work, the poem of the Rámáyana, which comprised the whole history of Rama down to his capture of Lanka and triumphant return to Ayodhyá. And Válmiki likewise taught them the use of bows and arrows so that they became invincible.

Sítá gives i rti  
to Lava and  
Kusa.

Ti e t ro  
broth rs  
ed ca ed by  
Válmiki d  
ta ul t t e  
Rámáyana.

Now when Lava and Kusa were about fifteen or sixteen years of age, Rama became troubled in his mind at having slain a Bráhmaṇa, for Rávana was the grandson of Pulastya, and consequently was by birth a Bráhmaṇa. Accordingly, by the advice of Vasishtha and other learned sages, he resolved on performing an Aswamedha, and all things were made ready for the occasion and as it was necessary that he

Ráma prepares  
to perf rm a  
Aswamedha to  
nto e for lay  
i g sha  
Rávana.

youths to be his own sons, and at that moment Válmiki came up and told him all, and prayed him to become reconciled to his wife Sítá. And Válmiki went and took Sítá by the hand, and told her what had occurred, and that she must go with him into the presence of Ráma, and for a long time she would not go, but Válmiki said to her:—  
 “Your sons have revenged upon Ráma all the evil he has done to you, and unless you become reconciled to him I shall pronounce a curse.” So Sítá went with Válmiki into the presence of Ráma, and made peace with him, and Ráma and Sítá returned with their sons to the city of Ayodhyá, and performed the Aswamedha, and passed the remainder of their lives in peace and joy.<sup>1</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Ráma reconciled to Sítá.

Ráma and Sítá live in happiness in Ayodhyá.

<sup>1</sup> In the *Adhyátma Rámávana* a totally different version is given of these incidents. Ráma is said to have discovered his two sons, from the exquisite manner in which they chaunted the *Rámáyana* at the Aswamedha, whilst his meeting with Sítá is described in the following manner.—“When Ráma knew that the two boys were the sons of Sítá, he ordered his attendants to bring Válmiki to him, and the sage returned with Sítá and her children. Ráma then spoke in an audible voice saying—‘It is necessary we should prove the chastity of Sítá, let her make an oath in the presence of this assembly that the world may know she is pure, and that her chastity is without blemish.’ Mankind had an evil opinion of her, therefore I dismissed her from my presence. Forgive me, Válmiki! We know that Sítá is guiltless, let us, however, prove her innocence before all present. I am certain Lava and Kusa are my children.’ When Ráma had thus spoken the people were assured that Sítá would again undergo the trial by ordeal. Brahma collected all the gods and the people were assembled. Sítá having bathed, and being newly clothed in silken garments, was brought to the place of sacrifice. With downcast eyes her hands raised towards those present, she thus spoke—‘If, O Earth, I never turned my thoughts towards any man but Ráma, if my truth and purity are known to thee, receive me into thy bosom, open a passage for me that I may pass in safety into thy bowels. I have undergone the slanders of mankind, I here pledge myself before thee never again to let the face of any living creature. On hearing these words, all present were over-

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART IV.

Review of the  
foregoing story  
of the cause of  
the

The foregoing narrative appears to call for little comment. The story of this portion of the Rāmāyana has been very much abridged in the present version, inasmuch as the original abounds with mythical matter which is absolutely valueless for the purposes of history, and which obscures rather than illustrates the original tradition. Indeed it is difficult to say how far the main feature of the

authentic or otherwise. It is certainly surrounded by improbable details, such as the episode of Ráma's sons learning to recite the Rámáyana, which is very suspicious; and yet the idea that Ráma could not receive Sítá as his wife after her protracted residence in the palace at Lanká, and the tradition that Ráma finally sent her out into the jungle, are true to the national sentiment, and have long formed a part of the national belief. Moreover the legend that Ráma did put away his wife harmonizes with another legend,\* that he subsequently sent his brother Lakshmana into exile; and thus we might almost infer from the current of national tradition that Ráma, as he advanced in years, became jealous and peevish like Henry the Eighth; and that the pious author of the Rámáyana has invented mythical reasons for the equivocal proceedings of the divine hero. The question of whether Ráma was ever again really reconciled to Sítá after this second ordeal, must of course remain in doubt; but it is stated in the Adhyátma Rámáyana that he ultimately ascended to heaven on the bird Gáura, and finally joined Sítá, who had returned to her original form as the goddess Lakshmi. As regards the two sons of Ráma, who were born in the house of Valmiki, and were named Lava and Kusa, it may be remarked that to this day the Kachwáka Rajpúts affect to derive their descent from Kusa, whilst another Rajpút tribe,

Question of  
whether Ráma  
really took back  
Sítá  
Ráma ascends  
to heaven

\* It is said that one day Time as a messenger from Brahma paid a visit to Ráma and that Ráma ordered Lakshmana to keep the door shut against every one on pain of death. The sage Durvásas, however, called shortly afterwards and threatened to curse Ráma unless admitted immediately. Lakshmana accordingly admitted the sage, and Lakshmana goes to the river Sarayú, suppresses his senses, and is conveyed bodily by Indra to heaven. It is worthy of remark that the name of Lakshmana appears to be still preserved in the modern name of Lucknow.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IV

Conclusion of  
the Rámáyana.

the Bádkuja, regard Lava as the founder of their race <sup>3</sup>

Here, then, ends the story of the Rámáyana. The divine poem concludes with the following religious promises, which serve to illustrate the widely-spread belief in the divinity of Ráma, and the blessings which are supposed to reward those who read or hear the pious legend of his earthly career—

Modern Hindú  
belief in the  
virtues of the  
Rámáyana

Whoever reads or hears the Rámáyana will be freed from all sin. Those who read it, or hear it read to them, for the sake of obtaining a son, will certainly have one. Those who read or hear it for the sake of riches will certainly acquire wealth. If a woman hears it she will obtain a good husband and enjoy happiness. A Bráhmaṇ reaps the advantage of reading the Vedas, a Kshatṛiya conquers his enemies, a Vaisya is blessed with riches, and a Súdṛa gains great fame by reading the Rámáyana, or having it read to them. The Rámáyana heals diseases, removes all fear of enemies, compensates for all loss of wealth or fame, prevents loss of life, and secures all that is desired. The mere utterance of the name of Ráma is equal in religious merit to the giving of a hundred ornamented cows to a Bráhmaṇ, or the performance of an Aswamedha. A follower of Ráma enjoys happiness in this world, and in the next is absorbed in Ráma in that Vaikuntha which is the heaven of Vishnu.

<sup>3</sup> See Prof H. H. Wilson's introduction to his translation of the *Uttara-Ráma charitra* in his *Theatre of the Hindús*. This drama is attributed to *Blava Cháti*, and is based upon the incidents already narrated as forming the sequel of the history of Ráma.

# PART V.

## THE BRAHMANIC PERIOD.

### CHAPTER I

#### FOUR EPOCHS OF RELIGIOUS HISTORY

THE main points in the two great Hindú Epics have now been reproduced in a condensed form; and it remains to be seen whether it is possible to draw from these national treasures of tradition and legend, as well as from other branches of Hindú literature, sufficient materials for constructing a narrative of the early progress of the Hindú people, which should correspond to the modern idea of history. Hitherto one great obstacle in the way of such an undertaking has arisen from the overwhelming mass of original materials which have been preserved in the Sanskrit language; and from the number and variety of the vernaculars in which much important information was supposed to be concealed. But of late years, in addition to the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, a large portion of the Vedas and Puránas have been rendered available to the European reader; and especially a valuable series of translated extracts and analyses of the more important

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Possibility of  
constructing a  
history of the  
Hindus

Materials

Mahá Bhárata.  
Rámáyana  
Vedas  
Puránas

**HISTORY OF INDIA PART V** portions of the Purāṇas, which was carried out by the late Professor H. H. Wilson, has been preserved in twenty six folio volumes of manuscripts in the Library of the Asiatic Society at Calcutta. A large number of legends and traditions connected with the life and teachings of Śīkya Muni, better known as Gotama Buddha, have been collected and translated both in Ceylon and Burmah, and not only throw considerable light on the development of religious dogmas in India but furnish some interesting pictures of life and manners at the advent of Śīkya Muni, and during the period when Buddhism prevailed. Again, the celebrated Brahmanic code, known as the "Institutes of Manu," has been familiar to every English student in Hindu antiquities since the days of Sir William Jones, and will now be found to yield new and important results in the early history of the Hindu people by being brought face to face with the hymns of the Rig Veda. Many translations of Hindu dramas and poetry have also appeared, which add largely to our knowledge of the ideas and sentiments which have prevailed at different periods amongst the masses. Rich stores of antiquarian information have likewise been opened up, including select translations from the more valuable documents in the Mackenzie MSS, which like the Purāṇic manuscripts, have been preserved in the Library of the Asiatic Society of Calcutta in thirty four thick folio volumes. To these may be added hosts of other Hindu productions, theological and otherwise, which have either been separately published, or have appeared in one or other of the journals devoted to Oriental literature. At the same time sites of ancient cities have been discovered, in

**British Library**

**Manu**

**Hindu drama and poetry**

**Mackenzie MSS**

**Miscellaneous veracular records**

scriptions have been deciphered, and genealogical lists have been examined and compared. In a word, it may now be asserted that these sources of information, as well as those which have been already indicated in preceding chapters, have served to render the necessary materials for the ancient history of India available to the historical student, who may not have possessed either the necessary leisure or predilections for a study of the many languages, living and dead, which appertain to the great Indian peninsula.<sup>1</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART I

Inscriptions,  
etc

The history of the people of India, ancient and modern, should be considered as something distinct from that of Mussulman and British rule. Indeed

History of India  
distinct from  
that of Mussul-  
man or British  
rule

<sup>1</sup> The author would here venture to remark that his object is very different from that which appears to have been contemplated by the great modern schools of comparative philology, whether in Germany or elsewhere. He has not attempted to discover the origin and early history of the different Aryan peoples by the light of those special philological studies, which have hitherto so largely occupied the attention of Sanskrit scholars. He has confined himself to the humbler task of describing the people of India as they are, and he has consequently endeavoured to unfold the history of the past so far as it was necessary for a due apprehension of the history of the people in more recent periods. Those who desire to enter upon the larger field of inquiry must give their days and nights to the study of the critical labours of Goldtucker, Max Müller, Lassen, Weber, Bensey, Kuhn, Roth, Fritz Edward Hall, Cowell, Muir, Aufrecht, Minor Williams, Gorresio, and many other scholars in Europe, as well as in this country, who have attained a widely spread reputation as the pioneers in the study of a comparison of roots and grammars. It might also be added that human life under the most favourable circumstances is not sufficiently long to enable a single individual in the present day to be at once an Oriental philologist and an Indian historian. For instance, a study of the Purāṇas in the original Sanskrit would occupy very many years, whereas a twelve months' patient analysis of Wilson's collection of translations at Ucutta has sufficed to show how much valuable light the originals appear to throw upon sectarian rites and creeds, and especially upon the antagonism between Brāhman and Buddhists, but how little they really contribute towards a substantive knowledge of Indian history prior to the age of Buddhism. In like manner the salient points in the Mackenzie collection may be mastered after a few months' study of the manuscript translations, whilst the mere work of collection and arrangement, to say nothing of translation, seems to have occupied the whole of the leisure of the late Colonel Colin Mackenzie throughout a long Indian career, and may be said to have been the absorbing passion of a life time.



HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Religious revolutions from  
within

Importance of  
the history

Division of the  
religious history  
into four  
epochs

neither Mussulman nor European can be said to have hitherto created any enduring impression upon the national mind. The religious revolutions which have stirred up the life of the Hindu to its uttermost depths, have been nearly all of indigenous growth. They have sprung up from within rather than from without, and must be generally regarded as the product of the Hindu mind. For ages the people have been shut in from the outer world by the Himalayas and the sea, and their religious faith has been formed from the consciousness alone. The history of the progress and development of religious thought in India is thus of the highest importance in the history of man, inasmuch as it illustrates the sources of many ideas and sentiments, which find expression in what has been termed natural religion. At the same time its range of development is more extensive than that of any other existing faith, for it rises with the dawn of consciousness as regards the existence of a superior being or beings with reference to the present life, and ascends to the highest dogmas in the conception of one Supreme Deity, who is over all and in all, not only in this life but in that which is to come.

The history of the people of India, if considered as something distinct from the annals of conquest, is emphatically a religious history, and so closely has every act and duty been associated from time immemorial with religious belief in the mind of the Hindu, that we are enabled by means of the religious books which have been preserved, to obtain a tolerably clear insight into the important changes which have taken place at different intervals in the manners and ideas of the people at large. Reserving

all minor distinctions for discussion hereafter, it may in the first instance be convenient to map out the religious history of the people of India into four great epochs, corresponding with the four great changes in their religious belief, namely ;—

1st. The Vedic age.

2nd, The Brahmanic age.

3rd, The Buddhist age

4th, The age of Brahmanical revival.

The religion of the Vedic age has been briefly sketched in the introduction to the preceding volume.

1st Vedic age  
characterized by  
prayers and  
offerings for  
elementary desires  
for material  
blessings

It consisted in offerings of food and wine, accompanied by outpourings of prayers and praises to elementary deities and other personified abstractions, in the hope of obtaining thereby such material blessings as health, prosperity, long life, abundance

Belief in ghosts.

of sons, prolific cattle, and overflowing harvests. It was also associated with a crude belief in the existence of the ghosts of ancestors, who might be propitiated with offerings of food and water ; but it scarcely recognized that belief in the immortality of the soul, and a future state of reward and punishment, which has found such large expression in later creeds. It was in fact an early form of polytheism, when men saw deity in the clouds and heard him in the wind. The process by which the unenlightened but inquiring intellect of the Vedic Aryans rose

Process by  
which the Aryan  
mind arose from  
polytheism to  
monotheism

from the idea of many gods to the conception of one Supreme Being, is of the utmost importance in the history of religious development, and is exhibited with considerable clearness in the hymns of the Rig-Veda. In the first instance the simple worshipper praised the immediate object of his adoration as the God above all gods, the almighty, the supreme ;

Transitioned  
from many gods  
to one

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
• PART V

Inquiry as to  
the origin of  
being

Identification of  
the Supreme  
Spirit with Agni  
and Prajapati

2d, Brahmanic  
also character-  
ized by auster-  
ities and sacrific-  
es to exalt  
sin.

Compromise be-  
tween the Vedic  
and Brahmanic  
creeds.

much in the same fashion as he belauded his own patriarchal Chieftain as the greatest of heroes, the mightiest of warriors, the Raja of Rajas, whose fame had spread throughout the three worlds. Familiarity with this form of thought may have subsequently led to the inquiry as to who was the Being who caused the life of the universe; and this question is propounded by the Vedic bard in the following language:—"From earth are the breath and blood, but where is the soul?"\* Hence arose two conceptions of monotheism. The more ancient and material conception appears to have existed in the identification of the Sun as the Supreme Spirit of light and fire, which animated the whole universe, and which seems to have been associated with the worship of Agni. A later and more spiritual conception identified the Supreme Spirit with a deity named Prajapati, who was worshipped as the Supreme Soul.

The Brahmanic religion seems to have been originally distinct from the Vedic religion. The religious ideas which characterized each faith seem to have originated from different sources, although they may have sprung up side by side. The Vedic worship is the expression of a child-like desire to gratify the national gods by offerings of food and wine. The Brahmanic worship is on the other hand an expression of fear at having sinned against deity, and an attempt to appease his wrath by austerities and sacrifices. When however the two classes of ideas came into contact, the old Vedic deities were not set aside by the Brâhmans, but were simply

\* See Vol. I Part i Introduction

Vedic deities re-  
cognized but  
placed in a sub-  
ordinate posi-  
tion to Brahmá.Agni and Pra-  
jápati identified  
with BrahmaCaste system  
resulted in en-  
gulfment of ecclesi-  
astical oppression

placed in subordination to the god Brahma; who was represented as the creator of gods and men, and the especial deity of the Bráhmans; and who was remotely associated with the dogma that goodness would be rewarded and sin punished both in this life and in the life hereafter. The Brahmanic age was thus emphatically an age of religious compromise. The Vedic deities were still acknowledged as inferior gods, but placed under the supremacy of Brahmá, as their creator; and the heaven of the Vedic deities was placed far lower in the ideal universe than the heaven of the eternal Brahma.<sup>3</sup> In like manner the monotheistic conceptions of the Vedic Aryans were amalgamated with those of the Bráhmans. Agni and Prajápati, Vedic idealizations of a Supreme Being, were each in turn identified with Brahma. By this process the early Bráhmans appear to have succeeded in super-adding a belief in endless transmigrations of the soul,—in austerities as a means of obtaining reward, and in sacrifices as expiation for sin,—to the old primitive worship of the Aryan deities, which looked only for material blessings. At the same time the Bráhmans seem to have reduced the primitive classes of society to a rigid caste system; and to have converted that system into an engine of ecclesiastical oppression, by which every action of a man as a husband, a father, a householder and a citizen, was brought under the tyranny of caste rule, and human passions and aspirations were pressed down until the Hindú

<sup>3</sup> A distinction must be here laid down between Brahma the Supreme Soul and Bráhmá who is only the creator or rather the creative energy of Brahma. Without any accent the word Brahma signifies the Supreme Soul, with an accent on the final letter, Brahmá signifies the creator only.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Illustrations of  
the Vedic period  
furnished by the  
Brahmanic  
period

Distinguishing  
characteristics  
of the ages of  
Buddhism and  
Brahmanical re-  
vival

Commencement  
of the age of  
Buddhism in the  
sixth century  
B.C.

Doctrines of  
Śākya Muni

people were little better than religious automaton. The character of this important compromise between the simple forms of Vedic worship and the complicated system of Brahmanism, will form the main subject of inquiry in the present sketch of the Brahmanic age. But in investigating the various branches of the subject, it will be constantly necessary to refer to the Vedic period; inasmuch as such an investigation tends to indicate the opposition between the ideas and institutions of the Vedic age and those of the Brahmanic age, which are rendered perceptible by a comparison of the hymns of the Rig-Veda with the institutes of Manu.

The characteristics of the two succeeding eras of Buddhism and Brahmanical revival will be brought under consideration in the next volume. But inasmuch as traces of both periods are to be found in the Mahā Bhārata and Rāmāyana, it may be as well to indicate in the present place the broad features which distinguish each of those epochs from the remaining three.

With the dawn of Buddhism a footing is established in modern chronology. The advent of Śākya Muni, who is generally regarded as the great teacher and founder of Buddhism in India, has been referred to the sixth century before the Christian era by a series of calculations which will be duly considered hereafter. This famous personage seems for a while to have effected a complete revolution in the religious belief of the Hindús. He threw contempt upon the simple prayers of the Vedic Aryans for the material blessings of this life, by enunciating an idea which has found expression amongst bards and prophets of all ages, namely, that the pleasures of this

would are altogether unreal and unsubstantial, the mere creations of the imagination. He taught as a vital truth the sentiment which is involved in the words of a modern poet, and which is familiar to the current religious thought of the European :—

“ The world is all a fleeting show  
For man's delusion given,  
The smiles of joy, the tears of woe,  
Deceitful shine, deceitful flow.”

But Sákya Muni went further. The modern European idea reposes upon the conclusion that there is nothing true in the universe of being, saving the life hereafter in heaven. The old Bráhmans taught that men were constantly committing sins, which could only be expiated by penances and sacrifices; and that the performance of penances and sacrifices, in excess of such expiation, would secure a corresponding amount of rewards either in this life or the life hereafter. But Sákya Muni cut at the very root of these creeds by proclaiming that existence itself was an evil to gods and men; that the one grand object of gods and men was not to prolong their miserable existence for the sake of such deluding phantoms as wealth, pleasure, or power, either in this life or in future existences; but rather to crush out all human passions and yearnings, and thus to deliver the soul from the vortex of ever-recurring transmigrations, and enable it to take refuge in a state of utter and eternal repose. Such repose is an Oriental idea of perfect and divine felicity, and is termed Nirvána; but in reality it is little more than an idea of utter annihilation, inasmuch as it involved the destruction of all individuality, until nothing was left but mere intellect in undisturbed

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Happiness & delusion

Existence an evil

Nirvána or undisturbed repose

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Age of sati ty

Expul on of  
B dth nly  
the Bra man  
ical rev val

Fa i re of B d  
l n to i lu  
e e the masses

slumber It may also be remarked, as a significant fact in the history of man, which will be further considered in the next volume, that this idea of repose, this longing after eternal rest, did not find its full force in an age of evil and tribulation, when afflicted humanity sought relief from the thousand ills that flesh is heir to, but in an age of sensual gratification, when profuse indulgence had produced a sickening satiety, which found expression in the words of the Preacher of old —“ All, all is vanity, and vexation of spirit ”

The circumstances which led to the expulsion of Buddhism from India, and the triumphant revival of Brahmanism, are still involved in some obscurity, which may however be possibly cleared up hereafter. In the present place it may suffice to say that the great Brahmanical revival seems to have originated in a democratic appeal to the sympathies and aspirations of the masses, who might reasonably be supposed to be less capable of apprehending the transcendental happiness involved in the idea of Nirvāṇa, and to feel a livelier appreciation of the more substantial enjoyments of human existence as they are generally understood by the bulk of the community. Indeed it may be remarked that unless religion promises substantive blessings and rewards, or is associated with sectarian ideas which perpetuate it as a living principle by that force of antagonism which perpetuates so many dogmas, it soon fails to act as a motive power or spring of action. It is thus easy to comprehend that amidst the corruptions of a Buddhist priesthood, a religious belief which offered no spiritual consolation beyond rest or annihilation, and which ignored rather than satisfied the innate yearn

ings of the soul after a supreme good, soon failed to exercise an influence upon the general community, who hankered after the fleshpots of Egypt, and burned with the eagerness of youthful voluptuaries to receive material blessings from their old national gods in return for sacrifice and prayer. Under such circumstances the appeal of the Bráhmans to the popular sentiment could scarcely fail of success. The worship of the old Vedic deities, who had been held in derision during the age of Buddhism, was partially revived. The worship of Vishnu and Siva, which was unknown to the composers of the Rig-Veda, but which seem to have largely prevailed throughout Hindústan and the Dekhan, was recognized and adopted by the apostles of the Brahmanical revival. Vishnu and Siva were each identified with Brahma, and ultimately with each other. Ráma and Krishna, the traditional heroes of the people of India, whose histories have been household words for ages, were declared to be incarnations of the god Vishnu, whilst even the animals who were worshipped by the pre-Aryan races, such as the fish, the tortoise, the boar, and the lion, were represented as incarnations of the same deity. In like manner the

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Appeal of the  
Bráhmans to  
the worship of  
the old gods of  
India.  
Vedic deities.

Vishnu and  
Siva.

Brahma.  
Ráma and  
Krishna, as in-  
carnations of  
Vishnu.

animals worshipped.



HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART VKāma,  
Kārtikeya,  
Kuvera,  
Ganesa.

the pantheon of the Brāhmans; such as gods of love, of war, of wealth, and of good luck; as well as deified animals and things belonging to an ancient fetische worship, including cows, snakes, birds, trees, plants, rivers, mountains, books, stones and logs of wood; all of which were incorporated in the Brahmanical system under a variety of mythical interpretations and transformations, until the Hindús themselves have ignorantly believed that their gods were three hundred and thirty millions in number.<sup>4</sup>

Chronology of  
the four epochs

The chronology of these four great epochs in the history of the Hindús may perhaps be indicated as follows :—

Vedic

1st.—The Vedic age, which was characterized by the worship of the elementary deities, such as Agni and Indra, and appears to have prevailed in the Punjab prior to the disappearance of the Saraswatí river in the sand.<sup>5</sup>

Brahmanic.

2nd.—The Brahmanic age, which was characterized by the worship of Brahma, and appears to have prevailed between the disappearance of the Saraswatí in the sand, and the advent of Sákya Muni about B.C. 600.

Buddhist.

3rd.—The Buddhist age, which was characterized by the pursuit of Nivána, and appears to have prevailed from about B.C. 600 to A.D. 800 or 1000.

<sup>4</sup> The names of all these deified personifications will be fully indicated in a subsequent volume. It will suffice to state that Kāma is the god of love, Kārtikeya the god of war, Kuvera the god of wealth, and Ganesa, the elephant headed and big-bellied idol, the god of good luck and prosperity.

The age of the Brahmanical revival is sometimes styled the Puránic age, or the age in which the Puráns were composed. The Puráns certainly received their present form during this period, and the legends they contain are chiefly valuable as illustrations of the period of Brahmanical revival.

<sup>5</sup> The significance of the disappearance of the Saraswatí, as separating two eras from each other, will be pointed out in Chapter II, on Vedic and Brahmanic

4th.—The Brahmanical revival, which was characterized by the worship of incarnations of deities, and appears to have prevailed from about A D. 800 to the present time.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Brahmanic re-  
vival

Whilst, however, the attempt has been made to map out the religious history of the Hindús into four distinct periods, it by no means follows that such an arrangement of eras is to be regarded as an expression of definite chronology. On the one hand an attempt to arrive at approximate chronological data, and to calculate the probable duration of Hindú forms of religious belief by reference to what is known of the duration of modern revolutions in religious thought, carries back the imagination to a period so far removed from all recorded history, that synchronisms could only be found in astronomical calculations of the revolutions of the stars. Again, in dealing with revolutions brought about by the progress and development of religious thought, it is impossible to fix any chronological interval, less perhaps than a thousand years, between the time when an old faith passes away and the time when a new faith finds full expression, and fairly lays hold of the national mind. One age runs into its successor and mingles with its current; just as the heathenism of Greece and Rome continued to exist long after the advent of Christianity; and just as Roman Catholicism still continues to exist, and may exist for hundreds of generations yet to come, although at least three centuries may be said to have passed away since the advent of the Protestant Reformation. To this day very many traces of the old Vedic worship are still to be found in the popular faith and ritual of the masses in India; whilst the innovating doc-

Definite chro-  
nology impos-  
sible

Intermingling  
of religious  
origination in  
different ages.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

trines of Buddhism, which were so hotly persecuted by the Bráhmans, still linger in many recesses of the Hindú mind. Stranger still, the *fetische* form of worship, which belongs to the remotest antiquity, still flourishes in India, and is especially to be found in the rural districts, where it exercises no small influence upon the minds and actions of the masses.<sup>6</sup>

Two points in connection with the Brahmanic age.

The following chapters will thus be immediately devoted to a consideration of the ideas and institutions of the Brahmanic age. Accordingly, before commencing the inquiry, it may be advisable to consider two important points, which bear upon the general subject, namely—

1st—The duration of the Brahmanic age

2nd—The light which the Brahmanic age throws upon the Vedic period.

1st, Probable duration of the Brahmanic age

From the data already laid down it would seem that the old Brahmanic age intervened between the decline of the Vedic worship and the rise of Buddhism. In other words, between the reduction of the Vedic worship to an established ritual in association with the worship of Brahma, which seems to have taken place at some remote period more or less corresponding with the disappearance of the Saraswatí river in the sand; and the early teachings of Sákya Muni, who seems to have flourished in the sixth century before the Christian era. But whilst for the sake of clearness the transition period between Brahmanism and Buddhism has been referred

Ind finite extension of Brahmanism throughout the Buddhist age

<sup>6</sup> Indra, one of the most celebrated of the Vedic deities, is still worshipped in the great annual festival in the south of India, known as the Pongol, or "boiling." Again, many traces of the worship of Puddha are to be found at Jeyanthi, and missionaries in many quarters report that Buddhist doctrines have left a deep impression upon the rural population.

to the sixth century B C, it seems certain that the current of Brahmanism flowed on until a much later date. When Sākya Muni began to promulgate the peculiar dogmas of Buddhism to the people of Hindústan, he found himself surrounded by Bráhmans, many of whom became his converts and disciples; and it was not until after his death that a hostile opposition arose between the Bráhmans and Buddhists, which eventuated in religious wars and cruel persecutions, that still find expression in local traditions, as well as in the burnt and charred remains of Buddhist monasteries of olden time. Indeed Brahmanism seems never to have been entirely subverted, for otherwise its resuscitation ten or twelve centuries after the death of Sākya Muni could have been scarcely possible. Moreover it will be seen hereafter that Brahmanism appears to satisfy the crude aspirations of mankind in an early stage of civilization; and is in accordance with a popular idea of divine justice in the government of the world, that every good act will be separately considered and rewarded, and that every sinful act will be separately considered and punished, either in this life or in the life hereafter. On the other hand Buddhism is essentially an aristocratic creed, suitable only to the philosophic yearnings of a rich and noble class, in whom self-indulgence in every gratification has produced a surfeit of pleasure; and who are consequently driven by sheer satiety to seek a life of abstinence and contemplation, which will ultimately tend to a dreamy spiritual existence of eternal repose and undisturbed slumber.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Brahmanism a religion of the people.

Buddhism a religion of the nobles.

A further idea of the probable duration of the old Brahmanical period may perhaps be derived from

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Code of Manu a  
sta id point i  
the h story of  
Brahmanism

No references  
to the code to  
the h story of  
Brahmanism

Probable date of  
the code of  
Manu

2nd R. flexl bt  
thrown upo  
the Ved c age by  
the Brahmanic  
age

a consideration of the period in which the code of Manu appears to have been composed. It will be seen hereafter that whilst this code recognizes the worship of the Vedic deities as part of the great compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic rites, which characterized the Brahmanic period, it refers to the atheists and revilers of the Vedā, who are to be identified with the Buddhists, and it directs that no Brahmans should settle in their neighbourhood. At the same time it takes no cognizance of that worship of incarnations of deity which characterized the later era of Brahmanical revival, and especially it contains but slight reference to Vishnu or Siva, the two great deities of the modern religion of the Hindus. Accordingly, although the date of the code is still involved in some obscurity, its composition may perhaps be referred to the centuries immediately preceding the Christian era, or to those which immediately follow that epoch.<sup>7</sup>

As regards the reflex light which the following investigations into the history of the Brahmanic age will throw upon the Vedic age, it will suffice to remark that the illustrations to be traced among Brahmanic materials will be found to furnish new and important additions to the stock of information respecting the old Vedic settlements in the Punjab, which has already been gathered from the hymns of the Rīg Vedā.<sup>8</sup> The grounds for the several conclusions will be exhibited in future chapters, but it may be desirable to note in the present place the

<sup>7</sup> Reference is certainly made in the code to the Purāṇas and Upaśhad, still the greater part of the code seems to have been composed long before the Purāṇas received their present form.

<sup>8</sup> See also Vol. I. Vedic Period.

data which will be more or less established hereafter. The salient points are nine in number, and may be indicated as follows:—

1st, The geographical distinction between the Vedic settlements and the Brahmanic settlements; the former being referable to the Punjab and the latter to Hindústan

2nd, The distinction between the Rishis and the Bráhmans; the former being Vedic psalmists and worshippers of the Vedic deities, whilst the latter were sacrificing priests and worshippers of the god Brahma.

3rd, The distinction between the Vedic conception of Manu as the first man, and the Brahmanic conception of Manu as the Hindú lawgiver.

4th, The distinction between the creation of the universe by Manu and the similar creation by Brahmá.

5th, The distinction between the Vedic and Brahmanic systems of chronology; the former being apparently based upon a calculation of Manwantaras, or reigns of successive Manus, whilst the latter was based upon a succession of Kalpas, or days of Brahma.

6th, The distinction between the Vedic worship and the Brahmanic worship.

7th, The distinction between the Vedic forms of marriage and the Brahmanic rites

8th, The distinction between the Vedic Śráddha and the Brahmanic rite.

9th, The distinction between the Kshatriya and the Bráhman, which especially characterizes the laws respecting the four castes.

In addition, however, to these main points, many

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Nine salient  
points

1st, Vedic and  
Brahmanic Geo-  
graphy

2nd, Rishis and  
Bráhmans

3rd, Conceptions  
of Manu.

4th, Creations  
by Manu and  
Brahmá.

5th, Vedic and  
Brahmanic  
chronology

6th, Worship

7th, Marriages

8th, Śráddhas

9th, The Ksha-  
triya and the  
Bráhman

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

---

Chronological  
sequence ap-  
proximating to  
the idea of an-  
nals

other characteristics of the Vedic and Brahmanic periods will appear in future chapters, and further illustrate the radical distinction which exists between the two ages. Moreover, an attempt will be made in the concluding chapter of the present volume, under the head of "Historical resumé," to classify and arrange all available data in the Epic traditions, as will serve to illustrate the successive stages in the development of the Hindú people; and establish, if possible, a *chronological sequence* which shall approximate as nearly as may be to the current conception of historical annals.

## CHAPTER II

### VEDIC AND BRAHMANIC GEOGRAPHY.

THE first point to be settled in the history of the Brahmanic age is the relative geographical position of the Vedic and Brahmanic settlements at the dawn of tradition. This point is of considerable importance, as in consequence of the systematic Brahmanizing of all Vedic traditions, which characterizes the sacred literature of the Hindús, the early localities of the Vedic and Brahmanic peoples have been hitherto confounded together; and the geographical distinction between the two classes of settlements can only be ascertained after a critical investigation of the data which are to be found in the hymns of the Rig-Veda and laws of Manu.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Comparison of  
the geographical  
data in the  
Vedic hymns  
and code of  
Manu.

According to Manu there were two ancient territories in the north-west quarter of India, which seem to have been more or less separated from each other by a once famous river known as the Saraswatí. This river might be roughly described as flowing from the Himálayas towards the south in a parallel line with the Sutlej and Jumná, and about half way between the two; and thus the Aryan invaders from the north-west would have to cross the Saraswatí on their way from the Punjab to Hindústan. The region to the westward of the river is

Vedic settle-  
ments on the  
Brahmanic set-  
tlements sepa-  
rated by the Sa-  
raswatí river



HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Vedic gods identified with the Vedic Aryans, and the god Brahma with the Brāhmins

Opposition between the Vedic Aryans of the Punjab and the Brāhmins of Hindūstan.

said by Manu to have been created or frequented by the Devatas, or gods of the Vedic Aryans. The region to the eastward of the river is said to have been the country of the ancient Brāhman priests, the worshippers of the god Brahma.<sup>1</sup> This distinction between the Devatas, or gods of the Vedic Aryans, and Brahma, or god of the Brāhmins, must be especially borne in mind in dealing with the history of ancient India. In Hindū traditions the gods are frequently identified with their worshippers. Thus the term "Devatas" often points to the Vedic people, whilst the term "Brahma" may sometimes point to the Brāhman people. It should also be added, that whilst the god Brahma was scarcely known to the composers of the Vedic hymns, no pains are spared in the code of Manu to represent Brahma as a deity distinct from, and far superior to, all the Vedic deities.

On the first glance at these geographical data, it would appear that the territory of the Vedic Aryans might be identified with the modern Punjab, and that the territory of the Brāhmins might be in like manner identified with that of Hindūstan proper. Indeed it is by no means improbable that this conjecture involves an important geographical fact; namely, a distinction between the Vedic people and

<sup>1</sup> The distinction between the eastward and westward of the river is not clearly laid down by Manu, and the obscurity is rendered greater by a confusion as regards the real Saraswati, which seems to have taken place in modern maps. The question will be discussed hereafter, in connection with a translation of the original texts in Manu. It will suffice to state here that a land-mark, known as the Vinasana, or disappearance of the Saraswati, is fixed by Manu as the western boundary of the Middle region, and consequently it has been inferred that the same boundary separated the Brahmanic territory from the Vedic territory. That they were separated is certain, as Manu describes Brāhmāśhi-dēva as being west of Prāhmāvarta.

Brahmanic people, corresponding to the distinction between the Punjab and Hindústan. In the hymns of the Rig-Veda frequent reference is made to the land of the seven rivers, created by India and Agni, which rivers seem to correspond to the seven rivers of the Punjab;<sup>2</sup> whilst it is plain from other allusions that the Aryan settlements extended southward along the main stream of the Indus or Sindhu towards the modern Kuriachee. In like manner it is certain that at a later period the Brahmans occupied the greater part of Hindústan, and became identified with that territory. *Manu*, however, re-

*Eastern and western  
described by  
Manu.*

stricts both the Vedic region and the Brahmanic region to a much more limited area, and distinguishes each one by a Brahmanical name. The

HISTORY OF  
INDIA,  
PART V.Historical  
origin of Brah-  
márshi desa.Mythical origin  
of the term  
"Brahmávarṣa."Distinction be-  
tween the age  
when the Saras-  
watí flowed to  
the Indus and  
the age when it  
disappeared in  
the sand.Opposition be-  
tween the Vedic  
deities and  
Brahmá.

**Brahmárshi-desa** The latter name of Brahmárshi-desa, as designating the country of the divine priests or Bráhmans, is probably historical; as the tradition is widely spread throughout India that the region indicated as Brahmárshi-desa is the mother-country of the Bráhmans. The name, however, of Brahmávarṣa, which Manu applies to the Vedic settlement on the Saraswatí, is apparently a mythical appellation of comparatively modern date. It both countries were named after Brahma, it seems difficult to understand why any distinction should have been laid down between them. Moreover, in the Vedic period, as will be seen hereafter, the river Saraswatí flowed on to the river Indus. In the Brahmanic period, however, when the code of Manu was promulgated, the same river disappeared in the sand long before it reached the Indus; and Vinasana, or the place of the disappearance of the river, was adopted by Manu as a land-mark which formed the western boundary of the middle region. Thus at the time when the river Saraswatí flowed to the Indus, the Vedic deities were alone worshipped by the Vedic Aryans. In the succeeding age, however, when the Saraswatí disappeared in the sand, the god Brahma was worshipped as the one Supreme Being, and the Vedic deities were either depreciated or neglected by the Bráhmans. Indeed, throughout the Institutes of Manu, the god Brahma is persistently represented as infinitely superior to the Vedic gods. He is described as the creator of the Devatas; and a day of Brahmá is said to have been equal to many thousand years of the Devatas.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>3</sup> This alleged superiority of Brahmá to the Devatas is still more strikingly put forward in the Rámáyana, where the Vedic deities are represented as flying to Brahmá for protection against Rávana. See *ante*, p. 18

Manu, however, has unconsciously revealed the real truth, as regards the mythical origin of the term "Brahmāvarta." In speaking of the Vedic tract, he says:—"This country was created by the Devatas [i.e. Vedic gods], and therefore the sages [i.e. the Brāhmāns of a later age, of whom Manu was the representative] gave it the name of Brahmāvarta."<sup>4</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

A comparison of the geographical data in the Rig-Veda, when the river Saraswatī flowed on to the Indus, with the geographical data in Manu, when the same river disappeared in the sand long before it reached the Indus, will fully confirm the conclusions which have been laid down. The Saraswatī river is known in the Rig-Veda as the seventh stream; because apparently it was the seventh and last stream which the Vedic Aryans had to cross in their way from the Punjab to Hindūstan proper, or in other words from the banks of the Sutlej to the banks of the Jumná.<sup>5</sup> It was also called the mother of the Indus or Sindhū;<sup>6</sup> probably because it flowed into the Indus, and thus fed or nourished that river. Its praises are duly hymned in the Rig-Veda as the mightiest of rivers, the beautiful goddess, the protecting deity, the bestower of food and riches "This Saraswatī, firm as a city made of iron, flows rapidly with all sustaining water, sweeping away in its might all other waters, as a charioteer clears the road: Saraswatī, chief and parent of rivers, flowing from the mountains to the ocean. . . . May the auspicious and gracious Saraswatī hear our praises

Vedic geo-  
graphy of the  
country on the  
Saraswatī.

<sup>4</sup> Manu n. 17. It will be seen hereafter that the geography of Manu must be referred to a time when the Aryans had conquered the whole of Hindūstan; and that even in his time the area of Brahmanism was by no means co-extensive with the area occupied by the Aryans.

<sup>5</sup> Rig-Veda, Mand. vi. Hymn 36, v. 6.

at this sacrifice, approached as she is with reverence and with bended knees: We present to thee, Saraswati, these oblations with reverence; be gratified by our praise; and may we ever recline upon thee, as upon a sheltering tree.”<sup>7</sup> These mantras evidently belong to a period anterior to Brahmanism. They are the expression of men who personified their river as a female deity, and poured out their souls in a fetichic worship, combining poetical sentiment with self-interested devotion. But they are not the expressions of men under Brahmanical influences, for they contain no allusion whatever to such essentials in Brahmanical ideas as the doctrine of merits and demerits, of sacrifices and penances as associated with the conception of sin, the transmigrations of the soul, and the future states of punishment and reward.<sup>8</sup>

Manu's geographical notices of Brahmāvarta and Brahmārshi-desa are altogether of a different character.<sup>9</sup> Instead of indicating what would appear

<sup>7</sup> Ib. Hymn 9a

<sup>8</sup> The following translation of the texts in Manu will be found useful for reference. Besides Brahmāvarta and Brahmārshi-desa it will be found to refer to two other regions, namely, Malhya-desa, or the Middle region, and Aryāvarta, or the Aryan pale, which will be noticed hereafter.

I.—BRAHMĀVARTA.—“The space between the two divine rivers, the Saraswati and the Drishidvati,—that God created tract they call the Brahmāvarta. The custom prevalent in that tract, received from successive tradition, concerning the castes and the mixed castes is called the good custom.”

II.—BRAHMĀRSHI-DESA.—“Kurukshetra the Matsyas the Panchālas and the Surasenas. This land which comes to Brahmāvarta, is the land of Brahmārshis (Brahmārshi-desa or the land of divine sages). From a Brahman born in that district let all the men on the earth learn their several duties.”

III.—MAHYA-DESA.—“The tract between the Himālaya and Vindhya to the east of Vināsana, and to the west of Prayaga, is called the central region (Madhya-desa).”

IV.—ARYĀVARTA.—“The space between those two mountain ranges to the eastern and the western sea, the wise know as Aryāvarta (or the land of the Aryans).”

“Where the black antelope naturally grazes is to be held as the proper land for offering sacrifices, all else is Mlechchha land. Let the twice born carefully keep within these countries, but a Śūdra distressed for subsistence, may dwell

to be an important line of Aryan settlements westward of the Saraswatī, Manu simply defines a contracted little colony between the upper course of the Saraswatī, now called the Sersooty, and a tributary of the same river, named the Drishadwatī, but now known as the Cagar.<sup>3</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

But the texts of Manu quoted below contain two highly significant statements, which not only throw still further light upon the all-important distinction between Brahāvarta and Brahārshi-desā, but also seem to point to the origin of caste as well as to that of Brahmanism. Speaking of the tract on the Saraswatī, Manu says—"The custom prevalent in that tract, received from successive tradition, concerning the castes and mixed castes, is called the good custom." This remark seems to imply that the caste system originated in the Aryan colony, probably from the relations which subsisted between the conquerors and conquered. Again, speaking of Brahārshi-desā, he says:—"From a Brahman born in that district let all the men in the earth learn their several duties." This remark would seem to imply that Brahārshi-desā was the mother country of the Brāhmins. Thus two important inferences may be drawn:—

Origin of the  
caste system in  
Saraswatī

Origin of Brah-  
manism in Brah-  
ārshi-desā.

First, that the caste system originated in the country to the westward of the river Saraswatī

anywhere.' Professor Cowell's translation of Manu, ii. 17-24, in Elphinstone's History of India, fifth edition, p. 220.

<sup>3</sup> Manu's misconception as regards the Aryan settlement in Vedic times seems to have led to some misrepresentation on modern maps. The name of Sersooty, as a corruption of Saraswatī has been restricted to the upper course of the river before its junction with the Cagar, and the Saraswatī has thus been converted from a main stream into a tributary. On the other hand the name of the Cagar has been extended over the whole course of the Saraswatī to the spot where it disappears in the sand.

Aryans, extended from sea to sea<sup>11</sup> Thus in the time of the Rig-Veda the Aryans had advanced only to the "seventh-stream" or Saraswatī; whilst in the time of Manu they had spread throughout Hindūstan. It may also be added that the Institutes of Manu were composed prior to any conquest of the Dēkhan, for Manu expressly forbids any men of the three twice-born castes from dwelling in any other country than Aryāvarta.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

But there is another and still more significant point in the geography of Manu which must not be overlooked. In his reference to the most ancient period, which has been here termed the Vedic age, the area of the Aryans is a very small tract in comparison with the area of the Brāhmans. But it will be seen in his description of the Brahmanical period, in which he himself flourished, that the Aryan pale was a far more extensive area than the Brāhman pale. The country of the Brāhmans only extended from the Saraswatī to the Ganges; but the country of Aryāvarta extended over the whole of Hindūstan. In other words, the advancing tide of Aryans had poured through Brahmārshi-desa, and had doubtless carried with them much of the Brahmanical faith and ritual; although the orthodoxy and morals of a gallant race of heroes who had conquered Hindūstan, must have appeared dubious in the eyes of a true Brāhman. They drove war chariots, tamed

Restricted area  
of the Brāh-  
mans compared  
with the exten-  
sive area of the  
Aryans in the  
time of Manu.

<sup>11</sup> There is some vagueness in the expression from sea to sea, inasmuch as the latitude of both Brahmavarta and Brahmārshi on one side, and of Bengal on the other, lies far to the northward of the sea coast. But we must not expect much geographical precision from Manu as regards latitude. It is, however, still a question whether Bengal is to be included in Aryāvarta, or whether we may assume that in ancient times the Bay extended sufficiently far to the northwards to form an eastern boundary.

Secondly, that Brahmanism originated in the country to the eastward of the river Saraswatí, that is, in the region between the Saraswatí and the Jumná<sup>10</sup>

process of  
vanu was in  
and conquest of  
Hindustan be-  
fore the time of  
Manu.

The curtain of Indian history thus rises upon two distinct regions, occupying opposite banks of the river Saraswatí, namely, Brahmávarṭa, or the land of Devatas, and Brahmārṣi-deśa, or the land of Bráhmans. But Manu describes two other regions, namely, Madhya-deśa, or the Middle region, and Aryávarṭa, or the Aryan pale. The geographical data in connection with this mapping out of Hindustan are of considerable importance, inasmuch as they furnish a further illustration of the chronological interval between the hymns of the Ríg-Veda and the laws of Manu; between the flowing of the Saraswatí into the Indus and the disappearance of the Saraswatí in the sand. The Middle region extended from the disappearance of the Saraswatí to the junction of the Ganges and Jumná at Alláhábád; but Aryávarṭa, or the land of

<sup>10</sup> The country which Manu terms Brahmārṣi appears to have extended over the valleys of the Ganges and Jumná from the neighbourhood of Delhi and Hattampur to the neighbourhood of Kanauj, an ancient city of great renown, which was situated on the Ganges about sixty-five miles to the westward of Lucknow. The localities indicated in the texts of Manu already quoted, may be identified as follows.—The plain of Kurukṣetra must have been situated in the neighbourhood of the settlements of the Kauravas and Pandavas, at Hattampur and Delhi. The country of Matsya is dubious, but may have been the modern Jeypur. The identifications of Panchála with Kanva-kutya or Kanauj, and of Surasena with Mathura, rest on the authority of Kulluka, the commentator of Manu, and may have been connected with the worship of Krishna, Kanva-kutya being the name of the humpbacked woman who was loved by Krishna, and Surasena being the Chieftain of the Yadavas at Mathura, and the reputed grandfather of Krishna. It has already been observed what the Raj of Panchála, possessed by Raja Drupada, really extended as far as Kanauj, but this by no means militates against Kulluka's representation of the extent of Brahmārṣi, the land of the Bráhmaṇa Rishis. See *etc.*, Vol. I. *passim*.



Aryans, extended from sea to sea <sup>11</sup> Thus in the time of the Rig-Veda the Aryans had advanced only to the "seventh-stream" or Saraswatī; whilst in the time of Manu they had spread throughout Hindūstan. It may also be added that the Institutes of Manu were composed prior to any conquest of the Dekhan; for Manu expressly forbids any men of the three twice-born castes from dwelling in any other country than Aryāvarta.

Restricted area of the Brāhman compared with the extensive area of the Aryans in the time of Manu.

But there is another and still more significant point in the geography of Manu which must not be overlooked. In his reference to the most ancient period, which has been here termed the Vedic age, the area of the Aryans is a very small tract in comparison with the area of the Brāhman. But it will be seen in his description of the Brāhmanical period, in which he himself flourished, that the Aryan pale was a far more extensive area than the Brāhman pale. The country of the Brāhman only extended from the Saraswatī to the Ganges; but the country of Aryāvarta extended over the whole of Hindūstan. In other words, the advancing tide of Aryans had poured through Brahmāshi-desā, and had doubtless carried with them much of the Brahmanical faith and ritual; although the orthodoxy and morals of a gallant race of heroes who had conquered Hindūstan, must have appeared dubious in the eyes of a true Brāhman. They drove war chariots, tamed

<sup>11</sup> There is some vagueness in the expression from sea to sea, inasmuch as the latitude of both Brahmavarta and Brahmāshi on one side, and of Bengal on the other, lies far to the northward of the sea coast. But we must not expect much geographical precision from Manu as regards latitude. It is, however, still a question whether Bengal is to be included in Aryāvarta, or whether we may assume that in ancient times the Bay extended sufficiently far to the northwards to form an eastern boundary.

wild hoises, and were proficient in the use of the bow and battle axe, and so far their services were valuable as protecting the Bráhmans, Vaisyas, and Súdrias,—the priests, merchants, and cultivators,—against the barbarous aborigines. But they were addicted to wine, gambling, and flesh meat, which were one and all an abomination to the Bráhman. Moreover, they seem to have been often led away by their love of beautiful women to contract unions with the fair maidens of the newly conquered territory, which were contrary to all Brahmanical rule. Therefore Manu promulgated his code for their edification, and especially directed that all men should learn their duties from those Bráhmans only who were born in Brahmarshi desa, or within the Bráhman pale.

## CHAPTER III.

### RISHIS AND BRÁHMANS.

THE distinction between the Vedic age and Brahmanic age has now been fully indicated, and will be further illustrated hereafter. The point to be established in the present chapter is the distinction between the Rishis, who composed the hymns of the Rig-Veda in the land of the seven rivers, and the Bráhmans of a later period, who performed sacrifices, and promulgated their complex code of rites and observances in the western quarter of Hindústân. In other words, between the joyous psalmists who poured out their souls in earnest and vigorous prayers to the Vedic deities for the material blessings of this world; and the gloomy race of priests, who promulgated the doctrines of religious austerities and future transmigration with especial reference to the life which is to come.

The composers of the hymns of the Rig-Veda appear to have had little faith in a life hereafter, in the immortality of the soul, or in a future state of rewards and punishments, beyond a vague conception of Yama as a god or judge of the dead. The Vedic Aryans also had some crude ideas, connected with the propitiation of the Pitris, or ghosts of deceased ancestors, with food and water; but this pro-

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

---

Distinction between the Vedic psalmists and Bráhman priests

Vedic religion restricted generally to the present life

pitiation seems to have been only an expression of affectionate remembrance, and to have been scarcely connected with religious ideas. In a few of the hymns, which appear to be of comparatively later origin, ideas of a spiritual life after death may have found expression; but such lofty aspirations are not to be found in the compositions of the more popular and genial psalmists. On the contrary, the Vedic bards were endowed with a large capacity for worldly enjoyment, and a healthy and human appreciation of material good; and their hymns in general are the early expressions of a child-like belief in the individual existence of superior and spiritual beings in the elements, which could work either good or evil. The sun could ripen the harvest or burn it up; the rain could nourish the crops or destroy them; the wind could blow in gentle zephyrs or rush along the earth in hurricanes. The necessity for propitiating such beings was therefore obvious. Accordingly the Vedic bard personified them into deities, and gratified them with offerings of strong drink and choice viands, and hymned them with praises as they were accustomed to hymn their own warriors and Rajas. Thus having feasted the gods and lauded them, the worshipper naturally expected in return such blessings as the gods had to bestow. Besides however the elementary deities, a host of other spiritual existences were personified into gods at the mere fancy of the imaginative bard. Heaven and earth, rivers, weapons, food, soma wine, the dawn, the sacrifice itself, and the priest who offered it, were alike invested with a spiritual life and converted into deities. The chief gods of all however were Indra and Agni, whose attributes have already

been described; Indra as the type of sovereignty and conquest, the giver of rain, and sometimes the creator of the rivers and mountains; and Agni, as light or fire in all its varied manifestations, as the creative or vivifying spirit which animated the entire universe like a Supreme Soul.

General character  
of the Vedic  
ceremonial

It is perhaps difficult in a philosophic age to sympathize in the deep religious fervour with which the Aryan psalmists invoked such deities as those which have been described. But the natural selfishness which lies at the root of such religious enthusiasm, sufficiently explains the cause of the vitality of their devotion. So long as the people believed that material blessings were to be obtained by offerings of food and wine, and hymns of praise and prayer, so long they would continue to prepare the feast for the gods, and pour forth their souls in passionate laudation and supplication. The nature of the Vedic worship would also be specially acceptable to a convivial community; for its rites would be associated with every joyous gathering, if not with every family meal; and it would naturally be popular so long as the community believed that they could procure plenteous harvests, prolific cattle, abundance of sons, health, vigour, and long life, by the simple process of feasting and singing in the presence of their kind-hearted and generous deities.

Popularity and  
power of the  
Vedic psalmists

At the same time the genius of the bard would be stimulated to a pitch never reached by the poet of a more enlightened and incredulous age. Riches, fame, and glory would be the reward of that Rishi, who personified a new deity or composed a new hymn, if his poetical flights only reached the ears of the god, and procured earthly blessings for the con-

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART VDaughters of  
Isa as bestowed  
in marriage  
upon RishisWhile interval  
between Vedic  
and Brahmanical  
ideas.Vedic bards re-  
ferred to the He-  
brew psalmists

gregation of worshippers. Sometimes a fair daughter was given in marriage to a young and successful bard. Thus the legend has already been related of the Raja of Anga, who gave his daughter in marriage to a young Rishi, who brought down the rain after a long-continued drought<sup>1</sup>. In like manner a legend has been preserved in the hymns of the Rig-Veda of another Raja, dwelling on the banks of the Sindhu or Indus, who gave ten daughters in marriage to a young psalmist named Kakshivat, together with rich dowries of cows, horses, and chariots<sup>2</sup>.

It thus seems impossible to identify these ancient Vedic bards or Rishis with the more modern Bráhma-man priests. The hymns contain many references to priests or cooks, and some isolated allusions to Bráhmans; but the god Brahma scarcely ever appears to have been recognized or worshipped. Again, while some of the hymns comprise speculations about the soul, the relative priority of earth and heaven, and the creation of the universe, which is ascribed to Indra or Agni, there is no expression of Brahmanical ideas, and no reference to the creation of the universe by Brahmá. Judging therefore from the analogy furnished by Hebrew history, the hymns might be referred to a class of minstrels of whom King David was a type, rather than to a sacerdotal class. But there is an opposition in the

<sup>1</sup> See ante Part IV. chap. ii.

<sup>2</sup> Rig Veda, Mand. I. Hymn 126. There are several legends of a later date of Rajas giving their daughters in marriage to Bráhmans who are identified with the Rishis, but the stories appear to have passed through a Brahmanical crucible, for the Bráhmans in such cases appear as corrupt old Bráhmans rather than as youthful sages. Notwithstanding all the efforts of the European authors to represent the young wives as loving and faithful under such circumstances, the idea is neither agreeable to poetical sentiment, nor to human nature, which finds a healthier expression in such balls as "Aunt Robin Gray".

hymns of the Rig-Veda between a peaceful community and a warlike community which might possibly indicate an opposition between the ancestors of the men who afterwards became Bráhmans and the ancestors of the men who afterwards became Kshatriyas. Such an opposition must be referred to a period long before the Aryans had crossed the Saraswatí, and entered Brahmárshi-desá; and consequently long before the names of Bráhmaṇ and Kshatriya had been applied to the priest and warrior castes. It has already been seen<sup>3</sup> that the majority of the hymns of the Rig-Veda are the expression of a peaceful community, who offered simple oblations of butter and milk to the deities of the elements, and other personified abstractions; and this class of priestly worshippers has been identified with the ancestors of the later Bráhmans. In like manner it has been seen that there are other hymns which appear to be the expression of a warlike class of the community; for they are connected with flesh sacrifices to Indra; and accordingly this class of worshippers has been identified with the ancestors of the later Kshatriyas. Traces are also to be found in these ancient hymns of an opposition between the worship of the Maruts, or winds, by a peaceful community, and the worship of Indra, as a hero, by a warlike community.<sup>4</sup> In one hymn Indra is represented as expostulating with the Maruts in the following language —“Where, Maruts, has that food been assigned to you, which was appropriated to me alone for the destruction of Ahi? For I indeed am fierce, and strong, and mighty, and have bowed

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Opposition in the Vedic hymns between a peaceful community and a warlike community

Opposition between the worship of the Maruts and the worship of Indra.

<sup>3</sup> See *ante*, Vol. I Introduction

<sup>4</sup> See Wilson's Rig Veda, vol. II pp. 115—162

down all my enemies with death-dealing shafts"<sup>6</sup> Again, Agastya the sage, who appears to have especially upheld the worship of the Maruts, expostulates with Indra thus:—"Why, Indra, dost thou purpose to slay us? The Maruts are thy brethren! Share with them in peace; destroy us not in enmity."<sup>6</sup> In another hymn a worshipper thus expresses to the Maruts his alarm at the jealousy of Indra—"Maruts, through fear of that violent Indra, I fly trembling; the oblations that had been prepared for you have been put away; nevertheless have patience with us"<sup>7</sup> Indeed some of the hymns which are addressed to Indra are wholly of a warlike and triumphant character, like the song of Miriam, or the Song of Barak and Deborah, and can scarcely be identified as belonging to a devotional psalmody. The potent god, the showerer of benefits, is invoked as the destroyer of the cities of the Dasyus, the conqueror of Sambara, the slayer of the black-skinned barbarians who gave him no libations, and who molested the white-complexioned Aryans, that were his friends and worshippers.

Further clue to the opposition between Rishis and Brāhmins, furnished by the distinction between Rājashis, Devarashis, and Brahmarshis.

A further clue to the distinction between Rishis and Brāhmins seems to be furnished by the distinction laid down in the Purānas between Rājashis, or king Rishis; Devarashis, or god Rishis; and Brahmarshis, or Brāhman sages. The king Rishis were probably Kshatriyas, who have always been designated Rajas. The god Rishis, termed Devarashis, or Rishis of the Devatas, were probably Rishis of the

<sup>6</sup> Rig Veda, Mand I Hymn 145, v 6. \* Ahis is another name for Vṛta, who is sometimes treated as a personification of the rain cloud, and sometimes as a Dasyu or warrior amongst the aborigines.

<sup>6</sup> Ib Hymn 170, v. 2.

<sup>7</sup> Ib Hymn 171, v 4



peaceful community, or rather of the Aryan race in general, who are often alluded to as Devatas, or gods. Finally, the term Bráhmārshis was apparently applied to the early Bráhman sages; and hence their country was distinguished from the Aryan country, or the land of Devatas, by the term Bráhmārshí-desá.<sup>1</sup>

First appear-  
ance of the  
Bráhmāras  
mercenaries  
and priests.

The advent of the Bráhmanas, and the establishment of their ascendancy as a great spiritual hierarchy, must have been the work of generations if not of centuries. Traces, however, are not wanting of the circumstances under which they rose. They first appeared among the Aryan community as mercenary priests, or sacrificers, who were prepared to officiate at the great festivals or sacrificial sessions for the sake of hire. Here it should be remarked that in the Vedic period the Kshatriyas were their own priests; the term priest being employed to indicate the performers of sacred rites, as distinct from the Rishis or composers of sacred songs. In other words, the Chiefs of a family, a tribe, or a Raj, appear occasionally as performers of a sacrifice, and even as celebrating the rites of marriage. Thus at the famous Aswamedha of Raja Yudhishthira, the horse was not sacrificed by a Bráhman, but by Bhishma, the second Pándava; whilst the marriage rites of Nala and Damayanti were performed by the Raja of Vidarbha, and those of Ráma and Sítá by the Raja of Mithila. Subsequently the Bráhmanas were apparently hired by Rajas to perform the laborious ceremonies at the great sacrifices; and in this capacity they were regarded with disdain by

The Kshatriyas  
were in their  
own power.

Subsequently  
the hiring of Bráh-  
manas.

<sup>1</sup> Compare Vishnu Purána, book iv. chap. 3.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

---

the Kshatriyas. Thus the Kshatriyas at the Swamyamvara of Draupadī expressed hot indignation that a Brāhman should have presumed to compete for the hand of the daughter of a Kshatriya; and Drupada and his son were much troubled at seeing Draupadī led away by Arjuna, who was disguised as a Brāhman. This implied inferiority of the Brāhman to the Kshatriya is the more extraordinary from the contrast which it furnishes to later myths of a Brahmanical origin, in which Rajas are represented as bestowing their own daughters in marriage upon Brāhmans.

Ascendancy of  
the Brāhmans  
secured by  
asceticism.

The weapon by which the ancient Brāhmans appear to have established their ascendancy was that of asceticism. A religious enthusiast or fanatic, who leads a life of abstinence and mortification, and voluntarily subjects himself to privations and sufferings for the ostensible object of subduing his appetites and instincts, and elevating himself to the level of divine beings, will naturally excite the ridicule of an epicurean hierarchy, but he will also be regarded with veneration and superstitious awe by the wondering masses. Amongst a people like the Vedic Aryans, who were imbued with a strong and healthy appreciation of the material enjoyments of human life, the rise of such a sect of ascetics, with their wearisome ceremonial and ostentatious austerities,

as it was addressed to weapons and armour considered as deities, the worshippers are represented as saying:—"May the Bráhmans, presenters of Soma, protect us" Here the Bráhmans appear as priests presenting the Soma to the sacrificial fire, as distinguished from the Rishi, or composer of the hymn, which is addressed to the Bráhmans. Moreover, the protection of the Bráhmans is invoked by the worshippers, apparently from a belief in their supernatural powers. Another hymn appears as an expression of sarcasm. Under the guise of a panegyric upon the frogs, it is in reality a satire upon the Bráhmans, their penances and elaborate rites; and it is somewhat remarkable that the hymn should be ascribed to a famous Rishi named Vasishtha, who has always been represented in the Epics and Puránas as a true Bráhman. The whole hymn has been exquisitely translated by Professor Max Muller, and will be duly appreciated by those who have heard the demonstrative croaking of the Indian frogs on the approach of the rainy season. The following extracts will sufficiently indicate its character:—"After lying prostrate for a year, like Bráhmans performing a vow, the frogs have emitted then voice, roused by the showers of heaven. When the heavenly waters fall upon them as upon a dry fish lying in a pond, the music of the frogs comes together, like the lowing of the cows with their calves . . . Like Bráhmans at the Soma sacrifice of Atirata, sitting round a full pond and talking, you, O frogs, celebrate this day of the year when the rainy season begins." Another hymn translated by

Vedic sarcasms  
levelled at the  
Bráhmans

Bráhmans com-  
pared with frogs

\* Max Muller's *History of Sanskrit Literature*, p. 494. "It is curious," says this eminent scholar, "to observe that the same animal should have been chosen

Professor H. H. Wilson is more obscure, but seems to partake of the same satirical character.<sup>10</sup>

The results which may be drawn from the foregoing data appear to establish the conclusion, that in the old Vedic period there was a peaceful community and a warlike community; and that the former were inclined to the worship of the Maruts, whilst the latter were inclined to the worship of Indra. It accordingly follows that there were two classes of Rishis, who may be respectively referred to the same communities; namely, the domestic or family bards, who prayed for health and prosperity; and the warrior psalmists, who chaunted triumphant war songs in honour of the victorious Indra. The opposition, however, between these two is only imperfectly indicated in the Vedic hymns; and it is difficult to say how far it may have originated the opposition between the Bráhmān and the Kshatriya. But the opposition of the Bráhmāns to the Kshatriyas finds full expression in the Vedic period. The penances of the Bráhmāns were likened to the croaking of frogs by the Vedic Rishi Vasishtha; whilst the Bráhmāns themselves were held in contempt as mercenary sacrificers by the ancient Rajas.

---

by the Vedic satirists to represent the priests (Bráhmāns), which was selected by the earliest satirist of Greece as the representative of the Homeric heroes."

<sup>10</sup> Rig-Veda, Mand I Hymn 179 This hymn contains a dialogue between Agastya and his wife, in which the latter seems to complain that her husband has neglected her in order to perform penance, contrary to the custom of the ancient Rishis. It has already been seen that Agastya appears in the Rig-Veda as the representative of the peaceful community, who worshipped the Maruts in opposition to Indra •

## CHAPTER IV.

### VEDIC AND BRAHMANIC CONCEPTIONS OF MANU

BEFORE proceeding to indicate the further distinction between the Vedic and Brahmanic ages, it will be necessary to distinguish between the Vedic conception of Manu as the first man, and the Brahmanic conception of Manu as the divine lawgiver

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Manu identified  
as the first man  
and divine law  
giver

The conception of Manu as the first man, the father of the Vedic Aryans, if not of the whole human race, finds sufficient expression in the hymns of the Rig-Veda<sup>1</sup> Subsequently, in the Brahmanic period he is said to have been warned by a fish to build a ship, in which he ultimately escaped from a great flood; a legend which bears a curious resemblance to the Mosaic tradition of Noah and the deluge<sup>2</sup> From these circumstances the famous Brahmanical code has been ascribed to Manu, and is still known as the Institutes of Manu. This association of the name of the Vedic Manu with the Brahmanical code may have arisen from the desire to assert the remote antiquity and divine authority

Vedic concep-  
tion of Manu as  
the first man

Brahmanic con-  
ception of Manu  
as the divine  
lawgiver

<sup>1</sup> Rig Veda, Mand. I Hymn 45 v 1 Ib Hymn 30, v 16

<sup>2</sup> A translation of the legend as it is related in the Satapatha Brâhmana, is given by Professor Max Muller in his History of Sanskrit Literature, p 490 Another version has been preserved in the Mahâ Bhârata, in which Manu is said to have taken seeds of grain and vegetables into his ark, just as Noah is said to have taken pairs of animals

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

---

of Brahmanical law, but it may also have been deemed expedient to recommend that law to the worshippers of the Vedic deities, by referring its origin to the time honoured progenitor of the Vedic Aryans

Laws of Manu a  
compromise be-  
tween Vedic and  
Brahmanic  
ideas

The connection of the Vedic Manu with the Brahmanical law is accompanied by another significant fact, which has already been indicated. The so called "Institutes of Manu" are the expression of an important compromise in the religious history of the Hindus, being, in fact, a compromise between the worship of the Vedic deities and the worship of the god Brîhma, between whom an opposition amounting almost to an antagonism seems at one time to have prevailed. The compilers of the code have certainly spared no pains to uphold the worship of the god Brîhma above that of the Vedic deities, but at the same time they have found it necessary to recognize Vedic rites and institutions to an extent which imparts a two fold character to a large portion of the code, one referring to the Vedic period, and the other to the Brahmanic period. At the same time, however, the compromise has evidently been carried out by Brîhmans, who have done their best, as in the Mahâ Bhârata and Ramâyana, to Brahmanize every Vedic tradition.

Historical sig-  
nificance of the  
compromise.

Conflicting cha-  
racter of Manu's  
authorities.

The main object of the present chapter is to show that the opposition involved in this compromise, originated in the conflicting character of the authorities from which the so called laws of Manu have been derived, and in order to carry out this object effectually, it will be necessary to indicate with sufficient clearness the character and scope of those authorities. Upon this point the compilers of

the code have been most explicit There are, it is said, four roots of the law, namely —

1st, The whole Veda

2nd, The ordinances and practices of such as understand the Veda

3rd, The immemorial customs of good men.

4th, The approval of conscience in matters which are indifferent <sup>3</sup>

The first question for consideration in connection with the foregoing data, relates to the meaning which is to be attached to the term "Veda" as employed in the code of Manu In reality there are four Vedas, corresponding to the four heads or faces of the god Brahma, who is popularly regarded as the divine author of the Vedas But hitherto reference has only been made to the Rig-Veda, which is, however, the most ancient and important of the whole; and, indeed, the remaining three Vedas mainly depend upon the Rig-Veda, and may be regarded as Brahmanized versions of it, with later additions of a Brahmanical character <sup>4</sup>

<sup>3</sup> Manu, ii 6

<sup>4</sup> The character of the four Vedas may be thus indicated —

1st, The Rig Veda which is the oldest, consists of metrical hymns addressed to different deities in the language of praise or laudation

2nd, The Yajur Veda, which chiefly consists of nearly the same hymns in prose, taking the form of prayers, and being in fact a collection of liturgical formulae especially relating to oblation and sacrifice

3rd, The Sama Veda which consists of a recast, or re arrangement, of very nearly the same hymns for the purpose of chanting

4th The Athirva Veda, which differing in some respects from the foregoing consists of prayers, which are either employed at lustrations, or at rites intended to conciliate the deities, or as imprecations upon enemies It comprises, however, many of the hymns of the Rig Veda

The foregoing description of the four Vedas refers only to what is called the Mantra portion, consisting of hymns, prayers, and chants But there is another and a later portion known as the Brahmananam, which is also included under the term 'Veda,' and which is sufficiently described in the text Colebrooke's *Essays on the Veda* Wilson's *Introduction to the Rig Veda*

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

The Mantras  
and Brāhmanas.

Again, each of the four Vedas is divided into two portions, namely:—

1st, Mantras, or hymns and prayers, which appear to be the spontaneous outpourings of the devotions of a primitive people.

2nd, Brāhmanas, or formal rituals, in which hymns, prayers, sacrificial rites, and other mystic ceremonies, follow each other in established order; but they also include much explanatory matter of a mythical or theological character.

The Mantras of the Rig-Veda referred to the Vedic age and the Brāhmanas to the Brahmanic age

Hitherto reference has only been made to the Mantia portion of the Rig-Veda; inasmuch as the Brāhmana of that Veda does not appear to yield any results which can be regarded as historical.<sup>5</sup> The distinction however between an age of spontaneous devotion, and one of formal ritualism, is one of considerable historical significance, as the former seems

<sup>5</sup> Some account of the Brāhmana of each Veda is to be found in Col. Gropius's *Essays* and Wilson's *Introduction to the Rig-Veda*, Vol. II. The most interesting and important is the Brāhmana of the Rig Veda known as the *Āitareya Brāhmana*. The text of this Brāhmana, together with an English translation, has been recently furnished by Dr Haug of Bombay. It furnishes valuable illustrations of what may be called the sacrificial phase of Brahmanism, which has long been dying out in India, and which indeed has already died out in many provinces under British rule, but it cannot be said to yield any results which can be rendered available for purely historical purposes. The following data, however, which are given on the authority of the learned translator, are worthy of notice.

The term Mantra, i. e. "the produce of thinking" is of a very early date, for it is to be found in the Zend Avesta in the form of *Manthra*. Its meaning there is that of a sacred prayer or formula, to which a magical effect was ascribed, just in the same manner that a similar effect was ascribed to the Vedic mantras. The Brāhmanam however is a later production, referring to the Mantra and based upon the Mantra, and indeed without the Mantra it would have no meaning; nay, its very existence would be impossible. It contains speculations on the meaning of the Mantras, gives precepts for their application, relates stories of their origin in connection with that of sacrificial rites, and explains the secret meaning of the latter. It is in short a kind of primitive theology and philosophy of the Brahman. The name Brāhmanam is altogether unknown to the Zend Avesta, and therefore must have originated after the migration of the Vedic Aryans from Central Asia, and probably after the advent of the Vedic Aryans in Hindūstan. Haug's *Āitareya Brāhmanam*, vol. 1. *Introduction*.



to refer to the Vedic age and the latter to the Brahmanic age. The term Veda, as employed in Manu, thus seems to have generally included the whole of the Mantras and Bráhmaṇas of all the four Vedas; although three Vedas only are actually mentioned by Manu.<sup>6</sup> The term Bráhmaṇa, however, is sometimes employed in a larger sense, and comprises a still later class of writings, which contain much metaphysical and mystical speculation respecting the Supreme Soul and the creation of the universe. These writings are termed Aryanyakas and Upanishads, and are apparently included in the term Veda as employed by Manu; inasmuch as it will be seen hereafter that the Hindú lawgiver has borrowed some of the ideas which they convey in his account of the creation of the universe by Brahjá.

Aryanyakas and Upanishads included under the term Bráhmaṇas

Besides the Veda thus defined, Manu indicates three other roots of law. He speaks of the ordinances and practices of those who understand the Veda; and by this expression he either refers to the Bráhmaṇas, or dicta of Bráhmans, already described; or to the more ancient commentators upon the Vedas, the fathers of the Brahmanical religion, who might be supposed to interpret the more simple hymns of the Rig-Veda according to their own peculiar dogmas, and impart to the child-like ceremonial of the Vedic Aryans a mystic meaning never contemplated by the primitive Rishis on the banks of the Saraswatí. He also speaks of the immemorial customs of good men; under which head he appears to include the usages of different countries, tribes,

Three other roots of law

Later ordinances

Immemorial customs

<sup>6</sup> Manu mentions the Rig Veda, which is held sacred to the gods, the Yajur Veda, which relates to mankind, and the Sáma Veda, which concerns the spirits of ancestors. Manu iv 124

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Things indifferent  
approved by  
conscience.

Spirit of tolera-  
tion.

and families. To these he adds those acts, which refer to things indifferent, and which have received the approval of conscience. In this description of three roots of the law in addition to the Veda, may be found the full expression of that spirit of toleration and compromise which accounts for the spread and success of Brahmanism. The Brahmins rarely attempted to ignore or denounce the traditions of any new people with whom they came in contact, but rather they converted such materials into vehicles for the promulgation of their peculiar tenet. In like manner they did not rashly attempt the suppression of immemorial customs, but they tolerated them, condemning them however when opposed to their own ideas of morality, and leaving time to do the rest. This course must have greatly assisted in the promulgation of a new and foreign faith, inasmuch as a people will frequently cling to its time honoured customs with a tenacity which is only increased by opposition, but which if left alone will gradually die out with the progress of enlightenment and refinement.<sup>7</sup>

Distinction be-  
tween Sruti or  
revelation and  
Smṛti or tradi-  
tion.

Another point which Manu notices in connection with his code, is the distinction between Sruti, or revelation, and Smṛti, or tradition, in other words, between the Veda which is regarded as a revelation, and what is called the whole body of the law, which is regarded as tradition.<sup>8</sup> This distinction may be of some importance as an illustration of the national belief in inspiration, and it may throw some light

<sup>7</sup> It will be seen hereafter that this tolerant spirit is fully illustrated by the laws of Manu as regards Gandharva and Pākṣha marriages, by which such marriages were permitted to the Kshatriyas but still were condemned by the Hindu law.

<sup>8</sup> See

\* Manu i. 10

upon that era in the history of Sanskrit literature when inspiration was supposed to end and tradition to begin; but at present the question is somewhat obscure, and moreover furnishes no clue to the ancient condition of the people at large.<sup>6</sup> In connection with this subject Manu indulges in certain denunciations against those atheists who followed after heretical books, and threw contempt upon revelation and tradition, which appear to be of some historical significance, inasmuch as they were apparently directed against the Buddhists, who denied the authority of the Veda.<sup>6</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

---

But those de-  
nounced as  
atheists

But whilst the code of Manu is to be regarded as a compromise, it is emphatically the expression of Brahmanism, and the text book of the Bráhmans. It was the duty and privilege of every Bráhman to study it; and it was strictly enjoined that no one but a Bráhman should teach it to his pupils or disciples, and that no one but a member of the twice-born castes should be permitted to read it at all.<sup>7</sup> At the same time its authority was supreme, for it was regarded as a divine revelation from Manu, the son of Bráhmá

Manu, the text  
book of the  
Bráhmans

---

<sup>6</sup> The religious aspect of the question has been discussed by Professors Max Muller and Goldstücker, in Max Muller's "History of Sanskrit Literature," and Goldstücker's "Manu; and his place in Sanskrit Literature"

<sup>10</sup> Manu, ii. 11

<sup>7</sup> Manu, i. 103

## CHAPTER V.

### CREATION OF THE UNIVERSE BY MANU AND BRAHMÁ.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

Obscurity of the  
Vedic idea of the  
origin of the  
universe.

Indra and Agni  
regarded as  
creators of the  
earth.

THE Vedic idea of the creation of the universe, and the origin of the human race, seems to have been confused and obscure. Speculations on such subjects rarely belong to an age of primitive belief, when the first expression of philosophic inquiry would be satisfied with the simple dogmas that the earth was created by the gods, and that the traditional ancestor of the tribe was the first man. Sometimes in the exaggerated language of poetry the Vedic bards ascribed the creation of the earth to Indra, or Agni; but they appear to have had no definite idea of a universe of being, or of the creation of a universe. Their homes were in the Punjab, and the Punjab was their little world. Accordingly, the child-like credulity of the masses readily acquiesced in the pious vauntings of the Vedic bard, that the seven rivers of the Punjab were brought down from the Himálayas by the god Indra, the ancient warrior and leader of the Aryan invaders; whilst the more thoughtful and inquiring minds might have been occasionally lost in that sea of metaphysical speculation, which ascribed the origin of life and being to the god Agni, or, in other words, to the element of fire in all its various forms and manifestations. The

Vedic Aryans, however, appear to have arrived at some conception of the first man, who was known in the familiar phraseology of the hymns as father Manu; but even there Manu scarcely appears as a creator of the human race, but simply as the progenitor of men.<sup>1</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA,  
PART V

Conception of  
father Manu as  
the progenitor  
of men

There is, however, a Vedic hymn, known as the Purusha hymn, which is said to be a comparatively late composition, in which the gods and Rishis are supposed to offer up Purusha, or the Supreme Spirit, as a sacrifice, and to dismember him for the purpose of creating the earth out of his limbs.<sup>2</sup> This conception was apparently derived from an ancient myth, which also finds expression in the Scandinavian mythology; and it will be necessary to refer to it hereafter in connection with the origin of the four castes; but it can scarcely be regarded as a definite Vedic idea of the origin and creation of a universe of being.<sup>3</sup>

The Purusha  
hymn

The account of the creation which is given in the Brahmanical code is altogether of a different character from that which finds expression in the Vedic hymns. The age of Aryan conquest had been succeeded by an age of Brahmanical contemplation; and thus a theory of the origin of the universe was evolved out of the moral consciousness, which presents a curious combination of two opposite ideas, namely, the creative faculty of a Supreme

Cosmogony of  
the Brahmanic  
period

<sup>1</sup> Rig Veda, Mand I Hymn 80, v 16

<sup>2</sup> Muir's *Sanskrit texts*, vol 1 chap 1, sect 2

<sup>3</sup> When the sons of Bor had slain the giant Ymir they dragged his body into the middle of Gimungagap, and of it formed the earth. From Ymir's blood they made seas and waters, from his flesh the land, from his bones the mountains, and his teeth and jaws served to make the stones and pebbles. Prose Edda, Part 1 s 8, *Blackwell's Translation*

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART I

The Spirit moving  
in the waters

Spirit, and the ordinary operation of physiological laws The first idea bears a strong resemblance to the Mosiac cosmogony, and indicates four distinct stages in the creative process, viz —

1st, The universe existing in darkness, or chaos

2nd, The darkness dispelled by the light of the Supreme Spirit

3rd, The creation of the waters by the light of the Supreme Spirit

4th, The Supreme Spirit moving upon the waters

The birth of  
Brahmā in an  
egg a creation  
from the  
egg

The second idea resembles the Orphic cosmogony, and indicates five further stages in the creative process, viz —

1st, The productive seed placed in the waters by the Supreme Spirit, and expanding into the mundane egg

2nd, The birth of Brahmā in the egg

3rd, The division of the egg and formation of the heavens and the earth

4th, The creation of Mind and Consciousness, the three Moral qualities, the five Senses, and the great Elements

5th, The creation of Manu and the ten Manus, from whom all the created things were produced

Manu's account  
of the creation.

Manu's account of the creation is as follows —

The Supreme  
Spirit

*"In the beginning the universe only existed in darkness, upon which that Supreme Spirit, whom no man hath seen, whom no man can comprehend, and whom the mind alone can perceive, appeared with undiminished glory and dispelled the gloom And the Supreme Spirit created the waters by his will, and placed in them a productive seed And the seed became an egg as bright as gold and as luminous as the sun, and in that egg the Supreme Spirit was born in*

The egg

the form of Brahmá, the divine male, the great forefather of all spirits. And the waters are called Nárá, because they were the production of Nárá, or the Supreme Spirit; and as it was on the waters that the Supreme Spirit first moved, he is named Náráyana, or he whose place of moving was the waters. And Brahmá sat in that egg during a whole year; and then he caused the egg to divide itself, and from the egg he framed the heavens and the earth and the great waters. From the Supreme Spirit emanated Mind and Consciousness; and all vital forms endued with the three Moral qualities of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness; and the five Perceptions of Sense, and the five Organs of Sensation; from which also proceed the great Elements, and their several Properties. Then Brahmá divided himself, and became half male and half female, and from that female he produced Viráj. Know that I (Manu) am that person whom the male Viráj produced by himself; and I, Manu, am the framer of all things. I created ten Manus, or Lords of created beings, and they produced all beings, vegetable and animal. When Brahmá awakes the universe expands; but when he sleeps the universe passes away.”<sup>4</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Heaven and  
earth  
of physical  
existence

Viráj

Manu and the  
ten Manus.

It will now be seen that the first four stages in the cosmogony of Manu, namely, darkness, light, water, and the Spirit moving on the water, present a remarkable similarity to those which appear in the Mosaic account; excepting that Manu seems to represent the light as existing before the waters, whilst the Mosaic account seems to imply that the waters were created first and the light afterwards. But the conception of the Supreme Spirit moving in or on the waters, demands a passing

Cosmogony of  
Manu compared  
with that of  
Moses.

Contrast be-  
tween the Hin-  
dú idea of Brá-  
hma sleeping on  
the waters, and  
the Hebrew idea  
of vivifying  
wind

<sup>4</sup> Manu, i 1—69 The translations from Manu, both here and elsewhere throughout the present work, are generally given in a condensed form, so as to avoid the repetitions and verbiage which are to be found in the original. A considerable amount of useless matter has also been often excluded altogether, as utterly devoid of either significance or interest.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

inquiry, inasmuch as it exhibits a radical difference between the working of the minds of the Hebrew and Hindu. The Mosaic account of the creation is as follows —“The earth was without form and void, and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. And God said —‘Let there be light,’ and there was light”<sup>5</sup>. Here the term “Spirit” implies the breath of Deity, and the conception of the breath of life animating the waters can scarcely be said to run counter with an enlightened idea of creative force. But the Hindu conception is that of a Supreme Being reposing or sleeping upon the water, creating the universe in idea only. This idea furnishes a striking illustration of the dreamy character of the Hindu intellect, but is altogether opposed to that notion of the wakeful and all seeing energy of the Almighty, which is common to Hebrew and European thought. The conception of Brahmá sleeping upon the waters was naturally formed by a people, who consider rest and quietude beneath the shade of a tree, or by the side of still waters, to be the acme of bliss, and the proper sphere of devotional exercises. But an ardent and energetic race could no more imagine Deity to slumber than it could suppose the tides to stand still, or the monsoons to cease to blow.

Conception of  
the mundane  
egg

The next conception in the order of creation is that of a productive seed, which is placed in the waters and expands until it becomes a vast and luminous egg, in which Brahmá is born, and from which the heavens and earth are created. Thus



conception corresponds with the famous Orphic idea of a mundane egg, which appears to have been familiar to the Greeks.<sup>6</sup> In all probability it arose from a contemplation of the vault of heaven, which may be said to resemble the inside of the upper part of a vast egg; whilst the idea might be formed that the under part of the universe was arched over in a like fashion. It is, however, not impossible that the Hindú idea of the universe springing from an egg, may have had some connection with the conception of the Supreme Being as a primeval male which finds expression in the Purānas; but it may also have been associated with the worship of the Linga, or phallus, which apparently belongs to a period of remote antiquity.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Origin of the  
conception

Possible connection  
with the  
worship of the  
Linga.

The next stage in the cosmogony is of a metaphysical character, and has apparently been taken from the Sāṅkhya school of philosophy. It comprises the creation of Mind and Consciousness; the three Moral qualities; the perceptions of Sense and the Organs of Sensation; and the great Elements. This creation might perhaps be passed over in

Conception of a  
metaphysical  
creation

<sup>6</sup> See the Orphic fragment in the "Birds" of Aristophanes quoted in Cory's Fragments. The extract is as follows —

"First was Chaos and Night, and black Erebus and vast Tartarus,  
And there was neither Earth, nor Air, nor Heaven, but in the boundless  
bosom of Erebus  
Night, with her black wings, first produced an aerial egg,  
From which, at the completed time, sprang forth the lovely Eros,  
Glittering with golden wings upon his back, like the swift whirlwinds  
But embracing the dark-winged Chaos in the vast Tartarus,  
He begot our race (the birds) and first brought us to light  
The race of Immortals was not, till Eros mingled all things together  
But when the elements were mixed one with another, Heaven was produced,  
and Ocean,  
And Earth, and the imperishable race of all the blessed Gods."

In the Comedy the Birds deliver the cosmogony, and thus claim the priority of birth over the gods as well as men. Birds sometimes play a curious part in Hindu legend. See especially the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Valuable as it  
illustrative of  
Hindú thought

silence, as a bewildering jargon by which the later Bráhmans sought to account for the origin of existences, which could scarcely be ascribed to generative force.<sup>7</sup> Still it will be found of some value as illustrating the character and tone of the intellectual exercises of the later Bráhmans; and although perhaps it properly belongs to the period of Brahmanical revival, it may be desirable to furnish the following brief explanation, which is based upon the tedious disquisitions that appear in the later Puránas, and which may perhaps serve to throw a clearer light upon the obscure statement of Manu.<sup>8</sup>

Four heads

This metaphysical creation may be considered under four different heads, viz. :—

1st, The Mind or Consciousness.

2nd, The three Qualities—Goodness, Passion, and Darkness.

3rd, The Perceptions of Sense and Organs of Sensation.

4th, The Elements and their Properties.

1st Three Gunas or Qualities—  
Goodness,  
Passion,  
Darkness.

The three Qualities or Gunas, which are comprised under the second head, should perhaps be considered first, as they are to a large extent mixed up with all the other creations. The conceptions of these three Gunas are larger than the names would seem to imply. Thus Goodness includes purity,

<sup>7</sup> The myths respecting Chronos, Eros, Chaos, and other ancient personifications, would seem to militate against this view, but it is difficult to conceive how a sexual origin could be ascribed to moral qualities, or to the organs of sense. In the later sectarian writings, connected with the pantheistic worship of Krishna, such sensuous personifications certainly find a place, and the Brahma Vairavata Purána contains a myth in which Brahma is represented as begetting upon his wife Saritra the science of logic, the modes of music, days, years and ages, religious rites, seasons, time and death. But this Purána would seem to be many centuries later than Manu.

<sup>8</sup> Compare particularly the Vishnu Purána.

and is attended with happiness and productive of virtue. Passion, or foulness, implies the idea of activity, whilst it is attended with misery and productive of vice. Darkness includes the idea of dullness, illusion, and obstructiveness, and is productive of stolidity. These three Gunas hold an important place in the religious and philosophical ideas of a later age.

The creation of Mind or Consciousness now proceeds as follows. Matter becomes invested with the three Gunas in equilibrio, and is united with Spirit. From these Intellect is produced, and like them is invested with the three Gunas. From Intellect proceeds Egotism, or the principle of individual existence which appropriates perceptions. Intellect and Egotism may be regarded as identical with Mind and Consciousness.<sup>9</sup>

2nd, Mind and  
Consciousness

The creation of the Perceptions of Sense, the five Organs of Sense, and the great Elements, is even more obscure. Egotism being invested with the three Gunas becomes threefold, namely;—Egotism pure, from the quality of Goodness; Egotism passionate, from the quality of passion or activity; and Egotism elementary, or rudimentary, from the quality of darkness.

3rd Perceptions  
of sense and  
Organs of sensation.

1st,—Pure Egotism produced the ten divinities who preside over the five Organs of Sense, and their corresponding Perceptions or Actions.

Threefold Ego-  
tism

2nd,—Passionate Egotism produced the Organs of Sense and their corresponding Perceptions.

<sup>9</sup> English equivalents for the Sanskrit terms are employed in the text to prevent confusion, but for the convenience of reference it may be as well to notice them here. Matter is called *Pradhana*; and sometimes *Prakriti*, or Nature. Spirit is called *Purusha*. Intellect is *Mahat*. Egotism is *Ahankari*.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V4th Elements  
and their Properties.

3rd,—Rudimentary Egotism then produced the five Elements,—ether, wind, light, water, and earth; and their five Rudiments, or Properties,—sound, touch, colour, taste, and smell. In the first instance the rudiment of Sound was produced from Rudimentary Egotism, and then the remaining work of creation proceeded in the following order:—

Ether (1.) Ether was produced from Sound and engendered Touch; whence originated Wind, of which Touch is the property.

Wind (2.) Wind was produced from Touch and engendered Colour, or form; whence originated Light, of which Colour is the property.

Light (3.) Light, or fire, was produced from Colour and engendered Taste; whence originated water, including juices, of which Taste is the property.

Water. (4.) Water was produced from Taste and engendered Smell; whence originated Earth, of which Smell is the property

Earth (5.) Earth thus originated from Smell, and was invested with Smell as a property.<sup>10</sup>

Brahmá male and female. The next stage in the creation is the separation of Brahmá into male and female, and the production of Viráj, who thus appears to have become the progenitor of all created things. This myth scarcely calls for remark, but the one which immediately follows it, and which brings the whole narrative to a conclusion, demands consideration. Manu is introduced as being produced from Viráj by some creative process which is not distinctly indicated; and Manu then creates ten Manus, who appear in later myths

Introduction of  
Manu and the  
ten Rishis.

<sup>10</sup> Compare Manu, i 74—75. According to the Vishnu Purána the egg included all these Elements and Properties, together with the Mind and Consciousness, the three Qualities, and the five Organs and their Perceptions.

as Brāhman sages. It would seem however that the narrative of the creation was previously complete without the introduction of Virāj; for when Brahmā had become separated into male and female, the creation by generation might have followed as easily as the generation of mankind followed the creation of Adam and Eve in the Mosaic narrative. The creation of Manu and the ten Manus thus appears to have been a separate and independent cosmogony, which has been incorporated with a Brahmanic cosmogony. In other words, the code contains two accounts of the creation of the human race; one being a Vedic tradition of Manu, as a progenitor; and the other being a later and Brahmanic dogma of the creation of the universe by Brahmā.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>11</sup> It is difficult to say how far this legend of ten Manus and their ten reigns in succession, which are termed Manvantaras, finds expression in the Vedic hymns. Indeed the point has yet to be determined (See Wilson's *Rig-Veda*, Vol II. p 61 note). The names of the Manus are as follows —Marichi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Daksha, Vasishtha, Bhṛigu, and Nārada. Most of the names are to be found in the hymns of the Rig Veda, and all of them figure largely in those Brahmanical editions to the Epics to which attention has already been drawn. Marichi was the father of the famous Kasyapa, who appears in the Pāṇḍyana as the mythical progenitor of the Sun, and consequently as the Brahmanical ancestor of the Solar race of Ayodhyā. Atri appears in like manner in the Mahā Bhārata as the mythical progenitor of the Moon, and consequently as the Brahmanical ancestor of the Lunar race of Bhārata. Angiras is an ancient personification of the Vedic deity Agni in the person of a Brahman. Pulastya was the mythical grandfather of Itāvana, the Rākshasa Raja of Lanka. Pulaha, Kratu, and Daksha are more obscure personifications, but the latter is celebrated as the performer of a famous sacrifice, in which he appears as an opponent of the god Siva. Vasishtha appears prominently in the Rāmāyana as the priest of Mahārāja Daśaratha, and religious instructor of the hero Rāma. Bhṛigu is frequently introduced into the Mahā Bhārata for the purpose of delivering many Brahmanical discourses. Lastly, Nārada is found playing an important but equally mythical part in both Epics. He settled the delicate terms on which Draupadi was to live with her five husbands, he was present with other Rishis at the mythical Council of the Kurus which was summoned to receive Krishna, he was one of the three Rishis who pronounced the curse against the Yadava, which culminated in the massacre at Dhrakshya and destruction of Dwārakā, and he even appears in the beautiful episode of Nala and Damayanti, as carrying the news of the Swarnavara of Damayanti to the heaven of Indra.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

---

In another part of the code there is incorporated a still more obscure tradition of Manu under the name of Swáyambhuva, having six descendants who are also termed Manus (Manu i 61—63 ) The names of these seven Manus are Swáyambhuva, Swáróchisha, Uttama, Tamasa, Raivata, Khakshusha and Vaivaswata As Vivaswata is said to have been a child of the Sun, this account may be connected with some solar myth It is worthy of remark that this latter account forms the commencement of that part of the code in which Manu delegates the further recitation of the laws to his son Bhrigu. These lists are differently filled up in the later Purānas

## CHAPTER VI

### SACRED CHRONOLOGY.

THE account of the creation of the universe is followed in the Brahmanical code by a description of those extraordinary durations of time, by which the ancient sages boldly attempted to map out eternity; and which excited so much discussion in the last century from the marked contrast which they present to the more limited calculations which are based upon the so-called Mosaic chronology. This daring reckoning includes millions of years before the dawn of recorded history, and millions of years yet to come; and under such circumstances it might seem to possess some germs of truth from its approximation to those vast astronomical periods, which are indicated by the apparent infinity of the universe, and the revolutions of distant stars round mysterious centres. But in truth it is a mere arbitrary arrangement of figures; a play upon the relations of days, months, and years, multiplied by thousands of millions at the mere fancy of an arithmetical dreamer. Such a chronological scheme is of course childish and unmeaning; but yet it has exercised considerable influence upon the religious belief of the Hindús.

Manu's system of chronology may be separately considered under two different heads, as follows:—

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Bold attempt by  
the Brāhmins to  
map out  
eternity

A mere arbitrary  
arrangement  
of figures

Division of Yuga  
into a system of  
chronology

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

1st Calc on  
of days months  
and years

Sub div on of  
the Hindu day

Four different  
days

Day of mortals

1st, The calculation of days, months, and years  
2nd, The calculation of Yugas or Ages

The calculation of days months, and years all turns upon the systematic multiplication of the ordinary human notion of a day, that is, of a single revolution of the earth upon its own axis. The Hindu day thus corresponds to the European day, but its subdivisions are different. The Hindu hour or *muhurta* consists of forty eight minutes only, and thus there are thirty hours in the day instead of twenty four. The minimum of time is the twinkling of an eye. Eighteen twinklings of an eye make a moment, or *lakhṣa*, thirty moments make a *kali*, which consists of about a minute and a half, and thirty *kalis* make a *muhurta*, or hour. Thus there are about half a million of twinklings of the eye in every Hindu hour. The conceptions of days, months, and years are naturally formed from the revolution of the earth upon its axis, the revolution of the moon round the earth, and the path of the sun along the ecliptic. But four different kinds of days are specified in the code, and this arbitrary division seems to have been introduced for one significant purpose, namely, the exaltation of the god Brahma both over the Vedic deities, and over the *Pitris*,<sup>1</sup> or spirits of deceased ancestors, who were also worshipped by the Vedic Arians. These four days were as follows —

1st,—A day of Mortals, which is divided into day and night by the rising and the setting of the sun, the day being set apart for mortal action and the night for mortal slumber.

<sup>1</sup> The worship of the *Pitris* or ancestors is still firm and important element in the Hindu religion and will be found elucidated in chapter 15.



2nd,—A day of Pitris, which lasts for a lunar month; being divided into the bright fortnight which is called day, and the dark fortnight which is called night; the day beginning with the new moon, and the night with the full moon.<sup>2</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Day of Pitris, or  
mortal months

3rd,—A day of the Vedic gods, or Devatas, which lasts for a solar year; being divided into the summer half which is called day, and the winter half which is called night; the day beginning with the vernal equinox and the night with the autumnal equinox

Day of gods, or  
mortal years.

4th,—A day of Brahmá, which involves some large calculations connected with the Yugas or ages, and will therefore be considered separately hereafter.<sup>3</sup>

Day of Brahmá

This system of days, months, and years, is followed by a calculation of Yugas or ages. The primary object of the code, namely, the exaltation of the worship of Brahmá as the creator of the universe, thus appears abundantly manifest. The contemplative spirit and astronomical knowledge of the Bráhmans impelled them in the first instance to consider the universe as enduring for myriads of years; and at a subsequent period their religious tendencies seem to have led them to represent the duration of the universe as only equivalent to a single day of Brahmá.

2nd Calculation  
of Yugas, or  
ages

The original idea of the Yugas or ages was that

Similitude of the  
idea of four  
Yugas

<sup>2</sup> According to Kullúka's gloss (Mann, i 63), the Pitris inhabited the moon. According however to the Yishnu Purána, the Pitris had a heaven of their own which was called Prájapati Loka. The division of the lunar month into a bright and a dark fortnight will appear strange, until it is remembered that after the new moon the evenings become rapidly lighter, and that after the full moon they become rapidly darker.

<sup>3</sup> Mann, i 63 *et seq*

HISTORY OF  
-INDIA  
PART V

---

there were four Yugas succeeding each other in a descending series of arithmetical deterioration as 4, 3, 2, and 1, each of which was multiplied by a thousand. These four Yugas were respectively named Kṛita, Tretā, Dwāpara, and Kali. Thus the first, or Kṛita Yuga, lasted for 4000 years; the second, or Tretā Yuga, lasted for 3000 years; the third, or Dwāpara Yuga, lasted for 2000 years; and the fourth, or Kali Yuga, lasted for 1000 years. But all these years were years of the gods, each of which consisted of 360 mortal years. The aggregate was called a Mahā Yuga, or great age; and a thousand Mahā Yugas formed a Kalpa, or a day of Brahmā.<sup>4</sup>

Mahā Yuga, or  
great age.

The twilights,

The four Yugas thus represented the units 4, 3, 2, and 1 in arithmetical descent multiplied by a thousand. But in addition to these thousands of years, each Yuga has two twilights, one preceding it and the other following it; and each of these twilights consists of the same series of 4, 3, 2, and 1, but multiplied by a hundred only. Again, these years of the gods have each to be multiplied by 360, in order to reduce them to mortal years. The following table will perhaps exhibit with sufficient clearness the calculations connected with the number of years of the Vedic gods which are included in each Yuga:—

1ST YUGA					Years of the Gods
Twilight	..	..	..	..	400
Kṛita Yuga	.	.	.	.	1,000
Twilight	..	..	..	..	400
					<hr/> 1,800

2ND YUGA.					
Twilight	..	..	..	300	
Tretá Yuga	..	..	..	3,000	
Twilight	.	.	..	300	
					3,600
3RD YUGA.					
Twilight	..	..	.	200	
Dwápara Yuga	..	..	.	2,000	
Twilight	..	..	..	200	
					2,400
4TH YUGA					
Twilight	..	..	..	100	
Kali Yuga	..	.	.	1,000	
Twilight	..	..	..	100	
					1,200
Total comprising a Mahá Yuga					12,000

One thousand Mahá Yugas form a Kalpa, or a day of Brahmá, or twelve millions of years of the gods, which may be converted into mortal years thus:—

$$12,000,000 \times 360 = 4,320,000,000.$$

Here the imagination can scarcely follow the arithmetic, for even this period must be doubled. Whilst the creative energy of Brahmá lasts for one day, his slumber lasts for a whole night, and the night of Brahmá is equal in duration to his day. Thus a day and night of Brahmá extends over nearly ten thousand million of years. This sum total must again be multiplied to an almost infinite extent, for the year of Brahmá comprises three hundred and sixty of his days and nights; and he is said to live for a hundred years. In later Puránas he is described as immortal.

The simplicity of the idea which represents the universe as only lasting for a day will now be mani-

Conception of a  
kalpa, or day of  
Brahmá.

Infinity of the  
Kalpas

Simplicity of the  
idea of a day  
and night of  
Brahmá.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

---

fest. Brahmá is sleeping on the ocean. He awakes in the morning, and the universe springs into existence and endures throughout the day. He slumbers in the evening, and the universe passes away and all is darkness and chaos, until the night is over and he awakes and recreates as before. Thus the day of Brahmá is the period during which his creative power is in full activity. The night of Brahmá is the period during which his creative power is in perfect repose.<sup>5</sup>

Hindú and European ideas of chronology compared.

The significance of this daring attempt to reduce eternity to a system of chronology will be readily apprehended by bringing it face to face with western ideas. In Europe the popular idea of the period of time, which separates the creation of the universe from our own generation, scarcely extends over six thousand years; and according to a Rabbinical dogma, which prevailed very generally until a comparatively recent period, the six thousand years were to be followed by a millennium, or sabbath, of one thousand years, after which the universe was to be brought to a close and time was to be no more. This Rabbinical theory has perhaps yielded somewhat to the advance of natural science, but still it has left a deep impression upon the religious belief of western nations. In India, on the other hand, the idea of time has been altogether untrammelled by *any restricted system of chronology; and material existence has been regarded as practically eternal.* The result has been the universal spread of dogmas such as the endless transmigrations of the soul, the

<sup>1</sup> Influence of the different chronological systems upon the respective religious belief of Hindú and Europeans.

<sup>5</sup> In the age of Brahmanical revival this conception of the creation by Brahmá underwent a further change, in order to bring it into harmony with the modern doctrine of a Hindu trinity consisting of Brahmá, Vishnu, and Siva

successive incarnations of deity separated from each other by vast intervals of time, and a chain of Buddhas stretching far back into a remote past, which can only be indicated by a long line of numerals and ciphers. Thus amongst western nations, which have been brought under the influence of a religious belief in a more restricted chronology, the mind of man is perpetually turned upon his material life as the alpha and omega of his own present existence, and as the period upon which depends the salvation of his soul throughout an undefined eternity of spiritual being. But amongst the Hindús the imagination is in a great measure weaned away from a consideration of the individual life, and is lost in a dreamy contemplation of an infinity of future existences in which the present life is but as a mortal day.

The foregoing system of Hindú sacred chronology may be called the Brahmanic system; and by laying down a distinction between the day of the Devatas and the day of Brahmá, it furnishes additional proof that the worship of Brahmá overlaid the more primitive worship of the Vedic Aryans. But besides this mapping out of eternity by Kalpas, or days of Brahmá, there is a recognition in the code of another system of chronology based upon Manwantaras, or reigns of successive Manus. Whether the second system was handed down from the Vedic age, or sprung up during the transition period between the Vedic and Brahmanic ages, must for the present remain a question.\* That it was independent of the Brahmanic system is evident from the abortive effort which was

Chronological system of Manwantaras superadded to the Brahmanic system of Kalpas.

\* See Wilson's *Essays*, vol. ii. p. 67, note.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

---

made to reconcile the duration of the Kalpas with the duration of the Manwantaras. Manu does indeed say that seventy-one Mahá Yugas constitute a Manwantara;<sup>7</sup> but in the Puránas it is stated that fourteen Manwantaras, with some additional years, are equal to a day of Brahmá; and the necessity for such additional years sufficiently indicates that the two computations are independent of each other.

---

<sup>7</sup> Manu, i 79, 80

## CHAPTER VII.

### RELIGION OF THE BRÁHMANS.

THE simple religious ideas connected with the Vedic worship have already been indicated. It will now be necessary to unfold and explain the religious system which finds expression in the Institutes of Manu. In attempting this task, two objects will be kept in view, namely :—

1st, To exhibit the religious development which accompanied the rise of Brahmanism and establishment of the Brahmanical ascendancy.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

Religious system  
set forth in  
Manu.

Exhibits both a  
development  
and a consummation.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

---

ance of new and artificial rules introduced by a priestly hierarchy. In primitive times, when fathers of families and heads of tribes performed their own religious rites without the interference of priests, they were actuated by an unquestioning faith, which to them was as old as the hills, that they would thereby obtain from their gods the material blessings of this life; and that if they did not so propitiate the deities of the elements with hymns and sacrifices, their harvests would fail, their cattle would perish, their wives would bear no sons, and their own bodily health and vigour would pass away. Under such circumstances religious indifference or apathy must have been unknown. On the contrary, there was most likely a display of warmth and fervour, which could scarcely be expected in more artificial and complex devotions, and which indeed characterize the greater portion of the Vedic hymns which were sung on the banks of the Saraswatī. More-  
over the conception of sin must have been singularly crude in the Vedic period. A deity might be offended by the poverty of the worship, such as inferiority in the cakes, butter, or wine, or imperfections in the hymns of praise. But the consciousness of having offended deity by the breach of some arbitrary moral rule seems to have been rarely experienced by this genial race, who rather exulted in pleasures and gratifications which were an abomination to the Brāhmins. It was however amongst such a community that the Brāhmins promulgated their religious rites and moral rules, which must have been often unintelligible or repugnant to the masses. The Vedic Aryans were distinguished by a love of wine and women, of flesh

Crude conception of sin.

Rewards and punishments introduced to enforce Brahmanical laws



meat and high play, which were radically opposed to the tenets of asceticism; and it was apparently on this account that the Bráhmans found it necessary to enforce their precepts by promises of punishment, which were unknown to the composers of the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

This theory of future rewards and punishments lies at the root of all Brahmanical laws and observances, and was accepted by the authors of the code as an established dogma; and indeed it has prevailed amongst the people of India down to the present day. Almost every act, however trivial, is considered as a merit or a demerit; and the individual is rewarded or punished hereafter according to the sum of his merits and demerits.<sup>1</sup> In this belief there is not the slightest vagueness or ambiguity, for besides the threats and promises which refer to the present life, it is associated with the doctrine of transmigration of the soul through a vast number of existences on earth, and the occasional departure of the soul to a heaven or a hell for periods of different duration. It is assumed that in all cases the balance is rigidly drawn. If the merits exceed the demerits, the individual will be rewarded in proportion to the balance in his favour; either by noble birth, prosperity, comeliness, physical strength, in-

Dorms of merits  
and demerits.

Future exist-  
ences of the soul  
dependent upon  
merits and de-  
merits.

<sup>1</sup> "The householder should collect virtue [i. e. merits] by degrees, in order that he may obtain a companion to the next world, as the white ant by degrees builds his nest, for in his passage to the next world, neither his father, nor his mother, nor his wife, nor his son, nor his kinsmen, will remain in his company, but he will be accompanied by his merits alone. Single is each man born, single he dies, single he receives the reward of his good deeds, and single the punishment of his evil deeds. When he leaves his corpse, like a log or a lump of clay, his kinsmen retire with averted faces, but his merits accompany his soul. Let a man therefore continually, and by degrees, collect merits so that he may secure for himself an inseparable companion, and, with his merits for his guide, he will traverse a gloom which is hard to be traversed." *Manu* iv 223—242

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

tellectual power, long life, or abundance of sons in future transmigrations; or by elevation to a heaven, where the soul would dwell in bliss until its merits were sufficiently rewarded, after which it would return to earth and pass through another series of transmigrations. In like manner, if the demerits exceed the merits, the individual will be punished in proportion to the balance against him; either by low birth as a degraded man or inferior animal, or by adversity, deformity, physical weakness, mental incapacity, premature death, or a family of daughters; or by being cast down to one of the many hells, there to remain until the balance of demerits was wiped away, after which it would return to earth to pass through another series of existences.

Distinction between the religious obligations felt in Europe and those which are felt in India.

The difference between the religious obligations which are felt in Europe and those which are felt in India, may now be easily apprehended. In Europe the fear of the Divine displeasure, either in this world or the next, undoubtedly exercises a considerable influence; especially upon those who are sincerely desirous of bringing every action of their lives into strict conformity with what is understood to be the Divine will. But not even the fear of eternal punishment will restrain the mass of the people from the commission of acts, which they themselves believe to be directly opposed to the dictates of religion and morality. Moreover there is a popular belief in the mercy of God towards his erring creatures, in the efficacy of repentance, and in the general forgiveness of all minor offences, that exercises a counter-influence to the doctrine of eternal punishment, which no amount of religious teaching seems calculated to remove. In India, on

the other hand, the anxiety of the individual is concentrated more or less upon every action of his life; for nearly every act that can be committed may serve to outweigh a merit or wipe away a demerit, and thus insure good fortune, or bring about misfortune, either in this life or in a future existence. There is no prospect of the Divine forgiveness of sins in the event of repentance on the part of the sinner, and no belief in an atonement, excepting by means of sacrifices and penances which may be regarded as so many additional merits placed to the credit of the individual. Meantime religious worship and austerities are generally regarded as the chief merits; whilst the prominent demerits are supposed to consist in the breach of caste observances and in indulgences in forbidden things. By such arch-merits individuals might escape from transmigration altogether, and enjoy a happy eternity in heaven; whilst by such arch-demerits individuals might be doomed to endless transmigrations in the lowest scale of existences, or endure a horrible eternity in hell.

This conception of a future state of rewards and punishments, although it involves no idea of a beneficent and merciful deity, contains an element of apparent justice, which is readily apprehended by the popular mind. Moreover it serves to account for one of the most inscrutable problems in human life, namely, the unequal distribution of the blessings and pains of earthly existence. Happiness and prosperity are regarded as the reward of virtues displayed in a previous life; and misery and adversity are regarded as the punishment of sins committed in a previous state of being.

Causes of the  
universality of  
the belief in  
merits and de-  
merits

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Form of the  
conception in  
the Mosaic law

Again, the compilers of the code are by no means unmindful of the force of that obligation, which is involved in promises of rewards or punishments to the posterity of an individual; and which finds a fitting and forcible expression in the Mosaic law. In Manu however the obligation generally refers to breaches of mere caste rules, which could only affect posterity so long as the caste system continues to trammel the minds and bodies of the people of India. But the Hebrew lawgiver has laid down the far grander dogma, which may be opposed to a human idea of justice, but which nevertheless involves an eternal truth that may be traced back to the creation of man. He has authoritatively declared that the iniquity of fathers will be visited upon the children to the third and fourth generation; and this doctrine is not only in accordance with the existing facts that many of the crimes of parents do affect their children in the eyes of the world, but it is also in conformity with what is known of hereditary disease.\* Indeed, in a future age, when the laws of physiology are more generally apprehended, the obligations to obey the moral law for the benefit of posterity will increase in strength; and the justice of a punishment which is inflicted upon the descendants of a delinquent, as well as upon himself, will become more and more manifest in the eyes of

MANU.

Inferior merit of  
duties performed  
as in the special  
reward

Turning from this general element in Hindú belief to the special observations of Manu as regards

\* A similar conception finds expression in the New Testament narrative in the story of a man who was born blind. The Jews asked Jesus whether it was the sin of the man in a previous life, or the sin of his parents, which had caused his blindness.

his code, it will be seen that he raises another question, which is popularly supposed to have originated in comparatively modern thought, but which yet appears to have formed a subject of discussion from the day when the theory of a future state of rewards and punishments was first mooted amongst mankind. That a good man should receive some reward for a virtuous life was no doubt an ancient idea; and so long as goodness consisted in the fulfilment of all the duties of a son, a husband, a father, and a good citizen, such a claim to reward would probably remain unchallenged. But when the natural law became amplified and modified by ecclesiastical law, and goodness consisted in a great measure in the performance of rites and ceremonies, alms-giving and penances, which may have possessed a religious meaning but which were certainly devoid of moral significance, the question naturally arose as to the motive which led to the fulfilment of duty; whether such a duty was performed from a sense of right, or from the hope of reward; and whether the motive in one case was more praiseworthy than in the other. This question is raised by Manu, but he does not attempt to discuss it; and indeed such a discussion can scarcely lead to a practical result, inasmuch as it deals with what passes in the minds of other men, of which we can have no consciousness, and of which we can otherwise know nothing, excepting from inferences drawn from our experience of the motives by which we ourselves may have been actuated under like circumstances<sup>3</sup>. Manu simply states

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Distinction between natural law and ecclesiastical law

Manu's distinction between higher and lower motives

<sup>3</sup> The assumption of inferior motives has been carried to a vicious extent in India, and has done much towards exciting that suspicious feeling with which Hindús at the Presidency capitals but too often regard Europeans in their social capacity. The ostentatious charity, the public subscription lists, and the testa-

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

what appears to be the bare fact, namely, that whilst the fulfilment of duty for the sake of reward is not a praiseworthy motive, man will not perform any duty, such as sacrifice, religious austerities, or abstinence from sin, excepting in the hope of reward. As a solution of the difficulty, which will reconcile it with the popular idea, Manu enunciates a new dogma. Assuming that the fulfilment of religious duty will be always rewarded to some extent, whatever may be the motive, he says that if a man fulfils his duties without regard to the rewards which follow the fulfilment, he will enjoy the highest happiness in this life and eternal happiness hereafter.

Conception of  
Brahma and  
Brahmá.

Before however considering the daily worship enjoined by Manu, it will be advisable to glance at the Hindú conception of the god Brahma, from whom the Bráhmans appear to have derived their name. Here a distinction must be laid down between Brahma, the Supreme Spirit, and Brahmá, the creator of the universe, or creative energy of Brahmá. The god Brahmá is generally represented with four heads, as the divine author or inspirer of the four Vedas; but this representation must be of comparatively recent origin. Manu, who upholds the worship of both Brahma and Brahmá, speaks only of three Vedas.\* Again, Kullúka explains that in one Kalpa, or previous age, the Vedas proceeded from Fire, Air, and the Sun; and that in another Kalpa they proceeded from Brahmá.<sup>5</sup> Here a glimpse is

mentary endowments which are so common in England, are often ignored, whilst the charitable acts of wealthy Hindús, especially in the construction of tanks, ghats, and resting places, and the feeding of the poor and afflicted, are but too frequently ascribed to the mere love of fame and applause, rather than charitably attributed to a higher motive of real benevolence towards the human race at large.

\* Manu, iv. 124

<sup>5</sup> Kullúka quoted in Colebrooke's Essay on the Vedas.

obtained of the supersession of Vedic ideas by Brahmanic ideas, of which abundant proofs appear elsewhere. It is however a curious circumstance worthy of note, that notwithstanding the efforts of the Brahmanical compilers of the code of Manu to exalt the monotheistic conception of Brahma as the God of gods, the worship of this deity has never been popular with the people of India, who have ever hankered after their old Vedic personifications. The consequence has been that the Bráhmans have long abandoned the worship of the god from whom they obtained their distinctive name; and it will be seen hereafter that, in the age of Brahmanical revival, they actually set up Vishnu and Siva as superior to Brahma.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Decline of the  
worship

With these preliminary observations it will now be necessary to review the daily ritual which is laid down in the Institutes of Manu. It must be remarked in the first instance, that such worship was to be performed every day, and was apparently confined to the three twice-born castes, namely, the Bráhman, the Kshatriya, and the Vaisya. This worship may be considered under two heads, namely, invocations and sacramental rites.

Religious worship of the Bráhmans divisible into invocations and sacramental rites

The daily invocations laid down in the ritual of Manu, are involved in some obscurity, but on a critical examination will be found to yield results of considerable importance in the history of ancient India. They furnish a significant illustration of the process by which the old Vedic religion was moulded into Brahmanical forms of thought, until the polytheistic worship of the gods of the elements was resolved into the monotheistic worship of Brahma or Bráhmá. They comprise certain mystic combina-

Significance of the invocations as forming combinations of Three in One.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

tions of Three in One, which however bear no resemblance whatever to the Christian conception of a Trinity. These combinations are four in number, consisting of three suppressions of the breath, three letters, three words, and three measures. Each of these combinations may now be considered separately, as follows:—

1st, The three  
suppressions of  
breath with the  
mind fixed on  
Brahma.

1st, The three suppressions of the breath, each being equal in time to five short vowels, which are to be made with the mind fixed on Brahma, the Supreme Being. These suppressions are said by Manu to be the highest devotion.

2nd, The word  
AUM

2nd, The letters A, U, and M, which form the word Aum, pronounced Om. This word is said by Manu to be the symbol of Brahma, or lord of creatures.

3rd, The Vyáh-  
ritis comprising  
Earth, Sky, and  
Heaven

3rd, The three words—Earth, Sky, and Heaven, or Bhúh, Bhuvár, Swar—which are collectively termed the Vyáhritis.

4th, The Gáya-  
tri

4th, The three measures included in the sacred verse known as the Gáyatrí, which could only be uttered by the twice-born.<sup>6</sup>

Two questions  
involved

The inquiry into the origin of these combinations of Three in One, naturally separates itself into two questions, viz.:—

The "Three"

First, what were the "Three" who were to be combined into "One"?

The "One"

Secondly, who was that "One" into whom the "Three" were resolved?

Conclusions to  
be proved here-  
after

For the sake of clearness it may be advisable in the first instance to state the conclusions; and then to indicate the data by which those conclusions appear to be proved. The conclusions to be estab-



lished hereafter are, that the "Three" comprised the deities of the Vedas; and that the "One" referred either to Brahmá, the creator of the universe, or to Brahma, the Supreme Soul.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

The 'Three' refer to the Vedic deities and the 'One' to Brahma.

Significance of the three suppressions.

As regards the three suppressions of breath, which formed as it were the preliminary of the devotions, nothing need be said. Their significance can be gathered from what follows. It will be sufficient to observe that during their performance the mind of the worshipper was to be fixed upon Brahma as the Supreme Soul.

As regards the three letters A, U, and M, little can be gathered, excepting that when brought together into the word Aum they are said by Manu to form a symbol of the Lord of created beings—Brahma. According, however, to the Nirukta, which is an ancient glossary of the Vedas, the syllable Aum (Om) refers to every deity.

Significance of the letters A U, M

As regards the three words—Bhúh, Bhuvá, Swai, or Earth, Sky, Heaven—more positive data can be inferred. The respective deities of these three localities were Fire, Air, and the Sun; or Agni, Váyu, and Súrya. These three are among the oldest deities of the Rig-Veda. It also appears from the Nirukta that all the Vedic deities were resolvable into these three—Fire, Air, and the Sun; and it is twice asserted that there are but three gods. Further, it is distinctly stated in the Nirukta, as well as in the Bráhmans, that these three gods were considered as one.<sup>7</sup> From these data it may

Significance of the three words—Earth, Sky, Heaven, as representatives of the Vedic deities

<sup>7</sup> The references to the Nirukta may be found in the following extract from Colebrooke:—"The deities invoked appear on a cursory inspection of the Rig-Veda, to be as various as the authors of the prayers addressed to them, but, according to the most ancient annotations on the Indian scripture, those numerous names of persons and things are all resolvable into different titles of three deities,

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

be inferred that in the Brahmanic age, or in the transition period between the Vedic and Brahmanic age, the Vedic gods were classified under three heads and resolved into their original elements; and that in this manner the Vedic deities, although frequently and separately invoked in a ritual which was essentially a compromise, were stripped of their ancient theological significance, and rendered subordinate to the worship of Brahmá as the creator of the elements, or to the still higher and more spiritual worship of Brahma, or the Supreme Soul.

Significance of the three measures of the Gayatri as indicating the Vedic tendency to worship the Sun as the Supreme Being

The three measures which form the celebrated text known as the *Gáyatri*, throw a still further light upon this Brahmanizing process. The tendency towards monotheism is clearly marked in hymns of the *Rig-Veda*, which are free from all reference to Brahmanism, and which are the expression of a re-

and ultimately of one God. The *Nighánti*, or glossary of the Vedas, concludes with three lists of names of deities: the first comprising such as are deemed synonymous with fire, the second with air, and the third with the sun. In the last part of the *Nirukta*, which entirely relates to deities, it is twice asserted that there are but three gods. The further inference, that these include but one deity, is supported by many passages in the *Veda*, and is very clearly and concisely stated in the beginning of the index to the *Rig-Veda*, on the authority of the *Nirukta* and of the *Veda* itself —

"The deities are only three: whose places are, the earth, the intermediate region, and heaven [namely] fire, air, and the sun. They are pronounced to be the deities of the mysterious names [i.e. *bhūh*, *bhuvar*, and *swar*] severally, and (*Prājāpati*) the lord of creatures is [the deity] of them collectively. The syllable *Om* intends every deity: it belongs to (*Paraméshthi*) him who dwells in the supreme abode, it appertains to (*Brahmā*) the vast one, to (*Déva*) God, to (*Adhyátmā*) the superintending Soul. Other deities belonging to those several regions are portions of the [three] gods, for they are variously named and described, on account of their different operations, but [in fact] there is only one deity, the Great Soul (*Mahan átmā*). He is called the sun, for he is the soul of all beings [and] that is declared by the sage — 'The sun is the soul of that which moves, and of that which is fixed.' Other deities are portions of him: and that is expressly declared by the text — 'The wise call fire, *INDRA*, *MITRA*, and *VARUNA*.'"

"This passage," says Colebrooke, "is partly abridged from the *Nirukta*, and partly taken from the *Bráhmaṇa* of the *Veda*."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Paraphrastic  
translation by  
Sir William  
Jones

This interpretation finds full expression in Sir William Jones's paraphrastic translation, which is as follows:—

“Let us adore the supremacy of that divine sun, the godhead, who illuminates all, re-creates all, from whom all proceed, to whom all must return, whom we invoke to direct our understandings aright in our progress towards his holy seat.”

Chances  
of con-  
ceptions in  
volved in the  
worship of the  
Sun

If this paraphrase be analyzed it will be seen to comprise several distinct conceptions. First and foremost is the worship of the Sun as the Supreme Deity; next, the worship of the Sun as the Godhead, or Brahma; and lastly, the worship of the Sun as the illuminator and enlightener of the universe, physically as well as spiritually. Here, again, may be perceived the same current of thought which flows through the combination of the three letters—

Further de-  
veloped by the  
combinations of  
three in “  
One”

A, U, and M; the three words—Earth, Sky, and Heaven; and the three suppressions of breath with the mind fixed on Brahma. The Sun may be regarded as the type of all the Vedic deities, who is again resolved into the later conception of Brahma.

four suc-  
cessive of the  
combinations

By bringing together the different points in these four combinations the religious significance of the devotional form may be sufficiently apprehended. First of all the worshipper made three suppressions of his breath, which may perhaps be regarded as symbolical of the three classes of spiritual and deified existences, which were comprised in the conception of Brahma as the Supreme Soul. Next follows the mystic “Aum,” which apparently comprises all the

light, or “Brahma, constituting the splendour of the Supreme Ruler, or creator of the universe,” or “the light or orb of the splendid sun” *Sâyana, quoted by Colebrooke*. Sâyana's remarks are alone sufficient to indicate the fusion of ideas as the Sun and Brahma

Vedic deities in one word. Then the worshipper utters the mystic words Bhûh, Bhuvah, and Swah, or Earth, Sky, and Heaven; which seem to comprise all the deities who dwell on Earth, Sky, and Heaven, under the three conceptions of Fire, Air, and the Sun. Finally, the Gâyatri is pronounced, which appears to be an expression of the Vedic idea of the supremacy of the Sun god, moulded by Brahmanical commentators into the monotheistic conception of the Supreme Soul as Brahma.<sup>11</sup>

The frequent repetition of this simple ritual is a point which is strongly insisted upon by Manu.<sup>12</sup> By such frequent repetitions a large amount of religious merit was to be obtained by the twice-born; but should a twice-born man neglect to repeat the Gâyatri at sunrise and sunset, he was to be degraded to the condition of a Sûdra. Two religious questions are involved in this law, which call for a few general remarks, namely.—

Daily repetition  
of the incan-  
tions enjoined  
by Manu

First, the religious value of a daily repetition of the same ritual in maintaining and confirming a belief in any particular creed

Two questions

Secondly, the relative effect of punishment in the present life, and the threat of punishment hereafter, in the suppression of heresy.

On the first question it may be remarked that, notwithstanding all that has been urged against the

1st Religious  
value of a daily  
ritual

<sup>11</sup> The following texts in Manu seem to indicate that this moulding of the Vedic worship into a Brahmanical form was the work of Brahma himself—"Brahma, the Supreme Being, milked out from the three Vedas the three letters A, U, M, which form the monosyllable 'Atu'. He also milked out the three words—'Earth, Sky, and Heaven'. And he likewise milked out the three measures of that incantable text entitled 'Gâyatri'. The trisyllable 'Atu', the three words 'Earth, Sky, and Heaven,' and the three measures of the Gâyatri must be considered as the mouth, or principal part of the Veda. Manu, ii 76, 77

<sup>12</sup> *Matsya*, ii. 64—87

vain repetition of formal words and prayers by the Hindús, a ritual which is bound up with the routine of daily life and duty can never fail to exercise a powerful influence upon the religious faith of the worshipper. Indeed, it may be asserted that so long as the repetition continues, so long the faith will remain present in the conscience; and that when the repetition is discontinued the faith itself begins to die away. Moreover, it should be borne in mind that whilst a ritual may be purely formal, it is not necessarily cold and lifeless. Day by day the utterances are the same, but if they are associated with the more impressive phases of human life, with times of danger and sorrow as well as with the day of prosperity and rejoicing, with the pains of sickness and the horrors of death, with the celebration of marriage rites and the birth of a first-born son, such a ritual will ever stir the heart with religious emotions.

2nd, Relative effect of present and future punishment in the suppression of heresy.

The relative effect of punishment in the present life, and of the threat of punishment in the life hereafter, is a question of great importance in the history of religious development. But in India it assumes even larger proportions, because it must be considered in connection with the mighty engine of oppression which is involved in the institution of caste. Fear of punishment hereafter can obviously exercise but little effect upon a heretic, who disbelieves in the sinfulness of heresy, or in the existence of a future state of rewards and punishments. Hence religious lawgivers in general have enacted temporal punishments for those who refuse to observe the established rites and ordinances. But neither imprisonment, nor exile, nor dragooning,

nor even the stake, will exercise such a powerful effect upon the imagination as a caste degradation, which is remorseless in its results, and which may be visited upon the children through countless generations. The terrible significance of every law of Manu upon this point may thus be generally apprehended; and especially the force of that injunction which ordains that he, who neglects to repeat the Gáyatrí at sunrise and at sunset, will be precluded like a Súdria from any participation in the rites of the twice-born.<sup>13</sup>

The daily sacramental rites prescribed in the Brahmanical code are five in number, and are connected with the worship of five orders of beings, namely:—

1st, The Rishis, or Vedic bards, who were propitiated by the daily study of the Veda Rishis

2nd, The Pitris, or departed ancestors, who were propitiated by the daily offering of cakes and water. Pitris

3rd, The Devatas, or Vedic gods, who were propitiated by daily oblations of ghee Devatas.

4th, The Spirits, or ghosts, who were propitiated by daily offerings of rice Spirits

5th, The Guests, or mortal men, who were propitiated by the exercise of a suitable hospitality. Guests

These simple rites may have originated in Vedic times, but they are placed by Manu upon a Brahmanical basis of a somewhat anomalous character; namely, the dogma that they were to be performed in expiation of the unconscious slaughter of small living creatures at five domestic slaughter-houses, Anomalous Brahmanical basis

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

namely, the kitchen hearth, the grindstone, the broom, the pestle and mortar, and the water-pot.<sup>14</sup> It will however be remarked that there seems no possible connection or association between the places in question and the beings propitiated; between such utensils as the grindstone and broom on the one hand, and such deities as the Pitris and Devatas on the other.

1st Reading the  
Veda to pro-  
pitate the  
Rishis

The so-called sacramental rite of the Rishis consists in the daily reading of the Veda. The ceremonial to be observed and which is still observed in connection with this study, is well worthy of consideration, inasmuch as it exhibits the extraordinary efforts which were made by the Bráhmans to enforce a profound reverence for the sacred books, and to subject the mind of the student to an implicit and unquestioning faith in their divine inspiration. The Veda was never to be read by any one but a Bráhman. It was never to be read in the presence of a Súdria, or at any time when the attention was likely to be distracted from the sacred duty.<sup>15</sup> The preparations to be made by a Bráhman student, before reading the Veda in the

Preparatory ce-  
remonial

<sup>14</sup> Manu, iii 38—81

<sup>15</sup> The Bráhman householder must never read the Veda without pronouncing well the accents and the letters, nor must he ever read it in the presence of Súdrias, and should he have begun to read it in the last watch of the night, he must not go to sleep again afterwards, even though fatigued. A reader of the Veda, and a teacher of it to his pupils, must always avoid the reading of it on the following times, namely, when dust is collected by the wind, when the rains are falling, when lightning flashes and thunder rolls, when a preternatural sound is heard from the sky, when there is an earthquake, when there is an eclipse of one of the heavenly bodies, when an offensive smell prevails, when a corpse is being carried past, when the sound of weeping is heard or when a son is born to the Rajá. Again, a Bráhman must not read the Veda whilst the perfumes of an entertainment remain upon him, nor whilst he is lying on a couch, nor whilst his feet are raved on a bench, nor shortly after he has swallowed meat, or the food given at the birth or death of a relative, nor whilst he is seated on horseback, or on a tree, an elephant, a boat, an ass, a camel, or a carriage. Manu, iv 93 *et seq*

presence of a priestly preceptor, were of a very solemn character. The student first purified himself with water, according to an elaborate ritual, which treated different parts of the hand as pure or impure. He next put on a clean cloth, in order that the reading might be conducted with decency as well as with purity. Next he consecrated his hands, as it were, by rubbing them with the stalks of the holy kusa grass. Then he composed all his members, and took his seat upon stalks of kusa grass having their points turned towards the east. Finally he joined his hands together in token of worshipping the Veda; and in this posture he awaited the command of his preceptor. When that command was given, the student was to clasp the feet of his preceptor in token of reverence, and then make the three suppressions of breath, and pronounce the sacred monosyllable *Aum*. It was only after these preliminaries that the student was allowed to commence the reading of the allotted portion. When the lesson was over, and the preceptor ordered him to take rest, the student again performed the ceremony of clasping the feet of his master, making three suppressions of his breath, and pronouncing the tri-literal syllable *Aum*. Instructions which are imparted in this solemn manner, and which are still followed, can scarcely fail to be received as the mysterious teachings of the Supreme Being; whilst not a doubt is felt as regards the interpretation of the Veda which is furnished by the preceptor. The Veda is the expression of deity; the interpretation is the expression of infallible tradition.

Effect of the  
ceremonial on  
the student.

This teaching of the Veda, as already indicated, was exclusively confined to twice-born youths;

Right of interpretation of the  
Veda claimed by  
the Bráhmans.



HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART Vessential for the  
promulgation of  
Brahmanism

and only to those twice-born youths who were considered worthy of receiving such instruction. These restrictions sufficiently manifest the 'care and jealousy with which the ancient scriptures were regarded, and the great stress which was laid upon the interpretation and right understanding of those scriptures. Such jealous care will always be exhibited in that stage of religious development in which a new belief and ritual, like Brahmanism, has been superadded to an ancient faith and ceremonial, like that of the Rig-Veda. It is associated with a claim to an exclusive right of interpretation; a right which has been held by the Bráhmans since the first establishment of their ascendancy, with the persistent object of interpreting the Vedas by the light of Brahmanical ideas. Such a right naturally ceases to exist when the scriptures are allowed to be indiscriminately read by the masses of the laity; and when an appeal can thus be made to the authority of those scriptures against the authority of traditional interpretation. But such an exclusive right to read and interpret the ancient scripture is naturally retained and guarded with jealous care by every true Bráhman; inasmuch as it is absolutely essential for the promulgation of Brahmanical dogmas, which are theoretically based upon the authority of the Vedas, but which yet find no expression in the earlier hymns and traditions.

Mode of interpretation.

The mode by which the Brahmanizing process has been carried on has already been illustrated in the foregoing versions of the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana. It should however be remarked that this process has not been the work of a single

generation, or a single century. For many ages the Hindú mind appears to have been gradually abandoning the ideas and institutions of the Vedic period, and to have been gravitating nearer and nearer towards pure Brahmanism. Thus many practices which were tolerated by Manu, have been discountenanced by later Pundits, under the plea that they belonged to the three early Yugas of the world, and are not permissible in the present age of Kali. By this arbitrary ruling many social and religious usages, which had been sanctioned by antiquity, and appear to have been practised by the ancient Kshatriyas, have been denounced as being contrary to the laws which prevail in the age of Kali. Among these may be mentioned the sacrifice of a bull, a horse, or a man; the appointment of a man to become the father of a son by the widow of a deceased brother or kinsman; the use of spirituous liquors; the slaughter of cattle at the entertainment of a guest; and the use of flesh meat at the celebrated feasts of the dead, which are still performed under the name of Sráddhas.

This right of interpretation is further illustrated by a curious dogma which is laid down in the code of Manu for the reconciliation of conflicting texts. "Whenever," says the code, "there are texts which appear to be inconsistent with each other, they are all to be accepted as law. Thus there are three different texts in the Veda; one ordering that sacrifice should be offered when the sun was rising; a second ordering that sacrifice should be offered after the sun had risen; and a third ordering that the sacrifice should be performed when neither sun nor stars can

Manu's canon  
for reconciling  
conflicting texts.

be seen. From these texts it may be inferred that sacrifice may be performed at any or at all those times."<sup>16</sup>

The sacramental rite of the Pitris consisted in the daily offering of food, such as boiled rice, fruits, roots, milk, and water to the Pitris, or ghosts of departed ancestors. This was known as a daily Sráddha. It appears to have been an old Vedic rite, as the Pitris are invoked on more than one occasion in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.<sup>17</sup> It seems to have been practised by the people in honour of their ancient forefathers, who, like the gods, were supposed to be gratified by the offering of food. It will be seen hereafter that a great monthly Sráddha was also ordained for the more immediate ancestors according to a more elaborate and significant ritual; whilst a special Sráddha was performed on the death of a kinsman, and even formed a part of the marriage ceremony.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>16</sup> Manu, ii 15

<sup>17</sup> "May the Pitris, who are easily to be praised, protect us" Rig-Veda, Mand. VII Hymn 106, v 12

<sup>18</sup> Manu, iii 82 —The Pitris are here included in the sacramental rite of the Spirits, although a separate rite was to be celebrated daily in honour of the latter. Manu also discusses elsewhere the question of who and what the Pitris were, but the texts appear to be purely mythical, and devoid of all historical significance. For the convenience of reference they are given below.

"The Pitris, or great progenitors, are free from wrath, intent on purity, ever exempt from sensual passions, endued with exalted qualities, they are primeval divinities, who have laid arms aside. Hear now completely, from whom they sprang, who they are, and by what ceremonies they are to be honoured. The soul of Marichi and of all the other Deities, who were the offspring of Manu, son of Brahmá, are called the companies of Pitris, or forefathers. The Sômasads, who sprang from Virá, are declared to be the ancestors of the Sádhyas, and the Agniswáttas, who are famed among created beings as the children of Marichi, to be the progenitors of the Devas. Of the Dáityas, the Danavas, the Yaksas, the Gandharvas, the Uragas or Serpents, the Rákshasas, the Carakas, and the Kinnaras, the ancestors are Barishads descended from Atri. Of Bráhmans, those named Somapras; of Kshatriyas, the Havishmats, of Vaisyas, those called Ajyapras, of Súdras, the Sukálins. The Somapras descended from Me, Bhṛigu, the Havishmats, from Angiras; the Ajyapras, from Pulastya; the Sukálins, from Vasishtha.

The sacramental rite of the gods, or Devatas, consisted in pouring oblations of ghee upon the domestic fire in honour of the Vedic deities in the following order:—

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

3rd, Oblations of  
ghee to propi-  
tiate the Deva-  
tas

1st, To Agni, god of fire.

2nd, To Soma, the moon-god.

3rd, To Agni and Soma both together.

4th, To Kuhu, goddess of the day, when the moon is in the first and second quarters

5th, To Anumatí, goddess of the day, when the moon is in the third and fourth quarters

6th, Prajapati, or the lord of creatures.

7th, To Dyává and Prithiví, goddess of sky and earth.

8th, To the fire of the good sacrifice.

9th, To the gods of the four quarters; Indra, Yama, Varuna, and Soma.<sup>19</sup>

The foregoing deities are all ancient and obscure, and although worshipped as a matter of form, have apparently passed out of the Hindú sphere of religious thought. The last oblation, namely, that to the gods of the four quarters, sufficiently betrays the change in the religious belief. In times primeval the Vedic Aryans had worshipped Indra, Yama, Varuna, and Soma, as great and independent deities, invested with divine attributes. Indra was the god of the firmament, who smote the rain cloud and

Character of the  
worship of the  
Vedic deities as  
enjoined by  
Manu

Changes in the  
religion between  
the Vedic period  
and Brahmanic  
period.

Those who are, and those who are not, consumable by fire called Agnidagbhas, and Anagnidagbhas, the Karyas, the Barishads, the Agnishwattas, and the Saumyas let mankind consider as the chief progenitors of Bráhmans. Of those just enumerated who are generally reported the principal tribes of Pitris the sons and grandsons indefinitely, are also in this world considered as great progenitors. From the Rishis come the Pitris, or patriarchs, from the Pitris, both Devas and Danavas, from the Devas, this whole world of animals and vegetables in due order.

Manu, iii 192—201

<sup>19</sup> Manu, iii 81—87

brought down the waters. Yama was the god of death, or rather the judge of the dead, whose existence betrays a vague belief in the future state of the soul after death which prevailed in Vedic times. Varuna was the deity of waters, but was sometimes addressed in the language of elevated devotion. Soma is more obscure, but is generally identified with the moon. Manu however represents these deities as the four guardians of the four quarters of the earth; and appears to denude them of all the moral and religious significance with which the first three are certainly invested in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

4th. Offerings of  
boiled rice to  
propitiate  
Spirits or  
Ghosts

The sacramental rite of Spirits consisted in offerings to all living creatures, Spirits included; and appears to have originated in that belief in ghosts, which belongs to an early stage in religious development. After the rice had been cooked, every twice-born householder was to offer it to all living things according to the following ritual:—

1st, He was to throw boiled rice near his door, saying:—"I salute you, O Maruts [*i. e.* the winds.]"

• 2nd, He was to throw boiled rice into water, saying:—"I salute you, O water gods."

3rd, He was to throw boiled rice on his pestle and mortar, saying:—"I salute you, O gods of large trees."

After this he was to throw boiled rice near his pillow to Śrī [Lakshmi], the goddess of abundance; at the foot of his bed to the propitious goddess Bhadrakālī; in the middle of his house to Brahmā and his household god; and up in the air to all the assembled gods; by day to the Spirits who walk in light, and by night to those who walk in darkness.

down in the code. It will be seen that the worship per was directed in the first instance to throw boiled rice to the winds, or Maruts, to the water gods, and the gods of large trees. These deities are Vedic, and their worship is eminently fetische. It will more over be seen that the worship of Indra is ignored excepting as one of the gods of the four quarters, whilst the worship of the Maruts, which in Vedic times was already opposed to that of Indra, finds prominent expression. Next follows the propitiation of the goddess Lakshmi, who is the wife of Vishnu, the goddess Bhadrā Kālī, who is generally identified with Durgā, the wife of Siva, and the god Brāhmā, and other deities. Here it should be remarked that neither of the three deities specified,—Lakshmi, Kālī, or Brāhmī—appear to have been regarded as national Hindu deities until a comparatively late period in the history of India, and there is scarcely any allusion made in the code to the important deities, Vishnu and Siva who are popularly regarded as the husbands of Lakshmi and Durgā. How far they may have been worshipped as local or family deities prior to this Brahmanic period is of course open to question. Indeed Brahma, as the god of the Brāhmins, may have been worshipped by the Brāhmins from a very early date, and Lakshmi, as the goddess of abundance, and Bhadrā Kālī, as an old domestic deity, may have been propitiated for ages before they were converted into Brahmanical deities, and associated in the age of Brāhmanical revival with the worship of Vishnu and Siva and incorporated in the national system of mythology. But neither Lakshmi nor Bhadrā Kālī appear as objects of worship in the hymns of the

Rig-Veda;<sup>21</sup> whilst the references to Brahma are very obscure, and chiefly connected with an attempted identification of that deity with Indra or Agni

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

There is one point in the foregoing ritual which betrays extraordinary acuteness on the part of the compilers of the code. Throughout the Institutes of Manu, the exaltation of the god Brahma above the gods of the Vedic Aryans is never neglected; and yet in the daily ritual the worship of the Devatas is enforced, and the worship of Brahma resolves itself into the simple rite of throwing boiled rice into the middle of the house. From this circumstance it is easy to infer that the worship of Brahma was as unpopular amongst the masses in the age of Manu, as it is amongst the Hindús in the present day; and that the compilers of the code accordingly accommodated the national ritual to the national taste, which still hankered after the worship of the gods of their Vedas, in preference to the new deity which had been introduced by the Bráhmans.

Significant indication in the ritual of the unpopularity of the worship of Brahma.

The propitiation of the gods of the air, and of the spirits that walk by day and of those that walk by night, is more immediately connected with a belief in ghosts, and a fear of them as destructive agencies. A conception of ghosts, and especially of the ghosts of enemies, naturally gives rise to a dread of mysterious evil and secret mischief, and this dread increases, and serves to confirm the original belief, whenever any accident or disease befalls the

Propitiation of Ghosts

<sup>21</sup> The introduction of the worship of Káli in the daily ritual of the Brahmaus, is involved in some obscurity, which may be cleared up hereafter in treating of the worship of Siva, which involves some peculiar ideas connected with ghosts and corpses

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

cattle, the harvest, or the household. Thus the old idea of propitiation by means of food finds expression in the daily ritual; and boiled rice is distributed as food to ghosts in general, to the ghosts of enemies as well as to those of friends.

6th. Hospitality in propitiation of mortal guests

The sacramental rite of men is simply an ordinance imputing a religious meaning to the ordinary duties of hospitality, especially in the event of the guests being Brâhmanas, and above all being learned Brâhmanas. Indeed whilst the code duly enjoins hospitality to guests, it significantly declares that oblations which are presented to ignorant Brâhmanas are mere ashes. On the other hand, when oblations are offered in the fire of a sacerdotal mouth, which richly blazes with true knowledge and piety, they will release the giver from distress, and even from deadly sin<sup>22</sup>

Review of the five sacramental rites.

In reviewing the foregoing sacramental rites, it is curious to observe how closely they are mixed up amongst the Hindûs with such ordinary actions of life as the daily meals. Amongst western communities the custom prevails of praying to the Supreme Being for a blessing upon food which is about to be eaten, and to return thanks after a meal for the food which has been provided. But according to the Hindû idea, a portion of the food is absolutely desired by the deity or deities, as well as by anomalous beings who are supposed to exercise an influence on the well-being of man. Thus every householder quired, before partaking of food, to propitiate Shiva, Pitris, Devatas, Spirits, and Guests with gifts of portions of the very provisions which

Curious association of religious worship with the daily meals.



had been prepared for himself and his family; and it is emphatically declared that he who partakes of food which has been dressed for himself only, and which has not been previously presented to the beings in question, eats in reality nothing but sin.<sup>23</sup>

---

<sup>23</sup> Manu, iii 118

## CHAPTER VIII.

### EIGHT FORMS OF MARRIAGE.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Marriage laws in  
Hindu.

1st. Eight forms  
of marriage.

2nd. Miscellaneous  
precepts, &c.

Historical signi-  
ficance of the  
eight forms.

THE laws and precepts which are to be found in the Brahmanical code respecting marriage, may be divided into two classes, namely :—

1st,—Those which refer to eight traditional forms of marriage, some of which are approved whilst others are condemned. The traditions respecting these eight forms of marriage are of considerable historical importance, inasmuch as they apparently belong to different communities, or to different stages in the civilization of the people.

2nd,—Those which refer to married life generally, and which compare a multiplicity of details respecting the *age at which a man ought to marry*, the family from whom he ought to select a wife, the kind of damsel to be selected, the treatment of women, the laws respecting adultery and divorce, and a variety of minute directions for the guidance of husbands and wives.

The laws and precepts belonging to this second class will be dealt with hereafter, in connection with the social condition of the Hindús.<sup>1</sup> The present

---

<sup>1</sup> The laws respecting the age at which a man ought to marry, and the wife which should be selected, will be found in Chapter XI on the four Orders, in connection with the life of a householder. The Laws respecting the condition of

chapter will be devoted to a consideration of the eight forms of marriage described in Manu, with the view of eliciting such historical results as appear to underlie the several traditions.

Before however indicating these eight forms of marriage rites, it may be as well to consider the ideas of marriage which prevailed in the Vedic period. It has already been stated that events which lie half hidden in the undergrowth of later Epic legends seem to belong to the Vedic age, although the composition of the poems undoubtedly belongs to the Brahmanic age. Accordingly it may now be advisable to ascertain what further evidence can be adduced in confirmation of this hypothesis, by comparing the marriage customs which appear in the Epic legends, with those which find expression in the hymns of the Rig-Veda. When this has been done it may be useful to bring the results to bear upon the eight forms of marriage rites which are described in the Institutes of Manu.

Vedic conception of marriage as expressed in the two Epics.

The marriage customs which are to be found in the Epics seem to refer to two different classes of the community, namely, a peaceful class and a warrior class. The marriages which prevailed amongst the peaceful class may perhaps be exemplified by the union between Yayāti and Devayānī, which appears to have involved the idea of one wife married to one man. The marriages of Bráhmans may belong to the same class; although it is impossible to say whether they referred to the Rishis of the Vedic age, or to the Bráhmans of the Brahmanic age. The marriages of the warlike community, who may be

Marriages in a peaceful community, appertaining to Kshatriyas or Bráhmans

Marriages in a warlike community, appertaining to Kshatriyas

Hindú women will be found in Chapter XII, which is especially devoted to that subject.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

---

identified with the Kshatriyas, were altogether of a different character, and involved the conceptions of polyandry and polygamy, the Swayamvara, and the rites subsequently known as Gandharva and Rákshasa.

Polyandry in the  
Epics

The system of polyandry is exemplified in the Mahá Bhárata by the marriage of Draupadí with the five sons of Pándu; and in the Rámáyana by the charge brought against Ráma and Lakshmana by Virádhá.<sup>2</sup> The attempt to Brahmanize the former tradition, by representing it as a sacred and exceptional mystery, has already been discussed in the previous volume.<sup>3</sup> But a trace of this extraordinary

Polyandry in  
the hymns of the  
Rig Veda.

custom is also to be found in a hymn of the Rig-Veda, which is addressed to the two Aswins:—"Aswins, your admirable (horses) bore the car which you had harnessed, (first) to the goal, for the sake of honour; and the damsel who was the prize came through affection to you, and acknowledged your (husbandship), saying, 'You are (my) lords.'"<sup>4</sup> Strangely enough this verse exhibits the custom of polyandry under similar circumstances to those under which it appears in the Swayamvara of Draupadí. According to the Epic legend, Draupadí was the prize of the archery match, and was won by Aíjuna. In the Vedic hymn however the damsel was apparently the prize of a chariot race, and was won by the two Aswins. The Aryan origin of this custom is thus placed beyond a doubt. Had it not existed amongst the Vedic Aryans, it would have been as impossible for a Vedic bard to dwell upon the recognized marriage of one

<sup>2</sup> See *ante*, p. 241

<sup>3</sup> See *ante*, Vol. I Part II chap. 4

<sup>4</sup> Rig Veda, Mand. I. Hymn. 119, v. 5

damsel to two living brothers, as for a European bard of our own time to select such a topic as a subject for a modern poem.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

The system of polygamy finds a much larger expression in the Epic legends, as might have been expected in an era of conquest. Thus Vichitra-vīrya and Pāndu were each married to two wives, and Pāndu is said to have obtained his second wife by purchase.<sup>5</sup> Dasaratha again had three wives;<sup>6</sup> and many other instances might be quoted from later traditions. Traces of polygamy are also to be found in the hymns of the Rig-Veda. Raja Swanaya on the banks of the river Indus, gave his ten daughters in marriage to a young Rishi named Kakshīvat; and in return was duly praised in a Vedic hymn composed by his enthusiastic son-in-law.<sup>7</sup> In another hymn there is an allusion to the husband of many maidens.<sup>8</sup> Indeed, whilst an exceptional system like that of polyandry could only have originated from strong necessity, that of polygamy belongs to an age of half-barbarous sensuality, when self-indulgence was considered as the highest good.

Polygamy in the  
Epic

Polygamy in the  
hymns of the  
Rig Veda.

The institution known as the Swayamvara, or self-choice, was however without doubt the most popular of all the forms of marriage which prevailed amongst the Vedic Aryans. It belongs to an age of Hindú chivalry, when a high-spirited and gallant race might be supposed to yearn for the love of women, as a sentiment higher and nobler than that of mere desire. The legend of the marriage of the Aswins seems to associate the Swayamvara with

The Swayam  
vara in the  
Epic.

<sup>5</sup> See Vol I p 53, 64, 66

<sup>6</sup> See ante, p 11

<sup>7</sup> Wilson's Rig Veda, vol II p 14 et seq

<sup>8</sup> Rig Veda, Mand I Hymn 116, v 10

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

The Swayam-  
vara in the  
hymns of the  
Rig Veda

No allusion to  
the Swayamvara  
in Manu

Gandharva and  
Rākshasa forms  
of marriage

polyandry; and later Purānic legends associate it with polygamy. It however finds a beautiful and attractive expression in that exquisite picture of a wife's devotion, which is presented in the story of Nala and Damayantī; and there it is found in connection with the true conception of marriage in the permanent union of one woman and one man.<sup>9</sup> The Swayamvara emphatically belongs to the old Vedic period, for it is distinctly recognized in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; not only in the verse already quoted, which intimates that the Āswins won a bride at a chariot-race; but in another hymn, where there is an allusion to a bride who was won at a Swayamvara by the youthful Vimada.<sup>10</sup> It will however be seen hereafter that there is no allusion whatever to the institution in the code of Manu.

The Gandharva and Rākshasa nuptials belonged to the old lawless times, and were in reality no marriages at all. The Gandharva form was simply a union prompted by mutual desire, and consummated without any preliminary ceremonies; and in this manner Dushyanta met Sakuntalā in the jungle, where the amorous pair followed the old Idyllic fashion, which ultimately led to the birth of the

<sup>9</sup> See Vol I Part III chap 2

<sup>10</sup> Rig Veda, Mand I Hymn 116, v 1 Professor H H Wilson explains in a note upon the passage, that the story is told by the scholiast, that Vimada having won his bride at a Swayamvara, was stopped on his way home by his unsuccessful competitors, when the Āswins came to his succour, and placed the bride in their chariot, repulsed the assailants and carried the damsel to the residence of the husband. Wilson's Rig-Veda, vol II p 306.

From other allusions in the hymns it would appear that Vimada was a Rishi, and that the father of the bride was a Raja. This seems to confirm the theory already indicated, that many of the Rishis, if not all of them, were Kshatriyas. The idea of a Brāhman contending at a Swayamvara, was regarded by the old Kshatriyas as an arrogant proceeding (see *ante*, Vol. I Part II chap 4) It is somewhat singular that these allusions to the Swayamvara and polyandry should be associated with the obscure worship of the Āswins

famous hero Bhárata, the ancestor of the lunar race.<sup>11</sup> The Rákshasa form on the other hand consisted in the seizure of a damsel by force, after the conquest of her kinsmen; and in this manner Bhíshma carried off the three daughters of the Raja of Kási.<sup>12</sup> According to the old Kshatriya law, a wife even was compelled to submit to the desires of the conqueror of her husband; but then conquest was a necessary preliminary, and it was considered contrary to all rule for a man surreptitiously to carry off the wife of another, without having first fought her husband. Thus it was that Dhaumya protested against the outrage committed upon Draupadí by Jayadratha; and that Sítá in like manner protested against the cowardice of Rávana.<sup>13</sup> These Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages originated in the Vedic period, and were contrary to Brahmanical law. It will indeed be seen hereafter that such unions were tolerated in the code of Manu, but they were permitted to the Kshatriyas alone; but even this toleration to the Kshatriyas is accompanied by expressions which sufficiently indicate a grave disapproval.<sup>14</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Kshatriya law  
as regards Rák-  
shasa marriages

Gandharva and  
Rákshasa mar-  
riages restricted  
by Manu to the  
Kshatriyas

The eight forms of marriage described by Manu may now be described in the following order.

Manu's descrip-  
tion of the eight  
nuptials

1st, The Brahmá marriage, in which a father invited a man versed in the Vedas, and of a good character; and then gave him his daughter, after clothing both of them, and entertaining them, and honouring them with ornaments. This is the ceremony of the Bráhmans.

1 Brahma

2nd, The Daiva marriage, in which a father

2 Daiva

<sup>11</sup> See Vol I Part II chap 1

<sup>12</sup> Ibid.

<sup>13</sup> See Vol I Part II chap VIII, also *ante*, Part IV chap XVII

<sup>14</sup> Manu, iii 26

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

decks his daughter with ornaments, and then gives her to the priest officiating at a properly conducted sacrifice. This is the ceremony of the Devatas.

3. Arsha.

3rd, The Arsha marriage, in which a father receives from a bridegroom one pair of kine (a bull and a cow), or two pairs, for religious purposes, and then gives away his daughter in due form. This is the ceremony of the Rishis.

4. Prājāpatya.

4th, The Prājāpatya marriage, in which a father gives away his daughter to the bridegroom with due honour, after distinctly uttering this injunction:—"May both of you perform together your civil and religious duties." This is the ceremony of the Prājāpatis.

5. Asura.

5th, The Asura mode, in which the bridegroom gives as much wealth as he can afford to the damsel and her kinsmen, and then takes her according to his own pleasure.

6. Gandharva.

6th, The Gandharva mode, in which a youth and damsel are led by mutual desire to form a connection.

7. Rākshasa.

7th, The Rākshasa mode, in which a warrior seizes a maiden by force, and carries her from her home, while she weeps and calls for assistance, and after slaying or wounding her kinsmen.

8. Paisācha.

8th, The Paisācha mode, in which the lover secretly embraces a damsel while she sleeps, or is intoxicated, or disordered in her mind. This is the basest and most wicked of all.<sup>15</sup>

For a full and  
for a full  
marriage.

The foregoing description of the eight forms of marriage must be now subjected to a critical examination. In the first instance there are two points for consideration:—



1st, The four marriages which are first on the list, and which are permissible to all the four castes

2nd, The four marriages which are last upon the list, and of which the validity is more or less impugned.<sup>16</sup>

As regards the four valid marriages, it will be seen that they differ in name, whilst the language implies that they respectively belonged to four different communities; and by comparing the four names with the characteristics of each form, some valuable inferences may be drawn. The distinction between each of the four may be thus exhibited.—

The four valid marriages ascribed to four different communities

1st, Bráhmans,—the gift of a daughter to a man learned in the Veda Brahmans

2nd, Devatas or Vedic Aryans;—the gift of a daughter to a sacrificing priest. Vedic Aryans

3rd, Rishis or Vedic bards;—the gift of a daughter in return for a pair or two of kine. Rishis

4th, Prajápatis;—the gift of a daughter to a bridegroom in order that the pair might perform together their civil and religious duties. Prajápatís

Here the distinction which has already been drawn between the Rishis and the Bráhmans appears to be involved in some confusion by the introduction of Devatas and Prajápatis as separate classes. But this confusion can be to some extent cleared up. The Bráhman mode of giving a daughter to a student in the Veda, was no doubt the predominant idea of marriage in the Brahmanic age which is depicted in the code. It moreover applied to all the twice born castes, as all were to be instructed in the Veda. This conception of marriage

Apparent confusion from the arbitrary distinction between the Devatas Rishis and Prajápatis.

Bráhman form referred to the Brahmanic age

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART I

At the end of the  
character of the  
Dharma mode.

Repugnant to  
human nature  
a Kshatriya  
tradition

may therefore be accepted as historical. The mode however which is said to have prevailed amongst the Devas, or Vedic Aryans, of giving a daughter to the sacrificing priest, is apparently mythical. The age of sacrifice was passing away. Flesh sacrifices are scarcely tolerated in the code, and were certainly opposed to Brahmanism. Still the traditions that the Vedic Aryans offered such sacrifices were treasured up by the masses. Hence, if it was ruled that the form sanctioned by the Brahmans was the gift of a daughter to a student in the Vedas, it was easy to arrive at the mythical idea that the form sanctioned amongst the Devas was the gift of a daughter to a sacrificing priest. But whilst one idea is in accordance with human nature, the other is repugnant to it. To marry a daughter to a young Vedic scholar is natural and not displeasing, but to marry a daughter to a man who has just been acting in the capacity of a butcher or a cook, even though it has been in the service of the gods, is opposed to the instincts of human nature. Moreover the latter idea is opposed to the traditions of the Vedic Aryans, who regarded such hired priests as mere mercenaries unworthy of forming an alliance with the daughter of Kshatriya, although in the old Vedic foretime a Raja might have given his daughter in marriage to a Vedic bard. In one direction however the apparently mythical idea of giving a daughter to a sacrificing priest may have had a historical basis. In the old Vedic period the priest and the head of a household were identical. The idea therefore of giving a daughter in marriage to a priest may have merely involved the idea of giving her in marriage to the head of a household.

The tradition as regards the third form of permissible nuptials, namely, that the mode amongst the Rishis was to give a daughter to a bridegroom in exchange for a pair or two of kine, is no doubt historical; and it probably prevailed more or less amongst all the Vedic Aryans, as it does even in the present day among many primitive tribes in India. It furnishes moreover a further proof of the distinction between the Rishis, or Vedic bards, and the Bráhmans as priests and worshippers of Brahmin, which has been laid down in a previous chapter. It may be added in the present place, that the names of many celebrated Rishis are affixed to the Vedic hymns which they respectively composed;<sup>17</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Rishi mode referred to the old Vedic period.

Further proof of the radical distinction between Rishis and Bráhmans

<sup>17</sup> Amongst the authors of the hymns of the Rig-Veda are to be found the time-honoured names of Kanwa, Parásara, Gotama, Kasyapa, Agastya, Viswámitra, Vámadeva, Atri, Bharadvāja, and Vasishtha. These Rishis have for ages been regarded as Bráhmans, and their exaltation would naturally tend to the glorification of the Bráhmans as a caste. Accordingly their names are to be frequently found in the Brahmanical versions of the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, but always under suspicious circumstances arising from being associated with supernatural details, or with palpable anachronisms. Kanwa was the putative father of Sakuntalá, the mother of Raja Bhárata, whose son Hastin founded the city of Hastinápur. Parásara was the holy sage who is said to have created a mist by the power of his religious austerities, in order that he might gratify his passion for a fish girl, by whom he became the father of Vyasa. Gotama was the sage whose conjugal felicity was disturbed by Indra, and who subsequently pronounced a curse, by which his wife was turned to stone, and her seducer was covered with a thousand eyes. Kasyapa was the mythical progenitor of the Sun, and consequently the forefather of the Solar race at Ayodhyá. Agastya gave mythical weapons to the divine hero of the Rámáyana, drank up the sea with all its crocodiles and big fishes, and prevented the Vindhya mountain from attaining a greater altitude. In the Mahá Bhárata Viswámitra is represented as the real father of Sakuntalá by a celestial nymph, and he reappears in the Rámáyana for the purpose of telling a number of absurd stories to Ráma, and bringing about the marriage of Ráma and Sitá. Vámadeva was the Minister of Dasaratha, but has very little to do in the action of the poem of the Rámáyana. Atri is the mythical progenitor of the Moon, and consequently the ancestor of the Lunar race of Bhárata, but yet he lived to entertain Ráma and Sitá at his hermitage in the neighbourhood of Chitrá kúta. Bharadvāja was the mythical father of Drona, the preceptor of the Pándavas and Kauravas, and the equally mythical entertainer of the army of Bhárata at Prayága, or Allahabad. Vasishtha again is said to have been the preceptor of Dasaratha, and takes a prominent part in the minor action of the Rámáyana. These details

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Further con-  
sideration of the  
distinction be-  
tween the mar-  
riage rite of the  
Rishis and that  
of the Bráh-  
mans

and that they could scarcely have been Bráhmans, because their hymns are in no way connected with the worship of the god Brahma. On the contrary, if any stress may be laid upon the general references in the Rig-Veda to the Rishis as a collective body, it would appear that the Rishis stand prominently forward as the worshippers of those Vedic deities who were the least in favour with the Bráhmans.<sup>18</sup>

Here it may be as well to take into further consideration the distinction which Manu draws between the marriage rite of the Rishis and that of the Bráhmans. The former appears to be the most ancient, as it certainly was the most primitive; and moreover was devoid of any religious meaning such as clearly appertains to the other three approved marriages. No religious qualification was required in the bridegroom, and the young man simply obtained a damsel by presenting her father with a pair or two of kine; a practice so foreign to the civilization which appears to have prevailed in the time of Manu, that the Hindú lawgiver is compelled to defend it by urging that such a gift of kine to the father of the bride was not a purchase.<sup>19</sup> The cere-

have already been brought forward to prove that the association of the individuals in question with the main traditions in the Maha-Bhárata and Rámáyana is purely mythical.

<sup>18</sup> The Rishis are specially referred to as a collective body in the following hymns: "Friendly to man were those of the ancient Rishis whose praises thou (Indra) hast listened to" (Mand VIII Hymn 29, v 4) "Aswins, hearing the many prayers of the Rishis" (Ib Hymn 70, v 5) "The bride of Súrja (i.e. Ushas, the dawn) . . . hymned by the Rishis" (Ib, Hymn 75, v 5) "Invigorated by the praise of a thousand Rishis, thus Indra is vast as the ocean" (Mand VIII Hymn 3, v 4) "Amid those who do not praise thee, Indra, amid the Rishis who do praise thee . . . may thou increase" (Ib Hymn 6, v 12) "Come, Aswins, . . . when the Rishis formerly invoked you for protection, so now, Aswins, come at my devout praises" (Ib Hymn 8, v 5) From the tenor of these mantras it would seem that the Rishis are regarded as even more ancient than the composition of many of the hymns.

<sup>19</sup> Manu, iii 53

mony taught by the Bráhmans was altogether different. The bridegroom was assumed to be learned in the Veda. He was invited and hospitably entertained by the father of the damsel, and then married to the daughter, after which the father of the bride presented the pair with clothes and ornaments.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

---

Another and equally significant distinction seems to be drawn between the ceremony of the Bráhmans and that of the Prajápatis. In the former a father gives away his daughter in subordination to the bridegroom; a subordination which is perfectly in accordance with Brahmanical ideas, and which finds full expression in other parts of the code of Manu. In the ceremony of the Prajápatis, the father gives his daughter to the bridegroom, and enjoins them to "perform together their civil and religious duties." This latter expression seems to imply a higher social position on the part of the wife, and one which approaches to an equality with the husband; and this elevation of women in the social scale is in accordance with Kshatriya institutions, and certainly finds expression in the Rig-Veda.<sup>20</sup> It is however apparently connected with a religious system, as some stress is laid upon the religious duties of the married pair. Now the Prajápatis were undoubtedly a religious community; and the question which arises for consideration is whether any distinction can be laid down between the Prajápatis as worshippers of Prajápatis, and the Bráhmans as worshippers of Brahma or Brahmá. Hitherto Prajápatis has always been identified with Brahmá, and the conception of each deity as the creator of

Significance of the distinction between the marriage rite of the Bráhmans and that of the Prajápatis.

Question of whether Prajápatis and Brahma are different conceptions

<sup>20</sup> See Rig Veda, Mand I Hymn 26, vol. iv Wilson's note

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

the universe appears to be the same. But it by no means follows that the two conceptions did not originate from different sources and become subsequently blended together, and it is not impossible that the worship of Prajapati, as one God, is associated with Manu, who has been termed a Prajapati.<sup>2</sup> Again, the worship of the Pitris is associated with Prajapati, and the Pitris are said to reside in the heaven of Prajapati and Manu lays down a distinction between the world of the Sun, as the heaven of the Prajapatis, and the world or heaven of Brahma.<sup>2</sup> The question however can scarcely be regarded as fairly solved, and it can only be conjectured that Prajapati, or ruler, may have been originally a Kshatriya conception of the One God, and that Brahma may in like manner have been the Brahmanical conception of the Supreme Being.

Conclusions

Relative antiquity of the images of the Prajapati and Brahma

It may now be as well to recapitulate the conclusions which seem to be established by the foregoing data. The most ancient form of marriage was apparently that of the Rishis, in which a bridegroom gave a pair or two of kine to the father of the bride, probably for the purpose of a marriage feast. A relic of this primitive custom is still to be traced in the modern rite, in which a cow is tied up, but let loose instead of being killed. The Drava form is dubious. The Prajapatya form is apparently later in the order of time, being connected with a monotheistic religion which prevailed during a transition period between the worship of the Vedic deities and that of the god Brahma, and entailed civil and religious duties upon

<sup>2</sup> See the Mantras already quoted in the Introduction to Vol. I p. 29

<sup>22</sup> Manu v. 18<sup>o</sup>

both men and women. The Brahama form is apparently the most modern of all.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Having thus brought under review the four forms of marriage which were permitted by the code, it becomes necessary to take into consideration the four remaining nuptials, three of which were famous in the national traditions, and may have been occasionally practised in the age of Manu, but all of which were more or less censured by the Hindu lawgiver. They also seem to some extent to appertain to different communities, or perhaps to different phases of civilization; but they are all widely separated from the four orthodox forms by one general characteristic, namely, the absence of all ceremony, religious or otherwise. The conditions of each may be thus exhibited:—

The four marriages treated by Manu as illegal

1st, The Asura, in which the bridegroom purchased a damsel of her father.

Asura

2nd, The Gandharva, in which a union was prompted by mutual desire, and in which the rite was not necessarily binding for the future.

Gandharva.

3rd, The Rākshasa, in which a damsel was captured by force of arms.

Rākshasa.

4th, The Paisācha, in which a damsel was surprised whilst asleep, or under the influence of strong liquor, or disordered in her intellect.

Paisācha

Of these four marriage customs, the first and last, namely, the Asura and Paisācha, were altogether forbidden by Manu; whilst the Gandharva and Rākshasa were only permitted to warriors, or men of the Kshatriya caste.

Asura and Paisācha strictly prohibited

The Gandharva and Rākshasa permitted to warriors

The Asura custom might be supposed by its name to refer to marriages amongst the Asuras, aborigines; but in Manu's time, when the

Asuras were supposed to be the same as the Asuras of the present day

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Gandharva  
made an expres-  
sion of idyllic  
amours

system had been fully established, the term Asura was probably employed only as one of reproach. It is not difficult to understand that the primitive custom of a bridegroom giving a pair of kine to the father of his bride, would degenerate in an age of comparative luxury into a mere matter of bargain and sale; in which family rank and personal attractions were duly considered, and an equivalent demanded in money and jewels.<sup>23</sup> The Gandharva marriage on the other hand might be regarded as the expression of a woman's independence in the disposal of her affections; or, what has already been indicated, it might merely refer to the idyllic loves of pastoral times, when a swain met a damsel in the forest, and the unsophisticated pair simply obeyed the dictates of mutual desire without regard to law

<sup>23</sup> Marriage customs have greatly changed since the time of Manu. In Bengal the great difficulty is for the father of daughters to procure husbands for them, and a system prevails not unlike the purchase of bridegrooms. At this present moment, if a father wishes to marry a daughter to a young Bengalee who has taken a degree at the Calcutta University, he must agree to spend a much larger sum of money upon the marriage entertainment, and upon the jewels and gifts, than would have been necessary had the bridegroom failed to pass the University examination. The vast expense attending the purchasing of a bridegroom of the Kulin caste is well known, and a curious illustration of the social ideas upon this matter may be obtained from a recent biography of a Bengalee millionaire, named Ramdoolal Dey, who wished to marry his daughter to a young Kulin named Radhakissen. The biography is written by an intelligent Bengalee gentleman, named Grish Chunder Ghose, and the following extract is given in the very words of the author:—"Born of parents wretchedly poor, the soul of Radhakissen was as small as his circumstances were pitiful. His koolism was the only bait that had attracted Ramdoolal to the lair. The lad, though not ugly, was ungainly. His hair was red and his features were gross. He had not received even an ordinary education. Yet Ramdoolal was anxious to wed his eldest and most favourite daughter,—a daughter in whose name he had built a ship,—to the son of a koolin. That daughter refused however to marry the bridegroom thus selected for her. She had seen the boy herself, she loathed him with the abhorrent hate of a child. On the night on which the marriage was consummated, the bride screamed, and the bride writhed on her seat while being conveyed to the altar. So violent indeed was her conduct, that Ramdoolal was compelled to soften her, in order that the marriage rites might be proceeded with, by pouring a handful of gold mohurs into her lap."



or ceremony. The Rākshasa marriage again refers to a custom which prevailed during the wars between the Aryan invaders and the aborigines, by which the daughters and even the wives of the conquered became the prize of the conquerors. The Paisācha however has not a semblance to either a form or a right. The damsel was neither purchased, nor seduced, nor carried away captive, but was simply taken at a disadvantage; an outrage which was far more likely to be committed amongst a peaceful community than amongst a race of chivalrous warriors like the Kshatriyas. The origin of the name Paisācha is somewhat curious. The Pisāchas were evil spirits, or ghosts, who were supposed to haunt the earth; but sometimes they were identified with the more terrible and uncivilized aborigines.<sup>21</sup> If therefore a damsel found herself likely to become a mother, without being able to furnish a satisfactory reason for her maternity, she would naturally plead that she had been victimized by a Pisācha; and probably from this circumstance the term came to be applied to all cases in which a damsel had been taken at a disadvantage by a mortal lover. In modern times however the belief is still very general throughout the rural districts of India, that wives as well as maidens may be occasionally victimized by such ghostly admirers.

The law permitting Gandharva and Rākshasa marriages to the Kshatriyas is not without historical significance. It seems to indicate that at the time the code of Manu was promulgated the Kshatriyas formed a powerful class of the community; and that

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Rākshasa mode  
a war custom of  
the Kshatriyas

Paisācha mode  
originating in a  
belief in ghosts

Significance of  
the law per-  
mitting Gand-  
harva and Rāk-  
shasa marriages  
to the Ksha-  
triya.

<sup>21</sup> "Destroy, Indra, the tawny coloured, fearfully roaring Pisācha, annihilate the Rākshasas." Rig Veda, Mand I Hymn 133, v. 5

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Respective  
merits and de-  
merits of the  
eight forms of  
marriage

the Bráhmans found it necessary to temporize, in order to reconcile so arrogant and important a caste with Brahmanical law.<sup>25</sup>

The respective merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage are thus indicated by Manu:—

“The son of a wife by the Brahmá rite, if he performs virtuous acts, redeems from sin ten ancestors and ten descendants, and redeems likewise himself, making twenty-one persons in all. The son of a wife by the Daiva rite redeems seven ancestors and seven descendants. The son of a wife by the Arsharite redeems three ancestors and three descendants. The son of a wife by the Pryápatya rite redeems six ancestors and six descendants. By these four marriages are born sons illumined by the Veda, beloved by the learned, adorned with beauty, endowed with goodness, wealthy, renowned, blessed with all lawful enjoyments, performing every duty, and living a hundred years. But in the four other marriages, which are base marriages, are born sons, who act cruelly, speak falsely, abhor the Veda, and the duties prescribed therein.”<sup>26</sup>

Significance of  
Manu's appli-  
cation of the  
doctrine.

The foregoing observations of the Hindú law-giver on each of the eight forms of marriage furnish a curious illustration of the system of merits and demerits, which has already been explained as forming the ground-work of Brahmanism. The ingenuity of the authors of the code in dealing with this subject is well worthy of notice. According to the dogma inculcated, the merits of an individual ac-

<sup>25</sup> The custom of treating female captives as prize is as old as the hills. In this fashion Chryseis and Briseis were allotted to Agamemnon and Achilles, and the mother of Sisera is represented in the song of Deborah and Barak as expecting the return of the victorious army of her son with a damsel or two to every man. The brute violence of the custom was greatly mitigated in the Mosaic law, which ordered that a beautiful captive should shave her head and be permitted to lament her parents for a whole month, before a warrior could make her his wife.

<sup>26</sup> Manu, in 36—41

quied by an orthodox marriage will not only tend to his own deliverance from the punishment awarded to demerits, but in some cases will deliver his ancestors or his descendants from such evil consequences. Now, amongst the Hindús the marriage of a son is brought about by the parents; and although there is reason to believe that this custom was not in force in very ancient times, yet the obligation of a father as regards the marriage of his sons and daughters seems to have been generally acknowledged by Manu. The Hindú lawgiver accordingly enlists the self-interest of parents, by declaring that the merits of those who contract the better forms of marriage will be felt through a certain number of degrees in the ascending line; and in like manner he enlists the self-interest of the pair about to be married, by declaring that such merits will be also felt by the children through a corresponding number of generations in the descending line. In the same spirit it is asserted that the sons who are born from any of the prohibited marriages will turn out the vilest of characters

## CHAPTER IX.

### THE SRÁDDHA, OR FEAST OF THE DEAD.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Origin of the  
idea of propiti-  
ating the ghosts  
of ancestors  
with food

THE Sráddha, or feast of the dead, is perhaps one of the most primitive, as it certainly is one of the most simple, of all the Vedic rites that have been handed down from a period of remote antiquity to the present day. It originated in the crude idea already indicated, that the spirit or ghost had a separate existence after death, and that it might be gratified or propitiated with offerings of food. This idea certainly involved a belief in the prolonged existence of the spirit in a future state of being; but in its origin it had no connection with the doctrine of future rewards and punishments. It is rather to be traced to the old world belief, which has existed in all ages, and which still lingers in the imagination of even a philosophic and material generation, that the spirits of the departed hover at times near those persons and places which were associated with their earthly careers, and are gratified by any tribute of respect which may be paid to their memory.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> This idea finds exquisite expression in Collins's poem on the death of Thomson —

“Remembrance oft shall haunt the shore  
When Thames in summer wreaths is dress'd,  
And oft shall stay the dashing oar  
To bid his gentle spirit rest.”

The Sráddha, or feast of the dead, was thus in its earliest form a pleasing expression of natural religion, which long preceded the advent of a priestly caste, or the introduction of a systematic ritual. But, like every other popular ceremonial which has been handed down amongst the Hindús from the Vedic period, it has been recast in a Brahmanical mould; and it is in this latter form that the institution appears in the Epics as well as in the laws of Manu. It consists of three distinct rites:—

This Sráddha a pleasing expression of natural religion

Three distinct Sráddhas

1st, The Daily Sráddha, to be performed in propitiation of the Pítis, or ghosts of remote ancestors.

2nd, The Monthly Sráddha, to be performed in propitiation of the more immediate paternal ancestors.

3rd, The Funeral Sráddha, to be performed within a certain period after death, or the hearing of the death, of a near kinsman.

It should also be remarked that Sráddhas are likewise performed on other occasions, and notably at the celebration of any marriage ceremony.\*

Other Sráddhas

\* In a work entitled *Nirṇaya Sindhu*, Colebrooke found authority for classifying obsequies under twelve heads (1) Daily obsequies, either food or water only, in honour of ancestors in general, but excluding the Viswadevas (2) Obsequies for a special cause, that is, in honour of a kinsman recently deceased (3) Voluntary obsequies, performed by way of supererogation, for the greater benefit of the deceased (4) Obsequies for increase of prosperity performed upon any accession of wealth, and upon other joyful occasions (5) A Sráddha intended to introduce the ghost of a deceased kinsman to the rest of the ghosts (6) Obsequies performed on appointed days, such as that of new moon, full moon, sun's passage into a new sign, etc (7) A Sráddha to sanctify the food at an entertainment given to a company of Brahmans (8) One performed when stated numbers of Brahmans are fed at the cost of a person who needs purification from some defilement (9) A Sráddha preparatory to the celebration of any solemn rite, and considered as a part of such rite (10) A Sráddha in honour of deities (11) Oblations of clarified butter, previous to the undertaking of a distant journey (12) A Sráddha to sanctify a meal of flesh meat prepared simply for the sake of nourishment See Colebrooke's *Essays on the Religious Ceremonies of the Hindús*

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Daily Sráddha.

The daily Sráddha was an offering either of boiled rice, or of milk, roots, and fruit, or of water only, to the Pitris, or remote ancestors. This ceremonial has been already described,<sup>3</sup> and it will be only necessary to add that in modern practice it is considered sufficient to pour water out of a particular vessel every day as a drink-offering to the Pitris.

Monthly Sráddha considered under four heads.

The monthly Sráddha may be considered under four separate heads:—

1st, Ceremonies to be performed at a monthly Sráddha.

2nd, Persons to be entertained at the monthly Sráddha.

3rd, Persons to be excluded from the monthly Sráddha.

4th, Relative merits of the different kinds of victuals which may be offered at a monthly Sráddha.

1st, Ceremonies to be performed at a monthly Sráddha.

The ceremonies at the monthly Sráddha, as described in the *Institutes of Manu*, are of a very intelligible character; and seem to have been laid down for the purpose of converting the old Vedic offering of food and water into a great feast to the Bráhmans. The monthly Sráddha was performed on the dark day of the moon, that is, when the sun and moon are in conjunction. A sequestered spot was selected, such as was supposed to be pleasing to the ghosts; and then the invited Bráhmans were conducted to their allotted seats, which had been purified with kusa grass, and were presented with garlands of flowers and sweet perfumes. The officiating Bráhman then satisfied the three Vedic deities,—Agni, Soma, and Yama,—by pouring an oblation of ghee upon the sacred fire. He then

Oblation to the Vedic deities.

<sup>3</sup> See *ante*, chap. vii

proceeded to satisfy the ancestors of the giver of the Śrāddha. He first sprinkled water on the ground with his right hand, and then formed three balls or cakes of boiled rice, which are called pindas. One of these cakes is presented to each of the three immediate paternal ancestors, namely, the father, the grandfather, and the great-grandfather. The offering of pindas, however, is said to be extended to the fourth, fifth, and sixth degrees of paternal ancestors in the ascending line, by the simple process of wiping the hand with kusa grass after offering the pindas to the ancestors of the first, second, and third degree. This ceremony was followed by a great feast to the Brāhmans, consisting of vessels filled with rice, together with broths, potherbs, milk and curds, ghee, spiced puddings, milky messes of various sorts, roots of herbs, ripe fruits, and savoury meats; and during the feast passages were read from the Śāstras. The remains of the cakes were to be eaten by a cow, a Brāhman, or a kid; or to be cast into water or fire;<sup>4</sup> but the wife of the householder was to eat the middle of the three cakes, in order that she might become the mother of a son, who should be long-lived, famous, strong-minded, wealthy, and the father of many sons. When the Brāhmans had duly feasted, the householder gave a feast to the kinsmen of his father, and afterwards to the kinsmen of his mother.<sup>5</sup> In cases of poverty, however, the offering of water seems to be considered a sufficient satisfaction of the spirits of the six paternal ancestors.<sup>6</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

Offering of the  
three cakes of  
rice or pindas,  
to the paternal  
ancestors.

Feast to the  
Brāhmans

Disposal of the  
cakes

Feast of the  
kinsmen.

<sup>4</sup> A curious illustration of the popular belief as regards the mode by which the food was supposed to reach the ghosts, is to be found in the discussion between Rāma and Javāli. See Part iv chap xiv. See also the narrative of the second adventure of the horse in Vol. I. Part ii chap xii.

<sup>5</sup> Manu, iii 206—205

<sup>6</sup> Manu, iii 283

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V2nd. Persons to  
be invited to the  
Śrāddha.

As regards the persons to be invited to the monthly Śrāddha, great stress is laid by the code upon the entertainment of learned Brāhmins, and the exclusion of ignorant ones from the Śrāddha, but it is added that if such learned Brāhmins cannot be found, certain relatives may be entertained. This last expression is somewhat obscure, and may possibly imply that the Śrāddha was originally eaten by the kinsmen, and that the introduction of learned Brāhmins was a later idea.\*

3rd. Catalogue  
of persons to be  
excluded from  
the Śrāddha.

Manu's catalogue of the persons who were to be excluded from a monthly Śrāddha is of a very miscellaneous character, and is chiefly valuable from the illustrations which it furnishes of the Brahmanical notion of impure or immoral characters. The catalogue may be redistributed under four general heads, according to the four different grounds upon which the individuals specified have been respectively excluded, namely, moral, religious, physical, and professional.

(1.) Persons dis-  
qualified on mo-  
ral grounds.

The persons to be excluded from a Śrāddha on moral grounds, are —

“A Brahmachari who has not read the Veda, a Brahman who has committed theft, one who opposes his preceptor, a younger brother married before the elder, an elder brother not married before the younger, one who subsists by the wealth of many relatives, the husband of a Sudra, the son of a twice married woman, a husband in whose house an adulterer dwells, one who teaches the Veda for wages, one who gives wages to such a teacher, the pupil of a Sudra, the Sudra preceptor, a rude speaker, the son of an adulteress born either before or after the death of her husband, a forsaker of his mother, father, or pre-



ceptor without just cause; a man who forms a connection with great sinners; a house-burner; a giver of poison; an eater of food offered by the son of an adulterer; a suborner of perjury; a wrangler with his father; a drinker of intoxicating spirits; one of evil repute; a cheat; the husband of a younger sister married before the elder; an injurer of his friend; a father instructed in the Veda by his own son; one who diverts water-courses; a seducer of damsels; a man who delights in mischief; a Bráhmaṇ living as a Súdṛa; one who observes neither approved customs nor prescribed duties; a constant and importunate asker of favours; one who is despised by the virtuous; the husband of a twice-married woman; a Bráhmaṇ of bad manners; and an ignorant Bráhmaṇ."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

The persons to be excluded from a Sráddha on religious grounds, are:—

(2) Persons disqualified on religious grounds

"Those who profess to disbelieve in a future state; a Bráhmaṇ who has performed many sacrifices for other men; those who worship images for gain; one who deserts the sacred fire; one who omits the five great sacraments; a contemner of Bráhmaṇs; a despiser of scripture; and one who sacrifices only to the inferior gods."

The persons to be excluded from a Sráddha on physical grounds, are:—

(3) Persons disqualified on physical grounds.

"Those with whitlows on their nails; those with black-yellow teeth; a consumptive man; a man who has lost an eye; a man with elephantiasis; an impotent man; an epileptic man; one with erysipelas; a leper; a lunatic; a blind man; a club-footed man."

The persons to be excluded from a Sráddha because of their trade or profession, are:—

(4) Persons disqualified on account of their trade or profession.

"Physicians; gamesters; usurers; dancers; sellers of meat; those who live by low traffic; a public servant of the whole town; a public servant of the Raja; a feeder of cattle a seller of the moon-plant; a navigator of the ocean; :

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

poetical entomias; an oil man; one who employs gamblers for his own benefit; a seller of liquors; a maker of bows and arrows; the keeper of a gambling-house; a common informer; a tamer of elephants, bulls, horses, or camels; one who subsists by astrology; a keeper of birds; one who teaches the use of arms; one who builds houses for gain; a messenger; a planter of trees for pay; a breeder of sporting dogs, a falconer; one who supports himself by tillage; a shepherd; a keeper of buffaloes, and one who removes dead bodies for pay "

Punishment for  
inviting dis-  
qualified per-  
sons

The food that is given to such men at a Sráddha becomes base and impure; and the giver of the Sráddha will be punished in the next life.<sup>a</sup>

Significance of  
the catalogues  
of disqualifica-  
tions

Confusion of sin  
and disease.

The foregoing catalogues of persons who are to be excluded from a Sráddha are very suggestive. In the first place it will be noticed that Manu classifies immorality, heresy, and deviation from caste rule, with physical evils, such as leprosy, blindness, and elephantiasis; and this intermingling is more perceptible in the original text, where no attempt has been made to separate the precepts under different heads. This strange confusion of sin and disease appears to have originated in the old idea, connected with the dogma of the transmigration of the soul, that disease was the punishment of sins committed either in this life or in a previous state of existence.

Peculiar usages

The peculiar usages which seem to have originated some of the precepts are also well worthy of notice. Thus it has been seen that it was considered wrong for a younger brother or a younger sister to be married before an elder brother or an elder sister;

Prohibition of  
the marriage of  
a younger brother  
or sister before  
that of an  
elder brother  
or sister

<sup>a</sup> Manu, iii. 150 *et seq* The punishments dogmatically awarded by Manu to sinners in the next life are without significance, excepting so far as they illustrate the doctrine of merits and demerits already explained. Accordingly they are only given in the above text in a general and abstract form.

a notion which could only find a place amongst a people who believed that the marriage of a daughter was a duty which every parent was bound to fulfil.<sup>9</sup> It has also been seen that a woman who married a second husband was held in great abhorrence; and to the present day the marriage of a Hindú widow, even when her first husband has died before the marriage has been consummated, is regarded with a national antipathy which education and legislation have done but little to remove. It is also somewhat curious that Manu should exclude a constant and importunate asker of favours from a Sráddha; from which it would appear that askers of favours were as constant and importunate in the age of Manu as they are in our own time.

Amongst the persons whom Manu directed should be excluded on religious grounds are to be found those who sacrifice only to the "inferior gods." This expression of "inferior gods" seems to suggest a religious opposition. Indeed it is not impossible that Manu is alluding to the old Vedic deities, who were treated by the Bráhmans as subordinate to their god Brahma. The injunction against the Bráhmans who performed many sacrifices for other men, may have been aimed at the mercenary priests who sacrificed for hire. The injunction against those who worshipped images for the sake of gain is involved in more obscurity, inasmuch as there does not appear to be any satisfactory reference to images in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; although it is easy

\* The same idea finds expression in the marriage of Jacob to Leah, when Jacob was really in love with the younger sister Rachel, and under the idea that Rachel was to be his bride.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART V to conceive that such a form of worship must sooner or later find expression

Prohibition of  
Kshatriyas

Gambling

Sellers of wine  
and flesh meat

Makers of weapons  
and tamers  
of horses

The exclusion of men who followed certain trades or professions from the entertainment given at a *Sraddha*, furnishes in like manner some striking illustrations of the old opposition between the priest and the soldier, the *Bráhmaṇa* and the *Kshatriya*, which seems to be more or less identical with the opposition between the *Bráhmaṇas* and the Vedic Aryans. Thus amongst the ancient *Kshatriyas* gambling was a favourite pastime, and certainly was not regarded as a vice, excepting when carried to a vicious excess and terminating in the ruin of a family. Even *Yudhishtira*, who is represented in the *Mahá Bháratá* as an incarnation of *Dharma*, or goodness, and who was apparently regarded as a model *Raja*, is actually said to have disguised himself as a *Bráhmaṇa*, and in that guise to have taught the art of dice to the *Raja* of *Várita*. But *Manu* excludes from the *Sraddha* every gambler, and every man who keeps a gambling house or employs gamblers. Then again the *Kshatriyas* revelled in wine and flesh meat, but *Manu* excludes the sellers of wine and meat from the *Sraddha*. The most significant precepts however are those which exclude the makers of bows and arrows, the tamers of horses, and those who taught the use of arms, for the bow was the favourite weapon of the *Kshatriyas* and the taming of horses was regarded as a royal accomplishment, whilst two of the most patriarchal characters in the *Máhu Bháratá*, *Bhishma* and *Drona*, are said to have trained *Pándu* and *Dítarashtra*, and their sons, the *Pandavas* and *Kauravas*, in the use of different kinds of weapons. The exclusion of navigators is equally curious. *Ná*

vigation was certainly known to the Vedic Aryans, and is even recognized by Manu;<sup>10</sup> but it has always been regarded with peculiar horror by the Bráhmans; and consequently it is referred to the three first Yugas or ages, but discountenanced in the age of Kali. The exclusion of physicians seems to have originated in the idea that they must be impure from having to deal with impure things.

As regards the food to be offered to the ghosts at the monthly Sráddha, the precepts in Manu are also significant. The old primitive custom of offering fish and flesh is sufficiently recognized, but at the same time it is urged that the ghosts prefer a more simple and Brahmanical diet, such as milk and honey.<sup>11</sup> At a later period it was declared that the feasting on flesh-meat at a Sráddha was forbidden in the Kali age.<sup>12</sup>

The funeral Sráddha, which is performed after the death of a kinsman, is in every respect similar to the monthly Sráddha, and consequently calls for no detailed description. The code lays down certain laws as regards the purification of the survivors, but they are devoid of historical significance. The

4th Relative merits of different victuals offered at a Sráddha.

Funeral Sráddha

<sup>10</sup> Manu, viii 156, 157

<sup>11</sup> "Offerings of the following victuals are said to be capable of satisfying the ancestors of men for different periods. *Tela, 'c. & sesamum, 'sedsj, 'ana, 'haricy,* black lentils or vetches, water, roots, and fruit, given with the prescribed ceremonies will satisfy the ancestors of men for an entire month. Fish will satisfy them for two months, venison for three months, mutton for four months, birds, such as the twice born may eat, for five months, kid's flesh for six months, spotted deer for seven months, the antelope for eight months, the ram for nine months, the flesh of wild boars and wild buffaloes for ten months, horses and tortoises for eleven months. But the milk of cows, and food made of that milk, will satisfy the ancestor for a whole year. The Pitris say — 'Oh! may that man be born in our line who will give us honey and pure butter, both on the thirteenth day of the moon, and when the shadow of an elephant falls to the east'" Manu, iii 266—274

<sup>1</sup> See appendix to Manu, Haughton's translation

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Modifications of  
the old Vedic be-  
lief in the Srád-  
dha by the Bráh-  
mans

ceremonies which accompanied and followed the death of Mahárája Dasaratha sufficiently illustrate the popular ideas and customs which still prevail<sup>13</sup>

It will be seen from the foregoing data that the old Vedic belief in the worship of ancestors has been strangely Brahmanized by the compilers of the code. The monthly Sráddha, whilst ostensibly celebrated in honour of deceased ancestors, is in reality nothing more than an entertainment given to the Bráhmans. Again, the original idea appears to have originated in a childlike belief that the food and water sustain and refresh the spirit of the departed; whilst, according to the more modern Brahmanical doctrine, the performance of a Sráddha delivers the soul of the dead person from the custody of Yama, the judge of the dead, and translates it to the heaven of the Pitris, or ancestors; there to remain until the merits of its previous life on earth are all exhausted, and then to return again to earth and re animate another body. Thus it is the current belief that without the Sráddha the soul of the deceased cannot ascend to the heaven of the Pitris and take up its abode there

<sup>13</sup> See *ante* Part iv chap xi and xii. The celebration of these Sráddhas is frequently attended by a vast expenditure. The Bráhmans are feasted in great numbers, whilst money and food are lavishly distributed amongst the guests, and also amongst the lower classes of the community. At the Sráddha of Ramdoolal Dey, five lakhs of rupees, or £50,000, were expended. His biographer, Biboo Grish Chunder Ghose, thus describes the proceedings on that occasion:—"The Bráhman and the beggar overflowed in Calcutta at this solemn ceremony. To the former gold and silver, and elephants and horses, and budgerows and boats and carriages and palanquins, were given away with princely munificence, to the latter upwards of three lakhs of rupees were distributed. On no one was less than a rupee bestowed, and if a beggar woman was found to be with child, a second rupee was given to her. Did a beggar bring a bird in his hand, the bird obtained its alms equally with its master."

## CHAPTER X

### THE FOUR CASTES

THE social fabric of the Hindús rests upon the caste system, namely, the division of the community, without regard to wealth or ability, into the four great classes of priest, soldier, merchant, and cultivator, or Bráhmaṇ, Kshatriya, Vaisya, and Súdra. But besides this distinction of caste which dismembers society, there is a division of epochs or stages in the existence of the individual, which maps out the life of every twice-born man into four periods, namely, that of student, householder, hermit, and devotee. Accordingly the present chapter will be devoted to the consideration of the caste system and caste laws, which regulate more or less the social life of the Hindús; whilst the subsequent chapter will be devoted to the consideration of the four successive stages in the life of the individual man

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART I

Division of classes of society into four castes, and of lives of individuals into four stages

The probable origin of the four castes of Bráhmaṇs, Kshatriyas, Vaisyas, and Súdras has already been briefly indicated. It has been observed<sup>1</sup> that a broad line of demarcation, which finds expression in the investiture of the thread, separates the three twice-born castes, who were apparently Aryan conquerors, from the Súdras, who were apparently a conquered

Probable origin of the four castes.

<sup>1</sup> Vol I Introduction

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Traces of caste  
in the Vedic age

Stratification of  
the caste sys-  
tem in the Brah-  
manic age

race. The inference has accordingly been drawn that the Súdras were the original inhabitants of the land, who had been reduced to a servile condition by their Aryan conquerors. Traces of this distinction are to be found in the Vedic hymns; and indeed Manu himself refers the origin of caste to the Aryan settlement on the Saraswatí. But in the Brahmanic age, which is the special subject of the code of Manu, the caste system was firmly rooted in the minds of the people as an article of religious belief; and it was associated with every religious act and duty, whilst enforced by public law as well as by moral and social rule. This distinction may be thus indicated :—

Bráhmans, or priests.

Kshatriyas, or soldiers and Rajas.

Vaisyas, or merchants and farmers.

Súdras, or the servile class who  
tilled the soil.

} Termed the  
"twice-born"  
from wearing the  
sacred thread.

} Never invest-  
ed with the  
thread.

Vedic myth that  
the four castes  
were created  
from the limbs  
of Purusha.

The earliest account of the fourfold origin of caste appears in one of the later hymns of the Rig-Veda, known as the Purusha hymn, because it refers to Purusha, or the Supreme Spirit, who may be identified with Brahma. In this hymn the gods and Rishis are supposed to offer up Purusha as a sacrifice, and to dismember him for the purpose of creating the world out of his limbs. This is an ancient conception, and, as already indicated, finds expression in the Scandinavian mythology.\* But Purusha was a spirit, and accordingly some difficulty appears to

\* See *op'c.*, p. 433, note



have been felt in assigning bodily members to a spiritual being. Indeed the Sanscrit commentator upon the passage explains that the gods did not actually offer sacrifice and bind Purusha as a victim; but that they offered mental sacrifice and contemplated Purusha as a victim.<sup>3</sup> The entire hymn has been translated by Dr. Muir, but the following extract contains all that refers to the four castes:<sup>4</sup>—

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART I

Extracts from  
the Purusha  
hymn.

“When they formed [or offered up] Purusha, into how many parts did they divide him? What was his mouth? What were his arms? What were called his thighs and feet?”

“The Brahman was his mouth, the Rajamanyu [i.e. Kshatriya] was made his arms, that which was the Vaisya was his thighs; the Sûdra sprang from his feet”

Now whilst this hymn may possibly indicate the inferiority of the Sûdra to the three twice born castes, it can scarcely be said to establish the supremacy of the Brâhman over the Kshatriya. On the contrary, the myth only explains the mutual relation of the castes towards each other, and that too in figurative language which could scarcely offend the pride of the haughtiest Kshatriya, for the latter would readily admit that the Brâhman was the mouth that promulgated Brahmanism, whilst they themselves were regarded as the arm that protected the common-  
weal.

No Brahmanical  
superiority as-  
serted in the  
Purusha hymn.

In the code of Manu however, which is the full expression of Brahmanical assumption, the significance of the Vedic myth is altogether distorted for the purpose of setting the Brâhman above the Kshatriya. Instead of the twice-born castes forming the

Vedic myth dis-  
torted in Manu's  
code, to repre-  
sent the Brâh-  
man superior  
to the Kshatri-  
yas

<sup>3</sup> Mahâdhara, quoted by Dr. Muir

<sup>4</sup> Muir's Sanscrit Texts, vol. 1 chap. 1 sect. 2

mouth, arms, and thighs of the Purusha, they are said to have sprung from those members, and the new idea is introduced that the mouth is better than the arm. *Manu* says —

“In order to preserve the universe, *Brahma* caused the *Brahman* to proceed from his mouth, the *Kshatriya* to proceed from his arm, the *Vaisya* to proceed from his thigh, and the *Sudra* to proceed from his foot. And *Brahmá* directed that the duties of the *Brahmans* should be reading and teaching the *Veda*, sacrificing and assisting others to sacrifice, giving alms if they be rich, and receiving alms if they be poor. And *Brahma* directed that the duties of the *Kshatriyas* should be to defend the people, to give alms, to sacrifice, to read the *Veda*, and to keep their passions under control. And he directed that the duties of the *Vaisyas* should be to keep herds of cattle, to give alms, to read the *Sastras*, to carry on trade, to lend money at interest, and to cultivate land. And he directed that the *Sudras* should serve all the three mentioned castes, namely, the *Brahmans*, the *Kshatriyas*, and the *Vaisyas*, and that he should not depreciate them or make light of them. Since the *Brahman* sprang from the mouth, which is the most excellent part of *Brahmá*, and since he is the first born and possesses the *Veda*, he is by right the chief of the whole creation. Him *Brahma* produced from his own mouth that he might perform holy rites, that he might present ghee to the gods, and cakes of rice to the *Pitris* or progenitors of mankind.”

*Brahmans* the  
chief of the  
creation.

The foregoing account calls for no further comment. The statement that the *Brahmans* are the chief of the creation is simply an assumption, which the *Hindú* lawgiver continues to teach and enforce throughout the entire code.

Expression of  
caste distinctions.

The system of caste finds expression in every act of *Hindú* life, and like the doctrine of merits and

demerits, imparts a religious significance to every ordinary proceeding. In its more general form it simply indicates the different professions of priest, soldier, merchant, and cultivator. Thus in ordinary salutations, or polite inquiries, a Bráhmaṇ was to be asked whether his devotion had prospered; a Kshatriya whether he suffered from his wounds; a Vaisya whether his wealth was secure; and a Súdra whether he was in good health<sup>6</sup> In administering oaths to witnesses, however, a far wider distinction is laid down between members of either of the three twice-born castes and a Súdra. Thus a Bráhmaṇ was to swear by his veracity; a Kshatriya by his weapons, horse, or elephant; and a Vaisya by his kine, grain, or gold; but a Súdra was to imprecate upon his own head the guilt of every possible crime if he did not speak the truth<sup>7</sup> The law as regards caste mar-

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

In salutations

In administering oaths

Marriages between castes

<sup>6</sup> Manu ii 127

<sup>7</sup> Manu, viii 113 —The following texts respecting perjury, and the examination of witnesses, are very significant —“ When the witnesses are all assembled in the middle of the court room in the presence of the plaintiff and defendant, the judge, before examining them, should address them as follows —‘ What you know to have been transacted in the matter before us between the two parties, declare at large and with truth, for your evidence in this cause is required ’ The witness who is truthful will attain the highest fame here below, and the most exalted seats of happiness hereafter, such testimony is revered by Brahma But the witness who speaks falsely will be fast bound under water in the coils of Varuna and be wholly deprived of power during a hundred transmigrations The soul itself is its own witness, the soul itself is its own refuge, let no one then offend his conscious soul, for it is the supreme internal witness of men ’ The sinful have said in their hearts —‘ None sees us!’ But the gods distinctly see them, and so does the spirit within their breasts The twice-born witnesses should be called upon by the judge to declare the truth in the presence of the divinity with their faces turned either to the north or to the east To a Bráhmaṇ the judge should say —‘ Declare!’ To a Kshatriya he should say —‘ Declare the truth!’ To the Vaisya he should compare perjury to the crime of stealing kine, grain, or gold. To the Súdra he should compare perjury to every crime, in the following language —‘ Whatever places of torture have been prepared for the murderer of a Bráhmaṇ, for the murderer of a woman or child, for the injurer of a friend, or for an ungrateful man, have also been ordained for that witness who gives false evidence If you deviate from the truth, the fruit of every virtuous act which

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

riages betrays a conflict of usages, inasmuch as it recognizes polygamy, and seems to indicate that the Kshatriyas occasionally insisted upon taking the fair daughters of inferior castes to be their wives. It was enacted that a Bráhmaṇ, a Kshatriya, or a Vaisya should in the first instance marry a damsel of his own caste; and if, after fulfilling that duty, one or the other should be driven by inclination to marry a damsel of an inferior caste, he might do so in the direct order of the castes beneath him. This law is curiously artificial, and is evidently aimed against all marriages between castes. Men of the twice-born castes were assured that if through weakness of intellect they irregularly married women of the Súdra caste, they would very soon degrade their families to the condition of Súdras. "If a Bráhmaṇ married a daughter of a Súdra as his first wife, that wife would have to prepare the sacrifices to the gods and the oblations to the Pitris, and neither the gods nor the Pitris would eat such offerings. For the crime of that Bráhmaṇ there was no expiation."<sup>8</sup> It was, however, ordered that in all marriage rites between different castes the bride was to take in her hand an emblem of the caste to which she belonged. Thus a bride of the warrior caste was to hold an arrow; a bride of the merchant caste was to hold a whip; whilst a bride of the lowest caste of all was to hold the skirt of a mantle.<sup>9</sup> Such arbitrary laws

Marriage with a first wife of a low caste prohibited

Caste emblems

Later prohibi-

you have committed since your birth will depart from you to the dogs. The man who gives false evidence shall go naked, shorn, and blind, and be tormented with hunger and thirst, and beg food with a potsherd at the door of his enemy. If he answer one question falsely he shall tumble headlong into hell in utter darkness. Even if he gives imperfect testimony, and asserts a fact which he has not seen, he will suffer pain like a man who eats fish and swallows the sharp bones." Manu, viii 73—9

<sup>8</sup> Manu, iii. 12—19

<sup>9</sup> Manu, iii. 41

naturally tended to throw discredit upon all marriages between castes; and in the present day all such marriages have fallen into disuse and are strictly prohibited.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

tion of all marriages between different castes.

The more important illustrations of the caste system, which are to be found in Manu, may be grouped under five different heads, viz. :—

Five groups of illustrations of the caste system

1st, The veneration in which Bráhmans are to be held.

2nd, The privileges which are to be enjoyed by Bráhmans.

3rd, The occupations or mode of life, to be followed by Bráhmans.

4th, The restrictions as regards diet which are to be observed by all men of the twice-born castes.

5th, The scale of punishment for cases of slander between men of different castes.

The degree of veneration in which the Bráhman was to be held by all other men is explicitly laid down in the code of Manu. The Bráhman, it is said, sprang from the mouth of Brahmá. He was entitled to the whole of the universe by the right of primogeniture. He possessed the Veda, and was alone permitted to teach the laws of Manu.<sup>10</sup> By his sacrifices and imprecations he could destroy a Raja in a moment, together with all his troops, elephants, horses, and chariots.<sup>11</sup> In his wrath he could frame new worlds, with new gods and new mortals.<sup>12</sup> Although convicted of every possible crime, he was never to be put to death by a Raja; he might be banished from the realm, but no injury was to be inflicted on himself or his property.<sup>13</sup> A twice-born

1st, Veneration for Bráhmans

<sup>10</sup> Manu, i. 91—101.

<sup>11</sup> Manu, ix. 315.

<sup>12</sup> Manu, ix. 313

<sup>13</sup> Manu, viii. 380.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

---

man, who barely assaulted a Bráhmaṇ with the intention of hurting him, would be whirled about for a century in the hell termed Tamasa. He who smote a Bráhmaṇ with only a blade of grass would be born an inferior quadruped during twenty-one transmigrations. But he who shed the blood of a Bráhmaṇ, saving in battle, would be mangled by animals in his next birth for as many years as there were particles of dust rolled up by the blood of the Bráhmaṇ.<sup>14</sup> If a Súdra sat upon the same seat with a Bráhmaṇ, he was to be gashed in the part offending.<sup>15</sup>

2nd. Privileges  
of Bráhmans

The rights and privileges to be enjoyed by the Bráhmaṇ in the state were of a very high character, but were scarcely connected with the idea of nobility. The Raja was to appoint a Bráhmaṇ to be chief over all the Ministers; and in him the Raja was to place his fullest confidence.<sup>16</sup> The Raja was to appoint one Bráhmaṇ to be his Purohita, or family priest; and another Bráhmaṇ to be his Ritwij or performer of sacrifices.<sup>17</sup> The administration of justice was to be largely intrusted to the Bráhmans, and a court of four Bráhmans was called the Court of Brahma, or the Court of four faces; the god Brahma being always represented with four faces, corresponding to the four Vedas, of which he was said to be the author.<sup>18</sup> Treasure trove was to be divided between the Raja and the Bráhmans; but if a Bráhmaṇ found the treasure none of it went to the Raja.<sup>19</sup> The property of Bráhmans was never to be escheated by the Raja. On failure of heirs the wealth of all

<sup>14</sup> Manu, iv 163—168

<sup>16</sup> Manu, vii 58, 60

<sup>18</sup> Manu, viii 1, 9, 11

<sup>15</sup> Manu, viii 251

<sup>17</sup> Manu, vii 78

<sup>19</sup> Manu, viii 37—39

other castes might be taken by the Raja; but that of the Bráhmaṇ was to be divided amongst his caste.<sup>20</sup> Above all, the Bráhmaṇ, provided he was learned in the Veda, was to enjoy a perfect immunity from taxation. Under no circumstances whatever was a Raja to levy a tax upon such a Bráhmaṇ, or permit him to be hungry. On the other hand, the Raja was to provide for the maintenance of the Bráhmaṇ, and protect him as a father protects a son.<sup>21</sup>

As regards the mode of life to be followed by a Bráhmaṇ, it is laid down in the code that he might gain his subsistence by lawful gleaning and gathering, by what was given to him in alms, and by tillage. He was, however, to receive no gifts whatever from bad men or from Súdras. If deeply distressed he might support life by traffic and money lending, but never by service which is styled dog-living.<sup>22</sup> If unable to subsist as a Bráhmaṇ, he might adopt the profession of a Kshatriya or Vaisya; but he was to avoid tilling the earth, for the iron-mouthed pieces of wood wounded the earth and the creatures dwelling in it. In like manner he was not to sell flesh-meat, or spirituous liquors, or other articles which are expressly prohibited.<sup>23</sup> A Bráhmaṇ was never to indulge in any sensual gratification, nor follow any pursuit which might impede his reading the Veda; but he was to bring his apparel, his discourse, and his frame of mind to a conformity with his age, his occupation, his property, his divine knowledge, and his family. He was not to eat with his wife, nor to look at her while she was eating. He

<sup>20</sup> Manu, ix. 188, 189<sup>21</sup> Manu, vii. 133—135<sup>22</sup> Manu, iv. 1, 6, xi. 194—197, xiii.<sup>23</sup> Manu, x. 81—89

was never to dwell in a city which was governed by a Raja who was a Súdra; nor in one surrounded by men who neglected their duties; nor in one abounding with professed heretics; nor in one swarming with low-born outcastes. He was never to play at dice; nor gain wealth by music, or by any act which pleased the sense.<sup>24</sup>

As regards diet the precepts of Manu are explicit, although somewhat contradictory. A Bráhma-man was to carefully avoid all garlic, onions, leeks, and mushrooms; all bad milk; and all rice and bread which had not been first offered to some deity.<sup>25</sup> "Beasts and birds," says Manu, "may be slain by Bráhmans for sacrifice, since Agastya did this of old; and no doubt in the funeral sacrifices by holy men, and in oblations by Bráhmans and Kshatriyas, the flesh of such beasts and birds as might be legally eaten, was presented to the gods. A Bráhma-man, however, should never eat the flesh of cattle which has not been consecrated by mantras; but should he earnestly desire to taste such meat, he may gratify his fancy by forming the image of some beasts with dough or chickened ghee."<sup>26</sup>

The general ordinances laid down by Manu, as regards the diet of the twice-born castes, is characterized throughout by that extraordinary spirit of compromise between opposite institutions and usages, which so largely prevails throughout the code. That milk and vegetables were considered as the staple of Brahmanical food seems to be proved by the prohibition as regards bad milk and particular vegeta-

<sup>24</sup> Manu, iv. 15-84<sup>25</sup> Manu, v. 5-10.<sup>26</sup> Manu, v. 36-42.



bles, from which all Bráhmans are called upon to abstain. In like manner flesh-meat would appear to be considered as the staple food of other twice-born men, namely, the Kshatriyas and Vaisyas, from the prohibitions as regards particular animals and birds, from which all twice-born men should abstain. This conclusion is not perhaps logically proved, inasmuch as all twice-born men, including Bráhmans as well as Kshatriyas and Vaisyas, are required to abstain from particular flesh and birds. Indeed, in Bengal there are many Bráhmans in the present day, who eat the meat which has been offered to Durgá or Káli. But according to the national idea the Bráhman is supposed to live on milk and vegetables, whilst the Kshatriya and Vaisya may eat mutton and goats' flesh; and this idea finds full expression in the precepts of Manu, although the attempt to arrive at a compromise between the conflicting usages renders the language somewhat equivocal. That flesh-meat was repugnant to Manu is manifest from the condemnation which he pronounces against every one who is connected, however remotely, with the slaughter of an animal, either by consenting to it, or killing the animal, or cutting it up, or selling the flesh, or buying it, or cooking it, or serving it up, or eating it. Even whilst admitting that no sin is committed by eating flesh-meat after it has been<sup>27</sup> offered to the gods and Pitris, Manu declares that the man who abstains from it, will obtain a reward equal to that of a man who has performed a hundred Aswamedhas<sup>28</sup>. But still it was only natural that the Brahmanical lawgiver should exhibit some amount

Opposition between the milk and vegetable diet of the Bráhmans and the flesh-meat of the Kshatriyas.

Repugnance of Manu to flesh-meat.

Toleration of the usages of Kshatriyas and Vaisyas.

<sup>27</sup> Manu, v. 11—18, 48—53

<sup>28</sup> Manu, v. 54.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

of toleration towards the usages of those twice-born men, to whom the Brāhmanas chiefly looked for presents and maintenance. Moreover, he had to deal with another difficulty, namely, the old animal sacrifices of the Vedic period, and to defend those sacrifices from the denunciations of the Buddhists. Accordingly, notwithstanding the simple character of the offerings to the gods and Pitris in treating of religious duties, he does permit and even enjoin sacrifices of cattle on certain occasions, and allow twice-born men to eat the flesh-meat which has been thus consecrated.<sup>29</sup> Other texts carry the spirit of toleration still further. Manu declares that there is no sin in lawfully eating flesh-meat, in drinking wine, and in caressing women, as all men are prone to those enjoyments; but he adds that men who refrain from such enjoyments will obtain a signal reward in another life.<sup>30</sup> The simplicity of Manu upon those points is truly charming, and the doctrine is not unknown in western systems of morality. It may be put in the following form. Certain pleasures are lawful, but still they are pleasures; if therefore a man abstain from such pleasures now, he will enjoy other pleasures hereafter. It should however be added that later Brahmanical legislators prohibited altogether the use of flesh-meat, either at entertainments to guests, or at the Śrāddhas, or feasts of the dead; on the ground that whilst they were permitted in the earlier ages of mankind, they were forbidden in the present age of Kālī.<sup>31</sup>

Abstinence from lawful pleasures to be rewarded in another life.

5th, Scale of punishments for slander

The scale of punishments in cases of slander

<sup>29</sup> Manu, v, 26—48

<sup>30</sup> Manu, v 56

<sup>31</sup> See Manu, appendix to the English translation.

furnishes a still more distinct idea of the caste system as conceived in the time of the code. A Kshatriya who slandered a Bráhmaṇ was to be fined a hundred panas; for the same crime a Vaisya was to be fined a hundred and fifty or two hundred panas, but a Súdra was to be whipped.<sup>32</sup> On the other hand, if a Bráhmaṇ slandered a Kshatriya he was to be fined fifty panas; if he slandered a Vaisya he was to be fined twenty-five panas; but if he slandered a Súdra he was only to be fined twelve panas. If, however, a Súdra insulted any man of the twice-born castes with gross invectives he was to have his tongue slit, if he mentioned the name and caste of the individual with contumely, an iron style ten fingers long was to be made red-hot and thrust into his mouth; and if through pride he dared to instruct a Bráhmaṇ respecting his duty, the Raja was to order that hot oil should be poured into his mouth and ear.<sup>33</sup>

In addition to these four castes there were a large number of outcastes, of whom the lowest were called Chandálas. The Chandálas were said to be the sons of a Súdra by a Bráhmaṇi woman;<sup>34</sup> but probably they merely formed the lowest class of the community, and the origin of such hated unions as those indicated were condemned to belong to that class "Chandálas," says Manu, "must dwell without the town. Their sole wealth must be dogs and asses; their clothes must consist of the mantles of deceased persons; their dishes must be broken pots; and

Chandálas or  
outcastes

<sup>32</sup> The pana was a copper weight, or a copper coin, of about 200 grains, and was probably equivalent to the modern piece, or something less than a half penny. See *Princeps's Essays*.

<sup>33</sup> Manu, viii. 266—276

<sup>34</sup> Manu, x. 12, 23, 30

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

---

their ornaments must consist of rusty iron.- No one who regards his duties must hold any intercourse with them; and they must marry only amongst themselves. By day they may roam about for the purposes of work, and be distinguished by the badges of the Raja; and they must carry out the corpse of any one who dies without kindred. They should always be employed to slay those who are sentenced by the law to be put to death; and they may take the clothes of the slain, their beds, and their ornaments.”<sup>35</sup>

It is scarcely necessary to add, that subsequent to the time of Manu the number of castes became largely increased, and every hereditary calling became regarded as a separate caste. But still every Hindú is regarded as belonging to one or other of the four great castes; or else to one of those dubious classes of the community, which has caste laws of its own, although they cannot be referred to either of the four great castes which are specified by Manu.

---

<sup>35</sup> Manu, x 51-53.

## CHAPTER XI

### THE FOUR STAGES OF LIFE

Two of the main objects which the compilers of the Brahmanical code appear to have had in view have now been unfolded, namely.—

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Two objects of the code of Manu already unfolded.

1st, The authoritative promulgation of a ritual which should include the polytheistic worship of the Vedic deities, and at the same time superadd the dogma of rewards and punishments in association with the monotheistic worship of the god Brahma.

1st The establishment of a national ritual

2nd, To enforce a strict code of caste laws, which should for ever separate the twice-born castes from the Sûdras, whilst establishing the ascendancy of the Brahmanical hierarchy over the whole.

2nd The establishment of the caste system

A third and equally important measure may now be taken into consideration; namely, the grand effort to map out the life of every man of the twice-born castes into four distinct periods, corresponding to four distinct phases of human existence; that of a student, a householder, a hermit, and a devotee. The object of this extraordinary division of individual existence seems to have been to bring every action of civil and family life into the area of religious duty. That such an arbitrary disposition of the individual should be universally accepted could scarcely be expected. The student may be eager

Question of four stages in the life of individuals treated in the present chapter

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

---

Four stages or  
orders still  
recognized but  
not accepted.

Ideal of Brah-  
manical life.

The four orders.

1 THE BRAH-  
MACHÁRI, or  
student

to throw off the restrictions of pupilage, and to undertake the duties of a husband and a father; but the householder, as he advances in years, is not always prepared to sacrifice his domestic happiness for the sake of becoming a hermit or a devotee. Still the system of the four orders, as it is called, is universally recognized by the Hindús; and as the pious householder finds old age creeping upon him, he devotes more and more time and thought to his religious duties, with the view of approximating his life as far as possible with that of a devotee; and with the hope that in so doing he may expiate his sins by penances and good works, and obtain after death a happier existence in the next state of being. In other words, the ideal of Brahmanical life is always before the Hindú, and indeed is pleasing to his imagination. As a student the Bráhman must acquire a perfect knowledge of his duties; as a householder he must practise all those duties in the character of a married man and the father of a household; as a hermit he must mortify his body by penances and religious austerities; and as a devotee he must pass his remaining years in the contemplation of that Divine Essence in which he hopes to be ultimately absorbed, or of that Divine Spirit with whom he hopes ultimately to dwell.

The names of these four orders are as follows:—  
1st, The Brahmachári, or student in the Veda.  
2nd, The Grihastha, or married man and householder.  
3rd, The Vánaprastha, or hermit.  
4th, Sannyási, or devotee.

The life of a Brahmachári commences from the day of investiture with the thread; but prior to that

Rules prior to  
the investiture  
with the thread

Significance of  
the thread.

Details

Nature of the  
thread of the  
three twice born  
castes

Age of investiture

ceremony certain rites are ordained, which are performed without the concurrence or knowledge of the child, and which are devoid of all historical significance. These rites consist in the purification of the babe, the giving it a name, the feeding it with rice in the sixth month from its birth, and the shaving of the head.<sup>1</sup> But the investiture with the thread is of the utmost importance in the life of the twice-born. The thread is the symbol which distinguishes the twice-born man from the Súdya; and the investiture is a second birth, which introduces the twice-born youth to a religious life, and sanctifies him for the study of the Veda.

As regards the ceremony itself, a pleasing illustration is to be found in the story of the childhood of Ráma; but some important additional data are furnished by the code of Manu. The thread of the Bráhma is made of cotton, and is put over the head in three strings. The thread of the Kshatriya is made of hemp; but in more ancient times it seems to have been made of a strip of antelope's skin.<sup>2</sup> The thread of the Vaisya is made of wool. Considerable latitude is allowed as regards the age at which the ceremony should take place. The investiture ought to be carried out in the eighth year of a Bráhma, the eleventh year of a Kshatriya, and the twelfth year of a Vaisya. It might, however, be performed as early as the fifth year of a Bráhma,

<sup>1</sup> Manu ii 27—35

<sup>2</sup> See the narrative of the investiture of Ráma, *ante*, Part iv chap iii. There are several allusions to the antelope, both in the Epics and in Manu, which seem to indicate that it was regarded as a sacred animal by the Vedic Aryans. It was not only frequently sacrificed to Vedic deities, but Manu states that the land on which the black antelope grazes is held fit for sacrifice, and thus he seems to lay down a distinction between the land of the Aryans and the land of Mlechhas. Manu, ii 23

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

the sixth year of a Kshatriya, and the eighth year of a Vaisya. But on no account was it to be delayed beyond the sixteenth year of Brahmans, the twenty second year of Kshatriyas, or the twenty fourth year of Vaisyas. The reason for this differential scale probably lay in the fact that it was considered more incumbent on the young Bráhmaṇ to commence the study of the Veda at an early age than for the Kshatriya or Vaisya. If a twice born youth passed the allotted age without investiture he was virtually excommunicated, and became an out caste. He was degraded from the Gáiyatrí, in other words, he was not permitted to offer up that prayer, which a twice born man was alone permitted to utter. He was in fact treated as an impure man with whom no Bráhmaṇ would form a connection.<sup>3</sup>

Ceremony of  
begging for  
alms

The most significant point in Manu's account of the investiture with the sacred thread is the ceremony of begging for alms.<sup>4</sup> On the day of investiture, the youth was to take his staff, and stand opposite to the Sun, this last rite being perhaps a relic of the ancient Sun worship. The youth was next to walk round the fire and beg for alms, and this ceremony is still performed by twice born boys of every degree, by the son of a Raja as well as by the son of a Vaisya. In the case of a Bráhmaṇ youth, this begging for alms is not confined to the day of investiture, but may be carried on day by day throughout the whole period of student life, and in this manner the Brahmachari is supposed to main

<sup>3</sup> Manu 36—40. Other details are added concerning the girdle, staff and mantle of men of the three twice born castes, but they are of no historical significance and are mere matters of ceremonial law.

<sup>4</sup> Manu 1: 48—51.



tain both himself and his religious preceptor. But in the case of the Kshatriya or the Vaisya, the ceremony of begging is merely formal, and is confined to the day of investiture. At the present time the ceremony is performed precisely as it is described in the story of the investiture of Rāma and his brethren. The day is one of festivity. All the friends and relations gather together to witness the ceremony; and one and all are generally moved by that deep sympathy with childhood which is a special characteristic of the Hindú. The mother, the sisters, and the aunts are all anxious that the young neophyte should acquit himself with grace and dignity; and they all in turn give alms in food according to the simple ritual. Meantime humble friends and dependents are also admitted, and give their dole to the youthful mendicant as a mark of respect to the whole family and an honour to themselves.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

The origin of this strange rite is somewhat obscure. The idea especially of a son of a Raja collecting alms of food finds no expression in the Rig-Veda, and seems to have originated in the teachings of Buddha; but whether it is a relic of Brahmanism or Buddhism is a question which can be best decided after a consideration of the state of the Hindú world at the advent of Buddha, which will find a place in the next succeeding volume.

Origin of the  
ceremony

The only point remaining for consideration is the purification of daughters. Manus directs that the same ceremonies should be performed for girls as are ordained for sons, but without either the utterance of sacred mantras, or the investiture with the sacred thread. Indeed, the nuptial ceremony in the case of girls is considered as taking the place of the investi-

Purification of  
daughters by  
marriage in  
stead of by the  
thread.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Rules for the  
conduct of a  
Brahmach'ari  
after investiture  
The object

Re it

ture of the thread, and is the commencement of the religious life of the female <sup>5</sup>

The rules for the conduct of a Brahmach'ari after investiture may now be taken under consideration. The main object of these rules was to discipline every youth of the twice born castes in the habitual discharge of every religious observance and above all, to bring his reason under the perfect control of a faith which admits of no dispute, and which hears and obeys without a question or a murmur. This process is carried on during a period when the affections are the strongest and the mind the most impressible and if at the same time the passions are kept under strict control by sacred study, by abstinence from all self indulgence, as well as by daily worship of the gods and daily service rendered towards his preceptor, the student is soon imbued with a deep religious enthusiasm, and regards his preceptor with a reverential regard far exceeding that which pertains to any other form of religious or moral training. No absolute term of years is fixed for the discipline of student life. According to the code, it may be extended over thirty six years, or eighteen years, or nine years, or until the student perfectly understands the Veda <sup>6</sup>. At the same time rules are laid down for those who are desirous of continuing the religious life of a Brahmach'ari throughout the whole term of existence. If the preceptor died first, the student for life was to attend upon his son, or upon his widow, or upon one of his paternal kinsmen, paying in either case the same respect which he had paid to his deceased master. Should, however, neither

a son, nor the widow, nor a deceased kinsman be alive, the student was to take the place of the preceptor, and occupy his station, and maintain the sacred fires which he had consecrated.<sup>7</sup> The result of these rules is that even in the present day there are Bráhma students, or disciples, who devote their whole lives to sacred study and religious observances in the hermitage of an honoured and loved preceptor.

The duties of the Brahmachári which are more immediately connected with religion, have been already described in the chapter devoted to the religion of the Bráhmans.<sup>8</sup> It consists in the reverent reading of the Veda in the attitude of worship, and the daily worship of the gods, and to this must be added the conduct of a Brahmachári towards his preceptor, and the control which he was constantly to maintain over his passions. The reverential study of the Veda was to begin and end each day with the three suppressions of the breath, and the utterance of the three mystic letters known as AUM, the three mystic words known as the Vyáhritis, and the three mystic measures known as the Gáyatrí, and it was also to begin and end with the ceremony of clasping the feet of the preceptor as a token of worship. Equal in importance to the study of the Veda was the daily worship of the gods at morning, noon, and night. The Brahmachári was first to purify himself with water, and then to repeat the Gáyatrí, with all his organs under control, and his attention fixed on the Supreme Being. This act of worship was to be especially performed at sunrise and sunset; and should the sun rise or set while the stu-

Dut es of a  
Brahmachári in  
connection with  
religion

Reverent study  
of the Veda.

Worship of the  
gods

<sup>7</sup> Manu, ii 243, 244, 247, 249

<sup>8</sup> See ante Chap vii

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

Service to a preceptor.

Three classes of Brahmins.

1st, The Achárya, or Guru

2nd, The Upádhyá, or schoolmaster

dent was asleep, he was to fast and repeat the Gáyatri throughout an entire day. In like manner, day by day, the Brahmachári was to bathe and purify himself, and then to present the appointed offerings to the Devatas, the Rishis, and the Pitris; and to worship the images of the deities, and bring wood for the maintenance of the sacred fire. He was also to bring all that was required by his preceptor for the performance of religious rites, namely, pots of water, flowers, fresh earth, and the sacred kusa grass.<sup>9</sup>

As regards preceptors, it should be remarked that Manu lays down three different classes of Bráhmans, namely, the Achárya, the Upádhyá, and the Ritwij.<sup>10</sup>

The Achárya is pre-eminently the spiritual preceptor of the young Bráhman. He is, or should be, the perfect master of the whole Veda. It is he who invests the Brahmachári with the sacrificial thread, and then imparts to him a knowledge of the four Vedas, with their respective Bráhmanas, or sacrificial codes, and Upanishads, or metaphysical teachings. It is this venerated preceptor who should be diligently served by his disciple; and who should indeed be supported by the daily mendicancy of the youthful Bráhman, who lives beneath his roof, and attends him as an affectionate and obedient pupil.

The Upádhyá is a kind of sub-lecturer, or schoolmaster, who is said to instruct his pupils as a means of livelihood, and who teaches the six Vedángas, which are as follows:—

1st, Sikshá, or pronunciation.

2nd, Chandas, or metre.

<sup>9</sup> Manu, ii. 70—87, 176, 182.

<sup>10</sup> Manu, ii. 140—143.

3rd, Vyākaraṇa, or grammar

4th, Nirukta, or explanation of words.

5th, Jyotiṣa, or astronomy.

6th, Kalpa, or ceremonial.<sup>11</sup>

The Ritwij is the sacrificer, or priest properly so called, who receives a stipend for preparing the holy fire and conducting sacrifices. In the more elaborate ritual of an earlier period, the priests who appear to have served in the great sacrificial sessions, were divided into different classes according to their respective capacities. This classification, however, is merely illustrative of the ancient ritual of the Brāhmaṇas, and is otherwise devoid of all historical significance.

3rd The Ritwij  
or sacrificer

The student was bound on all occasions to show respect to his preceptor, and to salute him first at every meeting, whether the teacher was a Brāhmaṇ or otherwise, and whether the instruction received was popular, ceremonial, or sacred.<sup>12</sup> This law has left a lasting impress upon the national mind; and all who have ever imparted instruction to youthful Hindus will be able to testify to their docility and good manners, and to their special anxiety to give no offence. Manu, with a singular knowledge of human nature, has also ordained that the student is never to imitate the gait, speech, or manner of his preceptor. Should the student hear any censorious discourse respecting his preceptor, he was either to cover his ears, or to move to another place. Should he venture to censure his preceptor, however justly, he would be born again as an ass; should he defame his precep-

Respect due  
from a Brah-  
machāri to his  
preceptor

<sup>11</sup> For a learned account of the six Vedāṅgas, see Professor Max Müller's History of Sanskrit Literature, page 109 et seq.

<sup>12</sup> Manu, ii 117

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Maintenance of  
a strict control  
over the pas-  
sions

tor falsely he would be born a dog, should he take the goods of his preceptor without leave he would be born a small worm, should he envy the merit of his preceptor he would be born an insect or reptile"<sup>1</sup>

The remaining important point in the training of the Brahmach'rin was the maintenance of a strict control over the passions. "A wise man," says Manu, "will restrain his organs as a charioteer restrains restless horses. Desire is not satisfied by enjoyment any more than the sacrificial fire is appeased by ghee, but rather will blaze more vehemently. The man who resigns all the pleasures of sense is better than the man who enjoys them all. The man who devotes himself to sensual gratifications can never procure happiness, either by the Vedas or by alms, or by sacrifices, or by rigid observances, or by pious austerities, for if a single organ obtain the mastery his knowledge of divine things passes away, as water flows away through a single hole in a leathern bottle"<sup>2</sup>. Under these general rules the Brahmach'rin is strictly enjoined to abstain from honey, flesh meat, perfumes, chaplets of flowers, gaming, music, dancing, and from wantonly looking upon women<sup>3</sup>. He must, however, salute the wives of his preceptor, but he must render them no personal service, and he must never sit in a sequestered place, even with his nearest female relatives, "lest desire should snatch wisdom from the wise"<sup>4</sup>.

For the cal-  
culation of  
early happi-  
ness.

In connection, however, with these strict rules, there is a curious disquisition in the Brahmanical code upon earthly happiness which terminates in

<sup>1</sup> Manu i. 104-105

<sup>2</sup> Manu ii. 1-12

<sup>3</sup> Manu i. 88, 91, 96, 97

<sup>4</sup> Manu, i. 110-115

the material conclusion that the chief temporal good consists in the union of virtue, wealth, and lawful pleasure<sup>17</sup> Perhaps a higher tone of moral sentiment might have been expected from a divine lawgiver; but whatever may be the ostensible idea of the day, the bulk of mankind appear to be still actuated by the principle laid down by the old Hindú legislator

II The GRI  
HASTHA or  
householder

Obligation to  
marry incum-  
bent upon all  
men

Necessity for a  
son to offer the  
funeral cakes to  
a deceased  
father  
Marriage regu-  
lations for pro-  
ducing a  
healthy  
progeny

When a twice-born had passed through the order of Brahmachári, or religious student, he entered that of a Grihastha, or married man and householder. Here it should be remarked that marriage is an obligation in the eyes of the Hindú lawgiver which he never fails to enforce Even in the case of Bráhmans he seems to consider it as incumbent upon every man to marry a wife, as it is to study the Veda or worship the gods; for he specifies three debts that all men are bound to satisfy, namely, that to the Rishis by the study of the Veda, that to the gods by the offering of sacrifices, and that to the Pitris, or ancestors, by begetting a son.<sup>18</sup> This obligation of begetting a son originated in the ancient belief, which finds expression both in Hindú and Greek mythology, that after the death of a father the services of a son were necessary to offer water and cakes to the ghost of the deceased parent Having thus established marriage as an institution by the strongest of all religious obligations, namely, the happiness of parents in a future state, the Hindú

<sup>17</sup> Manu, ii 224

<sup>18</sup> Manu, iv 257 In another text, however, reference is made to thousands of Bráhmans who have avoided all sensuality, and have consequently left no families Manu ii 249, v 159 From this it would appear that the Bráhmans represented some of the more famous Buddhist teachers as being Bráhman sages, in the same way that they represented the old Vedic Rishis as belonging to their order

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

lawgiver lays down certain rules for insuring a strong and healthy offspring to every marriage union. He indicates with tolerable clearness the age at which a young man should marry, the degrees of relationship in which a man and woman should not marry, the families from which a man ought not to take a wife, and even the damsel whose moral or physical defects might prevent her from finding favour in the eyes of a husband. He then proceeds to describe the model damsel whom a young man should marry, and winds up with a very brief notice of the marriage ceremony.

Four classes of  
precepts

These laws and precepts may be considered under four different heads, and will be found to illustrate the national ideas of marriage which still prevail among the Hindus. These four heads are as follows —

- 1st, Ceremonies at the close of student life
- 2nd, Prohibited marriages
- 3rd, Qualified damsels
- 4th, Marriage ceremonies

1st Ceremonies  
connected with  
the close of stu-  
dent-life

The ceremonies connected with the return of a Brahmachari to his father's house would seem to indicate that the Hindu lawgiver was in no way cognizant of infant marriages as far as the bridegroom was concerned. No mention is made of early betrothals, and every man of the twice born castes is directed to marry at the termination of his life as a student. Manus says — "A man aged thirty may

Relative age of  
bridegroom and  
bride

marry a girl of twelve, a man aged twenty four may marry a girl of eight, but if his duties would be otherwise impeded let him marry immediately." 19



It is, moreover, easy to infer from the regulations as regards the conduct of a Brahmachári towards the wife of his preceptor, and from the specified periods of student-life, that twice-born men could rarely have been married before they had attained a full marriageable age. Under such circumstances the return of the Brahmachári to his father's house involved a family festivity. The studies of the neophyte had been brought to a conclusion. The sweets of married life were all before him. Manu, accordingly, enjoins that the student should be praised by his preceptor, and honourably welcomed by his father. That he should be seated on a couch and decked with flowers as the hero of the occasion. Above all, that he should be presented with a cow.<sup>20</sup> Now, the possession of a cow by a Hindú in a rural village is a sign of comparative affluence, whilst the animal itself is worshipped and revered as a deity. It furnishes the primitive luxuries, the milk, the butter, and the curds, which are so grateful to the Hindús, and it is the living representative of the prolific earth-goddess, the type of the beautiful Lakshmi, who is the wife of Vishnu and the goddess of all prosperity. When, therefore, a young man possessed a cow, it was only natural that he should dream of possessing a bride.

Festivities associated with the return of a bridegroom to his father's house

Present of a cow

As regards prohibited marriages, Manu directed that a man should not marry a wife whose family name indicated that she had descended from the same family stem as his father or mother, or who was in the sixth degree of relationship.<sup>21</sup> Again, a twice born man was never to take a wife from a

2d Prohibited marriages

Degrees

Unsuitable families

<sup>20</sup> Manu, iii 3, 4

<sup>21</sup> Manu, iii 5

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

No. ob. er. anee  
f. e. go. sd. y  
c. a. s. d. i. t.  
p. j. s. c. a. d. f. e. c. s.

family which had omitted to fulfil its religious duties, or had produced no sons, or in which the Veda had not been read, or which was distinguished by thick hair on the body, or which was subject to consumption, indigestion, epilepsy, leprosy, or elephantiasis. Here it should be remarked that Manu distinctly classifies the non observance of religious duty, and neglect of the Veda, with physical defects, such as leprosy and elephantiasis. Thus, whilst the young student, fresh from the instructions and discipline imparted by his preceptor, was effectually restrained from marrying a wife out of an irreligious family, a strong pressure was placed upon heretics and unbelievers to observe their religious duties and devote some time to the reading of the Veda, lest their daughters should remain unmarried. Some of the laws as regards constitutional debility are amusing from their frank simplicity. To refrain from marrying a damsel because her father had a weak digestion might be a prudent measure, but the law would bear rather hardly upon the weaker sex, inasmuch as a damsel could scarcely refuse to be given to a husband, whatever might be the state of his digestive organs. The restriction against marrying a girl because her family was distinguished by thick hair on the body, seems somewhat inexplicable. It probably originated in the current Oriental idea that thick hair on the body denoted strong passions, and such tendencies on the part of women are always regarded by Hindus with peculiar aversion, and are often denounced by Native moralists with a bitterness which is scarcely fan-

born man should not marry a girl with red hair, nor one with a deformed limb, nor one troubled with habitual sickness, nor one without hair, nor one with too much hair, nor one who talks too much, nor one with inflamed eyes. Neither should he marry a girl with the name of a constellation, or a tree, or a river, or a barbarous nation, or a mountain, or a winged creature, or a snake, or a slave, or with any name which raises an image of terror. Neither should he marry a girl who has no brother, lest her father should take her first-born son as his own to offer the funeral cakes; nor one whose father is not well known, lest an illicit marriage should already have been contracted between the girl and another man”<sup>22</sup>

The last two laws seem to call for some explanation. It was ruled that every man ought to have a son, who should perform the funeral rites of his father, and present his spirit on stated occasions with cakes and libations. If a man had no son, but only a daughter, he might adopt the first-born son of his daughter, and thus perchance leave his daughter's husband childless. Accordingly a twice-born man was prohibited from marrying a girl who had no brothers, lest after becoming a father he should find himself virtually childless. The remaining law is significant in another direction. The sentiment with regard to female purity is very strong amongst the Hindús. A damsel who has been once betrothed is regarded as ineligible for marriage to another, even if no consummation has taken place. Accordingly Manu directs that a twice-born man should never marry a damsel whose father was not well

---

<sup>22</sup> Manu, III 8, 9.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V3rd Qualified  
damsels.

known, lest an illicit marriage should have been previously contracted

As regards damsels who are qualified to become the wives of twice born men, Manu lays down the following precepts —“A man of the three twice born castes should choose a girl for his wife who is form is without defect, who has an agreeable name, who walks gracefully like a young elephant, who has a moderate quantity of hair, whose teeth are of a moderate size, and whose body is exquisitely soft”<sup>22</sup>

This description of a qualified Hindu female is sufficiently general without being too particular, but like the list of prohibited families and prohibited damsels, it is strangely wanting in that sentiment which prevails in the traditions of the Kshatriyas. Moreover, there is an opposition between the Kshatriya ideal and the Brahmanical ideal, which is worth noting. The conception which appears to have floated before the fancy of a Kshatriya bard was that of a fair or golden complexioned nymph graceful and retiring, delicate and slender waisted. The later Puranic bards were more materialistic and sensuous, and their ideal was that of a young damsel who walked, as Manu says, like a young elephant, and who was moreover endowed with all the exuberant charms of maturer years. In other words, the Kshatriyas loved fair and graceful women, and sought to be loved in return, after the manner of young and chivalrous warriors, whilst the later Brahmins were as devoid of sentiment as monks shut out from the world by the bars of their cells, and indulged in dreams of voluptuous forms that merely pleased the senses and provoked desire.

Opposition be-  
tween the Kshatriya  
and Brahmanical  
ideal of  
female beauty

The marriage ceremonies of the Hindús are but very briefly indicated by Manu, probably because they were considered to be so well known as to render details unnecessary. It is simply ordained that when the bridegroom is of the same caste as the bride he should take her hand before the altar.<sup>21</sup> It may, however, be as well to indicate in the present place the leading rites in the marriage ceremony, such as are performed in the present day, and which appear to have been handed down from time immemorial. These rites are eleven in number, namely:—

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

4th Marriage  
ceremonies

Eleven leading  
rites  
Procession

1st, The procession of the bridegroom to the house of the father of the bride.

2nd, The hospitable reception of the bridegroom.

Hospitality

3rd, The gift of the bride by her father to the bridegroom

Gift of bride.

4th, The binding together of the hands of the bride and bridegroom with kusa grass.

The binding

5th, The gift of a waistcloth and mantle by the bridegroom to the bride.

Gift to the  
bride

6th, The tying together of the skirts of the mantles of the bride and bridegroom.

The tying

7th, The oblations of the bridegroom to the god Agni or "Fire," and the dropping of the rice on the fire by the bride.

Oblations to  
Agni

8th, The hand of the bride solemnly taken by the bridegroom in marriage.

The hand.

9th, The steps of the bride on a stone and muller, the domestic implement for grinding spices and condiments.

The steps

10th, The walk of the bride round the nuptial fire.

Walk round the  
fire

<sup>21</sup> Manu, iii 43

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART VThe seven final  
steps.Domestic life of  
the Grihastha.Means of livelihood and moral  
conductRespective occupations of the  
three twice-born  
castes.

11th, The seven steps in seven circles, which the bride is directed to take by the bridegroom, the seventh step rendering the marriage complete and irrevocable

The precepts which refer to the domestic life of the Grihastha, or householder, are characterized by the same minuteness of detail as those which refer to his marriage duties and religious observance. During the most responsible period in the life of man, when he is discharging all the onerous obligations of a husband, a father, and the master of a household, he is virtually deprived of all independence, and compelled to regulate his daily life by a code of authoritative law, which brings almost every one of his acts within the sphere either of merits or demerits, to be punished or rewarded hereafter according to the balance of the sum total of the one over the sum total of the other. These ordinances might be considered under the two heads of means of livelihood and moral conduct, but the former have already been indicated in the preceding chapter on the four castes, whilst the moral rules find general expression in the Brahmanical system. It may, however, be remarked that the precepts respecting means of livelihood refer, not so much to the twice born castes generally, as to the Brahmins alone. Indeed, the occupations of the two other twice born castes were sufficiently known and acknowledged. The Kshatriyas were the rulers and defenders of the community. As soldiers they were maintained by the state, and also were occasionally in a position to acquire lands and riches by foreign conquest. The Vaisyas, again, maintained themselves by merchandising, and it will be seen hereafter, in dealing with

the Buddhist period, that such merchants became an important part of the community, and carried their goods from city to city in hundreds of waggons. But the Bráhmans had no ostensible calling save their religious duties as preceptors and priests; and Manu endeavoured to place them as far as possible upon an independent footing, by setting forth the duty of Kshatriyas and Vaisyas to present alms and gifts to the Bráhmans, not merely as a religious obligation, but as a privilege only accorded to worthy and virtuous men. The compilers of the code, however, appear to have been fearful lest the Bráhmans should sink to the position of sordid mendicants; and specially enjoined that the Bráhman should avoid the habit of begging, since by taking many gifts the divine light soon fades away from the soul.<sup>25</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Idea that the  
Bráhmans  
should be main-  
tained by the  
public

Significance as  
regards the gifts  
to be accepted  
by Bráhmans

The third and fourth orders, of Vánaprastha and Sannyási, or hermit and devotee, are frequently recognized in the Epics, and express the very essence of Brahmanism. These two orders, although apparently similar as regards external life, present some striking points of difference as regards internal life, with reference to the objects to be respectively gained by each mode of living. Thus the Vánaprastha, or hermit, devoted his time to religious austerities with the view of mortifying his passions. The Sannyási, or devotee, is supposed, on the other hand, to have overcome all the desires of the flesh; and therefore devoted the remainder of his days to religious contemplation, with the view of attaining final beatitude. The latter object was indeed kept

III. The VÁNA  
PRASTHA, OR  
hermit

Distinction be-  
tween the Vána-  
prastha and  
sannyási

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

---

in view by men belonging to either order, but was more immediately the aim of the Sannyâsi. The duties of these two orders may now be indicated as follows

Manu says —

Religio-  
austerities of  
the Vânapras-  
tha or hermit

“When the twice born man has remained in the order of Grihastha, or householder, until his muscles become flaccid, and his hair grey, and he sees a child of his child, let him abandon his household and repair to the forest, and dwell there in the order of Vânaprastha, or hermit. He should be accompanied by his wife, if she choose to attend him, but otherwise he should commit her to the care of his sons. He should take with him the consecrated fire, and all the domestic implements for making oblations to the fire, and there dwell in the forest, with perfect control over all his organs, and here day by day he should perform the five sacraments with many sorts of pure food, such as holy sages used to eat, with green herbs, roots, and fruit. He should wear a black antelope’s hide, or a vesture of bark, and bathe morning and evening, and he should suffer his nails, and the hair of his head and beard, to grow continually. He should make offerings from such food as he himself may eat, and give alms to the utmost of his power, and he should honour all those who visit his hermitage with presents of water, roots, and fruit. He should be constantly engaged in reading the Veda, he should be patient in all extremities, he should be universally benevolent, and entertain a tender affection for all living creatures, his mind should be ever intent on the Supreme Being, and he should be a perpetual giver of gifts, but not a receiver.” He should slide backwards and forwards on the ground, or stand a whole day on tip toe, or continue in motion by rising and sitting alternately, but every day at sunrise, at noon, and at sunset he should go to the waters and bathe. In the hot season he should sit exposed to five fires, namely, four blazing



ing around him, whilst the sun is burning above him, in the rainy season he should stand uncovered without even a mantle, while the clouds pour down their heaviest showers, in the cold season he should wear damp vesture. He should increase the austerity of his devotion by degrees, until by enduring harsher and harsher mortifications he has dried up his bodily frame”<sup>27</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

As regards the life to be pursued by a Sannyâsi, Manu lays down the following direction —

“When a Brahman has thus lived in the forest during the third portion of his life as a Vanaprastha, he should for the fourth portion of it become a Sannyâsi, and abandon all sensual affections, and repose wholly in the Supreme Spirit. When a Brahman has reposed in his mind the sacrificial fires, he may proceed direct from the second order, or that of Grihastha, or even from the first order, or that of Brahmachâri, to the fourth order, or that of Sannyâsi. The glory of that Brahman who passes from the order of Grihastha to that of Sannyâsi illuminates the higher worlds. He should take an earthen water-pot, dwell at the roots of large trees, wear coarse vesture, abide in total solitude, and exhibit a perfect equanimity towards all creatures. He should wish neither for death nor for life, but expect his appointed time, as a hired servant expects his wages. He should look down as he advances his foot, lest he should touch anything impure. He should drink water that has been purified by straining through a cloth, lest he hurt an insect. He should, if he speaks at all, utter words that are purified by truth. He should by all means keep his heart pure. He should bear a reproachful speech with patience, and speak reproachfully to no man, and he should never utter a word relating to vain illusory things. He should delight in meditating on the Supreme Spirit, and sit fixed in such meditation, without needing anything earthly, with-

IV. THE SANNYÂSI  
or devotee

Life of religion is  
contemplation  
to obtain final  
beatitude

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART VMeans of sub-  
sistence

out one sensual desire, and without any companion but his own soul"<sup>28</sup>

"The Brahman who has become a Sannyāsi should at no time gain his subsistence by explaining omens and prodigies, nor by skill in astrology and palmistry, nor by casuistry and expositions of holy texts. He should not go near a house which is frequented by Vanaprasthas, or Brahmans, or birds, or dogs, or other beggars. The vessels on which he should receive food are a gourd, a wooden bowl, an earthen dish, or a basket made of reeds. He should only ask for food once a day, and that should be in the evening, when the smoke of the kitchen fires has ceased, when the pestle lies motionless, when the burning charcoal is extinguished, when people have eaten, and when dishes are removed. If he fails to obtain food he should not be sorrowful, if he succeeds in obtaining it he should not be glad. He should only care to obtain a sufficiency to support life, and he should not be anxious about his utensils. He should not habituate himself to eat much at a time, for if a Sannyāsi habituates himself to eat much, he becomes inclined to sensual gratification."

Subjects of re-  
flect on

"A Sannyāsi should reflect on the transmigrations of men which are caused by their sinful deeds, on their downfall into a region of darkness, and their torments in the mansions of Yama, on their separation from those whom they love, and their union with those whom they hate, on their strength overpowered by old age, and their bodies racked with disease, on their agonizing departure from this corporeal frame, and their formation again in the womb, on the misery attached to embodied spirits from a violation of their duties, and the imperishable bliss which attaches to embodied spirits who have abundantly performed every duty."

The Supreme  
Being

"A Sannyāsi should also reflect with all the powers of his mind on the subtle indivisible essence of the Supreme Spirit, and its complete existence in all beings, whether extremely high or extremely low."<sup>29</sup>

<sup>28</sup> Manu, vi. 22-31<sup>29</sup> Manu, vi. 61-64<sup>30</sup> Manu, vi. 32-49<sup>31</sup> Manu, vi. 65

"The body is a mansion, with bone for its rafters and beams, with nerves and tendons for cords; with muscles and blood for mortar, with skin for its outward covering; and filled with no sweet perfumes, but loaded with refuse. It is a mansion infested by age and by sorrow, the seat of diseases; harassed with pains, haunted with the quality of darkness, and incapable of standing long. Such a mansion of the vital soul should always be quitted with cheerfulness by its occupier."

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Inferiority of  
material existence.

It will now be seen from the foregoing precepts that in all essentials the life of the Sannyâsi resembled that of the Buddhist priest; and hence it may be inferred, that whilst the compilers of the code of Manu were consistent in their denunciations against atheism and heresy, they exhibited a toleration, very much resembling that which was displayed by the Roman Catholic Church, towards all fanatics and enthusiasts, and utilized them for the maintenance of the supremacy of Brahmanism. This spirit of inclusion was doubtless one of the causes of the success which attended the rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy. Whilst the Brâhmins represented the Rishis of the old Vedic times as belonging to their own order, they held out the hand of religious fellowship to those devotees, who would otherwise have sought for rest under the shadow of Buddhistic heresy.

Resemblance  
between the  
Sannyâsi and  
the Buddhist  
devotees

Spirit of inclu-  
sion displayed  
by the Brah-  
manical hier-  
archy

Such, then, was the ideal of Hindû life as understood by the ancient Brâhmins. How far it was modified by Buddhism, or associated with Buddhism, is a difficult question, which must be reserved for investigation in the next volume. One conclusion seems to be certain, that this Brahmanical ideal was

Ideal of Hindû  
life may have  
been partially  
derived from  
Buddhism, but  
not from the  
Vedic worship

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.Originated in a  
belief in a future  
state.

not that of the Vedic Aryans, who indulged in healthy but material aspirations for a long life of physical enjoyment.<sup>23</sup> It was rather an ideal which originated in an elaborate belief of a future existence of the soul after the death of the body, combined with the dogma that happiness hereafter depended upon a close adherence in the present life to the arbitrary dictates of ceremonial and conventional law, and a useless concentration of the intellectual energies in contemplating mere metaphysical abstractions. In the old patriarchal time of the Vedic Aryans, men appear to have led active lives to the very last; to have taken young wives in their old age, and gathered in their harvests, and bargained their cattle and merchandise, and fought against their enemies, and feasted and revelled, until perchance they drifted into dotage and sank into the inevitable tomb, to enter upon a dreary existence as ghosts or shades. But under the priestly domination of the Bráhmans, advancing age was not only regarded as a sign of decay, but as a sharp intimation that the individual was about to enter upon an existence in which he would be rewarded or punished according to the sum of his good and evil deeds in this life; and that the individual must peremptorily prepare for that future existence by turning his back upon all the pleasures of the world, and by contemplating that Supreme Spirit to whom he was about to return. These two conflicting ideas still find expression in modern humanity; and the

Expression of  
Vedic and  
Brahmanic  
ideas of life in  
modern  
humanity

<sup>23</sup> There are several allusions in the *Mahá Bhárata* and *Rámáyana* to Pájas who have spent their old age in contemplation and austerities, but the incidents are so foreign to the main spirit of Vedic tradition, as well as to the aspirations expressed in the hymns of the *Rig Veda*, that they may be regarded as mythical interpolations of a comparatively recent date.

great problem of old age appears to be how to combine the two. Each one separately considered seems to involve a departure from true wisdom ; an attempt to escape from the responsibilities of existence. The man who continues to devote his old age exclusively to the pursuits of this world, seems to ignore those religious duties which are associated with a belief in the immortality of the soul ; and the man who devotes his old age exclusively to religious retirement and contemplation, seems in like manner to ignore those moral duties which appertain to the father and the citizen.

## CHAPTER XII.

### HINDÚ WOMEN.

#### HISTORY OF INDIA. PART V.

Condition of  
Hindu women  
in Vedic and  
Brahmanic  
times.

Marriage rela-  
tions in the  
Vedic period.

Compensation  
to the female in  
the case of  
irregular  
unions.

THE social condition of Hindú men, as members of a caste system and masters of households, has now been brought under consideration; but an important branch of inquiry yet remains for investigation, namely, the condition of Hindú women in Vedic and Brahmanic times.

In the previous chapter, which describes eight kinds of marriage, the circumstances under which marriage relations were formed in the Vedic period were brought under review; and it was seen that damsels were purchased, or won by feats of arms, or carried away captive after a victory; or a union, more or less temporary, was occasionally brought about in the old idyllic fashion, without any rite or ceremony whatever. But as far as can be gathered from the Kshatriya traditions preserved in the Epics, the two leading institutions in Vedic times were Polyandry, or the marriage of one woman to all the brothers of a family, and the Swayamvara, or choice of a husband on the part of the maiden.

The social condition of women who have been purchased, or won by feats of arms, or carried away captive, is a question which may be safely left to the imagination of those who are familiar with the

peculiar conditions of the feminine mind. It may be remarked that in general there is a latent power of adaptation to circumstances in human nature, which would speedily reconcile the female slave and captive to a change of condition; especially if the damsel found that she had really gained the affections of her new lord and master. Moreover, in a lawless age polygamy is virtually a protection to the damsel, who has been deprived of her natural protectors by the chances of war or death of kinsmen; and the services she might render in a patriarchal household, would in a great measure neutralize the jealous hatred with which she would otherwise have been regarded by the legitimate wife and mistress of a family. Unless, however, polygamy is an established institution, maintained by the religious dogma that every man should be the father of a son, an amount of feminine influence is generally exercised by the legitimate wife, which is sufficient to curb the irregular desires of a discontented husband<sup>1</sup>. Indeed,

Position of a  
damsel in a  
polygamous  
household

Superior author-  
ity of the  
legitimate wife

<sup>1</sup> An ancient legend is preserved in the Vishnu Purána, which treats of a submissive husband as an exceptional case occurring in a polygamous age, but at the same time sufficiently illustrates the moral strength of women. As it is given as a quotation from an ancient ballad it may possibly be referred to the Vedic age. It may be reproduced in the following form—

"There was a certain Raja, named Jyámagha, and he was the husband of Savrya. And Jyámagha was more submissive to his wife than any man who has ever been born, or whoever will be born, for Savrya was barren, but her husband was sore afraid of her, and would not take another woman to be his wife. At last came to pass that Jyámagha went out to fight his enemy, and he routed him, and drove him from the field of battle. And the daughter of the enemy was very beautiful, and she was left alone in the battle field, and her large eyes rolled wildly with fear, and she cried out—'Save me! Save me!' And Jyámagha was smitten with her beauty, and he said within his heart—'This damsel is very fair, and I have no child, therefore I will take her to be my wife, and she shall bear me a son.' So Jyámagha took the damsel in his chariot, and drove away to his own city, and his wife Savrya, and all his Ministers and Chieftains, and all the people of the city came out to meet him. And when Savrya saw the damsel standing on the left hand of the Raja, her heart swelled within her, and she said—'Who is this damsel?' And the Raja was afraid and knew not

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Natural tendency to monogamy

Polyandry and the Swayamvara

Pleasing idea involved in the Swayamvara

it would be easy to infer that in a primitive and peaceful community, where polygamy was not recognized as an institution, and where the duty of becoming the father of a son was not regarded as a religious obligation, the free play of the affections and emotions would speedily settle the main problem connected with marriage, by generally distributing the young men and women into married pairs, bound to each other by an instinctive affection, and separated from all others by a mutual jealousy.

As regards the two main institutions of Vedic times, Polyandry and the Swayamvara, little need be said. Modern taste revolts from a consideration of the conditions of Polyandry, which only satisfies an instinct at the expense of all delicacy of feeling and sentiment. The Swayamvara is a far more pleasing ceremony, associated as it is with a pure idea of woman's love centering in a single individual to the exclusion of all others, and finding a full response in the chivalrous affection of a Hindú hero. Indeed, in the story of Nala and Damayanti the ceremony is accompanied by an exquisite conception of maidenly modesty, followed by the self-abnegating devotion of a wife and a mother; and the charming details will scarcely fail to excite the sympathies of all who care to apprehend the depths of woman's tenderness towards a husband whom she

---

what to say, and he replied in haste — "This is my daughter in law!" Then Sarvā said — "No son has been born unto me, therefore tell me what a man of yours is the husband of this damsel?" And the Raja replied — "The son you have yet to bear to me, the same shall be the husband of this damsel." At these words Sarvā smiled gently, and said, — "So let it be!" And the Raja and his wife entered the palace.

It will be seen that the foregoing legend bears a marvellous resemblance to that of the return of Agamemnon and Cassandra to Argos after the siege of Troy. Had Jyāmagi a prove less submissive, his wife Sarvā might have appeared in the character of Clytemnestra.



has really and truly loved. But still the institution is an exaggerated expression of the age of chivalry, and seems to have originated in the very Polyandry which later Hindúism affects to ignore. That a lover should seek to win the affections of the damsel whom he loves, by a series of fond attentions and devoted service, is in strict accordance with the instincts of human nature; but it is contrary to the conception of maidenly modesty, which prevails in all civilized communities, that a damsel should publicly manifest her passion for a man who has not previously given her undoubted proofs of his affection. This maidenly modesty is certainly to be found in the story of Nala and Damayantí; but it bears the impress of having been introduced by the Hindú bard, and the mythical details respecting the talking birds with golden wings seem to give weight to the suspicion.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Exaggerated  
expression of  
chivalry

If, however, we turn to the Brahmanic age, as it finds expression in the code of Manu, we find that Polyandry and the Swayamvara are alike ignored, and so too is the sentiment that the woman is in any way the equal to the man. The old Vedic idea that religious worship should be performed by a married pair is indeed preserved in Manu, but without any observation which would imply equality. "Women," he says, "were created to be mothers, and men to be fathers; it is therefore ordained in the Veda that religious rites should be performed by the husband together with the wife."<sup>2</sup> But in every other direction the entire dependence and subordination of women is indicated in the most decided language, as will be seen from the following texts.—

Marriage relations in the  
Brahmanic  
period

Polyandry and  
the swayamvara  
ignored

Social inferiority  
of women

Dependence of  
females upon  
fathers, husbands,  
and sons.

<sup>2</sup> Manu, ix.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

"A girl, a young woman, or a matron must do nothing according to her own pleasure, even in her own dwelling place. In childhood she is dependent on her father, in youth on her husband, in widowhood on her sons. If she has no sons, she must be dependent upon the kinsmen of her deceased husband, if he left no kinsmen, she must be dependent upon the kinsmen of her father, if she have no such kinsmen, she must be dependent upon the Raja. A woman must never seek to be independent. She must never wish to separate herself from her father, her husband or her sons, for by such a separation she exposes both her father's family and her husband's family to contempt. The father is reprehensible who does not give his daughter in marriage at the proper time, the husband is reprehensible who does not pay due attention to his wife, and the son is reprehensible who does not protect his mother after the death of her lord."

<sup>3</sup> Manu v 147-149, ix 3-4. Notwithstanding however the restriction upon Hindu women the wife is occasionally the master in the house and exercises an influence which would be startling even in Europe. An amusing illustration of this fact is to be found in the biography of Ramdoolal Dev by Baboo Christ Chunder Ghose. Ramdoolal had purchased and stocked a warehouse with six hundred bags of the finest sugar. After a while the sugar market became favourable and he sold the whole. Meantime his wife had engaged a number of Brahmins to read the Maha Bharata and for ninety days thousands of male women flocked to the house to hear the sacred story, and were entertained with all that male from the sugar. When, therefore, Ramdoolal ordered delivery of the six hundred bags he found that he had only fifty left. In the excitement of the moment he called his wife an angel of ill luck, upon which she ran to her bed-chamber and bolted the door behind her. The finale of the comedy may be best told in the language of the biographer — "Let those who call the Hindu a gallant and the oppressor of the female sex contemplate the scene I am about to describe. Firstly Ramdoolal bent his steps in the direction of his wife's chamber. Finding the doors of her chamber closed, he knocked gently. A female answered him from within. 'Heaven send the enormity of his crime! He called his mother-in-law and a fool! A thousand curses upon it! He craved this lady's pardon and mercy was accorded by her; and I was a woman! Let it be! There he stood in that outer room, the great man humbled to the dust in asking pardon of himself as the means and a bit of his wife came properly to his ears. At this the beautiful heart of the young woman melted and she cried herself to pieces. I ran from the bed on which she had hung herself and she only drew back to see whether her husband had returned. Then we both sat at the feet of a Brahmin, never differing in our opinion, and there was at last purchased by him for a sum of money of a hundred of rupees. This little fortune (about £10,000) Ramdoolal was at last enabled to

The duty of a father as regards the marriage of his daughters is laid down very explicitly by Manu ; and indeed is felt by every Hindú in the present day to be a religious as well as a family and social obligation

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Duty of a father  
to his daughter

“Every man,” says Manu, “should give his daughter in marriage to an excellent and handsome youth of the same caste, even though she has not attained her age ; but it is better that a damsel, though marriageable, should stay at home until her death, rather than that her father should give her in marriage to a worthless bridegroom. A damsel should wait three years after she is marriageable, and then if her father has not given her in marriage, she may choose for herself a bridegroom of equal caste, and neither she nor her chosen husband commits any offence. A damsel who thus chooses her husband should not carry with her the jewels which she received from her father, nor those which have been given to her by her mother or brethren, and if she carries them away she commits theft. A man who thus marries a damsel after she is of full age, should not give a nuptial present, since her father lost his dominion over her by detaining her at a time when she might have been a mother.”

Cases when a  
damsel may  
choose her own  
husband

The duties of husbands towards their wives are also defined with significant fulness of detail in the Brahmanical code ; and an attempt is obviously made to reconcile the wife to the subordinate position in which she is placed by the Hindú lawgiver.

Duties of hus-  
bands towards  
their wives

to her brother” The writer of this biography is an enlightened and educated Hindú and the editor of a Native newspaper in the English language, but his idea of gallantry is open to correction. A European would scarcely consider it gallantry on the part of a husband to purchase the forgiveness of a wife with £10 000

\* Manu, ix 88—96. This permission, which is granted to maidens of a certain age, to choose their own husband, must not be confounded with the Swayamvara, although it may be a Brahmanical reproduction of the Vedic custom. The Swayamvara involved the idea of a father providing for a daughter on her arriving at a marriageable age by inviting a number of young men to an entertainment at which she was to choose a bridegroom.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Wives to be hon-  
oured and de-  
corated.

"A married woman," says Manu, "must be honoured and adorned by her father, her brethren, and her husband if they would obtain abundant prosperity. Where females are honoured, there the deities are pleased, but where the females are not honoured, there all religious acts are of no avail. Should the women of a family, not being duly honoured, pronounce a curse against any house, that house and all belonging to it will utterly perish, as if destroyed by a sacrifice for the death of an enemy. Therefore let all men who are desirous of wealth continually supply the women of their family with ornaments, apparel and food at all times of festival. If a wife be not elegantly attired she will not exhilarate her husband, and unless her husband be pleased there will be no offspring. When a wife is duly adorned her whole house is embellished, but if she be without ornament the whole house will be deprived of decoration." When good women thus irradiate the houses of their lords, they are like unto Lakshmi, the goddess of abundance. From the wife alone proceed offspring, good household management, solicitous attention, most exquisite pleasures, and heavenly beatitude. She who deserts not her lord, but keeps her heart, speech, and body in subjection to him, shall obtain his mansion in heaven, and be called Sadhwî, or good and faithful, but she who is disloyal to her husband, will be born in the next life from the womb of a jackal, or be tormented with the horrible diseases which punish vice.\*

Duties of a wife.

The duties of a wife towards her husband and household generally are equally significant.

"She must always," says Manu, "be in a cheerful temper, devoting herself to the good management of the household, taking great care of the household furniture, and keeping down all her expenses with a frugal hand. The husband to whom her father has given her, or to whom her brother has given her with the consent of her father, she must

obsequiously honour while he lives, and never neglect him when he dies. The husband gives bliss continually to his wife here below, and he will give her happiness in the next world. He must be constantly revered as a god by a virtuous wife; even though he does not observe approved usages, or is enamoured of another woman, or is devoid of good qualities. No sacrifice is allowed to women apart from their husbands, no religious rite, no fasting; so far only as a wife honours her lord, so far is she exalted in heaven. A faithful wife who wishes to attain heaven, and dwell there with her husband, must never do anything unkind towards him, whether he be living or dead."

The duties of widows are equally explicit, and involve no idea of the horrible *Satí*. *Manu* says:—

Duties of a widow.

"When the husband is dead let his widow emaciate her body by living voluntarily on pure flowers, roots, and fruit; but let her not even pronounce the name of another man. Let her continue until death, forgiving all injuries, performing harsh duties, avoiding every sensual pleasure, and cheerfully practising the incomparable rules of virtue, which have been followed by such women as were devoted to one husband alone. Many thousands of *Bráhmans* have avoided sensuality from their early youth, and have, consequently, had no children, but, nevertheless, when they have died they have ascended to heaven; and in like manner a virtuous wife ascends to heaven, though she have no child, if after the death of her husband she devotes herself to pious austerities. But a widow, who, from her desire to bear children, slights her deceased husband by marrying again, brings disgrace upon herself here below, and will be excluded hereafter from the seat of her lord. In no part of this code is a second husband allowed to a virtuous woman."

The duties of a widower are placed upon another footing by the *Hindú* lawgiver. *Manu* says:—

Duties of a widower.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

"If the wife of a twice born man die before him, and if she be of his own caste, and if she has lived a virtuous life according to the ordinance, her body must be burned by her husband with sacred fire and fit implements of sacrifice, and when he has thus performed the funeral rites to his wife he may again marry and light the nuptial fire"<sup>1</sup>

The strictness to be placed on women.

The system of confinement and repression, however, was not always successful in subduing the irregular desires of such women as were unmindful of their duties and obligations

Vices of women.

"Husbands," says Manu, "should diligently keep their wives under lawful restrictions. No man, indeed, can wholly restrain women by lawful measures, but a wife may be employed in the collection and expenditure of wealth, in purification and female duty, in the preparation of daily food, and in the superintendence of household utensils. Women are not secure by confinement at home, even under affectionate and observant guardians, and those only are truly secure, who are guarded by their own good inclinations. Six faults bring infamy upon a woman — Drinking intoxicating liquors, associating with evil persons, absence from a husband, rambling abroad, sleeping at unseasonable times, and dwelling in the house of another. Such women care not whether a lover be handsome or ugly, young or old, they think it is enough that he is a man, and through their passion for men, their mutable temper, their want of settled affection, and their perverse nature, they soon become alienated from their husbands"<sup>2</sup>

Maintenance of a wife in the absence of her husband.

As regards the maintenance and conduct of a wife during the absence of her husband on business or pleasure, the following rules are laid down in the code of Manu —

"Should a man have business abroad, he should assure a fitting maintenance for his wife while he is away, for

even if a wife be virtuous she may be tempted to act amiss, if she be distressed by want of subsistence. If the maintenance of a wife be thus provided for her, she should continue firm in the practice of religious austerities whilst her husband is absent, but if her maintenance be not provided for, she should subsist by spinning and other blameless arts. If the husband live abroad on account of some sacred duty, she should wait for him eight years, if he is abroad on account of knowledge or fame, she should wait six years, if he is abroad on account of pleasure, she should wait three years."<sup>10</sup>

The significance of these texts lies in the law which directs the wife to await the return of her husband for certain periods of years, which are to be longer or shorter, according to the circumstances which have led to the absence of her lord. This law would seem to imply that after a specified period of separation a woman might marry again; but such a conclusion is opposed to the spirit of another law, which denounces the second marriage of a woman. The commentator Kullúka, however, endeavours to remove the difficulty by adding that at the end of the period of separation the woman should rejoin her husband.<sup>11</sup> But this addition bears obvious marks of being an arbitrary interpretation; and it seems more likely that there existed an old law respecting the number of years during which a wife was to await the return of her husband; and that Kullúka has simply brought this law into apparent conformity with the rule which denounces all second marriages of females.

Question as regards the period of absence

Forced explanation of kulluka

The laws of Manu as regards divorce, and the circumstances under which a man might marry a second wife whilst the first is still alive, are full and

Law respecting divorce

<sup>10</sup> Manu, ix 71—76

<sup>11</sup> Manu, ix 76

explicit; and they tend to prove that whilst polygamy was an institution in Vedic times, monogamy was the dominant idea in the Brahmanic period. *Manu* says:—

“Should a wife treat her husband with aversion, he should bear with her for one whole year; but after that period he may deprive her of her separate property, and cease to treat her as his wife. She who neglects her husband, though he be addicted to gaming, or fond of spirituous liquors, or diseased, must be deserted for three months, and deprived of her ornaments and household furniture. But if she is averse to her husband because he is mad, or a deadly sinner, or without manly strength, or afflicted with such maladies as are the punishment of crimes, she must neither be deserted, nor stripped of her property.” A wife may at all times be superseded by another wife if she drinks spirituous liquors, or acts immorally, or manifests hatred towards her husband, or is diseased, or mischievous, or wastes her husband’s property. A wife who is barren may be superseded by another in the eighth year, she whose children are all dead may be superseded in the tenth year, she who brings forth only daughters may be superseded in the eleventh year, but she who speaks unkindly may be superseded without delay. A wife, however, who is afflicted with disease, but at the same time is beloved and virtuous, must never be disgraced, although she may be superseded by another wife with her own consent. If a wife, who has been legally superseded, departs in wrath from the house, she must either be instantly confined, or she must be abandoned in the presence of the whole family.”<sup>11</sup>

Supersession of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son

Good wives to be superseded only with their own consent.

It will be seen from the foregoing precepts that a *Hindú* was justified in putting away a wife, not only if she proved unfaithful, but also if she indulged in spirituous liquors, or was diseased, or barren, or only gave birth to daughters. In the three latter cases a

<sup>11</sup> *Manu*, ix. 77—79

<sup>12</sup> *Manu*, ix. 80—83



good wife was not to be superseded by a second wife without her own consent; and even then she was not to be divorced or put away. As regards a wife who was barren, or who only gave birth to daughters, it will be observed that a patriarchal custom, originating in an age of polygamy, was converted into a religious obligation; and such is the force of religious obligation in the minds of many women that it will override one of the strongest instincts of human nature. Thus it was that when Sarah found that she bore no children, she took Hagar her Egyptian handmaid, and gave her to Abram to be his wife;<sup>14</sup> and even in the present day Hindú wives are to be found, who are prepared to see a husband take a second wife, rather than that he should die without becoming the father of a son.<sup>15</sup>

Force of the religious obligation to beget a son

<sup>14</sup> Genesis xvi

<sup>15</sup> The following incident in the life of Ramdoolal Dev, as described by Grish Chunder Ghose, furnishes a graphic picture of a scene which not unfrequently occurs in a Hindú household, when the first wife has grown old without giving birth to a son — "A strict Hindú filled with the orthodox horror for *put* — the hell of the Hindús, which is declared by the *sastris* to yawn for the childless, — Ramdoolal was advised by the *Bráhmans* who constantly surrounded him, to marry another wife. With hesitancy and by stealth was the marriage consummated — unknown to his first wife unsuspected even by her. But the news of such an important event in the life of a husband cannot long be kept a secret from a spouse. It soon travelled into the ears of the rival who reposed in gloomy dissatisfaction to her brother's house in Moolajore. Ramdoolal dared not bring this second wife to his home, without softening and conciliating the first. The latter was at last found to be not unreasonable, though the woman within her, the natural feeling of her sex, had made her at first a rebel against her lord. She returned in the best of all possible humours, returned to welcome the bride to her home, to carry in her arms the rival in the affections of her husband, the child, who arrived at womanhood gave that husband two boys and five girls as the heirs of his vast estate. Yet the lives of the two wives did not run smoothly. The jealousy natural to the sex embittered existences which had otherwise no ground for distraction. Outwardly the two ladies exhibited no signs of discord. The youngest never dared ever to raise her veil before the eldest, or to address her, except in a low, not direct, respectful tone of voice. But there was gall and bitterness in their hearts. Ramdoolal invariably took his meals in the apartments of his first wife, and skulked into the bed of his second after the former had fallen sound asleep.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART VLaws against  
adultery

The laws against adultery, which appear to have been in force in the Brahmanic age, are naturally very severe

"Adultery," says Manu, "causes a mixture of castes, from whence arises violation of duties, and the destruction of the root of felicity. Men, therefore, who manifest adulterous inclinations for the wives of others, should be punished by the Raja with such bodily marks as excite aversion, and be banished from the realm. A man who converses in secret with the wife of another, and has been previously noted for such an offence, shall pay a fine of two hundred and fifty panas<sup>15</sup>. But if a man so converses for some reasonable cause, and has not been previously noted for such an offence, he shall pay no fine, for he has incurred no transgression. He who talks with the wife of another man at a place of pilgrimage, or in a forest, or grove, or at the confluence of rivers, incurs the guilt of an adulterous inclination. To send her flowers or perfumes, to sport and jest with her, to touch her apparel and ornaments, to sit with her on the same couch, are held to be adulterous acts on his part. The wives of all the four castes ought to be

---

He dared not speak to the latter in the presence of the former, and all his children by his second wife were born in a separate house which belonged to that wife's relatives, for he would not wound the feelings of his first spouse by parading before her eyes the evidences of his secret love towards the second. It was not until the children grew up, and were able to walk and to hop, that they were brought to his own mansion. And then such was the caprice of a truly benevolent heart, their own mother was not more watchful and affectionate towards them than their step-mother. Yet this step-mother constantly laboured to estrange her husband from her rival by spells and by *pooyahs*, and her weakness on this point was so extravagant that even the lads about her, whenever they wanted money, had only to present her with a cocoa-nut or other fruit curiously marked, declaring that it was a charm—to extract from her foolish credulity whatever sums they required. Her rival having died before her, she anxiously inquired of the Brahmins if there was any means available for preventing the former from joining her husband in heaven prior to her own death. *Lecture on the Life of Radcliff De J. the Bengalee Millionaire delivered in the Hall of the Hooghly College on the 14th March, 1863 by Grish Chunder Ghose*

<sup>15</sup> A pana was apparently equivalent to the modern pie, or something less than a half penny. But a pie in the time of Manu may have borne a much higher value than it does in the present day. The penny of Anglo-Saxon times was an important coin.

over most especially guarded; but the Súdra who commits actual adultery with the wife of a Bráhmaṇ should be put to death. Any man who converses with the wife of another, after he has been forbidden by her husband or father, shall pay a fine; but mendicants, eulogists, Bráhmans prepared for a sacrifice, and artisans are not prohibited from speaking to married women.”<sup>17</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

“Should a wife actually violate the duty which she owes to her husband, let the Raja condemn her to be devoured by dogs in a public place; and let the adulterer be burned to death upon an iron bed. A Súdra who has committed adultery with a woman of a twice-born caste, who has been guarded by her husband at home, shall suffer death; but if the woman has not been guarded, he shall be mutilated and deprived of all his substance. A Vaisya who commits adultery with a guarded Brahmaní woman shall be imprisoned for a year and forfeit all his wealth; and if a Kshatriya commit the same crime, he shall be fined a thousand panas, and be shaved with impure water; but if the Brahmaní woman has not been guarded by her husband, the Vaisya shall be fined five hundred panas, and the Kshatriya one thousand panas.”<sup>18</sup>

Punishment of  
unfaithful wives  
and their paramours.

“A Bráhmaṇ who has criminal intercourse with a guarded woman with her free consent shall be fined five hundred panas; but if against her will, he shall be fined a thousand panas. When a Bráhmaṇ commits adultery, for which one of the other castes would be put to death, he must be shaved ignominiously; for a Raja must never slay a Bráhmaṇ, even though he be guilty of all possible crimes. Indeed no greater crime is known on earth than that of slaying a Brahman: the Raja may banish him, but even then he must retain his property and be sent unhurt out of the realm.”<sup>19</sup>

Punishment of  
Bráhmans

“These laws,” continues Manu, “do not relate to the wives of public singers and dancers, or of such base men as live by the intrigues of their wives; men who either carry

Public women  
and female  
anchorites

<sup>17</sup> Manu, viii 352—360

<sup>18</sup> Manu, viii 374—376

<sup>19</sup> Manu, viii 378—391.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

women to others, or who live concealed at home and permit their wives to carry on a criminal intercourse. Yet that man who carries on a private intercourse with such women, or with servant girls kept by one master, or with female anchorites, shall be compelled to pay a small fine. If a man has intercourse with a damsel without her consent, he shall immediately suffer corporal punishment; but if the damsel was willing, and belonged to his own caste, he shall not suffer such punishment." <sup>o</sup>

Question of  
guarded wives

It will be unnecessary to comment upon the foregoing laws which refer to the relations of the sexes, as they will fully speak for themselves. It may, however, be observed that great stress is laid upon the question of whether the wife was guarded or otherwise; thus implying an obligation on the part of the husband to place his wife under certain restrictions. Again, it will be seen that whilst the existence of public women was recognized by the code, yet men who visited them were punishable by a small fine. It is doubtful, however, whether this fine was regarded as a punishment, or simply as a tax; for if the former, it would seem to imply a higher standard of morality than that which actually prevailed. At the very commencement of the Buddhist period, and for centuries later, public women were living in great splendour and luxury; whilst the presence of a mistress in the same house with a legitimate wife, was not opposed to the moral sense of the general community. At the same time this laxity of morals was brought so far under the cognizance of the common law, that a dancing girl could be punished by the civil authorities, if, without

Punishment for  
visiting public  
women.

Position of pub-  
lic women and  
private mis-  
tresses.

<sup>o</sup> See Bigandet's *Life of Buddha*, Wilson's *Hindu Theatre*, and Hall's *East's Gentoo Laws*. This subject, however, will be fully treated hereafter in dealing with the later history of the Hindus.

reasonable excuse, she broke any engagement she might have made.<sup>21</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

There is, however, one strange and significant feature in the laws of Manu as regards public women, which demands special notice. It will be seen that female anchorites are placed in the same category with singing and dancing girls. This law is so widely different from the old stern Roman rule as regards the chastity of Vestals, that it can only be regarded as a sarcasm levelled at those Buddhist nuns who devoted themselves to a convent life. The existence of female devotees seems to have been unknown to the old Brahmanical system, although such women are to be found in the present day at Benares and other sacred places. Hence it is easy to apprehend the full bitterness of the law of Manu, which classifies female anchorites with public women, and enacts that those who violated their chastity should be punished by a small fine.

Female anchorites placed in the same category with public women.

Sarcasm levelled at Buddhist nuns

The law as regards the conduct to be observed by a Hindú towards the wives of his several brothers is sufficiently indicated in the code by the simple statement, that the wife of an elder brother was to be considered as a mother-in-law, and the wife of a younger brother as a daughter-in-law.<sup>22</sup> There was, however, one important exception to this rule, which originated in an old Vedic custom, and is partially recognized by Manu. In ancient times, when women were regarded as property, the widow or widows of a deceased husband were inherited by his brother or nearest male kinsman. This custom seems to have been continued to a comparatively recent

Conduct of a Hindú towards the wives of his brethren

Law for raising up a son to a deceased brother

<sup>21</sup> Manu, viii 362-365

<sup>22</sup> Manu, ix 57, 58

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Custom recog-  
nized but not  
tolerated by  
Manu.

Custom referred  
to here given  
by Manu.

period by the force of a religious obligation connected with the Śiṣṭhī, or feast of the dead. It was deemed essential that the offerings made to the soul after death, should be presented by a son of the deceased, and consequently it was necessary that every man should by some process or other become the father of a son. Accordingly the dogma seems to have been generally accepted, that if a man died childless, his nearest kinsman should beget a son upon the surviving widow, who should be regarded as the son of the deceased, and should present the necessary offering to his shade. Manu was aware of this custom, which indeed has already been exemplified in the legend of Vyāsa, who raised up sons to his deceased brother Viśvitra vīrya,<sup>3</sup> but he can scarcely be said to tolerate it. He directs that under any circumstances the kinsman should be free from all impure desire, and that after the birth of a son no further intercourse should be permitted under pain of loss of caste. But he adds that no woman of a twice born caste is authorized to become a mother by any one but her husband, and that the practice is fit only for cattle and is reprehended by the learned Brāhmins. He refers the custom itself to the reign of Vena, one of those mythical Rajas who may be referred to a very remote antiquity, and who are said to have governed the whole earth. It is also stated in Manu that Vena indulged in his fondness for women to such an extent as to weaken his intellect and cause a confusion of castes. Now according to such vague traditions of Raja Vena as have been preserved in the Mahā Bhārata and

Puránas, he appears at some primitive period to have displayed great hostility to the Bráhmans. It is not, therefore, surprising that the compilers of the Brahmanical code should have referred an evil custom to so obnoxious a Raja, and should otherwise have sought to blacken his name.<sup>24</sup>

This degrading custom still largely prevails amongst the lower orders of Hindús, but is no longer practised by men of the twice-born castes; and with its decline another custom has arisen, namely, that of adoption. According to Manu, a man without a son might appoint his married daughter to raise up a son to perform the necessary ceremonies at the Sráddha; but in this case the son of the daughter would ultimately be required to offer two funeral cakes, namely, one to his natural father, and one to his maternal grandfather who had adopted him. A childless man might also adopt a son from another family; but in that case he could offer no funeral cake to his natural father, but only to his adopted father; and he could consequently never claim the estate of his natural father, as that would devolve on the son who offered the cake.<sup>25</sup>

---

<sup>24</sup> Manu, ix 59—69 Compare Vishnu Purána, Book 1 chap 13

<sup>25</sup> Manu, ix 132, 142, 145—147, 162—164, 167

Modern custom  
of adoption

## CHAPTER XIII

### HINDÚ GOVERNMENT.

#### HISTORY OF INDIA PART V

Contrast between the theory of government in Manu and the patriarchal and feudal types in Vedic tradition

Absence of patriotism and public spirit

THE theory of Hindú government which is set forth in the code of Manu, presents a marked contrast to the patriarchal and feudal types which appear in the Vedic traditions of the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana. The loyal attachment of kinsmen and retainers, and their obligations to render military service to their suzerain, which characterize the great story of the war of Bhárata, find no expression whatever in the code of Brahmanical law; and no precepts are to be discovered, which recognize in any way that patriotic interest in the welfare of the Raj, which was respectively displayed by the general community during the gambling match of Nala, and during the movement in favour of installing Ráma as Yuvaraja. To all appearance the old Roman sentiment of devotion to the common weal, which is to be found amongst all Aryan nations, and which certainly appertained to the old Vedic Aryans, had passed away beneath the blighting influence of Brahmanical oppression; and the public spirit which had animated the body politic in the Vedic age, and which is essential to the permanence of states and



empires, seems to have been narrowed down to the caste, the village, or the family. The result has been that for ages the people of India have had but one political tie, one nationality, and one patriotism, and that is religion, and religion alone. Foreign rule may be introduced, a Raj may be annexed by a paramount power, and a once reigning family be condemned to obscurity or exile; but the masses have never exhibited a spark of that deep-seated loyalty, which led the old Barons of England to rally round the standard of King Charles, and which stirred up the Highland clans to fight lustily for the Chevalier, and to spurn the tempting rewards that were offered for his capture. If, however, the religion be assailed, or only threatened by the temporal power, common superstitions and common fears seem to unite the people into a mysterious brotherhood, which will fight to the last with the high souled daring of Crusaders, although it may be wanting in the stern discipline of Cromwell's Ironsides.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Religion the  
only political  
and national tie

The political system of the Bráhmans, like their religious system, was based upon fear. Under the gloomy influence of a remorseless priesthood, the Raja and his people ceased to glory in the worship of the old Vedic deities, and were kept in a state of abject submission by the dread of mysterious evil, either in this life, or in the life hereafter. In the isolation of a village, or a household, an independence might have been occasionally displayed; but all constitutional checks upon the conduct of a Raja seem to have disappeared; excepting such as were exercised by the Bráhmans alone. The Raja was regarded as a divine administrator of the law; but the law was to be interpreted by the Bráhmans. The

Political system  
of the Bráh-  
mans based  
upon fear

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

was a despotic sovereign, but he was restrained in every direction by religious obligations. He held the country by a military occupation, but he was controlled by Brahmanical advisers. If, like Saul, he sought to throw off the yoke of the priesthood another Raja would be set up in his room, and he might expect poison in every dish, and a dagger in the dress of every female in his household.

Hindu Govern-  
ment is headed  
under four  
heads

The system of Government which finds expression in the Institutes of Manu may now be considered under four several heads, namely —

- 1st, The Raja, his Court and Ministers
- 2nd, Government of the Provinces
- 3rd, Administration of Justice
- 4th Laws of War

1 The Raja  
his Court and  
Ministers

The precepts which refer to the Raja, his Court and Ministers comprise in the first instance a sketch of the Hindu ideal of a Raja as a divine being, followed by the obligations which bind him to reward the good and to punish all evil doers. His daily duties are there laid down, the worship of the gods, the vices he is to avoid, his public appearance, his secret Councils, his noon day meal, the precautions he is to take against poison and assassination, his women, military reviews, reception of spies, evening meal and music. The whole winds up with full directions as regards his Metropolis, Fort, and Palace, his Rani and Priests, his Minister and officials, his Ambassador or Minister for Foreign Affairs, and the distribution of the chief offices. The details connected with these several subjects may now be considered in regular order.

Hindu Ideal of a  
Raja

The Hindu ideal of a Raja is in exact accordance

with the Oriental idea of sovereignty, which still prevails amongst the people of India.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

"Brahmá," says Manu, "created a Raja for the maintenance of the law; for without a Raja the world would quake with fear. And Brahmá formed the Raja out of the essence of the eight deities who guard the universe; and thus the Raja surpasses all mortals in glory, and should exercise the attributes of the eight gods. As Indra, the god of the firmament, sends plentiful showers during the four months of the rainy season; so let the Raja rain abundance upon his people. As Súrya, the sun-god, draws up the water by his rays; so let the Raja by his sovereign power draw the legal revenue from his dominions. As Pavana, the god of air, moves throughout the world; so let the Raja pervade all places by his spies. As Yama, the judge of the dead, punishes friends and foes; so let the Raja punish all offending subjects. As Varuna, the god of the waters, binds the guilty in fatal cords; so let the Raja keep evil-doers in rigid bonds. As Chandra, the moon-god, delights the world in the fulness of his glory; so let the Raja appear before his subjects in the splendour of his sovereignty. As Agni, the god of fire, burns and consumes; so let the just wrath of the Raja destroy all evil ministers. As Prithiví, the earth-goddess, supports all creatures; so let the Raja protect all his subjects. The Raja is a powerful deity in human form; and even as a child he must not be treated lightly. He is the firmament, the sun, the wind, the judge of all men, the deep ocean, the full moon, the fire, and the earth. He is the perfect essence of majesty, by whose power the goddess of abundance rises on her lotos, in whose valour dwells conquest, and in whose wrath dwells destruction."<sup>1</sup>

Divine attributes

Just punishment of evil-doers the special duty of a Raja

The duty of a Raja as regards rewarding virtu-

<sup>1</sup> Manu, vii 1-13, ix. 303-311. The goddess of abundance is Lakshmi.

ous men, and punishing evil doers, is thus laid down in the code —

“The Rājā should reward the good and punish the wicked. Punishment is the perfection of justice, the true manager of public affairs, the dispenser of all laws, the governor of all, and the protector of all. When it is inflicted with consideration and justice, it makes all the people happy; when it is inflicted hastily and unjustly, it wholly destroys them. If the Rājā were not to punish the evil doers, the stronger would roast the weaker like fish on a spit, the crow would peck at the consecrated food, the dog would eat up the sacred ghee, the rich would be deprived of all their wealth, the twice born would be overcome by the Sudra. If punishment were withdrawn, or inflicted unjustly, all castes would become corrupt, all barriers would be destroyed, and there would be an utter confusion among all people. But when punishment advances with a black countenance and red eyes to destroy sin, the people dwell undisturbed. That Rājā is the fit dispenser of justice who speaks the truth on all occasions, who understands the sacred books, and such a Rājā, if he inflicts just punishment, and knows the distinctions of virtue, pleasure, and wealth, will increase the happiness which men derive from all three. But punishment itself will destroy that Pāṇḍya, who is crafty, voluptuous, and wrathful. Punishment shall overtake his castles, his territories, and all that exist therein, and all his race, whilst the gods and Rishis will be filled with affliction and return from earth to the sky. Let the Rājā act with justice in his own dominions, chastise his foes with vigour, be honest and truthful to his friends, and lenient to the Brahmins, and his fame will spread over the whole world like a drop of oil on the surface of water. But if he is unjust, untruthful, and unkind to the Brahmins, his reputation will be like a lump of ghee in a river.”

A good Rājā.

A bad Rājā.

The daily duties of a Raja are thus indicated:—

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

“Every morning the Raja should rise at early dawn, and make his oblations to the gods, and respectfully attend to Bráhmans who are versed in the Veda, and in the science of morals. From the Bráhmans he should learn to be modest and composed; for without humility many Rajas have perished with all their possessions. In this manner Raja Vena was utterly ruined, and so was the great Raja Nabusha. Day and night must the Raja endeavour to control his organs, and to shun the eighteen vices; the ten vices of pleasure and the eight vices of wrath, all of which end in misery. The ten vices which are born of pleasure are hunting, gambling, sleeping by day, censuring rivals, excess with women, intoxication, singing, music, dancing, and useless travel. The eight vices which are born of wrath are tale-bearing, violence, insidious wounding, envy, detraction, unjust confiscation, reviling, and open assault. Vice is more dreadful than death; since after death the vicious man sinks to the lower regions, whilst the virtuous man ascends to heaven.”

Daily duties of  
a Raja

Oblations to the  
gods

Attendance on  
Bráhmans

Control of the  
passions

Ten vices born  
of pleasure

Eight vices born  
of wrath

“Having paid due respect to the Bráhmans, the Raja should enter the hall of his palace, and gratify his subjects with kind looks and words. He should then dismiss them all and take secret counsel with his Ministers, either by ascending a mountain, or going privately to a terrace, a bower, a forest, or some other lonely place where he can consult with his Ministers unobserved and without listeners; for that Raja whose secrets are hidden shall attain dominion over the whole earth, although he may possess no treasure. He must exclude from his Councils all who are stupid, or diseased, as well as all heretics, women, and talking birds: since those who are disgraced are apt to betray secret counsel, and so are talking birds, and above all so are women.”

Public appear-  
ance of the Raja.

Secret Councils

“At noon, after the Raja has consulted with his Ministers, and taken exercise, and bathed, he should enter his private apartment for the purpose of taking food. His victuals

Noon day meal

**HISTORY OF INDIA. PART V**

Precautions against assassinations.

Women.

Prades.

Leisure duties.

Receipts of spies.

Evening meal.

Musical.

should be prepared by servants who are attached to him and are incapable of perfidy, and when the food has been tested and proved innocent, and when it has also been consecrated by mantras which repel poison, he may eat thereof but he should always swallow such medical substances with his food as resist poison, and constantly wear such gems as are known to repel poison. The dress and ornaments of his females should be examined, lest some weapon should be concealed in them, after which the females should render him humble service with fans, water, and perfumes. In like manner he should take diligent care when he goes out in a carriage or on horseback, when he sits or when he lies down, when he takes his food, and when he bathes and anoints himself, and puts on all his habiliments. When he has finished his noon day meal, he may divert himself with his women in the recesses of his palace, and when he has idled a reasonable time, he should again think of the public affairs, and review his armed men with their elephants, horses, chariots, accoutrements, and weapons. At sunset he should perform his religious duty. After this he should proceed to his inner apartments, and there in private and well armed, he should take the reports of his spies, of whom he should take five kinds in his pay, namely—active and artful young men, degraded anchorites, distressed husband men, deceived merchants, and false devotees. When he has heard all that they have to say, he should dismiss them. After this he should go to another secret chamber, and eat his evening meal attended by his women, and then having been recreated by music, he should retire early to rest that he may rise on the morrow refreshed from his slumbers.”

Modern life in the courts as far as that described in Manus.

Commentary upon the foregoing details is perhaps scarcely necessary. The picture which they present of the life of a Hindú Raja is identical with that which may still be found in most native courts. Superstition, secrecy, suspicion, idling with women,

espionage, and military display were and are the conditions of Oriental sovereignty. Meantime intrigues like those which agitated the zenana of Maharaja Dasaratha were doubtless as frequent in the past age, as they are in the courts of native princes of our own time.<sup>6</sup>

The directions laid down in the Institutes of Manu respecting the Metropolis, Fort, and Palace of the Raja, and also his Rání, Priests, and Ministers, may be thus indicated. —

“ A Raja should dwell in a district where the country is level and open, and abounds in grain. The Raja should there dwell in a capital city, having round it a desert by way of a fortress, or else a fortress of earth, or one of water, or one of trees, or one of armed men, or one of mountains. Of all these a fortress of mountains is to be preferred, for wild beasts dwell in the desert fortress, vermin in the earth fortress, aquatic animals in the water fortress, monkeys in the fortress of trees, men in the fortress of armed men, but gods in the fortress of mountains. The Raja should dwell within a Fort; for one bowman placed upon a wall is a match in war for a hundred enemies, and a hundred bowmen on a wall is in like manner a match for ten thousand enemies. The Fort should be supplied with weapons, money, grain, beasts, Bráhmans, artificers, engines, grass, and water. In the centre of the Fort the Raja should raise his Palace, which should be completely defended, brilliant with white stucco, and surrounded with water and trees ”<sup>7</sup>

“ When a Raja has prepared a Fort and Palace he should choose a Rání of the same caste as himself, born of an exalted race, captivating the heart, adorned with every beauty and every virtue. He must also appoint a domestic priest or Purohita, also a performer of sacrifices, or Ritwij, and these Bráhmans may solemnize the religious rites of his

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

City of the Raja  
in a level place  
surrounded by  
mountains

The Fort

The Palace.

A Rání.

Domestic priest  
and sacrificing  
priest

<sup>6</sup> *Ante*, Book iv chap 7.

<sup>7</sup> Manu, vii 69—76.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Sacrifices and  
gifts to Brah-  
mans

family, as well as those which are performed with the three sacred fires”<sup>8</sup>

“A Raja should perform sacrifices accompanied with gifts. He should pay due respect to Brahmans who have returned from the dwellings of their preceptors, for a present to such a Brahman is called a precious gem, which is deposited by Rajas with the Brahman caste, which never perishes, and which neither thieves nor foes can take away. An oblation in the mouth of a Brahman is far better than offerings to holy fire, it never drops, it never dries, it is never consumed”<sup>9</sup>

Ministers.

“The Raja must appoint seven or eight Ministers, who must be sworn. They should be men whose ancestors were the servants of Rajas, who are versed in the Sastras, who are personally brave, who are skilled in the use of weapons, and who are of noble lineage. He should perpetually consult with those Ministers on matters pertaining to peace and war, on his army, on his revenues, on the protection of his people, and on the proper expenditure of the wealth which he has acquired. He should ascertain the opinions of his Counsellors, first of each one separately, and then of the whole collectively, and then he should do that which is most beneficial in public affairs. To one learned Brahman distinguished among them all, the Raja should impart his momentous counsel, and to this Brahman he should intrust all transactions with full confidence, and when he has finally resolved how to act, he should commence his measures in conjunction with this Chief Minister”<sup>10</sup>

The Chief Minister to be a Brahman.

Officers.

“A Raja must in like manner appoint other Officers, who should be men of integrity, well informed, steady, habituated to gain wealth, and tried by experience. Those who are brave, skilful, well born, and honest he should employ in his mines of gold and gems, and in other similar works, but those who are pusillanimous he should employ in the recesses of his palace”<sup>11</sup>

<sup>8</sup> Manu vi 77-78

<sup>9</sup> Manu vi 51-52

<sup>10</sup> Manu vi 79-81

<sup>11</sup> Manu vii 60-62



"The Raja should likewise employ an Ambassador who is versed in all the Sástras; who understands hints, external signs, and actions; whose abilities are great, and who is of illustrious birth. He should be one who is generally beloved; who is dexterous in business; who is endued with an excellent memory; who knows countries and times; and who is handsome, brave, and eloquent. In the transaction of affairs, the Ambassador should be able to comprehend the plans of a foreign Raja, by the signs, hints, and acts of his confidential servants; and he should also be able to discover the measures which a foreign Raja desires to undertake, by studying the character and conduct of his Ministers. Thus when a Raja has learned from his Ambassador all the designs of a foreign Raja, he may be able by vigilant care to guard himself against any evil."<sup>12</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

The Ambassa-  
dor

"The government of the country and regulation of the treasury should be in the hands of the Raja; the administration of justice should be in the hands of the Raja's officers; the forces of the realm should be directed by the Commander-in-Chief; and the negotiations respecting peace and war should be conducted by Ambassadors."<sup>13</sup>

Distribution of  
offices.

The foregoing directions respecting the guarded security in which a Raja should dwell, and the Ministers and Officers by whom he should be surrounded, exhibit with sufficient clearness the timidity, distrust, and love of deception and artifice, which but too often characterize Native administration. The ideal of a city, a palace, and a fort, will be found strikingly illustrated in the description of the city of Ayodhyá, and the fort and palace of Mahá-raja Dasaratha; as well as in the description of Lanká, and the fort and palace of Rávana, which appear in the Rámáyana.<sup>14</sup> The character of an

Characteristics  
of Hindú sove-  
reignty.

Illustrations to  
be found in the  
Rámáyana and  
Mahá Bhárat.

<sup>12</sup> Manu, vii 63, 64, 66, 68.

<sup>13</sup> Manu, vii 65 Elphinstone justly observes that the officer who is here styled an Ambassador bears a closer resemblance to a Minister for foreign affairs

<sup>14</sup> See ante, Part iv. chap 1 and 20

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Ambassador, again, is similar to that of Sanjaṣa, the Minister and charioteer of Mahārāja Dhritarāshtra, who was sent on an embassy to the Pándavas prior to the war of the Mahá Bhārata.<sup>15</sup>

241. Govern-  
ment of the  
Provinces

A military occu-  
pation based  
upon the village  
system.

The administration of the Provinces, which is prescribed by the compilers of the code, seems to have partaken largely of a military character; and is such as might have been expected after the conquest and occupation of Hindústan by the Aryan invaders. A military force was cantoned in the several districts according to their extent; whilst a civil administration was introduced upon the basis of the ancient division of the country into villages or townships.<sup>16</sup> The village system appears to have originated in remote antiquity, and still continues to prevail throughout India, excepting, perhaps, in Bengal proper. A Hindú village, however, comprehends something more than an English village; and it will be necessary to glance at its constitution, before taking into consideration the administrative measures laid down in Manu.

Hindú village  
comprising both  
a district and a  
town.

The so-called Hindú village is in fact a township, or district including an area of land, as well as a village or town, properly so called. It varies in extent, but is inhabited by a single community; and is separated from all other villages by boundaries, which are carefully defined and rigidly guarded. The village lands may be of all descriptions; cultivated, culturable and uncultivated, pasture, and unculturable waste. The lands are divided into fields

<sup>15</sup> See *ante*, Vol I Part II chap 10. A distinction, however, must be laid down between the marks of resemblance which are to be found in the original Vedic tradition, and those which appear in the modern Brahmanical version

<sup>16</sup> Manu, vii 114

by boundaries, which are as well understood as those of the village; and the name of each field, with its qualities, extent, and holders, are minutely entered in the village records. Each village thus consists of lands, or farms, from which the community draws its subsistence; and the assemblage of houses or huts, which constitute the village proper, and in which the community dwell more or less together for the sake of security.<sup>17</sup>

These village communities are little republics, each having its head-man, and its little body of village officials. But the officials themselves are controlled by the public opinion of the community, which is expressed by popular gatherings beneath shady trees, after the old-world fashion of our Saxon fore-fathers, and much in the same way that the elders and people of Israel assembled at the gates of their cities to settle disputes about heritage and lands. According to the current idea there ought to be twelve officials in every village; but the number varies, and there are officers in some villages, who are not to be found in others. Each village has its head-man, who transacts all business with the ruling authority; apportions the payment of land revenue among the villagers, according to the extent of these lands and the nature of their tenures; lets out lands which have no fixed occupants; and partitions the water for irrigation. He also settles disputes and apprehends offenders. All points of public interest are, however, arranged in free consultation with the villagers; and all disputes are decided with the assistance of arbitrators or assessors. The head-man is

The village communities, or republics

Village officials.

The Head man.

Village assemblies

---

<sup>17</sup> Elphinstone's *History of India*, Book II chapter 2

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

The accountant  
The watchman.

The Bráhma  
priest  
Astrologer and  
schoolmaster  
Jeweller

Miscellaneous  
village servants

Emoluments of  
the village offi-  
cials in land  
and fees.

Antiquity and  
permanence of  
the Hindu Vil-  
lage system.

assisted by an accountant and a watchman. The accountant keeps the village records, manages the accounts, draws up deeds, and writes private letters when required. The watchman guards the boundaries of the villages, and those of the fields within the village; and he likewise watches the crops, and acts throughout the village as a constable, public guide, and messenger. In addition to these there is generally a Bráhma priest, who is sometimes an astrologer, and schoolmaster; a jeweller, who is also a money-changer; a smith, carpenter, barber, potter, and worker in leather. Sometimes, also, there is a tailor, washerman, physician, musician, and a poet, who is also a genealogist; and in the south of India there is generally a dancing-girl. The head-man and the accountant generally hold pieces of land, and sometimes receive allowances from government; but all the officials receive fees from the villagers, consisting either of money, or of a handful or two out of each measure of grain.<sup>13</sup>

These village communities have outlived dynasties, revolutions, invasions, and what appeared to be utter destruction. For years a village may have been depopulated by pillage and massacre; but still when tranquil times return, and possession is again possible, the scattered villagers will return to their old homesteads. A generation may pass away, but their sons will return, and re-establish the village on its ancient site, rebuild the houses which their fathers occupied, and again cultivate the fields which had been in the hands of their families from time immemorial.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>12</sup> Elphinstone

<sup>13</sup> Sir Charles Metcalf's minute, quoted by Elphinstone. See also Elphinstone.

The code of Manu does not expressly define the constitution of the Hindu village, as it is laid down in the preceding paragraphs, but there seems every reason to believe that the village, as it existed in the time when the code was promulgated, corresponded in all essentials with the village of the present day. The object of the lawgiver was not so much to define existing institutions, as to lay down laws and precepts, and, consequently, the data to be derived from the Institutes of Manu must be chiefly gathered from the laws respecting pastures and landmarks.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Village system  
as indicated by  
Manu

"A space for pasture," says Manu, "should be left round every village. In breadth it should be three hundred cubits, or three throws of a large stick. In the case of cities, or large towns the surrounding pasture should be three times as broad. Every field bordering on the pasture land should be enclosed by a hedge, so high that a camel cannot look over it, and every gap through which a dog or a boar could thrust its head should be stopped. If the bordering fields are not enclosed in this manner, and cattle enter in and damage the rising crops, the herdsman of the cattle shall not be punished. If, however, cattle in charge of a herdsman work mischief in a field near a highway, the herdsman must be fined a hundred panas, but the owner of such a field ought to secure it against cattle that have no herdsman. In other fields the owner of cattle working mischief should be fined one pana and a quarter, but in all cases the value of the damaged grain must be paid. No fine should be levied for damage done by a cow within ten days of her calving, or by a bull which is kept for breeding purposes, or by cattle which have been consecrated to the deity."<sup>20</sup>

Law respecting  
the surrounding  
pasture land.

stone's *History of India* Book 1 chapter 3 which must always be regarded as a high authority on Indian revenue matters. Numerous other authorities have also been consulted but specific references are unnecessary.

<sup>20</sup> Manu v. 1. 237—241

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART IVillage bound-  
aries and land  
marks.Investigation of  
disputes re-  
specting land  
marks.

As regards boundaries and landmarks, the following directions are laid down in the code:—

“In cases of dispute between two villages, or two land holders, respecting a boundary, the Raja, or his Judge, should investigate the matter in the month of Jayasitha [about October], when the landmarks can be seen more distinctly than at other times. Some landmarks should be concealed under-ground, such as large pieces of stone, bones, tails of cows, bran, ashes, potsherds, bricks, tiles, charcoal, pebbles, sand, and other such substances, which are not corroded by the earth. Trees should also be planted along the boundary, with clustering shrubs and creepers. Lakes, wells, pools, and streams, should also be made on the common limits, and temples dedicated to the gods should also be built there. By these marks, or by the course of a stream, or by long-continued possession, the Judge may ascertain the limit between the lands of two parties in litigation, but should there be still a doubt, he must have recourse to the declarations of witnesses. These witnesses should be examined in the presence of all the townsmen or villagers, or of both of the contending parties. They should put earth on their heads, and wear red mantles, and chaplets of red flowers, and they should be sworn by the reward of all their several good actions to give correct evidence concerning the boundaries, and their evidence should be recorded in writing, together with all their names. Those who give true evidence are absolved from all their sins, but such as give unjust evidence shall be fined two hundred panas. If no witnesses are forthcoming, four men who dwell on the four sides of the two villages should be called upon in the presence of the Raja to make a decision concerning the boundary. If there be no such neighbours dwelling on the sides of the two villages, nor any men whose ancestors had lived there since the villages were built, nor other inhabitants who could give evidence respecting the boundaries, the Judge must examine those who dwell in the jungle, such as hunters, fowlers, herdsme-”

snake-catchers, and gleaners, and fix the boundary between the two villages according to their evidence. As regards the bounds of arable fields, wells, pools, gardens, and houses, the testimony of the nearest neighbours on every side must be regarded as the best means of decision. Should they say anything untrue, each of them must be made to pay five hundred panas. If the boundary cannot be ascertained, the Raja should consult the future benefit of both parties, and make a boundary line between their lands."<sup>21</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART I.

The scheme laid down by the code of Manu for the government of villages may be thus indicated:—

Government of  
villages as laid  
down by Manu.

"A Raja should appoint a lord of one village, a lord of ten villages, a lord of twenty villages, a lord of a hundred villages, and a lord of a thousand villages. The lord of one village should report any robberies, tumults, or other evils which may arise within his district, to the lord of ten villages. In like manner the lord of ten villages should report to the lord of twenty; the lord of twenty to the lord of a hundred; and the lord of a hundred to the lord of a thousand."<sup>22</sup>

Of all these officers, the head-man, or lord of a village, seems to be the only one who has retained his office intact to the present day; with this difference, however, that whereas in the time of the code the post was apparently in the gift of the Raja, it is now generally hereditary in a particular family. The division known as a Purgunnah appears to correspond to the hundred villages; but the officers employed in it are only known by their continuing to enjoy the hereditary lands or fees; or at the most by their being depositaries of the registers and

The head man,  
or lord of one  
village

The Purgunnah,  
comprising a  
hundred vil-  
lages.

<sup>21</sup> Manu, viii. 245-265

<sup>22</sup> Manu, vii. 116-117.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART VModern traces  
of other divi-  
sionsEmoluments of  
the District  
Officers in the  
time of ManuGovernors of  
India

records connected with the purgunnah. The other divisions may also be faintly traced, but the occupations of the respective officers appear to have altogether passed away.<sup>23</sup>

The emoluments of the several provincial officers are clearly specified in the code. The head of a village was to receive as his daily perquisite, the fees of food, drink, fuel, and other articles, which according to the law ought to be presented by the villagers to the Raja. The fees from every village being thus appropriated by its respective head-man, a separate provision had to be made for the lords of many villages. The lord of ten villages was to receive the produce of two ploughed lands; the lord of twenty villages was to receive the produce of ten ploughed lands; but why the one should receive five times as much as the other is somewhat unintelligible. The lord of a hundred villages was to receive the entire produce of one village; and the lord of a thousand villages was to receive the produce of one large town.<sup>24</sup>

Besides these lords of villages, or districts, a Governor was to be appointed in every city or

<sup>23</sup> Elphinstone's *History of India*. The head man of a village is called Patil in the Dekhan, and in the centre and west of Hindostan, Mandai in Bengal, and Mokaddam in many other places, especially where there are or have lately been, hereditary village landholders. The accountant is called Patwari in Hindostan, Kulkarni and Karnam in the Dekhan and south of India, and Tallati in Guzerat. The watchman is called Pasban, Gornyet, Peik, Douraba, etc., in Hindostan, Mhar in the Dekhan, Tillari in the south of India, Paggi in Guzerat. The lord of ten or twenty villages was called Naikwari, Tarraf, etc. The lord of a hundred villages, or Purgunnah, is called Desmuk or Desu in the Dekhan and his registrar is called Despandi, in the north of India they are called Chakri and Canongos. The lords of a thousand villages were called Sirkassahs in the Dekhan, and their provinces are called Sirkars. The hereditary registrars are all to be found under the name of Sir Despandia. See Elphinstone's *Appendix*.

<sup>24</sup> Manu, vii. 118, 119.



capital, with high rank and authority, for the supervision of the provincial administration, and especially to watch the proceedings of the lords and villages. This supervision appears to have been very necessary. According to the code, the servants of the Raja who were appointed to guard the villages, were generally knaves, who seized what belonged to other men; and it was suggested that the Raja should confiscate the property of such knaves, and banish them from the realm.<sup>25</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

The system of taxation is so clearly indicated in the code, that it would appear to have been universally understood and recognized by the entire community. The principle is laid down in the first instance, that the taxes should be so adjusted that whilst merchants and others should gain a fair profit, the Raja should receive a just compensation for the protection which he afforded to the whole community. Accordingly, in levying a tax upon trades, the Raja was to consider not only the prime cost of the goods and the prices at which they are sold, but also the cost of conveyance and travelling, the expense of subsistence, the outlay necessary for insuring the security of goods, and the net profits which remained after all these charges had been defrayed. In this manner the Raja was to draw an annual revenue from his dominions by little and little; just as the leech, the bee, and the sucking calf take in their natural food. Here a new idea is expressed, which is unknown to modern taxation. The assessment was made not on the incomes of the people; but on what might be regarded as their

System of taxation in return for protection.

Tax upon traders

Assessment on yearly savings.

**HISTORY OF INDIA**  
**PART V**

yearly savings. Thus the Raja was to take one-fiftieth of all the cattle, gems, and gold and silver, which his subjects added every year to their capital stock; a law which not only furnished a convenient pretext for oppression and confiscation, but probably originated those habits of hoarding wealth in concealment, which have characterized the people for ages, but which are now fast disappearing from all parts of the country under British rule. As regards land revenue, the Raja was to take one-sixth, one-eighth, or one-twelfth of the grain produce, according to the difference of soil. He was also to take one-sixth of the clear annual increase of trees, flesh-meat, honey, ghee, perfumes, medicinal substances, liquids, flowers, roots, fruit, gathered leaves, potherbs, grass, earthen pots, articles made of leather and cane, and all things made of stone. The meaner inhabitants of the Raj, who lived by petty traffic, were only to be required to pay a mere trifle to the Raja as an annual tax; whilst those who supported themselves by labour, such as low handicraftsmen, artificers, and others, were required to give one day's labour every month to the Raja. But even though the Raja might be dying of want, he was never to receive any tax from a Brahman who was learned in the Veda.<sup>22</sup>

**Land revenue**  
**Tax on petty traders and artisans.**  
**Labour of Rajas.**  
**Prohibition of a Raja to receive tax from a Brahman.**

But whilst the right of the Raja to levy taxes is duly maintained, the corresponding duty of protection on his part is asserted with a persistency which seems to intimate that it was frequently neglected.

"The Raja," says Manu, "who takes a sixth part of the"

grain, together with the market duties and tolls, and the small daily presents for his household, and the fines for offenders, and yet fails to protect his subjects, the same will fall after death into a region of horror. By protecting his people a Raja obtains a sixth part of all their religious merits, but by failing to protect them he will be visited by a sixth part of all their iniquities”

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

The administration of justice, which finds expression in the code of Manu, seems to be little more than a Brahmanizing of the old patriarchal system, in which the Raja dispensed justice according to his own rude and primitive notions of right and wrong. A scheme is laid down by which the Raja may administer justice, or employ a deputy who is a Bráhmaṇ; but in the former case he is to be guided by the interpretations of the Bráhmans. The laws themselves refer to trust property, property which has no owner, lost property, treasure trove, and stolen goods; also to debts, money lending, sureties, deposits, false testimony, oaths, and ordeals; and finally, to damage to cattle, neglect of lands, and inheritance in the case of undivided and divided families. These may now be indicated in due order.

3rd Admin-  
tration of  
justice

The administration of justice by a Raja, assisted by Bráhmans, is thus laid down in the code —

Brahmanuz nr  
of the old patri  
archal system

“A Raja,” says Manu, “should enter his Court of Justice with a grave and composed demeanour, and be accompanied by Brahmanas and Counsellors capable of advising him. There he should take his seat in suitable attire, with his mind attentively fixed, and should decide cases according to the law. Should he desire it, a Brahman who

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Court of Bra-  
hman with four  
faces.

Court of the  
Raja or Chief  
Judge

Laws respecting  
property

Trusts

Property with  
out owners

is not a sacrificial priest, may interpret the law to him, but if a Raja looks stupidly on whilst cases are being decided by a Sudra, his Raj will be troubled like a cow who is sinking in deep mire. When the Raja cannot preside in person, he should appoint a Brahman of eminent learning to be Chief Judge, accompanied by three Brahmans to sit as Assessors, and this assembly is called the Court of Brahma with four faces.” <sup>22</sup>

“The Raja, or the Chief Judge appointed by the Raja should commence proceedings by doing reverence to the deities who guard the world, and then enter on the trial of causes. He should understand what is expedient or in expedient but he should consider only what is law or not law, and in this spirit he should examine all disputes between parties in the order of their several castes. He should see through the thoughts of men by their voice, colour, countenance, limbs, eyes, and action, for the internal workings of the mind are to be discovered from the limbs, the look, the motion of the body, the gesticulation, the speech, and the changes of the eye and face.”

The more important precepts of Manu as regards property are as follows —

“Property should be held in trust by the Raja, when it belongs to a Brahmachári or an infant, until the Brahmachári has ceased his studentship, or until the infant has attained his sixteenth year. In like manner, property must be held in trust by the Raja when it belongs to a barren woman, or to a woman without sons, or to women without kindred, or to women whose husbands are in distant places or to widows who are true to their lords or to women who are afflicted with sickness. Such kind men as appropriate the property of women who are yet living should be punished by a just Raja with the severity due to thieves.” <sup>23</sup>

“Property for which no owner appears may be detained

<sup>22</sup> Manu vi 1—11 20—22

<sup>23</sup> Manu vii 93—95

<sup>24</sup> Manu viii 2—29

by the Raja for three years; if the owner appear within that time he may take his property, but otherwise it may be confiscated by the Raja. The Raja may take a sixth, or a tenth, or a twelfth of the property which has been so detained by him."<sup>31</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

"Property which has been lost by one man and found by another should be secured by the Raja, who should commit it to the care of trustworthy men. If any should be convicted of stealing such property, the Raja should condemn the thief to be trampled upon by an elephant. If the right owner should claim the property, the Raja may restore it to him, after deducting a sixth or a twelfth part. But if a man set up a false claim, he may be fined either an eighth of his own property, or else a proportion of the value of the goods which he has falsely claimed."<sup>32</sup>

Lost property.

"A learned Bráhmaṇ who finds a hidden treasure may take it without any deduction being made to the Raja, for he is lord of all. But if the treasure be discovered by the Raja, he may lay up half in his treasury, and give the other half to the Bráhmaṇs. The Raja is entitled to the half of all treasure trove and precious minerals, in return for the general protection which he affords, and because he is the lord paramount of all the soil."<sup>33</sup>

Treasure trove.

"All property seized by robbers must be restored by the Raja to the rightful owners, whatever may be their caste; for a Raja who keeps the stolen goods for himself incurs the guilt of a robber."<sup>34</sup>

Stolen property.

The foregoing laws thus seem to refer to a period when the administration was more patriarchal in its character than it became in later years. The Raja appears as the guardian of all infants and unprotected women, and to hold their property in trust. He also detained all unclaimed property, and it is remarkable that any one stealing such property was to

Patriarchal  
character of the  
law.

<sup>31</sup> Manu, viii. 30—33

<sup>32</sup> Manu, viii. 37—39

<sup>33</sup> Manu, viii. 31—36

<sup>34</sup> Manu, viii. 40.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART VPunishment of  
elephant tram-  
plingMiscellaneous  
law

Debts

Money lending

Loans

be trampled to death by an elephant; the severity of the sentence being probably caused by the frequency of the crime<sup>23</sup>. The privileges of Bráhmans as regards treasure trove have already been treated elsewhere.

The laws as regards debts, money-lending, sureties, and deposits, are as follows:—

“When a creditor sues a debtor before the Rya, the debtor should be required by the Rya to pay whatever is proved to be true, together with a small fine. Should a defendant deny the debt, then the plaintiff must call a witness who was present when the loan was made, or produce other evidence. When a defendant admits a debt he must pay a fine of five per cent, but if he denies the debt, and it be afterwards proved against him, he must pay a fine of ten per cent.”<sup>24</sup>

“A money-lender may take an eightieth part of a hundred, or one and a quarter per cent, as interest per month for the money lent, provided he has a pledge. But if the money-lender has no pledge he may take two per cent as a month's interest. He may also take interest per month according to the caste of the borrower, that is, two per cent from the Bráhmaṇ, three per cent from a Kshatriya, four per cent from a Vaisya, and five per cent from a Súdra. Stipulated interest beyond the legal rate is invalid, and is called usury.”<sup>25</sup>

“A lender of interest on safe carriage, who has agreed on the place and time, shall not receive such interest, if the goods are not carried to the place, or within the time. The amount of interest should be settled by men well acquainted with sea voyages and journeys by land.”<sup>26</sup>

<sup>23</sup> A sepooy convicted of conspiracy was subjected by the Guicowar of Parels to this form of punishment as late as 1866. But since then at the instigation of the paramount power, the punishment of elephant trampling has been abolished by the Guicowar.

<sup>24</sup> Manu, vi. 47—53.

<sup>25</sup> Manu, vi. 152.

<sup>26</sup> Manu, viii. 156, 157.

"The man who becomes surety for the appearance of a debtor, and does not produce him, shall be liable for the debt; but the son of such a surety shall not be liable; nor shall a son be liable for money which his father has idly promised to musicians and actresses, or lost at play, or owes for spirituous liquors, or for the balance of a fine or toll. If, however, the father shall have been surety for the payment of the money, and not for the mere appearance of the debtor, then his heirs may be compelled to discharge the debt. Again, if a debtor borrows money and expends it for the use of his family, and afterwards dies, the money must be paid by that family, whether it be divided or undivided, out of the estate."<sup>39</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Sureties

"If a defendant refuses to restore a deposit, and there are no witnesses, the judge should employ artful spies to deposit gold with the same man; then if the defendant restore the deposit given to him by the spies, there is nothing against him; but if he refuse to restore it, he shall be compelled to pay the value of both deposits."<sup>40</sup>

Deposits

The foregoing details call for very brief observations. Those which refer to debts and interest are perfectly simple; and the interest chargeable per month is quite in accordance with modern custom, although it may appear exorbitant in European eyes. The law which relates to the lender of interest on the safe carriage of goods despatched by land or sea, seems to approximate as regards sea voyages to the English law of bottomry; in which the owner of the ship borrows money on the security of his ship, and is not called upon to repay the advance unless the vessel returns in safety. The text is valuable as it indicates that sea voyages are not unknown to the Hindús in the time of Manu;

Exorbitant rates  
of interest in  
India.

Sea voyages of  
the Hindús  
proved by the  
law of Bottomry

<sup>39</sup> Manu, viii 158—160, 166  
VOL. II

<sup>40</sup> Manu, viii 182—181

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Moral significance of the laws respecting sureties

Artifice in the laws respecting deposits

Falsest money

although later Pundits have declared that voyages by sea were only permissible in the yugas which preceded the age of Kali. The law as regards sureties was invested with a moral significance in connection with musicians and actresses, gaming and drinking, which is eminently Brahmanical, but its efficacy in restraining men from such amusements may well be doubted. The law as regards deposits betrays that talent for artifice which still characterizes the Hindu.

The laws respecting false testimony, oaths, and ordeals, are as follows —

A witness who knowingly says anything different from that which he had seen or heard, will fall headlong after death into a region of horror, and be debarred from heaven. In some cases, however, the witness who gives false evidence from a pious motive, shall not lose a seat in heaven, such evidence is called by wise men the speech of the gods. Whenever the death of a man, whether a Brahman Kshatriya Vaisya or Sudra would be occasioned by true evidence falsehood may be spoken, and is even preferable to truth. Such witnesses must offer cakes and milk as oblations to the goddess Saraswati and thus they will fully expiate the venial sin of benevolent falsehood.<sup>41</sup>

Oaths

‘No man should take an oath in vain on a trifling occasion or he will be punished both in this life and in the next but it is not a deadly sin to take a light oath to women at a time of dalliance or on a proposal of marriage, or in the case of grass or fruit eaten by a cow, or of wood taken for a sacrifice, or of a promise made for the preservation of a Brahman.’<sup>42</sup>

Ordeals

The want of veracity displayed in the foregoing laws unfortunately continues to be a characteristic of

<sup>41</sup> Manu v. 5 103—105<sup>42</sup> Manu v. 111 11°



the Hindus, and may possibly have originated the trial by ordeal, which is applied by the code to witnesses alone. *Manu* says —

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

‘ Sometimes a witness may be required to hold fire, or to dive under water, or to touch the heads of his children and wife, and if the fire does not burn him, or if the water does not speedily force him to the surface, or if he does not speedily meet with misfortune, his testimony must be held to be true ’ “

The law respecting damages to cattle is chiefly remarkable for its pastoral simplicity. *Manu* says —

Pastoral law respecting damages to cattle

“ If any damage or hurt as regards cattle takes place in the day time, the blame falls on the herdsman, but if it takes place in the night time, the blame falls on the owner, if the cattle be kept in his own house. The wages of herdsmen are paid in milk, and they may with the assent of the master milk the best cow out of ten, the wages however, may be paid in a different mode. If a beast has strayed through want of care on the part of the herdsman, and has been destroyed by reptiles, or killed by dogs, or has died by falling into a pit, the herdsman should make good the loss, but he should not be required to do so if the beast has been carried off by robbers, and if, after proclamation and pursuit, he gives notice to his master. When cattle die, the herdsman should carry their ears, hides, tails, and other portions to his master, and also point out their limbs. When a flock of sheep or goats is attacked by wolves and the herdsman does not go out to repel the attack, he shall make good every sheep or goat that is slain, but if, whilst they are grazing together near a wood, a wolf suddenly springs out and kills one, the herdsman shall not be responsible ’ “

The law respecting neglect of land is of real significance.

See let file 1 by ultimate

nificance The question of whether land in India was originally the property of the sovereign or the cultivator, has long been a subject of controversy It has been ruled that the Raja was not the actual owner of the soil, but only the owner of a share of the crop According, however, to Manu, the cultivator is not only bound to pay the established share of the crop to the Raja, but is under an obligation to keep the land in good cultivation, so that the Raja should be no loser by any negligence Manu says —

“If land be injured by the fault or neglect of the farmer, he shall be called upon to pay ten times as much as the Raja’s share of the crop, but if the injury has been caused by the fault of his servants without his knowledge, he shall only be called upon to pay five times the Raja’s share”<sup>45</sup>

The question of land tenures in India can, however, only be decided in dealing with the later periods of Hindu history

Undivided and  
divided families

The law as regards undivided and divided families involves a change in the national usage which is of some significance Manu says —

“After the death of the father and mother, the brothers may assemble and divide among themselves the paternal estate, but they have no power over it while their parents live [unless the father choose to distribute it] The elder brother may take entire possession of the patrimony, and the others may live under him, as they lived under their father [unless they choose to be separated]”<sup>46</sup>

Here it should be remarked that the passages within brackets are not to be found in the original texts, but are the glosses of Kulluka, the comment-

<sup>45</sup> Manu, viii. 213

<sup>46</sup> Manu ix 104 105

ator. The inference therefore seems to follow that in ancient times the general custom was for families to live undivided; but that as society progressed, the practice of dividing the family property among the several members came gradually into vogue. A very large proportion of Hindú families are still undivided.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

Criminal law amongst the Hindús presents but few points of significance. Those relating to breaches of caste, and injury to women, have already been treated in foregoing chapters.<sup>47</sup> The laws respecting theft are, however, worthy of special notice from their extreme severity. *Manu* says:—

Criminal law

Severe punishment of thieves and cheats.

“Burglars who break a wall or partition, and commit theft in the night, should have their hands lopped off, and be impaled over a sharp stake. Cutpurses should be deprived of two fingers for a first offence; of a hand and foot for a second; and suffer death for a third. Those who furnish a thief with fire, food, arms, or apartments, or who receive a thing stolen, should receive the same punishment as the thief. The seller of bad grain for good, and the destroyer of landmarks, should suffer such corporal punishment as will disfigure them. But the worst of all cheats is a goldsmith; and if such a man commits fraud, the Raja should order him to be cut to pieces with razors.”<sup>48</sup>

The laws of war, as laid down in the code of *Manu*, present the same strange intermingling of conflicting ideas, which have already been referred to the opposition between the Kshatriya and the Bráhmaṇ, between the Vedic period and the Brahmanic period. Moreover, they exhibit that two-fold opposition, which has already been noticed as existing in each period; namely:—

4th. Laws of war

Four conflicting elements

<sup>47</sup> See *ante*, chaps x and xii

<sup>48</sup> *Manu*, ix 276—278, 291; 292

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

First, the opposition which existed in the Vedic age between a warlike community and a peaceful community, the worshippers of Indra and the worshippers of the Maruts.

Secondly, the opposition which prevailed in the Brahmanic period between the soldier and the priest, the Kshatriya and the Bráhman.

Difficulty of  
tracing each  
element to an  
individual com-  
munity

Each of these four elements may be traced in the laws respecting war; but the reference of each element to one of the four communities in question is only apparent and probable, and cannot be proved. Thus it is easy to refer all precepts implying praise of valour and contempt of cowardice to a warlike community; but it is difficult to classify such sentiments into Vedic and Brahmanic; although Brahmanic precepts may be occasionally detected by their association with the dogma of merits and demerits which especially belongs to the Brahmanic age. So, in like manner, the references to the value of alliances and diplomacy, and the benevolent laws respecting quarter and fair fighting, may be referred to a peaceful community of priests; but it is difficult to say decisively whether they originated in Vedic times or in Brahmanic times; although, as already seen in the war of the Mahá Bhárata, such precepts were but little regarded by the Kshatriyas of the Vedic period.

Division of the  
laws of war  
under four  
heads

The laws of war laid down in the code of Manu may now be treated under four several heads, of duties of Rajas in defensive warfare, duties of Rajas in offensive warfare, rules as regards quarter and fair fighting, and treatment of a conquered country. These may now be considered in order.

The duty of a Raja when placed upon the defensive was very simple. *Manu* says—

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

“Whenever a Raja is threatened by an enemy of equal or superior force, he must never turn his face from battle, nor forget the duties of the Kshatriya caste to which he belongs, namely, to accept every challenge, to protect the general community, and to honour the Bráhmans. Every Raja who fights bravely to the last will ascend to heaven immediately after death.”<sup>49</sup> “The soldier who turns his back to the enemy out of fear, and happens to be slain by his foes, shall take upon his own soul all the sins of his Commander, and shall give to his Commander, all the merits of his own virtuous acts.”<sup>50</sup>

Duties of a Raja  
in defensive  
warfare

Here the incongruity of Brahmanic and Vedic ideas seems abundantly manifest. The Brahmanic dogma of merits and demerits, has been superadded to the old Kshatriya notion, which finds even fuller expression in the Scandinavian belief, that the soul of the valiant soldier who fell in battle would ascend to the heaven of Odin, whilst the coward, or man who died a natural death, descended to the hell of Niflheim. The duties of a Raja after the commencement of the war are of a somewhat hesitating character.

Incongruity of  
Brahmanic and  
Vedic ideas

Duties during  
actual operations

“When a Raja,” says *Manu*, “perceives that his subjects are firm in their allegiance, and feels that he is powerful against the enemy, he should stand on the defensive. When a Raja knows that his own troops are in good spirits and well supplied, and that his enemy is disheartened and ill provided, he should eagerly march against him. On the other hand, when a Raja is expecting reinforcements, and

Advance and  
retreat

<sup>49</sup> *Manu*, vii. 87—89

<sup>50</sup> *Manu*, vii. 87—89

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Alliance

suffering but little injury meanwhile, he should temporize, When he finds himself weak in troops and beasts of burden, he should remain quietly in camp, and endeavour to make terms. When he perceives that his enemy is in every way stronger than himself, he should detach a portion of his army to amuse the foe, and meantime secure his own safety in some inaccessible locality. When he finds himself open to attack on all sides, he should seek the protection of a just and powerful Raja, and propitiate him with all the honours which should be paid to a father. But should a Raja find that the alliance is a source of evil, he should wage war alone. In a word, a Raja should so conduct his affairs, that neither an ally, nor a neutral, nor an enemy should ever gain an advantage over him, and this is the sum of political wisdom."<sup>51</sup>

Duty of a Raja  
in offensive war

The duty of a Raja in offensive warfare is of a decided character

Invading  
enemy's territory

The march

"When a Raja," says Manu, "invades the territory of an enemy, he should advance towards the enemy's metropolis. He should commence his march either in the spring or in the autumn, so that he may find either the vernal or the autumnal crops on the ground, but if he has a clear prospect of victory, or if his enemy is weakened by disasters, he may commence his march at any season. He must always, however, be upon his guard against secret friends who are in the service of a hostile Raja, and against all those who bring messages from the enemy's camp. On a plain he should fight with chariots and cavalry, in a region where there is water, he should fight on boats and elephants, in a woody country he should fight with bows and arrows, and where the ground is clear he should fight with swords and targets, and other weapons adapted to those quarters. In blockading an enemy, a Raja should sit encamped, and lay waste the surrounding country, spoiling the grass, wells, fuel, and trenches of the enemy, and harass

Secret friends  
of the invader

Tactics

Blockades

ing him night and day. A Raja should secretly gain over all such leading men from the side of his enemy as can be brought in with safety. He should keep himself thoroughly informed of all that his enemies are doing, and then when a fortunate moment is offered by heaven, he should give battle without hesitation. At the same time, however, he should be more desirous of reducing his enemy by negotiation, or by suitable bribes, or by creating dissension, than by risking all upon a battle.”

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

The rules as regard fair fighting and quarter are identical with those which are laid down in the *Mahā Bhārata*.<sup>53</sup> *Manu* says —

Rules of fair  
fight and  
quarter

“Men should not fight with concealed weapons, nor with arrows mischievously barbed, nor with poisoned arrows, nor with darts blazing with fire. Again, a horseman, or a soldier in a chariot, should not fight a man who is on foot. Quarter should be given to the following individuals, namely — one who sues for life with joined hand, one whose hair is loose and obstructs his sight, one who is sitting down fatigued, one who surrenders himself a prisoner, one who is asleep, one who has lost his coat of mail, one who is disarmed, one who is only looking on, or fighting another man, one who is grievously wounded, or terrified, and one who is running away.”

Prohibited weapons

Individuals who  
are to receive  
quarter

The course to be followed by a Raja after a conquest is worthy of notice, as it may possibly throw light upon the policy by which the Aryan conquerors established their empire over Hindustan. *Manu* says —

Policy to be  
pursued in a  
conquered  
country

“When a Raja has conquered a country, he should respect the deities which are worshipped in that country, as well as the virtuous priests of those deities. He should also

<sup>53</sup> *Manu*, vii 181—199

<sup>54</sup> See *ante* Vol I Part ii chap 11

<sup>55</sup> *Manu* vii 90—93

distribute largesses, and reassure the people by loud proclamation. He should respect the laws of the country, and place it under a Prince of the royal race, and gratify him with presents of jewels. Or he may form an alliance with the Raja whom he has conquered, and act in unison with him. He should also pay due attention to any Raja who has supported his cause, and to any Raja who has been hostile to his ally, so that both from an ally and an enemy he may secure the fruit of his expedition. By securing a firm ally a Raja obtains greater strength than by gaining wealth and territory."

Its failure

These precepts are curious, inasmuch as they exhibit the Oriental custom of conciliating a people and consolidating a conquest. No change of rulers was carried out, and no change of laws; and an alliance was merely formed for the purpose of increasing the military strength of the conqueror, without any reference whatever to the moral or material welfare of the people. The utter failure of this policy to maintain order and law, and to provide for the defence of the country at large, will form hereafter one of the most important political lessons, which are to be gathered from the history of India under native rule.



## CHAPTER XIV.

### HISTORICAL RESUMÉ.

THE two earliest ages in Hindú history, namely, the Vedic and Brahmanic periods, have now been investigated; and the results have been classified into chapters, and reduced to an available form. But still the labour of the historian is incomplete. The utter want of perspective, which has hitherto characterized the early legends of India, as it characterizes those of ancient Greece, has only been partially filled up. It is true that the ideas and institutions of the Vedic Aryans have been distinguished from those of the Bráhmans; and so far the task may be regarded as satisfactory; inasmuch as the two periods have for ages been blended into one in the belief of the people of India. But with this exception, the ordinary requirements of history appear to be altogether wanting. Imagination may fill the ear with the roar of distant ages, and please the eye with visions of primeval men; but there is no vista of the past carrying the mind back by successive stages to the earliest glimmer of legend. Two pictures are certainly presented, one of the Vedic times, and the other of Brahmanic times; and it appears to be established that the two differed widely from each other. But in each case there is a

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART I.

---

Absence of  
perspective in  
the ancient his-  
tory of India

# ORY OF INDIA LAST V

No chronological  
sequence between  
the Vedas and the  
Brahmanas

Pos- sibility of  
determining the  
sequence

Limits of the  
query

Questions pass-  
ing over into the  
history

want of chronological sequence The annals of the Vedic Aryans, and the annals of the Brahmanas, are alike unknown, and no record whatever has been preserved of the circumstances under which the two have been blended together, although the process by which the ideas and institutions of the Vedic age have been Brahmanized in the Hindu literature has been partially explained The question, therefore, remains to be solved of whether it is possible, by comparing the different phases of civilizations which appear to belong to different Epic traditions, to discover the clue to a chronological sequence which shall in any degree correspond to the notion of annals that is implied in the modern idea of history

Before, however, attempting this task, it will be necessary to define clearly the limits of the inquiry Many questions have been passed over in the present work, which have been largely and profitably discussed by eminent Sanskrit scholars, and especially by the great school of German philology of which Professors Lassen and Weber may be regarded as representatives Among these questions may be mentioned the origin of the Vedic people, and their apparent line of march before they entered the Panjab, the interpretation of Vedic myths by reference to natural phenomena, the reduction of traditions of individual heroes into allegorical histories of tribes or clans, and the classification of Vedic and Brahmanic literature into epochs, like that which has been attempted with so much success by Professor Max Müller The importance of these inquiries, as contributions to the history of human development, cannot be denied, but they can scarcely be regarded

as having a direct bearing upon a history of the **HINDÚS**, which has been mainly undertaken for the purpose of illustrating the civilization and institutions of the people, with especial reference to their present condition and future prospects, and to the political relations of the British Government with the great Indian feudatories of the crown. Moreover, an exhaustive investigation of these points would necessitate a preliminary training of many years in purely philological studies; and such a training would tend to wean away the mind from such historical criticism as is based upon the lives of men, rather than upon their languages. Finally, with all respect for the eminent scholars whose names have been mentioned, grave doubts may perhaps be expressed as regards the reduction of many of the Epic traditions into descriptions of natural phenomena, or allegorical histories of tribes or clans. That the hymns of the Ríg-Veda abound with mythical allusions of the former character cannot be doubted; and Professor Max Müller's forthcoming translation of the hymns will in all probability open up a new field of thought in this direction. But, as regards the Hindú legends in the Epics, another question has to be taken into consideration; namely, whether natural phenomena has not often been described in language and illustrated by incidents, which have been borrowed from authentic tradition. Again, it is a comparatively easy task to select certain incidents in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, and point out the striking resemblance which they bear to astronomical phenomena; but it would be as easy to select certain incidents from modern history and biography, in which the resemblance would

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

Unsatisfactory  
character of modern  
mode of  
interpretation.

Reference to  
natural phe-  
nomena in the  
Vedic hymns.

Objections to  
the interpreta-  
tion of Epic  
traditions by re-  
ference to  
natural phe-  
nomena.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

---

Reduction of  
traditions of  
heroes to al-  
legorical histo-  
ries of heroes  
applied to  
mythological  
heroes, and not  
to traditions of  
heroes

be equally startling. Unless, therefore, the upholders of the so called mythological theory are prepared to show that the whole of the Epics are amenable to a mythological interpretation, their method may possibly prove an *ignis fatuus*, tending in many cases to lead the student astray from the beaten track of authentic tradition into the field of conjectural allegory. The attempts which have been made to transmute the Tale of Troy, and indeed the whole mass of Greek legends, into similar myths, can by no means be regarded as satisfactory, and other attempts which have been made to reduce the sacred traditions of the Hebrews to the same category are still more open to criticism. The same remarks would in some measure apply to the theory which would reduce some of the traditions of individual heroes into allegorical histories of tribes or clans. Here, however, a distinction must be laid down between mythological legends of the gods, and what appear to be historical traditions of heroes. Legends of Indra and other gods, and the wars between gods and demons, appears to be generally capable of allegorical interpretation. But the case seems somewhat different as regards the Epic traditions of individual heroes, who have never been admitted into the Hindu Pantheon, or who have only been denied at a comparatively recent period. As regards this latter class of traditions, the simple method has been preferred of stripping the authentic tradition as far as possible of what appeared to be the Brahmanical accumulations of a later period, and thus attempting to restore the original story as far as may be to its pristine form, referring the Brahmanical additions to the later age in which they seem to have

originated, and proposing to consider them hereafter in connection with the history of the period to which they appear to belong, namely, the age of Brahmical revival. This method is left to stand upon its merits. Indeed, controversy would be out of place in the present work, and is, perhaps, best avoided; and the allegorical modes of interpretation are thus left to rest upon the authority of the eminent scholars by whom they have been suggested.<sup>1</sup>

The first scene in the history of India opens upon the Aryan occupation of the Punjab. A teeming population had apparently been settled for generations, and perhaps for centuries, in the land of the five or seven rivers. That the people had attained a certain civilization is evident from the allusions to houses, chariots, mailed armour, ships, and merchandise, which are to be found in the Vedic hymns as well as in the Epics. Their means of subsistence appear to have been generally drawn from lands and cattle; and doubtless their civilization varied, not only according to the affluence or otherwise of different families, but according to the fact of whether they dwelt in long established and well protected villages, or in new and outlying settlements recently cleared from the jungle, and bordering on an alien population. In that remote period the river Saraswati flowed into the Indus; and it is easy to infer from hymns already quoted, that a line of Aryan settlements was to be found on the banks of both rivers. In the subsequent age of

First scene in  
the history of  
—the Vedic  
Aryans in the  
Punjab.

<sup>1</sup> It is much to be regretted that the works of the leading continental Orientalists have not been reproduced in an English form. In India there are many scholars, both Native and European who would be glad of such a republication of the works of Lassen, Weber, and some others, who are at present only known at second hand or by reputation.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Second scene in  
Indian history  
--the Aryan  
conquest of  
Hindústan

Fast unrecorded  
interval between  
the two.

Brahmanism, the Aryans had conquered Hindústan, and the geography of the region bordering on the Saraswatí had almost faded away from the national memory; and but little was known beyond the fact that the river itself disappeared in the sand long before it reached the Indus. The period between the establishment of Vedic settlements on the Saraswatí, and the Aryan conquest of Hindústan, probably covers an interval of thousands of years; and yet the only positive facts which have been preserved in connection with this period are the disappearance of the Saraswatí and the rise of Brahmanism. Certain inferences, however, may be drawn from the Epic legends and traditions which have been reproduced in the present work, as well as from obscure and isolated allusions in other sacred books. It should, however, be added that whatever may have been the date in which the Epics and Institutes of Manu received their present form, the old Vedic and Brahmanic ages preceded the advent of Buddhism; and, consequently, they preceded the invasion of Alexander, and cannot be illustrated by the coins and inscriptions which have been hitherto discovered, and which appear to belong to a later era. Probably, however, it will be seen hereafter that the history of the Buddhist period furnishes further illustrations of the Brahmanic era, in the same way that Brahmanic literature has been found to furnish illustrations of the Vedic period.

Classification of  
different phases  
of civilization in  
Epic traditions:  
--the patriarchal  
heroic and  
monarchical

Under such circumstances it may perhaps be as well to compare the different phases of civilization which appear to characterize different legends, and then to attempt a classification of the results in a form corresponding to annals. In the history of

every people of which a record has been preserved there appear to have been three political stages, namely:—

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

1st, The Patriarchal

2nd, The Heroic

3rd, The Monarchical

Each of these stages, however, may be more or less modified by three different and powerful elements, which have their origin in human nature, and are more or less common to all classes of the community, namely —

Modification of  
the three stages  
of civilization  
by human  
nature.

1st, The instinctive desires which develop into passions.

Instincts

2nd, The yearning after individual freedom and power, which finds expression in democracy.

Democratic  
yearnings

3rd, The higher aspirations after temporal and spiritual good, which are involved in the conception of religion.\*

Religious aspir-  
ations.

A critical narrative of the modifications produced upon the three stages of political development by the instincts, the yearnings of democracy; and the aspirations of religion, would form the very essence of history, and would prove infinitely more valuable than the narratives of migrations, wars, and court intrigues, to which the name of history has been often improperly applied. Accordingly, it may be advisable to arrange the historical conclusions to be gathered from the Hindú traditions as far as possible under the three heads of patriarchal, heroic, and monarchical; and at the same time to inquire

Action of human  
nature upon the  
three stages of  
political devel-  
opment the es-  
sence of history

\* This classification is not strictly logical, as democratic and religious yearnings might with certain reservations be reckoned amongst the instincts. But the classification is practical and intelligible, and controversy is avoided by its adoption.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

1st, Patriarchal  
age of Hindú  
history illus-  
trated by the  
war of Bhárata  
and adventures  
of the Pándavas  
at Viráta

Family settle-  
ment at Hastin-  
ápur involved  
in the tradition  
of the war of  
Bhárata.

Pursuits of the  
settlers  
Agriculture

Keeping cattle

Training in the  
use of arms.

step by step how far each stage in Hindú history has been modified by the three influences indicated.

The most valuable illustrations of the patriarchal age of Hindú history are perhaps to be gathered from the tradition of the great war of Bhárata, and the episode, which describes the adventures of the Pándavas in the court of Raja Viráta. These two stories present important differences as regards religious belief, and must, therefore, be considered separately.

The tradition of the war of Bhárata involves in the first instance the settlement of a family at Hastinápur on the banks of the upper Ganges, which had been conquered and cleared by a remote ancestor. The pursuits of this family were eminently patriarchal. The cultivation of land is implied, though not directly expressed; probably because according to the caste system, which was fully in force when the tradition was reduced to its present form, the cultivation of land was left to the Vaisyas and Súdras. The keeping of cattle, however, is sufficiently indicated by the fact that the younger members of the family were accustomed to go out into the pastures at regular intervals for the purpose of marking all the calves, and re-marking all the older cattle. There were two branches in the family, namely, the sons of a reigning Chieftain who were named Kauravas, and those of a deceased Chieftain who were named Pándavas. All were brought up together and trained to defend their crops and cattle against enemies and robbers; and thus they were all more or less proficient in pugilism, wrestling, archery, throwing stones, casting nooses, and hurling chakras. As regards enemies there appears to



have been a feud with a neighbouring Raja named Drupada, whilst the Bhils in the neighbourhood were kept in strict subordination.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Feuds.

Subsequently a breach arose between the Kauravas and Pándavas; and the Kauravas remained behind at Hastinápúr, whilst the five Pándavas went out with their mother, and founded a new settlement at Indra-prastha on the banks of the Jumná.

Breach between two rival branches of the family

Migration of the Pándavas to Indra-prastha.

An episode occurs in connection with this new settlement, which illustrates the prevailing idea as regards marriage. Monogamy and polygamy seem to have been recognized institutions in the family history of the settlement at Hastinápúr; but otherwise there appears to have been little sentiment in the marriage unions. A young damsel was induced to become the wife of an aged Chieftain, by the promise that any sons she might bear him should inherit the estate to the exclusion of the heir-apparent. In another case three young sisters were carried away by force to be the wives of a young Raja. Again, the widows of a deceased Kshatriya were made over on his death to his nearest kinsmen, in order that sons might be begotten to inherit the family estate. Lastly, before the Pándavas commenced clearing a new settlement at Indra-prastha, they married one woman amongst them, according to a depraved custom which finds expression in the Vedic hymns, the eldest brother being regarded as the real husband of the lady, whilst the younger brothers were permitted to share his privileges<sup>3</sup>

Laxity as regards marriage in the family traditions.

Polyandry of the Pándavas

<sup>3</sup> The idea which prevails amongst the Bhootas, who still practise polyandry, is that a younger brother is entitled to a share of the wife of the eldest brother until he procured a wife of his own, and that in return for this privilege he is

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Colonial life at  
Indra prastha

Clearing the  
jungle

Possession as-  
serted by a great  
feast

Pándavas lose  
their wife at a  
gambling  
match

Feud between  
the Pándavas  
and kauravas  
settled by a war  
to the knife

Glimpses of the old colonial life of the five brothers and their joint wife at Indra-prastha, frequently appear beneath the dense overgrowth of later myths. The daily meals were apparently cooked and distributed amongst the brothers, first by the mother and afterwards by the joint wife. The Pándavas cleared their land by burning down the jungle; and in so doing they appear to have come into collision with a Scythian tribe of Nágas or snake worshippers. After the Pándavas had established themselves at Indra-prastha, they gave a great banquet, called a Rajasúya, which appears to have been an assertion of possession or sovereignty, but which is represented in the Mahá Bhárata as a great sacrifice to Indra and the other Vedic deities. Subsequently the Kauravas challenged the Pándavas to a gambling match; and the Pándavas lost both their estate or Raj, and their wife Draupadí; but were subsequently permitted to depart with Draupadí, on the condition that they should absent themselves for thirteen years. The residence in the jungle is chiefly valuable from an illustration which it furnishes of an ancient law, that a wife should never be captured until her husband or husbands had been first conquered.

The feud between the Kauravas and Pándavas was subsequently settled by a terrible war; and the narrative becomes more fruitful of illustrations of patriarchal times. The negotiations which preceded the war appear to have been carried on in an age when writing was unknown, for messages were sent between the rival parties by word of mouth. The war

bound to render personal service to the household, and is expected to make some presents to the wife. The question of parentage is settled by the mother

which ensued between the Kauravas and Pándavas was almost like a savage contest between wild beasts. The warriors fought with their fists, feet, and teeth; and cut and hewed and mangled and maimed each other with knives and clubs. Sometimes they threw an enemy down, and knelt upon his breast, and cut off his head; and in one case a warrior drank the blood of his slaughtered enemy with wild exultations of joy. The victory was ultimately gained by the Pándavas, but on the night of their final triumph, their camp was broken open by an ally of the Kauravas who had survived the fray, and their five sons were slaughtered, and the bleeding heads carried off as trophies of the revenge which had been achieved. The Pándavas resigned themselves as they best could to this fearful blow, and ultimately effected a reconciliation with their uncle, whose sons had fallen in the war. They performed the funeral rites of the slain, which are remarkable as showing the absence of all idea of burning the living widow with the dead husband. Finally, the Pándavas returned in triumph to the old family inheritance, and inaugurated their eldest brother Yudhishtira as Raja; and eventually asserted his supremacy as lord paramount of all the neighbouring Rajas, by the celebration of an Aswamedha. In this significant ceremony a horse was let loose by the Pándavas to wander where it pleased; a proceeding which was regarded as a challenge to all the neighbouring Rajas either to acknowledge their submission by letting the horse alone, or to hazard a battle by leading it away. After the lapse of a certain time, said to be a year, during which the Pándavas had asserted and maintained their suzerainty by conquering all who

Horrible re-  
venge

Absence of Sati

Return of the  
Pándavas to  
Hastinapur,  
and celebration  
of an Aswa-  
medha.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

---

Allegorical  
myths referring  
to wars against  
the Scythian  
Nágas

interfered with the horse, a great feast was held, in which the horse was killed and roasted as a sacrifice to Indra, and then served up to the conquered Rajas who attended as guests.

The story of the great war is followed by some myths, which throw a curious light upon the subsequent fortunes of the reigning house at Hastinapur. These myths seem to refer to some ancient wars between the Āryans and Scythian Nágas, or snake-worshippers. Parikshit, who succeeded Yudhishthira in the Raj, is said to have been killed by a snake, which seems to indicate that he was slain by a Nága. In revenge his son Janamejaya is said to have performed a sacrifice of snakes, in which the snakes were irresistibly impelled by the divine power of the sacrificing Bráhman to enter the sacred flame; a myth which seems to cover a tradition of some treacherous massacre of Scythic Nágas at a great banquet. In later legends these Nágas are identified with the Buddhists; and it is not improbable that these legends denote the subsequent overthrow of the reigning dynasty in the neighbourhood of Delhi by a Buddhist conqueror.

Free play of the  
instincts in the  
patriarchal age

The illustrations of the patriarchal period, which are furnished by the tradition of the great war of Bhárafá, may be further amplified by a consideration of the modifications of the patriarchal stage of human development, which were produced by the instincts, the yearnings of democracy, and the aspirations of religion. At such an early period the instincts appear to have had full play, and the passions became the dominant powers. The Pándavas sacrificed all sentiment to instinct by taking one wife amongst them. They were driven by sheer

want to clear out lands and keep cattle in a distant jungle, where they appear to have been surrounded by enemies and robbers. Finally, after they had lost their cleared lands at a gambling match, they were impelled partly by want, and partly by a passion for revenge, to enter upon a bloody fratricidal war, which terminated in the destruction of their rival kinsmen. In like manner the rude democratic yearnings and uncultured religious aspirations partook of the nature of instincts. The young men simply struggled against the authority of the elders, and plunged into a war to the knife contrary to the sober counsel of experienced age. The religious idea consisted in offering to their rude national or tribal gods such savoury meat as pleased themselves, for the sake of imparting a superstitious significance to the possession of cultivated land, and to the assertion of superiority over their neighbours. A few sentiments, chiefly in reference to war, seem to have been more or less recognized by the warrior caste of the patriarchal period. The precept that a wife should not be carried away as prize until her husband had been conquered, has already been noticed. To this may be added the notion that a challenge should always be accepted; that a third party should never interfere whilst two combatants are fighting; that death is to be preferred to dishonour; and that revenge is more or less a virtue. Indeed, the Oriental passion for revenge can only be kept within bounds by a system of order and law, like that which prevails under British administration; and it has always attained a fearful growth both in the patriarchal age, and in the heroic time which follows it, when each man does what seems right in

Democratic struggles of young men against the elders

Sacrifices associated with the possession of land and assertion of sovereignty.

Sentiments in reference to war

Force of the Oriental passion for revenge

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

his own eyes. The terrible massacre perpetrated by the sons of Jacob, in revenge for the seduction of their sister Dinah by the Prince of Shechem, is a striking illustration of the force of this sentiment. So too is the episode in the life of Samson, whose Philistine wife had been given away by her father to one of his companions, and who thereupon set on fire the standing corn of the Philistines by attaching firebrands to the tails of three hundred foxes. In return for this outrage the Philistines burnt both the faithless wife and her offending father, and again in revenge for this atrocity the Hebrew slew a thousand Philistines with the jaw bone of an ass. The history of Native rule has for ages been characterized by the story of such bloody feuds, excepting when order has been maintained and justice administered by a paramount power. The tribes beyond the pale of the North West frontier, who are also more or less beyond the pale of British administration, are probably the relics of the time when the sons of Pāndu fought the sons of Dhritarāshtra, and to this day a Sepoy in the pay of the British Government, who has been enlisted from these frontier tribes, will occasionally take a furlough for the definite purpose of settling some old family feud by the slaughter of an enemy, and it is often the case that the enemy will be slaughtered, together with every member of his family down to the babe in arms, so that no one may remain to perpetuate the feud. As, however, the tide of European civilization spreads over Asia, such atrocities will cease to be.

The second tradition which appears to illustrate the patriarchal age, is to be found in the episode in the Mahā Bhārata, which narrates the adventures of

Native rule  
is characterized  
by bloody  
feuds.

Patriarchal  
basis of the  
story of the  
avenues of the  
Pāndavas at  
Virāṭa.

the Pándavas and their wife at the court of Raja Viráta.<sup>4</sup> This tradition is presented in an artificial form corresponding to later Hindú fiction; but it certainly has a patriarchal basis. The Raja kept cattle which were carried away by an enemy. Upon this the ryots and herdsmen were required to bring all the remaining cattle into the so-called city, which was probably only a fortified village; whilst the Raja or Chieftain marched out with his servants to pursue the cattle-lifters and recover what had been stolen. The details of this story have perhaps been sufficiently discussed in the previous volume. The main point, however, demands a further consideration, namely, the belief that ghosts can be comforted by the society of a favourite female, a belief which subsequently found a modified expression in the rite of Satí. It should here be remarked, that whilst a belief in ghosts is fully intimated in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, there is apparently no reference in those hymns to the burning of a living widow with a dead husband; nor, indeed, is there any trustworthy reference to such a rite in the Vedic traditions which have been preserved in the Epics. On the contrary, the widows of those who were slain in the great war of Bhárata were not burnt with their dead husbands, but lived many years afterwards; whilst neither a wife nor a concubine of Maharaja Dasaratha, the father of Ráma, was put to death at his decease. But the story of the adventures of the Pándavas at the court of Raja Viráta throws considerable light upon the origin of Satí,

Absence of the  
rite of Satí from  
the Vedic  
hymns

Idea of the rite  
involved in the  
tradition of  
Viráta

<sup>4</sup> All the Hindú legends here quoted will be found either in the present or previous volume.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

before it was associated with Brahmanical doctrines, or even involved the idea of a voluntary sacrifice on the part of the widow. The downright realism of the story has already been commented upon, and furnishes curious illustrations of the primitive customs of patriarchal times. The Commander of the forces falls in love with the waiting maid of the Râni who is his sister. He asks his sister to send the maid to his house, which is accordingly done; but the maid refuses to listen to his proposals, being in fact the wife of the Pândavas in disguise. Subsequently the maid feigns consent, and agrees to give him a meeting; but sends one of her husbands in her room. Accordingly, instead of meeting a mistress, the lover finds himself at the mercy of the husband, who eventually pommels him to death. The brothers of the dead man then determine to burn the living maid with the corpse, partly to avenge his death, and partly to solace the ghost of the deceased with her society in the world of spirits.

Scythian custom of strangling a concubine at the grave of a king

This idea is perhaps not Aryan but Scythian; that is, if any opposition between Aryan and Scythian is to be recognized. According to Herodotus the Scythians were accustomed on the death of a King to strangle one of his concubines, and bury her with him, without apparently any regard to her willingness or otherwise.<sup>5</sup> The custom might also have been adopted as a safeguard from all attempts at assassination on the part of a wife or concubine. It may be therefore inferred from these data that Raja Virâta was the Chieftain of a Scythian tribe, which had encamped in the neighbourhood of an

Virâta a Scythian settlement,



Aryan settlement It does not, however, appear that the Scythians of Vṛāta were Nāgas, or snake-worshippers, like those whom the Pāṇḍavas fought in the jungle; although the identity is not impossible, inasmuch as the peculiar habits of snakes, in disappearing in holes beneath the surface of the earth, led to their being worshipped in primitive times as deities of the under-world, and that worship still lingers in every quarter of India.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

The difference between the Aryan and the Scythian custom may now be indicated. Amongst the Aryans, a widow was made over to a kinsman of the deceased husband; amongst the Scythians, a favourite widow or concubine was sent to accompany the dead man. That the Aryan custom ultimately fell into disuse amongst the twice-born castes, and was superseded by the later Satī, subsequently to the promulgation of the Institutes of Manu, has already been shown. Still the fact, that traces of the rite are to be found in a tribe dwelling in India during the Vedic period, seems to justify an investigation of those instinctive passions under which it eventually merged into Brahmanical law.

Difference between the Aryan and Scythian treatment of widows.

Two ideas are involved in the later Brahmanical rite which find no expression in the early Scythic form, namely, that the act was voluntary on the part of the widow, and that it was associated with a well-grounded belief in the immortality of the soul. The widow, indeed, entered the fire with a profound conviction that she would thereby rejoin her husband in abodes of bliss. The Thracians had a similar custom, except that the widow was not burnt, but slaughtered at the grave of her dead husband by her next of kin; and it is curious to

Difference between the later Brahmanical rite of Satī and the early Scythic form.

the unprotected state in which widows were left in a lawless age, and the harsh treatment they would receive as mere dependants in the family, must have driven many a distracted woman to enter the fire and follow the soul of a loving husband. In a still later age, when the Sati became associated with the Brahmanical religion, and was glorified as an act which conferred lasting fame upon the wife, and immortal happiness upon herself and her deceased, it is not surprising that the rite should have become general throughout India. In that terrible hour which succeeds the death of a beloved husband, when the reason is crazed with grief, and the zenana is filled with weeping and wailing, it is easy to understand that a widow would prefer a glorious death before a thousand spectators, and immediate re-union with a deceased husband, to a life of degradation, in which every pleasure would be denied her, and her very presence would be regarded as an evil omen.

Turning now from the patriarchal age, during which the Vedic Aryans were probably restricted to the neighbourhood of Meerut and Delhi, it becomes necessary to glance at the period during which they descended the valleys of the Ganges and Jumná, and achieved the conquest of Hindústan. This era of Aryan conquest may be regarded as the heroic age of Hindú history, but it is almost a blank to the historical student. In Hebrew history the corresponding period of conquest is depicted with a fullness and truthfulness, which would alone suffice to perpetuate the story to the end of time. Indeed the books of Joshua and Judges comprise the only authentic annals of heroic times, when a patriarchal

2nd Heroic age  
of Hindu history  
identified with  
the Aryan con-  
quest of Hindu-  
stan.

Pictures of the  
heroic age fur-  
nished by  
Hebrew history

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART I

---

Meagre relics of  
the heroic age  
in India.

Nursery fiction

Mythological  
wars

form of government was modified by the rise of individual warriors, who conquered new territories and ruled them with a strong arm, by the common consent of the people at large. In Greece the heroic age is obscured by legends, which have yet to be subjected to a tedious critical process before they can be expected to yield historical results. But in India the case is even worse. The age of Aryan conquest may have been one of convulsion and upheaval. The valleys of the Ganges and Jumná may have rung with victories as memorable as those of Joshua, Barak, Gideon, Jephtha, and Samson. Old landmarks may have been destroyed, and a new religious faith superadded to the grosser superstitions of the aborigines. But scarcely a vestige or record of the conquest remains, beyond what philologists may elicit from a study and comparison of languages. Even the names of the men who fought the battles and subjugated the country from the Himálayas to the Vindhya mountains have passed away like the memory of the Shepherd Kings. There may have been old Kshatriya ballads which celebrated the establishment of Aryan empires at Delhi, Agra, Oude, and Bahar. If so, however, they have long been converted into nursery fictions, like the stories of the wars of Bhíma against the Usuras, or the stories of the wars of the four younger Pándavas in connection with the Aswamedha of Yudhishtíra. Perhaps also they have been transmuted into obscure myths of wars between the Devatas and Daityas, the gods and demons; which may possibly be identified with the conflict between the fair complexioned Aryans and the black-skinned aborigines; although in their present form they certainly seem to refer

re frequent origin, or the extent to which they have  
e Bráhm manipulated by the Brahmanical compilers  
the Mahárája treated Bráhmans with respect, and  
maintained strictly to Brahmanical law; his empire was  
described as prosperous, and his reign as glorious  
and, on the contrary, a Mahárája was disrespectful to  
the Bráhmans, and gratified his passions without  
regard to Brahmanical law, which appears to have  
been the case with Raja Vena; then, according to  
the myth, he was deprived of his Raj, and con-  
demned to exile or destruction. The same idea  
finds full expression in the Institutes of Manu,  
where certain Rajas are specified as having been  
utterly ruined because they had not learned virtuous  
humility from the Bráhmans; in other words, who  
had not shown that deference to an arrogant priest-  
hood, which was claimed by the Brahmanical hier-  
archy.

HISTORY OF INDIA  
PART V.

completed before the rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy.

Extended employment of the Bráhmans as annual sacrificers in the heroic age

hierarchy was certainly subsequent to the conquest. When Nishadha, Ayodhyá, & were already in existence as independent & the Bráhmans are merely introduced as ministers and sacrificers; and every attempt to represent as holding important posts in the government palpably mythical. The early Rajas were their own priests, and marriage rites were performed by a Bráhman, but by the father of the bride. Indeed it would appear that the heroic age of Indian history was eminently an age of sacrifice. During the patriarchal period the assertion of proprietary over cleared land was celebrated by a Raja sacrifice; and the assertion of local suzerainty an Aswamedha, or sacrifice of a horse; and it is easy to infer that the acquisition of large territories and the establishment of substantive empires, which would be accompanied by vast holocausts, at which enemies would be slain by hundreds and thousands, and the banquet would be truly national and imperial. It is probable that under such circumstances the mystic sacrificial ritual laid down in the Aitar Bráhmanam was gradually moulded into form; whilst the extensive employment of Bráhmans at such sacrifices may have originated the caste idea, with which it was undoubtedly associated that no food was so pure as that which was cooked by a Bráhman.

During the rise of Hindú suzerainties the Bráhmans seem to have been occasionally in antagonism to the Mahárajás. In the myths of successive Indras and other lords paramount, to which reference has already been made, one single idea predominates throughout, which indicates either their Bráh-

Early antagonism of the Bráhmans to the Mahárajás

more frequent origin, or the extent to which they have been manipulated by the Brahmanical compilers. The Mahārāja treated Brāhmins with respect, and submitted strictly to Brahmanical law; his empire was described as prosperous, and his reign as glorious. On the contrary, a Mahārāja was disrespectful to the Brāhmins, and gratified his passions without regard to Brahmanical law, which appears to have been the case with Raja Vena; then, according to the myth, he was deprived of his Raj, and condemned to exile or destruction. The same idea finds full expression in the Institutes of Manu, where certain Rajas are specified as having been utterly ruined because they had not learned virtuous humility from the Brāhmins, in other words, who had not shown that deference to an arrogant priesthood, which was claimed by the Brahmanical hierarchy.

The worthless character of these myths, beyond perhaps indicating an early opposition between the Brāhmins and the Mahārajas, may be further proved by a reference to the myths respecting Indra. Here it should be remarked that the name of Indra is sometimes applied to deity, sometimes to sovereignty, sometimes to a mortal hero, and possibly on some occasions it may be the eponym of the Aryan race. In the myths, however, his deity is not recognized, but serious charges of impiety are brought against him. In a legend already quoted he is said to have seduced the wife of a pious sage,\* and in the Vishnu Purāna he is represented as having treated with disrespect a flower which had been

Worthless character of the mythological myths shown by reference to the myth of Indra and Nahusha

\* See ante Part IV chap. 49

more frequent origin, or the extent to which they have been manipulated by the Brahmanical compilers. In the R Mahārāja treated Brāhmins with respect, and adhered strictly to Brahmanical law; his empire was described as prosperous, and his reign as glorious. On the contrary, a Mahārāja was disrespectful to the Brāhmins, and gratified his passions without regard to Brahmanical law, which appears to have been the case with Raja Vena; then, according to the myth, he was deprived of his Raj, and condemned to exile or destruction. The same idea finds full expression in the Institutes of Manu, where certain Rajas are specified as having been utterly ruined because they had not learned virtuous humility from the Brāhmins; in other words, who had not shown that deference to an arrogant priesthood, which was claimed by the Brahmanical hierarchy.

The worthless character of these myths, beyond perhaps indicating an early opposition between the Brāhmins and the Mahārajas, may be further proved by a reference to the myths respecting Indra. Here it should be remarked that the name of Indra is sometimes applied to deity, sometimes to sovereignty, sometimes to a mortal hero, and possibly on some occasions it may be the eponym of the Aryan race. In the myths, however, his deity is recognized, but serious charges of impiety are brought against him. In a legend already quoted he is said to have seduced the wife of a pious sage; and in the Vishnu Purāna he is represented as having treated with disrespect a flower which had been

Worthless character of the mythological myths shown by reference to the myth of Indra and Nishusha

\* See ante, Part IV chap 49

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

given to him by a sage named Durvāsas; and on both occasions he was severely punished by the loss of power. At another time, having offended the Brāhmans, a rival named Nahusha was permitted to conquer him, and to exercise his sovereignty. Indra is then said to have concealed himself in a lotos, whilst Nahusha required India's wife to accept him as her husband. The lady made no attempt to deny the right of Nahusha, under the old Kshatriya law by which the wife became the property of the conqueror of the husband; but she simply endeavoured to put off Nahusha with excuses and promises. At length Nahusha refused to grant her any further delay; and the lady agreed to yield to his wishes if he would fetch her away in a palanquin borne by Brāhmans. Nahusha acquiesced; the palanquin was prepared with Brāhman bearers, and the amorous conqueror set off to bring away his bride. But the bearers were slow, and Nahusha was in a hurry, and he accordingly abused the Brāhmans, and finally put out his foot and pushed one of them; on which the Brāhman turned round and cursed him into becoming a snake. The result was that Nahusha lost both the lady and the sovereignty; whilst Indra recovered both, on the implied understanding that he would be more respectful to the Brāhmans in future. This myth is one of many which may be referred either to the earlier wars between the Aryans and the Nāgas, or to the later opposition between the Brāhmans and Buddhists, but the question will be considered hereafter in dealing with the history of the Buddhist period.



the heroic period of Hindú history, by reference to the same period in Hebrew history; and perhaps the wars carried on by the so-called Judges against the Canaanites and the surrounding tribes, were of a similar character to those which were carried on by the unknown heroes of the age of Aryan conquest against the aboriginal tribes in the valley of the Ganges and Jumná. But there the analogy ceases. Government in Hindústan never appears to have been a theocracy, such as prevailed under Eli the priest and Samuel the prophet; nor are there any traces of a Mahárajá being selected from amongst the people, and anointed King, in the same manner that Saul and David were successively selected and anointed by the prophet Samuel. Consequently no analogy is furnished which will serve to clear away the deep obscurity which at present veils the rise and progress of Aryan conquest in Hindústan.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

heroic age of  
Hindús and  
Hebrews.

Absence of a  
theocracy in  
India

The third and last period in early Hindú history, namely, the monarchical age, may now be brought under consideration. Here at the very outset will be perceived the vast interval which separates the patriarchal period which is depicted in the traditions of the war of Bhárata, and the monarchical period which is depicted in those of the Rámáyana. The primitive habits and simplicity of patriarchal households had passed entirely away; and beneath all the exaggerations of Oriental fancy it is easy to perceive that wealth, civilization, and luxury were really to be found in the palaces and courts of Mahárajás. Polyandry had entirely disappeared, and nothing remained of it but the Swayamvara; and married life, when not depressed by polygamy, appears in its

3rd. Monarchi-  
cal age of Hin-  
dú history

Vast interval  
between the  
patriarchal and  
monarchical pe-  
riods.

form, as the loving and devoted union to one man. However, entering upon the history of the later period, a distinction must be drawn between the constitutional form of government which obtained in the Vedic traditions in the Epics; and the system of despotism, checked only by an ecclesiastical hierarchy, which is laid down in the Institutes of Manu. In the constitutional form of monarchy, the Hindú Mahárajás appear to have reigned in tolerably peaceful possession of their respective territories, and the interest in the traditions does not turn so much upon wars and blood feuds, as upon incidents of a domestic character, and the evils produced by polygamy and gambling. Indeed, but for these evils, it is difficult to understand why the independence of Hindú sovereignties should not have been maintained down to the present generation. A glance, however, at the later period of Hindú despotism, during which a Brahmanical hierarchy exercised supreme power, will help to solve the whole problem.

Ecclesiastical hierarchies fatal to constitutional forms

The domination of an ecclesiastical hierarchy in alliance with monarchy invariably proves fatal to the liberties of a people and destructive to all constitutional forms. It seems to have swept away the popular element from the Aryan monarchies in Hindústan, in the same way that it has swept away the same element from the continental monarchies of Europe; and if England has been preserved from a similar fate, it is because during that half-century which formed the most critical period of her history, the Episcopal hierarchy found itself in the first instance in antagonism to the people, and subsequently:

in antagonism to the Crown. Had it proved otherwise Great Britain might have been in the present day of no more account in Europe than Portugal or Spain; and might have even succumbed to the imperial yoke of a Louis or a Napoleon

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

The first and most important tradition, which has been preserved of the early monarchical period, is that of Ráma; but the narrative, as it appears in the Rámáyana, has been so intensely Brahmanized throughout, that its full significance cannot be apprehended until the age of Brahmanical revival has been brought under review. The main object kept in view throughout the Rámáyana is to represent Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu, and a deified protector of the Bráhmans against the Buddhists. But the moral aim of the old Kshatriya tradition was to point out the political evils which were caused by polygamy; and especially to show the mischief which would be occasioned by any attempt on the part of a Mahárája to set aside the son of the first wife in order to give the succession to the son of a younger and favourite partner. This matter was apparently a favourite theme with the old Kshatriya bards; and no doubt the evils in question might have been exemplified at one time or another in the history of most reigning families in India. It finds expression in the old legend of Raja Sántanu and his son Bhíshma; it appears in a still grosser and exaggerated form in later Puránic legends; whilst the fratricidal wars which have been convulsing Afghanistan since 1863 are to be attributed to the fact that the late Ameer Dost Mahomed Khan passed over his eldest son Mahomed Afzul Khan, in order to appoint his favourite son Shere Ali Khan to succeed him as Ameer. In the

Illustrations of  
the early mon-  
archical period  
furnished by  
the tradition of  
Ráma

old Kshatriya  
story the mis-  
chief of setting  
aside the son of  
the first wife for  
the son of a  
younger favour-  
ite

A favourite  
theme with the  
old Kshatriya  
bards

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

case of Ráma it led to the exile of the rightful heir and the succession of a younger son; and with that event the original tradition appears to close. The subsequent life of Ráma in the jungle, and his wars against the Rákshasas, appear to refer to a later phase in Hindú history; and accordingly must be reserved for consideration hereafter in connection with the age of Buddhism and Brahmanical revival.

Points in the  
original  
Kahatriya tradi-  
tion.

The main points in what appears to be the original tradition of Ráma may be very briefly indicated. Mahárāja Dasaratha was sovereign over the great Raj of Ayodhyá, or Oude. He had three wives and four sons. Ráma was the son of the first and principal wife; and Bharata was the son of the youngest and favourite wife. The middle wife had two sons, who play subordinate parts in the story; one appearing as the friend of Ráma, and the other as the friend of Bharata.

Ráma's  
marriage.

When Ráma was grown, he proceeded on a visit to the neighbouring Raj of Mithila, where he married Sítá, the daughter of the Raja; and his brothers were likewise married to royal maidens of the same family.

Zemara intrigues  
respecting the  
appointment of  
a successor.

After the marriages the question arose as to the appointment of a Yuvaraja, or little Raja. This appointment is in accordance with an Oriental custom, which also existed under the Hebrew monarchy, of nominating an eldest son to the throne during the life-time of the reigning sovereign, in order that the young Prince might be trained in the duties of the administration, and relieve his father from the cares of state; and above all, that the question of succession might be fully settled during the life-time of the Mahárāja Ráma, the son of Kausalyá, the first

wife, seems to have had the best claim ; but the beautiful Kaikeyí, the youngest and favourite wife of the Mahárája, seems to have long determined that her son Bharata should be appointed Yuvaraja. The Mahárája himself, like many a sovereign advancing in years, was not inclined to make the appointment ; but the Chieftains and people probably found that he was getting old and uxorious, and they were anxious for the installation of a young Prince and a settlement of the question of succession. Accordingly a deputation of Ministers, Chieftains, and people proceeded to the palace, and prayed the Mahárája to appoint Ráma. The Mahárája, still hesitating summoned a great Council ; and again the popular feeling seems to have been in favour of Ráma. The Mahárája now yielded, and announced to the Council that Ráma should be installed next morning. He had, however, anticipated the result, and had already sent Bharata to the city of his maternal grandfather to be out of the way ; and in the evening he hinted to Ráma that he had better be on the watch against Bharata, as Bharata might have had an inkling of the contemplated installation, and taken steps to prevent it by force of arms. The news that Ráma was to be installed naturally ran through the city like wildfire, and of course reached the royal zenana. In the evening the Mahárája proceeded to the apartments of Kaikeyí, probably with the view of reconciling her to the disappointment ; but he found her in a fit of sullen rage, in which by the force of angry tears and youthful beauty she managed to wheedle him into promising that Ráma should be sent into exile, and that Bharata should be installed as successor to the Raj.

Interference of  
the Chieftains  
and people.

Decision that  
Ráma should be  
installed.

Mahárája per-  
suaded to set  
aside Ráma in  
favour of Bharata.

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART VThe end no is  
ment

Meantime and throughout the night the city is said to have been in a fever of expectation. At early dawn the rural population were pouring in to behold the ceremony of installation, whilst the citizens watered the streets, and decorated their houses with flags and garlands, and singers, musicians, and dancing guls began to perform before the joyous multitudes. At the same time Ráma and his wife Síta were wholly ignorant of the intrigue that had been transpiring in the royal zenana, and when Ráma was summoned by the Mahárajá, he proceeded in his chariot to the palace in the full expectation of being installed with the customary ceremonies. At that moment the blow fell. Instead of a throne, Ráma learned from his weeping father and relentless mother-in-law that he was to be sent into exile. He broke the sad news to his own mother, and beheld her dashed down from the height of felicity and triumph to the lowest depths of wretchedness and despair. Rebellion was suggested, but Ráma dutifully set his face against disobedience to his father. Ráma then proceeded to his own house and broke the sad news to his wife, but Síta at once declared her intention of braving all the dangers and privations of the jungle, and accompanying him in his exile. The hapless pair then walked barefooted to the palace, as a token of submission, and having taken leave of the Mahárajá and Rínís, they were driven by the chariotceer of the Mahárajá to the dominions of a Bhíl Rájá, who appears to have owed some allegiance to the Ráj of Ayodhyá.

Exile of Ráma  
and Síta.Death of the  
Mahárajá.

On the night after the departure of Ráma, the Mahárajá is said to have died with grief at the loss of his son, but the fact of his death was not made

known, as the women who were with him at the time swooned away in horror and sorrow. Accordingly at early morning the palace life commenced as usual. The bards and eulogists sounded the praises of the Mahárája, and the men servants and maid-servants were busy with their respective duties. All were expecting the appearance of the Mahárája, when suddenly a cry ran through the palace that he was dead, and the air was filled with weeping and wailing. But amidst all the commotion arising from the suddenness of the catastrophe, there was a strict attention to constitutional forms. The Ministers assembled together, and decided that the remains of the deceased Mahárája should not be burned in the absence of all his sons, but should be preserved in a bath of oil. Next a great Council was convened, and the question of the succession was debated; and it was determined that the decision of the Mahárája in favour of Bharata should be considered as binding and final. The exile of Ráma was accepted as a disqualification; and swift messengers were despatched to bring Bharata to Ayodhyá. On the arrival of Bharata, the funeral rites of the Mahárája were celebrated without a Satí, but with a pomp and circumstance which forms a striking picture of the times. The bards and eulogists appeared in front, chanting the praises of the deceased sovereign. Next followed the widows and other women of the Mahárája, with their long black hair dishevelled over their faces, piercing every ear with their shrieks and screams. Next the royal corpse was carried in state upon a litter covered with flowers and garlands, whilst the ensigns of royalty surrounded it. The rest of the procession was com-

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

---

Close of the  
original tradi-  
tion.

posed of chariots filled with the royal servants, who scattered gifts amongst the people. In this manner the procession moved out of the city towards a lonely place on the bank of the river, where the funeral pile was erected; and the royal corpse was laid upon the pile, and speedily enveloped and consumed in a tower of flames. Here the tradition seems to end, so far as it refers to Vedic times. How Sítá was subsequently carried away by the Raja of the Rákshasas, and was recovered after some severe fighting, but separated from her husband and abandoned in the jungle on the bare suspicion of her purity, are incidents which may have had some foundation in truth, but which scarcely seem to call for notice in a sketch of the Vedic period. So too the alleged return of Ráma to Ayodhyá, and his subsequent reign as Mahárája, form a very interesting climax to the story, but are otherwise associated with traditions which seem to belong to a later age.

Play of the  
instincts.

The main features of the incidents connected with the exile may now be considered by the light of the three influences already specified. In the



take place in the time of Manu, ultimately led to the subjugation. It is the common belief of the people of India that the European is stronger than the Hindú because he eats meat and drinks beer; and it was the senseless fear of the sepoy, that the British Government wished to break their caste for the purpose of inducing them to use the same diet, and to strengthen them for the conquest of Asia, that led in a great measure to the unhappy mutiny of 1857.

The pictures of married life in the same story present a remarkable contrast between the intrigues which prevailed in a polygamous household, and the domestic felicity which was to be found even in the jungle, when the hero was married only to one wife. Indeed the pictures of zenana life furnish powerful illustrations of the working of the human heart under circumstances which are altogether foreign to European experiences. It will be seen that in the seclusion of the zenana the passions of jealousy and ambition will convert the woman into a tigress, as in the case of Kaikeyí; and will impel a woman to suggest a rebellion against her husband, which might eventuate in his assassination, as in the case of Kausalyá. As to the uxorious old Mahárajá, who was induced by a young wife to commit an act of injustice which might have imperilled the well-being of the realm, abundant instances of a like nature might be found in almost every family history. It is in fact the story of every-day life, the same in India as elsewhere, aggravated only by the conditions of polygamy. The domestic felicity of Ráma and Sítá is by no means perfect, but it is infinitely more pleasing than that which prevailed

Pictures of married life polygamously contrasted with monogamy

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Close of the  
original tradi-  
tion

Play of the  
instincts

General use of  
flesh meat

Question of su-  
perior physique  
of flesh-eaters  
over vegeta-  
rians

posed of chariots filled with the royal servants, who scattered gifts amongst the people. In this manner, the procession moved out of the city towards a lonely place on the bank of the river, where the funeral pile was erected; and the royal corpse was laid upon the pile, and speedily enveloped and consumed in a tower of flames. Here the tradition seems to end, so far as it refers to Vedic times. How Sítá was subsequently carried away by the Raja of the Rákshasas, and was recovered after some severe fighting, but separated from her husband and abandoned in the jungle on the bare suspicion of her purity, are incidents which may have had some foundation in truth, but which scarcely seem to call for notice in a sketch of the Vedic period. So too the alleged return of Ráma to Ayodhyá, and his subsequent reign as Mahárajá, form a very interesting climax to the story, but are otherwise associated with traditions which seem to belong to a later age.

The main features of the incidents connected with the exile may now be considered by the light of the three influences already specified. In the first instance it may be remarked that throughout the story flesh-meat appears as the ordinary diet; although, as already seen, such food is scarcely tolerated in the code of Manu, and was declared by later commentators to be improper and impure in the present Yuga. Ráma and his wife and brother appear to have lived chiefly on venison, and to have dried the meat in the sun after the manner of the American Indians. In connection with this subject a question might be raised as to the superior physique of flesh-eaters over vegetarians, and as to whether the change of diet, which was beginning to

take place in the time of Manu, ultimately led to the subjugation. It is the common belief of the people of India that the European is stronger than the Hindú because he eats meat and drinks beer; and it was the senseless fear of the sepoy, that the British Government wished to break their caste for the purpose of inducing them to use the same diet, and to strengthen them for the conquest of Asia, that led in a great measure to the unhappy mutiny of 1857.

The pictures of married life in the same story present a remarkable contrast between the intrigues which prevailed in a polygamous household, and the domestic felicity which was to be found even in the jungle, when the hero was married only to one wife. Indeed the pictures of zenana life furnish powerful illustrations of the working of the human heart under circumstances which are altogether foreign to European experiences. It will be seen that in the seclusion of the zenana the passions of jealousy and ambition will convert the woman into a tigress, as in the case of Kaikeyí; and will impel a woman to suggest a rebellion against her husband, which might eventuate in his assassination, as in the case of Kausalyá. As to the uxorious old Mahárajá, who was induced by a young wife to commit an act of injustice which might have imperilled the well-being of the realm, abundant instances of a like nature might be found in almost every family history. It is in fact the story of every-day life, the same in India as elsewhere, aggravated only by the conditions of polygamy. The domestic felicity of Ráma and Sítá is by no means perfect, but it is infinitely more pleasing than that which prevailed

Pictures of married life polygamy contrasted with monogamy

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART VCharacter of  
Sítá.Ráma and Sítá  
without chil-  
dren.Probable cause  
of the abandon-  
ment of Sítá.Democratic ele-  
ment manifest-  
ed in the popular  
Councils

in the palace of Mahárāja Dasaratha. Up to the period of exile, and for some time after it, Sítá appears as the true ideal of a wife, animated by a loving and self-sacrificing devotion towards her husband; excepting of course in those portions of the Rámáyana which have been extracted from the modern version, in which the character more resembles the Hindú princess of the present day. The subsequent story of the exile is altogether dubious, and Sítá displays a wayward disposition, which is wholly at variance with what might have been expected from her previous behaviour. One peculiarity in the wedded life of Ráma and Sítá is worthy of notice, namely, the absence of all mention of children; for it was not until after the triumphant return to Ayodhyá, and the abandonment of Sítá in the jungle, that she appears in the character of a mother. This circumstance may have had something to do with the sequel of the story, in which the conduct of Ráma appears to have been harsh in the extreme, and is usually regarded with disapproval even by native commentators who believe in his divinity. The fact that Sítá was childless until after her deliverance from Rávana, and the subsequent discovery that she was about to become a mother, may have suggested to the mind of Ráma that he was not the father of the coming progeny, and induced him to abandon his wife under the cruel circumstances mentioned in the Rámáyana.

The democratic element in the Raj of Ayodhyá appears to have been much stronger than could have been anticipated under an Oriental despotism. It involved not only the existence of Councils of Ministers and Chieftains, but also assemblies of the

people; and it would appear that even such questions as the appointment of a Yuvaraja, and the nomination of a successor in a case of the sudden demise of a Mahārāja, were brought under the consideration of the whole body of the citizens; although efforts have certainly been made by the Brahmanical compilers to represent Vasishttha the Brāhman as the superior power who directed all and counselled all.

The religious ideas which find expression in the original tradition are altogether of the old Kshatriya type. Flesh-meat is not only offered to the Vedic gods, but meat and wine are promised by Sītā to the river goddesses, provided only that Rāma returns in safety to the city of his fathers. The old Vedic idea of gratifying the gods with good things in return for favours received or expected, is thus fully expressed; and vows of gifts to Gangā and Jumnā are made much after the fashion in which vows are said to be made to the Virgin and Saints in many Roman Catholic countries.

Religious ideas  
in the tradition

Flesh sacrificial

Vows of flesh  
and wine to the  
river goddesses.

A second tradition, namely, that of Nala and Damayantī, furnishes a far more pleasing picture of the constitutional phase of early Hindū monarchy than is displayed in the tradition of Rāma. The story seems to have originated in an age not very remote from that of Rāma, but it is devoid of all reference to polygamy, and seems more especially to point to the evils which are likely to arise from an undue indulgence in gambling. It is evidently much later than the patriarchal story of the war of Bhārata, for whilst the existence of such a Raj as Nishadha implies an advanced stage in Aryan conquest, the tradition is free from all allusions to

Further illustrations  
of the  
monarchical  
period furnished  
by the story of  
Nala and Da-  
mayantī

Absence of poly-  
gamy and refer-  
ence to gam-  
bling

Apparent age of  
the story

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V.

---

polyandry, or to any of the lawless forms of marriage which appear to have accompanied the earlier conquests of the Kshatriyas. Moreover the gambling match of Nala presents a more civilized picture than the gambling match of Yudhishtira, for the losing gambler altogether refuses to stake his wife upon a throw. At the same time the tradition is evidently Vedic. The institution known as the Swayamvara finds full expression in its happiest form; and the marriage rites of Nala and Damayanti are performed by the father of the bride. Moreover the tradition is prior to the rise of Brahmanism; for the proposition of a second Swayamvara in the case of Damayanti, implies the case of re-marriage of a widow, which is altogether opposed to Brahmanical law.

Play of the instincts.

Pure connubial affection.

Modified revenge.

Manifestations of the democratic element.

The play of the instincts in this charming story is more delicate and refined than in the traditions of a patriarchal type. The expression of mutual affection is exquisitely true to human nature in a higher development. So true is the picture of the agony of the wife and mother during the progress of the gambling match; and her subsequent devotion to her husband, even after he had deserted her; and her love for the children subordinate to the love for her husband; and the final re-union of the pair after so many trials and sorrows. Above all, the passion for revenge is beautifully modified by a higher tone of moral sentiment than is displayed in patriarchal story. In the sequel Nala not only forgives his enemy, but dismisses him with many gifts.

The democratic element in the tradition is of a peculiar type. Whilst the Chieftains and people display great anxiety during the gambling match, lest

the Raja should lose his Raj, the Ránf freely consults with them as to the best means of avoiding the threatening catastrophe. Meantime ; no authentic traces are to be found of any interference on the part of a Brahmanical hierarchy ; nor is the authority of religion brought into play for the purpose of restraining the Raja in his career of ruin.

The religious ideas in the story are all Vedic, but apparently of a comparatively late period. The personification of the gods of the elements is complete ; and they appear in the heaven of Indra in much the same fashion as the Olympic deities appear in the Homeric poems. Moreover the Vedic deities, like the Olympic deities, are amenable to moral passions ; and appear at the Swayamvara as candidates for the hand of the beautiful Damayanti. The signs by which the blushing damsel knew that her admirers were divinities, and not mortal men, are very poetically expressed ; their feet would not touch the earth, their eyes winked not, their garlands were as fresh as if newly gathered, and not a stain of dust lay upon their raiment, nor drop of perspiration upon their brows. Damayanti, however, whilst paying all homage to the gods, would choose only Nala for her lord ; whilst Nala in return publicly declared that he would be ever faithful to the maiden with the eye serene, since she had chosen him to be her husband in the presence of the gods.

Such then, step by step, the current of Indian history appears to have run from the earliest glimmer of patriarchal legend down to the monarchical age when the Brahmanical system, which is defined and explained in the code of Manu, began to exercise

Religious ideas

Appearance of  
the gods ; the  
heaven of Indra

Signs of deity

Stages in Indian  
history prior to  
the spiritual  
domination of  
the Brahmanas

HISTORY OF  
INDIA.  
PART V

Probable means  
by which the  
Brāhmins at-  
tained supreme  
power

a dominant sway over the people of Hindūstan. The earlier process by which the Vedic religion was gradually set aside by Brahmanical law must for the present be left to conjecture. In all probability the Brāhmins rose from the condition of mere mercenary sacrificers to that of an ecclesiastical hierarchy, by the ordinary means which accompany the rise of a priesthood to political power. In the first instance the Brāhmins appeared in their sacerdotal character as a medium between the worshippers and the deity worshipped; and in that capacity they probably first pretended to explain such religious omens as might be gathered from the manifestations and motions of the sacrificial flame, or from the marks which appeared on the animal that was sacrificed. In connection with this pretended knowledge of the will of the deities, the Brahmins seem to have practised astrology, and to have assumed the possession of supernatural power, such as the production of rain or drought, health or disease, prosperity or calamity. Finally they asserted for themselves a divine origin from Brahma, whom they exalted very far above all the Vedic deities. Consequently they arrogated for themselves a superiority over the popular gods, under which they promulgated new religious dogmas, and introduced a multiplicity of rites of purification and consecration. Subsequently at every birth, marriage, or death, there was the inevitable Brāhmin, who thus became associated in the minds of the people with every household event that gladdened their hearts or moved them to tears. Moreover the prayers and incantations of the Brāhmins were supposed to be always necessary to insure the long life and pros-



penury of all individuals and families, to procure a favourable seed time and an abundant harvest, to increase the profits of every bargain and promote the success of every undertaking, to purify the water of wells and strengthen the foundation of dwelling houses; to consecrate and impart new powers to weapons, armour, ensigns, implements, books, and tools, and to ward off every danger and every calamity which can befall a human being and his belongings. In this manner every Hindu has moved for centuries in the fetters of religious superstition from his cradle to his grave, and the result has been that the national life has ebbed away, and the country has only been saved from the most hopeless of anarchies by the introduction of European rule.

Evil results of  
Brahminical as-  
cendancy

The evils which have resulted from the establishment of a Brahmanical hierarchy have indeed far exceeded those which have followed the establishment of any other ecclesiastical ascendancy. Other priesthoods, like the Jesuits in Spain, have dominated over the minds of men, and crushed out the national aspirations and deadened the intellectual energies, but then such priests have generally sprung from the people, and have occasionally appeared as the protectors of the oppressed, and have stayed the hand of the tyrant and marauder by the threat of anathemas and excommunications. The Brahmins, however, whilst occasionally exercising similar powers for the furtherance of their own ends, have been themselves the victims of a caste system which has necessarily shut them out from all sympathies with the masses. In other words, they formed an hereditary caste of priests,

Aggravated by  
the caste  
system

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V.

Beneficial in-  
fluences exer-  
cised by the  
Brahmans.  
Spiritual teach-  
ing

Brahmanical  
aspirations after  
monotheism.

which had laboured to degrade the Sûdra instead of supporting him, and fattened upon the credulity of a people whom they had neither the power nor will to serve. But still it must not be inferred that the rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy was productive only of evil. There were Brahmans who passed their lives in divine contemplation, and who analyzed the thoughts, the language, the intellect, and the affections, until they obtained from the depths of their consciousness a deeper knowledge of divine things, and a more enlightened appreciation of the attributes of the Supreme Spirit. It was such Sages who succeeded in weaning away the minds of many from the grosser superstitions of polytheism to the higher faith in One God; and who taught after their own mystic fashion how man might obtain the absorption of his soul into the Divine Essence, or dwell hereafter as a purified spirit with the Supreme Soul. It may be that the aspirations after monotheism, which find expression in the Institutes of Manu, are couched in the pantheistic language of the Vêdantists; but even amidst the aberrations of religious thought, the throes of the soul to escape from the trammels of polytheism, are to be found flashes of that eternal truth which is as old as the stars, and finds a response in every human bosom. "All gods," says Manu, "are in the Divine Spirit; all worlds are in the Divine Spirit; and the Divine Spirit produces the connected series of acts which are performed by embodied souls. Him some adore as present in the element of fire; others as present in Manu, lord of creatures; some as present in Indra; others as present in pure Ether; and others as the most High Eternal Spirit. It is He, who,

pervading all beings in five elementary forms, causes them by the gradations of birth, growth, and dissolution, to revolve in this world like the wheels of a car. Thus the man, who perceives in his own soul the Supreme Soul present in all creatures, regards them all with equal benevolence, and will be absorbed at last in the highest Essence, even that of the Almighty himself.”<sup>9</sup> It was left for one greater than the Hindú legislator to teach the simpler and purer doctrine:—“God is a Spirit, and they that worship Him must worship Him in spirit and in truth.”<sup>10</sup>

HISTORY OF  
INDIA  
PART V

Here it may be again remarked that in the time when the code of Manu was compiled, the area of Aryan conquest had spread far beyond the limits of Brahmanism, and probably included both Buddhism and Brahmanism within its frontiers. The Bráhmans as a body had not advanced beyond Kanouj on the banks of the Ganges; whilst the Aryans had conquered the whole of Hindústan from sea to sea. Again, the Aryans are directed to select their Brahmanical preceptors from Bráhmáshí-desá, or the country of the Bráhman Rishis; whilst bitter denunciations are pronounced against atheists and heretics, in other words, against the followers of Buddha. From these data it is easy to infer that whilst the Bráhman missionaries were spreading from Bráhmáshí-desá, on the west of Kanouj, Buddhism was really dominant in eastern Hindústan. At the same time it is difficult to say how far the ideas of the Buddhists passed into Brahmanism; or how far the ideas of the Bráhmans passed into Bud-

Political condition of Hindústan in the Brahmanic age.

Growing opposition between the Bráhmans and the Buddhists

<sup>9</sup> Manu, XII. 119, 123—126

<sup>10</sup> St John IV. 24

dhism. Originally the two currents of religious thought may have flowed on side by side, without exciting much antagonism. Subsequently, however, the practical atheism of the Buddhists in denying or ridiculing the gods of the Bráhmans, and the opposition of the Bráhmans towards the conventual system of the Buddhists, brought about those deadly hostilities which eventuated in the expulsion of the Buddhists and triumph of the Bráhmans. Meantime the Swayamvara, the Rajusúya, and the Aswamedha passed away. The rites of marriage were brought into conformity with Brahmanical law. The use of flesh-meat at meals and sacrifices began to disappear, and vegetable food was substituted. Finally, the great Aryan empires, which had long been established in Hindústan, began to be swayed to and fro by those religious convulsions which belong to the subsequent eras of Hindú history. Indeed the inquiries which have yet to be carried out in the religious history of India, will be found to be the most important of all. The origin of polytheism amongst the Aryan people, and its development into monotheism, or the worship of the Supreme Spirit, have been in some measure indicated; but before the European reader can comprehend the Hindú people as they think and act, it will be necessary to review the rise and decline of that form of atheism in association with asceticism, which is known as Buddhism; to point out the method by which the Brahmanical compilers of the Epics spiritualized Kshatriya heroes, such as Ráma and Krishna, into incarnations of Vishnu as the Supreme Being; to investigate that deification of the passions, which was superadded to the fetish worship of the aboriginal races in primi-

tive times; to unfold the process by which the new and strange gods were admitted into the Brahmanical pantheon; and to explore those forms of religious thought and philosophical inquiry, which were promulgated by teachers and sages, whilst a dense cloud of superstition and ignorance overspread the land. Moreover there seems reason to hope that such inquiries will not only lead to a better knowledge of the progress of religious thought amongst the Hindús, but will help to solve the vexed problem of why Christianity has failed to achieve that conquest over the national faith which it has effected elsewhere. Hitherto the non acceptance of the Christian religion by the people of India has been referred to inscrutable causes, such as the mysterious dispensation of Providence, or the exceptional depravity of the heart of the Hindú. But it will appear hereafter that it should be rather ascribed to the current of religious ideas, which has flowed in channels unknown and unappreciated by the western world, and which has rendered Christianity less acceptable to the civilized Hindús of the plains than to the barbarous aborigines who inhabit the hills.

# INDEX.

- ACHARYA, or Guru, 550  
 Adhyatma Ramāyana, a spiritualized version of the Ramāyana, 29  
 Adoption, modern custom of, 585  
 Adultery, laws against, 580  
 Agastya, his hermitage near the Vindhya mountains 252, legend of Vatapi and Ilwala, 293 devours Vatapi, ib, his miracles, 251 entertains Rima and acknowledges him as the lord of the universe, 293, gives him supernatural weapons, 256, denounces the evil nature of women, 296, upholds the worship of the Maruts and expostulates with Indra, 410, complaint of his wife 414  
 Agni, Indrapit's sacrifice to, 370, probable substitution of Agni for Kālī 377, attests the purity of Sita, 381, 380, identified with the Supreme Spirit, 412, identified with Brahma, 413, attributes 437, regarded as the creator, 452, daily oblation to, 493  
 Ahalyā, wife of Gautama, seduced by Indra, 48, cursed by Gautama, 49, freed from the curse by Rama, ib  
 Aksha, son of Rāvana, slain by Hanuman, 311  
 Alma, ceremony of begging for, 516, its origin, 517  
 Ambassador, duties of one, 595  
 Amrita, churning of the sea for, 47  
 Anasuya, wife of Atri her miracles 237, her interview with Sītā, ib, gives her an ointment which renders her ever beautiful, 238, describes the approach of night in poetic language, 239.  
 Anchorites, female, 531  
 Anga, Raj of, great drought, 12 the Raja marries his daughter to the Rishi Śringa, 13  
 Angada, son of Bālī, installed Yuvārāja of Kāshkindhyā 323  
 Antelope, sacrifice of, to Vedic deities, 515, note  
 Anumati, goddess of the day, 493  
 Apsaras rise out of the sea and become the nymphs in Indra's heaven 47 story of Rāmbhā who became a Rākshasa, 214, story of the Apsaras who sported with the sage Mandakarni, 251  
 Arsha marriage, 506, referred to the Vedic period, 508, radical distinction between the Arsha and Brahmā rites, 509  
 Aryans advance from Delhi to Oude, 2, resemblance of their ancient marriage ceremony to the modern Hindu rite, 60, sometimes identified with their gods or Devatas, 426, progress of their invasion before the time of Manu, 432, conception of Manu as their ancestor, 453  
 Aryāvarta, or the Aryan pale, 431, question of whether it extended from sea to sea, 433, note  
 Asamanja, Raja of Ayodhyā, tradition of, 126  
 Astrology, planet of Dasaratha threatened by three malignant aspects, 83  
 Asura marriages, 506, involved the purchase of the bride, 513  
 Aswamedha, a horse sacrifice of Mahārāja Dasaratha, 10, invested with a different meaning to that in the Mahā Bhārata, ib, loosening of the horse, 16, preparations for the sacrifice, ib, the second sacrifice, 18, appearance of an emanation of Brahma 20, two sacrifices involved, the horse and the soma, 22, performed to produce conception, ib, substitution of pīyasa for horse flesh, 23, performed by Rama to atone for having slain Rāvana, 401  
 Aswapati, Raja of Girivraja, father of Kaikeyī, and grandfather of Bharata, 76, dismisses Bharata, 163  
 Aswins custom of polyandry involved in a Vedic tradition, 50  
 Atri, the sage, chronological difficulties connected with him, 230, Rama visits his hermitage, 237, interview between his wife Anasūyā and Sītā, ib  
 Autumn, poetical description of 40  
 Ayodhyā, the modern Oude, present appearance of the ruins, 1 ancient magnificence, ib, known as the Raj of Kosala—see Kosala, description of the city, 3, fortifications, 4 the people, ib assembly of the chieftains and people to consider which of the sons of Dasaratha should be appointed Yuvārāja, 79, 80, universal rejoicings on the approaching installation of Rāma 86, profound sorrow of the people at the exile of Rāma, 122, re

- proach the Mahārāja and Kaikeyī, *ib* ,  
mournful appearance of the city after the  
departure of Rāma, 137, gloomy appear-  
ance indicated in a succession of Hindū  
smiles, 219, preparations of the people  
for the triumphant return of Rāma, 338,  
return of Rāma and Sita with their sons,  
403
- Bali, overcome by Vishnu in the dwarf in-  
carnation, 43
- Bali, the Monkey Chieftain of Kishkindhya,  
his ill treatment of Sugriva, 320 his  
combat with Sugriva, 321, mortally  
wounded by Rāma *ib* sudden appear-  
ance of his wife Tara, *ib* , her lamenta-  
tions over him, 322 funeral ceremonies  
for him, *ib*
- Bhagiratha, Rāja, legend of his restoring  
the sixty thousand sons of Sagara to life,  
46, *note*
- Bharadvāja, the sage, sent at Prayaga, 130,  
receives Rāma and Sita, 140, recommends  
the hill Chitra kuta as a residence, 146  
his extraordinary entertainment of the  
army of Bharata, 186, entertains the  
army of Monkeys, 337, *note*
- Bharata, son of Dasaratha and Kaikeyī, his  
birth, 21, sent to Girivraja with his uncle  
Yudhaji, 77, instructions of his father  
Dasaratha, *ib* , residence and studies in  
the house of his grandfather Rāja As-  
wapati, 78, significance of his absence  
during the preparations for the in-  
stallation of Rāma as Yuvārāja, 87,  
summoned to Ayodhya on the death of  
the Mahārāja, 153, his ominous dream,  
162, his return to Ayodhya, 163, his pre-  
sents to his grandfather, 164, scene be-  
tween him and Kaikeyī, 165, his grief,  
*ib* , demands the reason of Rāma's exile,  
166, bitterly reproaches his mother, 167,  
proclaims the right of Rāma to the Raj  
*ib* , prevents Satrugna from slaying  
Manthara, 163, declares to Kausalya his  
loyal attachment to Rāma, 169, performs  
the funeral rites for Mahārāja Dasaratha,  
179, his grief, 174, refuses the request of  
the council that he will accept the Raj  
179, prepares to visit Rāma at Chitra  
kuta, 180, the march, 181, halt at Srin-  
dhī country, frontier at Srīngavera, 135,  
Rāja Guha welcomes Rāma, 139
- Bottomry, law respecting, 608
- Brahma, birth of, in an egg, 405, separation  
into male and female, 460, production  
of Viraj, *ib* , day of, 460 simplicity of  
the idea, 467, court of, with four faces 606
- Brahmā marriage, 500, referred to the  
Brahmanic age 507, differed altogether  
from the rite of the Rishis, 510
- Brahma, mythical ancestor of the Rājas of  
Kosala 2, Indra and the gods pray him  
to protect them against Ravana 18, con-  
ducts them to the abode of Vishnu, 19,  
emanation from presents a cup of payasa  
to Dasaratha 20, worshipped by Ra-  
vana 232 Viradha preserved by his  
blessing, 243 arrow of, 206, his irre-  
sistible noose, 341
- Brahma placed above all the Vedic deities,  
412, distinction between Brahma, the  
Supreme Soul, and Brahmā, or his crea-  
tive energy, 413, *note*, identified with  
Agni and Prajāpati *ib* , placed in oppo-  
sition to the Vedic deities 426, idea of  
sleeping upon the waters, 400, conception  
of Brahma and Brahmā, 478, decline of  
the worship, 419, connection with Om,  
the Vyāhritis and the Gayatri, 482, iden-  
tified with the Sun, 483, significant indi-  
cation of the unpopularity of the worship,  
497, perhaps a different conception to  
Prajapati, 511
- Brahmachāri, or student in the Veda 544,  
rites prior to the investiture with the  
thread, 545, significance of the thread,  
*ib* , age of investiture, *ib* , ceremony of  
begging for alms, 546, its origin, 547,  
rules for the conduct of a Brahmachāri  
after investiture, 548, their object, *ib* ,  
his religious duties, 549, reverent study  
of the Veda, *ib* , worship of the gods, *ib* ,  
service to a preceptor, 550, respect due to  
a preceptor, 551, maintenance of a strict  
control over the passions, 552, festivities  
associated with his return to his father's  
house, 554, present of a cow, 555
- Brahmācharis, 4, Rāma and his brethren  
become Brahmācharis 33
- Brahmanas, or formal rituals, 448; account  
of, *ib* , *note*

- ligion of the masses, *ib*, code of Manu a stand point in its history, 422
- Brāhmins, their three classes of disciples, *vir* servants, students, and Brahma chāris, 4, advise the Raja of Anga to give his daughter in marriage to Rishi Brīngas, 12, production of rain by the Rishi, 13, refuse land because they are unable to rule, 17, opposition of the Rikshasas, 33, 230, Rama and Sita give their jewels to the Brāhmins 121, settlements of the Brahmins, 150, character of their hermitages, 229, signs introduced as types of the Brahmins of the Dekkan, 230, picture of their hermitages, 240, their origin in Brahmarshi-desa, 431, distinguished from the Rishis, or Vedic psalmists, 430, wide difference between them, 433 stories of their marriages with young Princesses, *ib*, *note*, their first appearance as mercenary sacrificers, 441, their ascendancy secured by asceticism, 442, Vedic faith in their power, *ib* compared with frogs in a Vedic hymn, 443, conception of Manu compared with the Vedic conception, 445, toleration of old customs, 450 the code of Manu their text book, 451, their cosmogony, 453, their bold attempt to map out eternity, 463, religion of the Brāhmins, 471, divisible into invocations and sacramental rites, 473 significance of the invocations as forming combinations of Three in One, *ib*, significance of Om, the Vyāhritis and the Gāyatri, 481, daily repetition of the invocations, 481, claimed the right of interpreting the Veda, 490, mode of interpretation *ib*, conception of marriage, 601, feasted at the great Śraद्धas 620, prohibited from worshipping inferior gods, 620, modifications of the old Vedic belief in the Śraद्धa, 638 veneration for, 637, privileges of, 636, occupation of, 637, diet of, 638, opposition between the milk and vegetable diet of the Brahmins and the flesh meat of the Kshatriyas, 639, ideal of Brahmanical life as expressed in Manu's system of four orders, 641, three classes of Brāhmins, 650, their occupations, 660, idea that they should be maintained by the public, 661 their spirit of inclusion, 660, ideal of life partially obtained from Buddhism, but not from the Vedic worship, *ib*, originated in a belief in a future state, 666, expression in modern humanity, 666 7, punishment of Brahmins 631, theory of government, 686, absence of patriotism and public spirit, *ib*, religion the only political and national tie, 687 political system based upon fear *ib*, rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy, 640, early antagonism to the Maharajas, *ib*, means by which they attained power 606, evil results, 657, beneficial influence, 608, opposition to the Buddhists, 609
- Brahmarshi desa, or country of the Brahmins, probably a historical name, 428, description of, in Manu, 430
- Brahmāvarta, probably a mythical name applied to the country frequented by the Vedic gods, or Aryan people, 428, Manu's geography of, 437
- Buddhism legends of, connected with the life of Sakyā Muni, 408, broad features of Buddhism, 411, expulsion of Buddhism in the age of Brahmanical revival, 416, failed to influence the masses, *ib* chronology of 418, a religion of the aristocracy, 421, denounced by Manu, 451, devotees resembling Sannyāsas, 560, sarcasm levelled at their nuns, 583, opposition of Brāhmins, 630
- Buddhists, Jāyati the logician charged with being one, 215, identified with the Rikshasas, 232, characteristics of, in the sensuality of Ravana, 347, satirical hit in the story of Kumbha karna, 379
- Caggā, river, 430, *note*
- Calanus, story of his burning himself, 262
- Caste, an engine of ecclesiastical oppression, 413, probable origin of, in the river Sarasvati, 431, division of classes of society into four castes 529, probable origin of the four castes, *ib*, traces of, in the Vedic age, 530, stratification of the system in the Brahmanic age, *ib*, no Brahmanical superiority asserted in the Purusha hymn, 531, Vedic myth distorted in Manu's code, *ib*, expression of caste distinctions, 532, in salutations, 533, in administering oaths, *ib*, marriages, *ib* caste emblems, 531, later prohibition of all marriages between castes, 530, five groups of illustrations of the caste system, *ib*, veneration for Brāhmins, *ib*, their privileges, 536, their occupations, 537, their diet, 538, scale of punishment for slander, 510 chandalas, or outer-castes, 541, increase in the number of castes subsequent to the age of Manu, 512, respective occupations of the three twice-born castes, 660
- Cattle, pastoral law respecting damage to, 611
- Chamber of displeasure, sought by Hindū wives when angry, 941
- Chandalas, 4
- Chandalas, or out-castes, 541
- Charat, description of Bharata, 269
- Children, Hindū love for, as exemplified in the story of Rima, 27, 90
- Chitra kuta, the seat of Valmiki in Bundelkand, 130, recommended to Rama as a residence, 146, Rama builds a hermitage there, 148, beautiful description of the hill as it appeared to Bharata and his army, 191, Rama descants on its beauties to his wife Sita 199
- Chronology, sacred, 463, calculation of days months, and years, 464, calculation of Yugas, or ages, 460, Hindu and European ideas of, compared, 468 influence of the different chronological systems upon the respective religious belief of Hindūs and Europeans 469, system of Manwantaras superadded to the Brahmanic system of Kalpas, *ib*, absence of



- proach the Maharaja and Kaikeyi, 1b, mournful appearance of the city after the departure of Rama, 137, gloomy appearance indicated in a succession of Hindu smiles, 219, preparations of the people for the triumphant return of Rama, 338, return of Rama and Sita with their sons, 403
- Bali, overcome by Vishnu in the dwarf incarnation 43
- Bali, the Monkey Chieftain of Kishkindhya has all treatment of Sugriva 320 his combat with Sugriva, 321, mortally wounded by Rama 1b sudden appearance of his wife Tara, 1b her lamentations over him, 322 funeral ceremonies for him, 1b
- Bhagiratha Raja, legend of his restoring the sixty thousand sons of Sagara to life, 46 *note*
- Bharadvaja the sage sent at Prayaga, 135, receives Rama and Sita, 140, recommends the hill Chitra kuta as a residence, 146 his extraordinary entertainment of the army of Bharata, 186, entertains the army of Monkeys, 337, *note*
- Bharata, son of Dasaratha and Kaikeyi, his birth 21, sent to Girivraja with his uncle Yudhishthira, 77, instructions of his father Dasaratha, 1b, residence and studies in the house of his grandfather Raja Aswapati, 78, significance of his absence during the preparations for the installation of Rama as Yuvaraja, 87, summoned to Ayodhya on the death of the Maharaja, 108, his ominous dream, 162, his return to Ayodhya 163, his presents to his grandfather, 164, scene between him and Kaikeyi, 165 his grief, 1b, demands the reason of Rama's exile, 166, bitterly reproaches his mother, 167, proclaims the right of Rama to the Raj, 1b, prevents Satrugna from slaying Manthara 168, declares to Kausalya his loyal attachment to Rama, 169, performs the funeral rites for Maharaja Dasaratha, 179, his grief 174, refuses the request of the council that he will accept the Raj, 179, prepares to visit Rama at Chitra kuta, 180 the march, 181, halt at Sringeri, 182, interview with Raja Guha, 183, passage of his army over the river Ganges, 185, proceeds to the hermitage of Bharadvaja at Prayaga, 1b, extraordinary entertainment of the soldiers by the sage 186, march from Prayaga to Chitra kuta, 190, approaches the hermitage of Rama 203, acquaints him with the death of the Maharaja, 208, offers the Raj to Rama 211 the discussion 1b, offers to go into exile, 217, final refusal of Rama, 1b, rules the Raj through the shoes of Rama, 218 returns to Ayodhya 1b, resides at Nandigram, 219 review of his proceedings, 223, his austerities on account of Rama, 229, his preparations for the triumphant return of Rama, 338 meeting with Rama, 359
- Bhil country, frontier at Sringeri, 135, Raja Guha welcomes Rama, 139
- Bottomry, law respecting, 608
- Brahma, birth of, in an egg 415, separation into male and female, 400, production of Viraj, 1b day of, 467 simplicity of the idea, 467 court of with four faces, 606
- Brahma marriage, 500, referred to the Brahmanic age, 507, differed altogether from the rite of the Rishis, 510
- Brahma, mythical ancestor of the Rajas of Kosala, 2 Indra and the gods pray him to protect them against Ravana 18 conducts them to the abode of Vishnu 19, emanation from presents a cup of payasa to Dasaratha 20, worshipped by Ravana 232 Viradha preserved by his blessing, 243 arrow of, 256, his irresistible noose, 311
- Brahma placed above all the Vedic deities 412, distinction between Brahma, the Supreme Soul, and Brahma, or his creative energy, 413, *note*, identified with Agni and Prayapati 1b, placed in opposition to the Vedic deities 426, idea of sleeping upon the waters, 455, conception of Brahma and Brahma, 478, decline of the worship, 479, connection with Om, the Vyahritis and the Gayatri, 482, identified with the Sun 483, significant indication of the unpopularity of the worship, 497, perhaps a different conception to Prayapati, 511
- Brahmachari or student in the Veda, 541, rites prior to the investiture with the thread, 545, significance of the thread 1b, age of investiture, 1b, ceremony of begging for alms, 546, its origin, 547 rules for the conduct of a Brahmachari after investiture, 548, their object, 1b, his religious duties, 549, reverent study of the Veda 1b, worship of the gods, 1b, service to a preceptor, 550, respect due to a preceptor, 551, inaintenance of a strict control over the passions, 552, festivities associated with his return to his father's house, 554, present of a cow, 555
- Brahmacharis 4, Rama and his brethren become Brahmacharis, 33
- Brahmanas, or formal rituals, 418, account of 1b, *note*
- Brahmanic period history of, 407, religion distinct from the Vedic religion, 412 compromise between the two, 413, chronology of, 418, probable duration, 420, settlements separated from the Vedic settlements by the Saraswati river, 425, stratification of the four castes, 630, marriage relations in, 571, absence of chronological sequence, 620, political condition of Hindustan, 629 growing opposition between Brahmanas and Buddhists 1b, subsequent religious convulsions 660
- Brahmanical revival, period of 416, appeal to the worship of the old gods of India, 417, characterized by the worship of Vishnu and Siva, 1b, chronology of, 418
- Brahmanism, its indefinite extension throughout the Buddhist age, 421, a re-

73 entertains Yudhishthira, the brother of Rama's wife Kaikeyi 77, sends his sons Bharata and Satrugna to Girivraja in charge of Yudhishthira, ib ; his partiality for Rama, 79, requested by the Chieftains and people to retire in favour of Rama, ib, his fabled anger, ib his speech to the great council expressing a desire to appoint Rama to be Yuvaraja, 80, directs his two priests to prepare for the installation 82 sends for Rama ib requests him to become Yuvaraja 83, his planet threatened by three malignant aspects, ib proceeds to the apartment of Kaikeyi, 90, his surprise at finding her absent, ib follows her to the chamber of displeasure, ib his affectionate speeches to Kaikeyi, ib, swears to perform her request, 90, his distraction at her request that Bharata should be installed and Rama exiled, 97, his wrath at her obstinacy, 98 his lamentations and remonstrances 99 his real feelings, 101, mythical story of the two boons ib, summoned by Sumantra to attend the installation 106 commands him to bring Rama to the palace, 107 his grief on seeing Rama 111, his final parting with Rama, 123, his lamentations on the departure of Rama, 131, reproached by Kausalya, 152, implores her forgiveness, 163, his last words, 164, death, 165, episode respecting his being cursed by a recluse, 169, funeral rites, 171, appears at the funeral of Sita, 381

Daughters purification by marriage instead of the thread 517

Day Hindú, division of, 164, four different days, ib

Devatas, or gods worshipped by the Vedic Aryans sometimes identified with the Aryan people 476, day of 465

Dharma vrata, hermitages of, 252

Dharmá, custom of, 217

Diet of Brahmins, 535, compromise involved in the laws respecting that of the twice-born castes ib opposition between the milk and vegetable food of the Brahmins and the flesh meat of the Kshatriyas, 559, repugnance to flesh meat, ib, general use of flesh meat in ancient times, 650

Dravidian law respecting 577, supersession of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son 578

Draupadi, river 430, note

Durga worship of, 417

Dushana brother of Ravana his wars against Rama, 269, his death, 274

Education of Rama by Vasudeva, 32, rites of initiation ib, daily attendance at school ib, alphabet, grammar, arts and sciences, and examinations in the council hall ib, study of the Vedas, 33, studies of Bharata at Girivraja 78

Eggs Orphic and Brahmanical ideas of, compared 427 origin of the concept on 437, possible connection with the worship of the Linga, ib

Egotism, the threefold 439

Epochs four in the religious history of India, 411, chronology of 118 definite chronology impossible, 419

Evidence, false, law respecting, 610

Families, divided and undivided, 612

Famine in the Raj of Anga, 12, rain produced by Kuru Srunga 13

Food See Diet.

Frogs compared with Brahmins in a Vedic hymn, 413

Funeral arrangements, 156, narrative of the rites performed for Maharaja Dasa ratha, 172, for Jatayus, 307, for Bali, 322

Future state of rewards and punishments unknown in the Vedic age 471, introduced to enforce Brahmanical laws, 472, future existences of the soul dependent upon merits and demerits, 473

Gambling prohibited, 526

Gandharva marriages, 504, restricted by Manu to the Kshatriyas, 505, the expression of a woman's independence, 514

Ganesa, god of good luck, 418

Ganges, hermitage at its junction with the Sarayu, 41; passage of Rama and Yama's putra over the river, ib, legend of its descent from the Himalaya mountain upon the head of Shiva, and thence on the earth, 45, 46 note, poetical description of the river, 133, Rama's passage over, 140, Sita's prayer to the river, 142, passage of the army of Bharata over the river, 165

Garuda, the bird of Vishnu, 257

Gautama, his wife Ahalya seduced by Indra, 48, curses her, 49, Rama frees her from the curse, ib

Gâyatri, including three measures, 460, meaning of 482

Gayatri the holy, taught to Rama, 33

Geography, Vedic and Brahmanic compared, 420, of the Saraswati river 429

Ghosts, belief in, 411, daily offerings to, 494, origin of the belief in 495, popular belief in, among the Hindus, ib, propitiation of, in the daily ritual 497, 498, associated with the Vasuka form of marriage, 515, feasted in the Sraddhas, 518

Girivraja, city of 78, 163.

Godavari river, 257

Government, Hindú, contrast between the theory in Manu and the patriarchal and feudal types in Vedic tradition 566, absence of patriotism and public spirit ib, religion the only political and national tie, 587, political system of the Brahmins based upon fear, ib, the Raja, his court and ministers 588, characteristics of Hindu sovereignty, 595 illustrations to be found in the Mahá Bháratá and Ramáyana, ib, government of the province, 596, a military occupation based upon the village system, ib, government of villages as laid down by Manu 601, governors of cities, 602, system of taxation in return for protection, 603, a

sequence in the history of ancient India, 620  
 Churning of the sea for amṛta, legend of, 47.  
 Civil law, 606  
 Civilization, description of the Rāj of Kosala, and city of Ayodhyā, 3, the people, 4, palace and throne of the Mahārāja, 5, ministers, counsellors, and preceptors, 6, Hindu ideal of a city, 7, necessity for spies, 9 horse sacrifice—see Aswamedha legend of the Rishi Śrīṅga who had never seen a woman, 12, story of the damsels sent to entice him, 13, rejoicings on the birth of sons, 21, ceremony of giving names, 13, story of Rāma's childhood, 27, efforts of the women to pacify Rāma, 30, education of boys, 32, unwillingness of Rāma to slay a woman, 42, jealousies and intrigues in the Zenana on the appointment of a Yuvarāja, 73, public reception of Bharata at Girivraja, 78, studies of Bharata, 13, assembly of a great council to discuss the installation of Rāma, 80, virtues of a young prince as exemplified in the recital of the merits of Rāma, 81, preparations for the installation of a Yuvarāja, 82, planet of Dasaratha threatened by three malignant aspects, 83, universal rejoicings in the city of Ayodhyā on the approaching installation of Rāma, 86, democratic element in the city of Ayodhyā, 87, scenes within the palace on the eve of the installation, 90, curious reference to the chamber of displeasure, 91, description of the Zenana of Mahārāja Dasaratha, 95, preparations for the installation of the Yuvarāja, 106, praises bestowed by Su-mantra upon the Mahārāja, 107, description of the beautiful residence of Rāma, 13, procession of Rāma to the palace of the Mahārāja, 108, sacrifice of Kausalyā to Vishnu, 113, Kausalyā's advice to Rāma to slay the Mahārāja, 115, perils of a jungle life, 118, scene in the palace of the Mahārāja on the departure of Rāma and Sītā, 123, jungle dresses, 126, general distress at the departure of Rāma and Sītā from Ayodhyā, 130, demonstrative character of family affections amongst the Hindus, 133, filial obedience of Rāma a model, 134, mournful appearance of the city of Ayodhyā, after the departure of Rāma, 137, scene in the palace after Rāma's exile, 152; striking scene after the death of the Mahārāja, 153, royal corpse preserved in oil, 156, assembly of a great council, 15, poetical description of a country without a Mahārāja, 157, presents given by Bharata to his grandfather, 161, funeral rites for Mahārāja Dasaratha, 170, the days of mourning and performance of a Śrāddha, 175, council assembled after the funeral ceremonies for Mahārāja Dasaratha, 179, construction of the great road to Chitra-kūta, 180, march of Bharata from Ayodhyā to Chitra-kūta, 181; presents of fish,

honey, and flesh, made by the Bhīṣm Rājā to Bharata, 183, passage of the army of Bharata over the river Ganges, 185, extraordinary entertainment of the army by the sage Bharadvāja, 186, sports of Rāma and Sītā on the hill Chitra-kūta, 201, duties of Rājas detailed by Rāma, 205, threat of Rāma to sit in Dharmā, 217, curious idea of Bharata ruling the Rāj through the shoes of Rāma, 218, gloomy appearance of Ayodhyā described in a succession of Hindū similes, 219, picture of Brahmanical hermitages, 240, description of the forest of Dandaka, 241, cannibalism of Viradha, 13, extraordinary description of ascetics, 247, Rāma's hermitage at Panchavati, 257, poetical description of the cold season, 258, shameless proposals of Śūrpaṇakha, 265, chariot of Khara, 269, abuse of Khara by Rāma, 270, ancient law that the wife of the conquered became the prize of the conqueror, 298, 305, burying alive, 310, Sarvarī burns herself, 312, description of the city of Lanka, 331, the palace of Ravana, 333, the inner apartments, 334, the women of Ravana, 13, treatment of Mandodari by the Monkeys, 373, story of the ordeal of Sītā, 384; entertainment of the Monkeys by Bharadvāja, 387, ceremonies of installing Rāma and Sītā, 391, domestic life of Rāma and Sītā, 394, popularity of the Ramayana, 13

Civilization, three phases of, 624, modified by human nature, 625

Cosmogony See Creation.

Court of Brahma with four faces, 606

Creation of the universe by Manu and Brahma, 452, obscurity of the Vedic idea, 13, cosmogony of the Brahmanic period, 453, Manu's account, 454, compared with that of Moses, 455, contrast between the Hindū idea of Brahma sleeping on the waters with the Hebrew idea of a vivifying wind, 456, the mundane egg, 457, the metaphysical creation, 457; introduction of Manu and the ten Rishis, 460

Criminal law, 613

Daiva marriage, 505, its mythical character, 508

Dakṣha, the sacrifice of, destroyed by Siva, 54, 55, note

Dandaka, description of the forest, 239, 241.

Dasaratha, Mahārāja of Kosala, 2, his virtues, 6, determines to perform an Aswamedha, 11, his three Rāms, 13, goes to Anga, and brings Śrīṅga to perform the Aswamedha, 15, gives payasa to his Rāms, 20, birth of his four sons, 21, his anxieties respecting their marriage, 38, permits Rāma and Lakṣmana to accompany Viśvāmitra, 39, proceeds to Mithilā, to the marriage of his sons to the daughters and nieces of Rāja Janaka, 53, performs a great Śrāddha, 56, intrigues and jealousies excited in his court and zenana by the appointment of a Yuvarāja,

73, entertains Yudhishthira, the brother of his wife Kaikeyi, 77, sends his sons Bharata and Satrugana to Girivraja in charge of Yudhishthira, ib; his partiality for Rama, 79 requested by the Chieftains and people to retire in favour of Rama, ib, his feigned anger, ib his speech to the great council expressing a desire to appoint Rama to be Yuvaraja, 80, directs his two priests to prepare for the installation, 82, sends for Rama, ib requests him to become Yuvaraja, 83, his planet threatened by three malignant aspects, ib proceeds to the apartments of Kaikeyi, 90, his surprise at finding her absent, ib, follows her to the chamber of displeasure, ib, his affectionate speeches to Kaikeyi, ib, swears to perform her request, 96, his distraction at her request that Bharata should be installed and Rama exiled, 97, his wrath at her obstinacy, 98, his lamentations and remonstrances 99, his real feelings, 101, mythical story of the two boons ib, summoned by Sumantra to attend the installation, 106, commands him to bring Rama to the palace, 107, his grief on seeing Rama, 111, his final parting with Rama, 123, his lamentations on the departure of Rama, 131, reproached by Kausalya, 152, implores her forgiveness, 153, his last words, 154, death, 155, episode respecting his being cursed by a recluse, 159, funeral rites, 171, appears at the ordeal of Sita, 384

Daughters purification by marriage instead of the thread, 547

Day, Hindû, division of, 461, four different days, ib

Devas, or gods worshipped by the Vedic Aryans, sometimes identified with the Aryan people, 426, day of, 465

Dharma vrata, hermitages of, 202

Dharma, custom of, 217

Diet of Brahmans, 538, compromise involved in the laws respecting that of the twice born castes, ib opposition between the milk and vegetable food of the Brahmans and the flesh meat of the Kshatriyas, 539, repugnance to flesh meat, ib, general use of flesh meat in ancient times 600

Divorce, law respecting, 577, supersession of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son, 578

Drishadvati, river, 430, *note*

Durga, worship of, 417

Dushana, brother of Ravana, his wars against Rama, 269, his death, 271

Education of Rama by Vasishtha, 32, rites of initiation, ib, daily attendance at school, ib, alphabet, grammar, arts and sciences, and examinations in the council hall ib, study of the Vedas, 33, studies of Bharata at Girivraja, 78

Egg Orphic and Brahmanical ideas of, compared, 456, origin of the conception, 407, possible connection with the worship of the Linga, ib

Egotism, the threefold, 409

Epochs, four in the religious history of India, 411, chronology of 418, defective chronology impossible, 419

Evidence, false, law respecting, 610

Families, divided and undivided, 612

Famine in the Raj of Anga, 12, rain produced by Rishu Srunga, 13

Food See Diet

Frogs compared with Brâhmans in a Vedic hymn, 413

Funeral arrangements, 156, narrative of the rites performed for Mahârâja Dusharatha, 172, for Jatâyus, 307, for Bali, 322

Future state of rewards and punishments unknown in the Vedic age, 471, introduced to enforce Brahmanical laws, 472, future existences of the soul dependent upon merits and demerits, 473

Gambling prohibited, 526

Gandharva marriages, 504, restricted by Manu to the Kshatriyas, 505, the expression of a woman's independence, 514

Ganesa, god of good luck, 418

Ganges, hermitage at its junction with the Sarayû, 41, passage of Rama and Visvâmitra over the river, ib, legend of its descent from the Himalaya mountain upon the head of Siva, and thence on the earth, 45, 46, *note*, poetical description of the river, 138, Rama's passage over, 140, Sita's prayer to the river, 142, passage of the army of Bharata over the river, 185

Garura, the bird of Vishnu, 257

Gautama, his wife Abalya seduced by Indra, 48, curses her, 49, Rama frees her from the curse, ib

Gayatri, including three measures, 480, meaning of 482

Gayatri the holy, taught to Rama, 33

Geography, Vedic and Brahmanic compared, 420, of the Sarasvati river 429

Ghosts, belief in, 411, daily offerings to, 494, origin of the belief in 490, popular belief in, among the Hindus, ib, propitiation of, in the daily ritual, 497, 498, associated with the Pausacha form of marriage, 510, feasted in the Sradhas, 518

Girivraja, city of 78, 163

Godavari river, 257

Government, Hindû, contrast between the theory in Manu and the patriarchal and feudal types in Vedic tradition, 586, absence of patriotism and public spirit ib, religion the only political and national tie, 587, political system of the Brâhmans based upon fear, ib, the Raja, his court and ministers, 588, characteristics of Hindû sovereignty, 590, illustrations to be found in the Mahâ Bharata and Râmâyana, ib, government of the provinces, 596, a military occupation based upon the village system, ib government of villages as laid down by Manu 601, governors of cities, 602, system of taxation in return for protection, 603, ad-

- ministration of justice, 605, laws of war, 613, policy to be pursued in a conquered country, 617, its failure, 618
- Grihastha, or householder, 533, obligation to marry, *ib*, domestic life, 550, means of livelihood and moral conduct, *ib*, respective occupations of the three twice born castes, *ib*
- Guha, Raja of the Bhils, welcomes Rama at Dringavera, 139, his conversation with Lakshmana, 140, prepares to oppose the army of Bharata, 182, his interview with Bharata, 183, conducts Bharata's army over the Ganges, 185, his joy at hearing of Rama's return to Ayodhya, 387
- Gunas, or the three qualities, their creation, 403
- Guru, the, 550
- Hanuman, the chief counsellor of the Monkey chieftain Sugriva, 319, his adventures in Lanka, 326, receives the marriage ring of Rama, 328, meets Sampati, 329, reaches the sea, *ib*, his mighty leap, 330, beholds the beautiful city of Lanka, 331, reconnoitres Lanka in the form of a cat, 332, meets with Uggra Chunda, the genius of Lanka, *ib*, proceeds through the city to the palace of Ravana, 333, searches for Sita in the inner apartments, 334, finds her in the Asoka garden, 335, the interview, 339, destroys the grove, 340, combat with Jambavan, *ib*, slays Aksha, 341, combat with Indrajit, *ib*, bound in the irresistible noose of Brahma, *ib*, his tricks with the Rakshasas, 342, his appearance before Ravana, *ib*, his tail set on fire, 343, returns with the Monkey army to Rama, *ib*, review of his adventures, 344, carries away the Himalaya mountain by the roots, 369, sets Lanka on fire, *ib*, his adventure with Kalmeshi, 371, with Bharata at Nandigrama, *ib*, carries away the Himalaya a second time, 372
- Happiness, Brahmanical disquisition on, 552
- Hermit. See *Vinapratha*.
- Hermitage at the junction of the Ganges and Sarayu, 41, question of the existence of hermitages in the time of Rama, 150, beautiful description of the hermitage of Rama, 204, general character of 229, picture of, 240, those of the sage Dharmavira, 252, of the sage Matanga, 311
- Heroic age of Hindû history, 637, meagre relics, 638\*
- Hindûs, four epochs in their history, 407, Vedic and Brahmanic geography, 425, Rishis and Brâhmanas, 435, Vedic and Brahmanic conceptions of Manu, 445, creation of the universe by Manu and Brahmâ, 452, religion of the Brâhmanas, 471, eight forms of marriage, 500, the Sradha, or feast of the dead, 518, the four castes, 529, the four stages of life, 543, Hindû women, 568, government, 586, historical resume, 619—See *India*.
- Hospitality, a religious rite, 498
- Householders. See *Grihastha*
- Husbands. See *Marriage*
- Iksvâku, ancestor of the Râjas of Kosala, 6, 84, *note*
- Ilwala, consumed by the fire of the eye of Agastya, 253
- India, characteristics of the cold weather in, 253
- India, history of, possibility of constructing 407, materials, *ib*, Epics, Vedas, and Puranas, *ib*, Buddhist legends, 403, laws of Manu, *ib*, Hindû drama and poetry, *ib*, Mackenzie manuscripts, *ib*, miscellaneous vernacular records, *ib*, inscriptions, etc., 409, history of, as distinct from that of Mussulman and British rule, *ib*, religions from within, 410, importance of the history, *ib*, objects of the present work, 409, *note*, emphatically a religious history 410, four epochs, 411, chronology of the four epochs, 418, definite chronology impossible, 419, distinction between the age when the Saraswati flowed into the Indus, and the age when it disappeared in the sand, 423, chronological interval, 432, distinctions between Rishis and Brâhmanas, 445, historical significance of the compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas in the code of Manu, 446, Vedic usages forbidden in the age of Kali, 491, changes in the religion between the Vedic and Brahmanic periods, 493, resume of the ancient history, 619, first scene—the Vedic Aryans in the Punjab, 673 second scene—the Aryan conquest of Hindûstan, 623-4, three phases of civilization, 624, modification of the three phases by human nature, 625, the patriarchal age, 626, the heroic age, 637, the monarchical age, 643, probable means by which the Brâhmanas attained power 656 political condition of Hindûstan in the Brahmanic age, 659
- Indra, his assumed power of producing rain arrogated by the Brâhmanas, 14, his presence at the Aswamedha of Dasaratha, 18, proceeds to the heaven of Brahma to complain of Ravana, *ib*, conducted to the abode of Vishnu, 19, legend of the charming of the sea, 47, legend of his adultery with the wife of Garutama, 45, cursed by Gautama, 49, his luminous appearance at the hermitage of Sarabanga, 45, legend of his tempting a sage to become a warrior 250, his coat of mail given to Agastya and then to Rama, 256, sends his chariot to Rama, 374, Indra, his attributes, 437, worship of, opposed to the worship of the Maruts, 439, regarded as a creator, 432, decline of his worship in the Brahmanic age, 496, myths respecting 641
- Indrajit, son of Ravana and conqueror of Indra, binds Hanuman in the noose of Brahma, 341, his sacrifices, 364, confines Rama and Lakshmana in his noose, 365; slain by Lakshmana, 370, significance of his sacrifices, 373

- Jambu mahi, slain by Hanuman, 341
- Janaka, Raja of Mithilā, receives Viswamitra the sage, with Rāma and Lakshmana, 54, exhibits the great bow of Śiva, 1b, his daughter Sītā promised to that Raja who could bend the bow, 55, Rāma bends the bow, 1b, the Raja invites Dasāratha to the marriage, 1b, proposes to marry his two daughters to Rāma and Lakshmana, and his two nieces to Bharata and Satrugna, 56, performs the marriage rites, 57, 59
- Jatāyus son of Garura, allies with Rāma, 257, hears the cries of Sītā in the chariot of Rāvana, 292, stops Rāvana and fights desperately, 264, his death 297, his body discovered by Rāma, 307, his funeral rites performed by Rāma 308, meeting of his brother Sampāt with Hanuman, 329
- Jarāhi, the logician, his atheistical speech to Rāma at Chitra kuta, 211, Rāma's wrathful reply, 214, renewal of the discussion, 215, charged with Buddhism, 1b, his recantation, 1b, review of his character, 221
- Jumna, river, worshipped by Sītā, 147
- Jungle life, perils and sufferings of, described by Rāma to Sītā, 118
- Justice, administration of, 605, Brahmanizing of the old patriarchal system, 1b, conduct of the judge, 606, laws respecting property, 1b
- Jyāmgna, the submissive husband, legend of, 569, *note*
- Kabandha, the living mountain, his encounter with Rāma, 309, legend of, 310, counsels Rāma to ally with Sugriva, 1b
- Kaīkeyī, a Rānī of Mahārāja Dasaratha, 11, gives birth to Bharata, 21, visit of her brother Yudhājit, 77, her joy at hearing that her son Bharata was to accompany Yudhājit to Girivraja, 1b, her intrigues, 89, description of her slave woman Manthara 91, her jealousy at the installation of Rāma excited by Manthara, 1b, aroused to action, 93, runs away to the chamber of displeasure, 94, induces the Mahārāja to swear that he will grant her request, 96, demands the installation of her son Bharata and the exile of Rāma, 1b, reproached for her cruelty, 97, her remorseless obstinacy, 98, insists upon the Mahārāja keeping his word, 99, lamentations and remonstrances of the Mahārāja, 1b, review of the narrative, 101, curious Brahmanical interpolation that she required Rāma to become a religious devotee, 103, desires Sumantra to summon Rāma to the palace, 107, informs Rāma that he is to be exiled, and his brother Bharata installed, 111, reproved by Sumantra, 121, her conduct intended as a warning to younger wives, 134, interview with her son Bharata after his return from Girivraja, 165, reproached by Bharata, 167, her joy at the return of Rāma, 288
- Kakshīvat, the Rākhi who married ten daughters of a Raja, 435, 503
- Kāla nemi, his adventure with Hanuman, 371, legend concerning, 372
- Kali age, usages prohibited in, 491
- Kālī, worship of 417
- Kalpa, or day of Brahmā, involves the idea of eternity, 467
- Kāma, god of love, 418
- Kāma, the god of love, legend of his smiting Śiva with his arrows, 41
- Kanouj, city of, legend of its foundation, 45, *note*
- Kārtikeya, god of war, 418
- Kāśyapa, grandson of Brahmā, the mythical ancestor of the Rajas of Kosala, 2, Buddhist legend of, 1a, *note*
- Kausalyā, a Rānī of Mahārāja Dasaratha, 11, gives birth to Rāma, 21, her fondness for the infant, 29, her joy at Rāma's elevation to the post of Yuvārāja, 84, her sacrifice to Vishnu, 113, informed by Rāma of his exile, 114, her bitter lamentations, 1b, urges Rāma to seize the Raj, and slay the Mahārāja, 115, Rāma's refusal, 1b, reproaches the Mahārāja, 152, acknowledges her transgression, 151, Bharata declares to her his loyal attachment to Rāma, 169, her grief at Chitra-kuta at seeing Rāma offering a coarse cake to Dasaratha, 210
- Khara, brother of Ravana, learns from his sister Śūrpa nakhā that she has been disfigured by Lakshmana, 268, his unsuccessful wars against Rāma 269, disregards the evil omens, 270, slain by Rāma, 275
- Kishkindhyā, the Monkey city of Bali, 319
- Kosala, Raj of, 2, claim of the Rajas to be descended from the Sun and Brahma, 1b, description of the Raj, 3
- Kshatriyas, 4, alleged extirpation of, by Parasurama an exaggeration of some petty local tradition, originating in the theft of a cow, 64
- Kshatriyas, conception of marriage, 502, illegal marriages tolerated, 515, significance of the law which permitted Gandharva and Rakshasa marriages to, 1b, laws against, 524, laws against flesh-meat, 526, their occupations, 560
- Kuhu, goddess of the day, 493
- Kumbha-karna, the great sleeper, his awakening and death, 367, popularity of the story, 349, a satire of the Buddhist dogma of Nirvana, 1b
- Kuvers, god of wealth, 418
- Lakshmana, son of Dasaratha and Sumitrā, his birth, 21, accompanies Rāma and Viswamitra, 39, cuts off the ears and nose of Tārakā, 41, married to Urmilā, the sister of Sītā, 67, seconds the counsel of Kausalyā that Rāma should slay the Mahārāja and seize the Raj, 115, proceeds with Rāma and Sītā bare-footed to the palace, 122, attends on Rāma at the Tamara river, 136, at Srīngavera, 140, builds the hut at Chitra kuta, 148, advises Rāma that Bharata should be slain, 203, builds a hermitage for Rāma at Panchavati, 267, cuts off the ears and nose of Śūrpa nakhā, 267, reproached by

- Sita for not leaving her to aid Rāma, 287, reproached by Rāma, 306, accompanies Rāma in the search for Sita, 307
- Lakshmi, the goddess of beauty, rises out of the sea, and becomes the wife of Vishnu, 47
- Lankā, the capital of Rāvara's empire, 270, island of, 329 description of the city and palace, 331, the seven castles and walls, ib reconnoitred by Hanuman 332, combat between the genius of Lanka and Hanuman, 333, set on fire by Hanuman, 343 309
- Lava, his birth, educated by Valmiki, 401; with Kusa defeats Rāma, 402, acknowledged by Rāma as his sons ib
- Laws, respecting property 606 miscellaneous, 608, neglect of land by cultivators 611 12, criminal, 613 laws of war ib
- Linga worship, 417, possibly connected with the idea of a mundane egg 407
- Linga, worshippers of, Rāma represented as their champion, 233 a form of Siva 234 set up by Rāma at Ramisseram 303
- Lomapāda Raja of Anga, sends darts to entice Rishi Seneca from his father's hermitage, 12 gives his daughter in marriage to Śrīnga, 14
- Mackenzie manuscripts, 403
- Madhya-desa, or the middle region, 430, its extent, 432
- Mahāvāt, maternal grandfather of Ravana, counsels him to restore Sita, 336
- Malyavana mountain, the residence of Rāma and Lakshmana during the rainy season, 319 0
- Mandakarni, lake of the abode of the sage Mandakarni and five Apsaras 251
- Mandakini river, 119, Rāma's description of it, 200
- Mandara mountain, 47, 167
- Mandodari, wife of Ravana, prevents her husband from slaying Sita 338, implores him to restore Sita, 305, ill treated by the Monkey, 373
- Mantharā the slave nurse of the Rishi Kaikeyi, 90; her ugliness, 91, attempts to excite the jealousy of Kaikeyi at the installation of Rāma, ib declares that Bharata will become the slave of Rāma, 92, counsels Kaikeyi to persuade the Mahārāja to install Bharata and exile Rāma, 93, reminds Kaikeyi of the two boons promised her by the Mahārāja, ib ill treated by Satrugna, 167, released by Bharata, 168
- Mantras, or hymns, 418, 419
- Matras two powerful ones given by Visvāmitra to Rāma 43
- Manu, Institutes of 408, a standpoint in the history of Brahmanism, 421, contains references to the age of Brahmanical revival, 422, geography of compared with that of the Rig Veda, 423, geography of Brahmanical revival, but that of Brahmanical decay probably historical, 428, places the Vedic duties in subordination to Brahmanism, 429, description of Brahmanism, 430
- Manu and Brahmanism, 430, Vedic conception of Manu as the first man, compared with the Brahmanic conception of a divine legislator, 430, associated with a legend of the deluge, ib, laws of a compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas, 416, conflicting character of his authorities, ib, four roots of the law, 417, his use of the term Veda, 419, includes later ordinances, immemorial customs, and approval of conscience as roots of the law, 419, 420, his spirit of toleration, 420 distinction between Smṛti, or revelation and Smṛti, or tradition, ib. denunciations against Buddhists, 431 his code the text book of the Brahmans, ib concept of father Manu as the progenitor of men, 433, his cosmogony compared with that of Moses, 434 produced from Viraj 460, his system of chronology, 463, his religious system both a development and a compromise, 471, daily invocations, 478, five daily sacramental rites, 487, of the Rishis, 488, of the Pitris 492, of the Devas, 493 of the Spirits or Ghosts, 494 of mortal Guests, 495, canon for reconciling conflicting texts in the Vedas, 491 his description of the eight forms of marriage, 500, perhaps associated with Prajapati, 511, tolerated Gandharva and Rakshasa marriages, 515, merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage, 516, significance of the application of the dogma, ib, relative merits of different rituals offered at a Śrāddha, 527, Vedic myth of the origin of caste distorted in the code to represent the Brahmans as superior to the Kshatriyas, 531 Manu's version of the origin of caste, 533, caste laws, ib, repugnance to flesh meat, 539, toleration of the usages of Kshatriyas and Vaisyas, ib, abstinence from lawful pleasures to be rewarded in another life, 549, scale of punishments for slander, ib, two objects of the code, viz the establishment of a national ritual and a caste system, 513, system of four stages or orders in the life of every man of the twice-born castes, 544, the Brahmachari, or student, 544, the Grihastha, or householder 553, the Vanaprastha, or hermit, 562, the Sannyasi, or devotee, 563, disquisition on earthly happiness, 562, tolerates the law for raising up a son to a deceased brother, 563, theory of Hindī government, 566, references to the village system, 604 601
- Manu, the ten, creation of 455, a separate cosmogony from that of Brahmi, 461, chronology of their reigns, 469
- Marwataras, chronological system of, superadded to the Brahmanic system of Kalpas, 469
- Mārīcha, the Rakshasa driven into the ocean by Rāma, 44, drowns his children from carrying away Sita, 276 apparently entreated by Ravana to assist, 283, 284, 285, assumes the form of a deer, 285 slain by Rāma 286
- Marriage, the three kinds of Manu's

Dasāratha, 11 story of the damsels who enticed Sruga from his father's hermit age, 13 marriage of Sruga and Santā, 14, the general interest attached to marriages intensified in India, 51 the all absorbing topic in Hindu households, 1b, paramount duty of Hindu parents to arrange the marriages of their children, 1b, transcendent interest attached to the marriage of Rāma and Sītā 52, the story of the marriage 1b the marriage performed not by Brahmins, but by Rāja Janaka, 59, the four important rites, 1b, resemblance between the ancient Aryan ceremony and the modern Christian rite 60, modern story of Rāma's honeymoon 61, 66, decorations of the bridal chamber, 67 Rāma and Sita playing at dice 1b Rāma compares Sita with different things in nature, 63 sports of the married pair in the pond, 1b, Rāma and Sita drink honey together, 68, jealousies and intrigues in the zenana on the select one of a Yuvarya, 73 the chamber of displeasure, 91, description of the zenana of Maharaja Dasāratha 95, description of the house of Rāma, 107, picture of, Rāma sitting on a couch and being fanned by Sita, 108 duties of wives, 153 lamentations of the widows on the death of the Maharaja 156 Hindu idea of wedded happiness, 199 220, virtuous conduct of Rāma towards the Mahārāja's women 233 taunt of Viradha that Rāma and Lakshmana had but one wife between them, 241 evil nature of women denounced by Agastya, 256, fastidious ideas of physical chastity amongst the Hindus, 302, ancient law by which the wife of the conqueror became the property of the conqueror, 298, 305, night visit of Ravana to Sita surrounded by his women 33.

Marriage eight forms of, specified by Manu, 500, their historical significance, 1b, Vedic conceptions of, as expressed in the Epics, 501, marriages in a peaceful community appertaining to Iushis or Brahmins 1b in a warlike community appertaining to Kshatriyas, 1b, polyandry in the Epics 502, in the hymns of the Rig Veda 1b, polygamy in the Epics and the Vedic hymns 505, the Swayamvara 1b, Gandharva and Rikshasa marriages, 501 old Kshatriya law that a wife should submit to the conqueror of a husband, 503 list of the eight forms 1b, four valid, 506, arbitrary distinction between the Devatas Iushis, and Prayapatis, 507, four illegal, 513, modern marriage customs 514 note, merits and demerits of the eight forms 516, younger brothers and younger sisters not to be married before elder brothers and sisters, 521, re-marriage of widows prohibited, 525, marriages between castes, 534, with a first wife of a low caste prohibited 1b, later prohibit on of all marriages between castes 535, regarded as the purification of daughters, 547, incumbent on all men,

553, regulations for producing a healthy progeny, 1b, relative ages of bridegroom and bride 511, prohibited marriages, 555, unsuitable families, 5 6, unsuitable damsels, 1b, qualified damsels, 5 8, opposition between the Kshatriya and Brahman idea of female beauty, 1b, marriage ceremonies, 559 eleven leading rites, 1b social condition of Hindu women, 568, marriage relations in the Vedic times, 1b, compensation to the female in the case of irregular unions, 1b, position of a damsel in a polygamous household, 569, superior authority of the legitimate wife 1b, natural tendency to monogamy, 570, polyandry and the Swayamvara, 570 legend of a submissive husband in a polygamous age, 569, note, marriage relations in the Brahmanic period, 571, polyandry and the Swayamvara ignored 1b, dependence of females upon fathers, husbands, and sons 571 2, duty of a father to a daughter, 573, story of Ramdoolal Dey, 572, note, cases when a damsel might choose her own husband, 573, duties of husbands towards their wives, 1b wives to be honoured and decorated, 574, duties of a wife, 1b, duties of a widow, 575 duties of a widower, 575-6, restrictions to be placed on women 576, vices of women 1b, maintenance and conduct of a wife in the absence of her husband, 1b, questions as regards the period of her absence 757, forced explanation of Kullūka, 1b, law respecting divorce, 1b suppression of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son, 578, good wives superceded with their own consent, 1b, force of the religious obligation to beget a son, 579, amusing story of Ramdoolal Dey and his second wife, 1b, laws against adultery, 580, punishment of unfaithful wives and their paramours 581, punishment of seducers who are Brahmins, 1b, public women and female choristes, 1b, question of guarded wives, 582, punishment for visiting public women and private mistresses, 1b, conduct of a Hindu towards the wives of his brother, 583, law for raising up a son to a deceased brother, 1b, modern custom of adoption, 585.

Maruts, worship of opposed to the worship of Indra, 439, enjoined by Manu 496

Matanga, the sage his hermitage on the road to Pampā, 310, teaches the name of 'Rāma to Sarvarī, 312

Mendicant See Sannyāsi

Merits and demerits, dogma of, 473, future existence of the soul dependent upon, 1b, causes of the universality in the belief 475 form of the conception in the Mosiac law 476 iniquity of fathers visited upon children, 1b inferior merit of duties performed in the hope of reward, 477 distinction between higher and lower motives 1b, merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage, 516 merits of different victims offered at a Sraddha 527



- Metaphysical creation taken from the Sankhya school of philosophy, 457
- Mithila, the modern Lihut, 45, Rāma enters the city, 51
- Monarchical age in Hindū history, 643
- Monkeys on the Rishya mūkha mountain, 298, significance of their alleged alliance with Rāma, 315, circumstances which led to the Hindū belief in the alliance, 316, those of the Rāmāyana identical with the aboriginal population of the south, 317, three hypotheses respecting the origin of the confusion, 1b reason why the Monkey gods of the south may have been represented as fighting for Rāma, 318, nondescript character, 323, adventures in the honey garden of Sugriva, 313, bring stones to Nala for the great bridge, 302, cross the bridge, 303, restored to life by Sushena, 363, their ill treatment of Mandodari, 373, entertained by Bharadvāja 357, *note*
- Monogamy, natural tendency to, 570
- Mosaic cosmogony compared with that of Manu, 454, doctrine of rewards and punishments, 475, iniquity of fathers visited upon children, 476, law as regards marriage, 516, *note*
- Muhūrta, the Hindū hour, 461
- Müller, Professor Max, his translation of a Vedic hymn comparing the Brahmins with frogs, 413
- Nahusha myth respecting 641
- Nala, builds a bridge of stone over the sea at Lanka, 302
- Nandigrāma, the residence of Bharata, 219
- Navigation, regarded with horror by the Brahmins, 506
- Nemesis, the avenging, conception of, finds expression in the story of Rāma, 89
- Nikashī, mother of Ravana, her trouble about Sita, 352
- Nirvana, satirized in the story of Kumbhakarna, 379
- Nirvana, the Buddhist ideal of happiness, 415
- Noah, resemblance between his flood and the flood of Manu, 415
- Oaths, a limitation of, to different castes, 733 laws respecting, 610
- Obliindhya, his advice to Ravana after Hanuman's leap, 330
- Om, its meaning, 480
- Omens evil ones preceding the wars between Rāma and Khara 70
- Orders the four stages in the life of the individual, 517, the Brahmachari, or student, 511-5, the Grihastha, or householder 523, the Vānaprastha, or hermit, 521, the Sannyasi, or devotee 523
- Orphic age compared with the Brahmanical age, 407
- Oude. See Ayodhya
- Palaksha marriages, 505, originated in a belief in phantas, 515
- Isam, 1, description of the lake, 312
- Panchavati, the modern Nasik, near the river Godaveri, 207, Rāma's hermitage there, 1b
- Parasu Rāma, son of Jamadagni, his opposition to Rāma, the son of Dasaratha, 60, his terrible appearance during the return journey of Rāma from Mithila, 62, challenges Rāma to break the bow of Vishnu, 62, acknowledges Rāma to be Vishnu, 63, his alleged extirpation of the Iksha triyas proved to be an exaggeration, 61, the mere hero of some petty local tradition originating in the theft of a cow, 1b
- Parvati, worship of 417
- Patriarchal age of Hindū history, 625
- Pāvasa, a sacred food of rice and milk, presented to Dasaratha, 20 distributed among the Rāns and produces conception, 21 its connection with the incarnation of deity, 23
- Physicians excluded from the Sraddha, 627
- Pindas, or cakes, offerings of, at the Sraddhas, 521
- Pitris or spirits of ancestors, a day of, 464, daily offering of food to 432, associated with Prajapati, 512, feasted in the Sraddha, 521
- Polyandry in the Epics, 502 traces of the custom in a hymn of the Rig Veda, 1b, similarity of the legend in the hymn to the Swayamvara of Draupadi, 1b, revolting character, 670
- Polygamy in the Epic traditions, 503 in the hymns of the Rig Veda, 1b, position of a damsel in a polygamous household, 503, superior authority of the legitimate wife, 1b, amusing story of Jyāmagha, the submissive husband 509, *note*
- Prajapati, identified with the Supreme Spirit, 412, identified with Brahma, 413, perhaps a different conception, 511
- Prajapatya marriages, 506, distinction between them and the rite of the Brahmins, 511
- Prayaga, the modern Allahabad, the seat of Bharadvāja, 135
- Property, laws respecting 606, neglect of land by cultivators 611 12, divided and undivided families, 612
- Provinces, government of, 536; a military occupation based upon the village system, 1b
- Pulastya, the sage, said to be the progenitor of the Ikshvāsus, 263
- Purānas, manuscript translations of, by Professor H. H. Wilson, 407
- Purgunnah, comprising a hundred villages, 601
- Purusha hymn 453, Vedic myth that the four castes were created from the limbs of Purusha, 529, extracts from the hymn, 531, no Brahmanical superiority asserted in the Purusha hymn, 1b
- Raja's court and ministers, 544; Hindū ideal of one, 544 545, divine attributes, 547, punishment his special duty, 549, 550; his daily duties, 551; public appearance

snee, 1b, secret councils, 1b, precautions against poison and assassination, 692 his city, fort and palace, 693, queen priests, and ministers, 693 694, officials, 694, characteristics of Hindú sovereignty, 695 duties in defensive warfare, 610 duties during actual operations, 1b, alliances, 616, duties in offensive warfare 1b, policy to be pursued in a conquered country, 617

Rajas duties of detailed by Rama, 205

Rakshasa marriages 600, restricted 19 Manu to the Kshatriyas, 1b, an old war custom 610

Rakshasas early wars of Rama against, 37 confusion respecting them, 1b regarded as ghosts and represented as descendants from Brahman sages and as worshippers of Brahma 1b, origin of their opposition to the Brahmanas, 38, inquiry into the real character of the Rakshasas of the Ramáyana, 231, their empire in the south of India 232 identified with the Beldhists 1b, Viradha, the, Rakshasa, 211, said to be the children of Palastya, 299, popularly supposed to be able to assume new forms at will 279

Rama son of Dasaratha and Kausalyá, his birth, 21, an incarnation of Vishnu 20 story of his life from infancy to manhood, 27, identified by Vasishtha as an incarnation of Vishnu 29, anecdotes of his childhood 1b his crying for the moon, 1b, pacified by a mirror, 30 begins to talk, 31 his sports with other boys, 1b educated by Vasishtha 32 invested with the sacred thread 33 becomes a Brahman chári for the day 1b taught the Gayatri 1b, studies the Vedas, 1b his early life a type of the modern Hindú 35 goes with Viswámitra to protect the Brahmanas against the Rakshasas, 39 Viswámitra acts as his Guru 40 arrives at the hermitage at the junction of the Ganges and Sarayu 41 passage over the Ganges, 1b requested by Viswámitra to slay Taraka, 1b, the combat, 12 his unwillingness to slay a woman 1b, slays Taraka at the suggestion of Viswámitra, 1b receives divine weapons from Viswámitra 43, his reception at the hermitage of Viswámitra at Duxar, 14 destroys the Rakshasas 1b proceeds with Viswámitra to the sacrifice of Janaka at Mithila, 1b crosses the Ganges and halts at Visala, 46 enters the hermitage of Gautama and releases Shalya from a curse, 49 story of his marriage with Sita 51 excites the religious sympathies of Hindu families 52 division of the story 53 received at Mithila by Raja Janaka 51 begins the great bow of Siva 53 the preliminaries 1b, the marriage ceremony, 57 ceremonies in the inner apartments, 59 review of the narrative, 60 the marriage performed not by Brahmanas, but by Raja Janaka 1b, opposition of Rama the Kshatriya to Parasu Rama, the Brahman, 60, 62 64 —see also Parasu Rama, modern story

of Rama's honeymoon 65 review of the story, 69 appointed Yuvaraja 72 jealousies and intrigues in the zenana of Dasaratha, 73 partiality of the Mahārāja for Rama, 79 his virtues 1b, resolution to appoint him Yuvaraja, 1b, speech of the Mahārāja before the great Council on the appointment of Rama to be Yuvaraja 80, joy of the assembly, 81 recital of Rama's merits 1b his wisdom, bravery, and kind words 1b, his truth, continence, and justice 1b, Vasishtha directs the preparations for the installation, 82, Rama summoned to the palace by Dasaratha, 1b, graciously received by the Mahārāja and requested to accept the post of Yuvaraja 83, directed to keep watch until the morning 1b, proceeds to his mother's apartments, 84 joy of Kausalya, 1b, returns to his home, 1b, receives instructions from Vasishtha, 85 worships Vishnu, 1b, keeps watch in the temple of Vishnu, 1b, universal rejoicings 86 acme of human felicity attained by Rama, 89, conception of the avenging Nemesis, 1b, story of the intrigues of Kaikeyi for bringing about his exile, and the installation of her son Bharata in his room 90 curious Brahmanical interpolation that Kaikeyi required that he should become a religious devotee, 103 modern belief in the idea, 1b, story of his visit to the palace on the morning of the installation, 104, his beautiful house, 107 picture of his sitting on a couch framed by Sita 1b, accompanies Sumatra to the palace of the Mahārāja, 108, acclamations of the multitude, 1b, his interview with the Mahārāja and Kaikeyi, 110 his prompt and cheerful obedience, 111 control of his passions 112, his interview with his mother Kausalya, 113 refuses to rebel against his father, 115, his interview with Sita, 117, yields to her entreaties 121, proceeds barefooted to the palace 122, puts on bark garments 127 leaves Ayodhya in a chariot 129, directs Sumatra to excuse himself by a falsehood 130, route from Ayodhya to Bundelkhand 135 halt at the Tamasi river, 136, depart in the morning without awaking the people, 137, entertained at Sringeri by Raja Guha 139 dismisses Sumatra, 140 becomes a devotee and dismisses Guha, 142 passage over the Ganges 1b reaches the hermitage of Bharadwaja 145 directed by the sage to live at Chitrakuta 146, passage over the Jumna 147, arrival at Chitrakuta 1b describes the beauties of Chitrakuta to his wife Sita 199, describes the river Mandakini, 230, sports with his wife Sita on the hill 201 hears the approach of the army of Bharata, 203 beautiful description of his hermitage 204 his speech on the duties of Rajas 205 demands the reason of Bharata's coming 206, his affliction on hearing of the death of his father the Mahā

raja, 208 offers water and funeral cakes to the soul of Dasaratha, 209, his condescension to Bharata's army, 209, his veneration towards his mothers and Vaishtha 210 refuses to accept the Raj 211, atheistical speech of Jāvali, the logician, ib, his wrathful reply, 214 renewal of the discussion, 215, his reply to Vasishtha 216, his shoes adopted by Bharata as an emblem of his sovereignty, 218 228, dismisses his brethren ib, puerile character of his dialogue with Sītā, 221, mixture of military pursuits and religious worship involved in the description of his hut, ib, strained and artificial character of his dialogues with Bharata and others, 222, review of his interview with Jāvali 224 his character as the champion of the Brāhmins against the Buddhists, 227 authenticity of his exile 229 locality of the wanderings ib dubious existence of the sages said to be his contemporaries, 230 his three characters as a mortal hero as an incarnation of Vishnu, and as a champion of the Līnga worshippers, 233 contradiction involved, 234, three elements in the Rāmāyana, corresponding to the three characters, ib, ten incidents in the narrative of the exile, 235 departure from Chitra kōṭa 236, journey to the hermitage of Atri, 237 praised by Sītā, 238 engages to defend the sages from the Rākshasas in the forest of Dandaka 239, joyfully entertained by the sages, 240, appearance of Virādha, 241 agony at seeing his wife in the grasp of Virādha, 242, burns Virādha alive, 243, visit to the hermitage of Sarabhaṅga, 245, admires the chariot and horses of Indra, ib, sees Sarabhaṅga burn himself alive, 245, entreated by the sages to protect them against the Rākshasas, 247 visit to the hermitage of Satīkṣhna 248 visit to neighbouring sages, 249 - dialogue with Sītā on the propriety of making war against the Rākshasas, 249 ten years wanderings in the neighbourhood of Satīkṣhna's hermitage at Ramtek, 251 visits the lake where a sage is sporting with five Aparas ib, return to the hermitage of Satīkṣhna, 251 visit to the sage Agastya near the Vindhya mountains, ib joy of Agastya, 254, acknowledged as Raja of the universe 255, receives divine weapons from Agastya, 256, recites the Panchavati, the modern Nask, 257 allies with Jatāyus ib his large hut with four rooms ib his oblations to the god of dwellings, 258, reproves Lakṣmana 259, significance of his dialogue with Sītā as to his protecting the Brahmins 260 his wars respecting Sūrpa nakha 261, efforts of Sūrpa nakha to induce him to marry her, 262 jests with her 267 resists the attacks of her brothers, Khara and Dushina, 269 his calmness 272, his terrible arrows 273 slays Dīhana, 274 slays Khara, 275 pursues Maricha, who has taken the form of a deer, 283, slays

Maricha, 286, narrative of his search for Sītā, 296 his address to the moon, 297, discovers the body of Jatāyus, ib, performs funeral rites for him, 298, proceeds towards the south, 299, encounter with Kabandha, ib advised by Kabandha to ally with Sugrīva 310, visits the hermitage of Matanga, and praises the piety of Sarvarī, 311, proceeds to the Pampā lake, 312 his name taught as a mantra, ib, sees Sarvarī burn herself alive 311, change in his character from the divine to the human, 314, hypothesis that the son of Dasaratha and Līnga-worshipper of the Dekhan are different individuals, 315, significance of his alleged alliance with the Monkeys 315, reason why the monkey gods of the south may have been represented as fighting for him, 318, proceeds from the lake Pampā to the Pishyamūkha mountain, 319, received by Sugrīva and Hanuman ib, sees the ornaments of Sītā in the possession of Sugrīva, 320 engages to slay Bāli ib, mortally wounds him, 321, breach of the laws of fair fighting 321, marshalling of the armies on the Malyavana mountain, 326 gives his ring to Hanuman, 328, receives Sītā's jewel from Hanuman, 341 his genius for alliances, 349 narrative of his war against Rāvana, 350, progress of the army of Monkeys and Bears towards the sea, 351 joined by Vibhīhana, 351 the building of the bridge, ib worships Siva, and sets up a Līnga in Ramisseram, 353, crosses the bridge with his army of Monkeys and Bears, ib, permits Rāvana's spies to survey his camp 354, his message to Rāvana, ib, review of the narrative, 357, the Līga, a monument of triumph, and a religious symbol, ib, temple to Rīma at Ramisseram, 358, his war against Rāvana, 361 confined with Lakṣmana in the noose of snakes, 361, his deliverance, 363, takes the field against Rāvana ib, orders Hanuman to fire the city of Lanka, 369, combat with Rāvana, 370 final overthrow of Rāvana, 374, his cruel words to Sītā, 383, her appeal, ib, the god Agni attests her purity, 384 receives her as his wife ib, prepares to return to Ayodhya 385, describes his adventures to Sītā 385, arrives at the hermitage of Bharadwaja ib, the retreatment, 387, 388, 389, preparations for his triumphant return to Ayodhya 388, meeting with Bharata 389 casts aside the garb of a devotee for that of a Raja, 390, entry into Ayodhya, ib, the installation ceremonies, 391 popularity of the narrative, 394 determines to put away Sītā, 399, sufferings of Sītā, 400, performs an Aswamedha, 402, acknowledges his sons, 403 is reconciled to his wife, Sītā, ib, ascends to heaven, 405

Ramayana, opening scene at Ayodhyā 1, scarcity of early family traditions, 2, com-  
mencement of the poem, 3 spiritualized version known as the Adhvātma Rīma

- yana, 25, poetical description of autumn, 40, three elements corresponding to the three characters of Rāma, 231, natural conclusion of the story, 331, popularity of the story, 394, conclusion, 406
- Rambha, the Apsara, legend of, 214
- Ramdoolal Dey, his *Sraddha*, 528, *note*, story of his submission to his wife, 572, *note*, conduct as regards a second wife, 579, *note*
- Ramisseram, Līnga set up there by Rāma, 303, description of the pagoda there, 358
- Rāvana, Rāja of the Rākshasas, rendered invulnerable by Brahma and makes the gods his slaves, 18 the gods complain to Brahma, *ib*, Vishnu promises to over throw him by mortals and monkeys, 19, grandson of Pulastya, the son of Brahma, 37, hears of Rāma's slaughter of Khara and Dūshana, 276, dissuaded by his minister Mārīcha from carrying off Sītā, 277, narrative of his abduction of Sītā, 278 extraordinary conception of his having ten heads and twenty arms, 280, description of him, 281, addressed by Surpa nakha, *ib*, urged to carry off Sītā, 282, induces Mārīcha to take the form of a deer, 283 proceeds to Panchavatī, 285, visits the hermitage of Rāma, 288 his proposals to Sītā, 289, assumes his proper form, 290 carries away Sītā through the air, 291, his chariot stopped by Jatāyus, 296, slays Jatāyus, 297, contrast between his black complexion and the gold complexion of Sītā, 297, passes the Rishya mūkha mountain, 298, conducts Sītā to his palace at Lankā, *ib*, refusal of Sītā to listen to his proposals, 300 his alarm at Hanuman's leap, 330, his night visit to Sītā surrounded by his women, 330 threatens to devour her, 337, prevented from slaying her by his wife Mandodari, 338, hears that a Monkey has destroyed his Asoka grove, 340 sends out successive armies and warriors to slay Hanuman, *ib*, questions Hanuman, 342, orders Hanuman a tail to be set on fire, 343 his Buddhist character, 347, his rupture with Vibhishana who joins Rāma, 302, sends Sūka and Śārana to spy out the army of Rāma, 353, his wrath at Rāma's message, 364, surveys the army of Monkeys and Bears, *ib*, prepares to withstand Rāma, 356, counselled by Nikasha and Māharat, *ib*, takes the field in person 365, entreated by his wife Mandodari to restore Sītā, *ib*, the battle, *ib*, combat with Rāma, 366, awakening and death of Kumbha karna, 367, shuts himself up in Lankā, 369 combat with Rāma, 370, his sacrifice with closed doors 373, ill treatment of his wife Mandodari by the Monkeys, *ib* his final overthrow, 374, lamentations of his widows, 382
- Religious history of India four epochs of, 407, 410, chronology of, 418 laws of Manu a compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas, 416, historical significance of the compromise, *ib*
- Religious ideas, legend of the production of rain by Rishi Śrīnga, 13 the churning of the ocean for the possession of amrita, 47, belief connected with the marriage of Rāma and Sītā as incarnations of Vishnu and Lākshmi, 52, curious Brahmanical interpolation that Kaikeyi desired that Rāma should become a religious devotee, 103, Rāma becomes a devotee, 142, Sītā's prayer to the river Ganges, *ib*, offerings of wine and flesh meat to female deities, 143, worship of the Jumnā by Sītā, 117; worship of the fig tree, *ib*, propitiation of the god of dwellings, 148 atheistical speech of Jāvali, 211, wrathful reply of Rāma, 214, Buddhist tenets of Jāvali, 215, his recantation, *ib*, review of his character and arguments, 224 Brahma worshipped by Rāvana, 232, Rākshasas identified as Buddhists, *ib*, Viradha preserved by the blessing of Brahma, 243 extraordinary description of ascetics, 217, legend of the devotee who was tempted by Indra to become a warrior, 250, Rāma's oblation to the god of dwellings, 208, worship of Siva by Rāma, 303, Līnga set up by Rāma at Ramisseram, *ib* Sukra, the preceptor of the Rākshasas 373 belief in the efficacy of sacrifice, 373, 377
- Religious ideas, in the Vedic age, 411, belief in ghosts, *ib*, rise of the Aryans from polytheism to monotheism, *ib*, identification of the Supreme Spirit with Agni and Prajapati, 412, ideas in the Brahmanic age, *ib*, Brahmanic religion distinct from the Vedic religion, *ib*, amalgamation of the two, *ib*, doctrines of Buddhism, 414, existence an evil, 415, idea of Nirvāna, *ib*, age of satiety, 416, failure of Buddhism to influence the masses, *ib*, appeal of the Brāhmins to the old gods of India, 417, Brahmanism a religion of the people and Buddhism a religion of the nobles, 421, worship of the Sarasvatī river by the Vedic Aryans, 429, Vedic religion restricted generally to the present life, 430, genial character of the Vedic religion, 437, ascendancy of the Brāhmins secured by asceticism, 442, distinction between an age of spontaneous devotion and one of ritualism, 448 Brahmanical toleration of old usages, 450, creation of the universe—see Creation, influence of the different chronological systems upon the respective religious belief of Hindus and Europeans, 469, religion of the Brāhmins described at length, 471, Brahmanical doctrine of rewards and punishments unknown in the Vedic age, *ib*, crude conception of sin, 472, Brahmanical dogma of merits and demerits, 473, distinction between the religious obligations felt in Europe and those felt in India, 474, causes of the universality of the belief in rewards and punishments, 475, Mosaic conception of the iniquity of fathers visited upon children. 476. In-

- ferior merit of duties performed in the hope of reward, 477, distinction between natural law and ecclesiastical law, *ib*, distinction between higher and lower motives, *ib* religious worship of the Brahmins divisible into invocations and sacramental rites, 478 significance of the invocations as forming combinations of Three in One, *ib*, meaning of Om, the *Vyāhritis* and the *Gayatri*, 491, the Sun identified with *Brahma*, 483 chain of conceptions involved in the worship of the Sun, 484 daily repetition of the invocations, 485, religious value of a daily ritual, *ib*, relative effect of present and future punishment in the suppression of heresy, 486 five daily sacramental rites enjoined by *Manu*, 487 placed upon an anomalous basis, *ib*, reading of the *Veda* to propitiate the *Rishis*, 488 offering of food to propitiate the *Pitris*, 492, oblations of ghee to propitiate the *Devatas*, 493, offerings of boiled rice to propitiate spirits or ghosts, 494, hospitality in propitiation of guests, 498, worship of trees, 496 merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage, 516, ideas involved in the *Śrāddha*, or feast of the dead, 518, persons to be excluded, 522, significance of the catalogues of disqualifications, 524, confusion of sin and disease, *ib*, prohibition of the worship of inferior gods, 525, relative merits of different victims offered at a *Śrāddha*, 527, modifications of the old Vedic belief in the *Śrāddha* by the Brahmins, 528, sacrifice of the antelope peculiar to the Vedic Aryans, 545, *note*, results of the religious training of the Brahmins, 548, religious duties of the Brahmins, 549, Brahmanical disquisition on earthly happiness, 552, austerities of the *Vānaprastha*, or hermit, 562, of the *Sannyāsi*, or devotee, 563, religious contemplation to obtain final beatitude, *ib* subjects of reflection, 564, inferiority of material existence, 566, Brahmanical idea of life partially obtained from Buddhism but not from the Vedic worship, 565, expression of Vedic and Brahmanical ideas of life in modern humanity, 566, 567
- Religious rites, propitiation of *Susā* for the purpose of pacifying children, 30, performance of a *Śrāddha* before marriage, 56, worship of *Vishnu* by *Kausalya*, 84, worship of *Vishnu* by *Rama*, 85, *Kausalya's* sacrifice, 113, worship of *Siva* by *Rāma*, 353, sacrifice of *Indrajit*, 364—370, sacrifice of *Rāvana* with closed doors, 373
- Revenue, land, 601, miscellaneous taxes, *ib*
- Rig-Veda, geography of the hymns compared with that of *Manu*, 425, geography of the *Sarasvatī* river, 429; genial character of the ceremonial, 437, character of the Vedic bards, 428, opposition in the hymns between a peaceful and a warlike community, 439, between the worship of the *Maruts* and that of *Indra*, *ib*, express both fear and contempt of the Brahmins, 442, 443, comparison of the Brahmins with frogs, 443
- Rishis, distinguished from the Brahmins, 435, religious ideas expressed in their hymns, 436, their popularity and power, 437, married the daughters of *Rajas*, 438, resembled the Hebrew psalmists, *ib*, daily propitiation of, by the study of the *Veda*, 488, conception of marriage, 501, marriage rite of 505, difference between their rite and the rite of the *Rishis*, 509, the most ancient rite, 512
- Rishya-mukha mountain, the abode of the Monkeys, 298, *Sugriva*, the Monkey chieftain, 310, 319
- Ritwy, or sacrificer 551
- Ruma, wife of *Sugriva*, 320, 323
- Sacramental rites, five daily, enjoined by *Manu*, 487, of the *Rishis*, 44, of the *Pitris*, 488, of the *Devatas*, 493, of the Spirits or Ghosts, 494, of mortal Guests, 498, review of the rites *ib*
- Sacrifice, description of, at the *Asvamedha* of *Dasaratha*, 17, domestic sacrifice of *Vishnu*, 113
- Sagara, *Raja*, sixty thousand sons, legend of, 46, *note*
- Saivya, her power over her husband *Jyāmrgha*, 569, *note*
- Sākyā Muni the great teacher of Buddhism in India, 408, characteristics of his teachings, 414, existence an evil, 415
- Salutations to men of different castes, 533
- Sampati, brother of *Jatayu*, informs *Hanuman* that *Rāvana* has carried *Sitā* to Lanka, 329
- Sāṅkhya philosophy expressed in the cosmogony of *Manu*, 427
- Sannyāsi, a devotee, 563, life of religious contemplation to obtain final beatitude, *ib*, means of subsistence, 564, subjects of reflection, *ib*, resemblance to the Buddhist devotees, 565
- Sarabhangā, the sage, visit of *Rāma* and *Sitā* to his hermitage, 245, visited by *Indra*, *ib*, burns himself alive, and ascends to the heaven of *Brahma*, 246
- Saramā, wife of *Vishishana*, serves *Sitā*, 353
- Sarana, sent by *Ravana* with *Sūka* to spy upon *Rāma's* army, 353
- Sarasvatī, goddess of learning, worshipped by school boys, 32, decay in her worship consequent on the introduction of printed books, 36, *note*
- Sarasvatī river, a line of separation between the Vedic and Brahmanical settlements, 425, distinction between the age when it flowed into the Indus, and the age when it disappeared in the sand, 428, geographical notices of, in the *Rig Veda*, 429
- Sarayu river, the modern *Gogra*, 1, 3, holy hermitages at its junction with the Ganges 41, funeral place on its bank, 174
- Sarvari, the female disciple of *Matanga*, 311, relates her story to *Rima*, *ib*, burns herself alive, 312
- Satī, rite of, 633.

- Satrugha son of Dasaratha and Sumitrā, his birth 21, accompanies his brother 1 harata to the city of Raja Aswapati 77, 78, ill treats Manthara, 169, restrained by Bharata ib defeated and wounded by Lava and Kusa, 402
- Savitri the Sun, identified with Brahma, 483
- Scythian custom resembling the rite of Sati 631
- See legend of the churning of, 47
- Sea voyages, existence of, proved by the law of Bottomry, 609
- Sersoori river, mistakes concerning, in modern geography, 431 *note*
- Sin crude concept on of, by the Vedic Aryans 472 confounded with disease 621
- Sita daughter of Janaka, Iaja of Mithila, promised in marriage to the Raja who could bend the great bow of Siva, 57, Rama bends the bow, ib, married to Rama, 57, mythical story of her birth 58 modern story of her honeymoon 66, plays at dice with Rama 67 drinks honey, 68 her prayer when Rama leaves her to be installed Yuvaraja 103, Rama returns from the palace and informs her of his exile, 117, declares that she will accompany him to the jungle, 118 her solemn appeal to Rāma, 119, her wrath 120, Rama yields to her entreaties, 121, accompanies Rama and Lakshmana in a farewell visit to the Maharaja ib, weeps over the bark clothing 127 accompanies her husband in a chariot 129 her prayer to the river Ganges 142 her prayer to the river Jumna and fig tree 147 sports with her husband Rāma on the hill Chitra Rūta 159 episode of the tika 201, her interview with Anasuya, the wife of Atri 237 praised for her devotion to her husband ib, praises Rama, 238 receives an ornament which renders her ever young and beautiful 238, seized by Viradha the cannibal, 212, rescued by Rama and Lakshmana 213 reproaches Rama for waging war against the Rakshasas 219, attacked by Śūrpaṇakha 267 placed in a cage throughout the wars 271, 272 entreats Rama to pursue a beautiful deer 280 taunts Lakshmana into leaving her 287 addressed by Ravana 289 her wrathful reply, 290 carried away by Ravana, 291 her cries heard by Jatayu 297 poetical contrast of her golden complexion with the black complexion of Ravana ib her lamentations for Rama, ib, drops her ornaments amongst the Monkeys on Rishya mūkha 298 conducted to the palace of Ravana, ib, wrathfully refuses to receive the addresses of Ravana, 300 her ornaments shown to Rama by Sugriva, 310, discovered by Hanuman in the Asoka garden at Lanka 330, night visit of Ravana surrounded by his women ib Ravana threatens to slay her, 333, threatened by the Rakshas women ib, her interview with Hanuman, 339, difficulty as regards her purity after her imprisonment in the palace of Ravana, 331 narrative of her ordeal, 382, restored to Rama, 383 cruel words of Rama ib, her appeal ib, enters the fire, 384, the god Agni attests her purity, ib, Rama receives her as his wife, 385, installed as Rani 391 gives her necklace to Hanuman, 392, story of her separation and exile 398 her sufferings 400 found by Valmiki gives birth to Lava and Kusa, 481 is reconciled to Rama 403 questionable authenticity of the story of Sita, 405
- Siva, the god, legend of his being smitten by the love-inspiring arrows of Rāma, 41, legend of the descent of the Ganges upon his head 45, legend of the great bow with which he destroyed the sacrifice of Daksha 51, worshipped by Rāma, who sets up a Linga at Ramisseram, 303, worshipped in the age of Brahmanical revival 417
- Slander, scale of punishments for, 510
- Smṛiti, or tradition, 450
- Soma, the moon god, daily oblation to, 493
- Spies considered necessary under Hindu government 7, 9
- Spirits *See* Ghosts
- Śrāddha, performance of, before marriage, 56, on the death of Mahārāja Dasaratha, 175, performed by Rāma, 209, curious reasoning of Javali against its performance, 225
- Śrāddha, the daily, 492, description of the Śrāddha or feast of the dead, 518, origin of the idea ib, a pleasing expression of natural religion, 519, three distinct Śrāddhas, ib ceremonies to be performed at a monthly Śrāddha, 520, persons to be invited to a Śrāddha, 522, persons to be excluded, ib, significance of the catalogues of disqualifications, 521, relative merits of different rituals offered at 527, the funeral Śrāddha, ib modifications of the old Vedic belief in, by the Brāhmanas, 578, description of the Śrāddha of Rāmānandā Dey, ib, *note*
- Sringa Rishi legend of his never having seen a woman 11, enticed from his father's hermitage by damsels sent by the Raja of Anga 12, causes rain in Anga, 13 marries Santā, the daughter of the Iaja 14 performs the Aswamedha of Mahārāja Dasaratha 16
- Sringavara, the modern Sringar the frontier town between Kozala and the Bhil country 130 Rama and Sita halt there 139 halt of the army of Bharata, 182
- Sruti, or revelation 450
- Subala mountain in the island of Lanka, 330
- Sūdras, 4
- Sugriva, the Monkey chieftain on the Rishya mūkha mountain 310, receives Rāma and Lakshmana 319 shows Sita's ornaments to Rāma 320, relates the

- story of his grievances against Bali, 15.  
 proceeds to Kishkindya and fights 321.  
 321, Bali slain by Rāma, 15. takes the  
 wife of Bali and is installed Raja of Kish-  
 kindya 321. his neglect to assist Rāma,  
 326. joins Rāma with his army, 15, and  
 ventures of the Monkeys in his new  
 garden 317. his joy at their return, 311.  
 Saka, sent by Ravana with Sana to spy  
 upon the army of Rāma, 333. returns to  
 Ravana and dismissed from his service, 333.  
 Sikra, the preceptor of the Rakshasa, 73.  
 humantra, chief counsellor of Maharaja  
 Dasaratha 6, makes known the ancient  
 prophecy that the Avaramitha was to be  
 performed by Rāma 11, relates  
 the legend of the Rishi bhishpa who had  
 never seen a woman, 15, sacrifices the in-  
 fant Rāma with a murmur, 30. sent by  
 Vasishtha to summon the Maharaja to the  
 installation of Rāma 106, praises the  
 Maharaja, 107, commanded by Kaikeyi  
 and the Maharaja to bring Rāma to the  
 palace 111. Rāma, 108, reproaches  
 Kaikeyi 121, drives Rāma and Sita out  
 of Ayodhya in the royal chariot, 129, re-  
 turns to Ayodhya, 110, delivers Rāma's  
 message to Dasaratha, 132.  
 Sumitra a Rāni of Maharaja Dasaratha, 11  
 gives birth to Lakshmana and Satrugna,  
 21.  
 Sun identified with the Supreme Spirit,  
 412. identified with Brahma 493, chain  
 of conceptions involved in his worship, 481.  
 Sun god. See Sūrya.  
 Supreme Spirit, identified with the "Sun  
 Agni and I rajapati, 412. identified with  
 Brahma 483, contemplation of, by the  
 religious devotee 563. 564.  
 Sureties, law respecting, 609, its moral sig-  
 nificance, 610.  
 Sūrpānāhī, sister of Ravana admires the  
 beauty of Rāma, 285, her efforts to in-  
 duce Rāma to marry her 15. advised  
 by Rāma to marry Lakshmana, 267,  
 rushes upon Sita and loses her ears and  
 nose, 15, escapes to her brother Khara,  
 268, the wars between Khara and Du-  
 shana and Rāma 269, her angry address  
 to Ravana, 281, urges him to carry off  
 Sita, 15, curses Ravana 374.  
 Sūrya, or the Sun, the mythical ancestor of  
 the Rajas of Kosala 2.  
 Sushenā, the physician restores the dead  
 Monkeys to life by herbs brought from  
 the Himalaya mountain, 369, a second  
 time 372.  
 Susti, the goddess, propitiated for the pur-  
 pose of quieting the infant Rāma, 30.  
 Sutiskshna, the ascetic, visited by Rāma  
 Sita, and Lakshmana, 243.  
 Suvahu, the Rakshasa, destroyed by Rāma  
 44.  
 Swayamvara associated with polyandry,  
 502. its origin 503, referred to in the  
 hymns of the Rig Veda, 504. no allusion  
 to it in Manu, 15, pleasing idea involved,  
 570, an exaggerated expression of chiv-  
 ary, 571.  
 Tamasa river, has as encampment 15.  
 Tara, wife of Bali entreats her husband  
 to fight Sugriva, 321. her laurels  
 over 15, 322, becomes the wife of  
 Sita 37.  
 Taraka the Rakshasi haunts the wife  
 41, slain by Rāma at the request  
 of Avaramitha, 12.  
 Taxes, 555 cm of, in return for protec-  
 tion; assessment on yearly savings  
 and revenue etc., 601.  
 Thread, the distinguishing symbol of  
 the 15, her clothes, 523, 515.  
 Tila, preserved on Rāma's breast from  
 Yajñabalki, 201.  
 Time. Hind calculations of, 451.  
 Traditions various modes of interpret-  
 ing different phases of civilization 61.  
 Treasure trove, law respecting 607.  
 Tree. Ingudi encampment of Rāma ar-  
 under, 129, juice of the fig tree em-  
 ployed to mat the hair of devotees, 11.  
 supplied by Sita, 117.  
 Trees, daily worship of, 491, spirits of  
 Trijata, the Pāshand woman, protect  
 370.  
 Twilight of the Yajñabalki, 466.  
 Ugrā Chandra, the genius of Laila  
 combat with Hanuman, 331.  
 Upadhyāy, or schoolmaster, 550.  
 Urmilī daughter of Janaka, married  
 Lakshmana 57.  
 Usury, law respecting 609.  
 Vajras, 4. their occupations, 561.  
 Vālmiki, the author of the Rāmāyana  
 sent at Chakra-kūta 13, visited by 1  
 143, chronological difficulties con-  
 nected with him 230, finds Sita, 401, and  
 her sons, 15.  
 Vamadeva, preceptor of Maharaja  
 ratha 6.  
 Vānaprastha, life of, as described in  
 Vishnu Purana, 101.  
 Vānaprastha or hermit, as distinguished  
 from the Sannyasi, or devotee, 56.  
 religious austerities 562.  
 Varuna, the god of waters, advises  
 that Nala can bridge the sea at 1  
 322.  
 Varuni, the goddess of wine, rises in  
 the sea, 47.  
 Vashishtha, his stature upon the Yajñabalki  
 413.  
 Vasishtha, preceptor of Maharaja Da-  
 shartha 6. identifies Rāma as an incarnation  
 of Vishnu 29, educates Rāma and  
 his brothers 31, invests him with the  
 thread and teaches him the Gayatri  
 directs the necessary preparations for  
 installation of Rāma as Yuvaraja, 5.  
 instructions to Rāma, 84, a later  
 popular interpolation, 87, prepared  
 on the morning of the installation  
 sends Sumantra to summon the 1  
 15, 15, reproaches Kaikeyi 127.  
 proceedings on the death of Mel

Dasaratha, 156 sends messengers for Bharata, 158, directs the funeral ceremonies of Maharaja Dasaratha, 172, appearance at Chitra kúta, 210, endeavours to persuade Rama to accept the Raj, 216, conducts the installation of Rāma after his return from exile, 301, advises Rama, 401

śaśi: the serpent, 47

Śāpi and Ilwāla, legend of, 253

śedāngas, the six, 500

śedās, four, corresponding to the four faces of Brahma, 417, character of the four Vedas, 417, note, the Mantras and Brāhmaṇas 448, daily study of, in propitiation of the Rishis, 488, preparatory ceremonial, ib, effect of the ceremonial upon the young Brāhman, 489, right of interpretation claimed by the Brāhmins 489, 490, mode of interpretation, 190

Vedic age, characteristics of, 411 distinct from the Brahmanic, 412 compromise between the two, ib, deities recognized, but placed subordinate to Brahma, 413, Vedic period illustrated by the Brahmanic period, 414; appeal of the Vedic deities in the age of Brahmanical revival, 416, chronology of the Vedic age, 418, Vedic geography compared with that in the code of Manu, 420, Vedic gods identified with the Vedic Aryans, 426 inferior to Brahma, 428, Vedic psalmists as distinct from Brāhman priests, 430 Vedic religion restricted generally to the present life, ib, general character of the ceremonial, 437, popularity and power of the Vedic psalmists, ib, wide interval between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas, 433, effect produced on the Vedic Aryans by the asceticism of the Brahmins, 442 compare the Brāhmins with frogs, 443, conception of Manu compared with the Brahmanic conception, 445, idea of the creation, 452, Brahmanical doctrine of rewards and punishments unknown, 471, crude conception of sin 472, Vedic gods included in Om the Vjāhritis and the Gayatri, 481, daily oblations of ghee to the Vedic gods, 493, Vedic conceptions of marriage as expressed in the two Epics 501, polyandry, 502, polygamy, 503 inferior gods 525, modifications of the old belief in the Śrāddha by the Brāhmins, 598, traces of caste, 530 myth that the four castes were created from the limbs of Puruṣa, ib, sacrifice of the antelope peculiar to the Vedic Aryans, 545 note, marriage relations in 563, ideas of government contrasted with those in Manu 536, absence of chronological sequence, 620

Vedic deities, oppressed by Ravana 18 complain to Brahma ib, promised relief by Vishnu, 19, become incarnate as Monkeys and Bears, 20, commanded by Vishnu to churn the sea, 47

Yena Raja, his fondness for women, 834

Yāghandaka, father of the Rishi Śringa, 13

Yāghishana, the younger brother of Ravana, 322 interferes

in behalf of Hanuman, 342 part played by him in the original tradition, 318, joins Rāma and promised the Raj of Lanka, 302, his proceedings after the death of Ravana, 382, installed Raja of Lanka, 383

Village, the Hindu comprising both a district and a town, 596, village communities, 597, officials, ib, assemblies, ib; emoluments of village officials, 598, antiquity and permanence of the system, ib, law respecting the surrounding pasture land, 599, boundaries and land marks, 600, investigation of disputes, ib government of, as laid down by Manu, 601.

Vinasana, or disappearance of the Saraswati, a land mark adopted by Manu, 428

Virādha, the cannibal Rākshasa, his horrible appearance, 211, taunts Rāma and Lakshmana with having only one wife, ib, preserved from slaughter by the blessing of Brahma, 213, buried alive, ib, legend respecting, 241

Virūj, produced from Brahmā, 460, progenitor of Manu, ib

Visalā, Rajā of, welcomes the arrival of Rama and Lakshmana, 48

Vishnu, appears from the sea of milk, and promises to relieve the Vedic deities from the oppression of Ravana 19, promises to become incarnate as the four sons of Dasaratha, 20, becomes incarnate through the agency of pītṛas, 23, distinguishing marks of, 29 legend of his taking three steps in the Dwarf incarnation for the destruction of Bali, 43, desires Indra and the gods to churn the sea for amṛta, 47, the goddess Lakshmi rises from the sea and becomes his wife, ib, gives the amṛtato Indra and the gods, 48, propitiated by Kausalyā, 84, worshipped by Rāma, 85, dubious stress laid upon his worship, 87, sacrifices of Kausalyā 113 character of Rāma as an incarnation of, 233, bow of, 256

Vishnu, worshipped in the age of Brahmanical revival, 417

Viśvakarma, the architect of the gods, provides Bharadvāja with the means of entertaining the army of Bharata, 186

Viśwamitra son of Gādhi, his visit to Maharaja Dasaratha 33 originally a kshatriya, 39, requests that Rāma may be sent to protect his Brahmanical settlement against the Rākshasas, ib, Rama and Lakshmana permitted to accompany him, ib, acts as Guru to Rama 40, commands Rāma to slay Turakā, 41, removes his scruples about killing a woman, 42 presents divine weapons and mantras to Rāma 43 conducts Rama and Lakshmana to his hermitage ib, his anomalous character, 49 probably a Buddhist kshatriya who had become a Brahmin, ib note, accompanies Rama and Lakshmana to Nithilā, 54-56, proceeds to the Himalaya mountain, 61

Vyāhritis, comprising earth, sky, and heaven 480, meaning



- War fortifications of Ayodhya 4  
 War laws of 613 duties of a Raja in de-  
 fensive warfare 615 duties during actual  
 operations by allies 616 duties in  
 offensive warfare by policy to be pur-  
 sued in a conquered country 617  
 Weapons divine given by Vśvāmitra to  
 Rama, 43 the great bow of Śiva 51  
 the great bow of Viśnu 60 divine  
 given by Agastya to Rama 56  
 Widows See Marriage  
 Wither poetical description of, 2-3  
 Wives of different castes examination of 533, note  
 Women their social condition amongst the  
 Hindus. 568 See Marriage  
 Yajñik brother of Kaikeyi entertained  
 Malrajadatta, returns to  
 city of Gṛīva accompanied by Bhar-  
 and Satrugṛha 6  
 Yugas or ages four 463 simplicity of  
 conception involved 46-465 the Ma-  
 Yuga, or great age 460  
 Yuvaraja appointment of the heir appor-  
 tioning the life time of a Raja, three-  
 fold subject of the custom of jealousy  
 executed in the zenana 3 palace introu-  
 6 narrative of the appointment  
 Rama, joy of Kāśalya 81 Va-  
 ti as direction to Rama 53 gener-  
 rejections 86